Biofuel Technologies

Vijai Kumar Gupta · Maria G. Tuohy
Editors

Biofuel Technologies

Recent Developments

Springer

Editors
Vijai Kumar Gupta
Molecular Glycobiotechnology Group
Department of Biochemistry
School of Natural Sciences
National University of Ireland Galway
Galway
Ireland

and

Department of Science
Faculty of Arts, Science and Commerce
MITS University
Lakshmangarh
Rajasthan
India

Maria G. Tuohy
Molecular Glycobiotechnology Group
Department of Biochemistry
School of Natural Sciences
National University of Ireland Galway
Galway
Ireland

ISBN 978-3-642-34518-0 ISBN 978-3-642-34519-7 (eBook)
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-34519-7
Springer Heidelberg New York Dordrecht London

Library of Congress Control Number: 2012956162

Printed on acid-free paper

Springer is part of Springer Science+Business Media (www.springer.com)

About the Editors

Dr. V. K. Gupta is the Assistant Professor of Biotechnology at MITS University, Rajasthan, India. Currently, he is working as a PDF Scientist, at National University of Ireland Galway, Ireland. He has completed his Ph.D. in Microbiology from Dr. R. M. L. Avadh University, Faizabad, UP, India in 2009. He has been honored with several awards in his career including the prestigious Indian ICAR Senior Research Fellowship, Young Scientist Award-2009 and 2011, and Gold Medal Award-2009. Dr. Gupta is a fellow of International Society of Contemporary Biologist, Society of Applied Biotechnology, and Hind Agri-Horticultural Society, India. He has submitted 29 fungal nucleotide sequences to NCBI, USA, and deposited 147 fungal strains in different International/National fungal agencies/Institution viz. CABI, UK; NBAIM, Mau, India; IMTECH, Chandigarh, India, and ARI, Pune, India. Also, his group in NUI Galway is under process to submit 02 inventions for European patent. He is the editor and member of 9 International and 2 National journals with 38 International/National research publications and 23 book chapters in books published from highly recognized International/National publishers in his hand. He is the editor/author/internal editorial board member of books/book series from reputed publishers of International fame viz. Elsevier, The Netherlands; Science Publisher, New Hampshire, USA; Taylor and Francis, USA; Springer, USA and Lambert Academic Publishing (LAP), Germany.

Dr. Maria G. Tuohy is the Head of the Molecular Glycobiotechnology Research Group, Department of Biochemistry, School of Natural Sciences, NUI Galway which has developed a strong track record in Glycobiotechnology and Enzyme Biotechnology. She has more than 20 years' experience in molecular biochemistry, genetics, and biotechnology of fungi, with a special interest in thermophilic ascomycetes and the characterization of these fungi as cell factories for protein production, including novel thermostable enzymes/enzyme systems. Dr. Tuohy and her group have developed patented enzyme-based technologies for key bioenergy and biorefinery applications from terrestrial and marine biomass and wastes, including third generation feedstocks. The group also investigates the use of enzymes for the recovery and selective modification of high-value biochemicals and plant carbohydrate-derived bioactives ('Glycobioengineering'). Dr. Tuohy is a PI in the Energy Research Centre, NUI, Galway and the recently funded National Bioenergy and Biorefinery Competence Centre, is a member of the EU FP7 Biofuels Platform and National Research PhytoNetwork. Dr. Tuohy has been a visiting researcher in RUGhent, Belgium and BSH Institut fur Holzchemie, Hamburg. Dr. Tuohy is author of about 132 research publications, including refereed publications, book chapters, conference papers, and poster/short communications. She is also a reviewer for international journals and funding agencies and several books as co-editor—Elsevier, The Netherlands, Springer Science Publisher, USA; CRC Press, Taylor and Francis, USA; Lambert, Germany; Nova Science Publisher, USA, and Elsevier Press, USA (under Progress) with Dr. V. K. Gupta.

Foreword by M. A. Mazutti

Biomass was the world's dominant source of energy and its consumption grew from approximately 50 million tons of oil equivalent in the beginning of the Christian era to 1,000 tons of oil equivalent today (a 20-fold increase). Presently, biomass accounts for about 10 % of the world's primary energy consumption. The other 90 % is made up of nonrenewable fossil fuels (80 %), hydroelectricity (2 %), nuclear energy (6 %), and renewable solar energies (2 %). Worldwide, there is a great interest from researchers and industries to increase the percent of biofuel use on the total energy consumption. The production of bioethanol from biomass is well-reported, but, more recently, the production of biobutanol and biohydrogen, which are more energetic than bioethanol, have aroused interest. However, to obtain biofuel from biomass requires a proper pretreatment to enable efficient saccharification of cellulose and hemicellulose components to their constituent sugars due to the complex structure of biomass. Breakthrough technologies are needed to overcome barriers to develop cost-effective processes for converting biomass into biofuel, and the knowledge of the molecular mechanisms of the enzymatic hydrolysis of lignocellulosic feedstocks is one of the important parts of this process. Although the production and use of biofuels is an eminent technology, there are little references compiling the recent developments and trends on the field. By this reason, the book "Biofuel Technologies: Recent Developments" will bring the readers with the tendency and developments concerning the use of biomass to obtain traditional biofuel as ethanol and biodiesel as well as modern and more efficient biofuels namely butanol and hydrogen.

Brazil, 14 September 2012

Marcio Antonio Mazutti
Federal University of Santa Maria—UFSM

Foreword by R. C. Kuhad

Because of the limitations that first generation biofuels produced from food crops have caused, greater emphasis is to be placed on second generation biofuels produced from secondary agriculture feedstocks. Large-scale production of crop-based (first generation) biofuels may not be feasible without adversely affecting global food supply or encroaching on other important land uses. Because alternatives to liquid fossil fuels are important to develop in order to address greenhouse gas mitigation and other energy policy objectives, the potential for increased use of advanced (noncrop, second generation) biofuel production technologies has significant policy relevance.

Biofuel technology is a lignocellulose-based technology that converts wood and nonwood wastes into biofuels. For a longer term, one should look to expand the biofuel feedstock base through the use of new second generation technologies along with refining technology to biomass to extract energy, high value biochemicals, and fibers. Biofuels can be produced using various feedstocks and bioconversion technologies. Bioethanol can be produced from lignocellulosic materials and biodiesel from animal fats and microorganisms, such as microalgae. Emerging biofuel technologies include cellulosic ethanol and microorganism-based biodiesel as advanced biofuel technologies.

Research is necessary to improve the efficiencies in these areas and explore developing new technologies to convert lignocelluloses into ethanol. Similarly, the major challenge for microalgal biodiesel production is the high cost of producing microalgal biomass. The major issues to be solved are cost-effective algal harvesting and protection of the high-oil microalgae from contamination with wild algae. Another important issue for both lignocellulosic ethanol and microalgal biodiesel processes is by-products development. Both processes utilize only a portion of the raw materials for biofuel generation; only cellulose and hemicelluloses are used in ethanol production, while lipids are the only materials used for biodiesel production. There are sufficient residual by-products generated and the residues need to be processed for by-products through refinery to improve the economics of the whole process. The logistics to providing a competitive, all-year-round, supply of biomass feedstock to a commercial-scale plant is challenging, as

is improving the performance of the conversion process to reduce costs. The biochemical route, being less mature, probably has a greater cost reduction potential than the thermochemical route. The rapid expansion of biofuels in many countries poses significant challenges for policymaking. The issues surrounding the expansion of biofuels production and utilization are complex and highly dependent on crop type, local circumstances, and production management systems.

Therefore, advanced biofuel production technologies including lignocellulosic ethanol and microalgae have a good technical potential to substantially replace fossil fuels in the near future. Lignocellulosic materials such as agricultural residues, woods, and grasses are abundant in most land areas of the world and their utilization does not necessarily compete for arable land against food and feed production. Microalgae can produce a huge amount of oil on a small footprint, hundreds or thousands of times higher yield than most oil plants, if managed to be produced in larger quantity. It is technically possible to produce a high volume of biodiesel that is equivalent to or higher than the current level of diesel consumption using microalgae as feedstock that are grown on a small portion of land areas. Full commercialization of either biochemical or thermochemical conversion routes for producing second generation biofuels are still under progress. So, there is no doubt that good progress with bioethanol production has been made during the past decades following increasing investments in R&D. Successful outcomes include the development of improved microorganisms and the evaluation of innovative conversion technologies with improved performance and efficiencies. There is also a better understanding by the industry of the overall feedstock supply chain (whether from crop and forest residues or from purpose-grown crops), necessary to provide consistent quality feedstock delivered all-year-round to the conversion plant gate. There have also been successful developments relating to the construction of pilot-scale biorefineries to produce a range of coproducts.

It is considered that second generation technologies to produce liquid transport biofuels will be a long-term view for the potential of biofuels, but still more efforts are required to bring these technologies closer to the market. International cooperation is paramount and collaboration through international organizations should be enhanced with various sectors playing active roles to develop and sustain the second generation biofuels technologies for the long term. This edited book entitled "Biofuel Technologies: Recent Developments" reviews the current status of several advanced biofuel technologies. The book will be of interest to teachers, scientists, and researchers, whether in academia or industry.

14 September 2012

R. C. Kuhad
Lignocellulose Biotechnology Laboratory
Department of Microbiology
University of Delhi
New Delhi
India

Preface

Bioresources represent an important part of the available renewable resources. One of the key challenges facing sustainable industrial development is the transition from fossil-based feedstocks to renewable alternatives to meet the growing demand for energy, fuel, and chemicals. The sustainable use of biofeedstocks in energy/biofuels and chemical/material production is currently receiving much international attention, with significant efforts being made to translate scientific advances into commercial reality. The term biofuel is used here to mean any liquid fuels made from plant materials, residues, and wastes that can be used as a substitute for petroleum-derived fuels. Biofuels are increasingly attracting renewed attention worldwide as substitutes for petroleum-derived transportation fuels to help address resource limitations, security of supply and global warming concerns associated with liquid fossil fuels. Second generation biofuels include those made by biological processing and those made by thermochemical processing, which represent two fundamentally different approaches. Success in the commercial development of second generation biofuel technologies requires significant progress in feedstock selection and optimization through genetic and crop breeding strategies, as well as in crop husbandry and production practices. Technology improvements are essential for biofuel production in biomass conversion processes, either by the biochemical route (e.g. feedstock pretreatment, low-cost biocatalysts, or enzymes with improved efficiency, better microbial strains for biofuel production) and thermochemical route. Thermochemical processing has the important advantage of greater feedstock flexibility than biological processing, but the scale required to achieve an economically process may be larger than for biological processing. Many efforts are ongoing worldwide to commercialize second generation biofuels derived from both routes.

The technologies described in this publication reflect a number of the issues and challenges relevant to the development of the biofuels industry. Some research and development breakthroughs, followed by commercial-scale demonstrations, are needed to prove the viability of unsubsidized cellulosic ethanol. In contrast, because thermochemical biofuels are identical to some fuels that are already being made from fossil fuels, little or no fundamental research and development

breakthroughs are needed, but commercial-scale demonstrations are still required. Recovery and utilization of valuable coproducts generated during the production of second generation biofuels offers the potential to increase the overall revenue from biomass to biofuel processes. Optimization of the conversion process to maximize the value and yield of coproducts (heat, electricity, various chemicals, etc.) needs to be pursued for different feedstocks and conversion pathways. The development of improved microorganisms and the evaluation of innovative, more efficient conversion technologies are required. To support sustainable development, greater understanding of the overall feedstock supply chain, whether from crop and forest residues or from purpose-grown crops, is of paramount importance to provide consistent high-quality feedstock that can be delivered all-year-round to conversion plants. Sustainability is critical to the successful development of biofuels. Therefore, in the context of global trade, sustainability certification may be pivotal to ensure that global biofuel production is accompanied by the achievement of social and environmental goals. The overall chain of biomass production, conversion to biofuels, and end use is complex and requires integrated collaboration of many diverse stakeholder groups; farmers, crop producers and managers, engineers, scientists, chemical companies, fuel distributors, engine designers, and vehicle manufacturers. In order to address and reflect this complexity and understand the flow of activities involved, contributions to this publication have been collated under three main technical areas/heading: biomass production, conversion processes, and product end-use.

This publication provides valuable information to help understand technology-related implications of biofuels development. The chapters presented in the book cater for the needs of postgraduate researchers and scientists across diverse disciplines and industrial sectors where biofuel technologies and related research and experimentation are undertaken. Moreover, this book describes recent updates on biofuel feedstocks, biofuel types, and associated co-/by products and their applications. Therefore, this publication will be very useful not only to experienced researchers, but also to those new to the area.

Galway, Ireland, 14 September 2012

Vijai Kumar Gupta
Maria G. Tuohy

Acknowledgments

The Editors of this book are grateful for research funding from Enterprise Ireland and the Industrial Development Authority, through the Technology Centre for Biorefining and Bioenergy (TCBB), as part of the Competence Centre programme under the National Development Plan 2007–2013. The support of Mr. B. Bonsall, Technology Leader (TCBB) and Prof. V. O'Flaherty, Chair of Microbiology, School of Natural Sciences & Deputy Director of the Ryan Institute for Environmental, Marine and Energy Research at NUI Galway, Ireland, is gratefully acknowledged during the compilation of this project. The editors also express gratitude to their colleagues in the Molecular Glycobiotechnology Group, Discipline of Biochemistry, School of Natural Sciences, NUI Galway and MITS University, Rajasthan, India for their co-operation.

Contents

Part I
Sustainability and Technical Challenges

Chapter 1
Fermentable Sugars from Lignocellulosic Biomass: Technical Challenges

Ravichandra Potumarthi, Rama Raju Baadhe and Sankar Bhattacharya

Abstract Lignocelluloses, the most abundant renewable biomass on earth, are composed mainly of cellulose, hemicellulose, and lignin. Both the cellulose and hemicellulose fractions are polymers of sugars and thereby a potential source of fermentable sugars. Lignin can be used for the production of chemicals, combining heat and power, or for other purposes. Energy crisis and environmental pollution drive the scientific community toward the potential exploitation of lignocellulosic biomass. To crack their complex structures various pretreatment technologies including biological, mechanical, chemical methods, and various other combinational methods are available. We cannot relate the best and common pretreatment method to all types of the lignocellulosic biomass. It mostly depends on the type of lignocellulosic biomass and the desired products. The final aim of pretreatments must be improvement in the hydrolysis rate of lignocellulosic biomass. Currently, there is a large scope to investigate and restore the challenges in the pretreatment processes which finally leads to develop the tailor-made effective pretreatment methods for diverse types of lignocellulosic biomass.

1.1 Introduction

The world is facing two environmental challenges at present, energy crises and environmental pollution. Energy is a key ingredient for all sectors of a modern

R. Potumarthi (✉) · S. Bhattacharya
Department of Chemical Engineering, Monash University, Clayton 3800, Australia
e-mail: ravichandra.potumarthi@monash.edu; pravichandra@gmail.com

R. R. Baadhe
Department of Biotechnology, National Institute of Technology, Warangal 506004 AP, India

V. K. Gupta and M. G. Tuohy (eds.), *Biofuel Technologies*,
DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-34519-7_1, © Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2013

economy and plays a fundamental role in improving the quality of life. Approximately 80 % of the total world energy supply depends upon fossil fuels, which are depleting rapidly. It is estimated that the reserves of crude oil, natural gas, and coal are only expected to last around 50, 60, and 120 years, respectively, at the current rate of consumption (British Petroleum Statistical Review 2011). Another challenge with fossil fuels is emission of greenhouse gases (GHG). In 2009, 37 % of CO_2 (one of the major GHG) was emitted from oil combustion (International Energy Agency statistics 2011). Future energy needs, environmental hazards that are concerned with the consumption of fossil fuels, and national security, have heightened attention toward clean liquid fuel (Bioethanol) as a suitable alternative source of energy. Bioethanol not only reduces the dependence on oil trade and reduces the uncertainties caused by the fluctuations in oil price, but also secures reductions in environmental pollution problems due to its high oxygen content (Huang et al. 2008).

Bioethanol is produced from simple sugars that are derived from various sources such as corn, sugar cane, or switchgrass. Though these resources are connected with the forest diversity (GE Trees 2008), food security (Pimentel 2003), and also affect the available agriculture land for food grains cultivation. Large amounts of renewable carbon is produced in the ecosystem and about 77×10^9 tons are fixed via photosynthesis, leading to production of 100 billion tons of biomass annually (lignocellulosic materials) (Bozell 2001). These lignocellulosic waste materials are available as agricultural, industrial, and forest residues around the world (Prasad et al. 2007). This biomass is a potential source for bioethanol production. Usage of agricultural waste materials in an effective way minimizes environmental pollution, food security problems, and also proves to be a good agricultural waste management process.

Production of bioethanol comprises three important processes: pretreatment, saccharification, and fermentation. These copious and inexpensive lignocellulosic biomass are better sources of diverse polymeric sugars: glucose (cellulose) and xylose (hemicellulose), which can be converted biotechnologically into valuable products like sugars, ethanol, chemicals, and a wide variety of enzymes (Bozell 2001; Torrea et al. 2008; Miura et al. 2004; Kahar et al. 2010).

Because of their high complex structure with lignin, efficient enzymatic hydrolysis is difficult to produce fermentable sugars. This is possible with the breakdown of complex polysaccharide chains attached with lignin using pretreatment and subsequent enzymatic hydrolysis which are commonly known as saccharification in order to release the monomeric glucose units from cellulose. Finally, these glucose units are converted into ethanol by using yeast. Various pretreatment methods have been developed to facilitate the enzymatic hydrolysis of a variety of lignocellulosic materials (Kirk-Othmer 2001; Chen et al. 2009; Ken-Lin et al. 2011; Erdei et al. 2010; Pedersen et al. 2011; Michael et al. 2009)

There is a continuing need for research to find suitable and economical pretreatment techniques. Major challenges for the lignocellulosic bioethanol production include the pretreatment step, which is generally considered the most costly step in the whole process. Development of low cost enzymes or microbes

for production of sugars at industrial level is another challenge. An additional challenge is optimizing the ethanol fermenting microorganisms to tolerate all adverse conditions (Bothwell et al. 2012). In this chapter, some of the technical challenges with respect to bioprocesses for pretreatment are discussed.

1.2 Lignocellulosic Materials

1.2.1 Physical Properties

"Lignocellulosic biomass" refers to higher plants, softwood, or hardwood. The major components of lignocellulosic materials are cellulose, hemicellulose, and lignin. They also include water and a small amount of proteins and other compounds, which do not participate significantly in forming the structure of the material (Raven et al. 1992). Inside the lignocellulose complex, cellulose retains the crystalline fibrous structure which appears to be the core of the complex. Hemicellulose is positioned both between the micro- and the macrofibrils of cellulose. Lignin provides a structural role to the matrix in which cellulose and hemicellulose are embedded (Faulon et al.1994).

The composition of lignocellulosic material strongly depends on its source. There is a significant variation in the lignin and (hemi) cellulose content of lignocellulosic depending on whether it is derived from hardwood, softwood, or grasses. The contents of cellulose, hemicellulose, and lignin in common agricultural residues are listed in Table 1.1. The contents of the structural components are from various materials.

1.2.1.1 Cellulose

Cellulose is the most abundant polysaccharide on earth, approximately 75 billion tons of cellulose are produced and consumed annually (Kirk-Othmer 2001). It is a highly ordered polymer of cellobiose (D-glucopyranosyl-β-1, 4-D-glucopyranose) (Fig. 1.1), representing over 50 % of the wood mass. Cellulose is commonly considered as a polymer of glucose, since cellobiose consists of two molecules of glucose. The chemical formula of cellulose is $(C_6H_{10}O_5)_{n.}$

The properties of cellulose depend on its degree of polymerization (DP), i.e., the number of glucose units that make up one polymer molecule. The DP of cellulose is more commonly a number of 800–10,000 units (Kirk-Othmer 2001). It can also extend up to 17,000 units (wood pulp). Cellulose contains β-1, 4 glucosidic bonds (between glucose molecules), and leads to formation of long straight chains (Fig. 1.2). Later hydroxides are evenly distributed on both sides of the monomers. This leads to numerous strong intermolecular hydrogen bonds between hydroxyl groups of adjacent molecules in the parallel chains (Faulon et al. 1994).

Table 1.1 Composition of lignocellulose in several sources on dry basis (Sun and Cheng 2002)

Lignocellulosic material	Cellulose (%)	Hemicellulose (%)	Lignin (%)
Hardwood stems	40–55	24–40	18–25
Softwood stems	45–50	25–35	25–35
Nut shells	25–302	25–30	30–40
Corncobs	45	35	15
Paper	85–99	0	0–15
Wheat straw	30	50	15
Rice straw	32.1	24	18
Sorted refuse	60	20	20
Leaves	15–32	80–85	0
Cotton seeds hairs	80–95	5–20	0
Newspaper	40–55	25–40	18–30
Waste paper from chemical pulps	60–70	10–20	5–10
Primary waste water solids	15–20	NA	24–29
Fresh bagasse	33.4	30	18.9
Swine waste	6	28	NA
Solid cattle manure	1.6-4.7	1.4–3.3	2.7–5.7
Coastal Bermuda grass	25	35.7	6.4
Switchgrass	45	31.4	12

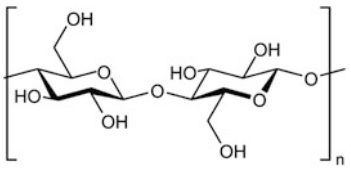


Fig. 1.1 Structural unit of cellulose (cellobiose)

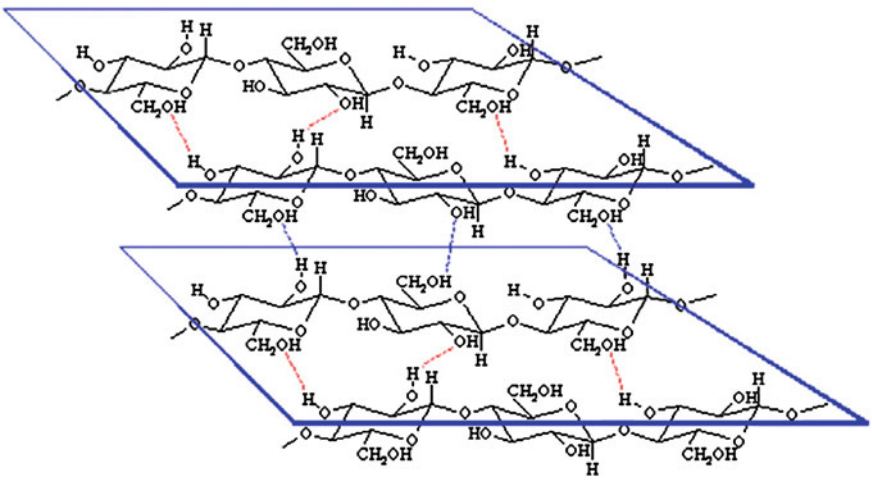


Fig. 1.2 Representation of the hydrogen bonding which allows the *parallel arrangement* of the cellulose polymer chains (Harmsen et al. 2010)

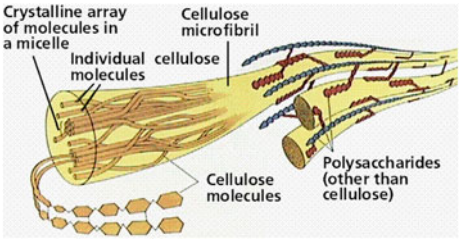


Fig. 1.3 Formation of microfibrils (fibers) of cellulose (Purves et al. 1995)

Cellulose is found in both crystalline and noncrystalline structures. The fusion of several polymer chains leads to the formation of microfibrils, which in turn are united to form fibers. In this way cellulose can obtain a crystalline structure (Fig. 1.3).

1.2.1.2 Hemicelluloses

Polyoses are the linking material between cellulose and lignin. Unlike cellulose, hemicelluloses consist of different monosaccharide units. In addition, the polymer chains of hemicelluloses have short branches and are amorphous. Because of the amorphous morphology, hemicelluloses are partially soluble or swell in water. The backbone of the chains of hemicelluloses can be a homopolymer (generally consisting of single sugar repeat unit) or a heteropolymer (mixture of different sugars). Formulas of the sugar component of hemicelluloses are listed in Fig. 1.5. Among the most important sugars of hemicelluloses component is xylose. In hardwood xylan, the backbone chain consists of xylose units which are linked by β-(1, 4)-glycosidic bonds and branched by β-(1, 2)-glycosidic bonds with 4-O-methyl glucuronic acid groups. In addition, O-acetyl groups sometimes replace the OH groups in positions C2 and C3 (Fig. 1.4). This leads to the lack of crystalline structure (Kirk-Othmer 2001). For softwood xylan, the acetyl groups are fewer in the backbone chain. However, softwood xylan has additional branches consisting of arabinofuranose units linked by β-(1, 3)-glycosidic bonds to the backbone (Fig. 1.4).

1.2.1.3 Lignin

By contrast, Lignin is a three-dimensional polyphenolic network built of dimethoxylated (syringyl), monomethoxylated (guaiacyl), and nonmethoxylated (p-hydroxyphenil) phenylpropanoid units, derived from the corresponding p-hydroxycinnamyl alcohols, which give rise to a variety of subunits including different ether and C–C bonds. Lignin is hydrophobic and highly resistant toward chemical and biological degradation. It is located in the middle lamella, acting as cement between the plant cells, and in the layers of the cell wall, forming, together with hemicellulose, an amorphous matrix in which the

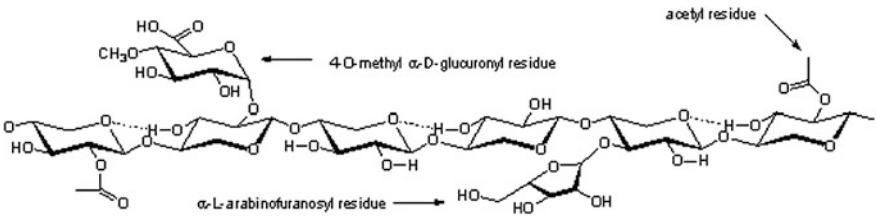


Fig. 1.4 Schematic representation of the hemicellulose backbone (Harmsen et al. 2010)

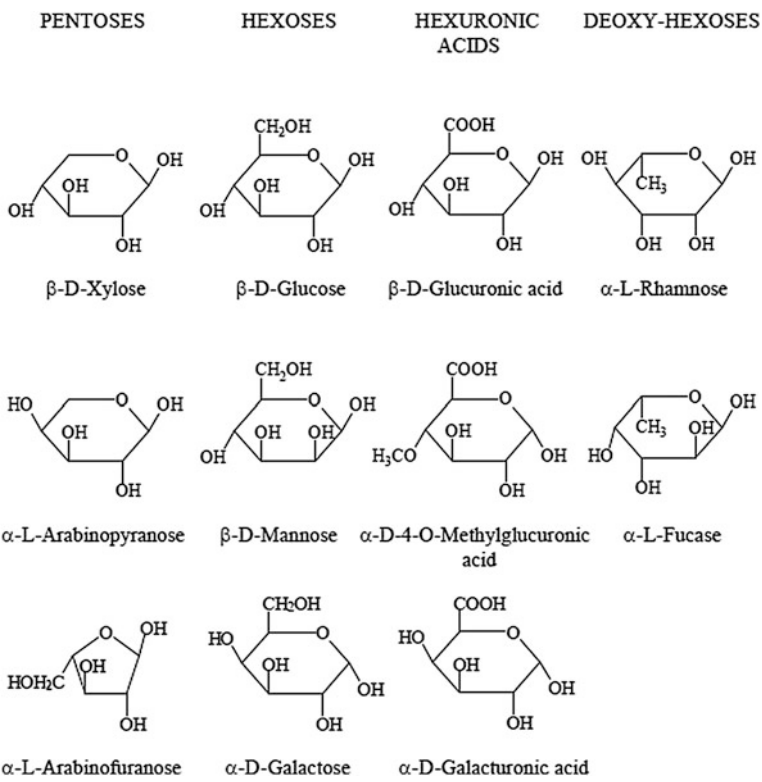


Fig. 1.5 Formulas of the sugar component of hemicelluloses (Mustafa et al. 2009)

cellulose fibrils are embedded and protected against biodegradation. Lignin content and composition vary among different plant groups. Moreover, the lignin composition varies between the different wood tissues and cell wall layers. The monomeric building units of lignin are shown in Fig. 1.6. The guaiacyl unit is dominant in the softwoods. In contrast, syringyl units are dominant in hardwoods (Kirk-Othmer 2001) (Fig. 1.7)

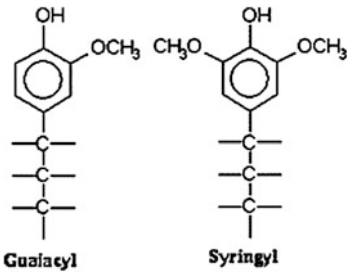


Fig. 1.6 The monomeric building units of lignin (Mustafa et al. 2009)

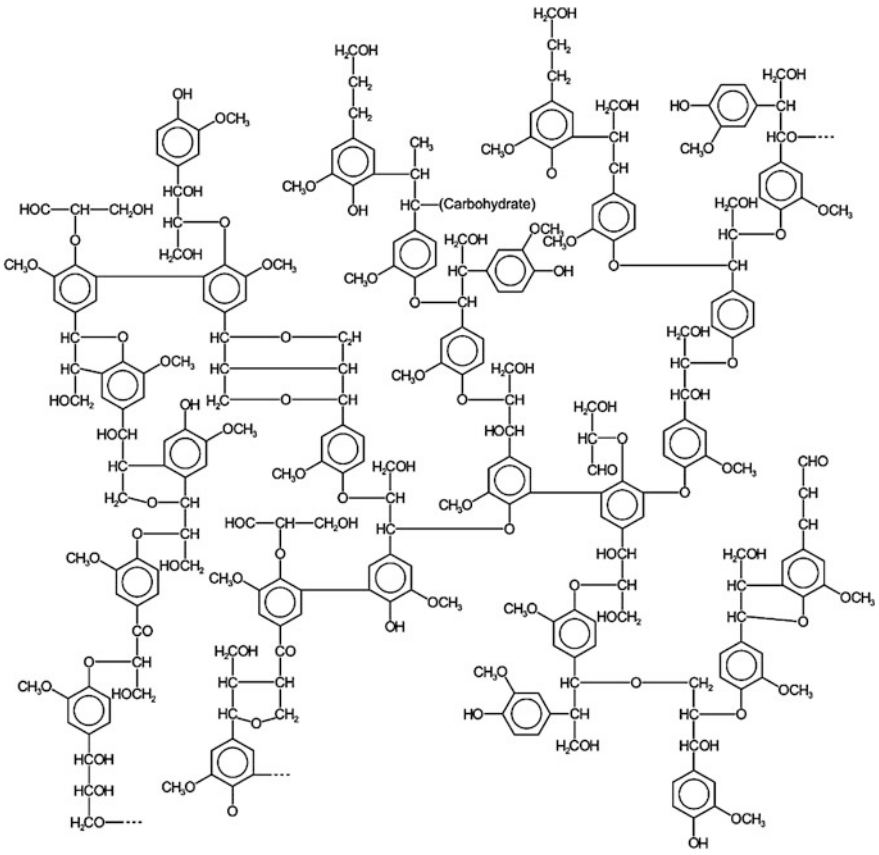


Fig. 1.7 Structure of lignin (Glazer et al. 1995)

Table 1.2 Overview of linkages between the monomer units and polymers to form lignocellulose (Harmsen et al. 2010)

Bonds within different components (*intrapolymer linkages*)	
Ether bond	Lignin, (hemi)cellulose
Carbon to carbon	Lignin
Hydrogen bond	Cellulose
Ester bond	Hemicellulose
Bonds connecting different components (*interpolymer linkages*)	
Ether bond	Cellulose-lignin
	Hemicellulose lignin
Ester bond	Hemicellulose-lignin
Hydrogen bond	Cellulose-hemicellulose
	Hemicellulose-lignin
	Cellulose-lignin

1.2.1.4 Chemical Characteristics

There are four main types of bonds recognized in the lignocellulosic complex. They are (1) Ether, (2) Ester, (3) Carbon-to-carbon, and (4) Hydrogen bonds. These four bonds are the major types of bonds that provide linkages within (intrapolymer linkages), and between the different components of lignocellulosic material to form complex (interpolymer) linkages (Table 1.2) (Faulon et al. 1994).

1.2.1.5 Intrapolymer Linkages

The main types of bonds that connect the building molecules within the lignin polymer are ether bonds and carbon-to-carbon bonds. Ether bonds may appear between allylic and aryl carbon atoms, or between aryl and aryl carbon atoms, or even between two allylic carbon atoms. The total fraction of ether-type bonds in the lignin molecule is around 70 % of the total bonds between the monomer units. The carbon-to-carbon linkages form the remaining 30 % of the total bonds between the units. They can also appear between two aryl carbon atoms or two allylic carbon atoms, or between one aryl and one allylic carbon atom (Kirk-Othmer 2001).

The polymer of cellulose is formed on the basis of two main linkages, the glucosidic linkage and the hydrogen bond.

The glucosidic linkage is one that forms the initial polymer chain. More specifically, it is a 1–4 β D-glucosidic bond that connects the glucose units together. The glucosidic bond can also be considered as an ether bond, since it is in fact the connection between two carbon atoms with an elementary oxygen interfering (Solomon 1988).

The hydrogen bond is considered to be responsible for the crystalline fibrous structure of cellulose. The arrangement of the polymer in long straight parallel

chains together with the fact that the hydroxyl groups are evenly distributed on both sides of the glucose monomer, allow the formation of hydrogen bond between two hydroxyl groups of different polymer chains (Faulon et al. 1994).

1.2.1.6 Interpolymer Linkages

Lignocellulosic complex break down by using different methods (Franklin 1988); they are broken down and the individual components are separated in order to know their interactions. However, their separation modifies their original structure. As a result, there is no clear conclusion on the interpolymer linkages. Faulon et al. (1994) projected a three-dimensional model using molecular mechanics and dynamics in order to understand the organization of these polymers. According to this model, It has been identified that hydrogen bonds not only present between cellulose and hemicelluloses, but also connect lignin with cellulose and hemicellulose. Furthermore, the existence of covalent bonds between lignin and polysaccharides has been identified by examining the ester bonds between lignin and hemicelluloses. There is no clear evidence whether the ether bonds are formed between lignin and cellulose, or hemicelluloses. Hemicellulose lacks primary alcohol functional group external to the pyranoside ring due to this hydrogen linkage being weak between cellulose and hemicelluloses.

1.3 Pretreatment Methods and Associated Challenges

Pretreatment is an important first step for practical cellulose conversion processes, and is required to alter the structure of lignocellulosic biomass to make cellulose more accessible to the enzymes that convert the carbohydrate polymers into fermentable sugars as represented in the schematic diagram in Fig. 1.8. The goal is to break the lignin seal and disrupt the crystalline structure of cellulose. Pretreatment is considered as one of the most expensive processing steps in cellulosic biomass-to-fermentable sugars conversion with costs as high as 30$/gallon ethanol produced. Pretreatment also has great potential for improvement of efficiency and

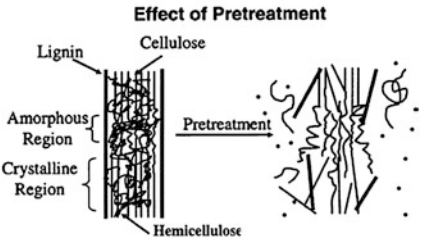


Fig. 1.8 Schematic representation of the effect of pretreatment (Hsu et al. 1980; Mosier et al. 2005)

lowering of cost through research and development (Lynd et al. 1996; Lee et al. 1994; Kohlmann et al. 1995; Mosier et al. 2003a, b).

The following consequences during pretreatment process lead to an improvement in (enzymatic) hydrolysis of lignocellulosic material in order to produce bioethanol:

1. Increase in the surface area and porosity.
2. Modification of lignin structure.
3. Removal of lignin.
4. (Partial) depolymerization of hemicellulose.
5. Removal of hemicellulose.
6. Reduction of the crystallinity of cellulose.

The most Important and current challenges of current pretreatment technologies are choosing the economic pretreatment technique with low enzymatic hydrolysis inhibitors formation. Pretreatment technologies are diverse and numerous, but can be categorized into four main groups (Sun and Cheng 2002).

- Physical/Mechanical pretreatment:
  - Milling
  - Ultrasonic
- Physicochemical pretreatment:
  - Steam explosion
  - Ammonia fiber explosion (AFEX)
  - CO_2 explosion
- Chemical pretreatment:
  - Ozonolysis
  - Acid hydrolysis (dilute acid)
  - Alkaline hydrolysis
  - Oxidative delignification
  - Organosolv process
- Biological pretreatment.

1.3.1 Physical/Mechanical Pretreatment

1.3.1.1 Milling

Reduction in size increases the surface/volume ratio of a spherical particle. This can be done by milling or grinding. Mechanical pretreatment is usually carried out before a following processing step, and the desired particle size is reliant on the subsequent steps. For mechanical pretreatment, factors such as operating costs, capital costs, scale-up possibilities, and depreciation of equipment, are very important.

1.3.1.2 Ultrasonic Pretreatment

This process is widely used for the treatment of sludge from wastewater treatment plants. An experiment on carboxyl methyl cellulose (CMC), with energy by irradiation, increased the rate of the succeeding enzymatic hydrolysis to approximately 200 % (Imai et al. 2004). The mechanism of action, however, remains unknown. One approximation is that the hydrogen bonds of the cellulose crystalline structure were broken due to irradiation energy which is higher than the hydrogen bond energy (Bochek 2003).

1.3.2 Chemical Pretreatment

Pure chemicals or combination of chemicals used as the catalyst in order to mediate the pretreatment.

1.3.2.1 Liquid Hot Water

Hydrolysis using liquid hot water (LHW) is also known as hydrothermolysis, hydrothermal pretreatment, aqueous fractionation, solvolysis, or aquasolv (Mosier et al. 2005). In this process, biomass is pretreated with water at high temperature and pressure. In solvolysis hot compressed water contacts with biomass for up to 15 min at temperatures of 200–230 °C. Between 40 and 60 % of the total biomass is dissolved in the process, with 4–22 % of the cellulose, 35–60 % of the lignin, and all of the hemicellulose being removed. The resulting liquid yields over 90 % of the hemicellulose recovered as monomeric sugars when hydrolyzed with acid. In addition, formation of acetic acid during the treatment catalyzes the polysaccharide hydrolysis leading to the formation of monomeric sugars that may further decompose to furfural which is an inhibitor to fermentation. The amount of sugars released from this method will depend upon the type of biomass and lignin ratio in the overall biomass composition (Mok and Antal 1992).

1.3.2.2 Weak Acid Hydrolysis

Dilute acid treatment is one of the most efficient pretreatment methods for lignocellulosic biomass. Generally there are two types of weak acid hydrolysis:

1. High temperature and continuous flow process for low-solids loading ($T > 160$ °C, 5–10 wt % substrate concentration).
2. Low temperature and batch process for high-solids loading ($T \leq 160$ °C, 10–40 % substrate concentration).

Dilute (mostly sulphuric) acid is mixed with the raw material and the mixture is held at 160–220 °C for short periods for a few minutes. Hydrolysis of hemicellulose occurs, releasing monomeric sugars and soluble oligomers into the hydrolysates. Removal of hemicellulose increases porosity and improves enzymatic hydrolysis and almost completely removes the hemicellulose (Chen et al. 2007). The hemicellulose monomeric sugars might be further degraded to furfural and hydroxymethyl furfural (HMF), strong inhibitors to microbial fermentation. As an alternative to inorganic acids, organic acids (e.g., maleic acid, fumaric acid, and oxalic acid) can be used for dilute acid pretreatment, which neither promotes the degradation of free sugars nor to furfural and HMF (Kootstra et al. 2009; Lee et al. 2010). The treatment offers good performance in terms of recovering hemicellulose sugars; however, there are also some drawbacks that acids can be corrosive and neutralization results in the formation of solid waste. The method is especially suitable for biomass with low lignin content, as almost no lignin is removed from the biomass.

1.3.2.3 Strong Acid Hydrolysis

Hydrolysis using concentrated acid for producing sugars and ethanol from lignocellulosic biomass has been reported since 1883 (Harris 1949). The concentrated acid disrupts the hydrogen bonding among the cellulose chains, converting it into a completely amorphous state. Once the cellulose has been decrystallized, it forms a homogeneous gelatin with the acid. The cellulose is extremely susceptible to hydrolysis at this point. Thus, dilution with water at modest temperatures provides complete and rapid hydrolysis to glucose, with little degradation. Apart from hydrolysis, use of concentrated sulfuric acid is widely accepted as a test method for quantifying the potential glucose content of cellulose (Fan et al. 1987) and for quantifying the lignin content. Concentrated strong acids such as H_2SO_4 and HCl have been widely used for treating lignocellulosic materials (Sun and Cheng 2002), and no enzymes are needed subsequent to the acid hydrolysis. The advantages of concentrated acid hydrolysis are the suppleness in terms of feedstock choice, high monomeric sugar yield, as well as mild temperature conditions that are needed. But concentrated acids are corrosive in nature and recycling of acids is required in order to lower cost. There have been significant efforts for commercializing strong acid hydrolysis processes of lignocellulosic biomass for microbial fermentation purposes (BlueFire Ethanol 2010; Biosulfurol 2010).

1.3.2.4 Alkaline Hydrolysis

The major consequence after alkaline pretreatment is the removal of lignin from the biomass based on saponification of intermolecular ester bonds cross-linking xylan hemicelluloses and other components such as lignin (Sun and Cheng 2002), thereby improving the digestibility of the residual polysaccharides. In addition,

acetyl and various uronic acid substitutions on hemicellulose were removed by alkali treatment that lowers the accessibility of the enzyme to the hemicellulose and cellulose surfaces (Chang and Holtzapple 2000).

a. **Calcium or sodium hydroxide**

Usually lime (calcium hydroxide) or sodium hydroxide is used. Salts are formed during the treatment which can be included in the biomass and need to be removed or recycled (González et al. 1986). Process conditions are relatively soft but reaction times can be longer about 3–13 h (Kim and Holtzapple 2006). These mild conditions prevent condensation of lignin, improve lignin solubility, and particularly biomass with low lignin content. Due to the mild conditions, degradation of sugars to furfural, HMF, and organic acids is limited. The addition of air or oxygen to the reaction mixture greatly improves the delignification, with highly lignified materials (Chang and Holtzapple 2000).

b. **Ammonia**

Pretreatment of biomass with aqueous ammonia at elevated temperatures reduces lignin content and removes some hemicellulose while decrystallizing cellulose. Ammonia pretreatment techniques include the AFEX-method, ammonia recycle percolation (ARP), and soaking in aqueous ammonia (SAA).

AFEX is discussed under physicochemical pretreatment (Sect. 1.3.2.5). In ARP, the biomass is packed in a column reactor and pretreated with aqueous ammonia in a flow-through reactor at high temperature. To avoid flash evaporation the reactor system must be slightly pressurized (e.g. 2.3 MPa) (Kim et al. 2003; Kim and Lee 2005). After reaction, the solid fraction is separated from liquid, which is rich in cellulose and hemicellulose. For recovery of ammonia liquid fraction is sent into a steam-heated evaporator. After that lignin and other sugars get separated. Ammonia is then recycled to the reactor inlet, whereas the separated fraction is sent into a crystallizer. After crystallization, a washing step is carried out in order to extract the sugars that have been retained in the solid residuals.

SAA at low temperature removes efficiently the lignin by minimizing the interaction with hemicellulose. This results in increase in surface area and pore size. Consequently, retained hemicellulose and cellulose can be hydrolyzed to fermentable sugars by microbial cellulase and hemicellulases. SAA was used (Kim et al. 2008) to destarch the barley hull which was treated with 15–30 % aqueous ammonia (solid-to-liquid ratio 1:12) at 30–75 °C for 12 h to 77 days with no agitation. After soaking, the solids were recovered by filtrating, washed, and analyzed. As a result, they obtained 66 % of lignin solubilization and observed saccharification yields of 83 % for glucan and 63 % for xylan when treating biomass with 15 % aqueous ammonia at 75 °C during 48 h.

c. **Organosolv**

The organosolv process was originally developed as an alternative pulping process for paper making (Kleinert and Tayenthal 1931; Pye and Lora 1991). Since then it has been demonstrated as a potential and promising pretreatment

strategy for lignocellulosic materials and successfully applied for biomass fractionation/pretreatment (Papatheofanous et al. 1995). First, the lignocellulosic biomass is separated into its three main constituents (cellulose, hemicellulose, and lignin). Second, by fractionation and the treatment during organosolv, the cellulose fraction can be made more susceptible for enzymatic hydrolysis to fermentable sugars. Organosolv processes use an organic solvent or mixtures of organic solvents with water for removal of lignin before enzymatic hydrolysis of the cellulose fraction. In addition to lignin removal, hemicellulose hydrolysis occurs leading to improved enzymatic digestibility of the cellulose fraction. High yield of xylose can usually be obtained with the addition of acids such as HCl, H_2SO_4, oxalic, or salicylic acids. Common solvents for the process include ethanol, methanol, acetone, and ethylene glycol, tetrahydrofurfuryl alcohol, and so on. (Zhao et al. 2009) (Temperatures used for the process can be >200 °C, but lower temperatures (120–200 °C) can be sufficient depending on the type of biomass and the use of a catalyst (Ghose et al. 1983)). The solvent must be removed prior to fermentation, because the solvent itself can be an inhibitor for the enzymatic hydrolysis and the fermentation step. Generally, it is removed by evaporation and condensation, removal and recovery of the solvent is required for reducing its cost and environmental impact as well. Normally, low-molecular weight alcohols with lower boiling points such as ethanol and methanol are economically favored (Alvira et al. 2010).

Benefits of organosolv pretreatment include:

- Lowering the enzyme costs improved production of cellulose.
- More absorption of cellulase enzymes.
- Recovery of high-quality lignin, which make it possible to produce higher value derivate chemicals of lignin.
- Minimum cellulose loss.

d. **Oxidative delignification**

Delignification of lignocellulose can also be achieved by treatment with an oxidizing agent such as hydrogen peroxide, ozone, oxygen, or air. Lignin biodegradation could be catalyzed by the peroxidase enzyme with the presence of H_2O_2 (Azzam 1989). The pretreatment of cane bagasse with hydrogen peroxide greatly enhanced its susceptibility to enzymatic hydrolysis. About 50 % of the lignin and most of the hemicellulose were solubilized by 2 % H_2O_2 at 30 °C within 8 h, and 95 % efficiency of glucose production from cellulose was achieved in the subsequent saccharification by cellulase at 45 °C for 24 h (Azzam 1989).

Wet oxidation was successfully applied for the treatment of lignocellulosic material (Schmidt and Thomsen 1998; Bjerre et al. 1996). In recent studies on alkaline wet oxidation of wheat straw, the main degradation products found from hemicellulose and lignin were carboxylic acids, CO_2, and H_2O. Compared to other pretreatment processes, wet oxidation proved to be efficient for treating lignocellulosic materials, because the crystalline structure of cellulose is open during the process (Panagiotou and Olsson 2007).

e. **Ionic liquids (ILs)**

The use of Ionic liquids (ILs) as solvents for pretreatment of cellulosic biomass has recently received much attention. ILs are salts that are in liquid phase typically at temperatures below 100 °C. Different kinds of ILs with common characteristics are available; which is that they usually comprise an inorganic anion and an organic cation of very heterogeneous molecular structure. The difference in the molecular structure renders the bonding of the ions weak enough for the salt to appear as liquid at room temperature (Van Rantwijk 2003). They do not produce any toxic or explosive gases so they are known as "green" solvents. ILs form hydrogen bonds between the nonhydrated chloride ions of the IL and the sugar hydroxyl protons, thus leading to disruption of the complex network of noncovalent interactions among the polymers cellulose, hemicelluloses, and lignin. Recently, a few studies demonstrated the IL pretreatment on wheat straw (Li et al. 2009) and wood (Lee et al. 2009). There is no toxicity effect observed on the growth of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* grown on the IL (1-ethyl-3-methyl imidazolium diethyl phosphate) treated wheat straw (Li et al. 2009). Only limited information is available on the different ILs and their effects and further research is needed to improve the economics of ILs pretreatment and their recycle.

1.3.2.5 Physicochemical pretreatment

These methods combine mechanical and chemical actions. To this group belong the following pretreatments:

a. **Steam explosion**

Steam explosion (uncatalyzed or catalyzed) is one of the most applied pretreatment processes owing to its low use of chemicals and limited energy consumption. In this method, high-pressure saturated steam is injected into a batch or continuous reactor filled with biomass. During the steam injection, the temperature rises to 160–260 °C. Subsequently, pressure is suddenly reduced and the biomass undergoes an explosive decompression with hemicellulose degradation and lignin matrix disruption as result. Results of steam explosion pretreatment depend on residence time, temperature, particle size, and moisture content (Sun and Cheng 2002).

Studies have been carried out to try to improve the results of steam explosion by addition of chemicals such as acid or alkali (Cara et al. 2008; Stenberg et al. 1998; Zimbardi et al. 2007). In a recent study, steam explosion treatment was optimized at the batch scale on the basis of carbohydrate recovery for wheat, barley, and oat straws. The yields of fodder, lignin, and hemicellulose were found to be dependent on the nature of the starting straw. Delignified fodder (insoluble fraction) was produced with yields of 0.64, 0.59, and 0.55 from wheat, barley, and oat straw, respectively. Steam explosion improved the digestibility of the straw by 25 % (Viola et al. 2008). Limitations of steam explosion include the formation of degradation products that may inhibit downstream processes (Garcia-Aparicio et al. 2006).

b. **AFEX**

AFEX is a physicochemical pretreatment process in which lignocellulosic biomass is exposed to liquid ammonia at high temperature and pressure for a period of time, and then the pressure is suddenly reduced. The AFEX process is similar to steam explosion. In a typical AFEX process, the dosage of liquid ammonia is 1–2 kg of ammonia/kg of dry biomass, the temperature is 90 °C, and the residence time is 30 min. (Teymouri et al. 2005). It reduces the lignin content and removes some hemicellulose while decrystallizing cellulose. The cost of ammonia and especially of ammonia recovery drives the cost of the pretreatment (Holtzapple et al. 1994), although ammonia is easily recovered due to its volatility.

c. **CO2 explosion**

This method is similar to steam and ammonia fiber explosion; high pressure CO_2 (supercritical) explosion is injected into the batch reactor, and then liberated by an explosive decompression. It is believed that CO_2 reacts to carbonic acid (carbon dioxide in water). Carbon dioxide molecules are comparable in size to water and ammonia, and are usually able to penetrate small pores accessible to water and ammonia molecules, thereby improving the hydrolysis rate. Yields of CO_2 explosion are lower than those obtained with steam or ammonia explosion, but they are higher than those reached with enzymatic hydrolysis without pretreatment (Sun and Cheng, 2002). Due to low temperature, utilization cost of this process is potentially lower compared to ammonia explosion. Low temperature also prevents decomposition of monosaccharides by the acid.

Explosive release of the carbon dioxide pressure and the disruption of the cellulosic structure increases the accessible surface area of the substrate to hydrolysis (Sahle et al. 1995; Kim and Hong 2001).

1.3.3 Biological Pretreatment

Most pretreatment technologies require exclusive and expensive instruments or equipment that have high energy requirements, depending on the process. In particular, physical and thermochemical processes require abundant energy for biomass conversion. Biological treatment using various types of rot fungi, a safe and environmentally friendly method, is increasingly being advocated as a process that does not require high energy for lignin removal from a lignocellulosic biomass, despite extensive lignin degradation (Okano et al. 2005).

In biological pretreatment processes, microorganisms such as brown-, white-, and soft-rot fungi are used to degrade lignin and hemicellulose in waste materials (Galbe and Zacchi 2007). Brown rots mainly attack cellulose, whereas white and soft rots attack both cellulose and lignin. Lignin degradation by white-rot fungi occurs through the action of lignin-degrading peroxidases and laccase (Lee et al. 2007). These enzymes are regulated by carbon and nitrogen sources. White-rot

fungi are the most effective for biological pretreatment of lignocellulosic materials (Fan et al. 1987). An extensive range of studies has been carried out on the pretreatment of wheat straw by 19 white-rot fungi (Hatakka 1983).

The white-rot fungus *P. chrysosporium* produces lignin degrading enzymes, lignin peroxidases, and manganese-dependent peroxidases, during secondary metabolism, in response to carbon or nitrogen limitation (Boominathan and Reddy 1992). Both enzymes have been found in the extracellular filtrates of many white-rot fungi for the degradation of wood cell walls (Kirk and Farrell 1987; Waldner et al. 1988). Singh et al. (2008) evaluated eight bioagents, including fungi and bacteria, for their pretreatment effects on sugarcane trash. They narrowed down the C/N ratio of trash from 108:1 to a varying range from approximately 42:1–60:1. The maximum drop in C/N ratio of 61 % was observed using *Aspergillus terreus*, followed by those obtained using *Cellulomonas uda* (52 %) and *Trichoderma reesei* and *Zymomonas mobiliz* (49 %). The C/N ratio is important for biomass pretreatment, because degradation of lignocellulosic material depends on the material's C/N ratio. To degrade each molecule of carbon, a definite proportion of nitrogen is required by the microorganisms, and this varies with different kinds of micro flora. Fungi have a higher C/N ratio (30:1) as compared to bacteria (10:1); hence, fungi are more capable of degrading any lignocellulosic material, as their dependency on nitrogen is comparatively lower (Wichern et al. 2004). Report by Ravichandra et al. (2012) on the microbial and cell free hydrolysis of corncobs using *P. chrysosporium* has shown the efficient release of sugars (424.50 mg/2 g for 120 h and 395.15 mg/2 g for 48 h).

1.3.3.1 Cellulase Producing Microorganisms

Cellulase producing microorganisms primarily depend upon simple carbohydrates and are unable to use complex components like lipids and proteins for energy generation (Lynd et al. 2002). Some of the cellulolytic bacteria, *cellulomonas* and *cytophyga*, depends upon a variety of carbohydrates in addition to the cellulose (Poulsen and Petersen 1988; Rajoka and Malik 1997). In contrast to anaerobic, cellulolytic species have narrow carbohydrate range and limited cellulose and its hydrolytic products (Sukumaran et al. 2005). Large-scale production of cellulase was achieved by certain fungi which secrete large amounts of extracellular protein as cellulase. The most extensively studied cellulolytic microorganisms are *Trichoderma, Pencelluim, Humicola, and Aspergillus*; Bacteria: *Bacilli, Pseudomonas, Celluluomonas* and Actinomycetes, *Actinomucor; Streptomyces sp.* Commercial production of cellulase is limited to some species like *T. ressi* and few other *species.* Some cellulase producing microorganisms are listed in Table 1.3.

In addition to cellulose degrading, some white fungi (*P. chrysosporium*) can also produce lignin peroxidases to degrade lignin. *P. chrysosporium* produces complex arrays of cellulases, hemicellulases, and lignin-degrading enzymes for the efficient degradation of all three major components of plant cell walls: cellulose, hemicellulose, and lignin (Broda et al. 1994; Copa-Patino et al. 1993; Covert et al.

Table 1.3 Major cellulase producing microorganisms

Group	Microorganism	Reference
Fungi	*Acremonium cellulolyticus*	Tatsuya et al. (2009)
	Aspergillus acculeatus	Sawao et al. (1988)
	Aspergillus fumigatus	Dongyang et al. (2011)
	Aspergillus niger	Acharya et al. (2008)
	Fusarium solani	Wood (1971)
	Irpex lacteus	Eiichi et al. (1993)
	Penicillium funmiculosum	Van Wyk (1999)
	Phanerochaete chrysosporium	István et al. (1996); Henriksson et al. (1999); Potumarthi et al. 2013)
	Schizophyllum commune	Steiner et al. (1987)
	Sclerotium rolfsii	Lachke and Deshpande (1988)
	Sporotrichum cellulophilum	Henri (1984); Shinichi et al. (1986)
	Talaromyces emersonii	Oso (1978)
	Thielavia terrestris	Henri (1984)
	Trichoderma koningii	Wood and McCrae (1978)
	Trichoderma reesei	Henri (1984); Van Wyk (1999); Tatsuya et al. (2009)
	Trichoderma viride	Beldman et al. (1985); Griffin et al. (1974)
Bacteria	*Clostridium thermocellum*	Thomas and Zeikus (1981)
	Ruminococcus albus	Leatherwood (1965)
Actinomycetes	*Streptomyces sp.*	Jang and Chang (2005)
	Thermoactinomyces sp.	Bärbel et al. (1978)
	Thermomonospora curvata	Fred (1971, 1972)

1992; Vanden et al. 1993). Cellulose and hemicellulose degradation occurs during primary metabolism, whereas lignin degradation is a secondary metabolic event triggered by limitation of carbon, nitrogen, or sulfur (Broda et al. 1996). During the growth on carbon or nitrogen limiting media ligninolytic activity is observed between 4 and 5 days. Whereas the nitrogen and carbohydrates were present in excess and sulfur was limited (20 μM), cultures became ligninolytic between 7 and 8 days. Sulfur concentration below this level (17 μM) did not trigger the lignin degradation due to poor growth (Thomas et al. 1981).

1.3.3.2 Bio Process for Cellulases: Fermentation, Production of Cellulolytic Enzymes

A majority of the reported work utilized submerged fermentation (SMF) in order to produce the cellulose; widely studied organisms are fungi *Trichoderma sp.* but

natural growth and cellulose utilization of anaerobic microorganism resembles solid-state fermentation (SSF), which led most of the investigators toward SSF. However, SMF has the advantage in terms of better handling and monitoring of microorganisms over SSF. Carbon source for the production of cellulase is primarily cellulosic biomass such as rice straw, rice husk, wheat bran, corncobs, bagasse, waste from paper industry, and other lignocellulosic materials (Hafedh et al. 2001; Reczey et al. 1996; Sukumaran et al. 2005). The cellulase producing process is primarily a batch process. There have been successful attempts to produce cellulase from batch (Hafedh et al. 2001; Ghose and Vikram 1979) and continuous mode (Bailey and Tähtiharju 2003) operation of reactors. This is helpful to overcome the repression mediated by reducing sugars. SSF for production of cellulase is gaining importance as it decreases the production cost of enzyme and also utilizes and converts the abundant, inexpensive, and renewable lignocellulosic biomass to valuable components. There is a 10-fold reduction in the production cost in SSF compared to SMF. There are also some reports with mixed cultures of *Trichoderma* and *Aspegillus* on SSF for production of cellulase (Maria et al. 1994; Jayant et al. 2011). Mixed culturing is found to be beneficial compared to single-culture for economic production of cellulase on nutritionally poor agricultural residues, without the need for expensive organic supplements (Marcel et al. 1999). The biomass productivity and enzyme productivity were also found to have improved to double that in the mixed-culture compared to the single-culture (Dueñas et al. 1995) operation.

1.4 Conclusions

Energy crisis and environmental pollution drive the scientific community toward the potential exploitation of lignocellulosic biomass which is widely available and relatively inexpensive. To crack their complex structures, various pretreatment technologies including biological, mechanical, chemical methods, and various other combinational methods are available. Biological pretreatments make use of lignocellulolytic microorganisms that degrade lignin and hemicellulose. Due to slow hydrolysis rate they are not fruitful. Mechanical methods (physical methods) reduce crystallinity and the particle size, and increase the surface/volume ratio, and thus it makes material handling simpler. However, these processes often require high energy and overheads. It shares more than 50 % of the production cost of bioethanol.

In chemical pretreatments chemicals such as alkalis, ozone, peroxide, or organic solvents effectively remove the lignin, consequently improving the enzymatic digestibility of cellulose. Pretreatments with acids affect the hydrolysis of hemicellulose and celluloses to sugars. A combination of mechanical and chemical treatment would give better results.

We cannot relate the best and common pretreatment method to all types of the lignocellulosic biomass. Mostly, it depends on the type of lignocellulosic biomass

under use and the desired final products. The final aim of pretreatments must be improvement in the hydrolysis rate of lignocellulosic biomass. Every pretreatment has its own effects on the cellulose, hemicellulose, and lignin fractions: Acid pretreatment acts on the hemicelluloses, whereas alkali and organosolv act on the lignin and organosolv treatment completely, removing the lignin and improving the cellulose accessibility. In contrast to these methods, biological pretreatment can act effectively on pretreated lignocellulosic materials or moderately on non-treated materials. For the production of ethanol at the industrial level, acid-based pretreatment methods are widely used. However, there is an unmet need to research and improve these pretreatment processes. The challenges to overcome include minimization of sugar loss; limit the production of inhibitors during pretreatment, increase the solids concentration, and decrease the water utilization. Last but not the least, there are needs to develop tailor-made effective pretreatment methods for different types of lignocellulosic biomass.

References

Acharya PB, Acharya DK, Modi HA (2008) Optimization for cellulase production by *Aspergillus niger* using saw dust as substrate. Afr J Biotechnol 7(22):4147–4152

Alvira P, Tomás PE, Ballesteros M, Negro MJ (2010) Pretreatment technologies for an efficient bioethanol production process based on enzymatic hydrolysis: a review. Bioresour Technol 101:4851–4861

Azzam M (1989) Pretreatment of cane bagasse with alkaline hydrogen peroxide for enzymatic hydrolysis of cellulose and ethanol fermentation. J Environ Sci Health B 24(4):421–433

Bailey MJ, Tähtiharju J (2003) Efficient cellulase production by *Trichoderma reesei* in continuous cultivation on lactose medium with a computer-controlled feeding strategy. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 62(2–3):156–162

Bärbel GRH, John DF, Kendall PE (1978) Cellulolytic enzyme system of *Thermoactinomyces* sp. grown on microcrystalline cellulose. Appl Environ Microbiol 36(4):606–612

Beldman G, Searle-Van Leeuwen MF, Rombouts FM, Voragen FG (1985) The cellulase of Trichoderma viride. Purification, characterization and comparison of all detectable endoglucanases, exoglucanases and beta-glucosidases. Eur J Biochem 146(2):301–308

Biosulfurol (2010) http://biosulfurol-energy.com

Bjerre AB, Olesen AB, Fernqvist T (1996) Pretreatment of wheat straw using combined wet oxidation and alkaline hydrolysis resulting in convertible cellulose and hemicellulose. Biotechnol Bioeng 49:568–577

Blue fire ethanol (2010) http://bluefireethanol.com

Bochek AM (2003) Effect of hydrogen bonding on cellulose solubility in aqueous and nonaqueous solvents. Russ J Appl Chem 76(11):1711–1719

Boominathan K, Reddy CA (1992) cAMP-mediated differential regulation of lignin peroxidase and manganese-dependent peroxidases production in the white-rot basidiomycete *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 89(12):5586–5590

Bothwell B, Edward MWS, Andre PCF (2012) In: Janssen R, Rutz D (eds) New conversion technology for liquid biofuels production in Africa. Bioenergy for Sustainable Development in Africa, p 117–130

Bozell JJ (2001) Chemicals and materials from renewable resources. In: Bozell JJ (ed) Chemicals and materials from renewable resources, Washington, DC: ACS Symposium Series; American Chemical Society, p 1–9

BP statistical review of world energy June (2011) Available at http://www.bp.com/assets/bp_internet/globalbp/globalbp_uk_english/reports_and_publications/statistical_energy_review_2011/STAGING/local_assets/pdf/statistical_review_of_world_energy_full_report_2011.pdf. Accessed 30 Jan 2011

Broda P, Birch P, Brooks P, Copa-Patino JL, Sinnott ML, Tempelaars C, Wang Q, Wyatt A, Sims P (1994) *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* and its natural substrate. FEMS Microbiol Rev 13:189–196

Broda P, Birch PR, Brooks PR, Sims PF (1996) Lignocellulose degradation by *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*: gene families and gene expression for a complex process. Mol Microbiol 19:923–932

Cara C, Ruiz E, Mercedes B, Paloma M, Ma JN, Eulogio C (2008) Production of fuel ethanol from steam-explosion pretreated olive tree pruning. Fuel 87(6):692–700

Chang VS, Holtzapple MT (2000) Fundamental factors affecting biomass enzymatic reactivity. Appl Biochem Biotech 84–86:5–37

Chen M, Zhao J, Xia L (2009) Comparison of four different chemical pretreatments of corn stover for enhancing enzymatic digestibility. Biomass Bioenerg 33:1381–1385

Chen Y, Sharma-Shivappa R, Deepak K, Chen C (2007) Potential of agricultural residues and hay for bioethanol production. Appl Biochem Biotech 142(3):276–290

CO_2 Emissions from fuel combustion: Highlights; International Energy Agency statistics 2011. Available at http://www.iea.org/co2highlights/CO2highlights.pdf. Accessed 30 Jan 2011

Copa-Patino JL, Young GK, Broda P (1993) Production and initial characterization of the xylan-degrading system of *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 40:69–76

Covert SF, Vanden WA, Cullen D (1992) Structure, organization, and transcription of a cellobiohydrolase gene cluster from *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*. Appl Environ Microbiol 58:2168–2175

Dongyang L, Ruifu Z, Xingming Y, Hongsheng W, Dabing X, Zhu T, Qirong S (2011) Thermostable cellulase production of *Aspergillus fumigatus* Z5 under solid-state fermentation and its application in degradation of agricultural wastes. Int Biodeter Biodegr 65(5):717–725

Dueñas R, Tengerdy RP, Gutierrez CM (1995) Cellulase production by mixed fungi in solid-substrate fermentation of bagasse. World J Microb Biot 11(3):333–337

Durand H (1984) Comparative study of cellulases and hemicellulases from four fungi: mesophiles *Trichoderma reesei* and *Penicillium* sp. and thermophiles *Thielavia errestris* and *Sporotrichum cellulophilum.* Enzyme Microb Technol 6(4):175–180

Erdei B, Barta Z, Sipos B, Reczey K, Galbe M, Zacchi G (2010) Ethanol production from mixtures of wheat straw and wheat meal. Biotechnol Biofuels 3:16

Fan LT, Gharpuray MM, Lee YH (1987) Design and economic evaluation of cellulose hydrolysis processes in cellulose hydrolysis. Springer, New York, pp 169–187

Faulon JL, Carlson GA, Hatcher PG (1994) A three-dimensional model for lignocellulose from gymno-spermous wood. Org Geochem 21:1169–1179

Franklin EB (1988) Chemistry of lignocellulose: methods of analysis and consequences of structure. Anim Feed Sci Tech 21:279–286

Fred JS (1971) Cellulase Production by *Thermomonospora curvata* isolated from municipal solid waste compost. Appl Microbiol 22(2):147–152

Fred JS (1972) Cellulolytic activity of *Thermomonospora curvata*: optimal assay conditions, partial purification, and product of the cellulase. Appl Microbiol 24(1):83–90

Galbe M, Zacchi G (2007) Pretreatment of lignocellulosic materials for efficient bioethanol production. Adv Biochem Eng Biotechnol 108:41–65

Garcia-Aparicio MP, Ballesteros I, González A, Oliva JM, Ballesteros M, Negro MJ (2006) Effect of inhibitors released during steam-explosion pretreatment of barley straw on enzymatic hydrolysis. Appl Biochem Biotech 129(1–3):278–288

Ghose TK, Pannir Selvam PV, Ghosh P (1983) Catalytic solvent delignification of agricultural residues: organic catalysts. Biotechnol Bioeng 25(11):2577–2590

Ghose TK, Vikram S (1979) Production of cellulases by *Trichoderma reesei* QM 9414 in fed-batch and continuous-flow culture with cell cycle. Biotechnol Bioeng 21:283–296

Glazer AW, Nikaido H (1995) Microbial biotechnology: fundamentals of applied microbiology. Freeman WH (ed) San Francisco, p 340. ISBN 0-71672608-4

González G, López-Santín J, Caminal G, Solà C (1986) Dilute acid hydrolysis of wheat straw hemicellulose at moderate temperature: a simplified kinetic model. Biotechnol Bioeng 28(2):288–293

Griffin HL, Sloneker JH, Inglett GE (1974) Cellulase production by *Trichoderma viride* on feedlot waste. Appl Microbiol 27(6):1061–1066

Hafedh B, Semia EC, Ali G (2001) Biostoning of denims by *Penicillium occitanis* (Pol6) cellulases. J Biotechnol 89(2–3):257–262

Harmsen PFH, Huijen WJJ, Bermudez LLM, Bakker RRC (2010) Literature review of physical and chemical pretreatment processes for lignocellulosic biomass September 2010, Food and Biobased Research, Wageningen UR, P 1–49 ISBN: 9789085857570 http://www.ecn.nl/nl/. Accessed Jan 2012

Harris EE (1949) Wood saccharification in advances in carbohydrate chemistry, vol 4. Academic, New York, pp 153–188

Hatakka AI (1983) Pretreatment of wheat straw by white-rot fungi for enzymatic saccharification of cellulose. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 18:350–357

Holtzapple MT, Ripley EP, Nikolaou M (1994) Saccharification, fermentation, andprotein recovery from low-temperature AFEX-treated coastal bermudagrass.Biotechnol Bioeng 44(9):1122–1131

Hoshino E, Sasaki Y, Mori K, Okazaki M, Nisizawa K, Kanda T (1993) Electronmicroscopic observation of cotton cellulose degradation by Exo- and Endo-Typecellulases from Irpex lacteus. J Biochem 114(2):236–245

Henriksson G, Nutt A, Henriksson H, Pettersson B, Ståhlberg J, Johansson G, Pettersson G (1999) Endoglucanase 28 (Cel12A), a new *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* cellulase. Eur J Biochem 259(1–2):88–95

Hoshino E, Sasaki Y, Okazaki M, Nisizawa K, Kanda T (1993) Mode of action of exo- and endo-type cellulases from *Irpex lacteus* in the hydrolysis of cellulose with different crystallinities. J Biochem 114(2):230–235

Hsu TA, Ladisch MR, Tsao GT (1980) Alcohol from cellulose. ChemTech 10:315–319

Huang HJ, Ramaswamy S, Tschirner UW, Ramarao BV (2008) A review of separation technologies in current and future biorefineries. Sep Purif Technol 62:1–21

Imai M, Ikari K, Suzuki I (2004) High-performance hydrolysis of cellulose using mixed cellulase species and ultrasonication pretreatment. Biochem Eng J 17(2):79–83

István JS, Gunnar J, Göran P (1996) Optimized cellulase production by *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*: control of catabolite repression by fed-batch cultivation. J Biotechnol 48(3):221–230

Jang HD, Chang KS (2005) Thermostable cellulases from *Streptomyces* sp.: scale-up production in a 50-l fermenter. Biotechnol Lett 27(4):239–242

Jayant M, Rashmi J, Shailendra M, Deepesh Y (2011) Production of cellulase by different co-culture of *Aspergillus niger* and *Penicillium chrysogenum* from waste paper, cotton waste and bagasse. J Yeast Fungal Res 2(2):24–27

Kahar P, Taku K, Tanaka S (2010) Enzymatic digestion of corncobs pretreated with low strength of sulfuric acid for bioethanol production. J Biosci Bioeng 110:453–458

Ken-Lin C, Thitikorn-among J, Jung-Feng H, Bay-Ming O, Shan-He C, Ratanakhanokchai K (2011) Enhanced enzymatic conversion with freeze pretreatment of rice straw. Biomass Bioenergy 35:90–95

Kim KH, Hong J (2001) Supercritical CO_2 pretreatment of lignocellulose enhances enzymatic cellulose hydrolysis. Bioresour Technol 77(2):139–144

Kim S, Holtzapple MT (2006) Delignification kinetics of corn stover in lime pretreatment. Bioresource Technol 97:778

Kim TH, Lee YY (2005) Pretreatment of corn stover by soaking in aqueous ammonia. Appl Biochem Biotech 124(1–3):1119–1131

Kim TH, Taylor F, Hicks KB (2008) Bioethanol production from barley hull using SAA (soaking in aqueous ammonia) pretreatment. Bioresour Technol 99(13):5694–5702

Kim TH, Kim JS, Sunwoo C, Lee YY (2003) Pretreatment of corn stover by aqueous ammonia. Bioresour Technol 90(1):39–47

Kirk TK, Farrell RL (1987) Enzymatic combustion: the microbial degradation of lignin. Annu Rev Microbiol 41:465–505

Kirk-Othmer (2001) encyclopedia of chemical technology, Concise, 4th edn

Kleinert T, Tayenthal K (1931) Separation of cellulose and incrusting substances. Zeitschrift für Angewandte Chemie 44:788–791

Kohlmann KL, Sarikaya A, Westgate PJ, Weil J, Velayudhan A, Hendrickson R, Ladisch MR (1995) Enhanced enzyme activities on hydrated lignpcellulosic substrates. In: Saddler JN, Penner MH (eds) Enzymatic degradation of insoluble carbohydrates. ACS Publishing, pp 237–255

Kootstra AMJ, Beeftink HH, Scott EL, Sanders JPM (2009) Comparison of dilutemineral and organic acid pretreatment for enzymatic hydrolysis of wheat straw.Biochem Eng J 46(2):126–131

Leatherwood JM (1965) Cellulase from *Ruminococcus albus* and mixed rumen microorganisms. Appl Microbiol 13(5):771–775

Lee D, Yu AHC, Wong KKY, Saddler JR (1994) Evaluation of the enzymatic susceptibility of cellulosic substrates using specific hydrolysis rates and enzyme adsorption. Appl Biochem Biotech 45/45(1):407–415

Lee JW, Gwak KS, Park JY, Park MJ, Choi DH, Kwon M, Choi IG (2007) Biological pretreatment of softwood *Pinus densiflora* by three white rot fungi. J Microbiol 45(6):485–491

Lee JW, Rodrigues RC, Kim HJ, Choi IG, Jeffries TW (2010) The roles of xylan and lignin in oxalic acid pretreated corncob during separate enzymatic hydrolysis and ethanol fermentation. Bioresour Technol 101:4379–4385

Lee SH, Doherty TV, Linhardt RJ, Dordick JS (2009) Ionic liquid-mediated selective extraction of lignin from wood leading to enhanced enzymatic cellulose hydrolysis. Biotechnol Bioeng 102:1368–1376

Li Q, He YC, Xian M, Jun G, Xu X, Yang JM, Li LZ (2009) Improving enzymatichydrolysis of wheat straw using ionic liquid 1-ethyl-3-methyl imidazolium diethyl phosphate pretreatment. Bioresource Technol 100:3570–3575

Lynd LR, Eiander RT, Wyman CE (1996) Likely features and costs of mature biomass ethanol technology. Appl Biochem Biotech 57/58(1):741–761

Lynd LR, Paul JW, Willem HZ, Isak SP (2002) Microbial cellulose utilization: fundamentals and biotechnology. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 66:506–577

Marcel GC, Leticia P, Patricia M, Robert PT (1999) Mixed culture solid substrate fermentation of *Trichoderma reesei* with *Aspergillus niger* on sugar cane bagasse. Bioresour Technol 68(2):173–178

Maria RC, Marcel GC, James CL, Robert PT (1994) Mixed culture solid substrate fermentation for cellulolytic enzyme production. Biotechnology Lett 16:967–972

Michael JS, William SA, Michael EH, Stephen RD (2009) The impact of cell wall acetylation on corn stover hydrolysis by cellulolytic and xylanolytic enzymes. Cellulose 16:711–722

Miura S, Arimura T, Itoda N, Dwiarti L, Feng JB, Bin CH, Okabe M (2004) Production of L-Lactic acid from corncob. J Biosci Bioeng 97:153–157

Mok WSL, Antal MJ Jr (1992) Uncatalyzed solvolysis of whole biomass hemicellulose by hot compressed liquid water. Ind Eng Chem Res 31(4):1157

Mosier NS, Hendrickson R, Dreschel R, Welch G, Dien BS, Bothast R, Ladisch MR (2003a) Principles and economics of pretreating cellulose in water for ethanol production. Paper 103, BIOT Division, 225th American Chemical Society Meeting NewOrleans, 26 March 2003

Mosier NS, Hendrickson R, Welch G, Dreschel R, Dien B, Ladisch MR (2003b) Corn fiber pretreatment scale-up and evaluation in an industrial corn to ethanol facility. Paper 6A-04, 25th Symposium on Biotechnology for Fuels and Chemicals, Breckenridge, CO

Mosier N, Wyman C, Dale B, Elander R, Lee YY, Holtzapple M, Ladisch M (2005) Features of promising technologies for pretreatment of lignocellulosic biomass. Bioresour Technol 96(6):673–686

Mustafa B, Mehmet B, Elif K, Havva B (2009) Main routes for the thermo-conversion of biomass into fuels and chemicals. Part 1: Pyrolysis systems. Energ Convers Manage 50(12):3147–3157

Okano K, Kitagaw M, Sasaki Y, Watanabe T (2005) Conversion of Japanese red cedar (*Cryptomeria japonica*) into a feed for ruminants by white-rot basidiomycetes. Animal Feed Sci Technol 120:235–243

Oso BA (1978) The production of cellulase by *Talaromyces emersonii*. Mycologia 70(3):577–585

Panagiotou G, Olsson L (2007) Effect of compounds released during pretreatment of wheat straw on microbial growth and enzymatic hydrolysis rates. Biotechnol Bioeng 96(2):250–258

Papatheofanous MG, Billa E, Koullas DP, Monties B, Koukios EG (1995) Two stage acid-catalyzed fractionation of lignocellulosic biomass in aqueous ethanol systems at low temperatures. Bioresour Technol 54:305–310

Pedersen M, Johansen KS, Meyer AS (2011) Low temperature lignocelluloses pretreatment: effects and interactions of pretreatment pH are critical for maximizing enzymatic monosaccharide yields from wheat straw. Biotechnol Biofuels 4:11

Petermann A, Tokar B (2008) GE Trees, cellulosic ethanol, and thedestruction of forest biological diversity. Capitalism Nat Socialism 19(3):48–64

Pimentel D (2003) Ethanol fuels: energy balance, economics, and environmentalimpacts are Negative. Nat Resour Res 12(2):127–34

Potumarthi R, Baadhe RR, Nayak P, Jetty A (2013) One step biological retreatment of rice husk by Phanerochaete chrysosporium for the production of reducing sugars. Bioresource Technol 128:113–117

Poulsen OM, Petersen LW (1988) Growth of *Cellulomonas sp*. ATCC 21399 on different polysaccharides as sole carbon source Induction of extracellular enzymes. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 29(5):480–484

Prasad S, Singh A, Joshi HC (2007) Ethanol as an alternative fuel from agricultural, industrial and urban residues. Resour Conserv Recy 50(1):1–39

Purves WK, Orians GH, Heller HC (1995) Life: the science of biology, 4th edn. Sinauer Associates, Inc., Sunderland

Pye EK, Lora JH (1991) The Alcell process: a proven alternative to Kraft pulping. TAPPI J 74:113–118

Rajoka MI, Malik KA (1997) Cellulase production by *Cellulomonas biazotea* cultured in media containing different cellulosic substrates. Bioresour Technol 59(1):21–27

Ramanathan M (2003) Biochemical conversion ethanol production from root crops. In:Rantwijk van *Biocatalytic transformations in ionic liquids*. Trends Biotechnol 21(3):131–138

Raven PH, Evert RF, Susan EE (1992) Biology of plants (6th edition). W.H. Freeman and company/Worth Publishers

Ravichandra P, Rama RB, Annapurna J (2012) Mixing of acid- and base-pretreated corn cobs for improved production of reducing sugars and reduction in water use during neutralization. Bioresour Technol 119:99–104

Reczey K, Zs. S, Eklund R, Zacchi G (1996) Cellulase production by *T. reesei.* Bioresour Technol 57(1):25–30

Sahle DE, Hassan A, Levien KL, Kumar S, Morrell JJ (1995) Supercritical carbon dioxide treatment: effect on permeability of douglas-fir heartwood. Wood Fiber Sci 27(3):296–300

Sawao M, Reiichiro S, Motoo A (1988) Cellulases of *Aspergillus aculeatus*. Methods Enzymol 160:274–299

Schmidt AS, Thomsen AB (1998) Optimization of wet oxidation pretreatment ofwheat straw. Bioresour Technol 64(2):139–151

Shinichi K, Josie WC, Naoto K, Toshiomi Y, Hisaharu T (1986) Hydrolysis of cellulose by cellulases of *Sporotrichum cellulophilum* in an ultrafilter membrane reactor. Enzyme Microb Tech 8(11):691–695

Singh P, Suman A, Tiwari P, Arya N, Gaur A, Shrivastava AK (2008) Biological pretreatment of sugarcane trash for its conversion to fermentable sugars. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 24:667–673

Solomon TWG (1988) Organic chemistry, 4th edn. Wiley

Steiner W, Lafferty RM, Gomes I, Esterbauer H (1987) Studies on a wild strain of Schizophyllum commune: cellulase and xylanase production and formation of the extracellular polysaccharide Schizophyllan. Biotechnol Bioeng 30(2):169–178

Stenberg K, Tengborg C, Mats G, Guido Z (1998) Optimisation of steam pretreatment of SO2-impregnated mixed softwoods for ethanol production. J Chem Technol Biot 71(4):299–308

Sukumaran RK, Singhania RR, Pandey A (2005) Microbial cellulases: production, applications and challenges. J Sci Ind Res India 64:832–844

Sun Y, Cheng J (2002) Hydrolysis of lignocellulosic materials for ethanol production: a review. Bioresour Technol 83(1):1–11

Tatsuya F, Xu F, Hiroyuki I, Katsuji M, Shigeki S (2009) Enzymatic hydrolyzing performance of *Acremonium cellulolyticus* and *Trichoderma reesei* against three lignocellulosic materials. Biotechnol Biofuels 2:24

Teymouri F, Laureano PL, Alizadeh H, Dale BE (2005) Optimization of the ammonia fiber explosion (AFEX) treatment parameters for enzymatic hydrolysis of corn stover. Bioresour Technol 96(18):2014–2018

Thomas WJ, Suki C, Kent KT (1981) Nutritional regulation of lignin degradation by *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*. Appl Environ Microb 42(2):290–296

Thomas KN, Zeikus JG (1981) Comparison of extracellular cellulase activities of *Clostridium thermocellum* LQRI and *Trichoderma reesei* QM9414. Appl Environ Microbiol 42(2):231–240

Torrea P, Aliakbariana B, Rivas B, Dominguezb JM, Converti AA (2008) Release of ferulic acid from corn cobs by alkaline hydrolysis. Biochem Eng J 40:500–506

Vanden WA, Covert S, Cullen D (1993) Identification of the gene encoding the major cellobiohydrolase of the white rot fungus *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*. Appl Environ Microbiol 59:3492–3494

Van Wyk JPH (1999) Saccharification of paper products by cellulase from *Penicillium funiculosum* and *Trichoderma reesei*. Biomass Bioenergy 16(3):239–242

Viola E, Zimabardi F, Cardinale M, Cardinale G, Braccio G, Gamabacorta E (2008) Processing cereal straws by steam explosion in a pilot plant to enhance digestibility in ruminants. Bioresour Technol 99:681–689

Waldner R, Leisola MSA, Fiechter A (1988) Comparison of ligninolytic activities of selected fungi. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 29:400–407

Wichern F, Miiller T, Joergensen RG, Buerkert A (2004) Effect of manure quality and application forms on soil C and N turnover of a subtropical oasis soil under laboratory conditions. Biol Fertil Soils 39:165–171

Wood TM, McCrae SI (1978) The cellulase of Trichoderma koningii. Purification and properties of some endoglucanase components with special reference to their action on cellulose when acting alone and in synergism with the cellobiohydrolase. Biochem J 171(1):61–72

Wood TM (1971) The cellulase of *Fusarium solani*. Purification and specificity of the β-(1 $\rightarrow$ 4)-glucanase and the β-D-glucosidase components. Biochem J 121(3):353–362

Zhao X, Cheng K, Liu D (2009) Organosolv pretreatment of lignocellulosic biomass for enzymatic hydrolysis. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 82:815–827

Zimbardi F, Viola E, Nanna F, Larocca E, Cardinale M, Barisano D (2007) Acid impregnation and steam explosion of corn stover in batch processes. Ind Crop Prod 26(2):195–206

Chapter 2
Sustainability Assessment of Palm Biodiesel Production in Thailand

Thapat Silalertruksa and Shabbir H. Gheewala

Abstract Palm oil is the world's largest source of edible oil and is recently being promoted to produce biodiesel in South–East Asian countries including Thailand. The impacts of palm biodiesel production and use to the environment and socioeconomic development in Thailand are presented. Substituting palm biodiesel for diesel can result in various positive externalities to the Thai society and economy such as GHG emissions reduction, employment generation, GDP development, and trade balance improvement. However, some potential environmental drawbacks of increased palm biodiesel production in the future such as the increase in eutrophication impact potential and land-use change from forest land to oil palm need to be considered and regulated. Improving the sustainability of palm oil and palm biodiesel industry in the future entails the investigation on the potential exploitation of palm-based biorefinery systems along with the concept of "cascade utilization" to fully utilizing biomass residues and wastes generated from palm oil and palm biodiesel industry.

T. Silalertruksa · S. H. Gheewala (✉)
Joint Graduate School of Energy and Environment, King Mongkut's University of Technology Thonburi, Bangkok, Thailand
e-mail: shabbir_g@jgsee.kmutt.ac.th

T. Silalertruksa · S. H. Gheewala
Center for Energy Technology and Environment, Ministry of Education, Bangkok, Thailand

V. K. Gupta and M. G. Tuohy (eds.), *Biofuel Technologies*,
DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-34519-7_2,

2.1 Introduction: Situation and Challenges of Global Biodiesel Production and Use for Transport

To alleviate the threat of fluctuating oil price and climate change, substituting agrofuels for petroleum fuels especially for the transportation sector has been used as a measure by nations around the world (WGBU 2010). Biodiesel can be used to substitute diesel in either pure or blended form and is considered as an attractive alternative fuel because of its environmental friendly characteristics while giving almost the same functional properties as conventional diesel. Global biodiesel production in 2010 was around 53.4 ml/day or sharing about 18 % of the total global biofuels production (EIA 2010). The annual figure has grown exponentially over the past decade i.e. more than tenfold since 2000. Germany is the largest biodiesel producing country contributing about 15 % of the global biodiesel production, followed by Brazil, France, Argentina, and the USA sharing about 12, 11, and 6 %, respectively (EIA 2010). The increased demand for biodiesel is anticipated to continue in the foreseeable years due to the established goals of biodiesel utilization set by many nations such as the United States, the European Commission (EU), Brazil, China, India, and countries in South–East Asia such as Indonesia, Malaysia, and Thailand (Smyth et al. 2010; USAID 2009).

Commercial biodiesel today is mainly produced by transesterification of vegetable oil and animal fats or so-called "first generation biodiesel". Rapeseed oil and sunflower oil are the principal feedstocks used for biodiesel in Europe. Soya oil is the outstanding feedstock in the US. Palm oil which so far has been mainly used and exported for food and oleo-chemical industries is being promoted to produce biodiesel in tropical America and South–East Asia. Palm oil nowadays has gained attention as the most attractive feedstock for commercial biodiesel production compared to other vegetable oils due to its high yield of oil, its lower production cost and its availability of supply (Vanichseni et al. 2002; Tan et al. 2009; Sumathi et al. 2008; Mekhilef et al. 2011). The importance of palm biodiesel is not only for domestic consumption in the producing countries but also international trade especially for the countries for which imported biodiesel is more cost-efficient than domestic production (Zah and Ruddy 2009).

Substituting palm biodiesel for diesel is expected to bring about several environmental and social benefits such as reduction of fossil resource depletion and mitigation of GHG emissions. Besides, for developing countries which generally are agriculture based, the development of biodiesel produced from their own indigenous feedstocks is expected to provide new social and economic opportunities for rural development. Several studies have addressed the environmental performance such as GHG emissions (Pleanjai et al. 2009; Wicke et al. 2008; Reijnders and Huijbregt 2008; Germer and Sauerborn 2008; Yusoff and Hansen 2007), energy efficiency (Pleanjai and Gheewala 2009; Kamahara et al. 2010), and cost performance (Silalertruksa et al. 2012) of palm oil and palm biodiesel production (Pleanjai and Gheewala 2009; Kamahara et al. 2010). These have shown large variations in the life-cycle greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions and net energy balance. This is due to

a number of factors such as different palm oil milling waste management; geographical conditions of oil palm plantation, allocation methods used to treatment byproducts in biodiesel system, different system boundaries e.g., including and excluding land-use change (Schmidt et al. 2009; Silalertruksa and Gheewala 2012).

Furthermore, the rapid growth of palm biodiesel production has raised many concerns amongst experts worldwide, in particular with regard to sustainability issues and the threat posed to ecosystems and society. For example, some studies have reported that increased palm oil demand for biodiesel can entail substantial ecological damage e.g., loss of biodiversity and increase in GHG emissions due to deforestation and land-use change (Stone 2007; Hooijer et al. 2006; PEACE 2007; Fargione et al. 2008). Therefore, case-specific analyses are necessary to evaluate environmental sustainability of biofuels production (Larson 2006). This is especially so for the life-cycle GHG emissions which nowadays is set as one of the key environmental sustainability indicators of bioenergy in various standards/initiatives (Ismail and Rossi 2010).

2.2 Biodiesel Development in Thailand and the Necessity for Sustainability Assessment

Thailand is also an agro-industrial country located in tropical region with a variety of suitable plant oils for biodiesel production such as palm, coconut, jatropha, sunflower, and so on. However, among those, oil palm is the most outstanding feedstock used today in Thailand and most of biodiesel in commerce today is produced from crude palm oil (CPO) and palm oil derivatives. In 2010, Thailand was ranked as the 8th world's largest producer with the production rate about 1.75 ml/day (EIA 2010). The Royal Thai Government (RTG) has promoted biodiesel since 2005 as one of the measures to counter the energy crisis caused by the increased oil price in the world market. At the initial stage, the production of biodiesel was insignificant until B2 biodiesel, a mix of 2 % B100 with 98 % of diesel oil was launched as a mandatory blend for the diesel on the market in 2008. This B2 blending mandate has been raised to B3 biodiesel since 2011 and B5 biodiesel has also been launched on the market as a voluntary program. In addition, the latest goals of biodiesel production have been set at 3.6 and 4.5 ml/day by 2016 and 2022, respectively, and B10 biodiesel is expected to be available for nationwide use by 2012 (DEDE 2011).

As the figures above indicate, the question for Thailand today is not if biodiesel plays a significant role in providing energy for transport, rather what the consequences and sustainability of its production and use will be—for the environment and society. To address the sustainability of palm biodiesel production and use in Thailand and to provide the appropriate recommendations for policy makers for directing biodiesel production in the future toward sustainability, the environmental and social/socioeconomic impacts of palm biodiesel from various systems

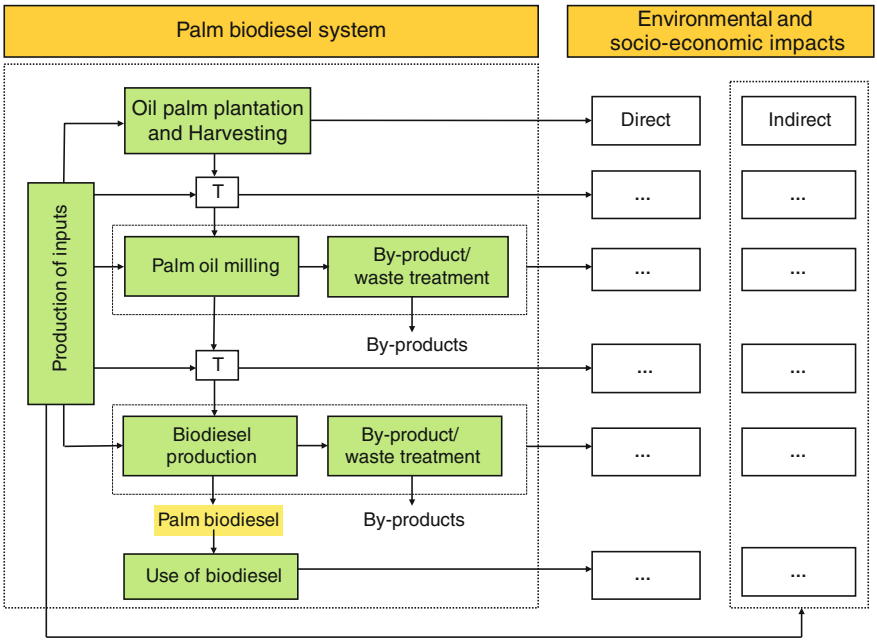


Fig. 2.1 Simplified palm biodiesel system and implication of direct and indirect impacts

need to be assessed throughout the entire life cycle and compared to the conventional diesel that being substituted. Figure 2.1 shows the simplified palm biodiesel production system and scope of impacts to be assessed. Direct impacts mean the environmental and socioeconomic impacts generated from the main stages of biodiesel production and indirect impacts mean those induced from the production of input materials and energy for the main stages.

Life-cycle assessment (LCA) and Input–Output (IO) analysis are two decision supporting tools for evaluating the environmental and socioeconomic impacts of palm biodiesel production in Thailand as both direct and indirect impacts will be accounted. LCA is an assessment tool to compile and evaluate the environmental impacts of a product or service system throughout its life cycle (ISO 2006; Dreyer et al. 2003; Guinée et al. 2002). According to this approach, all burdens including resources used, land occupied, airborne emissions i.e., CO_2, NO_x, SO_x, CH_4, N_2O and waterborne emissions i.e., COD, BOD, Total P, Total N, and suspended solids since oil palm plantation through palm oil and palm biodiesel production, to use will be considered in the environmental impacts assessment. This can help the policy makers draw a complete picture of environmental performance of palm biodiesel as the major environmental impacts of palm biodiesel will be revealed. IO analysis is an economic assessment tool to study the interrelationships within and between economic sectors of a country and it can be used to determine the impacts of an economic activity on the whole economy (Wicke et al. 2009; Suh 2009). As the direct and indirect impacts of an economic activity on the whole

economy can be calculated through the IO analysis; therefore, it can be applied to investigate the employment and other socioeconomic impacts i.e., GDP and national trade balance of palm biodiesel production in Thailand which will be discussed later.

2.3 Palm Biodiesel Systems in Thailand

In general, palm-based biodiesel system based on life-cycle approach can be simplified as Fig. 2.2. The system consists of five major stages i.e., oil palm plantation, palm oil milling, biodiesel conversion, transportation of raw materials, and use phase of biodiesel. Nevertheless, due to the complexity of palm milling stage where a variety of products, byproducts, and wastes are generated, palm biodiesel production systems in reality therefore will vary by approaches used to manage those byproducts and wastes. Different approaches of wastes and byproducts management at the mills, therefore, are evaluated in the study as scenarios to determine their influence on the environmental performance of palm biodiesel. Descriptions of the palm-based biodiesel systems in Thailand and assumptions used for the assessments are as follows:

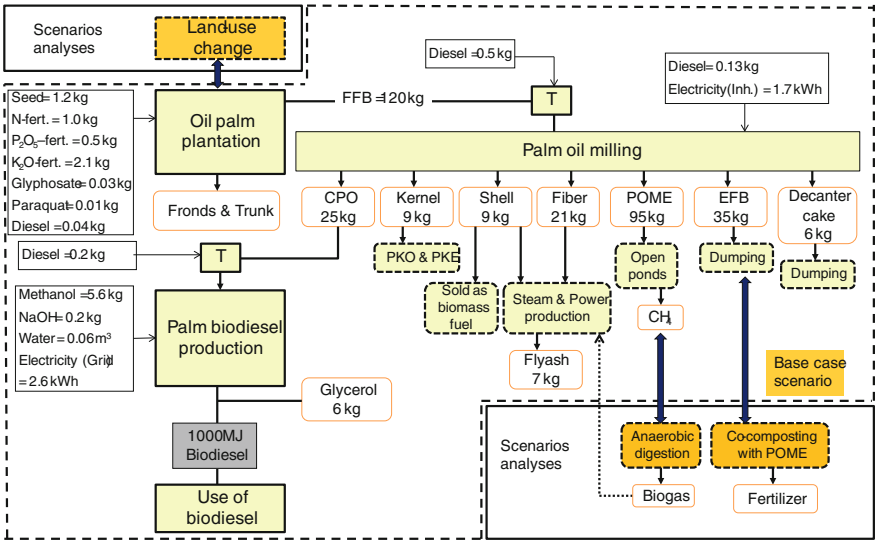


Fig. 2.2 Palm biodiesel system

2.3.1 Oil Palm Plantation

Palm oil is now the world's largest source of edible oil with total global production of about 38.5 Mt/year contributing around 25 % of the worldwide total edible oil and fats production (Shuit et al. 2009). Indonesia and Malaysia are the two leading producers and exporters of palm oil sharing between them around 87 % of the 48 Mt of global palm oil produced in 2010 (USDA 2011). Even though the scale of oil palm plantations and palm oil productions in Thailand is far smaller than Indonesia and Malaysia, there is a high capability to expand oil palm plantations in the future due to suitable climatic conditions particularly in the southern region. Over the past decade, the oil palm planted areas in Thailand have increased by 9 % annually. The total planted areas have reached 0.65 M.ha in 2010 and around 0.57 M.ha was recorded as the harvested area (OAE 2011).

The stage of oil palm plantation consists of growing oil palm at the nursery and planting it in the field. The whole nursery step takes approximately 12–13 months since sowing of seed in a small poly bags until seedling ready for planting. Oil palm starts bearing bunches 2.5–3 years after field planting and the first harvest is possible after 5 years. The oil palm's productive life actually can last as long as 50 years; however, after 25 or 30 years its stalk reaches a height that makes it difficult to harvest. Therefore, the average lifetime of oil palm used in the study is 25 years before replanting. The average fresh fruit bunches (FFB) yield in Thailand is 17.5 t/(ha.yr) (OAE 2010). In addition, biomass residues such as fronds and trunks are also generated in the plantation. The fronds, cut down regularly from the palm trees over the service life of the plantation, are estimated to be around 12 t of dry matter per hectare and year (APC 2007). However, the trunks will be available only one time (when cutting down for re-planting) over the 25 years; the total dry mass of these trunks was estimated to be around 57 t/hec (APC 2007). Fertilizers and agrochemicals such as glyphosate and paraquat are the major input material during this stage; as well as a few diesel is also required for farm equipment and truck for FFB transport, although most of the harvest is done manually.

2.3.2 Palm Oil Milling

Palm oil milling consists of several processing steps including: (1) Loading of FFB in the mill; (2) Sterilization of FFB; (3) Bunch stripping—the empty fruit bunches (EFB) will be separated; (4) Digestion of separated fruits; (5) CPO extraction from oil mash and separation of decanter cake; (6) Nut/fiber separation—fiber is used a fuel for boiler house to produce steam and electricity in the palm oil processing mill itself; (7) Nut cracking—kernels and shell are separated at this stage. Palm kernel oil (PKO) and palm kernel extract (PKE) are produced from the mechanical processing of kernels while the separated shells are partially be used as fuel in

boiler. The remaining shells can be sold as solid fuel or sold as material for producing activated carbon.

Many options can be used for treating the wastes generated at the mills nowadays. For example, the EFB which are conventionally treated by dumping or mulching in plantation can be managed in the other ways such as using it as biomass fuel for in-house steam and power generation, or together with palm oil mill effluent (POME) for co-composting. POME itself can also be treated in different ways depending on the mills. Direct discharge of POME to the environment is not allowed due to high organic loading; therefore, some mills collect it in open ponds and leave it there for self-purification. Others use anaerobic digestion systems for treatment and the treated POME is applied for irrigation. However, thanks to the Clean Development Mechanism (CDM) opportunities, recovery of biogas from POME has nowadays gained attention in Thailand. Biogas contains approximately 60 % CH_4 and 40 % CO_2 and can be generated from anaerobic treatment (Poh and Chong 2009). This CO_2 from biogas can be considered carbon neutral as the amount of carbon released is the same as carbon that had been sequestered during the growth of FFB. However, CH_4 emission cannot be considered neutral in terms of GHG emission as it has a higher GWP than the CO_2 that was taken up by FFB. In the study, a base case and three scenarios of EFB and POME management at the mills as defined in Table 2.1 are assessed to determine their influence to the environmental performance of biodiesel.

CPO is processed further for biodiesel production and palm kernels are used for crude palm kernel oil (CPKO) production. To produce a kilogram of CPO, 5.95 kg of FFB are required for the milling process and this will generate by-products and waste materials including fiber, shell, kernel, decanter cake, and EFB at about 0.83, 0.36, 0.45 and 1.43 kg, respectively (Chavalparit et al. 2006). Economic-based allocation technique was applied to share the environmental burdens from oil palm cultivation and palm oil mill between the main products i.e., CPO and the co-products that are sold as raw material or fuel i.e., palm kernel and shell. Referring to the average prices of CPO, palm kernel and shell as interviewed from palm oil mills in year 2010 i.e., 0.91, 0.56, and 0.06 US$/kg, respectively (based on the exchange rate in 2010 about 31.87 THB/US$), an allocation factor for CPO of about 0.81 is obtained. This is used to evaluate the environmental burdens from CPO production. Allocation is not required for the fiber and a part of shells that are used as fuel for in-house steam and power generation; this can be considered as an internal recycling. EFB and decanter cake which currently have no use but are actually dumped by some mills at the oil palm plantations, are primarily

Table 2.1 Scenarios for treatment of EFB and POME at the palm oil mills

	EFB	POME
Base case	EFB is dumped in the plantation	Open ponds with CH_4 leakage
Scenario 1	EFB is dumped in the plantation	Biogas recovery
Scenario 2	Co-composting with POME	Open ponds
Scenario 3	Co-composting with POME	Biogas recovery

considered in the base case as waste, and hence no environmental burdens are allocated to them. The inputs and outputs relevant to production of 1 MJ palm biodiesel can be summarized in Fig. 2.2.

2.3.3 Biodiesel Production

At the biodiesel plant, CPO is transesterified with the catalyst, sodium hydroxide (NaOH), and methanol. At this stage, the inputs are CPO, water, electricity, methanol, and NaoH. Outputs from the process include biodiesel, glycerol, and wastewater. Economic allocation is also used to share the environmental burdens between biodiesel and glycerol. The market values of biodiesel and glycerol are 1 US$/L (DEDE 2009) and 0.56 US$/kg (ICISpricing 2010), respectively. The allocation factors obtained are 0.92 for biodiesel and 0.08 for glycerol.

2.3.4 Transport

The small farmers generally sell their product (FFB) to middlemen, who operates the ramp and deal with different mills in terms of delivered volume and prices. Delivery of FFB by truck is a conventional transport method in Thailand. Transport capacity and distance traveled from field to mills and mills to biodiesel plant are retrieved from (Pleanjai and Gheewala 2009).

2.3.5 Use of Biodiesel

To evaluate the use phase emissions of diesel and biodiesel, the chassis dynamometer studies for a pick-up truck (or Light Duty Diesel Vehicle: LDDV) are referred and the obtained average emissions from the combustion of a litre biodiesel are 2.78 kg CO_2, 7.5 g CO, 29 g NO_x and 1.3 g Particulate Matter (PM) (Pleanjai 2008). However, as CO_2 emissions from combustion of biodiesel are largely considered carbon neutral because they are of biogenic origin, this is not so for diesel. Thus, in the study, only CO_2 emissions from the part of biodiesel that is from the nonbiogenic methanol contributing around 5.6 % of the total carbon content in the biodiesel are considered to contribute to global warming. Therefore, the use phase GHG emission of biodiesel would be only 0.15 kg CO_2/L biodiesel.

2.4 Environmental Sustainability of Palm Biodiesel

2.4.1 GHG Performance

Based on global warming potential factors of IPCC (2007), life-cycle GHG emissions per MJ of palm biodiesel in various scenarios of waste treatments at the oil mills as defined in Table 2.2 can be examined. The results reveal that the differences in measures for managing EFB and POME at the mills lead to different GHG emissions of palm biodiesel i.e., from 22 to 45 g CO_2 eq/MJ biodiesel as shown in Fig. 2.3. Base case scenario of biodiesel system in Thailand in which EFB is dumped and POME is treated in the open ponds with methane leakage brings about the highest GHG emissions. Two major sources of GHG emissions are N-fertilizer application at the plantation stage and methane generated from the treatment of POME in open ponds at the milling stage sharing about 38 and 40 % of the total GHG emissions of biodiesel, respectively.

Nevertheless, the biogas production from POME nowadays has been recognized in Thailand due to the enhancement of the CDM opportunities. This is a great opportunity to improve GHG performance of biodiesel by installing the anaerobic treatment and biogas recovery system. Then, the emitted methane would be avoided and the energy credits from biogas could be accounted to the GHG performance of biodiesel. In scenario 1, the GHG emissions of biodiesel could be reduced by 46 % as compared to base case. In addition, POME can also be used for co-composting with EFB as in scenario 2 and this will bring about 43 % GHG

Table 2.2 GHG performances for various biodiesel systems in Thailand

	GHG emissions (g CO_2-eq/MJ biodiesel) Range	% Net avoided GHG emissions when comparing with diesel[a] Range
Excluding LUC	22[b]–45[c]	42[c]–71 %[b]
Including dLUC		
Forest land—oil palm	261[b]–283[c]	(−240[b])–(−269 %)[c, d]
Cropland—oil palm	3[b]–25[c]	67[c]–96 %[b]
Grassland—oil palm	11[b]–34[c]	56[c]–85 %[b]
Rubber—oil palm	7[b]–29[c]	62[c]–91 %[b]

[a] % Net avoided GHG emissions are estimated based on diesel fuel-cycle GHG emissions = 76.8 g CO_2 eq/MJ (Silalertruksa and Gheewala 2012)

[b] Referring to biodiesel system (scenario 3) in which POME is treated to produce biogas before co-composting with EFB and returning the produced compost to the plantation

[c] Referring to biodiesel system (base case) in which EFB is dumped in the plantation and POME is treated in the open ponds with CH_4 leakage

[d] (-) means GHG emissions increased as compared to diesel

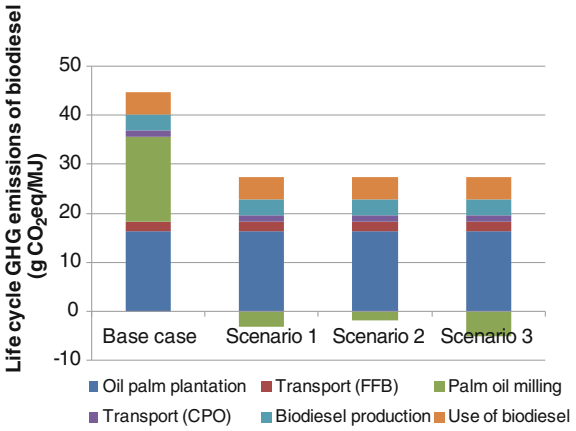


Fig. 2.3 Life-cycle GHG emissions of palm biodiesel produced from different production systems (g CO_2 eq./MJ biodiesel)

emissions reductions. However, the most efficient system found in scenario 3 i.e., POME after biogas production was returned to produce compost which would result in 50 % GHG emissions reduction.

2.4.2 Direct Land-Use Changes and GHG Consequences

One of the most concerns from the rapidly increasing demand for biodiesel is the unregulated conversion of lands and/or cropping systems into oil palm (or called "land-use change"). This in turn may cause the drawbacks to the ecosystems and society such as the substantial release of CO_2 into the atmosphere from carbon stock change and food-fuel conflicts. So far, land-use change has not yet been much relevant for palm biodiesel production in Thailand as biodiesel demand is small scale and FFB used currently originate from the old palm plantations. However, to satisfy the future anticipated CPO demand for food and palm biodiesel production, both oil palm productivity improvement and expansion of palm plantations are necessary and land-use change impacts would become important.

In the study, four possible direct land-use changes (dLUCs) originate into oil palm in Thailand including (1) tropical forest land in the northeast, (2) cropland such as cassava plantation in the northeast or the east, (3) grassland which is assumed to represent the available set-aside land in Thailand, and (4) old rubber fields in the south are considered in the analyses. Those land-use change scenarios are from the onsite surveys and/or interviews with farmers (Siangjaeo et al. 2011; JGSEE 2010) accompanied with the policy to encourage the new oil palm plantations of the RTG which specified in the palm oil industry and oil palm development plan (years 2008–2012) (NCGEB 2009). Based on the IPCC guidelines for calculating GHG emissions caused by dLUCs (IPCC 2006), the GHG performances of biodiesel after accounting for GHG consequences of dLUCs are estimated as shown in Table 2.2.

The results indicate that there is a wide range of GHG performance of biodiesel if dLUC is taken into account in the system boundary. The worst case found was for the conversion of tropical forest land to oil palm which would increase the released GHG of palm biodiesel production around 5–8 times as compared to the case where LUC is excluded, due to loss of biomass carbon stock. This in turn will cause biodiesel to have higher GHG emissions than conventional diesel by around 240–269 %. Nevertheless, it must be noted that forest land conversion is unlikely to occur in Thailand as it is illegal and restricted by government. The conversions of field crop (e.g. cassava), old rubber field, and set-aside land to oil palm on the other hand would bring about GHG benefits i.e., the gain of biomass carbon stock and/or the increase in soil organic carbon stock. The life-cycle GHG emissions of those three scenarios range from 3 to 29 g CO_2 eq/MJ and the net avoided GHG emissions compared to diesel are ranged 56–91 %. Therefore, policy measures to regulate the new oil palm plantations by encouraging only the suitable land types are important to maintain the environmental sustainability of palm biodiesel production in the future.

2.4.3 Other Environmental Impacts

Apart from life-cycle GHG emissions, Table 2.3 shows the other three environmental impact potentials including acidification potential (AP) which is expressed as g SO_2 eq., eutrophication potential (EP) which is measured in g PO_4^{3-} eq., and photochemical ozone creation potential (POCP) is measured relative to ethylene as expressed in g C_2H_4 eq. which is determined based on the impact potential factors of CML method (Heijungs et al. 1992). As per MJ of fuels, palm biodiesel has lower AP but higher EP as compared to diesel. However, there is no significant difference of POCP between them. In addition, the assessment also shows that utilization of EFB and POME in all scenarios (i.e. scenario 1–3) could help

Table 2.3 Potential environmental impacts of palm biodiesel compared to diesel (per MJ of fuels)

Environmental impacts	Environmental impact potentials[a]		% net avoided impact potentials compared to diesel
	Palm biodiesel	Diesel[b]	
Acidification (g SO_2 eq.)	~0.40–0.41	~0.44	~7–9 %
Photochemical oxidation (g C_2H_4 eq.)	~0.03	~0.03	–
Eutrophication (g PO_4^{3-}eq.)	~0.11	~0.09	~(−11)–(−12 %)

[a] Environmental impacts entire the life-cycle production and use of fuels

[b] Environmental impacts of diesel production are evaluated based on LCI data of Ecoinvent database (2007) and tailpipe emissions of diesel in LDDV (Pleanjai 2008)

improve the environmental performance of palm biodiesel in all impact categories (Silalertruksa and Gheewala 2012).

For example, oil palm plantation is the main contributor to AP and this originates from the SO_2 and NO_x generated during production of N-P-K fertilizers. Therefore, substitution of chemical fertilizers used at the plantation by the compost from the co-composting of EFB and POME would be an opportunity to mitigate the environmental burdens of palm biodiesel (Stichnothe and Schuchardt 2010). POME is found to be the major source of eutrophication impact followed by fertilizers used in the oil palm plantation stage and methanol in the biodiesel conversion stage, respectively. Therefore, apart from good management of POME at the palm oil mills, the effective use of fertilizers in agriculture could be one of the measures in practice to reduce this impact. Additionally, the proper management of POME would also help reduce POCP as this impact associated with the emissions of NO_x, CH_4, and CO; methane emissions from open ponds at the oil mills are the major contributor in high POCP of palm biodiesel.

2.5 Socioeconomic Impacts of Biodiesel Production

2.5.1 Employment Effects

Table 2.4 shows the estimated direct and indirect employment induced by biodiesel production in Thailand based on the "hybrid approach" i.e., direct employment in agriculture is estimated from the labor costs in FFB production (OAE 2010) and the annual wage of labor for agriculture in Thailand (NSO 2010); while, for palm oil milling and biodiesel production, which have the exact number of producers, direct employment was collected from direct surveys with 17 palm oil mills and 5 biodiesel plant producers, respectively. Indirect employment which is generated in the industries that produce intermediate deliveries to the agriculture and biodiesel processing sectors is estimated from the inverse matrix from the aggregated 2005 Thai IO tables in new format (50 × 50 major sectors) relevant to biofuels production and the direct employment coefficient derived from the

Table 2.4 Socioeconomic effects of palm biodiesel in Thailand

		Per ml biodiesel			Per TJ biodiesel		
		Direct	Indirect	Total	Direct	Indirect	Total
Employment	Employed persons (person-years)	74	54	128	2.0	1.5	3.5
GDP effects	GDP (M$)	0.54	0.19	0.73	0.015	0.005	0.020
National trade balance	Import (M$)	0.22	0.39	0.61	0.006	0.011	0.017

number of employed persons in each economic sector recorded by the National Statistical Office (NSO) of Thailand (Silalertruksa and Gheewala 2011).

The results show that production of 1 million litre of palm biodiesel generates employment around 128 person-years or around 3 person-years/TJ of biodiesel. In comparison with diesel (based on the average ex-refinery price of high speed diesel during 2006–2008 i.e., 19.4424 THB/L), producing biodiesel requires about 10 times more persons than diesel per joule of energy content. Direct employment in agriculture (i.e., oil palm plantation) is the major employment benefit generated from palm biodiesel production contributing around 54 % of the total employment generation followed by the indirect employment induced in the agricultural sector and in biodiesel production. The significant employment generation in agriculture implies that the promotion of biodiesel in Thailand could help spur rural development. Nevertheless, two major reasons of the huge numbers of employed persons in agriculture are identified as follows: (1) agricultural is the most labor-intensive sector in the Thai economy, because the farmers are generally small scale with manual operation; and (2) low productivities of agriculture due to lack of good agricultural practices.

2.5.2 Impacts of Biodiesel on GDP Development

The study also determines the effects of biodiesel production on the total value added or gross domestic product GDP of Thai economy. Even though the GDP of a country is an indicator to measure economic performance and the size of the economy, measuring the changes in GDP can imply the amount of income generated and retained in the country itself (Wicke et al. 2009). Based on final demand approach in IO analysis, the assessment reveals that producing 1 ml of palm biodiesel contributes around 0.73 M$ to the national GDP as shown in Table 2.4. The main contributor to the changes in GDP is the direct impact from agriculture followed by the indirect impacts from energy and chemicals consumptions, respectively. This is because feedstock cost (i.e. CPO) is the largest production cost component of biodiesel contributing around 62–73 % of direct impacts or 29–55 % of total impacts on GDP. Methanol is the second largest contributor to GDP development. However, the study did not consider the induced impacts of increased use biodiesel to the decrease in operation of refinery sectors because biodiesel used in Thailand is in the blended form. The new biodiesel production sector, therefore, assumes to have no effect to the refineries in the views of products competition. To provide the extent of the socioeconomic impacts of biodiesel policy in Thailand, if the target of producing about 4.5 ml palm biodiesel per day was achieved in 2022, the estimated overall impacts of biodiesel production in Thailand are 1,193 M$ additional GDP.

2.5.3 Impacts of Biodiesel Production on the National Trade Balance

Balance of trade is one of the essential aspects for a country as it measures a country's dependence on other countries and the country's possibilities for generating income from selling to other countries (Wicke et al. 2009). The study, therefore, determines the amount of imports needs for biodiesel production in Thailand comparing with the case of diesel production. IO analysis has been used in the same way as the analyses of impacts on GDP and the results show that producing 1 TJ of palm biodiesel will result in the increase of total imports around 0.017 M$. Nevertheless, if compared to the cases of producing diesel at the same energy performance i.e. 1 TJ, production of biodiesel to substitute petroleum fuels could decrease the country's import around 0.053 M$ per TJ of biodiesel. The largest contributor to increase imports is the indirect impacts of chemicals used in biodiesel conversion stage followed by the indirect impacts from energy consumed. Thus, if the targets of producing about 4.5 ml/day (or equivalent to 55,024 TJ/day) were achieved in 2022, the biodiesel production could help reduce imports around 2,849 M$/year.

2.6 Recommendations Toward Sustainable Palm Biodiesel Production in Thailand

Several recommendations for improving the environmental and cost performance of palm biodiesel along with the sustainability of palm oil and palm biodiesel industry in Thailand are as follows:

2.6.1 Increasing Environmental and Cost Efficiency of the Existing Palm Biodiesel Systems

1. Utilizing all byproducts and wastes generated at the palm oil milling stage is essential to enhance environmental and cost performance of palm biodiesel (Silalertruksa et al. 2012). For example, recovery of biogas and nutrients from POME should be encouraged using CDM opportunities. EFB, which is posing a disposal problem to many mills, especially the difficulty to manage it by mulching during the peak crop inducing high cost for transportation and distribution in the plantations, could be used for other purposes e.g., used as fuel for boilers, used as substrate for straw mushroom cultivation, or mixing with POME to make co-compost due to its high N-P-K content (APC 2007). Additionally, the surplus shells from in-house boilers could be used to produce activated carbon or as a source of fuel for cement and brick factories

(Chavalparit et al. (2006). The credits of substituted materials from waste recovery such as diesel for operating power generator replaced by biogas, chemical fertilizers replaced by co-compost of POME and EFB, fossil fuels for grid-power generation replaced by biomass fuels such as shells and EFB of the Small Power Providers (SPP) would induce externality savings and help improve the economic and environmental performance of palm oil and palm biodiesel industries in Thailand (Silalertruksa et al. 2012). In addition, at the plantations, biomass residues such as fronds and trunks are available and may be used as biomass for energy. Nevertheless, to avoid erosion and wash-out of soil in case of heavy rains especially if the plantation is located in mountainous areas, the suitable percentages for removing fronds and trunks for energy are 35 and 85 %, respectively for mountainous areas and 67 and 98 %, respectively for flat territory plantation (APC 2007).

2. To secure the availability of CPO supply for future biodiesel production, both increase in FFB yield and oil extraction rates are required. The good agricultural practices (GAP) for oil palm as suggested by Department of Agriculture to farmers needs to be encouraged to smallholders especially knowledge about the suitable time-period of harvest which would result in high content and good quality of oil in FFB (DOA 2009). In addition, using co-compost derived from EFB and POME which contain nutrients as organic fertilizers would be another measure to improve soil quality and to reduce chemical fertilizer consumption. Moreover, the quality standards and quality pricing for FFB should be established for supporting the FFB and oil extraction rate improvement program. The good practices could help increase FFB yield from 17.5 to 22 Mg/ha or even to reach the genetic potential of oil palm varieties i.e. 31.3 Mg/ha (NCGEB 2009).
3. Specification of the land suitable for future oil palm plantation expansion needs to be performed by the government. Unregulated expansion of palm plantation would result in low FFB productivity and would lead to adverse impacts on the environment e.g., increase in GHG emissions. The palm biodiesel systems based on land that were previously tropical forest have such large GHG emissions that they cannot meet the GHG emission reduction target. Based on the assessment results, conversion of set-aside land to oil palm would be the suitable way for social and environmental sustainability of future palm oil and palm biodiesel industry as compared to the conversion of the other lands.

2.6.2 To Encourage "Palm-Based Biorefinery" and "Cascade Utilization" of Biomass Residues and Wastes Generated from Palm Biodiesel System to Maximize the Sustainability Benefits

Concerns about the ongoing increase in prices of fossil resources, especially crude oil stimulates interest in the potentiality of using biomass as an alternative to fossil

resources for production of the marketable products (materials/chemicals) and energy products e.g., transportation fuels. The concept of "biorefinery" is therefore introduced similar to the petroleum refinery in which a single source feedstock (crude petroleum) can be processed to multiple products (Goh and Lee 2010). However, in biorefineries, biomass is considered as feedstock and will be processed into a spectrum of marketable products and energy (IEA 2012). A wide range of technologies (e.g., biochemical conversion, thermal-chemical conversion) able to separate biomass resources (e.g., wood, energy crops, and agricultural residues) into their building blocks (e.g. carbohydrates, proteins, and triglycerides) which can be converted to value added products, biofuels, and chemical, will be considered and integrated into the biorefinery system (Cherubini 2010). Due to substantial amounts of biomass residues and wastes being generated in oil palm plantations and at palm oil mills, this concept, therefore, has a potential to be exploited for palm industry.

Figure 2.4 shows the examples of two scenarios of palm-based biorefinery systems that are able to integrate into the normal system of palm biodiesel production in Thailand for more fully utilizing biomass residues and wastes generated from palm industry. The two scenarios proposed are i.e., (1) palm-based biofuel refinery (PBR) and (2) palm-based biorefinery along with the concept of "cascade utilization". Palm-based biofuel refinery scenario (PBR) refers to the system where the CPO is still processed into biodiesel but the primary biomass residues i.e., fronds and trunks from oil palm plantations and secondary biomass residues released in the mills i.e. fiber, EFB and shells will be collected and crushed into smaller size for pretreatment, and subsequently hydrolysis to obtain fermentable sugar and eventually bioethanol (Goh and Lee 2010). The lignin will also be separated from lignocelluloses and can be used as fuel for power generation. The ash from combustion of lignin can be returned to the plantations to improve soil quality. Glycerol, byproduct of transesterification process, can also be considered as fuel for co-generation.

The scenario of "palm-based biorefinery" along with the concept of "cascade utilization" of biomass resource is also shown in Fig. 2.4. Cascade utilization is the sequential use of biomass as feedstock to produce materials and energy (i.e., preferring materials production before energetic utilization) (Steubing et al. 2010; Raschka and Carus 2012; UNIDO 2007). The study proposes an example of cascade utilization concept for improving palm biodiesel system in Thailand by applying it for biodiesel glycerol i.e., biodiesel glycerol will be used sequentially for materials and then for energy (i.e., epichlorohydrin for epoxy resins, burning) (Pagliaro et al. 2007; Raschka and Carus 2012). Recently, a $157 million biobased chemical plant utilizing glycerol from biodiesel for epichlorohydrin production in Thailand has been successfully commissioned in Map Ta Phut, Thailand by Solvay, an international chemical group, and its Thai affiliate Vinythai. The plant uses Solvay's epicerol technology and the production capacity is about 100,000 M t/year (Voegele 2012).

In addition, biomass wastes from palm oil can also be converted by other conversion technologies to produce hydrogen-rich gas which is expected to

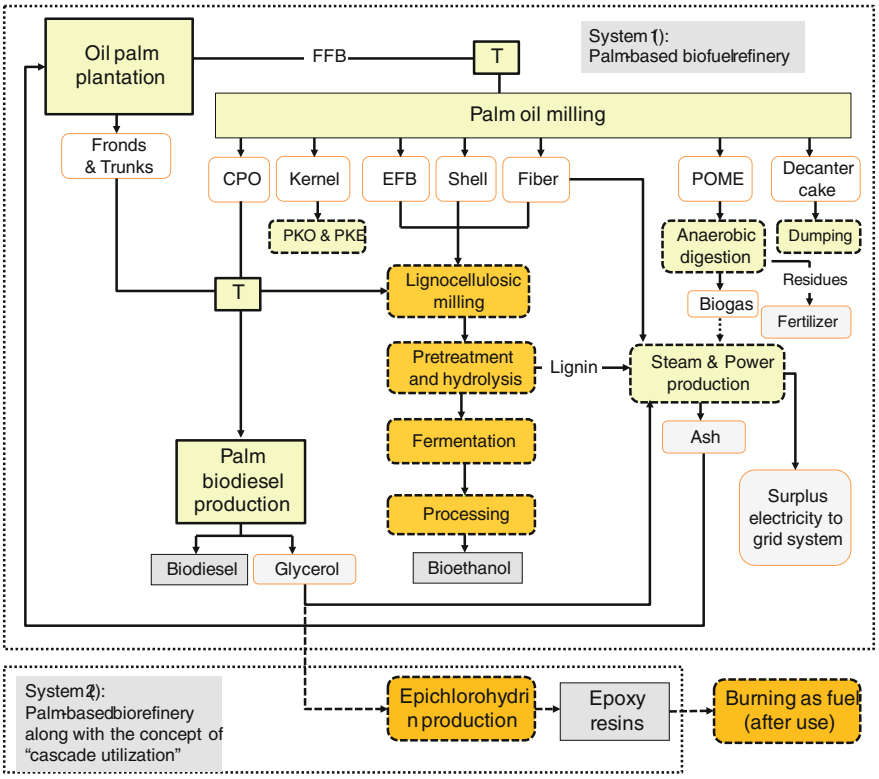


Fig. 2.4 The schematic diagram of the proposed palm-based refinery systems

become one of the major sources of energy in the future due to its cleanliness and its high calorific value fuel (Mohammed et al. 2011) or other components e.g., acetone-butanol-ethanol (ABE) that can be used as "green chemical" and bio-plastics e.g., polylactic acid (PLA), polyhydroxyalkanoate (PHA), etc. (IEA 2012; JIE 2008). This integrated approach of using biorefineries for the co-production of both value-added products and biofuels from biomass resources is the promising approach to reduce production costs of conventional biofuels production and would help create a sustainable market of biofuels in the future if the financial support for biofuels provided by government such as tax reduction were put off (IEA 2012). Thus, the palm-based biorefinery will not only provide biodiesel production cost reduction but it can enhance energy security and mitigate climate change as palm biomass residues are efficiently used. Moreover, the emerging of biorefinery industry would induce job opportunities in the future.

2.7 Conclusion

To address the sustainability of palm biodiesel production and use in Thailand, the study applies the decision supporting tools i.e., (LCA) and IO analysis for determining the environmental and socioeconomic impacts of palm biodiesel from various systems compared to conventional diesel that being substituted. The results indicate that policy to promote biodiesel in a developing country as Thailand has a significant effect to the economy as it could result in various positive externalities to the economy such as GHG emissions reduction, acidification reduction, employment generation, GDP development, and trade balance improvement. This raises the attractiveness of biodiesel and makes it competitive to diesel in terms of net social benefits. However, there are also the environmental drawbacks from biodiesel production that the policy makers need to consider such as the increase in the eutrophication impact to the environment of biodiesel as compared to diesel. In addition, an unregulated expansion of oil palm plantations in the future such as the invasion of tropical forest for oil palm could lead to the substantial increase of GHG emissions of palm biodiesel and it in turn would cause biodiesel to have higher GHG emissions than conventional diesel. Several recommendations, therefore, have been identified for improving the sustainability of palm oil and palm biodiesel industry in the future in both environmental and economic dimensions. For the short-term improvement, GAP for oil palm cultivation, methodologies to treatment of byproducts, and wastes generated at the mills such as biogas recovery from POME, co-composting of EFB and POME, and utilization of biomass residues for fuel should be introduced nationwide. However, for the long-term improvement, the study recommends that palm-based biorefinery systems along with the concept of "cascade utilization" need to be investigated in order to fully utilize biomass residues and wastes generated from palm oil and palm biodiesel industry.

References

APC (2007) Best practice guide: waste to energy in palm oil industry. E3Agro project: Energy and eco efficiency in agro-industry, DEDE-GTZ'2007, Bangkok

Chavalparit O, Rulens WH, Mol APJ, Khaodhair S (2006) Options for environmental sustainability of the crude palmoil industry in Thailand through enhancement of industrial ecosystem. Environ Dev Sust 8:271–287

Cherubini F (2010) The biorefinery concept: using biomass instead of oil for producing energy and chemicals. Energ Convers Manage 51:1412–1421

DEDE (2009) Biodiesel prices statistics. Department of alternative energy development and efficiency (DEDE), Bangkok

DEDE (2011) Alternative energy development plan: AEDP 2012–2021. Department of alternative energy development and efficiency (DEDE), Bangkok. http://www.dede.go.th/dede/images/stories/aedp25.pdf

DOA (2009) Good agricultural practice for oil palm (in Thai). Department of agriculture (GAP No. 3), Department of agriculture, Bangkok
Dreyer LC, Niemann AL, Hauschild MZ (2003) Comparison of three different LCIA methods: EDIP97, CML2001 and eco-indicator 99. Int J Life Cycle Ass 8:191–200
Ecoinvent Database (2007) Swiss centre for life cycle inventories, Dübendorf: In SimaPro 7
EIA International Energy Statistics (2010) US energy information administration, Washington. http://www.eia.gov/cfapps/ipdbproject/iedindex3.cfm?tid=79&pid=alltypes&aid=1&cid=regions&syid=2006&eyid=2010&unit=TBPD. Cited 25 Mar 2012
Fargione J, Hill J, Tilman D, Polasky S, Hawthorne P (2008) Land clearing and the biofuel carbon debt. Science 319(5867):1235–1238
Germer J, Sauerborn J (2008) Estimation of the impact of oil palm plantation establishment on greenhouse gas balance. Environ Dev Sustain 10:697–716
Goh CS, Lee KT (2010) Palm-based biofuel refinery (PBR) to substitute petroleum refinery: an energy and energy assessment. Renew Sust Energ Rev 14:2986–2995
Guinée JB, Gorée M, Heijungs R, Huppes G, Kleijn R, Koning A et al (2002) Handbook on life cycle assessment: operational guide to the ISO standards. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht
Heijungs R, Guinée JB, Huppes G, Lankreijer RM, Udo de Haes HA, Wegener SA et al. (1992) Environmental life cycle assessment of products: guide. Centre of Environmental Science (CML), Leiden
Hooijer A, Silvius M, Wösten H, Page S (2006) PEAT-CO_2, Assessment of CO_2 emissions from drained peatlands in SE Asia. Delft Hydraulics Report Q3943. Delft Hydraulics, Delft
ICIS pricing (2010) Glycerine (Asia Pacific). See also: www.icispricing.com/il_shared/Samples/SubPage213.asp. Cited 11 Sep 2010
IEA (2012) Bio-based chemicals: value added products from biorefineries. IEA Bioenergy—Task 42: Biorefinery
IPCC (2006) IPCC guidelines for national greenhouse gas inventories, vol. 4-agriculture, forestry and other land use (AFOLU). Institute for Global Environmental Strategies (IGES), Hayama
IPCC (2007) Working group III report "mitigation of climate change", fourth assessment report. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge
Ismail M, Rossi A (2010) A compilation of bioenergy sustainability initiatives. Food and Agriculture Organization of the UN (FAO), Rome. http://www.fao.org/bioenergy/foodsecurity/befsci/62379/en/
ISO (2006) ISO 14040:2006 Environmental management—Life cycle assessment—Principles and framework. International Organization for Standardization (ISO), Geneva
JGSEE (2010) Baseline study for GHG emissions in palm oil production: Second draft final report, Bangkok
JIE (2008) The Asian biomass handbook: a guide for biomass production and utilization. Japan Institute of Energy (JIE), Tokyo
Kamahara H, Hasanudin U, Widiyanto A, Tachibana R, Atsuta Y, Goto N, Daimon H, Fujie K (2010) Improvement potential for net energy balance of biodiesel derived from palm oil: a case study from Indonesian practice. Biomass Bioenerg 34:1818–1824
Larson ED (2006) A review of life-cycle analysis studies on liquid biofuel systems for the transport sector. Energy Sust Dev 2:109–126
Mekhilef S, Siga S, Saidur R (2011) A review on palm oil biodiesel as a source of renewable fuel. Renew Sust Energ Rev 15:1937–1949
Mohammed MAA, Salmiaton A, Wan Azlina WAKG, Mohammad Amran MS, Fakhru'l-Razi A, Taufiq-Yap YH (2011) Hydrogen rich gas from oil palm biomass as a potential source of renewable energy in Malaysia. Renew Sust Energ Rev 15:1258–1270
NCGEB (2009) Feasibility study of increase production of sugarcane, cassava and oil palm for biofuels production: technology use and expansion of cultivation areas (in Thai). National Center for Genetic Engineering and Biotechnology, Bangkok

NSO (2010) Wages per employed person in agriculture and manufacturing sector: informal sector labor forces year 2009. National Statistical Office, Bangkok. http://service.nso.go.th/nso/nsopublish/service/survey/workerOutRep52.pdf. Cited 15 May 2011
OAE (2010) Background information of agricultural economics. Office of Agricultural Economics (OAE), Bangkok
OAE (2011) Agricultural statistics of Thailand 2010. Office of Agricultural Economics (OAE), Bangkok. http://www.oae.go.th/download/download_journal/yearbook53.pdf
Pagliaro M, Ciriminna R, Kimura H, Rossi M, Pina CD. (2007) From glycerol to value-added products. Angew Chem Int Ed 46: 4434–4440 doi:10.1002/anie.200604694. Wiley Online library
PEACE (2007) Indonesia and climate change: current status and policies. http://siteresources.worldbank.org/INTINDONESIA/Resources/Environment/ClimateChange_Full_EN.pdf. Cited 12 Jan 2010
Pleanjai S (2008) Integrated environmental assessment of biodiesel from palm oil. PhD dissertation, the joint graduate school of energy and environment, King Mongkut's University of Technology Thonburi, Bangkok
Pleanjai S, Gheewala SH (2009) Full chain energy analysis of biodiesel production from palm oil in Thailand. Appl Energ 86(Suppl.):S209–S214
Pleanjai S, Gheewala SH, Garivait S (2009) Greenhouse gas emissions from production and use of palm methyl ester in Thailand. Int J Glob Warming 1(4):418–431
Poh PE, Chong MF (2009) Development of anaerobic digestion methods for palm oil mill effluent (POME) treatment. Bioresour Technol 100:1–9
Raschka A, Carus M (2012) Industrial material use of biomass: basic data for Germany. Europe and the world. Nova-Institute for ecology and innovation, Hürth
Reijnders L, Huijbregt MAJ (2008) Palm oil and the emission of carbon-based greenhouse gases. J Cleaner Prod 16:477–482
Schmidt JH, Christensen P, Christensen TS (2009) Assessing the land use implications of biodiesel use from an LCA perspective. J Land Use Sci 4:35–52
Shuit SH, Tan KT, Lee KT, Kamaruddin AH (2009) Oil palm biomass as a sustainable energy source: a Malaysian case study. Energy 34:1225–1235
Siangjaeo S, Gheewala SH, Unnanon K, Chidthaisong A (2011) Implications of land use change on the life cycle greenhouse gas emission from palm biodiesel production in Thailand. Energ Sust Dev 15:1–7
Silalertruksa T, Bonnet S, Gheewala SH (2012) Life cycle costing and externalities of palm oil biodiesel in Thailand. J Clean Prod 28:225–232
Silalertruksa T, Gheewala SH (2011) The environmental and socio-economic impacts of bio-ethanol production in Thailand. Energy Procedia 9:35–43
Silalertruksa T, Gheewala SH (2012) Environmental sustainability assessment of palm biodiesel production in Thailand. Energy (In press, corrected proof)
Smyth BM, Ó Gallachóir BP, Korres NE, Murphy JD (2010) Can we meet targets for biofuels and renewable energy in transport given the constraints imposed by policy in agriculture and energy? J Clean Prod 18:1671–1685
Steubing B, Zah R, Waeger P, Ludwig C (2010) Bioenergy in Switzerland: assessing the domestic sustainable biomass potential. Renew Sust Energ Rev 14:2256–2265
Stichnothe H, Schuchardt F (2010) Comparison of different treatment options for palm oil production waste on a life cycle basis. Int J Life Cycle Ass 15:907–915
Stone R (2007) Can palm oil plantations come clean? Science 317:1491
Suh S (ed.) (2009) Handbook of input-output economics in industrial ecology. Eco-Effi Ind Sci 23
Sumathi S, Chai SP, Mohamed AR (2008) Utilization of oil palm as a source of renewable energy in Malaysia. Renew Sust Energ Rev 12:2404–2421
Tan KT, Lee KT, Mohamed AR, Bhatia S (2009) Palm oil: Addressing issues and towards sustainable development. Renew Sust Energ Rev 13:420–427
UNIDO (2007) Industrial biotechnology and biomass utilisation: prospects and challenges for the developing world. United Nations Industrial Development Organization, Vienna

USAID (2009) Biofuels in Asia: an analysis of sustainability options, United States Agency for International Development (USAID), Bangkok

USDA (2011) Oilseeds: world markets and trade. United States Department of Agriculture. Circular Series FOB 11–12 Dec 2011. http://usda01.library.cornell.edu/usda/fas/oilseed-trade//2010s/2011/oilseed-trade-12-09-2011.pdf

Vanichseni T, Intaravichai S, Saitthiti B, Kiatiwat T (2002) Potential biodiesel production from palm oil for Thailand. Kasetsart J 36:83–97

Voegele E (2012) Thai biochemical plant converts glycerin into epichlorohydrin. Biodiesel Magazine, 14 Mar 2012. http://biodieselmagazine.com/articles/8391/thai-biochemical-plant-converts-glycerin-into-epichlorohydrin. Cited 31 Mar 2012

WBGU (2010) Future bioenergy and sustainable land use. Earthscan, London

Wicke B, Dornburg V, Junginger M, Faaij A (2008) Different palm oil production systems for energy purposes and their greenhouse gas implications. Biomass Bioenergy 32:1322–1337

Wicke B, Smeets E, Tabeau A, Hilbert J, Faaij A (2009) Macroeconomic impacts of bioenergy production on surplus agricultural land—a case study of Argentina. Renew Sustain Energy Rev 13:2463–2473

Yusoff S, Hansen SB (2007) Feasibility study of performing a life cycle assessment on crude palm oil production in Malaysia. Int J Life Cycle Assess 12:50–58

Zah R, Ruddy TF (2009) International trade in biofuels: an introduction to the special issue. J Clean Prod 17(Suppl.):S1–S3

Part II
Pretreatment Technologies

Chapter 3
Progress in Physical and Chemical Pretreatment of Lignocellulosic Biomass

Keikhosor Karimi, Marzieh Shafiei and Rajeev Kumar

Abstract Lignocelluloses are abundant and nonfood-based materials that are considered as the most suitable feedstocks for the future energy production. However, these materials have naturally evolved to resist against physical and biological attacks. Thus, the conversion yield of lignocellulosic materials without a preprocessing step, called pretreatment, is not typically high enough for a process to be commercially viable. However, in the last decade or so, continued worldwide research efforts resulted in a significant improvement in the understanding of the biomass characteristics that influence subsequent biological conversions. The cell wall composition, characteristics, components distribution, and linkage between different parts are some of the factors that have been shown to have significant effects on biological conversion of lignocelluloses. In this chapter, different aspects of the parameters affecting the pretreatment and progress in the characteristic modification of lignocelluloses are reviewed. Furthermore, the challenges and conflicts in the related researches are discussed and some suggestions with concluding remarks are presented. Moreover, the most important processes, including pretreatment with acid, alkali, and cellulosic solvents are presented. The fundamental reactions and biomass structural changes in the processes imparted by these leading pretreatments, as well as recent progresses, are also reviewed.

K. Karimi (✉) · M. Shafiei
Department of Chemical Engineering, Isfahan University of Technology,
84156-83111 Isfahan, Iran
e-mail: karimi@cc.iut.ac.ir

R. Kumar
Center for Environmental Research and Technology (CE-CERT),
Bourns College of Engineering University of California, Riverside,
CA 92507, USA

V. K. Gupta and M. G. Tuohy (eds.), *Biofuel Technologies*,
DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-34519-7_3,

3.1 Introduction

Lignocellulosic materials are the only renewable sources that have great potential to produce appreciable amounts of fuels to replace fossil fuels. Different types of lignocelluloses from a variety of resources, e.g., agricultural residue, forest residues, and municipal solid wastes, are abundantly available at considerably low prices (Wyman 1996). However, these materials are very recalcitrant to microbial and enzymatic conversions. Thus, for an efficient conversion, prior to any biological conversion, their structure should be opened up by a process called pretreatment. This upstream processing is to render the downstream microbial and enzymatic processing (Zhu and Pan 2010). It is also used for improvement in digestion of these materials by animals (Castro et al. 1993).

The pretreatment is the focus of a large number of researches and is considered as a key for unlocking the bioethanol production from lignocelluloses. It is less investigated for improvement of biogas, animal feed processing, and other metabolite production. The basis of improvement in all these pretreatments seems to be the same, but when we come to details, it can be significantly different. For instance, a suitable pretreatment method for bioethanol application may not improve biogas production (Jeihanipour 2011). In the enzymatic hydrolysis, it is a mixture of enzymes that should enter the biomass pores, while in the biogas production and in animal digestion, it is the hydrolytic microorganisms that should enter the pores. On the other hand, in biogas production and animal digestions, a highly efficient and active multienzyme complex, including different cellulases and hemicellulases, are involved.

In this chapter, first, the lignocelluloses features that should be considered for modification in the pretreatment are reviewed. Then, the effective parameters in the pretreatment are discussed. Finally, the basis and progresses in the acid, alkali, and cellulose solvent-based pretreatments are presented and discussed.

3.2 Lignocellulosic Materials

There are several types of lignocelluloses including agricultural residues, herbaceous crops, and woody tree species (hardwoods and softwoods). Lignocelluloses are mainly composed of the following components:

- Carbohydrates (cellulose and hemicellulose)
- Lignin
- Extraneous materials

Since this chapter discusses the pretreatment of lignocelluloses, a brief introduction to the components of the lignocelluloses is presented here.

3.2.1 Carbohydrates

The carbohydrate portion of lignocellulose includes cellulose and hemicelluloses.

3.2.1.1 Cellulose

Cellulose is one of the main components of wood and many other lignocellulosic materials that typically represent 40–50 % of dry weight. Cellulose with $(C_6H_{10}O_5)_n$ formula is a polysaccharide consisting of a linear chain of D-glucose units connected by $\beta(1 \rightarrow 4)$ glycosidic bonds. Since the glucose residue is tilted toward its neighbors by 180°, it would be more accurate to consider the cellulose as a polymer of cellobiose, and not glucose (Fengel and Wegener 1984; Lee et al. 1994; Pérez and Samain 2010).

Cellulose has a crystalline structure (45–96 % crystallinity) organized into compacted crystallite microfibrils (about 35 * 40 A in width and about 500 A in length) with high average degree of polymerization (DP) (defined as molecular weight of cellulose/molecular weight of one glucose unit, 7,000–15,000 for plant cellulose) (Chang et al. 1981; Fengel and Wegener 1984). The high tendency to form both intra- and intermolecular hydrogen bonds by the hydroxyl groups is responsible for the strength and crystallinity of cellulose (Chang et al. 1981).

The stabilization and crystallinity of cellulose mainly originate from the presence of hydroxyl groups (OH) (Festucci-Buselli et al. 2007). Three of these functional groups are available in each glucose molecule (Fig. 3.1). Thus, the inner and outer surfaces of cellulose are covered by OH-groups, which are able to make H-bond with other OH-groups and other groups available in lignocelluloses, such as O-, N-, and S-groups (Pérez and Samain 2010). The linkage energy of van der Waals in water is only 0.15, while the H-bond in water and cellulose is 15 and 28 kJ/mol, respectively. The water adsorption by cellulose can take place by forming H-bond between water's-OH and cellulose free OH-groups, which are not linked with each other. This is the base of swelling of cellulose by water (Fengel and Wegener 1984).

The cellulose molecules in lignocelluloses are in the form of fibrils, where the fibrils are composed of microfibrils. Microfibrils in turn are composed of elementary fibrils that are further associated with hemicellulose and lignin. Each microfibril is suggested to contain approximately 36 glucose chains (Ding and

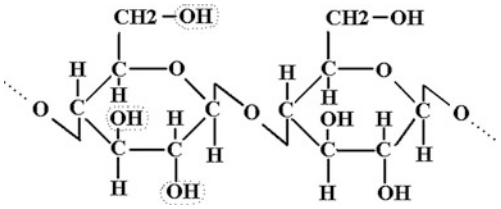


Fig. 3.1 One cellulose unit

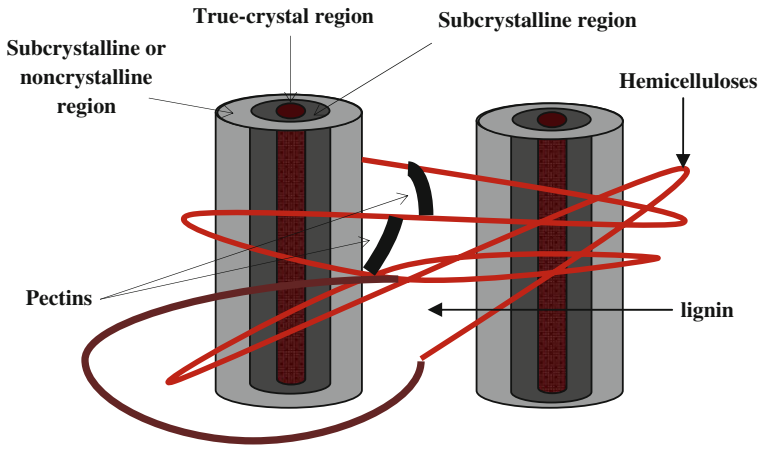


Fig. 3.2 Different crystalline parts of cellulose microfibrils

Himmel 2006). The microfibrils consist of three groups of glucose chains; true-crystal chains (core chains), subcrystalline chains (transition chains), and "subcrystalline or noncrystalline" chains (surface chains) (Fig. 3.2) (Ding and Himmel 2006; Festucci-Buselli et al. 2007). The true-crystal chains are the most resistant part of cellulose for chemical and biological hydrolysis.

3.2.1.2 Hemicellulose

Hemicellulose, also called polyoses, a heteropolymer of polysaccharides and polyuronides, is available in almost all lignocellulosic materials along with cellulose. The polysaccharide part of hemicellulose contains different polymers of hexosans (mannan, glucosan, galactan, and rhamnan) and pentosans (xylan and araban). Polyuronides parts contain hexuronic acids and methoxyl, acetyl, and free carboxylic groups. Polyuronides are more sensitive to chemical and biological attacks than polysaccharide (Norman 1934; Billa and Monties 1991).

Xyloglucan, galactoglucomannans, arabinoglucuronoxylan, xylan, glucuronoxylan, arabinoxylan, mannan, and glucomannan are the main polymers in hemicelluloses. The dominant monomeric sugar in softwoods hemicelluloses is mannose which is highly acetylated and contains galactose side groups. While xylose is dominant in hardwoods and agriculture residues which is less acetylated and contains arabinose side groups. Other side chains such as fucose may also be present on the hemicelluloses backbone (Fry 1989).

Due to the higher content of methylglucuronic acid side groups, the hydrolysis of xylan in softwoods is more difficult than xylan in hardwoods (Teleman et al. 1995, 2002). The xylose to methylglucuronic acid ratios in softwood and hardwood is approximately 5:1 and 10:1, respectively. Methylglucuronic acid branches

may also be protected during dilute acid pretreatment and remain in the fiber (Czirnich and Patt 1976; McCarter et al. 2002).

Therefore, mixture of different types of sugar monomers and acids including xylose, mannose, glucose, galactose, arabinose, rhamnose, and acetic acid can be present in hemicellulose hydrolysates (Wyman 1996; Peng et al. 2012).

Unlike cellulose, which is crystalline and recalcitrant to hydrolysis, hemicellulose has an amorphous structure with short chain polymers as a side chain (Girio et al. 2010; Peng et al. 2012). In spite of its complex structure, hemicellulose can be easily hydrolyzed by acid treatment as well as hemicellulase enzymes (Girio et al. 2010). It is also a more digestible part of lignocelluloses in biogas production and digestion by animals (Keys et al. 1969; Keys and DeBarthe 1974).

3.2.1.3 Lignin

Lignin, a very complex polymer, playing a cementing role to connect cells, increases the mechanical strength properties, and makes plant resistant against diseases and biodegradation by microorganisms. Lignin is sometimes referred as glue between hemicellulose and cellulose components; while sometimes the hemicellulose is referred as glue between lignin and cellulose. Anyway, hemicellulose and lignin are known to cover the surface of cellulose which adds structural strength to the cellulose matrix (Pérez and Samain 2010). Softwoods (25–40 %) contain higher lignin than hardwoods (18–25 %) and agriculture residues (10–20 %) (Fengel and Wegener 1984; McMillan 1992); however, the lignin content is not the only difference between softwoods and other lignocelluloses. The main distinction is originated from the difference in monomeric units and linkage types in lignin. This dissimilarity in the lignin content may result in significant differences in susceptibility of various pretreatment techniques between hardwoods and softwoods. Pretreatment of hardwoods and agriculture residues is usually less harsh than softwoods. The reason is the presence of higher number of vessels in the hardwoods and agriculture residues which permit greater heat and mass transfer into the biomass matrix (Cochard and Tyree 1990; Hepworth et al. 2002; Kim et al. 2011). Generally, easier penetration of chemicals, enzymes, and heat makes the hardwoods and agriculture residues easier for pretreatment than softwoods.

Lignin is a cross-linked polymer of hydroxyphenylpropanoid units connected by C–C and C–O–C linkages, in which over 10 inter-phenylpropane linkage types have been detected. There are several monomeric units and linkage types in lignin. There are two major classes of lignin, guaiacyl lignins (G-lignin) and syringyl lignins (S-lignin). They contain guaiacyl (G), Syringyl (S), and hydroxybenzaldehyde (H) units (Lewis and Yamamoto 1990). Different lignocellulose materials with different age and cultivation conditions have different ratios of G, S, and H. The lower accessibility of plant vessels is partially the result of the occurrence of guaiacyl lignin type in the vessel walls. Therefore, not only the amount of lignin,

but also the guaiacyl to syringyl ratio in lignin can affect the swelling of the cellulosic residue (Ramos et al. 1992). The principal structural elements in lignins have been largely investigated; however, many aspects of the lignin chemistry are still unclear.

For lignin synthesis in woody materials, a series of secondary reactions are recognized leading to cross-linking between lignin and hemicelluloses (Lee 1997). Biodegradation of lignin is a secondary metabolic process, occurring only under low levels of nitrogen (Lee 1997).

During plant biosynthesis, it is believed that lignin is not simply deposited between cellulose and hemicellulose, but is linked with at least part of them. These linkages are termed as lignin-polysaccharide complex (LPC) or lignin-carbohydrate complex (LCC) (Chesson 1988). Thus, as a result of these linkages, it is almost impossible to completely separate or purify cellulose or hemicellulose from lignin, and to have lignin free of polysaccharides. Furthermore, lignin has a tendency of recondensation during delignification processes (Kim et al. 2003). Not only are van der Waals and H-bond involved, but chemical bonds such as covalent bonds are also detected between lignin and polysaccharides (Besombes and Mazeau 2005).

3.2.1.4 Extraneous Materials

A large number of compounds are available in lignocelluloses, known as extraneous materials, which can be extracted by means of polar and nonpolar solvents. The composition and content of these materials vary among lignocelluloses species. Based on their solubility in water, extraneous materials are divided into two categories: extractives or nonextractives (Fan et al. 1982). The most important parts of extractive components are resins (fats, fatty acids, resin acids, and phytosterols), terpenes (isoprene alcohols and ketones), and phenols (residue and byproducts of lignin biosynthesis) (Fan et al. 1982; Fengel and Wegener 1984).

The inorganic components such as alkali earth carbonates, oxalates, starches, pectins, and proteins make the nonextractives part of extraneous materials. In some types of grasses and straws, there is also a significant level of nonextractive silica crystals (Fan et al. 1982). Particularly, rice straw is covered by a layer of silica, which results in a different behavior in the pretreatments compared with other similar biomass, e.g., wheat straw (Binod et al. 2010).

Usually, the extraneous parts are not considered to play much of a role in lowering cellulosic biomass biological conversions, and fewer attempts have been made in this direction. Although it might be intriguing, it would be difficult to see the effect of these components, since they are in large numbers and mostly present in low amounts.

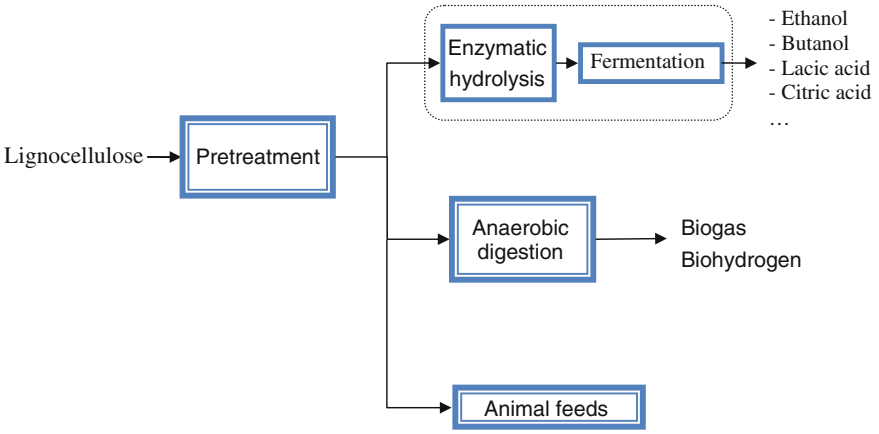


Fig. 3.3 Pretreatment of lignocelluloses for different proposes

3.3 Pretreatment

The main purpose of lignocellulosic materials pretreatment is to improve their biological conversion in the subsequent bioprocessing (Figs. 3.3 and 3.4). This process is known as a key for economically feasible production of different chemicals, e.g., ethanol, butanol, lactic acid, and biogas, as well as animal feed (Cameron et al. 1990, 1991; Shah et al. 1991; Castro et al. 1993; Deschamps et al. 1996; Wang et al. 2004; Yang and Wyman 2008; Taherzadeh and Karimi 2008; Aad et al. 2010; Teghammar et al. 2010).

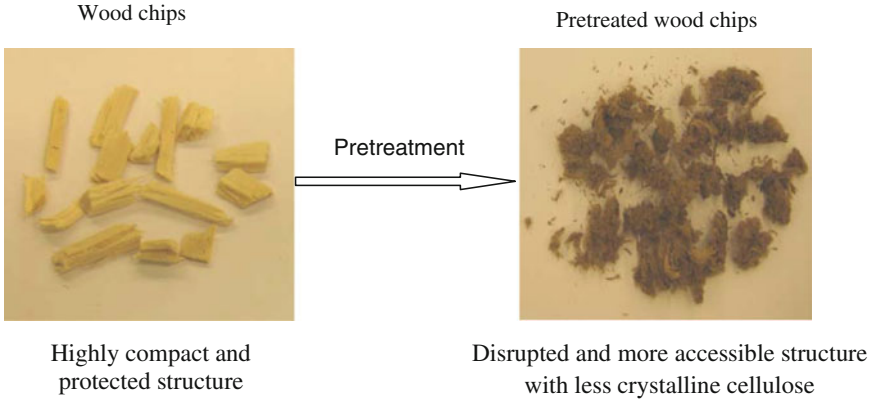


Fig. 3.4 The effects of pretreatment on biomass [Unpublished data (Shafiei et al. 2012)]

3.3.1 Effective Parameters in Pretreatment

Pretreatment is generally considered as a process for disruption of the naturally resistant structure of lignocellulose that limits the hydrolysis of carbohydrates, i.e., cellulose and hemicellulose (Yang and Wyman 2008). In other words, pretreatment is a process to remove the lignocelluloses recalcitrance for its biological conversion via microbial or enzymatic processing (Zhu and Pan 2010). The most effective parameters in the biological conversion of lignocelluloses are believed to be cellulose crystallinity, accessible surface area, lignin and hemicellulose protection, cellulose DP, degree of hemicelluloses acetylation, cellulase adsorption and desorption, and the biomass swelling capacity (Wyman 1996; Taherzadeh and Karimi 2008; Hendriks and Zeeman 2009).

In spite of a number of efforts, it is still not possible to correlate the lignocellulose properties to the effectiveness of enzymatic hydrolysis. For instance, when a pretreatment reduces the lignin content, it cannot be firmly concluded that the improvement in hydrolysis yields was exclusively due to lignin. On the other hand, when one specific characteristic of lignocellulose changes as a result of a pretreatment process, it is not possible to keep others unchanged; thus, it is not easily possible to see the effect of a single parameter.

To date, there are limited efforts toward the development of useful methods for evaluation of lignocelluloses characteristics that affect their biological degradation by microbial or enzymatic hydrolysis (Chandra et al. 2008). In spite of different efforts, it is difficult to link the effective parameters to their hydrolysis properties (Chandra et al. 2008). The effective parameters that presumably affect cellulose enzymatic hydrolysis are briefly presented and discussed here.

3.3.1.1 Cellulose Crystallinity

In enzymatic hydrolysis of lignocelluloses, cellulose crystallinity plays a major role in the biological conversion of cellulosic materials. For example, cotton fibers are almost pure cellulose, in which no lignin and hemicellulose are available. However, it is not possible to reach a high yield of enzymatic hydrolysis from natural cotton due to its high crystallinity (Jeihanipour 2011).

Generally, cellulosic materials contain different cellulose regions, categorized as crystalline and amorphous celluloses, in which the major part is in crystalline form. The crystallinity is often defined as the ratio of these two regions. Natural cellulose is mainly in the form of cellulose I, which is composed of cellulose I_α in cotton and dominantly I_β in the lignocelluloses. The molecules are organized in a parallel manner in cellulose I. Cellulose II, referred to as regenerated cellulose, is also a crystalline form of cellulose with a nonparallel arrangement of the molecules and is thermodynamically more stable than cellulose I. Cellulose II is more susceptible for chemical and biological conversions and can be obtained by chemical pretreatment of lignocelluloses (Hayashi et al. 1975; Chundawat et al. 2011a, b; Mittal et al. 2011).

Between the crystalline regions, there are some amorphous cellulose parts that can easily adsorb water and become soft and flexible (Ciolacu et al. 2011). The chemicals can typically penetrate more easily into the amorphous region of cellulose, where reactions can take place, while the crystalline region remains unattacked. The amorphous cellulose has a higher accessibility and higher enzyme binding capacity than crystalline cellulose (either I or II). Thus, the hydrolysis of the amorphous cellulose is much faster than the crystalline cellulose (Hong et al. 2007; Kumar and Wyman 2008). Highly amorphous cellulose can be obtained by different treatments, e.g., ball milling, alkaline treatments, and dissolution in some solvents such as concentrated phosphoric acid. However, the constructed amorphous cellulose is unstable in the presence of water and partly forms cellulose II (Isogai and Atalla 1991).

It is often reported that decreasing the cellulose crystallinity increases the rate and yield of lignocelluloses bioconversions (Bertran and Dale 1985; Jiang et al. 2007; Bak et al. 2010; Jeihanipour et al. 2010b). In contrast, several investigations showed more digestibility of more crystalline cellulose (Grethelin 1985; Lin et al. 1985; Wyman 1996). The conflict appears when the limiting factor is solely not crystallinity, while the other factors are more important. In some cases, no relationship was found between the rate of hydrolysis and crystallinity. For instance, it was shown that the crystallinity of cellulose in pretreatment of some types of wood by mild acid treatment is not an effective parameter, while pore size distribution contributed more to the improved enzymatic hydrolysis (Grethelin 1985). In some other cases, increase in crystallinity resulted in higher hydrolysis yields (Kim and Holtzapple 2005, 2006). For instance, when the amorphous fractions of corn stover were removed by lime pretreatment, the crystallinity of the treated materials increased, while increasing the pore sizes positively affected the hydrolysis. Therefore, in this case increasing the crystallinity increased the yield and rate of hydrolysis (Kim and Holtzapple 2006).

Therefore, one should consider the crystallinity as an important factor in biological conversion of lignocelluloses; however, it cannot be considered as the sole effective parameter in all cases but should be considered together with other factors.

It should be noted that crystallinity may influence the initial rate of hydrolysis, rather than the final sugar yields (Chang and Holtzapple 2000). Furthermore, the susceptibility of hydrolysis by pretreatment, as a result of crystallinity reduction, cannot be easily distinguished from the changes made by other parameters such as cellulose DP (Yang et al. 2011).

3.3.1.2 Accessible Surface Area

Increasing the accessible area is among the main objectives of all pretreatment processes (Mosier et al. 2005; Rollin et al. 2011); although in most studies, it is correlated with lignin or hemicellulose removal and not considered as an

individual factor (Taherzadeh and Karimi 2008). Enzymatic hydrolysis consists of three steps (Sun and Cheng 2002):

1. Adsorption of hydrolytic enzymes onto the cellulose surface;
2. Hydrolysis of cellulose to its oligomers and cellobiose; and
3. Desorption of the enzymes to the liquid phase.

Direct physical contact between the enzymes and cellulose is one of the main requirements for enzymatic hydrolysis; thus, the biomass accessible surface area is among the main effective parameters for enzymatic hydrolysis.

The mechanism in bacterial hydrolysis of cellulose, e.g., in biogas production processes, is completely different. In these processes, it is the microorganisms that need to reach the cellulose surface. Reaching the surface, they produce a highly efficient multi-functional complex enzyme, called cellulosome, and hydrolyze the cellulose and hemicellulose fractions. Therefore, in bacterial hydrolysis, there are no free enzymes and also the hydrolysis products are subsequently channeled to the cells through some produced fibrous corridors (Lamed et al. 1985; Morag et al. 1990; Lynd et al. 2002; Vazana et al. 2010). Thus, the biomass pores for bacterial cellulose degradation are more important than in the enzymatic hydrolysis.

Lignocelluloses have external and internal surface areas. The size and shape of the particles are related to the external surface area, whereas the fiber porosity or capillary structure in cellulosic fibers is related to the internal surface area. Typically, natural dried lignocelluloses have a very small internal surface and a large external surface area. The external surface area can be increased by size reduction. Suitable pretreatment is expected to significantly increase both the surface areas, especially the internal surface area (Fan et al. 1980).

The accessible surface area sharply increases in the initial stages of hydrolysis of a part of fibers. However, the rate of hydrolysis usually decreases in the latter stages, in spite of higher surface area for the enzymes. This indicates that area is not the major limiting factor for hydrolysis in the latter stages. The faster hydrolysis in the beginning of the process is related to hydrolysis of amorphous cellulose parts and the slowdown in the latter is related to higher crystallinity of the residual cellulose (Fan et al. 1980). Therefore, the effects of accessible surface area should be considered together with the other effective parameters in the hydrolysis.

The solute exclusion (SE) technique was used for measurement of accessible surface area (Stone et al. 1969; Grethelin 1985). The initial rate of enzymatic hydrolysis of cotton linters was compared with the accessibility of the substrate to molecules with 40 Å sizes. A linear relationship was observed between the hydrolysis rate and the accessible surface area (Stone et al. 1969). The initial hydrolysis rate for hard- and softwood using cellulase was also linearly correlated with the pore size of the substrate accessible to molecules with 51 Å diameter (the representative of cellulase molecule size) (Grethelin 1985). However, the method is time-consuming.

The Simons' Stain (SS) technique was formerly developed for evaluation of porosity in pulp fibers (Behrendt and Blanchette 1997). Since 2001, the SS method

has been used for estimation of pore distribution, an indication of accessible substrate area and correlated to the enzymatic susceptibility of lignocelluloses (Esteghlalian et al. 2001). This method is based on adsorption of two different dyes, a small and a large molecule. When adsorbed, they indicate the large and small pores of the fibers (Chandra et al. 2008). The method was recently modified and showed to rapidly predict the improvements made by pretreatments (Chandra et al. 2008, 2009).

The swelling capacity or water retention value (WRV), which is the degree to which a lignocellulosic material swells in the presence of water, is a simple and rapid method for assessing the swelling potential of lignocellulose. The increase in swelling is correlated with substrates' accessibility for subsequent hydrolysis by cellulases (Ogiwara and Arai 1968; Chandra et al. 2009). It was examined for substrates with different chemical composition and crystallinity, and linear relationship between the enzymatic hydrolysis rate and the WRV was found (Ogiwara and Arai 1968).

3.3.1.3 Lignin and Hemicellulose Protection

The cellulose is cemented and covered by lignin and hemicellulose. Since it is responsible for rigidity and prevention of water, chemical, and enzyme diffusion through the lignocelluloses, lignin composition, content, and distribution are recognized to play a major role in recalcitrance of lignocellulosic materials. Lignin, as a physical barrier, limits the cellulose enzymatic and bacterial accessibility and consequently its degradability. It is often shown that delignification can significantly improve the hydrolysis of lignocelluloses (Kim and Lee 2006; Martin et al. 2008; Ko et al. 2009; Hallac et al. 2010; Kuhad et al. 2010; Wu et al. 2011a, b; Chen et al. 2012).

Hemicellulose is also a physical barrier and reduces the accessibility of enzymes and bacteria to the cellulose fibers. Similar to lignin, hemicelluloses removal is often reported to improve the enzymatic hydrolysis of lignocelluloses (Tosun 1995; Kim et al. 2001; Um et al. 2003; Zhu et al. 2005; Canilha et al. 2011; Haverty et al. 2012; Pei et al. 2012).

However, it is difficult to follow the individual effects of lignin removal, since in most delignification methods a part of the hemicellulose is also removed, and vice versa. Hydrolysis improvement by both lignin and hemicellulose removal appears to be related to increase in the accessible surface area.

3.3.1.4 Degree of Polymerization of Cellulose

High DP of cellulose has been presented as a key parameter contributing in its low susceptibility to hydrolysis (Puri 1984; Kuo and Lee 2009a; Hallac and Ragauskas 2011). Longer glucan chains (higher DP) associated with higher number of hydrogen bonding consequently limit the accessibility of enzymes and bacteria to

the cellulose surfaces. Decreasing the DP resulted in higher saccharification to a certain extent (Puri 1984). In some cases, it was shown that cellulose DP plays a more important role in the hydrolysis compared to its crystallinity (Puri 1984). As expected, the shorter cellulose chains (lower DP) are more susceptible to hydrolysis than longer chains (Zhang and Lynd 2005).

However, it is not easily possible to measure the cellulose DP without changes in its properties. Isolation and dissolution of cellulose techniques come with significant changes in the DP of cellulose. An ideal DP measurement technique should be able to fractionate cellulose, dissolve it, and analyze its DP values without its derivatization; however, such a method has not been developed yet (Hallac and Ragauskas 2011).

3.3.1.5 Hemicellulose Acetylation

Deacetylation of lignocellulosic materials, specially the extensively acetylated lignocelluloses, was reported to improve the digestibility (Teixeira et al. 2000; Kim and Holtzapple 2006; Kumar and Wyman 2009a; Zhao and Liu 2011). Acetyl groups of the hemicellulose are attached to lignin and hinder the cellulose and hemicellulose hydrolysis. Like lignin, the acetyl groups are also considered as one of the barriers for enzymatic hydrolysis (Chang and Holtzapple 2000).

It was shown that deacetylation by dilute acid treatment resulted in five to seven times improvement in digestibility of aspen wood and wheat straw (Grohmann et al. 1986a, b). On the other hand, in some studies, acetyl content removal had minor effects on the digestibility, whereas lignin content and crystallinity had the greatest effects (Chang and Holtzapple 2000).

On the other hand, acetyl groups might inhibit the formation of hydrogen bonds between cellulose and enzymes (Chang and Holtzapple 2000; Teixeira et al. 2000). Increase in diameter of cellulose and change in the enzymes hydrophobicity were also suggested as reasons for inhibition of enzymatic degradation by acetyl groups (Pan et al. 2006b). Therefore, it was concluded that increasing the accessible surface area is not enough to make cellulose ready for efficient conversion, and deacetylation is also necessary (Yang et al. 2011).

Alternatively, it was shown that acetyl content or even cellulose crystallinity does not have negative effects when the biomass contains low amount of lignin. However, deacetylation is an important factor in digestibility of highly crystalline cellulose with moderate lignin content lignocelluloses (Chang and Holtzapple 2000). Nevertheless, this is not the case in hydrolysis of pure cellulose, e.g., cotton.

In acid or alkaline treatments, acetyl groups removal is accompanied with changes in the remaining lignin and hemicelluloses; thus, it is not possible to study the effects of deacetylation alone by general pretreatment and fractionation processes. The acetyl groups can be selectively removed by pretreatment with NMMO. Over 88 % of acetyl content of oak and spruce woods can be removed by NMMO pretreatment, while the lignin and hemicellulose contents were not changed. This pretreatment process resulted in significant improvement in

enzymatic hydrolysis (Shafiei et al. 2010). However, the effect of deacetylation was not analyzed in the previous studies and the improvement was related to lower crystallinity of the treated cellulose.

3.3.1.6 Cellulase Adsorption and Desorption

Hydrolysis of cellulose requires physical contact between cellulase and cellulose. The hydrolysis starts with adsorption of cellulases to the cellulose molecules; therefore, as expected, the hydrolysis rate is shown to be controlled by enzymes adsorption onto cellulose (Kumar and Wyman 2009a; Khodaverdi et al. 2012). A strong linear relation was found between cellulase adsorption and enzymatic hydrolysis rate (Karlsson et al. 1999; Kumar and Wyman 2009b).

The maximum adsorption capacity (σ) of cellulase that can be adsorbed to a biomass is shown to be a controlling factor for efficient hydrolysis. This parameter directly relates to the enzyme accessibility to active sites of cellulose in a substrate (Kumar and Wyman 2008). On the other hand, after the catalytic actions, the enzyme should desorb from the substrate, adsorb on another active part of cellulose, and start the hydrolytic actions again (Wald et al. 1984).

It is frequently reported that lignin is responsible for irreversible adsorption of hydrolytic enzymes on the lignocelluloses (Yang and Wyman 2006; Qing et al. 2010; Heiss-Blanquet et al. 2011). However, the amount of cellulase desorbed did not correlate with the residual lignin (Kumar and Wyman 2009a).

It is expected to be a relation between lignin and hemicellulose removal and the enzyme adsorption, since they are correlated to the accessible surface area. However, no clear correlation of hemicellulose and lignin removal with cellulase adsorption was found. It is suggested that the lignin-carbohydrates linkages removal plays the major role in increasing the accessible area for cellulase rather than hemicellulose and lignin removal (Kumar and Wyman 2009a).

Concluding Remarks and Suggestions About the Effective Parameters

The following points should be considered in the analyses of the effective parameters for lignocellulose biological conversion:

- More than one parameter is changed during pretreatment, and, therefore, several parameters should be taken into consideration to understand the most effective one. For instance, it is not enough to just analyze the crystallinity and show that it is reduced, since it might be one of the effective parameters, but not the dominant one.
- Lignin and hemicellulose contents should be analyzed. It can be related to the enzyme accessible surface area, water retention value, and cellulase adsorption.
- Acetyl group removal should be analyzed, since the improvement may be related to the inhibition of enzymes that form hydrogen bonds with cellulose.

- Analysis of DP by traditional methods may not be useful, since they change the DP.
- At least one of the analyses indicating the effects of accessible surface area should be conducted. The swelling capacity or water retention value is the easiest one, while the SS is more accurate.
- The crystallinity should be measured by X-ray or FTIR and related to the initial rate of hydrolysis.
- FTIR analysis can be used for analysis of biomass changes during the pretreatments. Changes of cellulose I to II and also the acetyl and lignin bonds in the biomass can be analyzed by FTIR; however, unfortunately, the results for lignocelluloses are not usually reproducible.
- SEM and macroscopic (Fig. 3.4) analyses are useful to provide qualitative observations about the changes. However, it is not possible to relate them to the effective parameters, e.g., to crystallinity and enzyme adsorption.

Finally, to be sure whether the pretreatment is effective, hydrolysis should be performed. The analyses above just help to understand the causes for the improvements.

3.4 Pretreatment Processes

A number of processes have been studied for pretreatment of lignocellulosic materials prior to enzymatic hydrolysis. A few were also suggested for improvement of bacterial and animal feed digestions. The methods are usually categorized into "Physical pretreatment", "Chemical pretreatment", "Biological pretreatment", and their combinations, and are summarized in Table 3.1.

The following is a list of the desirable pretreatment aspects (da Costa Sousa et al. 2009; Wyman et al. 2005; Yang and Wyman 2008; Taherzadeh and Karimi 2008; Chundawat et al. 2011a):

1. High product yields in subsequent enzymatic hydrolysis at low enzyme loadings or fermentation operations with minimal treatment cost.
2. Low or minimal chemical consumption for pretreatment, neutralization, and subsequent conditioning.
3. Possibility of recycling and reusing of the chemical used in the pretreatment.
4. Minimal waste production.
5. Limited size reduction needs since milling is an energy intensive and expensive process.
6. Fast reactions and/noncorrosive chemicals to minimize pretreatment reactor cost.
7. The concentration of hemicellulose sugars from pretreatment should be above 10 % to keep fermentation reactor size and reasonable level and facilitate downstream recovery.

Table 3.1 Different processes for pretreatment of lignocellulosic materials

Pretreatment method	Process
Physical treatment	Milling
	Sonication
	Irradiation
	Hydrothermal
	High pressure steaming
	Expansion
	Extrusion
	Pyrolysis
Chemical and physicochemical pretreatments	Alkali (*Sodium hydroxide, Liquid ammonia, and Ammonium sulfite*)
	Acid (*Sulfuric acid, Hydrochloric acid, Phosphoric acid*)
	Explosions [*Steam explosion, Ammonia fiber explosion* (*AFEX*), *CO_2 explosion, and SO_2 explosion*]
	Gas (*Chlorine dioxide, Nitrogen dioxide, Sulfur dioxide*)
	Oxidizing agents (*Hydrogen peroxide, Wet oxidation, and Ozonation*)
	Solvent extraction of lignin (*Ethanol–water extraction, Benzene-water extraction, Ethylene glycol extraction, and Butanol-water extraction*)
	Solvent (*Ionic liquids, Cellulosic solvents*)
Biological pretreatments	Fungi, actinomycetes, and bacteria

Taherzadeh and Karimi (2008, 2007)

8. Hydrolysate conditioning in preparation for subsequent biological steps should not form products that have processing or disposal challenges.
9. Pretreatment should facilitate recovery of lignin for conversion to valuable byproducts.

3.4.1 Physical Pretreatments

Changing the structure of biomass, typically increasing the enzyme accessible surface area, and reducing the degrees of polymerization of biomass, are possible by physical pretreatments such as size reduction (Zhu and Pan 2010; Harun et al. 2011). Different types of milling (e.g., ball milling, hammer milling, colloid milling, two-roll milling, and vibro energy milling), irradiations (e.g., by microwaves, gamma rays, electron beams, and ultrasonications), and extrusion (subjecting the biomass to heating, mixing, and shearing) are used for this propose (Taherzadeh and Karimi 2008; Zheng et al. 2009).

Modification of biomass structure with a single physical treatment is typically not enough for efficient enzymatic hydrolysis, although it can be enough for improvements in biogas production. Thus, the physical treatments are used prior to (or together with) chemical and biological treatments (Taherzadeh and Karimi 2008; Yu et al. 2009).

Size reduction is used prior to most chemical pretreatments. Although it can affect the efficiency of the process, it heavily impacts process economy. Most chemical pretreatments are not successful without size reduction. However, in explosive, organosolv, and solvent processes large particles may be used (Zhu and Pan 2010; Shafiei et al. 2012). Explosive pretreatments, such as steam explosions, need less energy than mechanical size reduction. However, the explosive pretreatments are not easily possible in laboratory investigations and there are some limitations in their scalability. Furthermore, they are not much effective for softwoods (Zhu and Pan 2010). In some organosolv processes, such as ethanol organosolv pretreatment, which is one of the most effective methods, size reduction is not necessary. The process is also effective for softwoods (Pan et al. 2005, 2006a, c, 2007a, b). However, the process is not yet considered as an alternative process for large-scale pretreatment of lignocelluloses.

Size reduction can also be performed after chemical pretreatment, as refereed post-chemical pretreatment size reduction. Post-chemical pretreatment size reduction has different advantages compared to that before chemical pretreatments. Besides more effectiveness, the main advantage is lower mechanical energy consumption. On the other hand, without pre-size reduction, it is possible to work with denser solids and consequently higher solid per liquid ratio in the process, resulting in more concentrated hemicellulose sugar liquid. Furthermore, separation of fibers from the pretreated mixture is easier after pretreatment (Zhu and Pan 2010). However, post size reduction is not applicable in all pretreatments.

Different irradiation processes have also been shown to improve the digestibility of lignocelluloses (Fernandez-Cegri et al. 2012). Treatment of biomass with high energy irradiation can modify the structure (Bak et al. 2009). However, its application is limited to less recalcitrant biomass such as rice straw (Bak et al. 2009). Ultrasonication, on the other hand, has been used at large scale for the improvement of digestibility of different organic material and sludge resulting in higher yield of biogas and lower amounts of residual sludge (Pham et al. 2009; Elbeshbishy et al. 2011).

Combined irradiation (mainly ultrasonic and microwave) and chemical pretreatments also have been shown to improve digestibility than a single chemical pretreatment. The irradiations can work in conjunction with NaOH pretreatment (Rodrigues et al. 2011; Singh et al. 2011), ionic liquid pretreatment (Ha et al. 2011; Ninomiya et al. 2012), and ammonia pretreatment (Chen et al. 2012).

3.4.2 Chemical Pretreatments

Chemical pretreatment is treatment of the lignocelluloses using chemicals to modify the crystalline structure of cellulose and remove and/or modify hemicelluloses and lignin (Taherzadeh and Karimi 2008; Zhu and Pan 2010). There are several reviews and chapter books which present and compare chemical pretreatments (McMillan 1994; Wyman 1996; Galbe and Zacchi 2007; Taherzadeh

and Karimi 2008; Alvira et al. 2010; Zhu et al. 2010; Zhu and Pan 2010; Mora-Pale et al. 2011; Hendriks and Zeeman 2009).

There are also some pretreatments referred to as "physico-chemical pretreatments", where a chemical pretreatment is combined with a physical treatment. The physical treatment is typically a mechanical treatment (mainly size reduction) or explosion. The explosion can play a size reduction role in these processes. Here, details and progresses in the most effective and widely used processes, i.e., alkali, acid, and solvent pretreatments, are reviewed. However, this does not mean that other processes are less important. Understanding the mechanism and the details of the reactions may help for further improvement of the processes.

3.4.2.1 Alkaline Pretreatment

NaOH alkali pretreatment for improving in vitro digestibility of straws by ruminants are found at least since 1919 (Millett et al. 1976). Alkali pretreatment refers to the application of an alkaline solution such as NaOH, $Ca(OH)_2$, or ammonia to modify the structure and composition of lignocelluloses (Deschamps et al. 1996; Zhao et al. 2008b; Cheng et al. 2008; Glaus and Van Loon 2008; Martin et al. 2008; Mirahmadi et al. 2010).

Alkaline processes are among the most efficient pretreatment processes, especially for hardwoods and agricultural residues. The alkaline pretreatment can remove or modify lignin and hemicellulose and increase the porosity of lignocelluloses (Tarkow and Feist 1969). Nevertheless, the treatment is a very complicated process. It involves different reactions, dissolution of polysaccharides, and hydrolysis and decomposition of polysaccharides (Fengel and Wegener 1984). The alkali treatment of cellulosic materials is an old process, which was the focus of the pulp and paper industries and research, so-called mercerization (Takai and Colvin 1978).

These treatments can result in low amounts of residual lignin, along with reduced crystallinity. Intraparticle porosity and channel size are also increased by alkali pretreatment (McMillan 1992).

The efficacy of dilute NaOH pretreatment is higher for straws, lower for hardwoods, and very low for softwoods. This is related to the lignin type and content in these materials (McMillan 1992). The alkali pretreatment can also reduce the cellulose DP (Fengel and Wegener 1984).

Alkali treatments are among the pretreatments that increase the swelling capacity of lignocelluloses (McMillan 1992), which can be due to lignin removal. On the other hand, alkali treatment (e.g., by NaOH) enhances the polyionic character of the pretreated lignocelluloses, which is related to the diffusion of sodium ions into the lignocellulose. These ions remain in the lignocellulose and act as a countercharge to carboxylate ions. This polyionic character of the pretreated materials promotes swelling. This property can be incorporated even by acid washing in which the sodium ions are displaced by protons (McMillan 1992). However, the ammonia pretreatment makes lower swelling characteristics than

NaOH, because of reduced polyionic character. Nevertheless, chemically combined nitrogen or residual ammonia contribute to overall nitrogen content, which improves the value of lignocelluloses as a ruminant feed (McMillan 1992).

NaOH pretreatment processes can be classified into severe and moderate conditions processes. In severe conditions processes, the concentration of NaOH is low (0.5–4 %), but a high temperature and pressure is used, and recycling of NaOH is not usually possible (Cheng et al. 2008; Mirahmadi et al. 2010). Its mechanism is reactive destruction and solubilization of lignin and hemicellulose. However, at moderate conditions, high NaOH concentration (6–20 %) is applied at ambient pressure and low temperatures (e.g., at 0 °C) (Mirahmadi et al. 2010; Wu et al. 2011a, b). Dissolution of cellulose at these conditions is the main phenomena (Zhao et al. 2008b). This dissolution needs high concentration of NaOH (at least 6–8 % depending on temperature). The processes employing high sodium hydroxide concentrations do not remove much lignin, but the NaOH solution may be reused. However, the pretreatment is not very effective on softwoods (Mirahmadi et al. 2010).

Effect of Alkali Treatments on Polysaccharides

Partial degradation of cellulose and hemicellulose is possible during alkali pretreatment. A large number of reactions may take place at elevated temperature in the alkali conditions. The most important reactions are (Sjostrom 1977; Fengel and Wegener 1984; Pérez and Samain 2010):

- Dissolution of nondegraded polysaccharides;
- Formation of alkali-stable end-groups referred to as peeling reactions of end groups (peeling-off);
- Hydrolysis of glycosidic bonds and acetyl groups;
- Decomposition of dissolved polysaccharides.

While the most important reactions are peeling at temperatures about 100 °C, the alkali hydrolytic reactions are considerable at temperatures above 150 °C. Similar to acid pretreatment, hydrolysis and degradation of hemicelluloses are much faster than cellulose in alkali treatment. However, xylans are more stable than glucomannans. The easy cleavage of arabinose side groups in softwood xylans has a stabling effect against many alkali reactions, since with loss of the side groups an alkali-stable end groups, mainly metasaccharinic acid end group, is formed (Fengel and Wegener 1984). The endwise peeling continues to degradation until a competing reaction, so-called stopping reactions, takes place that terminates the degradation. The major stopping reactions start with hydroxyl elimination from the degrading intermediates and convert the intermediate into alkali-stable metasaccharinic acid end group. Without the stopping reaction, whole cellulose and hemicellulose may be decomposed by peeling (Henderson 1970; Yoneda et al. 2008).

While the alkali treatment can liberate mainly acetic acid (acetyl groups from hemicellulose backbone) and some small amounts of other dicarboxylic acids, in

severe conditions the degradation can result in formation of formic acid as an end product (Henderson 1970). However, the rate of hydrolysis in alkali pretreatment is much slower than acid pretreatment (Fengel and Wegener 1984).

Overall, during alkali pretreatment, two main reactions take place (Fengel and Wegener 1984; Henderson 1970):

- Hydrolytic cleavage of polysaccharides, which can produce new reducing end groups that can be easily degraded, and
- formation of alkali-stable end groups.

Alkali treatment is among the most widely used methods for pulping. Polysaccharide stabilization during the alkali treatment is important in pulping since this can increase the pulp yield. It was found that some additives, such as polysulfides, sodium borohydride, hydrogen sulfide, and anthraquinone, could stabilize polysaccharides against alkali peeling (Procter and Wiekenkamp 1969; Biermann 1996; Aravamuthan 2004; Biswas et al. 2011). Effects of these additives, however, have yet not been investigated in lignocelluloses pretreatment.

The released sugars, e.g., glucose and xylose, may result in degradation products under alkali pretreatment. The treatment of xylose and glucose with 2.5 % NaOH at 96 °C under nitrogen atmosphere resulted in several aliphatic degradation products together with several cyclic enols and phenolic compounds (Forsskahl et al. 1976). The alkali pretreatment temperature can be a very important parameter. It can also affect the molecular weights of resultant hemicellulosic polymers. For instance, pretreatment with 4 % NaOH solution for 18 h was more effective at 40 °C than 20 °C for releasing mannose, arabinose, rhamnose, and uronic acids from bagasse hemicellulose. However, more xylose, glucose, and galactose formed at lower temperature (20 °C) compared to higher temperature (40 °C) (Xu et al. 2006). The average molecular weight of hemicellulosic polymers was also reduced more when lower temperature was used; thus, mild alkali pretreatment can efficiently reduce the molecular weight of hemicellulose (Xu et al. 2006).

Cellulose partly degrades during alkali pretreatments. The reason can be either chemical or physical stopping. Chemical stopping is the formation of a nonreactive metasaccharinic end group by reactive interim products. On the other hand, when the degradation reaches crystalline regions of the polysaccharide chains, the peeling reaction cannot proceed further for steric reasons, referred to as physical stopping (Glaus and Van Loon 2008).

Effect of Alkali Treatment on Cellulose Structure

The changes in cellulose structure by NaOH treatment are (Mansour et al. 1972):

- Change in crystallinity by mercerization;
- Changes in distribution of crystalline and amorphous regions;
- Depolymerization.

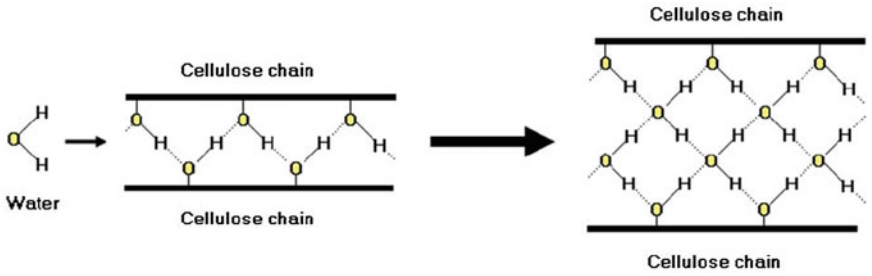


Fig. 3.5 Swelling of cellulose

Effects of cold and hot NaOH pretreatments on crystallinity depend on the substrate. Cold alkali pretreatment was shown to be more effective in reducing crystallinity index of Rag and Kraft paper wood pulp than hot treatment (Mansour et al. 1972).

The crystallinity of cellulose changes in alkali treatments. When cellulose is treated with alkali solutions, the cellulose swells to various extents depending on the temperature, alkali concentrations, and pretreatment retention time (Fig. 3.5). By treatment in the presence of Na^+ cations in NaOH pretreatment, 300 % cellulose swelling was observed in the form of $(C_6H_{10}O_5)_6(NaOH)(H_2O)_3$, while LiOH and KOH increased the swelling up to 250 % (Fengel and Wegener 1984). Na^+ cations are small ions that are able to enter the smallest pores in the cellulose and move through the cellulose (Deshpande et al. 2008). Complete de-crystallization of cellulose is possible for high crystalline celluloses.

On the other hand, in NaOH pretreatment, complete transformation of cellulose I into cellulose II is possible (Fig. 3.6). Meanwhile, only partial or nontransformation may occur in the cellulose by pretreatment with other alkali solutions (Pérez and Samain 2010). Cellulose II can also be obtained from cellulose I by the processes of regeneration and mercerization (Festucci-Buselli et al. 2007). In strong alkali treatment process, cellulose I can highly swell due to the formation of alkali–cellulose complexes, and recrystallize after washing with water to form the cellulose II.

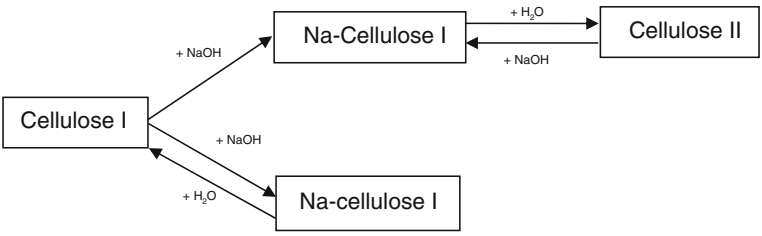


Fig. 3.6 Transformation of cellulose in NaOH treatment [adapted from Fengel and Wegener (1984)]

Strong alkali treatment (mercerization) has been investigated thoroughly for conversion of native cellulose (cellulose I) into cellulose II (regenerated cellulose) (Takai and Colvin 1978).

Re-crystallization, transformation of cellulose I into cellulose II, is observed in many pretreatment methods. Several studies have noted increases in crystallinity of cellulosic materials during pretreatment with alkali, steam, and acid chlorite (Gümüskaya and Usta 2006). Transformation of cellulose I into cellulose II in the residue cellulose is observed in supercritical water treatment, in spite of considerable degradation (Ago et al. 2004). Transformation of cellulose I into cellulose II is also possible by milling. When cellulose containing more than 30–50 wt % water is ball milled, cellulose I was transformed into cellulose II (Ago et al. 2004). Although the cellulose II is also a crystalline form of cellulose, it is much easier to hydrolyze than cellulose I.

Effect of Alkali Treatment on Lignin

Hydroxyl ions are responsible for delignification in alkali pretreatment. Hydrogen sulfide can also be involved if available in the reaction media (sulfate pulping). In alkali treatment of lignocelluloses, three groups of reactions can take place: fragmentations, degradation and dissolution, and condensations of lignin. Condensations refer to the reactions of lignin units to fragments with increased molecular weight and low solubility (Patt et al. 2011). The effects and reactions in alkali treatment on lignin are complicated because of the different stability and behavior of different types of linkages and structural elements in this hetroploymer. A small portion of lignin may degrade by cleavage of less frequent linkages, leading to a reduction or total elimination of side chains. Small molecules, e.g., methanol and formaldehyde, can be the products of alkali delignification (Fengel and Wegener 1984).

Combination of Alkali Pretreatment with Other Methods

Recent studies showed that a combination of alkali pretreatments with other treatments can significantly improve hydrolysis. A combination of steam explosion, dilute acid, oxidative treatments, wet milling, microwave, and ultrasonication with alkali treatment resulted in better enzymatic hydrolysis sugar yields than alkali treatment alone (He et al. 2010; Keshwani and Cheng 2010; Rodrigues et al. 2011).

Since the alkali treatment is mainly used to remove lignin, it can be combined with other methods for other effects or improvements. For instance, alkali treatment followed by explosion is more effective than alkali treatments alone. The explosion cannot change the crystallinity, but it is effective in increasing the surface area and reducing the degree of polymerization of cellulose (Puri and Pearce 1986). The steam explosion of sugarcane bagasse followed by alkaline delignification resulted in higher lignin (91 %) and hemicellulose (72 %) removal (Rocha et al. 2012).

Dilute sulfuric acid pretreatment of rice hulls followed by delignification with NaOH led to a major lignin removal, while the cellulose content increased to 68.5–70.5 %. The combined process resulted in more than nine times improvement in the enzymatic hydrolysis (Martin et al. 2008). In another study, dilute acid pretreatment of empty palm fruit bunch fiber followed by NaOH pretreatment resulted in a novel substrate for enzymatic digestibility (Kim et al. 2012).

Alkaline/oxidative (e.g., NaOH/H_2O_2) mixtures are effective for oxidizing and pretreatments with these mixtures are able to selectively remove lignin. They can effectively enhance the enzymatic hydrolysis of biomass (Cheng et al. 2008). Curreli et al. (1997) presented a mild alkaline/oxidative pretreatment method at low temperature (25–40 °C). They first subjected the biomass to an alkaline (1 % NaOH for 24 h at 40 °C) process for mainly solubilizing hemicellulose and rendering the lignocellulose more accessible to further pretreatment. In the second stage, alkaline/oxidative pretreatment (1 % NaOH and 0.3 % H_2O_2 for 24 h at room temperature) was performed for solubilizing and oxidizing lignin to minor inhibitory compounds. About 90 % cellulose recovery with 81 % degradation of lignin was obtained.

An efficient and environmentally friendly process for pretreatment of corn stalk with active oxygen (O_2 and H_2O_2) followed by a treatment with a recoverable solid alkali (MgO) effectively removed lignin and extractives, and increased the accessible surface area (Pang et al. 2012).

3.4.2.2 Acid Pretreatments

Acid-catalyzed treatment is known to be one of the most effective methods for lignocelluloses pretreatment (McMillan 1994; Wyman 1996; Taherzadeh and Karimi 2008). This is the most applied method for cleavage of glycosidic bonds in hemicellulose (Jacobsen and Wyman 2000). The cleavage of the glycosidic and glucuronosyl linkages can occur under relatively mild conditions while decomposition of the liberated monosaccharides can only take place at severe conditions (Bertaud et al. 2002).

In an acidic media at elevated temperatures, the cellulose structure becomes unstable due to the breakage of hydrogen bonding, which is the primary force that holds the cellulose chains together. After disruption of the cellulose crystalline structure, the acid molecules can penetrate into the cellulose. The acid-soluble lignin, forming a lignin-carbohydrate complex, can also appear in the liquid phase (Xiang et al. 2003). Dilute acid hydrolysis can efficiently break hemicellulose-lignin linkages and hydrolyze glycosidic bonds in hemicellulose (Grohmann et al. 1986b). After the treatment, the liquid solution mainly contains hemicelluloses and the solid part is mainly composed of cellulose and lignin. One problem in acid hydrolysis is partial degradation of sugars, mainly xylose to furfural. A part of xylose remains in the residue (Grohmann et al. 1986a, b).

The remaining cellulose after dilute acid hydrolysis of lignocelluloses, called hydrocellulose, contains lower DP but higher crystallinity in many lignocellulosic materials (Fengel and Wegener 1984). However, this increase in crystallinity

depends on the substrate and on the applied conditions. For instance, for cotton, it showed a decrease in the crystallinity (Mugnolo et al. 1988).

The acid used in the process is usually sulfuric acid (Harris et al. 1984; Torget et al. 1991; Lis et al. 2000; Nguyen et al. 2000; Kim and Lee 2002; Soderstrom et al. 2003; Um et al. 2003; Saha et al. 2005; Sun and Cheng 2005; Ewanick et al. 2007; Sassner et al. 2008), while other acids such as hydrochloric (Titchener and Guha 1981; Higgins and Ho 1982), phosphoric (Um et al. 2003), nitric (Fengel and Wegener 1984), and trifluoroacetic (Fengel et al. 1978; Fengel and Wegener 1979) acid have also been used both for pretreatment before enzymatic hydrolysis and for saccharification itself.

Effective parameters in dilute acid pretreatment are (Wyman 1996; Kim and Lee 2002; Xiang et al. 2003):

1. Acid concentration;
2. Type of acid;
3. Temperature (and correspondingly pressure at high temperatures);
4. Retention time (heat up time, retention time at maximum temperature, and depressurizing time) during the process;
5. The temperature profile;
6. Properties of lignocellulose (the physical state of the cellulose);
7. Intra-particle acid diffusion within lignocellulosic biomass particles;
8. Presoaking of lignocelluloses with acid.

Once cellulose is hydrolyzed to glucose, three reactions can occur that can reduce the glucose yield (Jacobsen and Wyman 2000; Xiang et al. 2003):

- Glucose–lignin interaction (formation of complex with acid-soluble lignin);
- Decomposition of glucose; and
- Reversion reactions.

The disappearance of glucose during acid hydrolysis of lignocellulosic biomass is higher than expected. The suggested reason is recombination of glucose with acid soluble lignin in the hydrolyzates (Xiang et al. 2003):

(Acid Soluble Lignin) + Glucose → (Acid Soluble Lignin)-Glucose

At elevated temperatures, the presence of protons causes the formation of intermediate carbonium ions that have a high nucleophilic reaction affinity. Therefore, lignin fragmentation or lignin condensation reactions may occur. These acid soluble lignin active sites can result in condensation reactions between acid soluble lignin and glucose (Xiang et al. 2003).

Different types of reactors are used for dilute acid treatments including batch, plug flow, percolation, countercurrent, and shrinking-bed reactors (Taherzadeh and Karimi 2007).

In spite of the wide application of dilute acid pretreatments, the process has several serous limitations (Yang and Wyman 2008):

- Corrosive environment and expensive material of construction;
- Degradation reaction products such as furfural and HMF;

- Necessity of liquid phase detoxification for fermentation;
- Acid neutralization and the gypsum formed present difficulties in downstream processing;
- Although the sulfuric acid is cheap, neutralization cost and $CaSO_4$ disposal cost must be included;
- Remainder of lignin in the substrate and binding of enzymes to lignin needs high enzyme use and costs;
- High substrate concentrations are impossible (it was found that complete hydrolysis is not possible at high substrate concentrations, because of the redistribution of lignin within the substrate and the structural modifications (Ramos et al. 1992).

Dilute Acid Pretreatment Followed by Explosion

In some pretreatment processes, it is found that explosive decompression (sudden reduction of pressure) exerts a mechanical shear on the lignocelluloses, which may increase the specific surface area of the biomass by defibrating individual cellulose microfibrils or by expanding the lignocellulose matrix (McMillan 1992; Brownell et al. 1986; Shimizu 1988; Ballesteros et al. 2000). On the other hand, it was also shown that explosion is unnecessary in steam explosion pretreatment. Brownell et al. (1986) showed that the explosion part of steam explosion pretreatment contributes nothing to the enzymes accessibility, and consequently had no effect on fermentation. Morjanoff and Gray (1987) found no significant effect of explosion for dilute acid pretreatment of sugarcane bagasse prior to enzymatic saccharification. The pressure usually does not have any significant effects on the liquid chemical reactions. However, when the pressure suddenly decreases, the water in the biomass changes to vapor, rashly escapes, and disrupts the biomass structure. However, in a severe acid treatment, the process is so effective that the pretreated biomass does not need further disruptions.

Effect of Acid Pretreatment on Cellulose, Hemicellulose, and Lignin

In mild pretreatments, the acid can solubilize some of the amorphous cellulose and increase the pore sizes in the residue. The acid treatment can affect the crystallinity up to a certain level (Kumar et al. 2009). However, recrystallization and increase in crystallinity can also happen in a severe acid treatment. Although the crystalline regions of cellulose resist the attack of acid in dilute acid treatment, the process can reduce the DP up to a certain level, called the leveling-off DP (Fengel and Wegener 1984; Knappert et al. 1980).

Possibility of high hemicellulosic sugars recovery, 80–90 %, is one of the major advantages of dilute acid pretreatment (Yang and Wyman 2008). The extent of acetyl ester removal is quite high (e.g., 90 %) besides little disruption of other

fractions (i.e., lignin) (Grohmann et al. 1989). As xylan becomes deacetylated, the cellulose becomes more accessible and more digestible (Knappert et al. 1980).

Only little lignin dissolves in dilute acid process, mainly acid soluble lignin. However, the residual lignin is disrupted and significant effects have been observed in increasing the enzymatic susceptibility of cellulose (Foston and Ragauskas 2010; Pingali et al. 2010). Therefore, it is believed that acid pretreatment dose not dissolve lignin but some condensation reactions may occur (Fengel and Wegener 1984). Addition of acid in steam treatment for batch pretreatment showed reduced lignin removal, although it increased cellulose digestibility (Yang and Wyman 2004). Since dilute acid pretreatment can effectively enhance the enzymatic hydrolysis without efficient removal of lignin, it is suggested that lignin removal is not necessary for effective conversion of cellulose (Donohoe et al. 2008). Besides partial depolymerization, repolymerization of lignin has also been claimed during hemicellulose hydrolysis (Yang and Wyman 2004).

A large fraction of lignin reacts to soluble products of hydrolyzate, and if left in the reactor, reacts further to form insoluble species. Both lignin dissolution and precipitation can take place in acidic conditions. In dilute acid pretreatment, the lignin can condense onto the biomass surface, and this should be avoided in pretreatment (Yang and Wyman 2004).

Rate of Hydrolysis of Carbohydrates and Decomposition of Sugars

Five carbon sugars acid hydrolysis rate, e.g., xylose, is faster than hexoses. The relative acid hydrolysis rates of different sugars are shown in Table 3.2. As can be seen in the table, the hydrolysis rate of hemicellulosic polymer constituent sugars, xylose, mannose, galactose, and arabinose are much higher than glucose (Saeman 1945, 1949).

Dehydration of produced sugars is unavoidable in acidic hydrolysis conditions that can result in loss of sugars. A series of degradation products can form. The main degradation products are furfural produced from pentoses and uronic acids and hydroxymethylfurfural furfural (HMF) from hexoses. HMF can also convert into levulinic and formic acid (Taherzadeh and Karimi 2007).

Different models have been proposed for hydrolysis of hemicellulose in dilute acid treatments. The models are summarized in Fig. 3.7. A simple basic model (Model A) considered depolymerization of pentosan to xylose and then to

Table 3.2 Relative rate of hydrolysis (Shafizadeh 1963)

Monomer	Rate of hydrolysis compared to mannose
Mannose	1
Glucose	0.4
Galactose	3.9
Xylose	3.8
Arabinose	3.8

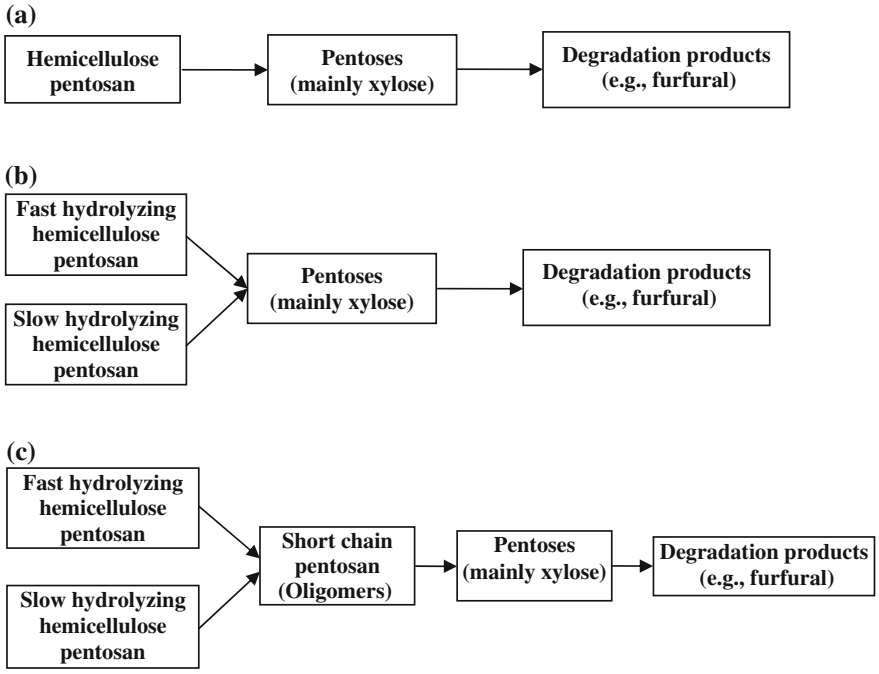


Fig. 3.7 Different models for acid hydrolysis of pentosans in hemicelluloses

degradation products (Saeman 1945). Kobayashi and Sakai (1956) observed that the rate of hydrolysis reaction decreased significantly after conversion of 70 % of xylose (Model B). The fast and slow hydrolyzing fractions differ in different substrates, typically in the range of 65 and 35 %, respectively, for most materials (Shen and Wyman 2011). However, they do not consider the intermediates between hemicellulose to xylose formation in this model (Model B). The model was further modified by considering the oligomers formation and breakdown to xylose monomers (Model C). This model seems to be more realistic which includes the role of oligomers (Jacobsen and Wyman 2000).

Different models were also proposed for dilute acid hydrolysis of cellulose (Jacobsen and Wyman 2000). However, the main purpose in dilute acid pretreatment is hemicellulose removal and less cellulose degradations; thus, the treatment conditions should be severe enough to hydrolyze hemicellulose fraction but not to hydrolyze the cellulose fraction.

3.4.2.3 Pretreatment with Solvents

Solvent pretreatments are based on either modification of cellulose crystalline structure or reducing the lignin content of the lignocellulosic materials. Using cellulose solvents such as phosphoric acid, NaOH/urea, N-methylmorpholine-N-

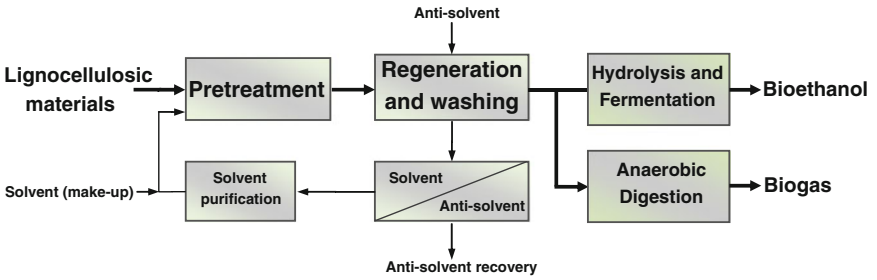


Fig. 3.8 A schematic process of biofuels production from lignocellulosic materials using cellulose solvents pretreatment

oxide (NMMO), and certain ionic liquids (ILs) for pretreatment showed significant improvements in the enzymatic hydrolysis of lignocelluloses. One of the main advantages of the solvent pretreatment is minimum destruction of fermentable sugars. On the other hand, use of strong acid or base results in production of toxic pollutants to the environment. However, NMMO and a number of ILs are green solvents that were recently introduced for pretreatment of lignocelluloses (Dogan and Hilmioglu 2009; Kuo and Lee 2009b; Jeihanipour et al. 2010a, b; Li et al. 2010a, b; Lucas et al. 2010; Nguyen et al. 2010; Qi et al. 2010; Shafiei et al. 2010; Fu and Mazza 2011; Mora-Pale et al. 2011; Sant'Ana da Silva et al. 2011; Shafiei et al. 2011; Shill et al. 2011; Bose et al. 2012; Geng and Henderson 2012; Hong et al. 2012; Khodaverdi et al. 2012; Lynam et al. 2012). These efficient cellulose solvents are considered as "green" chemicals because of their low toxicity to humans and to the environment (Meister and Wechsler 1998; Rosenau et al. 2001; Mora-Pale et al. 2011). Pretreatment with these solvents has the advantage of moderate conditions, no requirement for neutralization, and low production of inhibitory compounds. Furthermore, the ability to recycle and reuse NMMO in industrial scale and for ILs in the bench scale have been proven (Li et al. 2009; Jeihanipour et al. 2010a, b). In pretreatment with solvents, the materials are treated with cellulose solvents and then an antisolvent, which can be water or alcohol, is added to regenerate the materials. Therefore, the solvents can be separated from solid and reused in the process (Fig. 3.8).

Ionic Liquids

Recently, different ILs have been extensively used for pretreatment of lignocellulosic materials. Ionic liquids are organic salts composed of organic cations and either organic or inorganic anions. Four groups of cations are mainly used for categorizing ILs: quaternary ammonium, N-alkylpyridinium, N-alkyl-isoquinolinium, and 1-alkyl-3-methylimidazolium (Liu et al. 2012). Besides being a powerful solvent for cellulose, ILs have unique properties such as low vapor

pressure and high thermal and chemical stability. The desired property is adjustable by the selection of proper cation and anion.

Shortly after pioneer investigations on the capability of ILs for cellulose dissolution (Swatloski et al. 2001), ILs were introduced for pretreatment of cellulose. About a 50-fold increase in the initial rate of hydrolysis of pure cellulose by [BMIM][Cl] opened a new research area in the pretreatment (Dadi et al. 2006).

[BMIM][Cl] and [EMIM][Ac] are among the most efficient ILs for pretreatment of lignocellulosic materials. Pretreatment is usually performed at 3–5 % solid loading, temperature of 110–160 °C, duration of 15 min to 5 h, and at atmospheric pressure. A high yield of cellulose saccharification (80–96 %) has been reported for IL pretreatment of switchgrass, triticale straw, maple wood, corn stover, kenaf, bagasse, and eucalyptus (Table 3.3).

Increase in pretreatment temperature (up to 130 °C) and time (up to about 5 h) improved the cellulose hydrolysis yield (Liu and Chen 2006; Lee et al. 2009; Li et al. 2009). However, pretreatment at severe conditions, i.e., at high temperature or for a very long time, showed no significant increase in the yield (Dadi et al. 2006), but reduced the amount of recovered carbohydrates (Lee et al. 2009; Fu and Mazza 2011).

Certain ILs have the ability of cellulose dissolution, structural modification, and even its direct hydrolysis (Liu et al. 2012). Partial conversion of cellulose I into cellulose II and reduction in cellulose crystallinity after pretreatment was reported (Dadi et al. 2006; Kuo and Lee 2009a; Zhao et al. 2010; Fu and Mazza 2011; Jeihanipour 2011; Silva et al. 2011; Khodaverdi et al. 2012). Increase in the accessible surface area for the hydrolytic enzymes adsorption was also observed (Zhao et al. 2010; Silva et al. 2011).

Depending on the nature of anion, ILs can dissolve lignin as well (Pu et al. 2007). Lignin removal is reported as another mechanism for enhanced enzymatic hydrolysis by some ILs together with reduction of the crystallinity (Lee et al. 2009; Zhao et al. 2010; Fu and Mazza 2011).

Effect of IL Pretreatment on Cellulose

Since the pretreatment with ILs is based on dissolution of cellulose, the ability of IL for dissolution of cellulose and lignocelluloses may relate to the efficiency of the pretreatment. Factors affecting the ability of IL for cellulose dissolution are the size of the anions and cations. Similar ILs with larger cations have less ability to form hydrogen bonds with cellulose (Zhao et al. 2008a; Mäki-Arvela et al. 2010). Thermochemical radii of halogen anions showed the same effect on the cellulose solubility in halogen containing anions. Therefore, [BMIM][Cl] is able to dissolve cellulose; while, [BMIM][PF6] and [BMIM][BF4] are unable to dissolve cellulose (Mäki-Arvela et al. 2010). However, despite the ion size, combination of the proper cation and anion and their interactions may result in a more powerful solvent. For example, [EMIM][Ac] is a better cellulose solvent than [EMIM][Cl] (Zavrel et al. 2009). Hydrogen bonds basicity, which is measured as β-parameter

Table 3.3 Pretreatment of some lignocellulosic materials with ILs

Ionic liquid	Conditions[a]	Raw material	Enzymatic hydrolysis	References
[BMIM][Cl]	5 %, 130–150 °C, 10 min–3 h	Cellulose	Similar results in all conditions, over 85 % conversion	Dadi et al. (2006)
[EMIM][DEP][b]	4 %, 130 °C, 30 min	Wheat straw	55 % yield over 53 % after 5 reuses of IL	Li et al. (2009)
[BMIM][Cl]	5 %, 130 °C, 20 min	Cotton	About 90 %	Kuo and Lee (2009a)
[EMIM][Ac]	5 %, 50–130 °C, 0.5–32 h	Maple wood	95 % (130 °C and 90 min) 97 % (90 °C and 32 h)	Lee et al. (2009)
[Me(OEt)3-Et3 N][Ac][b]	1 %, 110 °C, 15 min	Switchgrass	96 %	Zhao et al. (2010)
[EMIM][Ac]	3 %, 160 °C, 3 h	Switchgrass	96 %	Li et al. (2010a, b, c)
Ammonia+[EMIM][Ac][c]	5 %, 130 °C, 24 h	Rice straw	97 %	Nguyen et al. (2010)
50 % [EMIM][Ac] solution[d]	3 %, 150 °C, 90 min	Triticale straw	81 %	Fu and Mazza (2011)
[EMIM][Ac]	3 %, 160 °C, 3 h	Corn stover	Over 90 %	Li et al. (2011)
[EMIM][Ac]	5 %, 120 °C, 2 h	Sugarcane bagasse	Over 90 %	Sant'Ana da Silva et al. (2011)
[EMIM][Ac]+Ultrasonic[b]	5 %, 25 °C, 120 min	Kenaf powder	86 %	Ninomiya et al. (2012)
[EMIM][Ac]	5 %, 120 °C, 10 min	Bagasse and Eucalyptus	Over 70 %	Uju et al. (2012)

[a] The numbers are solid loading (wt %), temperature, and pretreatment time

[b] The IL presented is the most efficient among several studied ILs

[c] Pretreatment was conducted in two steps. The material (10 %) was first treated with 10 % ammonia for 6 h at 100 °C. The washed and dried materials were then treated with IL

[d] Pure IL to 5 % solution of IL was examined. Fifty percent solution was the most efficient one

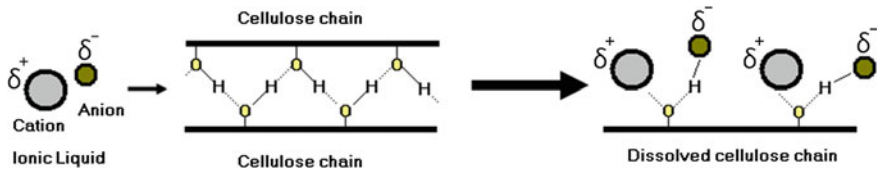


Fig. 3.9 Dissolution mechanism of cellulose in IL

in Kamlet-Taft equation, and Hildebrand solubility parameter are other factors affecting the ability of ILs in cellulose dissolution (Mäki-Arvela et al. 2010).

Although it has not been thoroughly investigated yet, the plausible mechanism of cellulose dissolution with ILs is presented in Fig. 3.9. NMR relaxation measurements confirmed the hydrogen bonding between the carbohydrates hydroxyl group and chloride ion from [BMIM][Cl], which lead to disruption of the hydrogen bond network in the dissolved cellulose (Moulthrop et al. 2005; Remsing et al. 2006). Hydrogen bonding between cellobiose hydroxyl groups and both cation and anion of [EMIM][Ac] were also confirmed by NMR studies (Zhang et al. 2010). Molecular dynamic studies showed similar hydrogen bonding between cellulose and acetate anion, and hydrophobic interaction between cellulose and the cation of [EMIM][Ac] (Liu et al. 2010).

Other factors to be considered when choosing an IL for pretreatment are the price, physical properties, availability, toxicity, corrosivity, biodegradability, and water tolerance (Mäki-Arvela et al. 2010). Among the ILs, [EMIM][Ac] and [BMIM][Cl], which are mostly used for pretreatment of lignocellulosic materials, are efficient solvents for cellulose and the former is an efficient solvent for lignocelluloses (Mäki-Arvela et al. 2010). Acetate-based ILs, e.g., [EMIM][Ac], exhibit less toxicity and corrosivity compared to halogen containing ILs, e.g., [BMIM][Cl]. [EMIM][Ac] is considered as a biodegradable solvent (Zavrel et al. 2009; Liebert 2010).

Several investigations on direct hydrolysis of cellulose or lignocelluloses with ILs are reported. These studies were conducted with or without addition of acid or metal chlorides as catalyst and resulted in 64–97 % yield of reducing sugars (Li and Zhao 2007; Li et al. 2008; Sievers et al. 2009; Binder and Raines 2010; Tao et al. 2010; Zhang et al. 2010).

Drawbacks of Pretreatment with ILs

Very high price of ILs is the main disadvantage of using these chemicals for pretreatment. The pretreatment with ILs is not industrially feasible if efficient (over 99 %) reuse is not possible. Besides, as they are recycled and reused, the efficiency of the ILs for pretreatment decreases. The presence of dissolved lignocellulosic compounds in the recycled ILs might contribute to the reduction in the efficiency of ILs; however, the mechanism is not clear yet (Li et al. 2010c; Shill et al. 2011).

On the other hand, ILs have negative effects on cellulase activity and affect the final yield of cellulose hydrolysis. Therefore, efficient removal of these compounds from pretreated materials is necessary (Zhao et al. 2009). However, ILs trapped inside the treated material reduces the washing efficiency and increases the amount of water required. Thus, reusing the water is also necessary. Otherwise, it consumes a huge amount of water and produces a huge amount of wastewater as well.

Pretreatment with NMMO

N-methylmorpholine-N-oxide (NMMO) is a cellulose solvent industrially used in the Lyocell process. In this modern and environmental friendly process, cellulose is spun into fiber using 85 % NMMO solution. The basic research on using NMMO for cellulose dissolution and fiber making was conducted during the 1970s, and since the 1990s it is being used in commercial scale Lyocell processes (Fink et al. 2001). However, since 2009, NMMO has been investigated for efficient pretreatment of lignocelluloses (Kuo and Lee 2009b), and in some cases, it has been shown to be more effective than ionic liquids (Poornejad et al. 2012).

NMMO with 83–87 % purity is able to dissolve cellulose, while increase in water content results in swelling and ballooning of cellulose at NMMO concentration of 79 and 73 %, respectively (Biganska and Navard 2003; Jeihanipour et al. 2010b). In the case of ethanol production, the pretreatment method employing 85 % NMMO, which is able to dissolve cellulose, was found to be more efficient while lower concentration of NMMO (ballooning and swelling mode) was found to be suitable for improvement of biogas production (Jeihanipour et al. 2010b).

The pretreatment conditions usually are: temperature 120–130 °C under atmospheric pressure (Table 3.4). Depending on the raw material and its size, the optimum pretreatment time would vary from 20 min to 5 h. Generally, pure cellulose or cellulose pulp requires less pretreatment time (Kuo and Lee 2009a; Wang et al. 2011) compared to wood and wood chips (Shafiei et al. 2010, 2011).

NMMO pretreatment was also used for improvement of biogas production (Jeihanipour et al. 2010b; Jeihanipour 2011; Teghammar et al. 2012. The pretreatment efficiently improved the methane yield of softwood spruce chips, milled spruce, rice straw, and triticale straw to 49, 95, 79, and 89 % of the theoretical yield, respectively, which was equal to 400–1,200 % improvement compared to methane from untreated materials. Furthermore, the digestion time was significantly decreased (Teghammar et al. 2012). Pretreatment of highly crystalline cellulose could also improve the methane yield. The pretreatment removed the rate limiting step from hydrolysis to the acetogenesis/methanogenesis phase. However, at high cellulose loadings (over 25 g/l), faster hydrolysis led to inhibition of biogas production, accumulation of volatile fatty acids, decrease in pH, and finally inhibition of the hydrolysis/acidogenesis phase. In order to overcome these problems, a two-stage digestion process was suggested (Jeihanipour 2011).

Table 3.4 Pretreatment of some lignocellulosic materials with NMMO

Conditions[a]	Raw material	Enzymatic hydrolysis and fermentation	References
1 %, 120 °C, 0.5–15 h	Highly crystaline cellulose	2.5 h pretreatment: 100 % saccharification yield, over 82 % ethanol yield	Jeihanipour et al. (2010b)
6 %, 90–130 °C, 1–3 h	Spruce and oak	83 and 72 % saccharification yield for Spruce and oakwood, 89 and 79 % ethanol yield	Shafiei et al. (2010)
5 %, 130 °C, 20 min	Cotton	Over 85 % saccharification yield	Kuo and Lee (2009a)
6 %, 130 °C, 1–5 h	Spruce and birch chips	88 and 92 % saccharification yield for Spruce and birch, 195 and 175 mg ethanol/g wood after 5 h pretreatment	Lennartsson et al. (2011)
5 %, 130 °C, 30 min	Cellulose pulp from populus tormentose	Over 80 % saccharification yield	Wang et al. (2011)

[a] The numbers are solid loading (wt %), temperature, and pretreatment time

Effect of NMMO Pretreatment on Cellulose

The pretreatment mechanism employing NMMO is based on the formation of strong hydrogen bonds between NMMO and cellulose (Fink et al. 2001; Zhao et al. 2008a). After addition of water, the hydrogen bonds between water and NMMO are stronger than NMMO cellulose, and therefore the dissolved cellulose is regenerated. The regenerated cellulose is less crystalline and more accessible to cellulolytic enzymes (Cuissinat and Navard 2006; Zhao et al. 2008a). In a study on pretreatment of pine wood with NMMO, linear correlation between overall glucan conversion rate and cellulose accessibility was found. However, reduction in crystallinity was linearly related to the initial hydrolysis rate rather than the overall glucan yield of hydrolysis. Structural studies confirmed reduction of lignin on the surface of wood flour after pretreatment as well as positive effects of increasing pretreatment time on cellulose accessibility (Liu et al. 2011). In pretreatment of pure cotton, increase in the amorphous structure was said to be the main reason for enhancement of enzymatic hydrolysis (Kuo and Lee 2009a).

Advantages and Disadvantages of Pretreatment with NMMO

The main advantage of NMMO-pretreatment is its high efficiency (over 80 % saccharification yield), minor degradation of raw materials, and negligible production of inhibitory compounds (Shafiei et al. 2010, 2011; Poornejad et al. 2012). NMMO is an environmentally friendly chemical and a wastewater containing

NMMO can be treated in conventional wastewater treatment plants (Meister and Wechsler 1998).

However, NMMO in concentrations above 5 and 25 g/l showed inhibition effects on enzymatic hydrolysis and fermentation by *S. cerevisiae,* respectively (Jeihanipour et al. 2010b; Shafiei et al. 2010). Therefore, the treated materials must be washed before enzymatic hydrolysis.

Techno-economic studies showed that efficient recycling of NMMO is required in order to have an economically feasible process for pretreatment of lignocellulosic materials with NMMO. However, certain side reactions, which are present in the Lyocell process, might affect the pretreatment system as well and lead to decomposition of NMMO and increase in stabilizer consumption (Rosenau et al. 2001). On the other hand, efficient removal of NMMO from the treated material by washing requires high amounts of water. This huge amount of water must be evaporated in an energy consuming process before reusing NMMO which is an energy intensive process (Shafiei et al. 2011).

3.5 Conclusion

Dilute acid treatment is among the most investigated pretreatment processes and is one of the leading options for application in industrial scales. Some of the drawbacks of the process can be minimized by optimization of reactors and effective parameters. However, the environmental impacts of the process, particularly the waste disposal, are unavoidable.

Alkaline processes are also very efficient for pretreatment. However, they are typically effective for hardwoods and agricultural residues. They can significantly change and modify the structure of lignocelluloses and render their hydrolysis. They are able to reduce lignin, hemicellulose, cellulose DP, and crystallinity, and increase the accessible surface area, swelling capacity, and enzyme adsorptions. However, the treatment is complicated and the effective parameters should carefully be optimized, otherwise they result in adverse effects. Furthermore, these processes typically need high amounts of water for washing the residue, and the chemical recycling and reuse is also difficult.

Pretreatment with cellulosic solvents is probably the most effective method. High carbohydrate recoveries, no toxic pollutants production, environmentally friendly, no neutralization requirement, and performing under moderate conditions are among the advantages of these pretreatments. However, the prices of these solvents are high and they are economically feasible only when they are almost completely recycled and reused, whereas separation of these solvents from cellulose is very difficult and needs large amounts of water. After separation of the solvent from the biomass, it consumes a considerable amount of energy for the solvent recovery from the dilute solvent–water solutions.

References

Aad G, Abbott B, Abdallah J, Abdelalim AA, Abdesselam A, Abdinov O, Abi B, Abolins M et al (2010) Search for new particles in two-jet final states in 7 TeV proton–proton collisions with the ATLAS detector at the LHC. Phys Rev Lett 105:161801

Ago M, Endo T, Hirotsu T (2004) Crystalline transformation of native cellulose from cellulose I to cellulose ID polymorph by a ball-milling method with a specific amount of water. Cellulose 11:163–167

Alvira P, Tomas-Pejo E, Ballesteros M, Negro MJ (2010) Pretreatment technologies for an efficient bioethanol production process based on enzymatic hydrolysis: a review. Bioresour Technol 101:4851–4861

Aravamuthan RG (2004) Pulping: chemical pulping. In: Jeffery B (ed) Encyclopedia of forest sciences. Elsevier, Oxford, pp 904–910

Bak JS, Ko JK, Han YH, Lee BC, Choi IG, Kim KH (2009) Improved enzymatic hydrolysis yield of rice straw using electron beam irradiation pretreatment. Bioresour Technol 100:1285–1290

Bak JS, Kim MD, Choi IG, Kim KH (2010) Biological pretreatment of rice straw by fermenting with Dichomitus squalens. N Biotechnol 27:424–434

Ballesteros I, Oliva JM, Navarro AA, Gonzalez A, Carrasco J, Ballesteros M (2000) Effect of chip size on steam explosion pretreatment of softwood. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 84–6:97–110

Behrendt CJ, Blanchette RA (1997) Biological processing of pine logs for pulp and paper production with phlebiopsis gigantea. Appl Environ Microbiol 63:1995–2000

Bertaud F, Sundberg A, Holmbom B (2002) Evaluation of acid methanolysis for analysis of wood hemicelluloses and pectins. Carbohydr Polym 48:319–324

Bertran MS, Dale BE (1985) Enzymatic hydrolysis and recrystallization behavior of initially amorphous cellulose. Biotechnol Bioeng 27:177–181

Besombes S, Mazeau K (2005) The cellulose/lignin assembly assessed by molecular modeling. Part 1: adsorption of a threo guaiacyl beta-O-4 dimer onto a Ibeta cellulose whisker. Plant Physiol Biochem 43:299–308

Biermann CJ (1996) Pulping fundamentals. In: Handbook of pulping and papermaking, 2nd edn. Academic Press, San Diego, pp 55–100

Biganska O, Navard P (2003) Phase diagram of a cellulose solvent: N-methylmorpholine–N-oxide–water mixtures. Polymer 44:1035–1039

Billa E, Monties B (1991) Occurrence of silicon associated with lignin-polysaccharide complexes isolated from gramineae (wheat straw) cell walls. Food Hydrocolloids 5:189–195

Binder JB, Raines RT (2010) Fermentable sugars by chemical hydrolysis of biomass. PNAS 107:4516–4521

Binod P, Sindhu R, Singhania RR, Vikram S, Devi L, Nagalakshmi S, Kurien N, Sukumaran RK et al (2010) Bioethanol production from rice straw: an overview. Bioresour Technol 101:4767–4774

Biswas D, Misbahuddin M, Roy U, Francis RC, Bose SK (2011) Effect of additives on fiber yield improvement for kraft pulping of kadam (Anthocephalus chinensis). Bioresour Technol 102:1284–1288

Bose S, Barnes CA, Petrich JW (2012) Enhanced stability and activity of cellulase in an ionic liquid and the effect of pretreatment on cellulose hydrolysis. Biotechnol Bioeng 109:434–443

Brownell HH, Yu EK, Saddler JN (1986) Steam-explosion pretreatment of wood: effect of chip size, acid, moisture content and pressure drop. Biotechnol Bioeng 28:792–801

Cameron MG, Fahey GC Jr, Clark JH, Merchen NR, Berger LL (1990) Effects of feeding alkaline hydrogen peroxide-treated wheat straw-based diets on digestion and production by dairy cows. J Dairy Sci 73:3544–3554

Cameron MG, Fahey GC Jr, Clark JH, Merchen NR, Berger LL (1991) Effects of feeding alkaline hydrogen peroxide-treated wheat straw-based diets on intake, digestion, ruminal fermentation, and production responses by mid-lactation dairy cows. J Anim Sci 69:1775–1787

Canilha L, Santos VT, Rocha GJ, Almeida e Silva JB, Giulietti M, Silva SS, Felipe MG, Ferraz A et al (2011) A study on the pretreatment of a sugarcane bagasse sample with dilute sulfuric acid. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 38:1467–1475

Castro FB, Hotten PM, Orskov ER (1993) Effects of dilute-acid hydrolysis treatment on the physico-chemical features and bio-utilization of wheat straw. Anim Feed Sci Technol 42:55–67

Chandra R, Ewanick S, Hsieh C, Saddler JN (2008) The characterization of pretreated lignocellulosic substrates prior to enzymatic hydrolysis, part 1: a modified Simons' staining technique. Biotechnol Prog 24:1178–1185

Chandra R, Ewanick S, Chung P, Au-Yeung K, Rio L, Mabee W, Saddler J (2009) Comparison of methods to assess the enzyme accessibility and hydrolysis of pretreated lignocellulosic substrates. Biotechnol Lett 31:1217–1222

Chang VS, Holtzapple MT (2000) Fundamental factors affecting biomass enzymatic reactivity. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 84–86:5–37

Chang M, Chou T, Tsao G (1981) Structure, pretreatment and hydrolysis of cellulose. In: Bioenergy 15–42

Chen C, Boldor D, Aita G, Walker M (2012) Ethanol production from sorghum by a microwave-assisted dilute ammonia pretreatment. Bioresour Technol 110:190–197

Cheng KK, Zhang JA, Ping WX, Ge JP, Zhou YJ, Ling HZ, Xu JM (2008) Sugarcane bagasse mild alkaline/oxidative pretreatment for ethanol production by alkaline recycle process. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 151:43–50

Chesson A (1988) Lignin-polysaccharide complexes of the plant cell wall and their effect on microbial degradation in the rumen. Anim Feed Sci Technol 21:219–228

Chundawat SP, Beckham GT, Himmel ME, Dale BE (2011a) Deconstruction of lignocellulosic biomass to fuels and chemicals. Annu Rev Chem Biomol Eng 2:121–145

Chundawat SP, Bellesia G, Uppugundla N, da Costa Sousa L, Gao D, Cheh AM, Agarwal UP, Bianchetti CM et al (2011b) Restructuring the crystalline cellulose hydrogen bond network enhances its depolymerization rate. J Am Chem Soc 133:11163–11174

Ciolacu D, Ciolacu F, Popa VI (2011) Amorphous cellulose—structure and characterization cellulose chem. Technol 45:13–21

Cochard H, Tyree MT (1990) Xylem dysfunction in quercus: vessel sizes, tyloses, cavitation and seasonal changes in embolism. Tree Physiol 6:393–407

Cuissinat C, Navard P (2006) Swelling and dissolution of cellulose. Part 1: free floating cotton and wood fibres in N-methylmorpholine-N-oxide-water mixtures. Macromol Symp 244:1–18

Curreli N, Fadda MB, Rescigno A, Rinaldi AC, Soddu G, Sollai F, Vaccargiu S, Sanjust E et al (1997) Mild alkaline/oxidative pretreatment of wheat straw. Process Biochem 32:665–670

Czirnich W, Patt R (1976) Untersuchungen uber die stabilisierung von hemicellulosen beim sulfitverfahren auf magnesium-basis. Holzforschung 30:124–132

da Costa Sousa L, Chundawat SP, Balan V, Dale BE (2009) 'Cradle-to-grave' assessment of existing lignocellulose pretreatment technologies. Curr Opin Biotechnol 20:339–347

Dadi AP, Varanasi S, Schall CA (2006) Enhancement of cellulose saccharification kinetics using an ionic liquid pretreatment step. Biotechnol Bioeng 95:904–910

Deschamps FC, Ramos LP, Fontana JD (1996) Pretreatment of sugar cane bagasse for enhanced ruminal digestion. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 57–58:171–182

Deshpande MD, Scheicher RH, Ahuja R, Pandey R (2008) Binding strength of sodium ions in cellulose for different water contents. J Phys Chem B 112:8985–8989

Ding SY, Himmel ME (2006) The maize primary cell wall microfibril: a new model derived from direct visualization. J Agric Food Chem 54:597–606

Dogan H, Hilmioglu ND (2009) Dissolution of cellulose with NMMO by microwave heating. Carbohydr Polym 75:90–94

Donohoe BS, Decker SR, Tucker MP, Himmel ME, Vinzant TB (2008) Visualizing lignin coalescence and migration through maize cell walls following thermochemical pretreatment. Biotechnol Bioeng 101:913–925

Elbeshbishy E, Aldin S, Hafez H, Nakhla G, Ray M (2011) Impact of ultrasonication of hog manure on anaerobic digestability. Ultrason Sonochem 18:164–171

Esteghlalian AR, Bilodeau M, Mansfield SD, Saddler JN (2001) Do enzymatic hydrolyzability and Simons' stain reflect the changes in the accessibility of lignocellulosic substrates to cellulase enzymes? Biotechnol Prog 17:1049–1054

Ewanick SM, Bura R, Saddler JN (2007) Acid-catalyzed steam pretreatment of lodgepole pine and subsequent enzymatic hydrolysis and fermentation to ethanol. Biotechnol Bioeng 98:737–746

Fan LT, Lee Y, Beardmore DH (1980) Mechanism of the enzymatic hydrolysis of cellulose: effects of major structural features of cellulose on enzymatic hydrolysis. Biotechnol Bioeng 22:177–199

Fan L, Lee Y, Gharpuray M (1982) The nature of lignocellulosics and their pretreatments for enzymatic hydrolysis. Adv Biochem Eng Biotechnol 23:158–183

Fengel D, Wegener G (1979) Hydrolysis of polysaccharides with trifluoroacetic acid and its application to rapid wood and pulp analysis. In: Jurasek L, Brown RD (eds) Hydrolysis of cellulose: mechanisms of enzymatic and acid catalysis, vol 181. American Chemical Society, pp 145–158

Fengel D, Wegener G (1984) Wood: chemistry, ultrastructure reactions. Walter de Gruyter, Berlin

Fengel D, Wegener G, Heizmann A, Przyklenk M (1978) Analysis of wood and cellulose by total hydrolysis with trifluoroacetic acid. Cellul Chem Technol 12:31–37

Fernandez-Cegri V, de la Rubia MA, Raposo F, Borja R (2012) Impact of ultrasonic pretreatment under different operational conditions on the mesophilic anaerobic digestion of sunflower oil cake in batch mode. Ultrason Sonochem 19:1003–1010

Festucci-Buselli RA, Otoni WC, Joshi CP (2007) Structure, organization, and functions of cellulose synthase complexes in higher plants. Braz J Plant Physiol 19:1–13

Fink HP, Weigel P, Purz HJ, Ganster J (2001) Structure formation of regenerated cellulose materials from NMMO-solutions. Adv Polym Sci 26:1473–1524

Forsskahl I, Popoff T, Theander O (1976) Reactions of -xylose and -glucose in alkaline, aqueous solutions. Carbohydr Res 48:13–21

Foston M, Ragauskas AJ (2010) Changes in lignocellulosic supramolecular and ultrastructure during dilute acid pretreatment of populus and switchgrass. Biomass Bioenergy 34:1885–1895

Fry SC (1989) The structure and functions of xyloglucan. J Exp Bot 40:1–11

Fu D, Mazza G (2011) Aqueous ionic liquid pretreatment of straw. Bioresour Technol 102:7008–7011

Galbe M, Zacchi G (2007) Pretreatment of lignocellulosic materials for efficient bioethanol production. Adv Biochem Eng Biotechnol 108:41–65

Geng X, Henderson WA (2012) Pretreatment of corn stover by combining ionic liquid dissolution with alkali extraction. Biotechnol Bioeng 109:84–91

Girio FM, Fonseca C, Carvalheiro F, Duarte LC, Marques S, Bogel-Lukasik R (2010) Hemicelluloses for fuel ethanol: a review. Bioresour Technol 101:4775–4800

Glaus MA, Van Loon LR (2008) Degradation of cellulose under alkaline conditions: new insights from a 12 years degradation study. Environ Sci Technol 42:2906–2911

Grethelin HE (1985) The effect of pore size distribution on the rate of enzymatic hydrolysis of cellulosic substrates. Nat Biotechnol 3:155–160

Grohmann K, Torget R, Himmel M (1986a) Optimization of dilute acid pretreatment of biomass. Biotechnol Bioeng SympWiley 15:59–80

Grohmann K, Torget R, Himmel M (1986b) Dilute acid pretreatment research. Biochemical conversion program review meeting, Solar Energy Research Inst., Golden, CO, pp 121–138

Grohmann K, Mitchell D, Himmel M, Dale B, Schroeder H (1989) The role of ester groups in resistance of plant cell wall polysaccharides to enzymatic hydrolysis. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 20–21:45–61

Gümüskaya E, Usta M (2006) Dependence of chemical and crystalline structure of alkali sulfite pulp on cooking temperature and time. Carbohydr Polym 65:461–468

Ha SH, Mai NL, An G, Koo YM (2011) Microwave-assisted pretreatment of cellulose in ionic liquid for accelerated enzymatic hydrolysis. Bioresour Technol 102:1214–1219

Hallac BB, Ragauskas AJ (2011) Analyzing cellulose degree of polymerization and its relevancy to cellulosic ethanol. Biofuels, Bioprod Biorefin 5:215–225

Hallac BB, Ray M, Murphy RJ, Ragauskas AJ (2010) Correlation between anatomical characteristics of ethanol organosolv pretreated Buddleja davidii and its enzymatic conversion to glucose. Biotechnol Bioeng 107:795–801

Harris J, Baker A, Zerbe J (1984) Two-stage, dilute sulfuric acid hydrolysis of hardwood for ethanol production. Energy Biomass Wastes 8:1151–1170

Harun MY, Dayang Radiah AB, Zainal Abidin Z, Yunus R (2011) Effect of physical pretreatment on dilute acid hydrolysis of water hyacinth (Eichhornia crassipes). Bioresour Technol 102:5193–5199

Haverty D, Dussan K, Piterina AV, Leahy JJ, Hayes MH (2012) Autothermal, single-stage, performic acid pretreatment of miscanthus x giganteus for the rapid fractionation of its biomass components into a lignin/hemicellulose-rich liquor and a cellulase-digestible pulp. Bioresour Technol 109:173–177

Hayashi J, Sufoka A, Ohkita J, Watanabe S (1975) The confirmation of existences of cellulose IIII, IIIII, IVI, and IVII by the X-ray method. J Polym Sci: Polym Lett ed 13:23–27

He X, Miao Y, Jiang X, Xu Z, Ouyang P (2010) Enhancing the enzymatic hydrolysis of corn stover by an integrated wet-milling and alkali pretreatment. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 160:2449–2457

Heiss-Blanquet S, Zheng D, Lopes Ferreira N, Lapierre C, Baumberger S (2011) Effect of pretreatment and enzymatic hydrolysis of wheat straw on cell wall composition, hydrophobicity and cellulase adsorption. Bioresour Technol 102:5938–5946

Henderson R (1970) Structure of crystalline alpha-chymotrypsin. IV. The structure of indoleacryloyl-alpha-chyotrypsin and its relevance to the hydrolytic mechanism of the enzyme. J Mol Biol 54:341–354

Hendriks AT, Zeeman G (2009) Pretreatments to enhance the digestibility of lignocellulosic biomass. Bioresour Technol 100:10–18

Hepworth DG, Vincent JF, Stringer G, Jeronimidis G (2002) Variations in the morphology of wood structure can explain why hardwood species of similar density have very different resistances to impact and compressive loading. Philos Trans Math Phys Eng Sci 360:255–272

Higgins FJ, Ho GE (1982) Hydrolysis of cellulose using HCl: a comparison between liquid phase and gaseous phase processes. Agric Waste 4:97–116

Hong J, Ye X, Zhang YH (2007) Quantitative determination of cellulose accessibility to cellulase based on adsorption of a nonhydrolytic fusion protein containing CBM and GFP with its applications. Langmuir 23:12535–12540

Hong F, Guo X, Zhang S, Han SF, Yang G, Jonsson LJ (2012) Bacterial cellulose production from cotton-based waste textiles: enzymatic saccharification enhanced by ionic liquid pretreatment. Bioresour Technol 104:503–508

Isogai A, Atalla RH (1991) Amorphous celluloses stable in aqueous media: regeneration from SO_2–amine solvent systems. J Polym Sci, Part A: Polym Chem 29:113–119

Jacobsen SE, Wyman CE (2000) Cellulose and hemicellulose hydrolysis models for application to current and novel pretreatment processes. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 84–86:81–96

Jeihanipour A (2011) Waste textile bioprocessing to ethanol and biogas. Department of Chemical and Biological Engineering, Ph.D thesis

Jeihanipour A, Karimi K, Niklasson C, Taherzadeh MJ (2010a) A novel process for ethanol or biogas production from cellulose in blended-fibers waste textiles. Waste Manag 30:2504–2509

Jeihanipour A, Karimi K, Taherzadeh MJ (2010b) Enhancement of ethanol and biogas production from high-crystalline cellulose by different modes of NMO pretreatment. Biotechnol Bioeng 105:469–476

Jiang ZH, Fei BH, Yang Z (2007) Effects of spectral pretreatment on the prediction of crystallinity of wood cellulose using near infrared spectroscopy. Guang Pu Xue Yu Guang Pu Fen Xi 27:435–438
Karlsson J, Medve J, Tjerneld F (1999) Hydrolysis of steam-pretreated lignocellulose: synergism and adsorption for cellobiohydrolase I and endoglucanase II of Trichoderma reesei. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 82:243–258
Keshwani DR, Cheng JJ (2010) Modeling changes in biomass composition during microwave-based alkali pretreatment of switchgrass. Biotechnol Bioeng 105:88–97
Keys JE Jr, DeBarthe JV (1974) Cellulose and hemicellulose digestibility in the stomach, small intestine and large intestine of swine. J Anim Sci 39:53–56
Keys JE Jr, Van Soest PJ, Young EP (1969) Comparative study of the digestibility of forage cellulose and hemicellulose in ruminants and nonruminants. J Anim Sci 29:11–15
Khodaverdi M, Jeihanipour A, Karimi K, Taherzadeh MJ (2012) Kinetic modeling of rapid enzymatic hydrolysis of crystalline cellulose after pretreatment by NMMO. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 39:429–438
Kim S, Holtzapple MT (2005) Lime pretreatment and enzymatic hydrolysis of corn stover. Bioresour Technol 96:1994–2006
Kim S, Holtzapple MT (2006) Effect of structural features on enzyme digestibility of corn stover. Bioresour Technol 97:583–591
Kim BS, Lee YY (2002) Diffusion of sulfuric acid within lignocellulosic biomass particles and its impact on dilut-acid pretreatment. Bioresour Technol 83:165–171
Kim TH, Lee YY (2006) Fractionation of corn stover by hot-water and aqueous ammonia treatment. Bioresour Technol 97:224–232
Kim BS, Um BH, Park SC (2001) Effect of pretreatment reagent and hydrogen peroxide on enzymatic hydrolysis of oak in percolation process. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 91–93:81–94
Kim TH, Kim JS, Sunwoo C, Lee YY (2003) Pretreatment of corn stover by aqueous ammonia. Bioresour Technol 90:39–47
Kim JS, Sandquist D, Sundberg B, Daniel G (2011) Spatial and temporal variability of xylan distribution in differentiating secondary xylem of hybrid aspen. Planta. doi:10.1007/s00425-011-1576-8
Kim S, Park JM, Seo JW, Kim CH (2012) Sequential acid-/alkali-pretreatment of empty palm fruit bunch fiber. Bioresour Technol 109:229–233
Knappert D, Grethlein H, Converse A (1980) Partial acid hydrolysis of cellulosic materials as a pretreatment for enzymatic hydrolysis. Biotechnol Bioeng 22:1449–1463
Ko JK, Bak JS, Jung MW, Lee HJ, Choi IG, Kim TH, Kim KH (2009) Ethanol production from rice straw using optimized aqueous-ammonia soaking pretreatment and simultaneous saccharification and fermentation processes. Bioresour Technol 100:4374–4380
Kobayashi T, Sakai Y (1956) Hydrolysis rate of pentosan of hardwood in dilute sulfuric acid. Bull Agr Chem Soc Jpn 20:1–7
Kuhad RC, Gupta R, Khasa YP, Singh A (2010) Bioethanol production from lantanacamara (red sage): pretreatment, saccharification and fermentation. Bioresour Technol 101:8348–8354
Kumar R, Wyman CE (2008) An improved method to directly estimate cellulase adsorption on biomass solids. Enzyme Microb Technol 42:426–433
Kumar R, Wyman CE (2009a) Cellulase adsorption and relationship to features of corn stover solids produced by leading pretreatments. Biotechnol Bioeng 103:252–267
Kumar R, Wyman CE (2009b) Access of cellulase to cellulose and lignin for poplar solids produced by leading pretreatment technologies. Biotechnol Prog 25:807–819
Kumar R, Mago G, Balan V, Wyman CE (2009) Physical and chemical characterizations of corn stover and poplar solids resulting from leading pretreatment technologies. Bioresour Technol 100:3948–3962
Kuo C-H, Lee C-K (2009a) Enhancement of enzymatic saccharification of cellulose by cellulose dissolution pretreatments. Carbohydr Polym 77:41–46
Kuo C-H, Lee C-K (2009b) Enhanced enzymatic hydrolysis of sugarcane bagasse by N-methylmorpholine-N-oxide pretreatment. Bioresour Technol 100:866–871

Lamed R, Kenig R, Setter E, Bayer EA (1985) Major characteristics of the cellulolytic system of Clostridium thermocellum coincide with those of the purified cellulosome. Enzyme Microb Technol 7:37–41

Lee J (1997) Biological conversion of lignocellulosic biomass to ethanol. J Biotechnol 56:1–24

Lee JH, Brown RM Jr, Kuga S, Shoda S, Kobayashi S (1994) Assembly of synthetic cellulose I. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 91:7425–7429

Lee SH, Doherty TV, Linhardt RJ, Dordick JS (2009) Ionic liquid-mediated selective extraction of lignin from wood leading to enhanced enzymatic cellulose hydrolysis. Biotechnol Bioeng 102:1368–1376

Lennartsson PR, Niklasson C, Taherzadeh MJ (2011) A pilot study on lignocelluloses to ethanol and fish feed using NMMO pretreatment and cultivation with zygomycetes in an air-lift reactor. Bioresour Technol 102:4425–4432

Lewis NG, Yamamoto E (1990) Lignin: occurrence, biogenesis and biodegradation. Annu Rev Plant Physiol Plant Mol Biol 41:455–496

Li C, Cheng G, Balan V, Kent MS, Ong M, Chundawat SP, Sousa L, Melnichenko YB, Dale BE, Simmons BA, Singh S (2011) Influence of physico-chemical changes on enzymatic digestibility of ionic liquid and AFEX pretreated corn stover. Bioresour Technol 102:6928–6936

Li C, Zhao ZK (2007) Efficient acid-catalyzed hydrolysis of cellulose in ionic liquid. Adv Synth Catal 349:1847–1850

Li C, Wang Q, Zhao ZK (2008) Acid in ionic liquid: an efficient system for hydrolysis of lignocellulose. Green Chem 10:177–182

Li Q, He YC, Xian M, Jun G, Xu X, Yang JM, Li LZ (2009) Improving enzymatic hydrolysis of wheat straw using ionic liquid 1-ethyl-3-methyl imidazolium diethyl phosphate pretreatment. Bioresour Technol 100:3570–3575

Li C, Knierim B, Manisseri C, Arora R, Scheller HV, Auer M, Vogel KP, Simmons BA et al (2010a) Comparison of dilute acid and ionic liquid pretreatment of switchgrass: biomass recalcitrance, delignification and enzymatic saccharification. Bioresour Technol 101:4900–4906

Li Q, Jiang X, He Y, Li L, Xian M, Yang J (2010b) Evaluation of the biocompatible ionic liquid 1-methyl-3-methylimidazolium dimethylphosphite pretreatment of corn cob for improved saccharification. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 87:117–126

Li B, Asikkala J, Filpponen I, Argyropoulos DS (2010c) Factors affecting wood dissolution and regeneration of ionic liquids. Ind Eng Chem Res 49:2477–2484

Liebert T (2010) Cellulose solvents-remarkable history, bright future, cellulose solvents: for analysis, shaping and chemical modification. American Chemical Society, Washington

Lin KW, Ladisch MR, Voloch M, Patterson JA, Noller CH (1985) Effect of pretreatments and fermentation on pore size in cellulosic materials. Biotechnol Bioeng 27:1427–1433

Lis MJ, Carrillo F, Colom X, Martinez D, Nogues F (2000) Acid hydrolysis of straw before its enzymic treatment. Determination of a kinetic model. Ing Quim (Madrid) 32:181–186

Liu L, Chen H (2006) Enzymatic hydrolysis of cellulose materials treated with ionic liquid [BMIM] Cl. Chin Sci Bull 51:2432–2436

Liu H, Sale KL, Holmes BM, Simmons BA, Singh S (2010) Understanding the interactions of cellulose with ionic liquids: a molecular dynamics study. J Phys Chem B 114:4293–4301

Liu C-Z, Wang F, Stiles AR, Guo C (2012) Ionic liquids for biofuel production: opportunities and challenges. Appl Energy 92:406–414

Lucas M, Macdonald BA, Wagner GL, Joyce SA, Rector KD (2010) Ionic liquid pretreatment of poplar wood at room temperature: swelling and incorporation of nanoparticles. ACS Appl Mater Interfaces 2:2198–2205

Lynam JG, Toufiq Reza M, Vasquez VR, Coronella CJ (2012) Pretreatment of rice hulls by ionic liquid dissolution. Bioresour Technol. doi:10.1016/j.biortech.2012.03.004

Lynd LR, Weimer PJ, van Zyl WH, Pretorius IS (2002) Microbial cellulose utilization: fundamentals and biotechnology. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 66:506–577

Mäki-Arvela P, Anugwom I, Virtanen P, Sjöholm R, Mikkola JP (2010) Dissolution of lignocellulosic materials and its constituents using ionic liquids-a review. Ind Crop Prod 32:175–201

Mansour OY, Saady M, Mottaleb FA (1972) On structure of cellulose, Part I, study of changes due to alkali treatment by infrared spectroscopy. Indian Pulp Pap 26:72–84

Martin C, Rocha G, Perez M, Lopez Y, Hernandez E, Plasencia Y (2008) Acid prehydrolysis, alkaline delignification and enzymatic hydrolysis of rice hulls. Cellul Chem Technol 41:129–135

McCarter SL, Adney WS, Vinzant TB, Jennings E, Eddy FP, Decker SR, Baker JO, Sakon J et al (2002) Exploration of cellulose surface-binding properties of acidothermus cellulolyticus Cel5A by site-specific mutagenesis. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 98–100:273–287

McMillan JD (1992) Process for pretreating lignocellulosic biomass: a review. National Renewable Energy Lab., Golden, COReport No. NREL/TP 4214978

McMillan JD (1994) Pretreatment of lignocellulosic biomass. In: Himmel ME, Baker JO, Overend RP (eds) ACS symposium series (enzymatic conversion of biomass for fuels production), vol 566, pp 292–324

Meister G, Wechsler M (1998) Biodegradation of N-methylmorpholine-N-oxide. Biodegrad 9:91–102

Millett MA, Baker AJ, Satter LD (1976) Physical and chemical pretreatments for enhancing cellulose saccharification. Biotechnol Bioeng Symp 125–153

Mirahmadi K, Kabir MM, Jeihanipour J, Karimi K, Taherzadeh MJ (2010) Alkaline pretreatment of spruce and birch to improve bioethanol and biogas production. BioResources 5:928–938

Mittal A, Katahira R, Himmel ME, Johnson DK (2011) Effects of alkaline or liquid-ammonia treatment on crystalline cellulose: changes in crystalline structure and effects on enzymatic digestibility. Biotechnol Biofuels 4:41

Morag E, Bayer EA, Lamed R (1990) Relationship of cellulosomal and noncellulosomal xylanases of Clostridium thermocellum to cellulose-degrading enzymes. J Bacteriol 172:6098–6105

Mora-Pale M, Meli L, Doherty TV, Linhardt RJ, Dordick JS (2011) Room temperature ionic liquids as emerging solvents for the pretreatment of lignocellulosic biomass. Biotechnol Bioeng 108:1229–1245

Morjanoff PJ, Gray PP (1987) Optimization of steam explosion as a method for increasing susceptibility of sugarcane bagasse to enzymatic saccharification. Biotechnol Bioeng 29:733–741

Mosier N, Wyman C, Dale B, Elander R, Lee YY, Holtzapple M, Ladisch M (2005) Features of promising technologies for pretreatment of lignocellulosic biomass. Bioresour Technol 96:673–686

Moulthrop JS, Swatloski RP, Moyna G, Rogers RD (2005) High-resolution 13C NMR studies of cellulose and cellulose oligomers in ionic liquid solutions. Chem Commun (Camb), pp 1557–1559

Mugnolo AMJ, Macchi EM, Marx-Flglnl M (1988) Dilute acid-hydrolized cotton cellulose: an electron diffraction study. Polym Bull 19:187–192

Nguyen QA, Tucker MP, Keller FA, Eddy FP (2000) Two-stage dilute-acid pretreatment of softwoods. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 84–86:561–576

Nguyen TA, Kim KR, Han SJ, Cho HY, Kim JW, Park SM, Park JC, Sim SJ (2010) Pretreatment of rice straw with ammonia and ionic liquid for lignocellulose conversion to fermentable sugars. Bioresour Technol 101:7432–7438

Ninomiya K, Kamide K, Takahashi K, Shimizu N (2012) Enhanced enzymatic saccharification of kenaf powder after ultrasonic pretreatment in ionic liquids at room temperature. Bioresour Technol 103:259–265

Norman AG (1934) The biological decomposition of plant materials: part IX. The anaerobic decopmsition of hemicelluloses. Ann Appl Biol 21:454–475

Ogiwara Y, Arai K (1968) Swelling degree of cellulose materials and hydrolysis rate with cellulase. Text Res J 38:885–891

Pan X, Xie D, Gilkes N, Gregg DJ, Saddler JN (2005) Strategies to enhance the enzymatic hydrolysis of pretreated softwood with high residual lignin content. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 121–124:1069–1079

Pan X, Gilkes N, Kadla J, Pye K, Saka S, Gregg D, Ehara K, Xie D et al (2006a) Bioconversion of hybrid poplar to ethanol and co-products using an organosolv fractionation process: optimization of process yields. Biotechnol Bioeng 94:851–861

Pan X, Gilkes N, Saddler J (2006b) Effect of acetyl groups on enzymatic hydrolysis of cellulosic substrates. Holzforschung 60:398–401

Pan X, Kadla JF, Ehara K, Gilkes N, Saddler JN (2006c) Organosolv ethanol lignin from hybrid poplar as a radical scavenger: relationship between lignin structure, extraction conditions, and antioxidant activity. J Agric Food Chem 54:5806–5813

Pan X, Fan Z, Chen W, Ding Y, Luo H, Bao X (2007a) Enhanced ethanol production inside carbon-nanotube reactors containing catalytic particles. Nat Mater 6:507–511

Pan X, Xie D, Kang KY, Yoon SL, Saddler JN (2007b) Effect of organosolv ethanol pretreatment variables on physical characteristics of hybrid poplar substrates. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 137–140:367–377

Pang C, Xie T, Lin L, Zhuang J, Liu Y, Shi J, Yang Q (2012) Changes of the surface structure of corn stalk in the cooking process with active oxygen and MgO-based solid alkali as a pretreatment of its biomass conversion. Bioresour Technol 103:432–439

Patt R, Kordsachia O, Süttinger R (2011) Pulp. In: Ullmann's encyclopedia of industrial chemistry, Wiley-VCH Verlag GmbH & Co. KGaA

Pei H, Liu L, Zhang X, Sun J (2012) Flow-through pretreatment with strongly acidic electrolyzed water for hemicellulose removal and enzymatic hydrolysis of corn stover. Bioresour Technol 110:292–296

Peng F, Peng P, Xu F, Sun RC (2012) Fractional purification and bioconversion of hemicelluloses. Biotechnol Adv. doi:10.1016/j.biotechadv.2012.01.018

Pérez S, Samain D (2010) Structure and engineering of celluloses. In: Derek H (ed) Advances in carbohydrate chemistry and biochemistry, vol 64. Academic Press, New York, pp 25–116

Pham TT, Brar SK, Tyagi RD, Surampalli RY (2009) Ultrasonication of wastewater sludge-consequences on biodegradability and flowability. J Hazard Mater 163:891–898

Pingali SV, Urban VS, Heller WT, McGaughey J, O'Neill H, Foston M, Myles DA, Ragauskas A et al (2010) Breakdown of cell wall nanostructure in dilute acid pretreated biomass. Biomacromolecules 11:2329–2335

Poornejad N, Karimi K, Behzad T (2012) Improvement of saccharification and ethanol production from rice straw by NMMO and [BMIM][OAc] pretreatments. Ind Crop Prod

Procter AR, Wiekenkamp RH (1969) The stabilization of cellulose to alkaline degradation by novel end unit modifications. J Polym Sci, Part C: Polym Symp 28:1–13

Pu YQ, Jiang N, Ragauskas AJJ (2007) Ionic liquid as a green solvent for lignin. Wood Chem Technol 27:23–33

Puri VP (1984) Effect of crystallinity and degree of polymerization of cellulose on enzymatic saccharification. Biotechnol Bioeng 26:1219–1222

Puri VP, Pearce GR (1986) Alkali-explosion pretreatment of straw and bagasse for enzymic hydrolysis. Biotechnol Bioeng 28:480–485

Qi B, Chen X, Wan Y (2010) Pretreatment of wheat straw by nonionic surfactant-assisted dilute acid for enhancing enzymatic hydrolysis and ethanol production. Bioresour Technol 101:4875–4883

Qing Q, Yang B, Wyman CE (2010) Impact of surfactants on pretreatment of corn stover. Bioresour Technol 101:5941–5951

Ramos LP, Breuil C, Saddler JN (1992) Comparison of steam pretreatment of eucalyptus, aspen, and spruce wood chips and their enzymic hydrolysis. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 34–35:37–48

Remsing RC, Swatloski RP, Rogers RD, Moyna G (2006) Mechanism of cellulose dissolution in the ionic liquid 1-n-butyl-3-methylimidazolium chloride: a 13C and 35/37Cl NMR relaxation study on model systems. Chem Commun 1271–1273

Rocha GJ, Martin C, da Silva VF, Gomez EO, Goncalves AR (2012) Mass balance of pilot-scale pretreatment of sugarcane bagasse by steam explosion followed by alkaline delignification. Bioresour Technol 111:447–452

Rodrigues TH, Rocha MV, de Macedo GR, Goncalves LR (2011) Ethanol production from cashew apple bagasse: improvement of enzymatic hydrolysis by microwave-assisted alkali pretreatment. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 164:929–943

Rollin JA, Zhu Z, Sathitsuksanoh N, Zhang YH (2011) Increasing cellulose accessibility is more important than removing lignin: a comparison of cellulose solvent-based lignocellulose fractionation and soaking in aqueous ammonia. Biotechnol Bioeng 108:22–30

Rosenau T, Potthast A, Sixta H, Kosma P (2001) The chemistry of side reactions and byproduct formation in the system NMMO/cellulose (lyocell process). Prog Polym Sci 26:1763–1837

Saeman JF (1945) Kinetics of wood saccharification: Hydrolysis of cellulose and decomposition of sugars in dilute acid at high temperature. Ind Eng Chem 37:43–52

Saeman JF (1949) Kinetics of wood hydrolysis and the decomposition of sugars in dilute acids at high temperatures. Holzforschung 4:1–14

Saha BC, Iten LB, Cotta MA, Wu YV (2005) Dilute acid pretreatment, enzymatic saccharification, and fermentation of rice hulls to ethanol. Biotechnol Prog 21:816–822

Sassner P, Martensson CG, Galbe M, Zacchi G (2008) Steam pretreatment of H_2SO_4-impregnated Salix for the production of bioethanol. Bioresour Technol 99:137–145

Shafiei M, Karimi K, Taherzadeh MJ (2010) Pretreatment of spruce and oak by N-methylmorpholine-N-oxide (NMMO) for efficient conversion of their cellulose to ethanol. Bioresour Technol 101:4914–4918

Shafiei M, Karimi K, Taherzadeh MJ (2011) Techno-economical study of ethanol and biogas from spruce wood by NMMO-pretreatment and rapid fermentation and digestion. Bioresour Technol 102:7879–7886

Shafiei M, Ziluoei H, Zamani A, Taherzadeh MJ, Karimi K (2012) Enhancement of ethanol production from spruce wood chips by ionic liquid pretreatment. Appl Energy

Shafizadeh F (1963) Acidic hydrolysis of glucosidic bonds. Tappi J 46:381–383

Shah MM, Song SK, Lee YY, Torget R (1991) Effect of pretreatment on simultaneous saccharification and fermentation of hardwood into acetone/butanol. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 28–29:99–109

Shen J, Wyman CE (2011) A novel mechanism and kinetic model to explain enhanced xylose yields from dilute sulfuric acid compared to hydrothermal pretreatment of corn stover. Bioresour Technol 102:9111–9120

Shill K, Padmanabhan S, Xin Q, Prausnitz JM, Clark DS, Blanch HW (2011) Ionic liquid pretreatment of cellulosic biomass: enzymatic hydrolysis and ionic liquid recycle. Biotechnol Bioeng 108:511–520

Shimizu K (1988) Steam-explosion treatment of wood. Kami Pa Gikyoshi 42:1114–1130

Sievers C, Valenzuela-Olarte MB, Marzialetti T, Musin I, Agrawal PK, Jones CW (2009) Ionic-liquid-phase hydrolysis of pine wood. Ind Eng Chem Res 48:1277–1286

Silva ASA, Lee SH, Endo T, Bon EP (2011) Major improvement in the rate and yield of enzymatic saccharification of sugarcane bagasse via pretreatment with the ionic liquid 1-ethyl-3-methylimidazolium acetate ([Emim][Ac]). Bioresour Technol 102:10505–10509

Singh A, Tuteja S, Singh N, Bishnoi NR (2011) Enhanced saccharification of rice straw and hull by microwave-alkali pretreatment and lignocellulolytic enzyme production. Bioresour Technol 102:1773–1782

Sjostrom E (1977) The behavior of wood polysaccharides during alkaline pulping process. Tappi J 60:151–154

Soderstrom J, Pilcher L, Galbe M, Zacchi G (2003) Combined use of H2SO4 and SO2 impregnation for steam pretreatment of spruce in ethanol production. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 105–108:127–140

Stone J E, Scallan A M, Donefer E, Ahlgren E (1969) Digestibility as a simple function of a molecule of similar size to a cellulase enzyme. In: Hajny GJ, Reese ET (eds) Cellulases and their applications, vol 95, American Chemical Society, pp 219–241

Sun Y, Cheng J (2002) Hydrolysis of lignocellulosic materials for ethanol production: a review. Bioresour Technol 83:1–11

Sun Y, Cheng JJ (2005) Dilute acid pretreatment of rye straw and bermudagrass for ethanol production. Bioresour Technol 96:1599–1606

Swatloski RP, Visser AE, Reichert WM, Broker GA, Farina LM, Holbrey JD, Rogers RD (2001) Solvation of 1-butyl-3-methylimidazolium hexafluorophosphate in aqueous ethanol-a green solution for dissolving 'hydrophobic' ionic liquids. Chem Commun (Camb) 2070–2071

Taherzadeh MJ, Karimi K (2007) Acid-based hydrolysis processes for ethanol from lignocellulosic materials: a review. BioResources 2:472–499

Taherzadeh MJ, Karimi K (2008) Pretreatment of lignocellulosic wastes to improve ethanol and biogas production: a review. Int J Mol Sci 9:1621–1651

Takai M, Colvin R (1978) Mechanism of transition between cellulose I and cellulose II during mercerization. J Polym Sci: Polym Chem Ed 16:1335–1342

Tao F, Song H, Chou L (2010) Hydrolysis of cellulose by using catalytic amounts of FeCl2 in ionic liquids. Chem Sus Chem 3:1298–1303

Tarkow H, Feist W (1969) A mechanism for improving the digestibility of lignocellulosic materials with dilute alkali and liquid ammonia. Adv Chem Ser 95:197–218

Teghammar A, Yngvesson J, Lundin M, Taherzadeh MJ, Horvath IS (2010) Pretreatment of paper tube residuals for improved biogas production. Bioresour Technol 101:1206–1212

Teghammar A, Karimi K, Sárvári Horváth I, Taherzadeh MJ (2012) Enhanced biogas production from rice straw, triticale straw and softwood spruce by NMMO pretreatment. Biomass Bioenergy 36:116–120

Teixeira LC, Linden JC, Schroeder HA (2000) Simultaneous saccharification and cofermentation of peracetic acid-pretreated biomass. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 84–86:111–127

Teleman A, Harjunpaa V, Tenkanen M, Buchert J, Hausalo T, Drakenberg T, Vuorinen T (1995) Characterisation of 4-deoxy-beta-L-threo-hex-4-enopyranosyluronic acid attached to xylan in pine kraft pulp and pulping liquor by 1H and 13C NMR spectroscopy. Carbohydr Res 272:55–71

Teleman A, Tenkanen M, Jacobs A, Dahlman O (2002) Characterization of O-acetyl-(4-O-methylglucurono)xylan isolated from birch and beech. Carbohydr Res 337:373–377

Titchener AL, Guha BK (1981) Acid hydrolysis of wood. Report—new zealand energy research and development committee, vol 56, p 63

Torget R, Himmel ME, Grohmann K (1991) Dilute sulfuric acid pretreatment of hardwood bark. Bioresour Technol 35:239–246

Tosun A (1995) Dilute acid hydrolysis of sunflower residue (cellulosic wastes) prior to enzymatic hydrolysis. 8th international symposium on environmental pollution and its impact on life in the mediterranean region, Rhodes, Greece, pp 296–301

Uju Y, Nakamoto A, Goto M, Tokuhara W, Noritake Y, Katahira S, Ishida N, Nakashima K, Ogino C, Kamiya N (2012) Short time ionic liquids pretreatment on lignocellulosic biomass to enhance enzymatic saccharification. Bioresour Technol 103:446–452

Um BH, Karim M, Henk L (2003) Effect of sulfuric and phosphoric acid pretreatments on enzymatic hydrolysis of corn stover. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 105–108:115–125

Vazana Y, Morais S, Barak Y, Lamed R, Bayer EA (2010) Interplay between Clostridium thermocellum family 48 and family 9 cellulases in cellulosomal versus noncellulosomal states. Appl Environ Microbiol 76:3236–3243

Wald S, Wilke CR, Blanch HW (1984) Kinetics of the enzymatic hydrolysis of cellulose. Biotechnol Bioeng 26:221–230

Wang Y, Spratling BM, ZoBell DR, Wiedmeier RD, McAllister TA (2004) Effect of alkali pretreatment of wheat straw on the efficacy of exogenous fibrolytic enzymes. J Anim Sci 82:198–208

Wang K, Yang HY, Xu F, Sun RC (2011) Structural comparison and enhanced enzymatic hydrolysis of the cellulosic preparation from Populus tomentosa Carr., by different cellulose-soluble solvent systems. Bioresour Technol 102:4524–4529

Wu L, Arakane M, Ike M, Wada M, Takai T, Gau M, Tokuyasu K (2011a) Low temperature alkali pretreatment for improving enzymatic digestibility of sweet sorghum bagasse for ethanol production. Bioresour Technol 102:4793–4799

Wu L, Li Y, Arakane M, Ike M, Wada M, Terajima Y, Ishikawa S, Tokuyasu K (2011b) Efficient conversion of sugarcane stalks into ethanol employing low temperature alkali pretreatment method. Bioresour Technol 102:11183–11188

Wyman CE (1996) Handbook on bioethanol: production and utilization. Taylor and Francis, Washington

Wyman CE, Dale BE, Elander RT, Holtzapple M, Ladisch MR, Lee YY (2005) Coordinated development of leading biomass pretreatment technologies. Bioresour Technol 96:1959–1966

Xiang Q, Kim JS, Lee YY (2003) A comprehensive kinetic model for dilute-acid hydrolysis of cellulose. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 105–108:337–352

Xu F, Sun JX, Liu CF, Sun RC (2006) Comparative study of alkali- and acidic organic solvent-soluble hemicellulosic polysaccharides from sugarcane bagasse. Carbohydr Res 341:253–261

Yang B, Wyman CE (2004) Effect of xylan and lignin removal by batch and flow through pretreatment on the enzymatic digestibility of corn stover cellulose. Biotechnol Bioeng 86:88–95

Yang B, Wyman CE (2006) BSA treatment to enhance enzymatic hydrolysis of cellulose in lignin containing substrates. Biotechnol Bioeng 94:611–617

Yang B, Wyman CE (2008) Pretreatment: the key to unlocking low-cost cellulosic ethanol. Biofuel Bioprod Bior 2:26–40

Yang B, Dai Z, Ding SY, Wyman C (2011) Enzymatic hydrolysis of cellulosic biomass. Biofuels 2:421–450

Yoneda Y, Krainz K, Liebner F, Potthast A, Rosenau T, Karakawa M, Nakatsubo F (2008) Furan endwise peeling of celluloses: mechanistic studies and application perspectives of a novel reaction. Eur J Org Chem 2008:475–484

Yu J, Zhang J, He J, Liu Z, Yu Z (2009) Combinations of mild physical or chemical pretreatment with biological pretreatment for enzymatic hydrolysis of rice hull. Bioresour Technol 100:903–908

Zavrel M, Bross D, Funke M, Buchs J, Spiess AC (2009) High-throughput screening for ionic liquids dissolving (ligno)-cellulose. Bioresour Technol 100:2580–2587

Zhang YH, Lynd LR (2005) Determination of the number-average degree of polymerization of cellodextrins and cellulose with application to enzymatic hydrolysis. Biomacromolecules 6:1510–1515

Zhang Y, Du H, Qian X, Chen EYX (2010) Ionic liquid—water mixtures: enhanced Kw for efficient cellulosic biomass conversion. Energy Fuel 24:2410–2417

Zhao X, Liu D (2011) Fractionating pretreatment of sugarcane bagasse for increasing the enzymatic digestibility of cellulose. Sheng Wu Gong Cheng Xue Bao 27:384–392

Zhao H, Baker GA, Song Z, Olubajo O, Crittle T, Peters D (2008a) Designing enzyme-compatible ionic liquids that can dissolve carbohydrates. Green Chem 10:696–705

Zhao Y, Wang Y, Zhu JY, Ragauskas A, Deng Y (2008b) Enhanced enzymatic hydrolysis of spruce by alkaline pretreatment at low temperature. Biotechnol Bioeng 99:13201328

Zhao H, Jones CL, Baker GA, Xia S, Olubajo O, Person VN (2009) Regenerating cellulose from ionic liquids for an accelerated enzymatic hydrolysis. J Biotechnol 139:47–54

Zhao H, Baker GA, Cowins JV (2010) Fast enzymatic saccharification of switchgrass after pretreatment with ionic liquids. Biotechnol Progress 26:127–133

Zheng Y, Pan Z, Zhang R (2009) Overview of biomass pretreatment for cellulosic ethanol production. Int J Agric Biol Eng 2:51–68

Zhu JY, Pan XJ (2010) Woody biomass pretreatment for cellulosic ethanol production: technology and energy consumption evaluation. Bioresour Technol 101:4992–5002

Zhu Y, Lee YY, Elander RT (2005) Optimization of dilute-acid pretreatment of corn stover using a high-solids percolation reactor. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 121–124:1045–1054

Zhu JY, Pan X, Zalesny RS Jr (2010) Pretreatment of woody biomass for biofuel production: energy efficiency, technologies, and recalcitrance. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 87:847–857

Chapter 4
Acid Pre-treatment Technologies and SEM Analysis of Treated Grass Biomass in Biofuel Processing

Anthonia O'Donovan, Vijai K. Gupta, Jessica M. Coyne and Maria G. Tuohy

Abstract Currently, ethanol is the most important renewable fuel in terms of volume and market value. It is produced from sugar- and starch-based materials such as sugarcane and corn, which is unsustainable. The second generation production of ethanol derived from lignocellulosic materials is now the prime target of biofuel production. Hydrolysis of lignocellulosic materials is the first step for either digestion to biogas (methane) or fermentation to ethanol. Enzymatic hydrolysis of lignocelluloses without pre-treatment is not effective because of the high stability of lignocellulose materials to enzymatic or bacterial attacks. Pre-treatment by physical, chemical or biological means are essential processes for ethanol production from lignocellulosic materials. Pre-treatment enhances the bio-digestibility of the wastes for ethanol and biogas production and increases accessibility of the enzymes to the materials. It results in enrichment of the difficult biodegradable materials, and improves the yield of ethanol or biogas. A detailed understanding of the composition of the lignocellulosic waste is essential to develop and optimize the mechanistic model for its conversion. This model primarily includes pre-treatment processes which help integrate waste streams into the raw materials for ethanol plants, for improved production of ethanol (Taherzadeh and Karimi 2008). This chapter discusses in detail the composition and chemical constituents of the grass cell wall which contributes to agricultural waste residues, a plentiful and sustainable biofuel feedstock. Pre-treatment methods are discussed with a focus on mild acid pre-treatments and scanning electron microscopy analysis (SEM) of post-treatment biomass residuals is reviewed.

A. O'Donovan (✉) · J. M. Coyne · M. G. Tuohy
Molecular Glycobiotechnology Group, Discipline of Biochemistry, School of Natural Sciences, National University of Ireland Galway, University Road, Galway, Ireland
e-mail: toniodonovan@gmail.com

V. K. Gupta
Department of Science, FASC, MITS University, Lakshmangarh (Rajasthan), India
e-mail: vijaifzd@gmail.com

V. K. Gupta and M. G. Tuohy (eds.), *Biofuel Technologies*,
DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-34519-7_4, © Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2013

4.1 Introduction

Lignocelluloses comprise a large fraction of crop residues, forest residues, dedicated energy crops, animal manures or municipal solid waste. Grass lignocelluloses are a major resource in the emerging cellulose to ethanol strategy for biofuels. The potential bioconversion of carbohydrates in this potential resource is limited by the constituents of the grass plant cell wall. Lignocelluloses are composed of cellulose, hemicellulose, lignin, extractives and several inorganic materials. The following sections detail the composition of the plant cell wall which explains the difficulties in utilising grass in the production of biofuel (Taherzadeh and Karimi 2008).

4.1.1 Plant Cell Wall

Lignocellulosic biomass refers to plant biomass. All plant cells are surrounded by an extracellular matrix known as the cell wall, a polysaccharide-rich matrix which is a major component of terrestrial plants. The plant cell wall is a composite structure and is divided into three layers; the middle lamella, the primary wall and the secondary wall (Carpita and Gibeaut 1993; Somerville et al. 2004) (Figs. 4.1 and 4.2). The middle lamella is the most external of all three layers and acts as a separating panel between two cells (Heredia et al. 1995). It is composed mainly of pectic substances and is the first boundary component to be formed by the cell during cytoplasmic division (Heredia et al. 1995; Hernon et al. 2010). The primary and secondary cell walls differ in function and in composition.

4.1.2 The Primary Cell Wall

The major polysaccharides in the primary wall are cellulose, hemicellulose and pectin. During cell expansion, the middle lamella is impregnated with cellulose, hemicellulose, pectin and glycoproteins to form the primary wall (Reiter 2002; Somerville et al. 2004). The primary wall is found at the junction of cells and at the outer edges of secondary walls. It is the first wall laid down and surrounds growing and dividing plant cells. These walls provide mechanical strength but must also expand to allow the cell to grow and divide. The wall derives its strength from long cellulose fibres held together by an amorphous matrix of protein and polysaccharide, which creates a composite structure that is highly resistant to compression. The polysaccharide-rich primary wall is composed of ~90 % carbohydrate and ~10 % protein with trace amounts of auxiliary substances. Of the major carbohydrates cellulose is the most abundant, constituting about 20–30 % of primary cell walls. The matrix is composed predominantly of two other

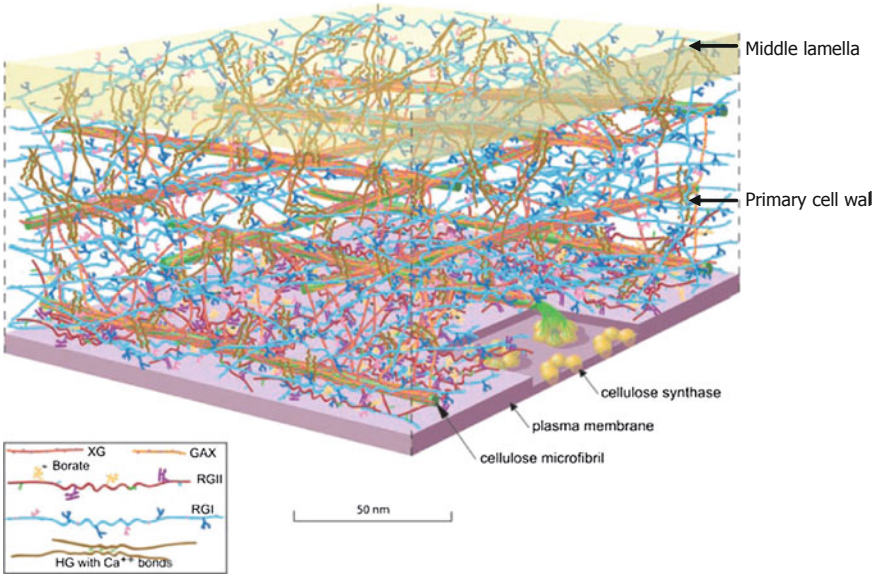


Fig. 4.1 Schematic representation of the structure of the primary cell wall. Xyloglucan (*XG*), glucoronoarabinoxylan (*GAX*), rhamnogalacturonan I (*RGI*), rhamnogalacturonan II (*RGII*) and homogalacturonan (*HG*) (Somerville et al. 2004)

types of polysaccharide, hemicellulose and pectin, together with structural glycoproteins. The most common hemicellulose in the primary cell wall is xyloglucan. In grass cell walls, however, xyloglucan and pectin are reduced in abundance and partially replaced by glucuronarabinoxylan. The fibres and matrix molecules are connected by a combination of covalent cross-links and non-covalent forces into a highly complex structure (Figs. 4.1 and 4.2) (Alberts et al. 1989).

The primary cell wall defines the rate of growth of plant cells, as well as their size and shape. It acts as a barrier to pathogens, while fragments of its polysaccharides have specific regulatory functions. Other functions of the primary cell wall include:

- Structural and mechanical support.
- Resist internal turgor pressure of cell.
- Ultimately responsible for plant architecture and form.
- Regulate diffusion of material through the apoplast.
- Carbohydrate storage—walls of seeds may be metabolised.
- Protect against pathogens, dehydration and other environmental factors.
- Source of biologically active signalling molecules.
- Cell–cell interactions.

(http://www.ccrc.uga.edu)

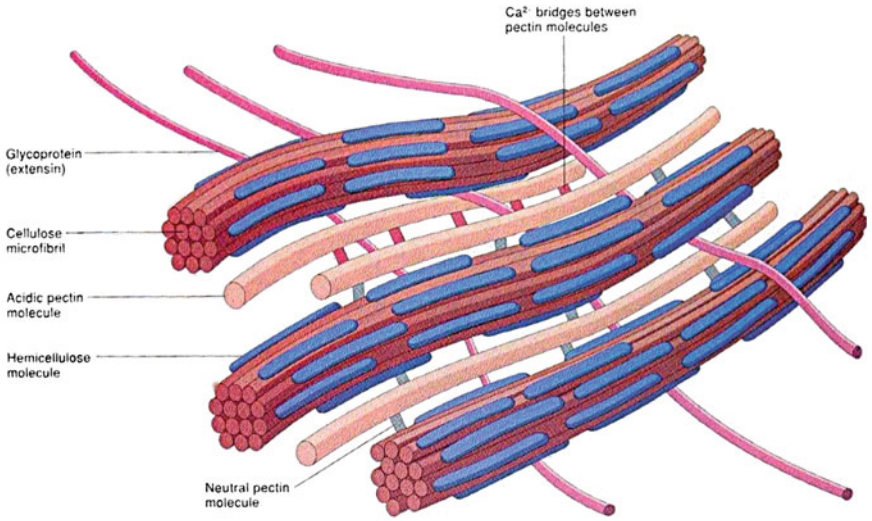


Fig. 4.2 Interactions between the major components of the primary cell wall. Hemicellulose molecules such as the xyloglucans are linked by hydrogen bonds to the surface of the cellulose microfibrils. The xyloglucans can be cross-linked to acidic pectin molecules, such as the rhamnogalacturonans, through short neutral polysaccharide components of pectins, e.g. arabinogalactans. Cell wall glycoproteins are woven tightly into the cell wall to complete the matrix (Alberts et al. 1989)

4.1.2.1 Type I and Type II Primary Walls

The primary cell walls of plants are classified into two major groups: Type I walls (in dicots e.g. all flower plants) and Type II walls (in monocots e.g. grass) with respect to the chemical structures of components, wall architecture and their biosynthetic processes. They vary in several ways; in the complex glycans that interlace and cross-link the cellulose microfibrils to form a strong framework, in the nature of the gel matrix surrounding this framework and they also vary in the types of aromatic substances and structural proteins that covalently cross-link the primary and secondary walls and lock cells into shape (Carpita 1996).

Type I walls are characterised by a cellulose–xyloglucan framework with approximately equal amounts of cellulose and cross-linking xyloglucans with various minor amounts of arabinoxylans, glucomannans and galacto-glucomannans (Nishitani 1997). Most type I wall xyloglucans share a repeating heptasaccharide unit structure subject to further derivatisation by additional galactosyl, fucosyl and arabinosyl units. Xyloglucans occur in two distinct locations in the wall. They bind tightly to exposed faces of glucan chains in the cellulose microfibrils, and they span the distance between adjacent microfibrils or they simply twin with other xyloglucans to lock the microfibrils into place (http://cellwall.genomics.purdue.edu).

The cellulose–xyloglucan framework of Type I walls is typically embedded in a matrix of pectic polysaccharides. The major pectins comprise principally homogalacturonans (HGA) and rhamnogalacturonan I and II (RG-I and RG-II). Some models suggest that these three components are covalently linked to one another to form the pectic network (Willats et al. 2001; Ridley et al. 2001). Some HGAs and RGs are cross-linked by ester linkages to pectins or other polymers held more tightly in the wall matrix. Neutral polymers composed of arabinose or galactose residues are branched to the rhamnosyl residues of RG-I (RG I backbone) in the pectic polysaccharides. Some of these side chains are further cross-linked by ester linkages to other pectic components or to non-pectic polymers through coumaroyl and feruloyl residues. In the pectic network, calcium ions serve as cross-links between the de-esterified carboxylic acid groups in the HGA and RG-I domains, whereas borate di-ester bridges cross-link the RG-II domains (Kobayashi et al. 1996; Ishii 1999; O'Neill et al. 2001). RG II has the richest diversity of sugars and linkage structures known. Some Type I walls also contain several types of structural proteins that may interact with the pectic network. The various structural proteins can form intermolecular bridges with other proteins without necessarily binding to the polysaccharide components (http://cellwall.genomics.purdue.edu).

Type II walls are found only in commelinoid monocotyledons, which include cereals such as rice (*Oryza sativa*), oats, barley and the Poales which represent families of plants such as grasses (Poaceae). Type II walls differ from type I walls primarily as they have less xyloglucan than cellulose. They contain cellulose microfibrils of the same structure as those of the Type I wall, but the predominant glycans that cross-link the cellulose microfibrils in cereals are glucuronoarabinoxylan (GAX) (Nishitani and Nevins 1991) and β1,3:β1,4 mixed glucans (Kato et al. 1982). Grasses have typical type II walls that are rich in GAX and β1,3/β1,4 glucan (Ebringerová et al. 2005). When grass cells begin to elongate, they accumulate mixed-linked β-glucans in addition to GAX. This type of β-glucan is unique to the Poales and is a rare example of a cell expansion specific. Unbranched GAXs can hydrogen bond to cellulose or to each other. The attachment of arabinose and glucuronic acid side groups to the xylan backbone of GAXs prevents the formation of hydrogen bonds, diminishing the extent of cross-linking between two unbranched GAX chains or GAX to cellulose (http://cellwall.genomics.purdue.edu).

Type II walls have small amounts of XyG, but these XyGs contain neither arabinose nor fucose. Compared with the pectin-abundant type I wall, the type II wall contains less pectin. In general, grasses are pectin-poor. With the exception of the lack of fucose, grass pectins are similar in structure to those of dicots. Grasses, which have very little structural protein compared with dicots and non-commelinoid monocots, have higher amounts of phenylpropanoids, which form extensive interconnecting networks primarily when cells stop expanding (Iiyama et al. 1990). In the non-lignified type II walls the principal hydroxycinnamate is ferulic acid. In the lignified walls both ferulic and p-coumaric acid are found. Sinapic acid, 5-hydroxyferulic acid and caffeic acid have also been reported, although these are much less abundant. Ferulic acid is esterfied to the C5 of the arabinosyl side chains of arabinoxylans (Nishitani and Nevins

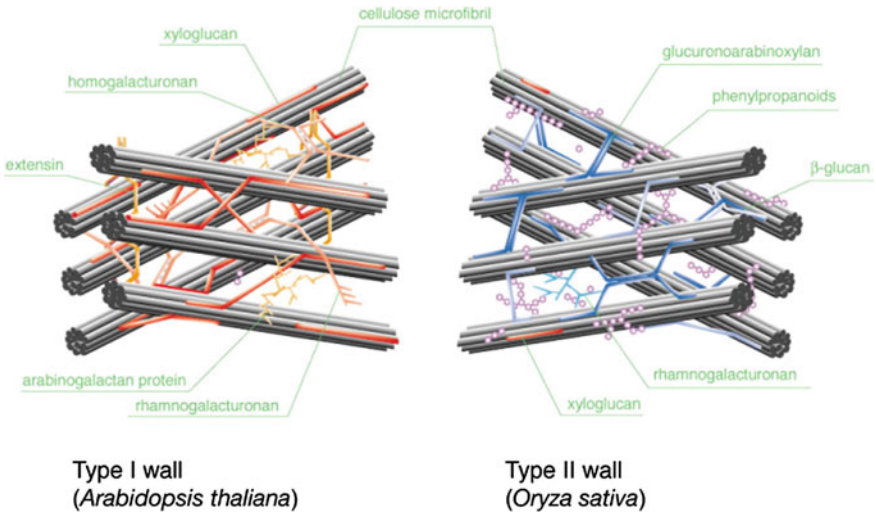


Fig. 4.3 The structural differences between type I and type II cell-wall types, as represented by *Arabidopsis* and rice. Based on the model of Carpita and McCann 2000

1989). Ferulic acid can undergo oxidative dimerisation forming arabinoxylan networks (http://cellwall.genomics.purdue.edu) (Fig. 4.3).

The organisation and interactions of primary wall components are not known with certainty and there is still considerable debate about how wall organisation is modified to allow cells to expand and grow. The covalently cross-linked model, the tether model, the diffuse layer model and the stratified layer model are among the models proposed to account for the mechanical properties of the wall (refer to http://www.ccrc.uga.edu for further details of these models). Much research is still required to provide a complete description of the primary wall at the molecular level which is difficult as evidence shows primary walls are dynamic structures whose composition and architecture changes during plant growth and development.

4.1.3 Secondary Cell Walls

The much thicker and stronger secondary wall accounts for most of the carbohydrate in biomass and is deposited once the cell has ceased to grow. It is deposited by the protoplast inside the primary wall (Hernon et al. 2010).The secondary walls surrounded cells that differentiate to form specialised functions and are particularly important in specialised cells that require great mechanical strength and structural reinforcement (e.g. wood cells) (Cosgrove 2005).

The secondary walls of woody tissue and grasses are composed predominantly of cellulose, lignin, and hemicellulose (xylan, glucuronoxylan, arabinoxylan, or glucomannan). Cellulose makes up ~43 % of the secondary wall. Therefore,

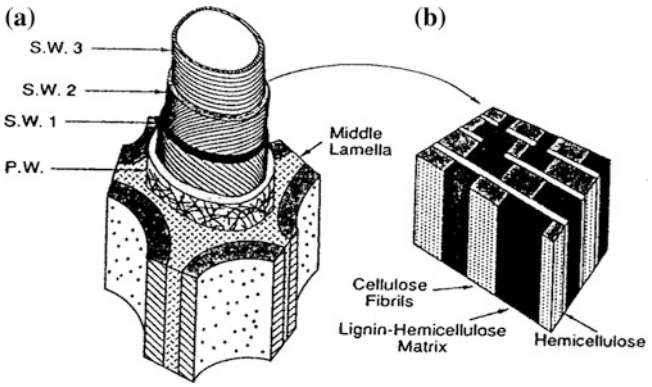


Fig. 4.4 **a** Schematic representation depicting the organisation of the cell wall layers composing woody fibres. **b** Probable relationship of lignin and hemicellulose to the cellulose microfibrils in the secondary cell walls. Primary cell wall (*P.W.*); secondary cell walls (*S.W.*1–*S.W.*3) (Béguin and Aubert 2000)

cellulose is more abundant in the secondary wall than in the primary wall which means the secondary wall is rigid and not readily stretched.

The cellulose fibrils are embedded in a network of hemicellulose and lignin. Cross-linking of this network is believed to result in the elimination of water from the wall and the formation of a hydrophobic composite that limits accessibility of hydrolytic enzymes and is a major contributor to the structural characteristics of secondary walls (http://www.ccrc.uga.edu). Xylans are one of the major hemicelluloses in secondary cell walls of dicots and all walls of grasses. Xylan, which accounts for up to 30 % of the mass of the secondary walls in grasses, contributes to the recalcitrance of these walls to enzymatic degradation.

Generally, the secondary wall consists of three sub-layers, denoted S1, S2 and S3, from outside to inside, which are distinguished by differences in the orientation of their cellulose microfibrils (Heredia et al. 1995) (Fig. 4.4).

4.1.4 A Closer Look at the Plant Cell Wall Polysaccharides

Polysaccharides are the largest carbohydrate molecules and may contain thousands of monosaccharides joined by glycosidic bonds. Plant cell wall polysaccharides are the most abundant organic compounds found in nature. They can be assigned to three main groups: cellulose, hemicelluloses and pectins (Table 4.1).

4.1.4.1 Cellulose

The world's most abundant biopolymer cellulose or β-1-4-glucan is a linear polysaccharide polymer of cellobiose units (repeating units of glucose). Cellulose is the major constituent of cell wall polysaccharides. Individual glucan chains of

Table 4.1 Matrix components of the cell wall (Brett and Waldron 1996)

Phase	Components	
Microfibrillar	Cellulose (β 1,4-glucan)	
Matrix	Pectins	Rhamnogalacturaonan I
		Arabinan
		Galactan
		Arabinogalactan I
		Homogalacturonan
		Rhamnogalacturaonan II
	Hemicelluloses	Xylan
		Glucomannan
		Mannan
		Galactomannan
		Glucuronnmannan
		Xyloglucan
		Callose (β 1,3-glucan)
		β 1,3- β 1,4-glucan
		Arabinogalactan II
	Proteins	Extensin
		Arabinogalactan-proteins
		Others, including enzymes
	Phenolics	Lignin
		Ferulic acid
		Others, e.g. coumeric acid & truxillic acid

8,000–12,000 D-glucose residues linked by β-1,4-glycosidic bonds associate via H-bonds and align parallel to each other to form microfibrils that are largely crystalline. Each microfibril can consist of up to 250 cellulose-rich chains and is twisted in a right-handed manner at intervals along the microfibril. These fibrils are attached to each other by hemicelluloses, amorphous polymers of different sugars as well as other polymers such as pectin, and covered by lignin. The microfibrils are often associated in the form of bundles or macrofibrils (Endler and Persson 2011). These rigid cellulose structures form inert, insoluble fibres of great strength, which are characteristic of cellulose molecules present in the primary and secondary cell walls of higher plants. Each cellulose crystal contains numerous tens of polymeric chains in a parallel orientation. This special and complicated structure make cellulose resistant to both chemical and biological treatments.

The structure of cellulose is not uniform. It contains both highly crystalline and less ordered amorphous regions. During its biosynthesis, chains of varying lengths are created. Therefore, an individual chain may contribute to one or more crystalline regions, leading to the occurrence of occasional chain ends even within the highly ordered crystalline regions (Teeri 1997). The less ordered amorphous regions have a reduced level of H-bonding so they are more susceptible to hydrolysis (Cowling 1974; Gharpuray et al. 1983; Zhao et al. 2007) (Fig. 4.5).

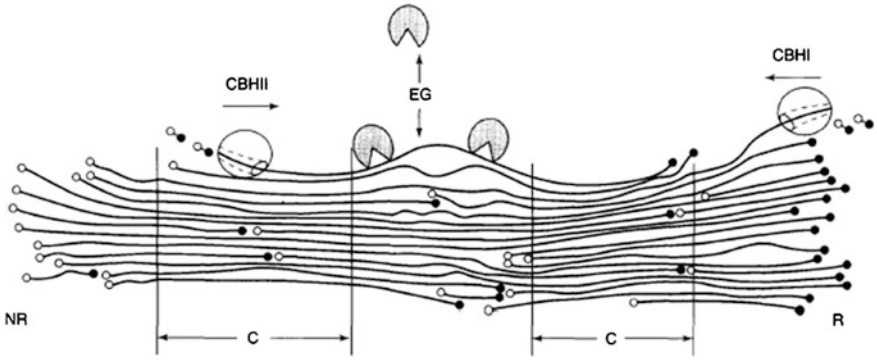


Fig. 4.5 Schematic representation of the degradation of crystalline cellulose by the cellulase degrading system of *Tr. reesei*, reducing end (*R*), non-reducing end (*NR*), highly ordered crystalline regions (*C*), cellobiohydrolase I (*CBHI*), cellobiohydrolase II (*CBHII*), endoglucanase (*EG*), (Teeri 1997)

Investigations of the structure of the maize primary cell wall, cellulose microfibril and its biosynthesis suggest sequential fibre synthesis, i.e. elementary fibril → microfibril → macrofibril. In this model, rosettes containing 36 CesA proteins (cellulose synthase complex) produce 36 β-D-glucan chains that assemble through hydrogen bonding and van der Waals forces to form an elementary fibril. This elementary fibril is thought to be a heterogenous structure containing a crystalline core and a sub-crystalline shell structure. When formed the elementary fibrils coalesce to form a microfibril, which in turn disperses at the distal ends to form parallel-arranged macrofibrils (Fig. 4.6). Polysaccharides such as hemicellulose and pectin are later deposited on the surface of the microfibril (Ding and Himmel 2006; http://www.ccrc.uga.edu).

4.1.4.2 Hemicellulose

Hemicelluloses are defined as low-molecular weight polysaccharides, soluble in alkali and are closely associated with cellulose and lignin in the plant cell wall. Hemicelluloses are aligned along the surface of the cellulose microfibrils and act as a physiological 'glue' in the plant cell wall. Hemicellulosic polymers can also form links between each other which can connect cellulose microfibrils together. In addition, they can also act as a lubricant to prevent direct microfibril–microfibril contact (Heredia et al. 1995).

Unlike cellulose, which is composed exclusively of glucose units, hemicelluloses are heteroglycans composed of a combination of pentoses (C5 sugars) and hexoses (C6 sugars), that include, D-xylose, L-arabinose, D-glucose, D-mannose, D-galactose, with smaller amounts of L-rhamnose, D-glucuronic acid, 4-O-methyl-D-glucuronic acid and D-galacturonic acid. Individual plant species contain

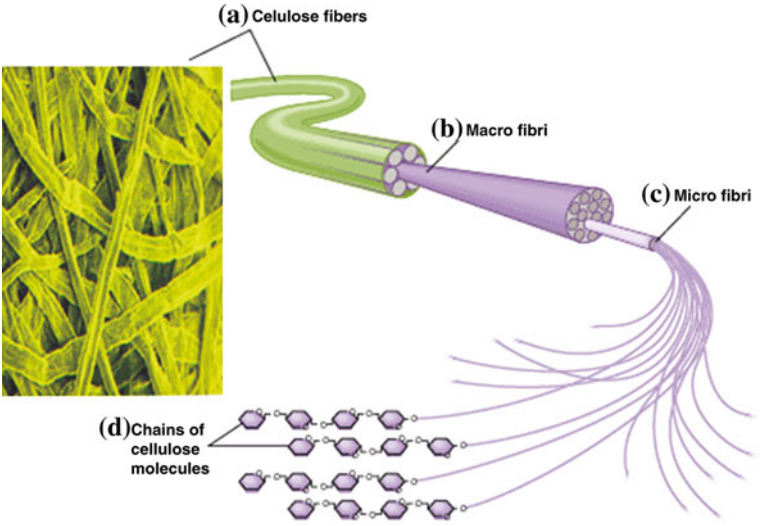


Fig. 4.6 Schematic representation of the organisation of cellulose chains within a microfibril (http://nutrition.jbpub.com)

hemicelluloses of varying composition. The dominant sugars in hemicelluloses are mannose in softwoods and xylose in hardwoods and agriculture residues including grass. As hemicelluloses are branched, these heteropolymers do not form crystalline structures or microfibrils. Hemicellulose chains are far shorter in length than cellulose and have a relatively low degree of polymerisation (Timell 1964 and Tsmousis 1991). Although hemicelluloses are not organised into crystalline arrays, their organisation in the cell wall is not random. Spectroscopy studies show their preferred orientation appears to be parallel to the cellulose microfibrils (Morikawa et al. 1978). The branched structures of hemicelluloses have little resistance to hydrolysis, and are easily hydrolysed by acids to their monomer components. Several different plant cell wall polymers are known as hemicelluloses; xyloglucan, glucuronoarabinoxylan, xylan, mixed linkage glucans, mannans and galactomannans (Hernon et al. 2010; http://www.ccrc.uga.edu).

Although xyloglucan is the major hemicellulose in most flowering plant primary walls, xylan is the principle type of hemicellulose that is found in the primary walls of cereals, softwoods and hardwoods. Xylans normally occur as heteropolysaccharides, containing different substituent groups in the side chains that are covalently attached to the β1,4-D-xylose backbone. All plant xylans contain a β-1,4-linked D-xylose backbone, which can be substituted by different side groups (Fig. 4.7). Residues commonly substituted on the xylan backbone include acetyl, arabinosyl and glucuronosyl groups (Hernon et al. 2010).

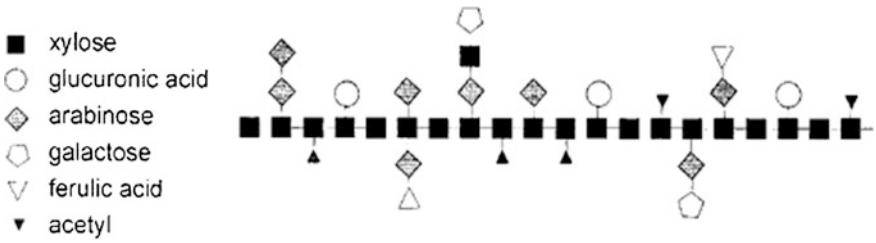


Fig. 4.7 Schematic representation of a hypothetical xylan (de Vries and Visser 2001)

4.1.4.3 Pectins

Pectin is a family of complex carbohydrates found in all plant primary walls and in the middle lamella of terrestrial plants. All higher plants except the grass family have walls of 30–35 % pectin. The walls of the grass family contain ~10 % pectin. The structures of pectins vary with species and pectins isolated from the same source may also display structural and compositional differences, depending on the location within the cell wall (Faik 2010). Pectins studied to-date have been isolated from only a small fraction of the total number of flowering plants and little is known about the pectins from other non-plant sources (Ridley et al. 2001).

Three classes of pectic polysaccharides have been characterised: homogalacturonans, rhamnogalacturonans, and substituted galacturonans (Faik 2010). Pectin polysaccharides all contain 1,4-linked α-D-galacturonic acid and homogalacturonan is the most abundant pectic polysaccharide.

The 'smooth' regions of pectins contain linear sequences of α-1,4-linked galacturonic acid units or homogalacturonan. The 'hairy' regions contain highly branched rhamnogalacturonan polysaccharides which display significant heterogeneity with respect to monosaccharide and structural composition (de Vries and Visser 2001). The term 'pectic substances' covers a range of colloidal polysaccharides that can be extracted from the cell wall, including xylogalacturonan, arabinan, galactan and type I arabinogalactan, as well as homogalacturonan and rhamnogalacturonan (Heredia et al. 1995).

Pectin forms gels in the presence of divalent cations (e.g. Ca++) or in acidic conditions in the presence of high solute concentrations (e.g. sucrose). Oligosaccharides that are released from homogalacturonan by endopolygalacturonases, induce plant defence responses and regulate plant growth and development.

Proposed functions of pectins in plants include:

- Cell wall structure/Assembly
- Cell–cell adhesion
- Cell expansion
- Cell wall porosity
- Ion, growth factors, enzyme binding
- Biomechanics: regulation of water flow
- Reservoir of biologically active oligosaccharides

- Pollen tube growth
- Seed hydration
- Leaf abscission
- Fruit development

(http://www.ccrc.uga.edu)

4.1.4.4 Starch

After cellulose and hemicellulose, starch is the most abundant carbohydrate found in nature. Grasses were first domesticated for their starch-rich seeds (grains or kernels) and the starch content has subsequently been increased by breeding. Starch accounts for 70–80 % of the dry weight of the mature maize kernel (Comparot-Moss and Denyer 2009; Dinges 2001).

Starch is a major food reserve and energy store found in the cytoplasm of plants and it is composed of α-glucose residues that are linked together by α-1,4 and/or α-1,6 glycosidic bonds (Bertoldo and Antranikian 2002). Starch is present in two main forms, amylose and amylopectin and these two forms represent 98–99 % of the dry weight of starch granules; the distribution of these forms can vary from one plant species to another. Starches are generally composed of 75–80 % amylopectin, however, the exact proportion varies from species to species. Some crops including barley and maize contain very little amylose and are almost entirely made up of amylopectin (Richardson and Gorton 2003).

4.1.4.5 Lignin

Lignin is a very complex molecule and is constructed of phenylpropane units linked in a three-dimensional structure which is particularly difficult to biodegrade. Lignin is the most recalcitrant component of the plant cell wall, and the higher the proportion of lignin, the higher the resistance to chemical and enzymatic degradation. The basic function of lignin is to cement cells together. Generally, softwoods contain more lignin (up to 30 % of the dry weight of softwoods) than hardwoods and most of the agriculture residues. It gives plants rigidity and protects them from microbial attack. White and brown-rot fungi and bacteria can degrade lignin.

Approximately, 20 % of the grass secondary cell wall is lignin which essentially fills the pores between the polysaccharides. Grass lignin shares similarities with dicot lignin in that it is primarily composed of syringyl, derived from sinapyl alcohol (∼40–61 %) and guaiacyl (∼35–49 %) units. Grass lignin also contains ∼4–15 % of r-hydroxyphenyl units of which there are only trace amounts in dicot lignin. The assembly of the monolignols appears to be similar in dicots and grasses. Grasses also differ from dicots in that grass lignin contains substantial

amounts of ferulic acid and r-coumaric acid. Ferulic acid residues attached to GAX may serve as nucleation sites for lignin formation (Vogel 2008).

Lignin is insoluble in most organic solvents as it is a highly polymerised amorphous material. The lignin content of lignocellulose is one of the drawbacks of using these feedstock materials in fermentation, as it makes lignocellulose resistant to chemical and biological degradation (Taherzadeh and Karimi 2008).

4.2 Grass

Grasses are known to be amongst the most important crops throughout the world and provide the majority of calories consumed by humans either by directly through the consumption of grains or indirectly through animals that are fed on grains and forage. Furthermore, grass is poised to become a significant source of renewable energy, because the sugars locked in the polysaccharides of the cell wall can be converted into liquid fuel (e.g. ethanol, butanol) (Vogel 2008).

The sugars in grass lignocellulose exist mostly as the polysaccharides cellulose and hemicellulose. These polysaccharides are not readily available as lignin and other aromatics covalently link with, and at times physically mask, plant carbohydrates, thus protecting these potential substrates from saccharification. Pre-treatment is required to free the carbohydrates for bioconversion to ethanol. Most often, the suggested pre-treatment is chemical (Anderson and Akin 2008).

4.3 Ethanol Production

Ethanol production from lignocellulose involves a number of processes that must occur in sequence. First, the lignocellulose is appropriately pre-treated to prepare it for enzymatic hydrolysis which releases monomeric sugars from the complex carbohydrate polymers. This sugar rich hydrolysate then becomes the substrate in a subsequent fermentation step which yields ethanol which has to be recovered by distillation and purified from the liquid fraction post fermentation. The pre-treatment is necessary to improve the rate of production and the total yield of simple sugars in the hydrolysis step (Hendriks and Zeeman 2009).

4.4 Factors Limiting Lignocellulose Hydrolysis

The hydrolysis of lignocellulose is limited by several factors. Primarily, the inherent properties of native lignocellulosic materials make them resistant to enzymatic attack. The aim of pre-treatment is to change these properties in order to prepare the materials for enzymatic degradation. Since, the composition of

lignocellulosic material is very complicated as described in earlier sections, their pre-treatment is not simple either.

The inherent properties of lignocellulose including the crystallinity of cellulose, its accessible surface area and protection by lignin and hemicellulose, degree of cellulose polymerisation and degree of acetylation of hemicelluloses are the main factors considered as affecting the rate of biological degradation of lignocelluloses by enzymes (Hendriks and Zeeman 2009; Taherzadeh and Karimi 2008).

4.5 Pre-treatments

A vast amount of pre-treatment processes for lignocellulosic residues are well documented. These pre-treatments range from mechanical or physical pre-treatments such as milling or irradiation, chemical and physiochemical pre-treatments such as alkali or acid treatments, liquid hot-water treatment, microwave-chemical treatment, steam, ammonia fibre or CO_2 explosion and solvent extraction treatments to biological treatments by microorganisms or enzymes. For more in-depth information on these pre-treatments see the review by Taherzadeh and Karimi (2008) (Fig. 4.8).

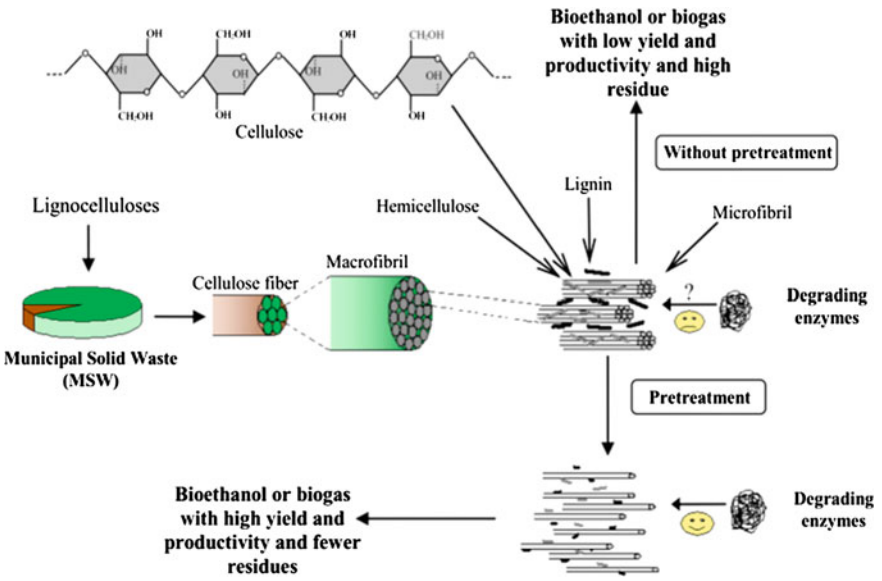


Fig. 4.8 The effect of pre-treatment on the accessibility of degrading enzymes (Taherzadeh and Karimi 2008)

4.5.1 Acid Hydrolysis Pre-treatment

Acid hydrolysis has been described as early as the nineteenth century, with commercial applications from the beginning of the twentieth century. Acid acts to breakdown hemicellulose and opens the lignocellulose structure for subsequent enzymatic attack. The two main approaches utilised in acid pre-treatment are concentrated acid with low temperature or dilute acid with high temperature. Treatment conditions that result in monomeric sugar (xylose) release without degradation to furfural, hydroxymethyl furfural and other volatiles are favoured.

Concentrated-acid with lower operating temperature pre-treatment has a clear advantage compared to dilute-acid processes. Concentrated acid (~30–70 %) processes are generally reported to give greater sugar yields resulting in higher ethanol yields. However, high acid concentration makes the process extremely corrosive, dangerous and expensive. The acid recovery, which is necessary in the concentrated-acid process for economical reasons, is an energy-demanding process and the neutralisation process also has disadvantages. Additionally, strong acid pre-treatment for ethanol production is not attractive because of the risk of producing inhibitory compounds such as furans which are inhibitory to yeast during fermentation. This degradation of monomers can also occur with the use of mild acid treatments at high temperature (Kumar and Murthy 2011).

Dilute Acid Pretreatment Dilute-acid hydrolysis is probably the most commonly applied method among the chemical pretreatment methods. The National Renewable Energy Laboratory (NREL) directs the largest biomass ethanol development effort in the world. The NREL promotes dilute acid hydrolysis, primarily because 80–90 % of hemicellulose sugars are recoverable by dilute acid pretreatment (Yang and Wyman 2008). Sulfuric acid is the most applied acid, while other acids such as HCl and nitric acid are also reported (Taherzadeh and Karimi 2008). Figure 4.9 (research done by the authors A. O'Donovan and V. K. Gupta) shows sugar yields released from dried and milled perennial ryegrass after mild acid

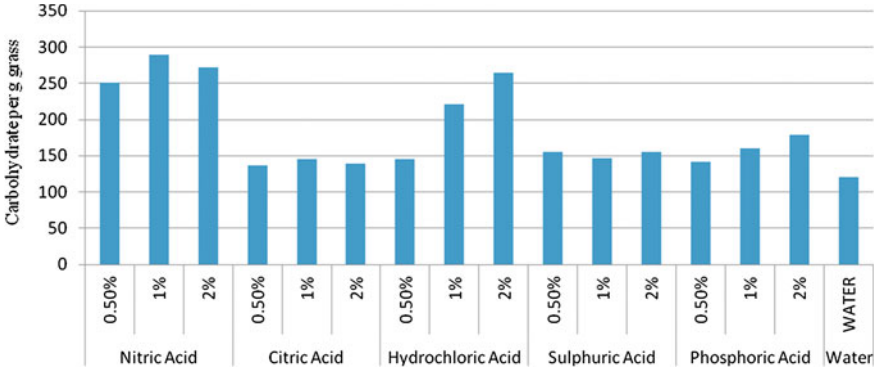


Fig. 4.9 Sugar yield in mild acid pretreatment hydrolysates of dried and milled perennial ryegrass

pre-treatment at 10 % solids loading which was performed at 121 °C for 30 min. The sugars released were determined using the principles of the DuBois method which measures the total carbohydrate present in the pre-treatment hydrolysate (DuBois et al. 1956). The results show mild pre-treatment using 1 % nitric acid was most effective in releasing sugars from the biomass. This is followed by 2 % HCL. Sulphuric, citric and phosphoric acids released similar sugar yields which were all lower than yields achieved using nitric acid and HCL. All acid pre-treatments showed higher sugar release compared to water pre-treatment alone.

During the mild acid pretreatment process biomass is treated at different acid concentrations (0.05–5 %) different combinations of temperatures (100–290 °C) and residence times (few seconds to several hours). Pre-treatments performed in short retention times (e.g. 5 min) is usually at high temperature (e.g. 180 °C), whereas pre-treatments performed in a relatively long retention time (e.g. 30–90 min) is at lower temperatures (e.g. 120 °C) (Taherzadeh and Karimi 2008). During pretreatment, most of the hemicellulose is solubilised and hydrolysed to sugar monomers. Some fraction of cellulose may be depolymerised into glucose. A quantity of the lignin fraction is dissolved and/or redistributed (Kumar and Murthy 2011).

However, the optimum conditions chosen for the highest sugar recovery after pre-treatment does not necessarily mean they are the most effective conditions for enzymatic hydrolysis. This was demonstrated in a 2007 study by C. Cara and co-workers. In this study, olive tree biomass was pre-treated using various acid conditions and subsequently hydrolysed enzymatically. The conditions of 170 °C and 1 % sulphuric acid which gave the greatest hemicellulose recovery in the pre-treatment step resulted in poor results in the enzymatic hydrolysis step. The conditions of 210 °C and 1.4 % acid gave the poorest sugar yield among all the pre-treatments performed but resulted in the maximum yield in enzymatic hydrolysis. In the same study, the researchers reported that the conditions that gave greatest sugar recovery overall were 180 °C and 1 % sulphuric acid (Cara et al. 2008). This indicates that the highest overall sugars, highest hemicellulose recovery and highest enzymatic hydrolysis yield can be achieved under different conditions (Taherzadeh and Karimi 2008).

Pre-treatment with acids such as nitric acid to remove lignin from lignocellulose is also well reported. This chapter deals with mild acid pre-treatment primarily for the removal of hemicellulose. For information in lignin removal refer to the review hydrolysis of lignocellulosic materials for ethanol production (Sun and Cheng 2002).

The major drawback of some acid pre-treatment methods is the formation of different types of inhibitors such as furans, carboxylic acids and phenolic compounds. Enzymatic hydrolysis may not be affected by these compounds, but they can exhibit inhibitory effects in microbial growth and fermentation, which results in less yield and productivity of ethanol or biogas (Taherzadeh and Karimi 2008). Therefore, pre-treatments at low pH should be selected properly in order to avoid or at least reduce the formation of these inhibitors.

4.6 Scanning Electron Microscopy

A scanning electron microscope (SEM) is an electron microscope that images a sample by scanning it with a beam of electrons in a raster scan pattern. The electrons bombard the atoms of the sample and the signal produced reflects information about the sample's surface topography, composition and other properties such as electrical conductivity.

For SEM analysis of grass biomass samples which were subjected to various mild acid pre-treatments as described earlier (a study done by the authors A. O'Donovan and V. K. Gupta), the treated grass biomass residues were oven dried at 60 °C and adhered onto a stainless steel specimen holder called a specimen stub with the aid of an adhesive carbon tab. As grass biomass is non-conductive it is coated with an ultrathin coating of electrically conducting material, deposited on the sample either by low-vacuum sputter coating or by high-vacuum evaporation. Non-conductive specimens tend to charge when scanned by the electron beam, and especially in secondary electron imaging mode, this causes scanning faults and other image artefacts. In the below images, the grass biomass was gold coated using a gold EM Scope SC500 Au coater but materials such as gold/palladium alloy, platinum, osmium, iridium, tungsten, chromium and graphite can also be used. The biomass must be electrically conductive, at least at the surface, and electrically grounded to prevent the accumulation of electrostatic charge at the surface. For additional information on SEM analysis refer to a review available on the Internet at http://serc.carleton.edu/research_education/geochemsheets/techniques/SEM.html. This online review also refers to the literature that further explores SEM.

SEM analysis is a useful tool to examine the effects of pre-treatments and enzymatic hydrolysis on the structure of the plant cell wall and has been used by several researchers for this purpose (Gomez et al. 2008; Jieben et al. 2011).

The gold coated biomass samples were analysed using a Hitachi S-570 SEM and suitably magnified images were recorded. Dilute acid pretreatment may affect biomass structure by solubilising or altering hemicelluloses, altering lignin structure and increasing the available surface area and pore volume of the substrate. The effects of various mild acid pretreatments are shown in images A to N, Fig. 4.10.

Images A and B show untreated grass. It is clear that the cells are well structured the fibres that make up the structure of the grass are connected very tightly. After treatment with just water (hot liquid pretreatment), the cells are generally still well structured and the fibres are still tightly connected (images C & D). After acid hydrolysis, the SEM images show the grass biomass has been affected by all acid pretreatments. In images E, F, G, H, K and L, the cells seem less structured and organised and the fibres seem less tightly connected. However, treatment with nitric acid seems to have had a very destructive effect on the grass biomass. This would correlate with the results of Fig. 4.9 which shows greatest sugar release was achieved by treatment with nitric acid. Image I shows how the grass fibres have completely come apart and in image J areas of the structure have become weakened, with pores starting to appear. Treatment with sulphuric acid also seems to

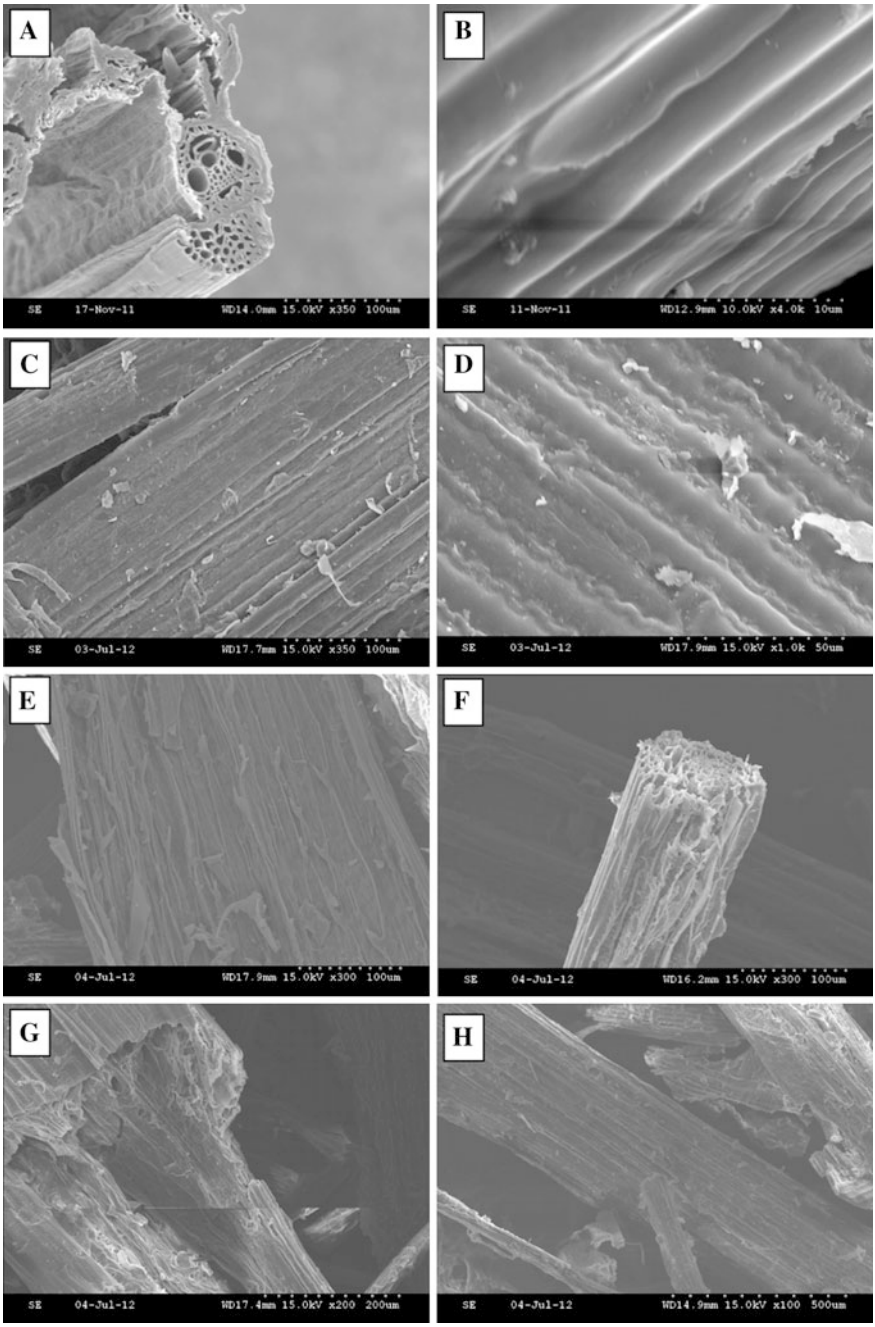


Fig. 4.10 Continued

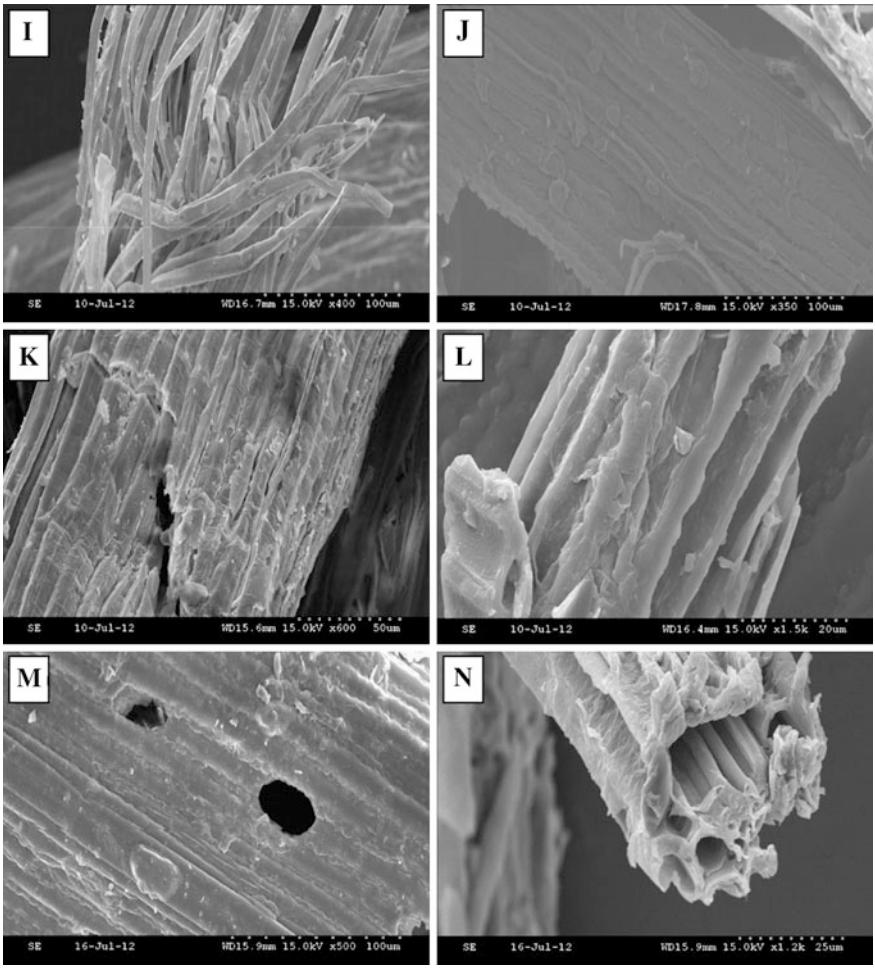


Fig. 4.10 The effects of various mild acid pretreatments are shown in images (**A**–**N**). The grass biomass was pretreated with a range of acids of different concentrations (0.5 and 2 %) at 10 % solids loading. The treatment conditions were 121 °C for 30 min. The biomass residue was separated from the pretreatment hydrolysate, oven dried and gold plated before SEM analysis

have been a very effective pretreatment as it is clear some cell tissues have been destroyed and very definite pores have appeared in the grass structure (images M and N). The destruction of the grass structure shown in these images may be attributed to the preferential degradation of the labile components such as hemicelluloses and acid soluble lignin.

Pre-treating grass biomass with dilute acid is a favorable process as it helps remove the hemicelluloses fraction and disrupt the grass structure which allows greater accessibility for the cellulase enzymes. It may also help lead to less hemicelluloses and lignin content in the cellulose preparation for the acid hydrolysed perennial rye grass.

4.7 Conclusion

The effect of pretreatments is very dependent on the biomass composition. This chapter focused on reviewing in detail the composition of the grass plant cell wall. Mild acid pre-treatments were reviewed and several mild acid pretreatment conditions were tested. The resulting acid hydrolysate sugar yields were noted and the pretreated biomass residues were subjected to SEM analysis to take a closer look at the effects of acid pretreatments, specifically on the plant cell wall. These pretreatment processes should make the lignocellulosic biomass more susceptible to enzymatic attack, where crystallinity of cellulose, its accessible surface area and protection by lignin and hemicellulose are the main factors in order to obtain an efficient hydrolysis.

Acknowledgments I would like to acknowledge Pierce Lalor and the Centre for Microscopy and Imaging at the National University of Ireland Galway for the use of and assistance with a Scanning Electron Microscope

References

Anderson W, Akin DE (2008) Structural and chemical properties of grass lignocelluloses related to conversion for biofuels. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 35:355–366

Alberts B, Bray D, Lewis J, Raff M, Roberts K, Watson JD (1989) Molecular biology of the cell, biochemical education, vol 18. Garland Publishing, New York. doi:10.1002/bmb.1990.5690180128

Béguin P, Aubert JP (2000) Cellulases. In: Lederberg J (ed) Encyclopedia of microbiology. Academic, San Diego, pp 744–758

Bertoldo C, Antranikian G (2002) Starch-hydrolyzing enzymes from thermophilic archaea and bacteria. Curr Opin Chem Biol 6:151–160

Brett C, Waldron K (1996) Physiology and biochemistry of plant cell walls, 2nd edn. Chapman and Hall, London

Cara C, Ruiz E, Oliva JM, Sáez F, Castro E (2008) Conversion of olive tree biomass into fermentable sugars by dilute acid pre-treatment and enzymatic saccharification. Bioresour Technol 99:1869–1876. doi:10.1016/j.biortech.2007.03.037

Carpita NC (1996) Structure and biogenesis of the cell walls of grasses. Ann Rev Plant Physiol Plant Molec Biol 47:445–476

Carpita NC, Gibeaut DM (1993) Structural models of primary cell walls in flowering plants: consistency of molecular structure with the physical properties of the walls during growth. Plant J 3:1–30

Carpita NC, McCann M (2000) In: Buchanan BB, Gruissem W, Jones RJ (eds) Biochemistry and molecular biology of plants. American Society of Plant Biologists, Rockville, MA, pp 25–109

Comparot-Moss S, Denyer K (2009) The evolution of the starch biosynthetic pathway in cereals and other grasses. J Exp Bot 60:2481–2492. doi:10.1093/jxb/erp141

Cosgrove DJ (2005) Growth of the plant cell wall. Nature 6:850–861

Cowling EB (1974) Physical and chemical constraints in the hydrolysis of cellulose and lignocellulosic materials. Biotechnol Bioeng Symp 5:163–181

Ding SY, Himmel ME (2006) The maize primary cell wall microfibril: a new model derived from direct visualization. J Agric Food Chem 54:597–606

Dinges JR (2001) Molecular structure of three mutations at the maize sugary1 locus and their allele-specific phenotypic effects. Plant Physiol 125:1406–1418. doi:10.1104/pp.125.3.1406

DuBois M, Gilles KA, Hamilton JK, Rebers PA, Smith F (1956) Colorimetric method for determination of sugars and related substances. Anal Chem 28:350–356 (American Chemical Society). doi:10.1021/ac60111a017

Ebringerová A et al (2005) Hemicellulose. In: Heinze T (ed) Advances in polymer science, vol 186. Springer-Verlag, Berlin/Heidelberg, pp 1–67. doi:10.1007/b136812

Endler A, Persson S (2011) Cellulose synthases and synthesis in arabidopsis. Molecular Plant 4:199–211. doi:10.1093/mp/ssq079

Faik A (2010) Xylan biosynthesis: news from the grass. Plant Physiol 153:396–402. doi:10.1104/pp.110.154237

Gharpuray MM, Lee YH, Fan LT (1983) Structural modification of lignocellulosics by pretreatments to enhance enzymatic-hydrolysis. Biotechnol Bioeng 25:157–172

Gomez LD, Bristow JK, Statham ER, McQueen-Mason SJ (2008) Analysis of saccharification in brachypodium distachyon stems under mild conditions of hydrolysis. Biotechnol Biofuels 1:15

Hendriks ATWM, Zeeman G (2009) Pretreatments to enhance the digestibility of lignocellulosic biomass. Bioresour Technol 100:10–18. doi:10.1016/j.biortech.2008.05.027

Heredia A, Jimenez A, Guillen R (1995) Composition of plant cell walls. Zeitschrift Fur Lebensmittel-Untersuchung Und-Forschung 200:24–31

Hernon AT, O'Donovan A, Shier MC (2010) Applications of Fungal Enzymes In Bioconversion. In: Gupta VK, Tuohy MG, Gaur RK (eds) Fungal biochemistry and biotechnology. Lambert Academic Publishing, Germany. ISBN no: 978-3-8433-5800-2

Iiyama K, Lam T, Stone B (1990) Phenolic-acid bridges between polysaccharides and lignin in wheat internodes. Phytochemistry 29:733–737

Ishii T (1999) The plant cell wall polysaccharide rhamnogalacturonan II self-assembles into a covalently cross-linked dimer. J Biol Chem 274:13098–13104. doi:10.1074/jbc.274.19.13098

Jieben T, Kefu C, Jun X, Jun L, Chuanshan Z (2011) Effects of Dilute acid hydrolysis on composition and structure of cellulose in Euliopsis Binata. Bioresources 6:1069–1078

Kato Y, Ito S, Iki K, Matsuda K (1982) Xyloglucan and r{beta}-D-glucan in cell walls of rice seedlings. Plant Cell Physiol 23:351–364

Kobayashi M, Matoh T, Azuma J (1996) Two chains of rhamnogalacturonan II are cross-linked by borate-diol ester bonds in higher plant cell walls. Plant Physiol 110:1017–1020. doi:10.1104/pp.110.3.1017

Kumar D, Murthy GS (2011) Impact of pre-treatment and downstream processing technologies on economics and energy in cellulosic ethanol production. Biotechnol Biofuels 4:27

Morikawa K, la Cour TF, Nyborg J, Rasmussen KM, Miller DL, Clark BF (1978) High resolution x-ray crystallographic analysis of a modified form of the elongation factor Tu: guanosine diphosphate complex. J Mol Biol 125:325–338

Nishitani K (1997) The role of endo xyloglucan transferase in the organization of plant cell walls. Int Rev Cytol 173:157–206

Nishitani K, Nevins D (1991) Glucuronoxylan xylanohydrolase. A unique xylanase with the requirement for appendant glucuronosyl units. J Biol Chem 266:6539–6543

Nishitani K, Nevins DJ (1989) Enzymic analysis of feruloylated arabinoxylans (Feraxan) derived from zea mays cell walls: II. fractionation and partial characterization of feraxan fragments dissociated by a *Bacillus subtilis* Enzyme (Feraxanase). Plant Physiol 91:242–248. doi:10.1104/pp.91.1.242

O'Neill MA, Eberhard S, Albersheim P, Darvill AG (2001) Requirement of borate cross-linking of cell wall rhamnogalacturonan II for arabidopsis growth. Science 294:846–849, (New York, N.Y.). doi:10.1126/science.1062319

Reiter WD (2002) Biosynthesis and properties of the plant cell wall. Curr Opin Plant Biol 5:536–542

Richardson S, Gorton L (2003) Characterisation of the substituent distribution in starch and cellulose derivatives. Anal Chim Acta 497:27–65

Ridley BL, Mohnen DA, O'Neill MA, O'Neill Mohnen (2001) Pectins: structure, biosynthesis, and oligogalacturonide-related signalling. Phytochemistry 57:929–967

Somerville C, Bauer S, Brininstool G, Facette M, Hamann T, Milne J, Osborne E et al. (2004) Toward a systems approach to understanding plant cell walls. Science 306:2206–2211, (New York, N.Y.). doi:10.1126/science.1102765

Sun Y, Cheng J (2002) Hydrolysis of lignocellulosic materials for ethanol production: a review. Bioresour Technol 83:1–11

Taherzadeh MJ, Karimi K (2008) Pre-treatment of lignocellulosic wastes to improve ethanol and biogas production: a review. Int J Mol Sci 9:1621–1651. doi:10.3390/ijms9091621

Teeri T (1997) Crystalline cellulose degradation: new insight into the function of cellobiohydrolases. Tibtech 15:160–167

Timell TE (1964) Wood hemicellulose. Adv Carbohydr Chem 19:247–302

Tsmousis G (1991) Science and technology of wood; structure, properties, utilization. Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York

Vogel J (2008) Unique aspects of the grass cell wall. Curr Opin Plant Biol 11:301–307. doi:10.1016/j.pbi.2008.03.002

Vries RP, Visser J (2001) *Aspergillus* enzymes involved in degradation of plant cell wall polysaccharides. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 65:49

Willats WG, McCartney LM, Mackie W, Knox JP (2001) Pectin: cell biology and prospects for functional analysis. Plant Mol Biol 47:9–27

Yang B, Wyman CE (2008) Pre-treatment: the key to unlocking low-cost cellulosic ethanol. Environ Eng 2:26–40. doi:10.1002/bbb

Zhao H, Kwak JH, Conrad Zhang Z, Brown HM, Arey BW, Holladay JE (2007) Studying cellulose fiber structure by SEM, XRD, NMR and acid hydrolysis. Carbohydr Polym 68:235

http://serc.carleton.edu/research_education/geochemsheets/techniques/SEM.html

http://www.ccrc.uga.edu

http://cellwall.genomics.purdue.edu

http://nutrition.jbpub.com

Part III
Conversion Technologies

Chapter 5
The Role of Fungal Enzymes in Global Biofuel Production Technologies

Jessica M. Coyne, Vijai K. Gupta, Anthonia O'Donovan and Maria G. Tuohy

Abstract The environmental impact of fossil fuels alongside the competition of agricultural land and water for the production of food versus that of first generation biofuels has led to great interest in improving second and third generation biofuel production. Lignocellulosic materials are the essential feedstock for second generation biofuels and vary according to the residing country and regions. At present, the biorefinery systems established to degrade the various lignocellulose feedstocks are expensive and inefficient. The stages in the biorefinery process include pre-treatment of the feedstock, acid or enzymatic hydrolysis followed by fermentation and possess various optimum temperatures and pH. Interest has turned to the role of fungi and various extracellular enzymes involved in the enzymatic hydrolysis of the lignocellulosic components, namely hemicellulose, cellulose and lignin. This review chapter discusses the leading enzymes involved in the production of biofuels, how they penetrate barriers within the biorefinery systems and their potential in the development of new production strategies.

J. M. Coyne · V. K. Gupta (✉) · A. O'Donovan · M. G. Tuohy
Molecular Glycobiotechnology Group, Department of Biochemistry, School of Natural Sciences, National University of Ireland Galway, Galway, Ireland
e-mail: vijai.gupta@nuigalway.ie, vijaifzd@gmail.com

M. G. Tuohy
e-mail: maria.tuohy@nuigalway.ie

J. M. Coyne
Monaghan Biosciences Ltd, Tyholland, Monaghan, Co. Monaghan, Ireland

V. K. Gupta
Department of Science, FASC, MITS University, Lakshmangarh, Rajasthan, India

V. K. Gupta and M. G. Tuohy (eds.), *Biofuel Technologies*,
DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-34519-7_5,

5.1 Introduction

Global concerns about the depletion of fossil fuel reserves, their detrimental effects on the environment through greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, and the increase in crude oil prices have shifted the environmental and scientific focus onto the use of other forms of renewable energy. Over the past number of decades, multiple research groups have been extensively studying the potential of, and the processes involved in using, agricultural crops and biomass as feedstock for fuel and energy. Through these research clusters, biofuel and bioenergy production from various renewable resources, alongside the use of specific innovative technologies, has emerged as a solution to reduce detrimental environmental impacts.

The World Energy Council (WEC), in 2009, stated that the world primary energy consumption was calculated to be approximately 12 billion tonnes coal equivalent per year. According to the United Nations (UN), the world population is expected to increase to approximately 10 billion people by 2,050 which, in turn, will increase our consumption of energy to approximately 24 billion tonnes coal equivalent per year (Dashtban et al. 2009). These statistics give a clear indication of the growing need to convert to more sustainable forms of renewable energy in order to achieve these high-energy demands and to provide more 'greener' technologies to reduce the unwanted effects on our environment. Biorefinery systems have been implemented to convert renewable materials, for example wood or agricultural crops, into valuable products such as biofuels, feedstock chemicals and pharma compounds. The bioconversion process involved differs due to the feedstock used and products required by industry. With this concept in mind, different biorefining strategies have been implemented globally through the production of biofuels (and other valuable end products) and increasing its use annually compared to petrol and diesel.

In 2010, the WEC published a report on biofuels stating that the global biofuel production in 2007 had surpassed 34 million tonnes of oil equivalent (Mtoe) but only accounted for 1.5 % of the total consumption of transportation fuel (World Energy Council 2010). This percentage of biofuel consumption had increased to 2 % by 2010 and is expected to account for 5 % of the total transportation fuel consumption by 2030 (World Energy Council 2010). Some countries have been able to excel within the biorefinery industry while others struggle to produce the required volume of biofuels necessary to reach global standards. A report published by Taylor (2008) has indicated that 80 % of the 2.5 % of biofuel for transportation required in the UK were imported; the USA and Brazil were the main contributors, with biofuel produced from corn and sugarcane, respectively.

Taylor (2008) also commented on the Gallagher Review, published by the Renewable Energy Agency in 2008, which stressed that the harnessing of bioenergy and biofuel from agricultural crops was leading to the displacement of food crops and to a higher overall GHG emission than previously expected. The review establishes that biological resources other than agricultural crops need to become the prime feedstock for biofuels in order to combat the rising prices of food due to

competitive water and agricultural land use (Taylor 2008). Other biofuel resources are prevalent in the UK which do not compete for food, such as wheat straw where there is approximately 200,000 tonnes of wheat straw available per year (Taylor 2008).

5.2 Lignocellulose and the Plant Cell Wall

Lignocellulose is a renewable raw material used throughout the agricultural, forestry and food industries and is the structural component of all plants. This renewable material is composed of three main polymers: cellulose, hemicellulose and lignin (Dashtban et al. 2009; Martínez et al. 2005).

5.2.1 Cellulose

Cellulose is a linear, β-1, 4-linked polymer of D-glucose units and is the major component of lignocellulosic materials (Howard et al. 2003; Turner et al. 2007). The smallest repeating unit of cellulose is cellobiose, comprised of two β-1, 4-linked D-glucose units. The hydroxyl groups present in each cellobiose molecule allow for inter- and intra-chain hydrogen bonding within the cellulose polymer and between neighbouring polymers. This high degree of hydrogen bonding results in the formation of highly ordered crystalline structures, which in turn form ordered microfibril structures (Dashtban et al. 2009; Howard et al. 2003). The hydroxyl groups used within these hydrogen bonds determine the overall crystalline structure of the cellulose, and also gives the recalcitrant nature of cellulose towards hydrolysis (Harris and DeBolt 2010). There are six polymorphs of cellulose known to date: cellulose I, II, III_I, III_{II}, IV_I and IV_{II} (Festucci-Buselli et al. 2007). Cellulose I and II are the crystalline structures found in nature, whereas the other polymorphs are artificially created through chemical or heat treatments (Festucci-Buselli et al. 2007).

Cellulose I is the most abundant crystalline structure found in nature which is synthesised into two allomorphs: cellulose Iα and Iβ (Festucci-Buselli et al. 2007; Harris and DeBolt 2010). There are slight differences between these two allomorphs, the main difference resulting from the intra-chain hydrogen bonding between the OH group at position 2 and the OH group at position 6. The length of this bond distinguishes between the two crystalline forms; Iα has a shorter bond than Iβ (Festucci-Buselli et al. 2007).

Higher plants are able to synthesise both cellulose I allomorphs and as a result the cellulose present in plant cells has both crystalline and amorphous regions (Harris and DeBolt 2010). It has been suggested that cellulose Iα is the least stable of the two, with Iβ forming the core of the microfibril and a mixture of the two allomorphs surrounding this core creating amorphous regions (Festucci-Buselli

et al. 2007; Harris and DeBolt 2010). These amorphous regions are thought to allow associations between cellulose microfibrils, lignin and hemicellulose molecules, creating the structural framework of the plant cell wall (Harris and DeBolt 2010). This complex network system plays a part in the recalcitrance of the lignocellulosic material and causes difficulties in the hydrolysis of cellulose microfibrils into cellobiose and glucose molecules during lignocellulose bioconversion.

5.2.2 Hemicellulose

Hemicellulose is the second most abundant polymer found in lignocellulose. This polymer is a heterogeneous polysaccharide consisting of pentoses (D-xylose and D-arabinose), hexoses (D-mannose, D-glucose and D-galactose) and sugar acids (Chandel et al. 2011a; Dashtban et al. 2009; Saha 2003). They consist of both a linear β-1, 4-linked backbone polymer and branched polymers (Chandel et al. 2011a). Due to the variability in their sugar residues and their heterogeneity, the composition of hemicellulose is dependent upon the plant tissue and source; for example, hardwood hemicelluloses are mostly xylans, whereas softwood hemicelluloses are mostly glucomannans (Saha 2003).

Xylans are regarded as the most common hemicellulose within lignocellulosic materials. Other hemicelluloses include mannans, galactans and arabinans, which are found throughout the plant cell wall in varying percentages. Xylans contain a linear β-1, 4-D-xylopyranosyl backbone and branched polymers with residues such as L-arabinose, D-galactose or D-glucuronic acid attached in small quantities (Saha 2003). The polymers, as with all hemicelluloses, are found wrapped around each cellulose microfibril and can also be intertwined within the microfibrils during the crystallisation process (Arantes and Saddler 2011; Hu et al. 2011).

Xyloglucans, which are prevalent in the primary cell wall (PCW), are involved in the cross-linking of hemicellulose polymers to cellulose microfibrils indicating a structural role within the plant (Burton et al. 2010; Caffall and Mohnen 2009). This particular type of polymer possesses a β-1, 4-glucan backbone with heavily substitutions of xylose residues (Burton 2010). Mannans bear a similar structure to cellulose (Caffall and Mohnen 2009). Galactomannans are among the most studied plant cell wall polymers. They possess β-1, 4-mannan backbones with varying degrees of α-galactose substitutions and function as storage polysaccharides (Burton et al. 2010; Cosgrove 2005).

The backbone sugar units can be subjected to acetylation, methylation and the addition of phenolic groups (Burton et al. 2010; Turner et al. 2007). The degree of modification is also dependent upon the plant tissue and source. For example, the degree of acetylation of hardwood xylans is much higher than that of softwood xylans (Bastawde 1992). Deacetylation of xylan was originally carried out through alkali treatment of the lignocellulose but now can be carried out enzymatically through the addition of acetylxylan esterase (Bastawde 1992; Turner et al. 2007). The removal of acetyl groups allows for increased degradation of xylans to xylose

sugars during the pre-treatment of lignocellulose. These xylose monomers can be processed further to give xylitol, a pentose sugar alcohol that is a natural sweetener, which can be substituted for sugar in the diabetic diet and has the ability to reduce dental caries (Akpinar et al. 2011). Xylitol is just one example of the many valuable by-products that can be produced during the bioconversion of lignocellulose.

5.2.3 Pectins

Lignocellulosic materials contain varied quantities of other materials such as ash, proteins and pectins, depending on its source. Pectins are classed as the third major structural polysaccharide of the plant cell wall alongside cellulose and hemicellulose (Dashtban et al. 2009; Turner et al. 2007). They make up a large component of the PCW and can be used as an alternative storage macromolecules to starch in, for example, lupin seeds (Burton et al. 2010). This important polysaccharide also functions in determining the porosity and thickness of the cell wall and is regarded as a source of signalling molecules (Burton et al. 2010; Cosgrove 2005).

Pectins include homogalacturonan, xylogalacturonan and rhamnogalacturonan I and II (Cosgrove 2005; Harris and DeBolt 2010; Ridley et al. 2001). The backbone of the former polysaccharides is mainly comprised of α-1, 4-linked D-galacturonoic acid residues and, in the case of rhamnogalacturonans, L-rhamnose residues (Ridley et al. 2001). The polymers tend to have neutral sugar side chains such as L-rhamnose, arabinose, galactose and xylose attached to the backbone, and are often methylated and acetylated (Burton et al. 2010). In the case of xylogalacturonan pectins, the polymer contains branched xylose residues/chains (Cosgrove 2005).

Pectins have been found to be extremely beneficial in various industries. The polysaccharide has been used in the textile industry for many years and is used in the food industry primarily as a thickener, emulsifier and stabiliser (Turner et al. 2007). It has now come to light that pectins have a potential in drug delivery and may have beneficial cholesterol-lowering effects in the diet as well as increasing the yield of fermentable sugars for biorefinery systems such as biofuel production (Turner et al. 2007).

5.2.4 Lignin

Lignin, the third most abundant component of lignocellulose, has a structural role within plants and facilitates the vertical growth of land plants. This polymer also acts as a physical barrier against microorganisms and aids the transport of water through the xylem (Ferrer et al. 2008). It is normally found as a heterogeneous polymer composed of dimethoxylated, monomethoxylated and

non-methoxylated phenylpropanoid units, also known as syringyl (S), guaiacyl (G) and p-hydroxyphenyl (H) phenylpropanoid units, respectively (Campbell and Sederoff 1996; Dashtban et al. 2009; Martínez et al. 2005).

Due to the various intermolecular linkages that can be formed, the composition of lignin varies depending on the plant type. For example, angiosperms (hardwoods) are primarily composed of S and G units, whereas gymnosperms (softwoods) are mainly composed of G units (Martínez et al. 2005). In poplar, a chain of linear lignin is estimated to be between 13 and 20 units in length on average (Vanholme et al. 2010).

The phenylpropanoid units are derived from their corresponding aromatic alcohol precursors: sinapyl, coniferyl and p-coumaryl alcohol producing phenolic radicals through oxidation of the alcohols, which are coupled together oxidatively through ether and ester linkages (Ferrer et al. 2008; Harris and DeBolt 2010; Vanholme et al. 2010). The lignin polymers are extended through endwise coupling, consuming the phenolic radicals (Vanholme et al. 2010). The coupling of the phenylpropanoid units generally occurs at the β position creating β-O-4 (also known as β-aryl ether), β-5, β-β and β-1 linkages. Other linkages such as 5-5, 5-O-4 can also be created during lignin polymerisation (Harris and DeBolt 2010; Vanholme et al. 2010).

It has been noted that the β-aryl ether linkage is easily hydrolysed, whereas the other linkages are more recalcitrant (Harris and DeBolt 2010). This gives a varied degree of recalcitrance among the different types of lignocellulosic materials. For example, softwood lignin's are mainly composed of G units which contain the more recalcitrant β-5, 5-5 and 5-O-4 linkages, whereas angiosperms such as grasses (monocots) contain a mixture of G and S units which result in a mixture of β-aryl ether and other linkages therefore making the angiosperms slightly more acceptable to hydrolysis (Campbell and Sederoff 1996; Harris and DeBolt 2010; Isroi et al. 2011).

5.2.5 Plant Cell Wall

It has been documented that a plant consists of approximately 35 different cell types, with each cell being unique in its properties and characteristics (Cosgrove 2005). The plant cell wall is generally composed of three layers; the middle lamella, the PCW and the secondary cell wall (SCW), all of which consist of two phases; the microfibrillar phase and the matrix phase (Festucci-Buselli et al. 2007). The middle lamellae and PCWs are formed early during the growth and expansion of the cells while the SCWs are formed around most cells as the plant matures and ceases to grow further (Caffall and Mohnen 2009; Harris and DeBolt 2010).

There are two types of PCWs within angiosperms that are described in the literature; type I and type II (Harris and DeBolt 2010). Angiosperms are classified into two groups; monocots and dicots, distinctive of their number of seed leaves (cotyledons). Type I cell walls are normally found in dicots and lilioid monocots,

whereas type II cell walls are only seen in Poales, a type of commelinid monocot, and other related commelinid monocots (Harris and DeBolt 2010). The two PCW types can be distinguished by their differences in hemicellulose composition (Harris and DeBolt 2010). In type I walls, Xyloglucans are the main hemicellulose present in a pectinaceous matrix whilst type II walls largely consist of glucuronoarabinoxylans (GAXs) with little or no pectin present in the cell matrix (Harris and DeBolt 2010). The networking of these hemicellulose polymers within the plant cell wall leads to a reduced accessibility of the cellulose to hydrolytic enzymes and causing difficulties in the saccharification of all lignocellulose residues.

SCWs are primarily composed of celluloses, lignin's and hemicelluloses such as glucuronoxylans, in dicots and GAXs, in Poales (grasses), and are subdivided into three sub-layers; S1, S2 and S3 (Festucci-Buselli et al. 2007; Harris and DeBolt 2010). The SCW is not seen in every cell but aids in thickening the cell walls and providing additional structural support (Caffall and Mohnen 2009; Cosgrove 2005). The primary and SCWs differ in their composition of lignin, cellulose, hemicellulose and pectin. In poplar, the lignin content is between 19 and 21 % in the SCW but is absent in the PCW and the cellulose content is between 20 and 30 % in the PCW compared to 40–50 % in the SCW (Festucci-Buselli et al. 2007). Hemicelluloses are found in a much higher content within the SCWs than in the PCWs (Caffall and Mohnen 2009). The molecular structure and composition of the plant cell wall also differs depending on the lignocellulosic material in question. As a result, this can lead to variations in the percentage yields of fermentable sugars from the different lignocellulose sources (Arantes and Saddler 2011).

5.3 Lignocellulose and Biofuels

Biofuel produced from agricultural crops, e.g. cereals, maize, sugarcane, sugar beet and sweet sorghum, is referred to as first generation biofuels while that produced from lignocellulosic materials is referred to as second generation biofuels (Yuan et al. 2008). Biofuels can also be produced from microalgae which is termed third generation biofuels (Brennan and Owende 2010). Third generation biofuels are not discussed within this review as fungal enzymes are not required for its production.

The global production of first and second generation biofuels is dependent upon the lignocellulosic materials available for bioconversion for each individual country. In the United States, bioethanol is derived from starch-based feedstock such as corn, whereas in Brazil it is derived from bagasse, a by-product of the sugar cane industry (Dashtban et al. 2009; Howard et al. 2003; Simmons et al. 2008). These two countries alone produced approximately 90 % of the world's bioethanol fuel in 2008 according to Dashtban et al. (2009). The Iogen Corporation in Canada is also renowned for its bioethanol production with lignocellulose as feedstock. This company produces 0.52 million gallons of bioethanol per year

through the bioconversion of approximately 30 tonnes of wheat, oat and barley straw per day (Dashtban et al. 2009).

Over the past number of years, research into the production of first generation compared to second generation biofuels has indicated that the overall carbon dioxide emissions are greater from first generation biofuels and are reported to exceed the levels emitted by fossil fuel consumption (Yuan et al. 2008). This, along with the increases in food prices, has shifted the research focus onto second generation biofuels produced from various lignocellulosic materials and wastes such as bagasse, grasses and spent mushroom compost.

5.4 Biorefining

The bioconversion of lignocellulose is carried out in four major steps; pre-treatment, hydrolysis, fermentation and separation. The pre-treatment of lignocellulose materials is considered a key step in biorefining as it quickens the hydrolysis procedure, through enhancing the cellulose accessibility and increasing pore size, which, in theory, leads to higher sugar yields for fermentation. This is done through the removal of lignin and hemicellulose polymers through various treatment methods, which can be defined as chemical, physical or biological (Dashtban et al. 2009; Howard et al. 2003; Ong 2004).

5.4.1 Pretreatment

Physical pre-treatment methods include such as milling, irradiation and steam explosion. The latter consists of the lignocellulose being steamed at high pressure followed by either a rapid or slow reduction in pressure to dissolve the hemicelluloses into solution and allow the cellulose and lignin to remain as solids (Dashtban et al. 2009; Ong 2004). SO_2 or CO_2 can be used as catalysts although SO_2 is found to be highly toxic (Ong 2004).

Chemical pre-treatment methods include ammonium fibre explosion (AFEX), organosolv treatment and the addition of either acid or alkali (Dashtban et al. 2009; Isroi et al. 2011; Ong 2004). The use of acid as a catalyst, normally H_2SO_4, targets the hemicellulose to dissolve with lignin and cellulose remaining as solids, whereas the addition of alkali, normally NaOH, mainly targets lignin, leaving mainly cellulose as a solid with hemicelluloses (Dashtban et al. 2009; Ong 2004).

Although physical and chemical pre-treatment can effectively reduce the recalcitrance of lignocellulosic compounds within a shorter timeframe, they possess many environmental and cost concerns for industries. They require high-energy input alongside high pressure reactors and can produce toxic compounds and wastewater (Isroi et al. 2011).

Biological pre-treatment methods include the use of microorganisms in order to delignify the lignocellulose material (Dashtban et al. 2009). The enzymes produced by the microorganisms selectively disrupt the fibril and lignin structures of the plant cell wall and provide the advantages of lower energy demands, minimal waste production and reduced effects on the environment (Dashtban et al. 2009; Isroi et al. 2011).

The method chosen for pre-treatment is dependent upon the lignocellulosic material and the hydrolysis to be carried out afterwards. If the hydrolysis step is accompanied by fungal enzymes, which are optimised at a lower pH (approx. 4–5), the acidic pre-treatment is preferred as the first step in the bioconversion process (Dashtban et al. 2009).

5.4.2 Hydrolysis

Hydrolysis is the process in which the lignocellulose polymers are saccharified to yield fermentable sugars (hexoses and pentoses) (Harris and DeBolt 2010). There are two methods of hydrolysis used within the biorefining process; acid hydrolysis and enzymatic hydrolysis (Dashtban et al. 2009; Ong 2004).

Acid hydrolysis is the older method of the two and has been implemented on an industrial scale since World War I (Ong 2004). In this particular process, dilute or concentrated acid, normally H_2SO_4 as it is cheapest, is used to hydrolyse the cellulose with the reaction temperatures depending upon the molarity; dilute acids require high temperatures (above 200 °C) while concentrated acids require lower temperatures (Ong 2004). The acid hydrolysis approaches are less attractive due to the low yields with dilute acid and the recovery and environmental factors involved with concentrated acids (Ong 2004; Hernon et al. 2010).

In enzymatic hydrolysis, the lignocellulose is broken down into the corresponding monomeric sugars by specific enzymes produced from bacteria or fungi (Dashtban et al. 2009; Ong 2004). This approach is more complex, expensive and time consuming, as of this minute, in comparison to the acid hydrolysis approach but has the advantage of little or no by-products to dispose of at the end of biorefining process (Ong 2004).

5.4.3 Fermentation

Fermentation, the third step of bioconversion, converts the hydrolysates, mainly glucose, xylose, arabinose and mannose to bioethanol using microorganisms (Dashtban et al. 2009; Ong 2004). The hydrolysates are often detoxified before fermentation due to the production of inhibitory compounds, such as phenolic and furan derivatives, in the pre-treatment and hydrolysis steps (Dashtban et al. 2009; Ong 2004). *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* is the most commonly used microorganism

as it has a high fermentation rate and recombination techniques have created strains, for example TMB 3,400, capable of converting arabinose and xylose, as well as glucose, to bioethanol (Dashtban et al. 2009). This allows for the utilisation of a larger amount of the hydrolysates giving a higher percentage yield of bioethanol.

5.4.4 Combinations

Different combinatorial methods of the first three bioconversion steps have been under investigation in order to reduce production costs, increase end-product yield and to quicken the biorefinery process. Separate hydrolysis and fermentation (SHF) provides the opportunity of optimising each process separately, although it can result in the use of large amounts of enzymes such as β-glucosidase to overcome end-product inhibition during the hydrolysis making this a costly process (Dashtban et al. 2009). Simultaneous saccharification and fermentation (SSF) combines both steps into one reaction allowing for the direct fermentation of hydrolysates into bioethanol to reduce the enzyme costs involved but also compromises the conditions of both reactions and end-product yields (Dashtban et al. 2009; Ong 2004). Another method termed consolidated bioprocessing (CBP) can be used to combine all three steps into one with the use of one or many microorganisms (Dashtban et al. 2009). This particular process possesses the potential of lowering the bioethanol production costs to competitive fuel levels with more research into the microorganisms, enzymes and pH and temperature optima required.

5.5 Fungi in Biorefining

Microorganisms, especially fungi, have been established as important mediators in the production of biofuels and other valuable biorefinery products. In the literature, it is prevalent that fungi have been selected for industrial hydrolysis and pretreatment measures. This selection is based upon their ability to selectively or simultaneously degrade lignocellulosic materials, the high redox potential of their enzymes, their engineering capabilities and/or their thermostability.

Fungi are known to degrade lignocellulosic materials in nature; in soil, compost and forest litter. The method of degradation is dependent upon the genus of the fungus and has various end results. Basidiomycota and ascomycota are the main phyla which house these important lignocellulolytic fungi; basidiomycetes and ascomycetes, respectively. Ascomycota is the largest phylum distinguishable by the presence of asci within the fruiting body of the fungus while the basidiomycetes are characterised by the formation of basidia, a particular type of sporophore (Guarro et al. 1999). They are mainly responsible for the decay of wood and forest litter through the degradation and modification of lignocellulose (Martínez et al. 2005).

White-rot basidiomycetes are widely known as lignin degrading fungi but are not the only fungal type to have an impact on lignocellulose. Brown-rot basidiomycetes as well as some ascomycetous fungi, as previously mentioned, are capable of degrading the components of lignocellulose. The key to their degradative capabilities is the extracellular enzymes they secrete. White-rot basidiomycetes are capable of producing an array of enzymes including those with the potential to degrade all components of the lignocellulosic plant cell wall while brown-rots and ascomycetes produce a selection of these fungal enzymes.

There are key enzymatic systems produced by different fungi which attack each lignocellulose component separately. Lignin-modifying enzymes (LMEs) are capable of disrupting the recalcitrant lignin components, cellulase systems act on the cellulose microfibrils attempting to reduce the polymers into single glucose units, with the more diverse group of hemicelluloses cleaving the different backbone polymers and side chains of hemicelluloses.

5.5.1 Fungal Enzymes

The LMEs are a group of lignin degrading enzymes comprising laccase, lignin peroxidase, manganese peroxidase and versatile peroxidase but are not the only enzymes likely to be involved in lignin biodegradation. Phenol oxidase enzymes include the LMEs as well as tyrosinase, catechol oxidase and catalase-phenol oxidase which are all capable of oxidising various phenolic compounds (Sutay Kocabas et al. 2008). Cellulase systems are comprised of endo-1, 4-β-glucanase, cellobiohydrolase and β-glucosidases (Gao et al. 2012). Hemicelluloses include endo-1, 4-β-xylanases, β-xylosidases, endo-1, 4-β-mannanase and β-mannosidases. The upregulation of a particular group of hemicelluloses is dependent upon the nature of the lignocellulosic material. There are also accessory enzymes which aid the hemicelluloses in their degradation of hemicellulose polymers through the cleavage of side chain residues; these enzymes include α-glucuronidase, α-L-arabinofuranosidase, acetylxylan esterase, ferulic acid esterase and β-galactosidase (EC 3.2.1.23) (Saha 2003; Turner et al. 2007).

5.5.1.1 Laccase

Laccases (EC 1.10.3.2) are mainly extracellular glycoproteins belonging to the multi-copper oxidase (MCO) superfamily and are secreted by most white-rot basidiomycetes and some ascomycetes (Lundell et al. 2010). A number of brown-rot basidiomycetes are also capable of producing laccases in liquid cultures (Martínez et al. 2005). MCOs possess diverse roles and are reported to produce laccase activity in fungi, plants, bacteria and some insects (Kunamneni et al. 2008; Lundell et al. 2010).

The first molecular structures of fungal laccases produced by the basidiomycete Trametes versicolor and the ascomycete Melanocarpus albomyces were published in 2002 by Piontek et al. (2002) and Hakulinen et al. (2002), respectively. The typical fungal laccase has a molecular mass ranging from 60 to 80 kDa and an isoelectric point (pI) between 3 and 6 (Bonnen et al. 1994; Isroi et al. 2011; Lundell et al. 2010; Widiastuti 2008). These important oxidoreductase enzymes are comprised of three domains (D1, D2, and D3), to which four copper atoms are typically bound (Baldrian 2006; Martínez et al. 2005). Laccases are described in the literature as "blue", "yellow" or "white" according to the number of copper ions present within their active site (Baldrian 2006; Lundell et al. 2010; Martínez et al. 2005). The "blue" laccases are typically described as 'true' laccases due to the presence of all four copper atoms which gives rise to a blue colouring (Baldrian 2006; Martínez et al. 2005). "Yellow" laccases are classed as those which do not possess a Type I copper atom while the "white" laccases are those which only possess one copper atom (Baldrian 2006). These 'non-true' laccases have been reported to contain different metal ions in place of the four copper ions; normally Zn^{2+}, Fe^{2+} and Mn^{2+} (Lundell et al. 2010). POXA1, from Pleurotus ostreatus, is one example of a "white" laccase which contains one copper ion along with two zinc ions and one iron ion (Baldrian 2006).

Multiple genes encoding the laccase glycoproteins have been reported within fungi, giving rise to the secretion of several isozymes (Isroi et al. 2011; Lundell et al. 2010). This has been reported for most white rots and also for the non-lignin degrading basidiomycetes Coprinopsis cinerea and Laccaria bicolour (Lundell et al. 2010). A study carried out by D'Souza et al. (1999) has reported that the white-rot Ganoderma lucidium secretes at least five isozymes of the enzyme. There are exceptions to this, such as the white-rot Phanerochaete chrysosporium which does not possess specific laccase genes but those encoding the ligninolytic oxidases, lignin peroxidase (LiP) and manganese peroxidase (MnP), ferredoxin and several unknown MCOs (Brambl 2009; Isroi et al. 2011; Lundell et al. 2010). Laccases function in the degradation of lignin through catalysing the reduction of molecular oxygen to water molecules alongside the oxidation of phenolic and lower-redox potential compounds to phenoxy radicals (Lundell et al. 2010; Widiastuti 2008).

Fungal laccases are widely used in biotechnological applications and function mainly in lignin depolymerisation and biodegradation through the oxidation of phenolic substrates, comprising approximately 10 % of the lignin polymers, and non-phenolic compounds in the presence of inducers/mediators (Baldrian 2006; Bonnen et al. 1994; D'Souza et al. 1999; Isroi et al. 2011; Lundell et al. 2010; Martínez et al. 2005). The fungal laccases are also known to function alongside peroxidases in the polymerisation of monolignols to create lignin polymers, in the detoxification of hydrolysates through the removal of inhibitors prior to fermentation, and also in the treatment of wastewaters with the modification of toxic components and textile dyes (Campbell and Sederoff 1996; Chandel et al. 2011a; Lundell et al. 2010; Vanholme et al. 2010).

Laccases possess a relatively low redox potential in comparison to the peroxidases involved in lignin degradation but are deemed green biocatalysts due to their use of molecular O_2 instead of H_2O_2 (Cañas and Camarero 2010). The four copper ions are involved in laccase activity where the T1 copper ion is associated with the oxidation of the substrate with concomitant reduction of the ion, followed by the transfer of the electron to the T2/T3 trinuclear copper cluster (Cañas and Camarero 2010; Dwivedi et al. 2011). This mechanism of action involves the oxidation of four substrate molecules and the production of free radicals. The four electrons gained are then donated to molecular O_2 to give H_2O.

Mediator systems are used in conjunction with laccases within industries to increase the overall redox potential of the enzyme. These systems allow for the oxidation of the non-phenolic or aromatic compounds, normally of higher redox potential to the enzymes, through a chain-like mechanism. In this mechanism, the mediator, firstly oxidised by the laccase, diffuses through the matrix and allows for the oxidation of the target compounds (Dwivedi et al. 2011). Laccases are found to work in conjunction with mediators such as ABTS, (2,2'-azinobis (3-ethylbenzathiazoline-6-sulfonic acid)) and syringaldehyde (Baldrian 2006).

5.5.1.2 Lignin Peroxidase

Laccases and peroxidases are known to act in a synergistic manner in the lignification of plants, and the degradation and depolymerisation of lignin polymers (Blanchette 1991; Bonnen et al. 1994; Campbell and Sederoff 1996; Chandel et al. 2011a). These peroxidases (LiP, MnP and VP) are heme-containing hydrogen peroxide-dependent enzymes responsible for the oxidation of the high redox potential components of the lignin polymers (Blanchette 1991; D'Souza et al. 1999). The peroxidases are extracellular, non-specific enzymes produced by most white-rot fungi functioning primarily in the degradation of lignin (Blanchette 1991; Brambl 2009).

Lignin peroxidase (LiP; EC 1.11.1.14) was first discovered in *P. chrysosporium* in 1983 by Tien and Kirk (Chen et al. 2011; Dashtban et al. 2010). LiPs are monomeric proteins possessing a molecular mass of approximately 40 kDa (Isroi et al. 2011). They are similar to classical peroxidases with the iron coordinated to four tetrapyrrole rings and to a histidine residue (Isroi et al. 2011).

LiPs are capable of oxidising a number of different phenolic compounds such as guaiacol, syringic acid and vanillyl alcohol, and are also capable of oxidising non-phenolic aromatic compounds (D'Souza et al. 1999; Dashtban et al. 2010; Piontek et al. 2002). The lignin peroxidases possess an important tryptophan residue on the enzyme surface, trp171 in the isozyme LiPA, which has a role in long range electron transfer from aromatic substrates that are too large to reach the oxidised centre of the enzyme (Isroi et al. 2011).

LiPs can oxidise lignin through this electron transfer mechanism, cleaving various bonds non-catalytically and also through the opening of aromatic rings (Chen et al. 2011). Research by Chen et al. (2011) has indicated the different

binding models and degrading mechanisms of ligninolytic enzymes with lignin. LiPs and laccases directly interact with the lignin structure while MnPs act upon the lignin in an indirect manner.

Hydrogen peroxide is a key component in the degradation of lignin by peroxidases. The presence of H_2O_2 gives rise to an oxidised intermediate of LiP in which the Fe^{3+} ion is converted to Fe^{4+} and a free radical is present on the tetrapyrrole ring (Isroi et al. 2011). The LiP intermediate oxidises a substrate giving rise to a radical cation and a second LiP intermediate in which the free radical is removed but Fe^{4+} is still present (Isroi et al. 2011). This second intermediate oxidises a second substrate molecule giving rise to another radical cation and the original LiP enzyme in its resting state (Isroi et al. 2011). The production of radical cations gives rise to the non-enzymatic reactions such as polymer cleavage allowing for the subsequent degradation of lignin molecules (Blanchette 1991).

5.5.1.3 Manganese Peroxidase

Manganese peroxidases (MnP; EC 1.11.1.13) are defined as H_2O_2–dependent heme-containing peroxidase enzymes capable of degrading lignin substrates. The first MnP was discovered in 1983–1984 in *P. chrysosporium* by Kuwahara et al. (1984) and found to have a molecular mass of 40–50 kDa. This particular peroxidase requires manganese (Mn^{2+}) as a cofactor in order for its oxidative function to occur (Chen et al. 2011; Dashtban et al. 2010; Isroi et al. 2011). MnPs are a more diverse range of enzymes in comparison to the LiPs. The grouping of MnPs is divided according to their length, where the typical long MnPs found in fungi are separated from the short enzyme types which are termed hybrid MnPs (hMnPs) (Lundell et al. 2010).

The presence of Mn^{2+} has a regulatory impact on the production of MnP and LiP by a fungus (Blanchette 1991). If Mn^{2+} is found in low concentrations, LiP is produced predominately, while high concentrations of Mn^{2+} will gives rise to the increased production of MnP (Blanchette 1991). The enzyme structure contains a binding domain for the Mn^{2+} but does not possess the specific tryptophan residue found in LiPs required for long range electron transfer (Isroi et al. 2011). As a result, MnPs do not oxidise the lignin substructures directly but through the use of cofactors and chelators.

Similar to the catalytic cycle of LiP, the presence of H_2O_2 gives rise to an oxidised intermediate of the MnP enzyme (MnP-I) (Isroi et al. 2011). This intermediate acts upon the cofactor Mn^{2+} to give its oxidised form, Mn^{3+}, and a secondary intermediate of MnP (MnP-II). This secondary intermediate, then, acts upon another Mn^{2+} to give Mn^{3+} and H_20. The two Mn^{3+} ions produced by this cycle have the potential as mediators, when bound to chelators typically oxalate, to oxidise the various phenolic substrates including amines, dyes and lignin substructures (Blanchette 1991; Dashtban et al. 2010; Isroi et al. 2011).

5.5.1.4 Versatile Peroxidase

Versatile peroxidases (VP; EC 1.11.1.16), first described in the fungus *Pleurotus eryngii*, possess both functionalities of LiPs and MnPs. They have been discovered in various species of Pleurotus and Bjerkandera but not in *P. chrysosporium*, although genes related to the VP of Pleurotus have been found within its genome (Isroi et al. 2011). The VP enzymes are capable of oxidising the phenolic and non-phenolic aromatic compounds along with the oxidation of Mn^{2+}, similar to MnP. They are structurally similar to the hMnPs and contain the binding site for Mn^{2+} close to the heme group (Lundell et al. 2010). The enzymes also contain the essential tryptophan residue that is required in the electron transfer from aromatic lignin substrates (Isroi et al. 2011). VPL, the versatile peroxidase produced by *P. eryngii*, has been structurally characterised revealing that it possess both MnP and LiP structural motifs. VPL contains the three acidic residues essential for Mn^{2+} binding and a tryptophan residue, trp164, which is structurally related to the trp171 found in LiPA (Isroi et al. 2011).

5.5.1.5 Hydrogen Peroxide-Producing Enzymes

Fungi, white-rot basidiomycetes in particular, require H_2O_2 to allow the extracellular peroxidase enzymes to function in lignin degradation. The H_2O_2 is provided by oxidases that are produced by the fungus and act by reducing molecular O_2 to H_2O_2 alongside the oxidation of a co-substrate (Dashtban et al. 2009; Isroi et al. 2011). Two such oxidases are glyoxal oxidase (GLOX; EC 1.2.3.5) and aryl alcohol oxidase (AAO; EC 1.1.3.7). GLOX is a copper-containing enzyme found in many white-rot fungi, for example *P. chrysosporium*, and can oxidise a variety of co-substrates, typically simple aldehydes (Isroi et al. 2011; Martínez et al. 2005). Some of these substrates are natural substances produced by the metabolism of the fungus, for example, glyoxal and methylglyoxal (Isroi et al. 2011). AAO, a flavoenzyme first discovered in *P. eryngii*, acts upon specific metabolites of the white-rot fungi to give rise to H_2O_2. Chlorinated anisyl alcohols are among the substrates oxidised by this enzyme as well as aromatic aldehydes released during lignin degradation in the presence of aryl alcohol dehydrogenase (AAD; EC 1.1.1.91) (Isroi et al. 2011; Martínez et al. 2005).

5.5.1.6 Phenol Oxidases

Phenol oxidases are classified as a range of copper enzymes which do not exhibit glycosyl hydrolase and peptidase activity. They are capable of oxidising phenolic compounds in the presence of molecular O_2. The phenol oxidases include the LMEs previously described as well as tyrosinases, catechol oxidases and catalase-phenol oxidases.

Tyrosinosis possess two catalytic activities; (1) a cresolase activity with the o-hydroxylation of monophenols and (2) catechol oxidase activity with the subsequent oxidation of o-diphenols to reactive o-quinones (Krebs et al. 2004; Rompel et al. 1999). Tyrosinosis are homo-tetrameric proteins containing four copper atoms with a molecular mass of approximately 60 kDa. They function by catalysing the o-hydroxylation of monophenols to catechol (an o-diphenol) followed by the subsequent oxidation of the o-diphenol to the corresponding o-quinone. Tyrosinosis acts upon substrates which include tyrosine, catechol and L-3, 4-dihydroxyphenylalanine (L-DOPA) (Krebs et al. 2004; Rompel et al. 1999).

Catechol oxidases have been identified among fungal cultures which are separate to Tyrosinosis as they lack cresolase activity (Krebs et al. 2004; Rompel et al. 1999; Sutay Kocabas et al. 2008). These enzymes possess two copper atoms which are coordinated by three histidine residues and have a molecular mass of approximately 60 kDa. This oxidase enzymes catalyses the oxidation of o-diphenols to the corresponding o-quinones and is a key enzyme for melanin synthesis. Catechol oxidase acts on the substrates catechol, chlorogenic acid, catechin and caffeic acid (Sutay Kocabas et al. 2008).

Catalase-phenol oxidases (CATPOs) are bifunctional antioxidant enzymes identified in ascomycetous fungi in recent years (Sutay Kocabas et al. 2008). They possess the ability to decompose H_2O_2, which is a typical catalase activity, as well as the ability to oxidise o-diphenolic compounds in the absence of H_2O_2 (Koclar Avci et al. 2012; Sutay Kocabas et al. 2008). CATPOs are tetrameric heme-containing proteins with a molecular mass of approximately 320 kDa (61-97 kDa per subunit). These enzymes act upon similar substrates of catechol oxidases in addition to L-DOPA (Koclar Avci et al. 2012; Sutay Kocabas et al. 2008).

5.5.1.7 Hemicellulase

The hemicellulosic regions of lignocellulose are considered more accessible to extracellular fungal enzymes in comparison to the cellulosic and lignin components as it does not form crystalline structures or microfibrils. This is due to the heterogeneity of hemicellulose polymers within the plant cell wall, the degree of and the particular side chains and branching along the backbone. As a result, a variety of enzymes with different functionalities are required by microbes to completely hydrolyse the hemicellulose present in lignocellulosic biomass.

Xylanases is the term coined to the group of enzymes that act upon the xylan heteropolymers and comprises of endo-1, 4-β-xylanases (EC 3.2.1.8) which cleave glycosidic bonds in the polymer backbone to release xylo-oligosaccharides and, β-xylosidases (EC 3.2.1.37) which hydrolyse the xylo-oligosaccharides released to xylose (Saha 2003). The majority of xylanases cannot cleave the polymer backbone if substituted xylan units are present. Therefore, accessory enzymes are required to remove the substituted residues. However, some of the accessory enzymes can only cleave the side chain residues from xylo-oligosaccharides (Saha 2003). Some fungi possess complete sets of xylan-degrading enzymes, for

example, Penicillium capsulatum and Talaromyces emersonii and have great potential for use in the biorefinery system (Saha 2003).

Similar to the xylanases, mannanases attack the galactomannan or glucomannan polymers within the plant cell wall with the aid of accessory enzymes capable of removing the substituted residues. Mannanases consist of β-1, 4-mannanase (EC 3.2.1.78) which acts directly upon the backbone and β-mannosidases (EC 3.2.1.25) which acts on the mannan substitutions. Xylanases and mannanases act in a synergistic manner with accessory enzymes to overcome the issue of partial breakdown during hydrolysis. The accessory enzymes involved in hemicellulose hydrolysis also include α-L-arabinofuranosidase (AAF; EC 3.2.1.55), α-glucuronidase (EC 3.2.1.139), acetylxylan esterase (EC 3.1.1.72) and ferulic acid esterase (EC 3.1.1.73) (Saha 2003).

Chandel et al. (2011a) provide a detailed review on the bioconversion of pentose sugars produced by the hemicelluloses into ethanol. The demand for microorganisms capable of fermenting pentose sugars and producing high yields of ethanol is great. Currently, the microorganisms are only capable of fermenting a number of hexose or pentose sugars into ethanol and cannot tolerate inhibitors such as furfurals and phenolic (Cañas and Camarero 2010; Chandel et al. 2011a).

5.5.1.8 Cellulase

The degradation of the cellulosic component of lignocellulosic biomasses is carried out by hydrolytic enzymes known as cellulases. Cellulase systems consist of three different enzymes; endoglucanases, cellobiohydrolase (CBHs) and β-glucosidases (Grassick et al. 2004; Mtui 2009). It has been reported that properties of biomass such as lignin composition, accessibility of the cellulose chains to these cellulases, degree of cellulose crystallinity and degree of polymerisation determine the overall extent of biomass saccharification (Agbor et al. 2011). The lignin composition of a particular biomass, for example, can have a negative effect on the hydrolysis of cellulose through adsorption of cellulase enzymes (Alvira et al. 2010). Thygesen et al. (2011) have recently demonstrated that the cellulases penetrate into the porous regions of the cellulose fibrils (at amorphous regions) followed by the depolymerisation of the chains. This initial stage of cellulose saccharification is termed morphogenesis and incorporates the swelling and fragmentation of the cellulose fibres (Arantes and Saddler 2010).

Cellulases are grouped into 11 glycoside hydrolase (GH) families and are classed as modular proteins composed of at least two distinct modules; typically, the catalytic module and the carbohydrate binding module (CBM) (Arantes and Saddler 2010; Brás et al. 2011; Dashtban et al. 2009). A flexible linker joins the carbohydrate binding module (CBM) to the catalytic module allowing for the selective anchoring of the catalytic module to the cellulose fibril (Arantes and Saddler 2010; Dashtban et al. 2009; Turner et al. 2007).

Endoglucanases (EG, EC 3.2.1.4) derived from fungi are usually monomeric proteins possessing little or no glycosylation and are characterised by an open

binding cleft (Dashtban et al. 2009; Grassick et al. 2004). EGs act by cleaving the internal β-1, 4-glycosidic bonds of the cellulose chains and are central to the reduction of the degree of polymerisation within hydrolysis (Alvira et al. 2010; Mtui 2009). A number of isozymes of EGs are produced within fungi, which vary among the different species. This is evident in the ascomycete T. reesei which produces at least five isozymes of EG and, also, in the white rot basidiomycete *P. chrysosporium* which produces three isozymes of EG (Dashtban et al. 2009). It has also been observed that not all cellulases possess a CBM; for example, one of the five EG isozymes of T. reesei, EGIII, does not contain a CBM (Dashtban et al. 2009).

Cellobiohydrolase (CBH, EC 3.2.1.91), exo-acting enzymes, are monomeric proteins with little or no glycosylation (Dashtban et al. 2009). Research into the activity of these particular cellulolytic enzymes has found that CBH acts by surrounding the cellulose chain with its extended loops and creating a tunnel-like site for catalysis (Dashtban et al. 2009; Grassick et al. 2004). With this type of active site, CBH is only capable of attacking the cellulose chains at their terminal ends (Grassick et al. 2004). Different isozymes of CBH have the potential to act from either the reducing or non-reducing end of the cellulose chain (Dashtban et al. 2009). T. reesei can produce two CBH isozymes, one which acts from the reducing end and the other which acts from the non-reducing end of the cellulose chains (Dashtban et al. 2009). The ability of CBHs from T. reesei to degrade from either end of a cellulose chain simultaneously allows for a more efficient hydrolytic process (Dashtban et al. 2009).

In commercial hydrolysis, the addition of β-glucosidases (EC 3.2.1.21) can enhance the hydrolysis reaction by rapidly converting cellobiose to glucose, and thereby reducing the potential of end-point inhibition (Arantes and Saddler 2010). β-glucosidases are the most variable of the three cellulolytic enzymes and are dependent upon structure and localisation. These enzymes can be monomeric proteins with molecular masses of approximately 35 kDa, dimeric proteins or even trimeric proteins with molecular masses greater than 146 kDa (Dashtban et al. 2009).

β-glucosidases have been classified into intracellular, extracellular and cell wall-associated groups and are normally glycosylated to varying degrees. β-glucosidases derived from T. versicolor have been seen to be glycosylated up to 90 % with a molecular weight of approximately 300 kDa (Dashtban et al. 2009). Fungal β-glucosidases have been classified into the GH family 3 based on their amino acid sequences along with other bacterial and plant β-glucosidases (Dashtban et al. 2009).

These three cellulases act in a synergistic manner by providing free chain ends with endoglucanases activity, removing cellobiose molecules from the free ends with cellobiohydrolase activity and hydrolysing the cellobiose to glucose with β-glucosidase activity. Cellulases are considered as the most sought after enzymes throughout a range of industries. In a report by Chandel et al. (2011b), cellulases were considered to comprise 75 % of the demand of total enzymes required by the various industries.

5.5.2 Conclusion

The use of fossil fuels, increase in oil prices and GHG emissions have led to the development of various technologies for biofuel production. The use of first generation biofuels, derived from agricultural crops, has provided the majority of biofuel that is consumed today. Although the percentage of biofuel consumption for transportation worldwide is still minimal, the WEC has stated that it is to increase to 5 % by 2030. There are a number of social implications involved with the production of first generation biofuels. The use of agricultural crops, such as corn and wheat, for biofuel production leads to the displacement of food crops, as well as competitive water use. This feedstock versus food concern has lead into the development of second generation biofuels with sources from renewable lignocellulosic materials and wastes.

Second generation biofuels can be derived from lignocellulosic biomasses including leaf litter, spent compost, bagasse and the straw left after harvesting wheat, barley and oats. The use of these "wastes" as feedstocks reduces the feedstock versus food issues, and therefore eases the rising food prices. The various types of lignocellulosic feed stocks possess varying compositions of the main polymers; cellulose, hemicellulose and lignin, within the plant cell wall and provide varying degrees of recalcitrance to hydrolysis. As a result of this, different biorefinery technologies are in place for the degradation of specific feedstocks.

The biorefinery process can be broken down into four main steps; pre-treatment, hydrolysis, fermentation and separation. Fungal enzymes can be used in the pre-treatment of the lignocellulosic feedstock to disrupt the lignin and cellulose microfibrils and allow for lower energy demands and waste production in comparison to physical and chemical pre-treatment. The use of enzymatic hydrolysis instead of acid hydrolysis leads to more environmentally friendly bioprocessing through the minimal requirements of toxic metal ions and lack of wastewaters. The degraded lignin is removed from the biofuel process and can be used by other industries such as the paper-pulp industry.

Current technologies involved in biofuel production are inefficient and costly where the separate enzymes and chemicals required for each stage of the biorefinery are numerous. The introduction of particular fungi to the biorefinery systems allow for the production of various essential enzymes for lignocellulose breakdown. Although there are still cost concerns with the use of fungal enzymes in the biorefinery and production of biofuels in comparison to fossil fuel ethanol, there is ongoing research into increasing their potential through protein engineering and making the enzymes more readily available.

The addition of fungi capable of secreting lignin-modifying enzymes, hemicelluloses and cellulases is essential for efficient hydrolysis. The white-rot basidiomycetes are the typical fungi used for this role although a number of ascomycetes are emerging with the capability of degrading lignocellulose efficiently. Lignin structures act as barriers within the plant cell walls, disrupting the binding of cellulases and hemicelluloses to their target polymers and decreasing

the overall yield of fermentable sugars. Lignin must be removed efficiently in order to create a cost effective biofuel production facility.

There is a growing interest in the phenol oxidase group of enzymes. This group, containing the lignin-modifying enzymes, tyrosinases, catechol oxidases and catalase-phenol oxidases, can be secreted by fungi and aid in the breakdown and removal of the rigid lignin structures through varying oxidative reactions. There are few publications involving the tyrosinases, catechol oxidases and catalase-phenol oxidases in biofuel production to date. The potential of these phenol oxidases in the breakdown of lignin as well as the decomposition of H_2O_2 by catalase-phenol oxidase could lead to a more environmentally friendly approach to the pretreatment of lignocellulosic materials.

The use of LiPs, MnPs and VPs induced by the fungi, require the presence of H_2O_2 and cofactor, Mn^{2+}, (for MnP and VP) to function correctly. VPs possess great potential within the biotechnological and industrial fields as it has two catalytic functions similar to both LiP and MnP where they contain a tryptophan residue for long range electron transfer and a binding site for Mn^{2+} within their structures. The need for H_2O_2 for the catalytic activity of these enzymes during hydrolysis can be costly and environmentally harmful to add at large scales to the biorefinery system. Certain fungi are capable of producing H_2O_2 -producing oxidases, namely GLOX and AAO to overcome this issue. These enzymes, GLOX and AAO, act on co-substrates such as simple aldehydes and chlorinated anisyl alcohols, respectively, while reducing molecular O_2 to H_2O_2.

Hemicelluloses and cellulases are the major battery of enzymes that are required during biofuel production. They are the key to degrading hemicellulose and cellulose fractions into hexose and pentose sugars, respectively, which can then be fermented into biofuels. The hemicelluloses consists of a large variety of enzymes capable of degrading xylans, mannans and Xyloglucans completely. Accessory enzymes are also important in the removal of substitutions, e.g. acetylation and methylation, along the polymer backbone. Without the accessory enzymes certain hemicelluloses cannot function correctly and can reduce the overall biofuel production yields. The accessibility of cellulases to cellulose can reduce the efficiency of the hydrolysis step as the cellulose is present in both amorphous and crystalline structures that are not completely exposed to the enzymes. The cellulases often require partial hydrolysis of the hemicelluloses, as well as pectins, to be able to adsorb to the amorphous cellulose regions.

Thermostable fungi are advantageous to the biofuel and biorefinery process as they are able to withstand the harsh conditions involved and their addition to the consolidated bioprocessing (CBP) method provide great possibilities for reducing enzymatic hydrolysis costs. Analysis of thermophilic fungi with lignocellulose degradation capabilities is required to verify and optimise the conditions involved for enzyme secretion during the biorefinery process. The removal of lignin for use by other industries, for example the paper and pulp industry, is important for the overall cost scheme of the biorefinery in question.

The efficiency of biofuel production and the costs involved must be reviewed and the system altered to provide competitive fuel prices alongside current fossil

fuels. All components of the lignocellulosic polymers must be consumed or removed and utilised by other industries to obtain an efficient biofuel production facility. Fungal enzymes are essential in the production of biofuels, especially in the pre-treatment and hydrolysis stages of the biorefinery systems and possess great potential in overcoming the issues of recalcitrance, high costs and low biofuel yields.

References

Agbor VB, Cicek N, Sparling R, Berlin A, Levin DB (2011) Biomass pre-treatment: fundamentals toward application. Biotech Adv 29:675–685

Akpinar O, Levent O, Sabanci S, Uysal RS, Sapci B (2011) Optimization and comparison of dilute acid pre-treatment of selected agricultural residues for recovery of xylose. BioResources 6:4103–4116

Alvira P, Tomás-Pejó E, Ballesteros M, Negro MJ (2010) Pre-treatment technologies for an efficient bioethanol production process based on enzymatic hydrolysis: A review. Bioresour Technol 101:4851–4861

Arantes V, Saddler JN (2010) Access to cellulose limits the efficiency of enzymatic hydrolysis: the role of morphogenesis. Biotechnol Biofuels 3:4

Arantes V, Saddler JN (2011) Cellulose accessibility limits the effectiveness of minimum cellulase loading on the efficient hydrolysis of pre-treated lignocellulosic substrates. Biotechnol Biofuels 4:3

Baldrian P (2006) Fungal laccases: occurence and properties. FEMS Microbiol Rev 30:215–242

Bastawde KB (1992) Xylan structure, microbial xylanases, and their mode of action. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 8:353–368

Blanchette RA (1991) Delignification by wood-decay fungi. Annu Rev Phytopathol 29:381–398

Bonnen AM, Anton LH, Orth AB (1994) Lignin-degrading enzymes of the commercial button mushroom, agaricus bisporus. Appl Environ Microbiol 60:960–965

Brambl R (2009) Fungal physiology and the origins of molecular biology. Microbiology 155:3799–3809

Brennan L, Owende P (2010) Biofuels from microalgae: A review of technologies for production, processing, and extractions of biofuels and co-products. Renew Sust Energ Rev 14:557–577

Brás JLa, Cartmell A, Carvalho ALM, Verzé G, Bayer Ea, Vazana Y, Correia MaS, Prates JaM, Ratnaparkhe S, Boraston AB, Romão MJ, Fontes CMGa, Gilbert HJ (2011) Structural insights into a unique cellulase fold and mechanism of cellulose hydrolysis. Proc Nat Acad Sci USA 108:5237–5242

Burton RA, Gidley MJ, Fincher GB (2010) Heterogeneity in the chemistry, structure and function of plant cell walls. Nat Chem Biol 6:724–732

Caffall KH, Mohnen D (2009) The structure, function, and biosynthesis of plant cell wall pectic polysaccharides. Carbohydr Res 344:1879–1900

Campbell MM, Sederoff RR (1996) Variation in Lignin Content and Composition (Mechanisms of Control and Implications for the Genetic Improvement of Plants). Plant Physiol 110:3–13

Cañas AI, Camarero S (2010) Laccases and their natural mediators: biotechnological tools for sustainable eco-friendly processes. Biotechnol Adv 28:694–705

Chandel AK, Chandrasekhar G, Radhika K, Ravinder R, Ravindra P (2011a) Bioconversion of pentose sugars into ethanol: a review and future directions. Biotechnol Mol Biol Rev 6:008–020

Chandel AK, Chandrasekhar G, Silva MB, da Silva SS (2011b) The realm of cellulases in biorefinery development. Crit Rev Biotechnol: 1–16

Chen M, Zeng G, Tan Z, Jiang M, Li H, Liu L, Zhu Y, Yu Z, Wei Z, Liu Y, Xie G (2011) Understanding lignin-degrading reactions of ligninolytic enzymes: binding affinity and interactional profile. PLOS ONE 6:e25647–e25647

Cosgrove DJ (2005) Growth of the plant cell wall. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 6:850–861

D'Souza TM, Merritt CS, Reddy CA (1999) Lignin-modifying enzymes of the white rot basidiomycete Ganoderma lucidum. Appl Environ Microbiol 65:5307–5313

Dashtban M, Schraft H, Qin W (2009) Fungal bioconversion of lignocellulosic residues; opportunities and perspectives. Int J Biol Sci 5:578–595

Dashtban M, Schraft H, Syed TA, Qin W (2010) Fungal biodegradation and enzymatic modification of lignin. Int J Biochem Mol Biol 1:36–50

Dwivedi UN, Singh P, Pandey VP, Kumar A (2011) Structure–function relationship among bacterial, fungal and plant laccases. J Mol Catal B Enzym 68:117–128

Ferrer JL, Austin MB, Stewart C, Noel JP (2008) Structure and function of enzymes involved in the biosynthesis of phenylpropanoid. Plant Physiol Biochem 46:356–370

Festucci-Buselli RA, Otoni WC, Joshi CP (2007) Structure, organization, and functions of cellulose synthase complexes in higher plants. Braz J Plant Physiol 19:1–13

Gao L, Gao F, Wang L, Geng C, Chi L, Zhao J, Qu Y (2012) N-glycoform diversity of cellobiohydrolase I from penicillium decumbent and the synergism of a no hydrolytic glycoform in cellulose degradation. J Biol Chem

Grassick A, Murray PG, Thompson R, Collins CM, Byrnes L, Birrane G, Higgins TM, Tuohy MG (2004) Three-dimensional structure of a thermostable native cellobiohydrolase, CBH IB, and molecular characterization of the cel7 gene from the filamentous fungus, Talaromyces emersonii. Eur J Biochem 271:4495–4506

Guarro J, GenéJ Stchigel AM (1999) Developments in fungal taxonomy. Clin Microbiol Rev 12:454–500

Hakulinen N, Kiiskinen LL, Kruus K, Saloheimo M, Paananen A, Koivula A, Rouvinen J (2002) Crystal structure of a laccase from Melanocarpus albomyces with an intact trinuclear copper site. Nat Struct Biol 9:601–605

Harris D, DeBolt S (2010) Synthesis, regulation and utilization of lignocellulosic biomass. Plant Biotechnol J 8:244–262

Hernon AT, O'Donovan A, Shier MC (2010). Applications of fungal enzymes in bioconversion. In: Gupta VK, Tuohy MG, Gaur RK (Eds) Lambert Academic Publishing, Germany. ISBN No: 978-3-8433-5800-2

Howard R, Abotsi E, Jansen van Rensburg E, Howard S (2003) Lignocellulose biotechnology: issues of bioconversion and enzyme production. Afr J Biotechnol 2:602–619

Hu J, Arantes V, Saddler JN (2011) The enhancement of enzymatic hydrolysis of lignocellulosic substrates by the addition of accessory enzymes such as xylanases: is it an additive or synergistic effect? Biotechnol Biofuels 4:36

Isroi MR, Syamsiah S, Niklasson C, Nur Cahyanto M, Lundquist K, Taherzadeh M (2011) Biological pre-treatment's of lignocelluloses with white-rot fungi and its applications: a review. BioResources 6:5224–5259

Koclar Avci G, Coruh N, Bolukbasi U, Ogel ZB (2012) Oxidation of phenolic compounds by the bifunctional catalase-phenol oxidase (CATPO) from scytalidium thermophilum. App Microbiol Biotech

Krebs B, Merkel M, Rompel A (2004) Catechol oxidase and biomimetic approach. J Argent Chem Soc 92:1–15

Kunamneni A, Camarero S, Garcia-Burgos C, Plou FJ, Ballesteros A, Alcalde M (2008) Engineering and Applications of fungal laccases for organic synthesis. Microb Cell Fact 7

Kuwahara M, Glenn JK, Morgan MA, Gold MH (1984) Separation and characterization of two extracellular H2O2-dependent oxidases from ligninolytic cultures of Phanerochaete chrysosporium. FEBS Lett 169:247–250

Lundell TK, Mäkelä MR, Hildén K (2010) Lignin-modifying enzymes in filamentous basidiomycetes–ecological, functional and phylogenetic review. J Basic Microbiol 50:5–20

Martínez AT, Speranza M, Ruiz-Dueñas FJ, Ferreira P, Camarero S, Guillén F, Martínez MJ, Gutiérrez A, del Río JC (2005) Biodegradation of lignocellulosic: microbial, chemical, and enzymatic aspects of the fungal attack of lignin. Int Microbiol 8:195–204

Mtui GYS (2009) Recent advances in pre-treatment of lignocellulosic wastes and production of value added products. Afr J Biotechnol 8:1398–1415

Ong LK (2004) Conversion of lignocellulosic biomass to fuel ethanol: a brief review. The Planter 80:517–524

Piontek K, Antorini M, Choinowski T (2002) Crystal structure of a laccase from the fungus Trametes versicolor at 1.90-a resolution containing a full complement of coppers. J biol chem 277:37663–37669

Ridley BL, O'Neill MA, Mohnen D (2001) Pectins: structure, biosynthesis, and oligogalacturonides-related signalling. Phytochemistry 57:929–967

Rompel A, Fischer H, Meiwes D, Büldt-Karentzopoulos K, Dillinger R, Tuczek F, Witzel H, Krebs B (1999) Purification and spectroscopic studies on catechol oxidases from Lycopus europaeus and populous nigra: evidence for a binuclear copper center of type 3 and spectroscopic similarities to tyrosinase and hemocyanin. J Biol Inorg Chem 4:56–63

Saha BC (2003) Hemicellulose bioconversion. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 30:279–291

Simmons BA, Loque D, Blanch HW (2008) Next-generation biomass feed stocks for biofuel production. Genome Biol 9:242

Sutay Kocabas D, Bakir U, Phillips SEV, McPherson MJ, Ogel ZB (2008) Purification, characterization, and identification of a novel bifunctional catalase-phenol oxidase from scytalidium thermophilum. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 79:407–415

Taylor G (2008) Biofuels and the biorefinery concept. Energy Policy 36:4406–4409

Thygesen LG, Hidayat BJ, Johansen KS, Felby C (2011) Role of supramolecular cellulose structures in enzymatic hydrolysis of plant cell walls. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 38:975–983

Turner P, Mamo G, Karlsson EN (2007) Potential and utilization of thermophile and thermostable enzymes in biorefining. Microb Cell Fact 6:9

Vanholme R, Demedts B, Morreel K, Ralph J, Boerjan W (2010) Lignin biosynthesis and structure. Plant Physiol 153:895–905

Widiastuti H (2008) Activity of ligninolytic enzymes during growth and fruiting body development of white rot fungi Omphalina sp and Pleurotus ostreatus. HAYATI J Biosci 15:140–144

World Energy Council (2010) Biofuels: policies, standards and technologies. http://www.worldenergy.org/documents/biofuelsformatedmaster.pdf. Cited 12 Mar 2012

Yuan JS, Tiller KH, Al-Ahmad H, Stewart NR, Stewart CN (2008) Plants to power: bioenergy to fuel the future. Trends Plant Sci 13:421–429

Chapter 6
Progress on Enzymatic Saccharification Technologies for Biofuels Production

Pablo Alvira, Mercedes Ballesteros and María José Negro

Abstract A key issue for the biorefineries is the cost-effective conversion of carbohydrates contained in lignocellulosic biomass into fermentable sugars, which will provide a viable route to biofuels and bioproducts. Many different raw materials, conversion methods, and process configurations have been studied for the generation of sugars from lignocellulosic biomass. Most of the schemes for lignocellulosic biomass conversion include a pretreatment step to increase digestibility of the substrates and an enzymatic hydrolysis process, which is a crucial step and determines the overall process efficiency. Due to lignocellulose complex structure, different enzymes are involved in the degradation of the substrates and appropriate combinations of different activities are required for complete hydrolysis. This chapter reviews novel advances in enzymatic hydrolysis technologies for lignocellulose conversion, with special focus on the necessity of optimized enzyme mixtures using accessory activities, and the advantages of operating at high initial substrate concentrations.

6.1 Introduction

Alternative and renewable fuels derived from lignocellulosic biomass offer the potential to mitigate global climate change and reduce the dependence on fossil fuels. Biomass is an abundant source of renewable energy with an estimated production of 200×10^{12} kg worldwide annually (DOE 2003). It is constituted by

P. Alvira · M. Ballesteros · M. J. Negro (✉)
Centro de Investigaciones Energéticas, Medioambientales y Tecnológicas (CIEMAT), Biofuels Unit. Av Complutense 40, 28040 Madrid, Spain
e-mail: mariajose.negro@ciemat.es

V. K. Gupta and M. G. Tuohy (eds.), *Biofuel Technologies*,
DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-34519-7_6,

carbon building blocks, which have great potential to be converted into fuels and chemicals (Teter et al. 2010). In this context, it is expected that the present industry based on fossil fuels will gradually be replaced in the near future by biorefineries, which will produce from biomass a diverse array of biobased products and energy in the form of fuels, heat, and electricity. Lignocellulose is composed of up to 75 % carbohydrates and it will become an essential source of fermentable sugars, which form the basis for production of liquid biofuels for the transport sector as well as a large variety of commodity chemicals and biomaterials (Olsson et al. 2004; Himmel and Picataggio 2008).

A key issue for the biorefineries is the cost-effective conversion of carbohydrates contained in lignocellulosic feedstocks into fermentable sugars; and to obtain the so-called sugars platform. The resulting sugars will provide a viable route to primary products such as alcohols, esters, and carboxylic acids. In addition, noncarbohydrate components can be potentially recovered to obtain high added value products, as well as for energy and heat production (Ragauskas et al. 2006).

Breakthrough technologies for converting biomass to fuels and chemicals still need to overcome barriers to reach a cost-effective level. Most of the schemes for lignocellulosic biomass conversion include a pretreatment step followed by enzymatic hydrolysis. The aim of the pretreatment is to increase digestibility of the substrate and boost the yield of fermentable sugars while minimizing the formation and release of toxic byproducts. Subsequent hydrolysis of cellulose and hemicellulose components into monosaccharides requires the action of multienzymatic complexes. The use of enzymes has significant advantages over acid hydrolysis; the reactions are very specific, have low energetic requirements (temperature) and do not produce harmful byproducts. Since lignocellulose is a complex matrix of different polymers, the optimization of both steps, pretreatment and enzymatic hydrolysis in relation to each other, is a major challenge for biomass utilization (Sun and Cheng 2002; Ballesteros 2010; Himmel et al. 2007).

6.2 Why Pretreatment?

Many physicochemical, structural, and compositional factors make the native lignocellulosic biomass recalcitrant and difficult to be hydrolyzed by enzymes. Lignocellulosic biomass is primarily constituted by cellulose, hemicellulose, lignin, and smaller amounts of pectin, protein, extractives, and ashes. These components are present in varying amounts in the different plant tissues and they are intimately associated to form the structural framework of the plant cell wall. Generally, cellulose microfibrils are surrounded by sheaves of hemicellulose that, in turn, are covalently linked to lignin. This matrix of heteropolymers in which cellulose is embedded is responsible for the characteristic biomass recalcitrance (Himmel et al. 2007). To alter structural characteristics of lignocellulose and significantly increase cellulose and hemicellulose accessibility to the enzymes, a pretreatment step is necessary (Mosier et al. 2005). The effectiveness of the pretreatment to improve

the enzymatic hydrolysis has been attributed to a modification in the degree of polymerization and crystallinity of cellulose (Mansfield et al. 1999; Kumar et al. 2009a), to a disruption of the lignin–carbohydrate linkages (Laureano-Perez et al. 2005), to lignin and hemicelluloses removal (Pan et al. 2005), and to an increase of the porosity of the material (Chandra et al. 2007). There are a number of key features for an effective pretreatment of lignocellulose biomass: it should be versatile producing high yields for multiple crops, maturity, and harvesting times, enhance substrate digestibility, should minimize sugar degradation and toxic compounds production, maximize the production of other valuable products (e.g. lignin-derived), minimize energy consumption, not require chemicals, operate at with large particle sizes, low moisture contents, and at high solid concentrations, and be scalable to industrial size (Jørgensen et al. 2007a; Yang and Wyman 2008).

Pretreatment research has been focused on identifying, evaluating, developing, and demonstrating promising approaches that enhance the enzymatic hydrolysis of the pretreated biomass at lower enzyme dosages and shorter conversion times. Over the years, many different pretreatments have been investigated on a wide variety of feedstocks types and have been generally classified into biological, physical, chemical, and physicochemical pretreatments. A combination of physical parameters, such as temperature or pressure, and biological or chemical treatments can be also used in the pretreatment process. Several recent review articles provide a general overview of the field (Carvalheiro et al. 2008; Sánchez and Cardona 2008; Taherzadeh and Karimi 2008; Yang and Wyman 2008; Hendriks and Zeeman 2009; Alvira et al. 2010; Gírio et al. 2010; Tomás-Pejó et al. 2011). Some of the pretreatment methods have been reported to increase efficiently the digestibility of different raw materials; however, their viability at larger scale represents a significant drawback. The mechanism for making the cellulose more accessible to enzymes depends on the pretreatment employed and nature of the raw material. In ozonolysis, CO_2 explosion, and biological pretreatments, lignin is removed; while in steam explosion is only redistributed and in liquid hot water is partially solubilized. Hemicellulose is extensively solubilized during wet oxidation, autohydrolysis steam explosion or acid pretreatment; and mechanical comminution and ammonia fiber explosion have been shown to reduce cellulose crystallinity. Table 6.1 summarizes the advantages and disadvantages, and the main effects of the most common pretreatment technologies developed for lignocellulosic biomass conversion.

The selection of an appropriated pretreatment determines the process configuration requirements for hydrolysis and fermentation since each step has a large impact on all subsequent stages (Yang and Wyman 2008). The chemistry of the pretreatment has a remarkable importance due to its impacts on the global ethanol production process. Furthermore, pretreatment affects also the cost of the following operation steps, i.e., downstream cost by determining fermentation toxicity, enzymatic hydrolysis rates and enzyme loading, as well as fermentation process variables.

Table 6.1 Main effects of the most common pretreatment technologies developed for lignocellulosic biomass conversion (Tomás-Pejó et al. 2011)

	Increases accessible surface area	Cellulose decrystallization	Hemicellulose solubilization	Lignin removal	Lignin structure modification	Production of toxic compounds
Biological	++	0	0	+++	++	0/+
Mechanical comminution	+++	+++	0	0	0	0
Extrusion	+++	+++	0	–	–	–
Acid	+++	0	+++	++	+++	+++
Alkali	+++	+++	++/+++	+++	+++	+
Organosolv	++	–	+++	++/+++	++	++/+
Ozonolysis	++	++	++/+++	+++	++	+
Ionic liquids	++	+++	+++	++/+++	++	++/+
Wet oxidation	+++	–	+++	++	+++	+
Microwave	+++	+++	+	+++	+++	+
LHW	+++	–	+++	+	++	+
AFEX	+++	++	++	+	+++	+
SPORL	+++	++	+++	++	++	+
Supercritical fluids	++/+++	–	++	+++	++	++
Steam explosion	+++	–	+++	++	+++	+++

(+++) high effect; (++) moderate effect; (+) low effect; (0) no effect
LHW: Liquid hot water
AFEX: Ammonia fiber expansion
SPORL: Sulfite pretreatment to overcome recalcitrance of lignocellulose

6.3 Enzymes for Hydrolysis of Lignocellulose

The goal of the enzymatic hydrolysis process is to depolymerise the polysaccharides contained in the pretreated lignocellulosic substrates. Due to the complex structure and composition of lignocellulose, different enzymes are involved and an appropriate combination of different activities is required for complete hydrolysis. Enzyme production and subsequent enzymatic hydrolysis are two of the steps preventing bioconversion processes from becoming cheaper and competitive. In recent years, different programs have funded research at the main biotechnological companies to improve the enzymatic products and reduce their cost. Although significant advances have been accomplished, enzyme mixtures still need to be optimized and adapted for the different raw materials and pretreatments (Himmel et al. 2007; Banerjee et al. 2010).

The enzymes involved in lignocellulose conversion can be classified into cellulases, hemicellulases, ligninases, and nonhydrolytic proteins.

6.3.1 Cellulases

Cellulose is the main component of lignocellulose (generally contains 40–50 % (w/w)) and glucose, the preferred carbon source for many microorganisms. Cellulose is a homopolymer of repeating sugar units of glucose linked by β-1,4-glucosidic bonds. It is highly ordered, water-excluding, insoluble, and presents crystalline regions.

Cellulases are the number of enzymes involved in the hydrolysis of the polymer of cellulose into glucose monomers. Cellulases are produced by different organisms including fungi; aerobic and anaerobic bacteria; termites and some insects (Wilson 2008). The most studied microorganism for cellulase production is the filamentous fungi *Trichoderma reesei (*teleomorph *Hypocrea jecorina)*, which secretes large amounts of extracellular enzymes (Kubicek 1992). *T. reesei* has been extensively subjected to strain development processes to improve cellulase production (Persson et al. 1991). Recently, its genome has been completely sequenced, which provides important information to enable genetic modifications and metabolic engineering (Martinez et al. 2008).

Some microorganisms are capable to produce extracellular multienzymatic complexes or cellulosomes, which can degrade cellulose and hemicellulose. Cellulosomes were first discovered in anaerobic bacteria of genus *Clostridium* (Bayer et al. 2004). *Clostridium* is also capable to ferment sugars; therefore, it has been studied for consolidated bioprocessing (CBP) approaches, which involves cellulase production, cellulose hydrolysis and fermentation in one step (Bayer et al. 2008).

To convert cellulose into glucose, at least three categories of enzymes are involved; endoglucanases hydrolyze internal β-1,4-glucosidic bonds in the

cellulose chain, cellobiohydrolases cleave off cellobiose units from the end of the chain, and β-glucosidase converts cellobiose into glucose. These enzymes are usually constituted by a catalytic domain and a binding carbohydrate domain. They work synergistically to hydrolyze cellulose by creating new accessible sites and relieving product inhibition (Himmel et al. 1996). However, cellulases mechanism is not completely known and a deeper understanding could enhance the efficiency of the process. It has been reported that cellulases show nonlinear kinetics with time and amount of enzyme, and the components act in a processive (sequential) manner (Medve et al. 1998; Kurasin and Valjämäe 2011). It has been also suggested that the rate-limiting step in the hydrolysis of cellulose is not the catalytic cleavage of the beta-1,4-glucosidic bond, but the disruption of a single chain of the substrate from its native crystalline matrix, thereby rendering it accessible to the active site of the enzyme (Bayer et al. 2008). This mechanism was recently reported by real-time visualization (Igarashi et al. 2011). Another study hypothesized that carbohydrate binding module can bind strong and unproductively the cellulose chain, reducing the activity of cellulases (Eriksson et al. 2002).

6.3.2 Hemicellulases

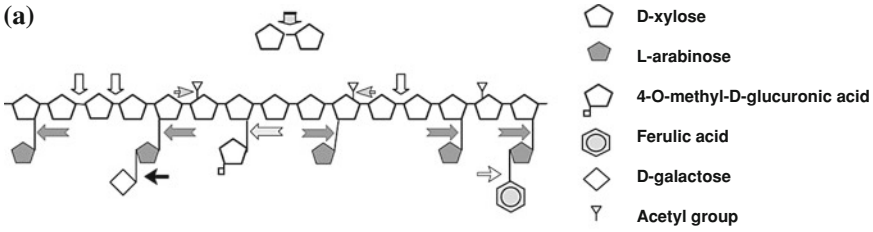
Hemicellulases are the enzymes involved in the degradation of hemicellulose. In contrast to insoluble, highly crystalline, homogenous, and unbranched cellulose polymer, hemicellulose is a branched and substituted heteropolymer composed of a wide variety of subunits, including sugars, sugar acids, and noncarbohydrate moieties. Hemicelluloses represent 15–35 % of plant biomass; and are linked to lignin through ester linkages and to cellulose through interchain hydrogen bonding (Gírio et al. 2010).

The type of hemicellulose and its structural characteristics differ among different plant families or cell types. In addition, the pretreatment produces modifications in the structure and composition of hemicellulose. Acid and hydrothermal pretreatments such as steam explosion or liquid hot water produce extensive hemicellulose solubilization and degradation, yielding hemicellulosic sugars both in monomeric and oligomeric form (Ballesteros et al. 2006; Pérez et al. 2008; Alvira et al. 2010). In contrast, pretreatment with alkali or ammonia fiber/freeze explosion (AFEX) and biological pretreatments generally have little effect on hemicelluloses (Kumar et al. 2009; Wyman et al. 2011). Considering the complexity and variability of hemicelluloses and the modifications produced by the different pretreatments, enzymatic conversion of hemicellulose becomes a challenge. Obtaining an optimal set of enzymes depends on type of biomass, the pretreatment and the desired end products.

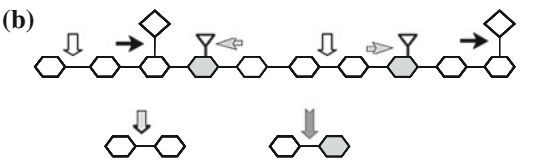
The most relevant hemicelluloses in herbaceous biomass are xylans, especially arabinoxylan. Hardwood contains predominantly glucuronoxylan, while softwood is dominated by glucomannan, galactomannan, and galacto (gluco) mannan

(Dahlman et al. 2003). Other hemicelluloses are also present in plant cell walls, including xyloglucan and β-glucans. This structural and compositional complexity of hemicelluloses extends to the enzymes involved in degradation of these heteropolymers. Hemicellulases are usually classified according to their substrates specificity (xylanases, mannanases, arabinases, galactosidases, etc). Another system, the CAZy database (www.cazy.org), categorizes glucoside hydrolases based on aminoacid sequences and molecular similarities (Henrissat and Davies 1997; Decker et al. 2008).

Hemicellulases can be also divided into depolymerising enzymes, which act on the backbone sugar chains, and debranching enzymes, which catalyze hydrolysis of lateral substitutions (Decker et al. 2008). Debranching enzymes include those acting on glycosidic linkages, such as α-L-arabinofuranosidases or α-D-glucuronosidases; and esterase enzymes, which catalyze ester linkages between sugars and



Symbol	Enzyme	EC	Bound hydrolysed
⇩	Endo-1,4-β-xylanase	3.2.1.8	β-1,4
⇩	β-D-xylosidase	3.2.1.37	β-1,4
⇒	α-L-arabinofuranosidase	3.2.1.55	α-L-1,2; α-L-1,3
⇨	α-D-glucuronosidase	3.2.1.131	α-L-1,2
→	α-D-galactosidase	3.2.1.22	α-L-1,6
⇨	Feruloyl esterase	3.1.1.73	Ester
⇨	Acetyl esterase	3.1.1.72	Ester



Symbol	Enzyme	EC	Bound hydrolysed
⇩	Endomannanase	3.2.1.78	β-1,4
⇩	β-mannosidase	3.2.1.25	β-1,4
⇩	β-glucosidase	3.2.1.21	β-1,4
→	α-D-galactosidase	3.2.1.22	α-D-1,6
⇨	Acetyl mannan esterase	3.1.1.72	Ester

Fig. 6.1 Enzymes involved in arabinoxylan **a** and galactoglucomannan **b** degradation

others components. In Fig. 6.1a, it is shown the typical structure of a cereal arabinoxylan and the enzymes involved in its hydrolysis.

In a biorefinery concept, hemicellulases are valuable tools potentially applicable in many bioconversion processes. In pulp and paper industry, xylanases have been used for biobleaching, in which the enzymes hydrolyze specifically xylan chains and promote partial delignification (Bajpai 2004). Hemicellulases are also used as food additives to poultry and for food industry applications, including coffee processing, fruit and vegetable maceration, bread preparation, and juice clarification (Beg et al. 2001). More recently, hemicellulases have been studied for production of valuable oligosaccharides that can be applicable as food additives (Yang et al. 2005).

Hemicellulases are extensively studied as accessory enzymes to increase the production of fermentable sugars from lignocellulosic raw materials and improve the yields of bioethanol and other biofuels production (Saha 2003). Pretreatments, such as steam explosion, solubilize partially the hemicellulose fraction, which increases accessibility of cellulose chains. In an attempt to reduce the costs and losses associated to pretreatments, the processes should be performed at low severity, which does help the economics of the pretreatment, but often results in less digestible biomass, mostly associated with the decrease of hemicellulose hydrolysis. To maintain the advantages of reduced severity pretreatments, while continuing to increase conversion rates and levels, hemicellulases are becoming much more prominent in the biomass conversion technologies. The action of hemicellulases degrade the hemicellulosic matrix and increase accessibility of cellulose fibers, which improves the enzymatic hydrolysis yields and favors the reduction of cellulase dosages (García-Aparicio et al. 2007; Kumar and Wyman 2009b; Alvira et al. 2011a). In addition, the hydrolysis of hemicellulose fraction increase total amount of fermentable sugars, mainly C-5 sugars. This fact is relevant since pentose-fermenting microorganisms have been developed during last years (Hahn-Hägerdal et al. 2007; Tomás-Pejó et al. 2010).

Many studies report potential uses of hemicellulase enzymes to improve bioconversion processes, being the xylanases the most extensively studied. **Xylanases** include **endoxylanases** and ***β*-xylosidases**. Endoxylanases hydrolyze internal β-1,4-glucosidic bonds in the xylan chain, releasing xylooligomers, while β-xylosidases act on xylobiose and xylooligomers, releasing xylose units. These activities have been widely studied and reported to improve the accessibility of cellulose to cellulases and increase enzymatic hydrolysis yields (Berlin et al. 2005; García-Aparicio et al. 2007; Kumar and Wyman 2009b; Hu et al. 2011). Two mechanisms have been hypothesized to explain this effect: enhanced accessibility of glucan chains due to xylan removal and disruption of xylan linkages to glucan with a subsequent delignification effect (Kumar and Wyman 2008). In addition, xylobiose and xylooligomers have been shown to inhibit enzymatic hydrolysis of glucan and xylan in pretreated lignocellulose (Kumar and Wyman 2009b). Qing et al. (2010) reported a stronger inhibitory effect on cellulases of xylooligomers than xylose or cellobiose. Furthermore, different approaches of enzyme addition strategies and process configurations have also been recently suggested to optimize

the enzymatic hydrolysis and obtain higher fermentation yields (Kumar and Wyman 2009c; Jin et al. 2010; Rémond et al. 2010; Alvira et al. 2011b). These studies hypothesized that the sequence in which the different activities are introduced in the process can improve the overall release of fermentable sugars.

Endomannanases catalyze internal linkages in mannan chains, which constitute galactoglucomannans and glucomannans, the predominant hemicelluloses in softwood (Fig. 6.1b). The main hydrolysis products from these polysaccharides are mannobiose, mannotriose, and various mixed oligosaccharides. These enzymes can have a positive effect on pulping or biofuel production from woody biomass (Agrawal et al. 2011). ***β*-mannosidases** are capable to further degrade mannooligomers to mannose (Tenkanen et al. 1997; Decker et al. 2008).

Xyloglucan is one of the major hemicellulosic polysaccharides in the primary cell wall of various plant species. It is composed of a glucan backbone with xylose substitutions and it is intimately associated to cellulose chains. **Xyloglucanases** degrade xyloglucan by attacking the glucan backbone, even at substituted glucose residues. It has been reported that hydrolysis of xyloglucan enables cellulases to hydrolyze the cellulose polymer more efficiently and improve the enzymatic hydrolysis process from lignocellulosic substrates (Benko et al. 2008).

Debranching enzymes generally remove side groups linked to the main chain of the polysaccharides or to oligomers. The presence of these side chains can restrict the enzymatic hydrolysis of carbohydrates contained in lignocellulosic raw materials. Thus, these enzymes act synergistically with other depolymerising enzymes, which enhance the effectiveness of the enzymatic hydrolysis process.

α-L-arabinofuranosidases cleave arabinose residues from arabinan, arabinoxylan or pectin. In some lignocellulosic materials, this activity favors debranching and degradation of xylan, and also helps to disrupt the lignin–carbohydrate complex since arabinose residues take part in lignin–hemicellulose ether bonds. α-L-arabinofuranosidases are promising tools in various agro-industrial processes, including production of medicinal compounds, improvement of wine flavors, bread quality, pulp treatment, juice clarification, quality of animal feedstock, synthesis of oligosaccharides, and more recently for bioethanol production (Saha 2000; Numan and Bhosle 2006). Moreover, these enzymes work synergistically with other activities, such as endoxylanases (Alvira et al. 2011a), and ferulic acid and acetyl xylan esterases (Poutanen and Puls 1989; Saha, 2000; Raweesri et al. 2008). Supplementation of cellulases with this type of accessory enzymes has the potential to improve the enzymatic hydrolysis process from lignocellulosic feedstocks. Figure 6.2 illustrates the positive and synergistic effect of supplementation with endoxylanases and α-L-Emphasis Type="SmallCaps">L-arabinofuranosidases in the enzymatic hydrolysis of steam explosion pretreated wheat straw.

α-glucuronosidases catalyze the release of glucuronic acid or 4-O-methylglucuronic acid from xylan, showing a synergistic effect with endoxylanases. α-D-galactosidases are involved in degradation of galactomannans and galactoglucomannans, therefore its application in softwood pulping has been considered (Decker et al. 2008).

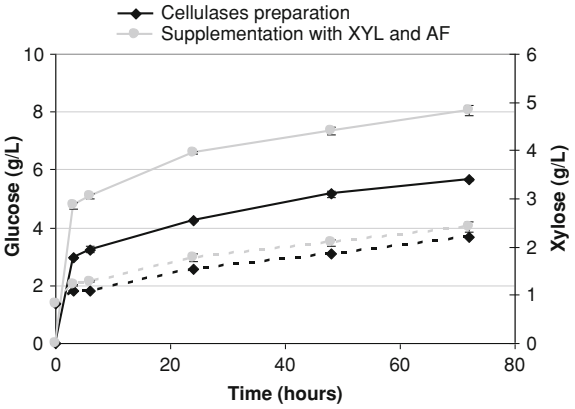


Fig. 6.2 Effect of endoxylanase and α-L-arabinofuranosidase supplementation on glucose (*continuous line*) and xylose (*discontinuous line*) production from steam explosion pretreated wheat straw (Alvira et al. 2011a)

Esterases enzymes can be included in the hemicellulases group since catalyze ester bonds between hemicellulose and other components. Acetyl and hydroxycinnamic acid substituents bound to hemicellulose are removed by **acetyl xylan esterases and ferulic and coumaric esterases**, respectively. Some of these esterases have a broad specificity against different substrates (Crepin et al. 2004). Acetylation occurs on several hemicelluloses, mainly in cereals and hardwoods. Acetyl groups increase solubility and hydration of hemicellulose, therefore deacetylation of xylan and glucogalactomannan decrease the solubility of the polymer. Release of acetyl groups also results in a decrease of the pH and can have an inhibitory or toxic effect to many microorganisms during subsequent fermentation processes (Palmqvist and Hahn-Hägerdal 2000a). As acetyl groups are bound to hemicellulose, they have been reported to inhibit cellulase enzymes and/or limit their access to cellulose chains during enzymatic saccharification processes (Pan et al. 2006). **Acetyl xylan esterases** remove acetyl groups from xylan chain and work synergistically with cellulases and xylanases when using pretreated corn stover, wheat straw, or giant reed (Pan et al. 2006; Selig et al. 2008; Selig et al. 2009; Zhang et al. 2011).

Hydroxycinnamic acids such as p-coumaric and ferulic acid are frequent constituents in hemicelluloses of herbaceous biomasses such as corn stover or wheat straw. These acids take part in the linkages between hemicellulose, frequently arabinose, and galactose side chains, and lignin components (Faulds et al. 2006). The esterase activities contribute to breakdown the lignin–carbohydrate complex having an important role in cell wall development and gut health. **Ferulic and p-coumaric acid esterases** hydrolyze ester bonds between hydroxycinnamic acids and sugars, and release ferulic acid and p-coumaric acid from these polymers. As well as acetic acid, coumaric, and ferulic acid are toxic to many microorganisms and can have a negative effect in bioconversion processes to obtain fermentation products (Palmqvist and Hahn-Hägerdal 2000a). Esterases action can also enhance the accessibility of the cellulose fibers and are potentially used for the production of bioactive chemicals and biofuels (Polizeli et al. 2005). Feruloyl esterase has

been shown to work synergistically with cellulases and xylanases, which can contribute to degrade the lignocellulosic material and reduce the enzyme dosages needed for the process (Vries et al. 2000; Faulds et al. 2006; Tabka et al. 2006; Selig et al. 2008).

6.3.3 Ligninases

Lignin is the second most abundant constituent of plant biomass after cellulose. It is a complex aromatic polymer, highly recalcitrant toward both chemical and biological degradation, where different nonphenolic phenylpropanoid units form a complex three-dimensional network linked by a variety of ether. Although lignin does not contain fermentable sugars, it constitutes a physical barrier that binds unspecifically cellulases and impedes its action; therefore, its removal is a key step in industrial conversion of cellulosic biomass (Ruiz-Dueñas et al. 2009). Some microorganisms, such as the so-called "white-rot" basidiomycetes, are able to depolymerize and mineralize lignin (Martínez et al. 2005). These fungi have developed an extracellular and unspecific enzymatic system of an oxidative nature for lignin degradation. The process involves different enzymes such as laccases, ligninolytic peroxidases, oxidases generating extracellular H_2O_2, reductases, and also low molecular weight compounds that mediate the action of these enzymes (Martínez et al. 2005). The process involves an only enzyme type or various associated enzyme complexes acting synergistically, depending on the species, strains and culture conditions (Martínez et al. 2005).

Laccases have been described for many years in plants, fungi, insects, and bacteria (Mayer and Staples 2002), being their production a characteristic unique of "white-rot" basidiomycetes (Martínez et al. 2005). They are multicopper oxidases that catalyze the one electron oxidation of substituted phenols, anilines, and aromatic thiols to their corresponding radicals with the concomitant reduction of molecular oxygen to water. Their low redox potential only allows the direct oxidation of phenolic lignin units, which only represent a small percentage in lignin (Mayer and Staples 2002). However, in the presence of low molecular weight compounds forming stable radicals that act as redox mediators (Bourbonnais and Paice 1990), laccases also oxidize nonphenolic lignin units. Ligninolytic peroxidases are high redox potential heme peroxidases that require H_2O_2 as co-substrate for the enzyme catalysis (Martínez et al. 2005), and include lignin peroxidase (LiP), manganese peroxidase (MnP), and versatile peroxidase (VP). The two former were described first in *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* (Martínez 2002). LiP is able to oxidize directly nonphenolic lignin units, whereas MnP generates Mn^{3+} acting preferentially on phenolic units, but also on nonphenolic units via lipid peroxidation reactions (Martínez et al. 2005). VP was described recently in *Pleurotus eryngii* as a new peroxidase which shares catalytic properties with LiP and MnP (Ruiz-Dueñas et al. 1999). Required H_2O_2 by ligninolytic peroxidases is produced by oxidases, such as glyoxal oxidase, a copper

radical enzyme described in *P. chrysosporium* (Kersten 1990), and arylalcohol oxidase described in *P. eryngii* (Guillén et al. 1992). Finally, reductases such as arylalcohol dehydrogenases and quinone reductases are also involved in lignin degradation (Guillén et al. 1997), catalyzing the reduction of phenolic products derived from lignin degradation, and thus avoiding their posterior repolymerization.

The lignin degradation by this nonspecific oxidative system makes "white-rot" fungi useful for a wide range of biotechnological applications of lignocellulosic biomass. Traditionally used in the pulp and paper industry for biopulping or biobleaching (Ruiz-Dueñas et al. 2009), "white-rot" fungi are currently attracting much attention as an alternative or additional method to pretreatments for enhancing enzymatic saccharification of lignocellulosic biomass in ethanol production processes (Kuhar et al. 2008; Dias et al. 2010; Salvachúa et al. 2011). This biological pretreatment consists in a solid state fermentation process in which microbes grow on the lignocellulosic biomass selectively degrading lignin and hemicellulose, while the cellulose is expected to remain intact. Compared to physical and chemical pretreatment methods, biological pretreatment offers some advantages: it is cheaper, safer, less energy consuming, environmentally friendly, and minimizes inhibitors generation (Alvira et al. 2010). However, the rates of this type of pretreatment is still far from industrial requirements, besides of presenting disadvantages, such as long storage times, extended cellulose and hemicellulose consumptions, and low saccharification rate (Alvira et al. 2010). As an alternative, ligninolytic enzymes reduce pretreatment times and present higher lignin specificity, avoiding over carbohydrate consumptions. Among them, laccases are being widely studied on different feedstocks, either individually (Moilanen et al. 2011; Mukhopadhyay et al. 2011) or combined with mediators (Palonen and Viikari 2004).

Ligninolytic enzymes have been also applied in biofuels production to minimize the inhibitory effects of several compounds generated during pretreatments of lignocellulosic biomass. Thermochemical pretreatments, such as steam explosion or dilute acid, generates some soluble inhibitory compounds, derived from a partial sugars and lignin degradation, which can affect enzymatic hydrolysis as well as fermentation steps (Palmqvist and Hahn-Hägerdal 2000a; Panagiotou and Olsson 2007). The nature and concentration of these toxic compounds depend on the severity of pretreatment conditions and the raw material used. They are classified according to their chemical structure and include weak acids, furan derivatives, and phenolic compounds (Palmqvist and Hahn-Hägerdal 2000a). Laccases act selectively on phenolic compounds (Kolb et al. 2012), increasing saccharification yields and enhancing the yeast fermentation performance (Jönsson et al. 1998; Jurado et al. 2009; Kalyani et al. 2012; Moreno et al. 2012). Figure 6.3 shows the positive effect of laccase treatments on ethanol production from steam exploded wheat straw. Compared to chemical and physical detoxification methods, the use of laccases involves fewer inhibitory subproducts, little waste generation and mild reaction conditions (Palmqvist and Hahn-Hägerdal 2000b). Its detoxification mechanism consist in the oxidation of phenolic compounds generating unstable

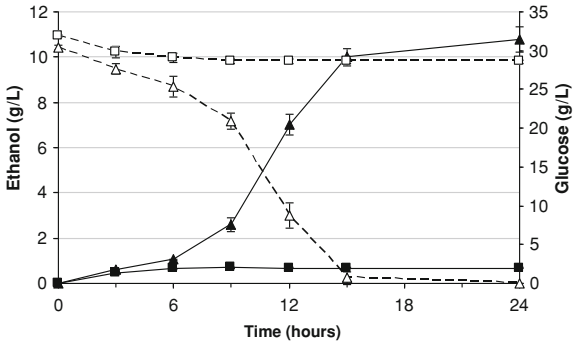


Fig. 6.3 Time course for ethanol production (*filled symbols and continuous lines*) and glucose consumption (*open symbols and discontinuous lines*) during fermentation of steam exploded wheat straw detoxified by laccases (Moreno et al. 2012). Symbols used: *Trametes villosa* laccase (▲, △) and control samples (■, □)

phenoxy radicals that lead to polymerization into less toxic aromatic compounds (Jurado et al. 2009). They have been mainly used to detoxified whole slurries (Jurado et al. 2009; Kalyani et al. 2012; Moreno et al. 2012), prehydrolysates (effluents from pretreated slurries filtration step) (Jönsson et al. 1998), and enzymatic hydrolysates (Jurado et al. 2009; Moreno et al. 2012). Moreover, yeast strains resistant to the phenols of prehydrolysates by laccase expression have been developed (Larsson et al. 2001). Finally, although in a lesser extent, LiP has been also successfully studied as detoxification method (Jönsson et al. 1998).

6.3.4 Noncatalytic Proteins

Non-catalytic proteins such as swollenins and expansins have attracted some attention. These proteins do not catalyze hydrolysis of cellulose or hemicellulose but have been shown to disrupt the crystalline structure of cellulose, thus making it more accessible to enzymes (Jørgensen et al. 2007a). Expansins are plants proteins that enable and regulate the extension of plant cell walls (Cosgrove 2000). Their cell-wall loosening action has been shown to weaken the lignocellulose structure and enhance the hydrolysis of cellulose by cellulases (Baker et al. 2000).

Swollenins are proteins with sequence similarity to the plant expansins isolated from *Trichoderma reesei*. Similarly to the expansins this protein with no catalytic activity appears to disrupt the structure of cellulose microfibers, possibly by breaking hydrogen bonds (Saloheimo et al. 2002). Other non-catalytic proteins of fungal origin belonging to glycosyl hydrolase family 61, the so-called GH61, have been shown to stimulate the activity of cellulases in synergism assays. This positive effect can significantly reduce the total protein loading required to hydrolyze lignocellulosic biomass (Merino and Cherry 2007; Harris et al. 2010).

Several GH61 genes were transformed into *T. reesei* resulting in strains expressing GH61, and obtaining fermentation broths with enhanced hydrolytic capability (Merino and Cherry 2007).

6.4 Factors Affecting Enzymatic Hydrolysis and Challenges for Bioconversion Processes

Enzymatic hydrolysis of lignocellulosic biomass is hindered by different obstacles that limit the enzymes action. Although a significant breakthrough in reducing the cost to produce enzymes has been accomplished by companies such as Novozymes, Genencor, Verenium, or DSM, enzymatic hydrolysis still requires high enzyme loadings and it is still an economic barrier for biofuels production. Therefore, the efficiency of enzymatic hydrolysis to produce sugars from lignocellulosic biomass should be further improved. Main factors affecting enzymatic hydrolysis can be divided into enzyme-related and substrate-related factors. Enzyme-related factors include end-product inhibition, thermal inactivation, enzymes synergism, and irreversible adsorption of the enzymes to lignin. The main substrate-related factors that limit enzymatic hydrolysis comprise degree of polymerization and crystallinity of cellulose, accessible surface area, and lignin and hemicellulose content (Mansfield et al. 1999; Esteghlalian et al. 2001).

For implementation of biofuels production at industrial scale, two main challenges can be identified to improve the process: **operating at high solid content** in the enzymatic hydrolysis process and **optimizing the enzyme complexes performance** to minimize enzyme loadings.

6.4.1 Optimizing Enzyme Complex

Optimizing the multienzyme mixtures involves different strategies, which include improvements in the enzyme production process, screening of novel enzyme-producing microorganisms, metagenomic approaches, random mutagenesis, genetic engineering of cellulolytic microorganisms and/or specific enzymes, addition of surfactants and enzyme recycling.

The cost of **enzymes production** is considered a major bottleneck for industrial scale development of bioconversion processes. Many organisms are capable to produce cellulases; however, the filamentous fungus *Trichoderma reesei* has been the most extensively studied. *T. reesei* produces mainly cellulases but also other activities at lower level such as xylanases or swollenins (Foreman et al. 2003; Martinez et al. 2008), which can have a positive effect on the saccharification process. One possibility to reduce costs is on-site enzyme production in a biorefinery plant. In an on-site production process, part of the lignocellulosic material

already available can be used as a cheap carbon source in the enzyme production. This system can provide appropriate enzymatic mixtures and reduce costs since downstream processes can be minimized (Jørgensen and Olsson 2006). Moreover, production of enzymes using as carbon source the lignocellulosic substrate that will be subjected to enzymatic hydrolysis has shown significant advantages. It has been reported that the composition of the carbon source can have an effect on the production of the enzymes because certain polysaccharides or monosaccharides can induce the expression of specific enzymes (Juhász et al. 2005; Kovacs et al. 2009; Sipos et al. 2010). Therefore, the cultivation of the fungus on one type of lignocellulosic material would induce different enzymes and can result in an enzyme mixture with a composition especially suitable for the hydrolysis of this particular material (Juhász et al. 2005).

It has been detailed in previously that many different enzymatic activities can be required for complete hydrolysis of lignocellulosic substrates. Thus, the **composition of the enzymatic mixtures** needs to be adapted to the characteristics of the substrate employed, that is the composition of the raw material and the modifications occurred during the pretreatment. In summary, enzyme mixtures will need to be tailored for each raw material and pretreatment, e.g., through addition of substrate-specific accessory enzymes, such as xylanases, mannanases, esterases, etc. A number or articles in recent years have evidenced the importance of accessory enzymes (Berlin et al. 2005; Berlin et al. 2006; Alvira et al. 2011a). The optimization of the enzyme cocktails for each type of pretreated substrate would favor the reduction of enzyme loadings and also the severity of the pretreatments.

Recover and recycle the enzymes from reaction suspension and bound to the residual substrate (mainly onto lignin) at the end of the enzymatic hydrolysis represents an interesting strategy to reduce the cost of the process. Different methods have been suggested to recover the enzymes, such as adsorption by contact with fresh substrate and ultrafiltration techniques. Readsorption of free cellulases onto fresh lignocellulosic substrates has been shown as an effective method for free enzyme recovery. Cellulases remain active after hydrolysis of lignocellulosic substrates and therefore can be recycled in the process (Tu et al. 2007). Ultrafiltration can also result an effective method for enzyme recovery and for continuously removing the enzymatic hydrolysis products. Qi et al. (2012) studied a two-step process using a combination of ultrafiltration for recycling the enzymes and nanofiltration for concentrating glucose, which could improve the fermentation efficiency of lignocellulosic hydrolyzates and lower the separation and purification cost of fermentative products. In a different article, it was studied the cellulase adsorption and recycling from both the liquid and the solid phase after enzymatic hydrolysis of pretreated wheat straw. It was observed that alkali treated wheat straw showed better recycling efficiency when compared to acid treated, which indicates that the efficiency of enzyme recycling is affected by the content and distribution of lignin. It was shown that ultrafiltration method had the benefit to retain β-glucosidases, compared to the absorption recycling method (Qi et al. 2011).

Another possibility to avoid unproductive adsorption of enzyme and improve the enzymatic hydrolysis performance is the addition of **additives or surfactants** to the substrate. These compounds occupy the binding sites on lignin and reduce binding potential of cellulases. This strategy can enhance the cellulose conversion and lower enzyme loading requirements. Different compounds have been evaluated as additives in the enzymatic hydrolysis. Tween 20 and Tween 80 are non-ionic surfactants that have shown a positive effect on enzymatic hydrolysis. Addition of these compounds has been reported to decrease adsorption of cellulase proteins and protect them from deactivation, having the potential to reduce total enzyme loadings (Tu and Saddler 2010; Yang et al. 2011). Polyethynelglycol (PEG) also showed a positive effect on the enzymatic hydrolysis of several pretreated lignocellulosic materials and it is a low-cost commodity product. Addition of PEG prevented unproductive binding of cellulases onto lignin and increased free cellulase activity (Sipos et al. 2011).

6.4.2 Operating at High Solid Content

Operating at high solid content in the enzymatic hydrolysis process is crucial for large-scale development of bioproduct and biofuel production processes. The aim of utilizing high solid content is to reach high sugar concentrations and subsequently high concentrations of fermentation products, such as ethanol (Jørgensen et al. 2007a; Hodge et al. 2009). Furthermore, maintaining high substrate concentrations throughout the conversion process is important for the energy balance and economic viability of biofuels production. Obtaining high concentration of fermentation product reduces global production cost since downstream processing and water consumption can be lowered. In case of ethanol production, distillation increases significantly the energy demand of the process, especially when ethanol concentrations are below 4 % (Öhgren et al. 2006).

In general, higher substrate loadings results in higher concentration of sugars. However, it has been shown that enzyme performance gradually decreases as substrate concentration increased. This can be attributed to enzyme inhibition by end products or toxics, presence of high concentrations of lignin and mass transfer limitations (Jørgensen et al. 2007a; Kristensen et al. 2009). In addition, some recent studies have reported a decrease in the adsorption capacity of cellulase enzymes to cellulose at high substrate loadings due to the effect of hydrolysis products (Kristensen et al. 2009; Wang et al. 2011). To overcome these barriers, different process configurations and strategies have been suggested to increase solids concentration in bioconversion processes.

Operating at high initial solids content (above 10–15 % (w/w)) involves technical barriers. Viscosity of the pretreated materials is usually very high, which implies mass transfer limitations and mixing difficulties. Operating fed-batch processes by adding fresh substrate when viscosity decreases has been shown as an effective strategy to increase substrate concentrations in fermentations processes

(Ballesteros et al. 2002; Varga et al. 2004). Another possibility is carrying out a prehydrolysis prior to initiate the simultaneous saccharification and fermentation (SSF) process. Using this strategy, the enzymes act at optimum temperature and reduce viscosity, which can result in higher substrates loadings (Rosgaard et al. 2007; Manzanares et al. 2011). A recent advance for operating at high consistency is the development of novel bioreactors with improved mixing capacity and low energy consumption (Jørgensen et al. 2007b; Zhang et al. 2009).

Another problem when operating at high substrate concentration is product inhibition. Cellobiose, glucose, and hemicellulose-derived sugars have been shown to inhibit the enzymes action (Xiao et al. 2004). In SSF processes, sugars released by the action of the enzymes are converted directly to ethanol by the fermenting microorganism, which reduces end-product inhibition (Ballesteros et al. 1994; Olsson et al. 2006). Constant removal of glucose during the process has been also proposed (Andric et al. 2010).

Degradation compounds originated from carbohydrates and lignin during the pretreatment affect the enzymatic hydrolysis (Tengborg et al. 2001; García-Aparicio et al. 2006) and the fermenting microorganisms (Palmqvist and Hahn-Hägerdal 2000a; Oliva et al. 2003; Oliva et al. 2004). At high substrate loadings, the concentration of these compounds increases, therefore their influence in the bioconversion process can become more significant. Washing the pretreated material has been typically employed to eliminate toxic compounds and increase enzymatic hydrolysis and fermentation yields. To avoid washing and use the whole slurries, detoxification strategies such as laccase treatments have been studied to reduce the concentration of phenolic compounds and increase substrate concentrations in fermentation (Moreno et al. 2012).

Different articles reported the utilization of high substrate concentrations for ethanol production. Using wet oxidized and steam exploded corn stover, a substrate consistency of 15 % and 10–30 % dry matter (DM) in fermentation experiments, respectively, was studied (Varga et al. 2004; Lu et al. 2010). Using corn stover pretreated by combination of stream explosion and alkaline hydrogen peroxide, it was reached a solids loading of 30 % (Yang et al. 2010). With hydrothermal pretreated and steam pretreated wheat straw, it was possible to carry out hydrolysis and SSF at high substrate concentrations up to 20–30 % (Jørgensen 2009; Ballesteros et al. 2011), and with steam pretreated spruce it could be reached a consistency of 14 % (Hoyer et al. 2010).

6.5 Conclusion

Efficient utilization of lignocellulosic materials in a biorefinery depends on the advances in pretreatment technologies, enzyme saccharification, and fermentation of sugars to fuels and chemicals. Optimization of pretreatment and enzymatic hydrolysis processes is crucial to make bioconversion processes from lignocellulosic biomass viable and cost-effective. The aim of the pretreatment is increasing

the digestibility of carbohydrates while minimizing degradation of sugars and generation of toxic compounds. The pretreatment has to be adapted to the different raw materials and should be validated at large scale. The cost and efficiency of enzyme products still represents a major bottleneck to improve the economy of industrial biorefineries. To reduce costs of enzymatic hydrolysis processes, it is required the optimization of enzymatic mixtures in order to increase sugars production yields, reduce pretreatment severity, and decrease enzyme dosages. Complexity of lignocellulosic substrates involves that enzyme cocktails should be adapted for each raw material and type of pretreatment. In addition, operating at high solid content should be considered as a key issue for biofuels production. Finally, the integration of all the process steps has a remarkable importance to increase overall process efficiency and promote large-scale development. The type of biomass and pretreatment determines the process configuration requirements for hydrolysis and fermentation as each step has a large impact on all subsequent stages.

References

Agrawal P, Verma D, Daniell H (2011) Expression of *Trichoderma reesei* β-mannanase in tobacco chloroplasts and its utilization in lignocellulosic woody biomass hydrolysis. PLOS ONE 6(12):e29302. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0029302

Alvira P, Tomás-Pejó E, Ballesteros M, Negro MJ (2010) Pretreatment technologies for an efficient bioethanol production process based on enzymatic hydrolysis: a review. Bioresour Technol 101:4851–4861

Alvira P, Negro MJ, Ballesteros M (2011a) Effect of endoxylanase and alpha-arabinofuranosidase supplementation on the enzymatic hydrolysis of steam exploded wheat straw. Bioresour Technol 102:4552–4558

Alvira P, Tomás-Pejó E, Negro MJ, Ballesteros M (2011b) Strategies of xylanase supplementation for an efficient saccharification and cofermentation process from pretreated wheat straw. Biotechnol Prog 27:944–950

Andric P, Meyer AS, Jensen PA, Dam-Johansen K (2010) Effect and modelling of glucose inhibition and in situ glucose removal during enzymatic hydrolysis of pretreated wheat straw. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 160:280–297

Bajpai P (2004) Biological bleaching of chemical pulps. Crit Rev Biotechnol 24:1–58

Baker JO, King MR, Adney WS, Decker SR, Vinzant TB, Lantz SE, Nieves RE, Thomas SR, Li LC, Cosgrove DJ, Himmel ME (2000) Investigation of the cell-wall loosening protein expansin as a possible additive in the enzymatic saccharification of lignocellulosic biomass. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 84–86:217–223

Ballesteros I, Negro MJ, Oliva JM, Cabañas A, Manzanares P, Ballesteros M (2006) Ethanol production from steam-explosion pretreated wheat straw. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 130:496–508

Ballesteros I, Negro MJ, Oliva JM, Sáez F, Manzanares P, Ballesteros M (2011) Increased ethanol concentration in saccharification and fermentation media of steam-exploded cereal straw. XIX. In: International symposium on alcohol fuels (ISAF), Development and utilization of alcohols fuels, to promote sustainability

Ballesteros I, Oliva JM, Carrasco JE, Ballesteros M (1994) Effect of media supplementation of ethanol production by simultaneous saccharification and fermentation process. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 45–46:283–294

Ballesteros I, Oliva JM, Negro MJ, Manzanares P, Ballesteros M (2002) Ethanol production from paper material using a simultaneous saccharification and fermentation system in a fed-batch basis. World J Microb Biot 18(6):559–561

Ballesteros M (2010) Enzymatic hydrolysis of lignocellulosic biomass. In: Waldron K (ed) Bioalcohol production. Biochemical conversion of lignocellulosic biomass. Woodhead Publishing, UK, pp 159–177

Banerjee G, Scott-Craig JS, Walton JD (2010) Improving enzymes for biomass conversion: a basic research perspective. Bioenerg Res 3:82–92

Bayer EA, Henrissat B, Lamed R (2008) The cellulosome: a natural bacterial strategy to combat biomass recalcitrance. In: Himmel ME (ed) Biomass recalcitrance. Deconstructing the plant cell wall for bioenergy. Blackwell Publishing, USA, pp 407–435

Bayer EA, Belaich JP, Shoham Y, Lamed R (2004) The cellulosomes: multienzyme machines for degradation of plant cell wall polysaccharides. Annu Rev Microbiol 58:521–554

Beg QK, Kapoor M, Mahajan L, Hoondal GS (2001) Microbial xylanases and their industrial applications: a review. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 56:326–338

Benko Z, Siika-aho M, Viikari L, Réczey K (2008) Evaluation of the role of xyloglucanase in the enzymatic hydrolysis of lignocellulosic substrates. Enzyme Microb Technol 43:109–114

Berlin A, Gilkes N, Kilburnn D, Bura R, Markov A, Okunev O, Gusarov A, Maximenko V, Gregg D, Saddler J (2005) Evaluation of novel fungal cellulase prepration for ability to hydrolyze softwood substrate-evidence of the role of accessory enzymes. Enzyme Microb Technol 37:175–184

Berlin AB, Maximenko V, Gilkes N, Saddler J (2006) Optimization of enzymes complexes for lignocellulose hydrolysis. Biotechnol Bioeng 97(2):287–296

Bourbonnais R, Paice MG (1990) Oxidation of non-phenolic substrates. An expanded role for laccase in lignin biodegradation. FEBS Lett 267:99–102

Carvalheiro F, Duarte LC, Gírio FM (2008) Hemicellulose biorefineries: a review on biomass pretreatments. J Sci Ind Res 67:849–864

Chandra RP, Bura R, Mabee WE, Berlin A, Pan X, Saddler JN (2007) Substrate pretreatment: the key to effective enzymatic hydrolysis of lignocellulosics? Adv Biochem Eng/Biotechnol 108:67–93

Cosgrove DJ (2000) Loosening of plant cell walls by expansins. Nature 407:321–326

Crepin VF, Faulds CB, Connerton IF (2004) Functional classification of microbial feruloyl esterases. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 63:647–652

Dahlman O, Jacobs A, Berg J (2003) Molecular properties of hemicelluloses located in the surface and inner layers of hardwood and softwood pulps. Cellulose 10:325–334

Decker SR, Siika-Aho M, Viikari L (2008) Enzymatic depolymerization of plant cell wall hemicellulases. In: Himmel ME (ed) Biomass Recalcitrance. Deconstructing the Plant Cell Wall for Bioenergy. Blackwell Publishing, USA, pp 407–435

Dias AA, Freitas GS, Marques GSM, Sampaio A, Fraga IS, Rodrigues MAM, Evtuguin DV, Bezerra RMF (2010) Enzymatic saccharification of biologically pretreated wheat straw with white-rot fungi. Bioresour Technol 101:6045–6050

DOE. US Department of Energy (2003) Energy information agency. Available from: http://www.exxonmobil.com/corportae/energy_outlook.aspx

Eriksson T, Karlsson J, Tjerneld F (2002) A model explaining declining rate in hydrolysis of lignocellulose substrates with cellobiohydrolase I (Cel 7A) and endoglucanase I (Cel7B) of *Trichoderma reesei*. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 101:41–60

Esteghlalian AR, Svivastava V, Gilkes N, Gregg DJ, Saddler JN (2001) An overview of factors influencing the enzymatic hydrolysis of lignocellulosic feedstocks. In: Himmel ME, Baker W, Saddler JN (eds) Glycosyl hydrolases for biomass conversion. ACS, USA, pp 100–111

Faulds CB, Mandalari G, Curco RB, Bisignano G, Christakopoulos P, Waldron KW (2006) Synergy between xylanases from glycoside hydrolase family 10 and family 11 and a feruloyl esterase in the release of phenolic acids from cereal arabinoxylan. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 71:622–629

Foreman PK, Brown D, Dankmeyer L, Dean R, Diener S, Dunn-Coleman NS, Goedegebuur F, Houfek TD, England GJ, Kelley AS, Meerman HJ, Mitchell T, Mitchinson C, Olivares HA, Teunissen PJ, Yao J, Ward M (2003) Transcriptional regulation of biomass-degrading enzymes in the filamentous fungus *Trichoderma reesei*. J Biol Chem 278:31988–31997

García-Aparicio MP, Ballesteros I, González A, Oliva JM, Ballesteros M, Negro MJ (2006) Effect of inhibitors release during steam-explosion pretreatement of barley straw on enzymatic hydrolysis. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 129:278–288

García-Aparicio MP, Ballesteros M, Manzanares P, Ballesteros I, González A, Negro MJ (2007) Xylanase contribution to the efficiency of cellulose enzymatic hydrolysis of barley straw. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 136–140:353–366

Gírio FM, Fonseca C, Carvalheiro F, Duarte LC, Marques S, Bogel-Lukasik R (2010) Hemicelluloses for fuel ethanol: a review. Bioresour Technol 101:4775–4800

Guillén F, Martínez AT, Martínez MJ (1992) Substrate specificity and properties of the aryl-alcohol oxidase from the ligninolytic fungus *Pleurotus eryngii*. Eur J Biochem 209:603–611

Guillén F, Martínez MJ, Muñoz C, Martínez AT (1997) Quinone redox cycling in the ligninolytic fungus *Pleurotus eryngii* leading to extracellular production of superoxide anion radical. Arch Biochem Biophys 339:190–199

Hahn-Hägerdal B, Karhumaa K, Fonseca C, Spencer-Martins I, Gorwa-Grauslund MF (2007) Towards industrial pentose-fermenting yeast strains. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 74:937–953

Harris PV, Welner D, McFarland KC, Re E, Navarro Poulsen JC, Brown K, Salbo R, Ding H, Vlasenko E, Merino S, Xu F, Cherry J, Larsen S, Lo Leggio L (2010) Stimulation of lignocellulosic biomass hydrolysis by proteins of glycoside hydrolase family 61: structure and function of a large, enigmatic family. Biochemistry 49:3305–3316

Hendriks ATWM, Zeeman G (2009) Pretreatments to enhance the digestibility of lignocellulosic biomass. Bioresour Technol 100:10–18

Henrissat B, Davies G (1997) Structural and sequences-based classification of glycoside hydrolases. Curr Opin Struct Biol 7:637–644

Himmel ME, Andey WS, Baker JO, Nieves RA, Thomas SR (1996) Cellulases: structure, function, and applications. In: Wyman CE (ed) Handbook on bioethanol production and utilization. Taylor and Francis, UK, pp 143–161

Himmel ME, Ding SY, Johnson DK, Adney WS, Nimlos MR, Brady JW, Foust TD (2007) Biomass recalcitrance: engineering plants and enzymes for biofuels production. Science 315:804–807

Himmel ME, Picataggio SK (2008) Our challenge is to acquire deeper understanding of biomass recalcitrance and conversion. In: Himmel ME (ed) Biomass recalcitrance. Deconstructing the Plant Cell Wall for Bioenergy. Blackwell Publishing, USA, pp 1–6

Hodge DB, Karim MN, Schell DJ, McMillan JD (2009) Model-based fed-batch for high-solids enzymatic cellulose hydrolysis. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 152(1):88–107

Hoyer K, Galbe M, Zacchi G (2010) Effects of enzyme feeding strategy on ethanol yield in fed-batch simultaneous saccharification and fermentation of spruce at high dry matter. Biotechnol Biofuels 3:14

Hu J, Arantes V, Saddler JN (2011) The enhancement of enzymatic hydrolysis of lignocellulosic substrates by the addition of accessory enzymes such as xylanase: is it an additive or synergistic effect? Biotechnol Biofuels 4:36

Igarashi K, Uchihashi T, Koivula A, Wada M, Kimura S, Okamoto T, Penttilä M, Ando T, Samejima M (2011) Traffic jams reduce hydrolytic efficiency of cellulase on cellulose surface. Science 333:1279–1282

Jin M, Lau MW, Balan V, Dale BE (2010) Two-step SSCF to convert AFEX-treated switchgrass to ethanol using commercial enzymes and *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* 424A(LNH-ST). Bioresour Technol 101:8171–8178

Jørgensen H (2009) Effect of nutrients on fermentation of pretreated wheat straw at very high dry matter content by saccharomyces cerevisiae. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 153:44–57

Jørgensen H, Kristensen JB, Felby C (2007a) Enzymatic conversion of lignocellulose into fermentable sugars: challenges and opportunities. Biofuel Bioprod Bior 1:119–134

Jørgensen H, Olsson L (2006) Production of cellulases by *Penicillium brasilianum* IBT 20888-Effect of substrate on hydrolytic performance. Enzyme Microb Technol 38:381–390

Jørgensen H, Vibe-Pedersen J, Larsen J, Felby C (2007b) Liquefaction of lignocellulose at high-solids concentrations. Biotechnol Bioeng 96:862–870

Juhász T, Szengyel Z, Réczey K, Siika-Aho M, Viikari L (2005) Characterization of cellulases and hemicellulases produced by *Trichoderma reesei* on various carbon sources. Process Biochem 40:3519–3525

Jurado M, Prieto A, Martínez-Alcalá A, Martínez AT, Martínez MJ (2009) Laccase detoxification of steam-exploded wheat straw for second generation bioethanol. Bioresour Technol 100:6378–6384

Jönsson JL, Palmqvist E, Nilvebrant N-O, Hahn-Hägerdal B (1998) Detoxification of wood hydrolysates with laccase and peroxidase from the white-rot fungus *Trametes versicolor*. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 49:691–697

Kalyani D, Dhiman SS, Kim H, Jeya M, Kim I-W, Lee J-K (2012) Characterization of a novel laccase from the isolated *Coltricia perennis* and its application to detoxification of biomass. Process Biochem 47:671–678

Kersten PJ (1990) Glyoxal oxidase of *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*: Its characterization and activation by lignin peroxidase. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 87:2936–2940

Kolb M, Sieber V, Amann M, Faulstich M, Schieder D (2012) Removal of monomer delignification products by laccase from *Trametes versicolor*. Bioresourc Technol 104:298–304

Kovacs K, Macrelli S, Szakacs G, Zacchi G (2009) Enzymatic hydrolysis of steam-pretreated lignocellulosic materials with *Trichoderma viride* enzymes produced in-house. Biotechnol Biofuels 2:14

Kristensen JB, Felby C, Jørgensen H (2009) Yield-determining factors in high-solids enzymatic hydrolysis of lignocellulose. Biotechnol Biofuels 2(1):11

Kubicek CP (1992) The cellulase proteins of *Trichoderma reesei*: structure, multiplicity, mode of action and regulation of formation. Adva Biochem Eng 45:1–27

Kuhar S, Nair LM, Kuhad RC (2008) Pretreatment of lignocellulosic material with fungi capable of higher lignin degradation and lower carbohydrate degradation improves substrate acid hydrolysis and the eventual conversion to ethanol. Can J Microbiol 54:305–313

Kumar P, Barrett DM, Delwiche MJ, Stroeve P (2009) Methods for pretreatment of lignocellulosic biomass for efficient hydrolysis and biofuel production. Ind Eng Chem Res 48:3713–3729

Kumar R, Wyman CE (2008) Effect of enzyme supplementation at moderate cellulase loadings on initial glucose and xylose release from corn stover solids pretreated by leading technologies. Biotechnol Bioeng 102(2):457–467

Kumar R, Wyman CE (2009a) Does change in accessibility with conversion depend on both the substrate and pretreatment technology? Bioresour Technol 100:4193–4202

Kumar R, Wyman CE (2009b) Effect of xylanase supplementation of cellulase on digestion of corn stover solids prepared by leading pretreatment technologies. Bioresour Technol 100:4203–4213

Kumar R, Wyman CE (2009c) Effects of cellulase and xylanase enzymes on the deconstruction of solids from pretreatment of poplar by leading technologies. Biotechnol Prog 25:302–314

Kurasin M, Väljamäe P (2011) Processivity of cellobiohydrolases is limited by the substrate. J Biol Chem 286:169–177

Laureano-Perez L, Teymouri F, Alizadeh H, Dale BE (2005) Understanding factors that limit enzymatic hydrolysis of biomass. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 121:1081–1099

Larsson S, Cassland P, Jönsson LF (2001) Development of a *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* strain with enhanced resistance to phenolic compounds inhibitors in lignocellulose hydrolysates by heterologous expression of laccase. Appl Environ Microbiol 67:1163–1170

Lu Y, Wang Y, Xu G, Chu J, Zhuang Y, Zhang S (2010) Influence of high solid concentration on enzymatic hydrolysis and fermentation of steam-exploded corn stover biomass. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 160:360–369

Mansfield SD, Mooney C, Saddler JN (1999) Substrate and enzyme characteristics that limit cellulose hydrolysis. Biotechnol Prog 15:804–816

Manzanares P, Negro MJ, Oliva JM, Saéz F, Ballesteros I, Ballesteros M, Cara C, Castro E, Ruiz E (2011) Different process configurations for bioethanol production from pretreated olive pruning biomass. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 86(6):881–887

Martínez AT (2002) Molecular biology and structure-function of lignin-degrading heme peroxidases. Enz Microb Technol 30:425–444

Martínez AT, Speranza M, Ruiz-Dueñas FJ, Ferreira P, Camarero S, Guillén F, Martínez MJ, Gutiérrez A, del Río JC (2005) Biodegradation of lignocellulosics: Microbiological, chemical and enzymatic aspects of fungal attack to lignin. Intern Microbiol 8:195–204

Martinez D, Berka RM, Henrissat B, Saloheimo M, Arvas M, Baker SE, Chapman J, Chertkov O, Coutinho PM, Cullen D, Danchin EGJ, Grigoriev IV, Harris P, Jackson M, Kubicek CP, Han CS, Ho I, Larrondo LF, De Leon AL, Magnuson JK, Merino S, Misra M, Nelson B, Putnam N, Robbertse B, Salamov AA, Schmoll M, Terry A, Thayer N, Westerholm-Parvinen A, Schoch CL, Yao J, Barabote R, Nelson MA, Detter C, Bruce D, Kuske CR, Xie G, Richardson P, Rokhsar DS, Lucas SM, Rubin EM, Dunn-Coleman N, Ward M, Brettin TS (2008) Genome sequencing and analysis of the biomass-degrading fungus *Trichoderma reesei* (syn. *Hypocrea jecorina*). Nature Biotechnol 26:553–560

Mayer AM, Staples RC (2002) Laccase: new functions for an old enzyme. Phytochem 60:551–565

Medve J, Karlsson J, Lee D, Tjerneld F (1998) Hydrolysis of microcrystalline cellulose by cellobiohydrolase I and endoglucanase II from *Trichoderma reesei*: adsorption, sugar production pattern, and synergism of the enzymes. Biotechnol Bioeng 59(5):621–634

Merino ST, Cherry J (2007) Progress and challenges in enzyme development for biomass utilization. Adv Biochem Eng Biotechnol 108:95–120

Moilanen U, Kellock M, Galkin S, Viikari L (2011) The laccase-catalyzed modification of lignin for enymatic hydrolysis. Enzyme Microb Technol 49:492–498

Moreno AD, Ibarra D, Fernández JL, Ballesteros M (2012) Different laccase detoxification strategies for ethanol production from lignocellulosic biomass by the thermotolerant yeast *Kluyveromyces marxianus* CECT 10875. Bioresour Technol 106:101–109

Mukhopadhyay M, Kuila A, Tuli D, Banerjee R (2011) Enzymatic depolymerization of Ricinus communis, a potential lignocellulosic for improved saccharification. Biomass Bioenerg 35:3584–3591

Mosier N, Wyman CE, Dale BD, Elander RT, Lee YY, Holtzapple M, Ladisch CM (2005) Features of promising technologies for pretreatment of lignocellulosic biomass. Bioresour Technol 96:673–686

Numan MT, Bhosle NB (2006) Alpha-L-arabinofuranosidases: the potential applications in biotechnology. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 33:247–260

Öhgren K, Rudolf A, Galbe M, Zacchi G (2006) Fuel ethanol production from steam-pretreated corn stover using SSF at higher dry matter content. Biomass Bioenerg 30:863–869

Oliva JM, Ballesteros I, Negro MJ, Manzanares P, Cabañas A, Ballesteros M (2004) Effect of binary combinations of selected toxic compounds on growth and fermentation of *Kluyveromyces marxianus*. Biotechnol Prog 20:715–720

Oliva JM, Saez F, Ballesteros I, González A, Negro MJ, Manzanares P, Ballesteros M (2003) Effect of lignocellulosic degradation compounds in the steam explosion pretreatment on ethanol fermentation by thermotolerant yeast *Kluyveromyces marxianus*. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 105–108:141–153

Olsson L, Soerensen HR, Dam BP, Christensen H, Krogh KM, Meyer AS (2006) Separate and simultaneous enzymatic hydrolysis and fermentation of wheat hemicellulose with recombinant xylose utilizing *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 129–132:117–129

Olsson L, Jørgensen H, Krogh KBR, Roca C (2004) Bioethanol production from lignocellulosic material. In: Dumitriu S (ed) Polysaccharides: structural diversity and functional versatility. CRC Press, USA, pp 957–993

Palmqvist E, Hahn-Hägerdal B (2000a) Fermentation of lignocellulosic hydrolysates. II: inhibitors and mechanism of inhibition. Bioresour Technol 74:25–33

Palmqvist E, Hahn-Hägerdal B (2000b) Fermentation of lignocellulosic hydrolysates. I: inhibition and detoxification. Bioresour Technol 74:17–24

Palonen H, Viikari L (2004) Role of oxidative enzymatic treatments on enzymatic hydrolysis of softwood. Biotechnol Bioeng 86:550–557

Pan XJ, Gilkes N, Saddler JN (2006) Effect of acetyl groups on enzymatic hydrolysis of cellulosic substrates. Olzforschung 60:398–401

Pan X, Xie D, Gilkes N, Gregg DJ, Saddler JN (2005) Strategies to enhance the enzymatic hydrolysis of pretreated softwood with high residual lignin content. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 124:1069–1079

Panagiotou G, Olsson L (2007) Effect of compounds released during pre-treatment of wheat straw on microbial growth and enzymatic hydrolysis rates. Biotechnol Bioeng 96:250–258

Pérez JA, Ballesteros I, Ballesteros M, Sáez F, Negro MJ, Manzanares P (2008) Optimizing liquid hot water pretreatment conditions to enhance sugar recovery from wheat straw for fuel-ethanol production. Fuel 87:3640–3647

Persson I, Tjerneld F, Hahn-Hägerdal B (1991) Fungal cellulolytic enzyme production: a review. Process Biochem 26:65–74

Polizeli ML, Rizzatti AC, Monti R, Terenzi HF, Jorge JA, Amorim DS (2005) Xylanases from fungi: properties and indusrtial applications. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 67(5):577–591

Poutanen K, Puls J (1989) The xylanolytic enzyme system of *Trichoderma reesei*. In: Lewis G, Paice M (eds) Biogenesis and biodegradation of plant cell wall polymers. ACS, USA, pp 630–640

Qi B, Chen X, Su Y, Wan Y (2011) Enzyme adsorption and recycling during hydrolysis of wheat straw lignocellulose. Bioresour Technol 102:2881–2889

Qi B, Luo J, Chen G, Chen X, Wan Y (2012) Application of ultrafiltration and nanofiltration for recycling cellulase and concentrating glucose from enzymatic hydrolyzate of steam exploded wheat straw. Bioresour Technol 104:466–472

Qing Q, Yang B, Wyman CE (2010) Xylooligomers are strong inhibitors of cellulose hydrolysis by enzymes. Bioresour Technol 101:9624–9630

Ragauskas AJ, Williams CK, Davison BH, Britovsek G, Cairney J, Eckert CA, Frederick WJ, Hallett JP, Leak DJ, Liotta CL, Mielenz JR, Murphy R, Templer R, Tschaplinski T (2006) The path forward for biofuels and biomaterials. Science 311:484–489

Raweesri P, Riangrungrojana P, Pinphanichakarn P (2008) Alpha-L-arabinofuranosidase from *Streptomyces* sp. PC22: purification, characterization and its synergistic action with xylanolytic enzymes in the degradation of xylan and agricultural residues. Bioresour Technol 99:8981–8986

Rémond C, Aubry N, Crônier D, Noël S, Martel F, Roge B, Rakotoarivonina H, Debeire P, Chabbert B (2010) Combination of ammonia and xylanase pretreatments: impact on enzymatic xylan and cellulose recovery from wheat straw. Bioresour Technol 101:6712–6717

Rosgaard L, Andric P, Dam-Johansen K, Pedersen S, Meyer AS (2007) Effects of substrate loading on enzymatic hydrolysis and viscosity of pretreated barley straw. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 143:27–40

Ruiz-Dueñas FJ, Martínez AT (2009) Microbial degradation of lignin: How a bulky recalcitrant polymer is efficiently recycled in nature and how we can take advantage of this. Microbial Biotechnol 2:164–177

Ruiz-Dueñas FJ, Martínez MJ, Martínez AT (1999) Molecular characterization of a novel peroxidise isolated from the ligninolytic fungus *Pleurotus eryngii*. Mol Microbiol 31:223–235

Saha BC (2000) Alpha-L-arabinofuranosidases: biochemistry, molecular biology and application in biotechnology. Biotechnol Adv 18:403–423

Saha BC (2003) Hemicellulose bioconversion. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 30:279–291

Saloheimo M, Paloheimo M, Hakola S, Pere J, Swanson B, Nyyssönen E, Bhatia A, Ward M, Penttilä M (2002) Swollenin, a *Trichoderma reesei* protein with sequence with sequence

similary to the plant expansins, exhibits disruption activity on cellulosic materials. Eur J Biochem 269:4202–4211

Salvachúa D, Prieto A, López-Abelairas M, Lu-Chau T, Martínez AT, Martínez MJ (2011) Fungal pretreatment: An alternative in second-generation ethanol from wheat straw. Bioresour Technol 102:7500–7506

Sánchez ÓJ, Cardona CA (2008) Trends in biotechnological production of fuel ethanol from different feedstocks. Bioresour Technol 99:5270–5295

Selig MJ, Adney WS, Himmel ME, Decker SR (2009) The impact of cell wall acetylation on corn stover hydrolysis by cellulolytic and xylanolytic enzymes. Cellulose 16:711–722

Selig MJ, Knoshaug EP, Adney WS, Himmel ME, Decker SR (2008) Synergistic enhancement of cellobiohydrolase performance on pretreated corn stover by addition of xylanase and esterase activities. Bioresour Technol 99:4997–5005

Sipos B, Benkö Z, Dienes D, Réczey K, Viikari L, Siika-Aho M (2010) Characterisation of specific activities and hydrolytic properties of cell-wall-degrading enzymes produced by *Trichoderma reesei* Rut C30 on different carbon sources. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 161:347–364

Sipos B, Szilágyi M, Sebestyén Z, Perazzini R, Dienes D, Jakab E, Crestini C, Réczey K (2011) Mechanism of the positive effect of poly(ethylene glycol) addition in enzymatic hydrolysis of steam pretreated lignocelluloses. C R Biol 334:812–823

Sun Y, Cheng J (2002) Hydrolysis of lignocellulosic materials for ethanol production: a review. Bioresour Technol 83:1–11

Tabka MG, Herpoël-Gimbert I, Monod F, Asther M, Sigoillot JC (2006) Enzymatic saccharification of wheat straw for bioethanol production by a combined cellulase xylanase and feruloyl esterase treatment. Enzyme Microb Tech 39:897–902

Taherzadeh MJ, Karimi K (2008) Pretreatment of lignocellulosic wastes to improve ethanol and biogas production: a review. Int J Mol Sci 9:1621–1651

Tengborg C, Galbe M, Zacchi G (2001) Reduced inhibition of enzymatic hydrolysis of steam-pretreated softwood. Enzyme Microb Tech 28:835–844

Tenkanen M, Makkonen M, Perttula M, Viikari L, Teleman A (1997) Action of *Trichoderma reesei* mannanase on galactoglucomannan in pine kraft pulp. J Biotech 57:191–204

Teter S, Xu F, Nedwin GE, Cherry (2010) Enzymes for biorefineries. In: Kamm B, Gruber PR, Kamm M (eds) Biorefineries-industrial processes and products. Wiley, USA, pp 357–383

Tomás-Pejó ME, Ballesteros M, Oliva JM, Olsson L (2010) Adaptation of the xylose fermenting yeast *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* F12 for improving ethanol production in different fed-batch SSF processes. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 37:1211–1220

Tomás-Pejó ME, Alvira P, Ballesteros M, Negro MJ (2011) Pretreatment technologies for lignocellulose-to-bioethanol conversion. In: Larroche C, Ricke SC, Dussap CG, Gnansounou E, Pandey A (eds) Biofuels: Alternative feedstocks and conversion processes. Academic, USA, pp 149–176

Tu M, Chandra RP, Saddler JN (2007) Evaluating the distribution of cellulases and the recycling of free cellulases during the hydrolysis of lignocellulosic substrates. Biotechnol Prog 23:398–406

Tu M, Saddler JN (2010) Potential enzyme cost reduction with the addition of surfactant during the hydrolysis of pretreated softwood. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 161:274–287

Varga E, Klinke HB, Réczey K, Thomsen AB (2004) High solid simultaneous saccharification and fermentation of wet oxidized corn stover to ethanol. Biotechnol Bioeng 88:567–574

Vries RP, Harry CMK, Charlotte HP, Jacques AEB, Jaap V (2000) Synergy between enzymes from *Aspergillus* involved in the degradation of plant cell wall polysaccharides. Carbohyd Res 327:401–410

Wang W, Kang L, Wei H, Arora R, Lee YY (2011) Study on the decreased sugar yield in enzymatic hydrolysis of cellulosic substrate at high solid loading. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 164:1139–1149

Wilson DB (2008) Aerobic microbial cellulase systems. In: Himmel ME (ed) Biomass recalcitrance. Deconstructing the plant cell wall for bioenergy. Blackwell Publishing, USA, pp 374–392

Wyman CE, Balan V, Dale BE, Elander RT, Falls M, Hames B, Holtzapple MT, Ladisch MR, Lee YY, Mosier N, Pallapolu VR, Shi J, Thomas SR, Warner RE (2011) Comparative data on effects of leading pretreatments and enzyme loadings and formulations on sugar yields from different switchgrass sources. Bioresour Technol 102:11052–11062

Xiao Z, Zhang X, Greff DJ, Saddler JN (2004) Effects of sugar inhibition on cellulases and β-glucosidase during enzymatic hydrolysis of softwood substrates. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 113–116:1115–1126

Yang M, Li W, Liu B, Li Q, Xing J (2010) High-concentration sugars production from corn stover based on combined pretreatments and fed-batch process. Bioresour Technol 101:4884–4888

Yang B, Wyman CE (2008) Pretreatment: the key to unlocking low-cost cellulosic ethanol. Biofuel Bioprod Bior 2:26–40

Yang R, Xu S, Wang Z, Yang W (2005) Aqueous extraction of corncob xylan and production of xylooligosaccharides. LWT–Food Sci Technol 38:677–682

Yang M, Zhang A, Liu B, Li W, Xing J (2011) Improvement of cellulose conversion caused by the protection of Tween-80 on the adsorbed cellulase. Biochem Eng J 56:125–129

Zhang J, Siika-aho M, Tenkanen M, Viikari L (2011) The role of acetyl xylan esterase in solubilisation of xylan and enzymatic hydrolysis of wheat straw and giant reed. Biotechnol Biofuels 4:60

Zhang X, Qin W, Paice MG, Saddler JN (2009) High consistency enzymatic hydrolysis of hardwood substrates. Bioresour Technol 100:5890–5897

Chapter 7
Microbial Glycoside Hydrolases for Biomass Utilization in Biofuels Applications

Gashaw Mamo, Reza Faryar and Eva Nordberg Karlsson

Abstract Renewable biomass is predicted to have the potential to meet at least a quarter of the world demand for transportation fuel, but to do so both terrestrial lignocellulosic as well as marine algal resources need to be efficiently utilized. In the processes where these biomasses are converted into different types of energy carriers (such as fuel-alcohols e.g. ethanol or butanol) microbial glycoside hydrolases (GHs) have a role in the saccharification process. During saccharification polymeric carbohydrate resources (e.g. starch, cellulose or hemicellulose) are hydrolyzed into mono and oligosaccharides that can be utilized by the organism selected to ferment these carbohydrates into the desired energy-carrier. This chapter aims to shed light on different processing alternatives for the conversion of lignocellulose or algal starch into mono or oligosaccharides, and what roles the microbial GHs have as processing aids in these conversions.

7.1 Introduction to Biofuels

With the depletion of crude oil, attention has gone toward use of natural recoverable resources for production of biofuels. Public and scientific attention is also driven by factors such as the price, concern over greenhouse gas emissions, as well as support from government subsidies. In 2010, worldwide biofuel production reached 105 billion liters and provided 2.7 % of the fuels for road transport (Shrank and Farahmand 2011). Moreover, it is predicted that biofuels have the

G. Mamo · R. Faryar · E. N. Karlsson (✉)
Biotechnology Department of Chemistry, Lund University,
P.O. Box 124 SE-22100 Lund, Sweden
e-mail: Eva.Nordberg_Karlsson@biotek.lu.se

V. K. Gupta and M. G. Tuohy (eds.), *Biofuel Technologies*,
DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-34519-7_7,

potential to meet more than a quarter of world demand for transportation fuels by 2050 (Platts 2011).

A biofuel is by definition a fuel, whose energy is derived from biological carbon fixation. This includes fuels derived directly from solid biomass or fuels obtained by conversion of biomass into energy-carrying compounds such as fuel-alcohols (e.g. methanol, ethanol, and butanol), biodiesel, hydrogen, or biogas (Chandra et al. 2012). These biofuels are liquid or gaseous, and with this they meet the requirements of (a) being portable, (b) being easy to handle (they can be pumped), and (c) to burn cleanly. Bioethanol is the biofuel that today is produced in largest amounts. Ethanol production accounted for more than 80 % of the biofuel production volume (86 billion liters in 2010, of which almost 90 % were produced in the US and Brazil) (Shrank and Farahmand 2011).

Biofuels are defined as first, second or third generation, based on the type of biomass and technology used for its production (Fig. 7.1). First generation biofuels are made by sugar, starch, and vegetable oil by established technologies, and include mainly ethanol, biogas, and biodiesel. The use of first generation technology has, however, been the subject of considerable media attention and political debate to draw attention to the environmental and social impacts of producing biofuels from food crops (European Biofuels Technology Platform 2009). Second generation biofuels, include the ethanol and biogas as above, but in this case the fuels are produced from cellulosic materials (lignocellulosic feedstocks) which are more challenging to degrade into fermentable sugars for further conversion. Second generation biofuels also include other types of fuels e.g. hydrogen, other bio-alcohols, and mixed compounds (Fig. 7.1).

The lignocellulosic biomasses are not food crops or are the nonedible parts of the food crops, and demand technology developments for efficient processing. Moreover, the feedstocks should be defined as sustainable, and sustainability is for instance judged based on the availability of the feedstock, the impact on green house gas (GHG) emissions and the impact on biodiversity and land use (European Biofuels Technology Platform 2009). Recently, a third generation of biofuels has also been suggested implying the use of (macro and micro) algae as biomass (An et al. 2011). Algae can be cultured on sea or wastewater and do not require the same use of land area. Algae has to date mainly been considered for biodiesel, hydrogen, and biogas production (Demirba 2011; Aitken and Antizar-Ladislao 2012), but an emerging interest has also risen for their use in ethanol production (Demirbas 2010; Aitken and Antizar-Ladislao 2012; Harun et al. 2010). In this chapter, our focus is on the second and third generation biomass resources, and what possibilities the microbial glycoside hydrolases (GHs) give us to access and degrade the polymeric carbohydrate fibers into shorter oligo and monosaccharides fermentable by microorganisms for conversion into metabolites, which are the energy carriers of biofuels. The oil fractions used for biodiesel production have been reviewed elsewhere (see for example Stuart et al. 2010) and are not considered in this chapter.

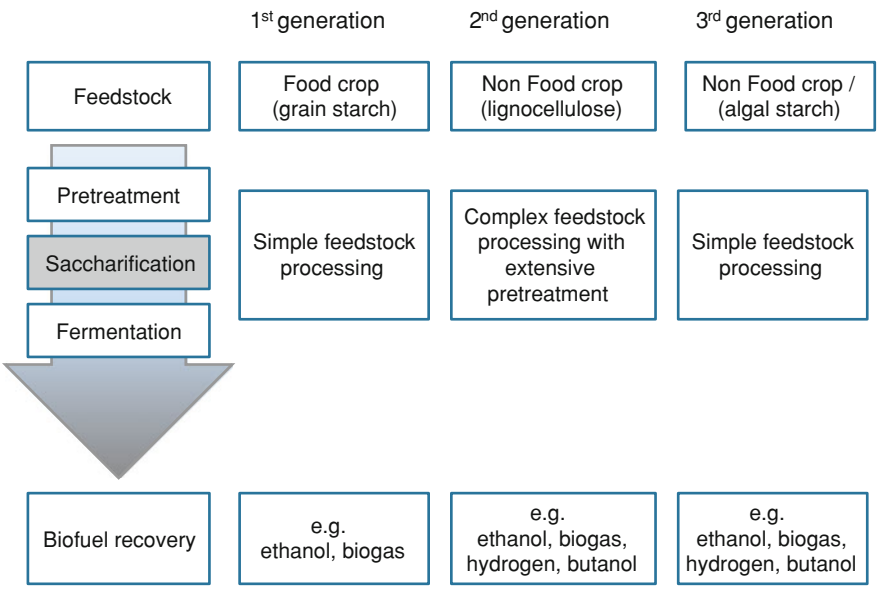


Fig. 7.1 A simple division of 1st, 2nd and 3rd generation biofuels from carbohydrates, based on feedstock and processing. GHs have a role in the saccharification step, which is the degradation of polymeric carbohydrates into smaller oligo or monosaccharides allowing fermentation into the desired biofuel. Biodiesel production is excluded from the scheme as it is based on oil and has a different overall processing scheme

7.2 Biomass for Second and Third Generation Biofuels

7.2.1 Lignocellulosic Biomass—Raw Material for Second Generation Biofuel

Lignocellulosic feedstocks consist of mainly cellulose, hemicellulose, and lignin and can be found in the cell walls of almost all plant-derived materials, such as wood and grass, agricultural residues, and municipal solid wastes. The relative composition of the lignocellulosic material, however, varies greatly, depending on source (Chandel and Singh 2011; Garrote et al. 1999; Mosier et al. 2005) and for an overview, the weight percentage of dry biomass of representative lignocellulosic materials are listed (Table 7.1).

Cellulose (β-1-4-glucan), a linear polymer of glucose units, is the major component of the lignocellulose (accounting up to 50 % of the total plant dry weight), the most abundant form of biologically fixed carbon in the biosphere, and a primary target for biofuels that are metabolites from microbial conversions (as in bioethanol production). It is hence a material of high interest to utilize well, but also a very recalcitrant material, making its utilization difficult. A major challenge is still to manage to convert lignocellulose in high yields to fermentable sugars

Table 7.1 Percent dry weight composition of some lignocellulosic feed stocks and paper wastes

Feedstock	Cellulose	Hemicellulose	Lignin
Corn stover	37.5	22.4	17.6
Corn fiber	14.3	16.8	8.4
Pine wood	46.4	8.8	29.4
Poplar	49.9	17.4	18.1
Wheat straw	38.2	21.2	23.4
Switch grass	31.0	20.4	17.6
Office paper	68.6	12.4	11.3
Newspaper	61	16	21

Extracted from Mosier et al. (2005); Chandel and Singh (2011)

(see also Sect. 7.3. Lignocellulosics requires pretreatment for degradation) and to follow this with an efficient process that reduces the oxygenated carbohydrates to fuel molecules (Chundawat et al. 2011). In the process to obtain fermentable sugars, microbial GHs are used as catalysts to obtain saccharification (hydrolysis) of different polysaccharides in the biomass (explained more in the sections below). The microbial GHs are catalysts designed to degrade complex carbohydrate polymers into mono or oligosaccharides, that allow uptake and metabolism by the microorganism selected as cell-factory for the conversion into the desired biofuel, even if the microorganism on its own is not capable to degrade the polymeric carbohydrate forms.

It has been predicted that based on available land, the energy potential of lignocellulosics worldwide allows an energy outtake of approximately 100 EJ/annum (1 EJ = 1×10^{18} J, covering woody biomass, straw, and energy crops) (Parikka 2004), which is to be compared to the global energy demand (425 EJ in 2001) (Lewis and Nocera 2006) showing that approximately one-quarter of the current demand can be obtained, and thus additional resources are needed to cover a shift from fossil to renewable resources. A means to increase the possible overall energy outtake is to also turn to biomasses from marine environments.

7.2.2 Algal Biomass—Marine Resources as Rawmaterial for Third Generation Biofuels

Algae have the possibility to provide a high-yield source of biofuels without compromising food supplies, forests, or arable land (Subhadra and Edwards 2010; John et al. 2011; An et al. 2011), thereby being an interesting complement to the lignocellulosic second generation agricultural feedstocks. Marine environments are predicted to supply approximately 50 % of global biomass (Carlsson et al. 2007; John et al. 2011) thereby significantly increasing the potential of biomass as a source of transportation fuel. Algae represent a large number of different photosynthetic species (both heterotrophic and autotrophic). The autotrophic species

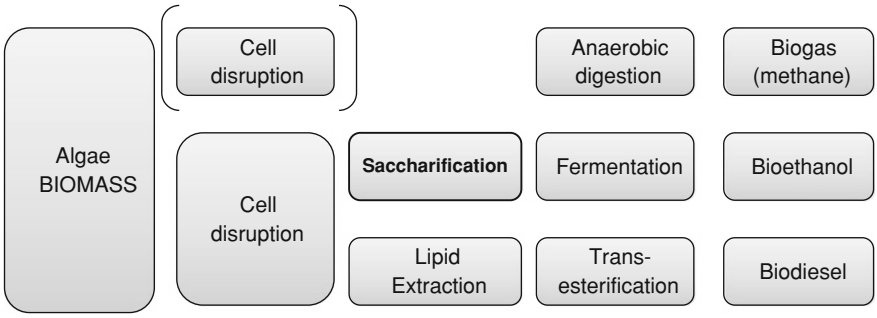


Fig. 7.2 Schematic process steps for the three fuel types that are currently considered as most suitable for energy production from algal biomass (adapted from Aitken and Antizar-Ladislao 2012). Enzymatic processing using GH is primarily predicted in the saccharification (or polysaccharide hydrolysis step, in bold) to boost fermentable sugars in the bioethanol production process

can fix inorganic carbon from CO_2 which is assimilated into for example carbohydrates (John et al. 2011), which can be converted into fermentable sugars for further conversion into selected energy carriers (Fig. 7.2). The heterotrophic species take up organic molecules and convert into mainly lipids and protein, of which the lipid fraction is of interest for biodiesel production (Fig. 7.2). Some species, called mixotrophic algae, can utilize both processes (John et al. 2011). Through these processes, carbohydrates, lipids, and proteins can be produced in a very short time, allowing as frequent harvests as in 1–10 days for some microalgae (Harun et al. 2010).

Based on size and morphology, algae are roughly grouped as macro- or microalgae. As the name implies, microalgae are microscopic frequently unicellular organisms. Macroalgae are multicellular, and are composed of structures resembling higher plants, with the difference that they are buoyant and do not need the lignin-containing structural polymer complexes that are necessary for terrestrial plants. This makes their polysaccharides easier to degrade into fermentable sugars (John et al. 2011; Chen et al. 2009). The types of polysaccharides available in the algae differ dependent on the species, but there are species shown to have both high cellulose and high starch content (Table 7.2). Use of organisms with high starch content, would allow the same type of processing of the starch as for first generation biofuels, involving use of starch degrading GHs.

7.3 Lignocellulose Requires Pretreatment for Degradation

In plant biomass, cell wall models predict cellulose microfibrils (polymers of β-1, 4-linked glucose packed by hydrogen bonds) surrounded by a matrix of hemicellulose (e.g. xylans, mannans, glucans, and xyloglucans), pectin (polymers of

Table 7.2 Carbohydrate, protein, lipid and starch content in some selected algae

Algal source	Protein (%)	Lipid (%)	Carbohydrate (%)	Starch (% of biomass after oil extraction)
Chlamydomonas C. reinhardtii	48	21	17	53 (strain UTEX90) 45 (strain UTEX2247)
Chlorella	51–58	14–22	12–17	12–37
C. vulgaris	57	2	26	*n.d.
C. pyrenidosa				
Dunaliella D. salina	57	6	32	n.d.
Scenedesmus S. obliquus	50–56	12–14	10–17	23 (strain TISTR85446)
Spirulina	n.d.	n.d.	n.d.	37–56
S. fusiforma	60–71	6–7	13–16	n.d.
S. maxima	46–63	4–9	8–14	n.d.
S. platensis				

*n.d. = not determined

From Aitken and Antizar-Ladislao (2012); John et al. (2011); Rodjaroen et al. (2007)

mainly galacturonic residues, common in the middle lamella of the cell wall), and lignin (phenyl-propanoid polymers). Unbranched hemicelluloses form hydrogen bonds with the surface of cellulose microfibrils, while branched hemicellulose form bonds (mainly ester linkages) with the phenolic acids in lignin (Chundawat et al. 2011; Sjostrom 1993). This association of cellulose, hemicellulose, pectin and lignin results in bundles, or macrofibrils formation.

Due to this physicochemical, structural, and compositional complexity cellulose is resistant to microbial as well as enzymatic digestion. Many microorganisms also lack the enzyme systems necessary for efficient degradation of the lignocellulosic material, and this is especially evident in cases, such as the conventional way of ethanol production, where a single noncellulolytic microorganism (typically *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*) is used for the conversion from carbohydrate to biofuel. Thus, it is necessary to start with a pretreatment step which reduces the crystallinity of the cellulose, removes lignin and hemicellulose, and improves the porosity of the biomass. This enhances the accessibility of cellulose to enzymes, which in turn leads to a more efficient conversion of cellulose to fermentable sugars. Over the years, an impressive number of pretreatment methods have been developed that breaks down the intertwined interaction, among others, between lignin, cellulose and hemicelluloses, and a summary of the common pretreatment methods is given in Table 7.3. The efficiency of the treatment methods varies from method to method, and depends on the type and source of the biomass treated.

For a given biomass, among the available methods, a suitable pretreatment can be selected based on: (a) process cost, (b) susceptibility of the treatment product to enzymatic hydrolysis, (c) effect of pretreatment on hemicelluloses and cellulose, (d) presence or absence of by products that inhibit enzyme activity and fermentation processes, and (e) amount and type of chemical consumption.

Table 7.3 Summary of lignocellulosic pretreatment methods

Pretreatment	Process	Principles	Notable remarks	References
Physical	Milling, chipping, grinding	Easier handling and increased surface area to volume ratio which facilitates reactivity. Decreased degree of lignocellulose crystallinity	First step in multiple pretreatment processes. High power consumption	Tassinari and Macy 1977; Cadoche and Lopez 1989; Galbe and Zacchi 2007
	Irradiation	The energy breaks the hydrogen bonds of the cellulose crystalline structure and makes it prone to enzymatic digestion	Efficient in the presence of lignin. Expensive and not convenient for large scale application	Kumakura and Kaetsu 1983; Kumakura et al. 1982
	Hydro-thermal	Uses water at high temperature and pressure that dissolves most of the lignin and hemicelluloses which in turn facilitates the hydrolysis of the cellulosic fraction	Generates acetic and other organic acids	Mosier et al. 2005; Negro et al. 2003
	Pyrolysis	Use of high temperature to disrupt the lignocelluloses	Efficient when carried out in the presence of oxygen	Shafizadeh and Bradbury 1979
Physio-chemical	Explosion e.g. steam explosion, ammonia fiber explosion, CO_2 explosion	Alters the structure of cellulosic biomass to make it more accessible. Exposes biomass to high temperature and pressure followed by a sudden pressure fall to make an explosive decomposition	Steam explosion is the most commonly used method for the pretreatment of lignocellulosic biomass	Grous et al. 1986; Brownell et al. 1986; Emmel et al. 2003; Kumar et al. 2009
Chemical	Acid	Increases the biomass porosity by removing the hemicelluloses and altering the lignin structure, and this facilitates enzymatic digestibility	Accompanied with aldehyde formation. Consumes significant energy for pretreatment and product recovery	Mosier et al. 2005; Kumar et al. 2009
	Alkali	Removes lignin, acetyl, and various uronic acid substitutions from the biomass by saponification that breaks the intermolecular ester bonds. This improves enzymatic digestibility of the biomass	Utilize lower temperatures and pressures compared to other pretreatment methods	Kassim and El-Shahed 1986; Fox et al. 1989; MacDonald et al. 1983
	Wet oxidation	Treatment of biomass in the presence oxygen/air and water at high temperature and pressure opens the crystalline structure of cellulose	All biomass fractions are affected. Hemicelluloses degrade substantially	Palonen et al. 2004; Varga et al. 2004; Martin et al. 2007
	Ozonolysis	Targets lignin degradation by attacking and cleavage of aromatic rings structures	The cellulose and hemicellulose fractions remain intact	Neely 1984; Euphrosine-Moy et al. 1991
	Solvent extraction	Use solvents to remove lignin and some hemicelluloses to facilitate enzymatic hydrolysis of lignocellulosic biomass. Often accomplished at moderately high temperature	Requires removal of the solvent from the treated biomass	Pan et al. 2005; Pan et al. 2006; Araque et al. 2007
Biological	Microbiological	Micoorganisms (often fungi) degrade lignin and hemicelluloses	Long process but low in energy consumption and requirement	Kurakake et al. 2007

7.4 Enzymatic Hydrolysis of Lignocellulose

7.4.1 Hydrolysis of Cellulose to Fermentable Sugar

Cellulose is one of the most important resources for production of the biofuel ethanol. However, the common organisms used in the production of bioethanol, *S. cerevisiae* and *Zymomonas mobilis* cannot utilize cellulose. Therefore, cellulose has to be depolymerized to a fermentable sugar (glucose) that can be utilized by these organisms to produce bioethanol. Although there are alternative chemical methods of cellulose depolymerization, the enzymatic hydrolysis is a preferred process as it results in high-quality hydrolysate (no side products) and uses mild reagents (enzymes), which is beneficial from a sustainability perspective.

The major cellulose degrading enzymes belong to the GHs. These cellulose degrading enzymes are subcategorized as (a) endo-glucanases (E.C. 3.2.1.4) enzymes that randomly attack the β-1, 4-linkages within the polymer chain and release oligosaccharides, (b) exo-glucanases or cellobiohydrolases that cleave off cellobiose either from the reducing (E.C. 3.2.1.176) or nonreducing ends (E.C. 3.2.1.91) of the chains, and (c) β-glucosidases (E.C. 3.2.1.21) which degrade smaller chain oligosaccharides releasing the terminal, nonreducing β-D-glucosyl residue (Fig. 7.3). All the cell wall degrading enzymes are classified under multiple glycoside hydrolase families (which are based on similarities in sequence and structure), showing examples of convergent evolution. Endo-glucanases are for example classified under many different GH-families, with different folds and with both retaining (GH5, 7, 12, 44, 51) and inverting (GH6, 8, 9, 45, 48, 74, 124) reaction mechanisms (see: http://www.cazy.org). The cellobiohydrolases are structurally related to endo-glucanases and the enzymes acting from the reducing end are mainly classified under GH7 and 48, while those acting from the nonreducing end are predominantly found in the inverting GH6 and 9. The β-glucosidases are classified under GH1, 3, 9, 30 and 116, of which the inverting GH9 also harbor structurally related endo-glucanases and cellobiohydrolases.

The architecture of the plant cell wall degrading enzymes varies and many of the microbial enzymes are composed of a number of modules (Mba Medie et al. 2012). The ancillary modules are often carbohydrate binding modules (CBMs), which are believed to target the enzyme (catalytic module) toward certain parts of the cell wall.

The use of endo-glucanases, exo-glucanases, and β-glucosidases in combination exhibits a synergistic effect on depolymerization of both crystalline and amorphous cellulose to the fermentable sugar glucose (van Dyk and Pletschke 2012). The commercially available GHs which are currently in use by the sector are in principle originated from fungi and cellulases account about 20 % of the total enzyme market which is estimated to be 6 billion dollar in 2012 (Mathew et al. 2008). However, a vast number of alternative enzymes exist, and many efforts have for example been put in developing methods utilizing thermostable enzymes (Turner et al. 2007), allowing processing at higher temperatures. The cost

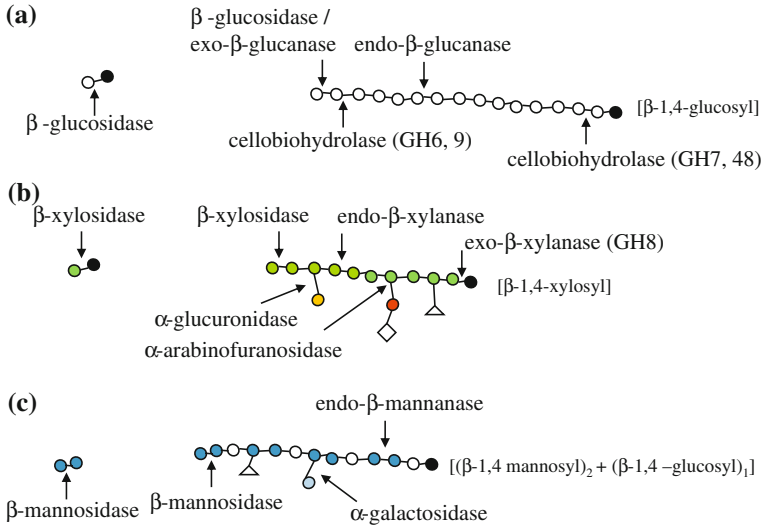


Fig. 7.3 Simplified structures and sites of enzymatic attack on polymers from lignocellulose. A cellulose chain fragment is shown (**a**), along with hypothetical fragments of the hemicelluloses xylan (**b**), and glucomannan (**c**). Sites of attack of some of the major enzymes acting on the respective material are indicated by *arrows*. The glycosidic bond type of the main chain is indicated in *brackets* to the right of each polymer fragment. Carbohydrates are indicated as *circles*, and the reducing end of each main chain is shown as a *black* circle. White = glucose, green = xylose, yellow = glucuronic acid, red = arabinose, dark blue = mannose, light blue = galactose, Acetate groups are shown as *triangles*, phenolic groups as *diagonals*, and methyl groups as *rombs*. Adapted from Turner et al. (2007)

of cellulases is still high (Cheng and Timilsina 2011) and it needs a concerted effort to bring it down to a comfortable price floor.

In addition to GHs, it is recently shown that oxidative enzymes such as cellobiose dehydrogenase and polysaccharide monooxygenases also cleave the glycosidic bonds in cellulose and play a role in its degradation (Phillips et al. 2011, Mba Medie et al. 2012). Some of these enzymes, such as the chitin-binding protein (Cbp21) or the oxidative enzymes classified under GH61 (Vaaje-Kolstad et al. 2010; Harris et al. 2010), have been shown to open up structures in crystalline polysaccharides (like cellulose and chitin) that are inaccessible by other GHs.

7.4.2 Hydrolysis of Hemicelluloses

The thin profit margin of ethanol production from lignocellulose is partly due to the utilization of only the cellulose fraction of the biomass (Gowen and Fong 2010). Thus, the utilization of hemicelluloses is expected to increase the profitability of the process, and this has initiated a remarkable degree of research

activity. As for cellulose, the utilization of hemicelluloses requires hydrolysis of the polymers into oligomeric and monomeric units. However, unlike cellulose, hemicelluloses are structurally and chemically heterogenous and in general vary from source to source (Beg et al. 2001). Both chemical and enzymatic hydrolysis processes exist that can depolymerize hemicelluloses; however, from a sustainability perspective, the enzymatic hydrolysis is preferable over the chemical route. Xylans are the most common type of hemicellulose in plants, and are heteropolysaccharides with homopolymeric backbone chains of 1, 4-linked β-D- xylopyranose units (Saha 2003; Garrote et al. 1999; Koukiekolo et al. 2005).

Xylanases that degrade this fraction of the biomass are often used in the hydrolysis of lignocellulosic biomass. Like the cellulolytic enzymes, xylanases can be divided into endo-acting xylanases (E.C. 3.2.1.8, available in GH5, 8, 10, 11, 43), exo-acting xylanase (E.C. 3.2.1.156, found in GH8) acting from the reducing end, and complemented with xylosidases (E.C. 3.2.1.37, for example in GH1, 3, 39, 43, 52, 54, 116, 120) acting from the nonreducing end (Shallom and Shoham 2003). The enzymes acting on hemicellulose are like the cellulolytic enzymes also frequently modular, composed of catalytic as well as ancillary domains (Shallom and Shoham 2003). It can also be noted that a single GH-family often includes enzymes of many different specificities. Mutagenesis studies have shown that exchange of only a few residues in the glycone binding site will change the binding preference of one monosaccharide for another (Corbett et al. 2001) and in GH-family 1 and 3 many of the glycosidases can for example hydrolyze gluco- as well as xylo-oligosaccharides (Yernool et al. 2000; Zhou et al. 2012).

Use of other hemicellulose degrading enzymes such as mannanases (EC 3.2.1.78, acting on the different mannan containing hemicelluloses, mainly classified under GH5, 26 and 113), mannosidases (EC 3.2.1.25, GH1, 2 and 5), galactosidases (EC 3.2.1.23, GH1, 2, 3, 35, 42), and arabinofuranosidases (EC 3.2.1.55, GH3, 43, 51, 54, 62) (Fig. 7.3) can together with xylanases (dependent on the biomass used) further increase the monosaccharide yield of certain materials, to obtain better conversion of hemicelluloses to their monomeric units.

Most of this work has been implemented to improve the production of ethanol, and in this field a sizable portion of the research has also been related to engineering fermentative organisms to make them utilize the monomeric pentoses and produce ethanol (Hahn-Hägerdal et al. 2007). The fermentation of pentoses to ethanol undoubtedly improves the overall production of ethanol from lignocellulosic biomass. However, the inability of naturally existing commercial ethanol producer strains has hindered its implementation. (*S. cerevisiae*, does not naturally utilize pentoses). Today, there are many metabolically engineered yeast strains that successfully produce ethanol from xylose (Matushika et al. 2008, 2009; Kuhad et al. 2011) and this will in the future improve the ethanol yield per unit mass of the lignocelluloses used and is predicted to improve the profit margin for companies involved in production of ethanol. Another field of engineering involves introduction of cellulolytic enzymes to enable cellulose degradation or use of cellulolytic microorganisms followed by modification of their ethanol production pathway, described more in the following section.

7.5 Exogenous or Endogenous Enzymes for Saccharification of Lignocellulose

The production of ethanol from biomass can be accomplished in any of three known processes. In the conventional process, the hydrolysate which is obtained from a separate hydrolysis of pre-treated biomass, is used to formulate fermentation media for production of ethanol often using *S. cerevisiae* or *Z. mobilis* (Fig. 7.4). This method is the most common process. However, it is believed that the separate processing steps made the process relatively expensive, and hence alternative methods have been developed. The process known as simultaneous saccharification and fermentation (SSF) or simultaneous saccharification and co-fermentation (SSCF) is one of the alternative approaches. In this process, the hydrolysis of the pre-treated biomass (with addition of exogenously produced cellulose degrading enzymes) and the fermentation process for production of ethanol performed simultaneously in the same reactor. However, this process requires biomass feedstock which is extensively pre-treated (Carere et al. 2008). Although extensive pretreatment is necessary to ensure easy handling and efficient enzymatic degradation of the cellulose, it is expensive. The third alternative process of ethanol production from lignocellulosic biomass is consolidated bio-processing (CBP), a system in which cellulase production, substrate hydrolysis, and fermentation is accomplished in a single process step by cellulolytic micro-organisms (with endogenous cellulose degrading enzymes) (Carere et al. 2008;

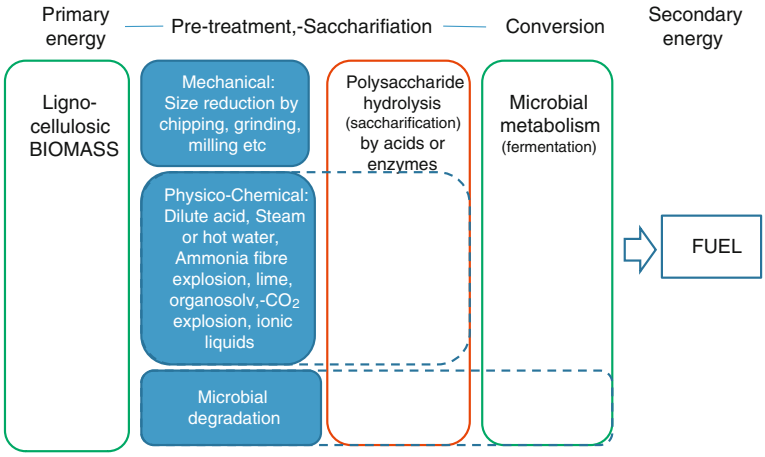


Fig. 7.4 For the conversion of recalcitrant lignocellulosic biomass the pretreatment is a necessity to gain enough efficiency in the following conversion. The different methods range from low to high pH, and novel methods are still under development. The possibilities of microorganisms to take up polymeric sugars are often limited, and hence the final pretreatment step is frequently a hydrolysis step, allowing uptake of mono and oligosaccharides in the organism (s) selected for the conversion into the energy carrier. In this step, microbial GHs have a potential

Hasunuma and Kondo 2012). Combining these three processes in a single step is expected to substantially cut down the ethanol production cost. However, despite this great promise, so far, there is not even a single microorganism that fulfills all the required traits of substrate hydrolysis and ethanol production at commercial level. This has led to the option of metabolically engineering selected microorganisms that can potentially be used for production of ethanol from biomass through (CBP) system (Hasunuma and Kondo 2012).

There are two possible approaches to engineer organisms for the CBP system, i.e., to recombinantly express the necessary cellulose degrading enzyme in a commercial ethanol producer strain such as *S. cerevisiae* (van Zyl et al. 2007; van Wyk et al. 2010) or enhance the ethanol producing capabilities of known cellulolytic microbes such as *Geobacillus*, *Clostridium* or *Fusarium*. For example *Fusarium oxysporum* is known to produce several cellulose and hemicellulose degrading enzymes and ferment both hexose (glucose) and pentose (xylose) into ethanol with reasonably good yield (1.8 mol ethanol/mole of glucose and 1 mol ethanol/mole of xylose) (Panagiotou and Christakopoulos 2004; Xiros and Christakopoulos 2009). Thus, if the ethanol yield is increased through metabolic engineering, this organism is attractive for CBP of ethanol production. To date, attempts in this direction have been made in the cellulolytic moderate thermophile *Geobacillus thermoglucosidasius*, by elimination of the lactate dehydrogenase and pyruvate formate lyase pathways together with upregulation of the expression of pyruvate dehydrogenase (Cripps et al. 2009) resulting in improved ethanol production. Unlike aerobic microorganisms which generally produce noncomplexed extracellular cellulases, some anaerobic cellulolytic microorganisms such as *Clostridium* spp. are also of interest, as these organisms degrade cellulose using a large extracellular complex of enzymes that act in a consortium known as the cellulosome (Carere et al. 2008). Cellulosomes often contain GHs, polysaccharide lyases and carboxyl esterases which are arranged around the noncatalytic protein scaffolding which consists of cohesins linked to enzymes and carbohydrate binding modules using dockerins (Ding et al. 2008; Gilbert 2007; Bayer et al. 2007; Fontes and Gilbert 2010). This complex consortium degrades not only cellulose, but also other plant biomass fractions such as hemicelluloses and pectin which makes it attractive for bioethanol production.

7.6 Use of Algal Starch for Production of Ethanol

A wide range of research aiming to utilize algae for production of energy is ongoing. Like plant biomass, the algal biomass contains carbohydrates that can be used for production of ethanol through fermentation (Goh and Lee 2010; Brennan and Owende 2010). Starch has been the most ideal substrate for production of ethanol. However, the starch used in conventional fermentation comes from grains and this created a competing demand between food and energy production and hence not favored from social, economical, and political stands. The use of starch from

nonfood sources alleviates the problem emerged from the fierce competition between food and energy production. Different algal genera such as *Chlorella, Glacilaria*, *Spirulina*, *Prymnesium*, *Ulva* etc. are known to accumulate starch (Zemke-White and Clements 1999) (Table 7.2), which can be used for bioethanol production the same way grain starch is being used. For hydrolysis of the starch, different enzymes from the α-amylase superfamily (Fig. 7.5) are utilized. The family consists of sequence-related retaining enzymes (classified under GH13, 70 and 77)

If the algal starch is considered for ethanol production, it needs to be gelatinized, and enzymatically liquefied and saccharified as in the conventional grain starch processing for ethanol production (Turner et al. 2007). In liquefaction, thermostable α-amylase (EC 3.2.1.1) is used to obtain oligosaccharides, followed by saccharification using *β*-amylase (EC 3.2.1.2) to obtain maltose or glucoamylase (EC 3.2.1.3) to obtain glucose. The efficiency of the saccharification can also be increased by adding debranching enzyme (or pullulanase, EC 3.2.1.41). Recently, it has also been shown that presence of cyclodextrins [produced by cyclodextrin glycosyltransferase (CGTases EC 2.4.1.19)] can increase the ethanol tolerance of e.g. *S. cerevisiae* in the following fermentation step (Liang et al. 2011).

However, gelatinization of starch is an energy intensive process and there has been a growing interest to decrease the energy consumption of starch processing.

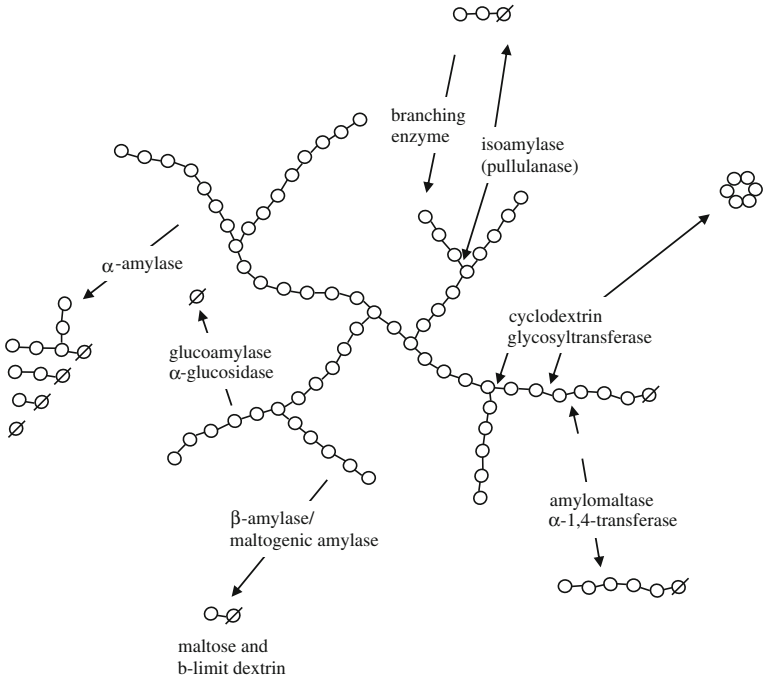


Fig. 7.5 Enzymatic attack on part of a hypothetical amylopectin molecule. Circles are glucose molecules and circles with a line through represents a reducing glucose molecule. Adapted from Turner et al. (2007)

The high temperature-cooking of starch (at 140–180 °C) which is necessary to disrupt the starch granules increases the ethanol production cost. Direct grain raw starch saccharification is one possible alternative to achieve a reduction in the energy consumption of the process (Robertson et al. 2006). Indeed, the use of low temperature-cooking fermentation systems has been tried and it succeeded in reducing the energy consumption significantly (Matsumoto et al. 1982, Shigechi et al. 2000). However, raw starch is known to be resistant to enzymatic hydrolysis and this has limited its application. Interestingly, algal raw starch is known to degrade efficiently compared to raw starch coming from food grade cultivars (Meeuse and Smith 1962).

7.7 Conclusion

Biofuel production from renewables requires use of lignocellulosic biomass as well as algal biomass to allow large production volumes. This requires hydrolysis of lignocellulose as well as algal starch. For starch processing, enzymatic technologies are developed and in addition a number of enzyme mixes are available. Lignocellulose hydrolysis is more complex, but the understanding is progressing and current research shows that hydrolysis is stimulated by interplay with hydrolyzing enzymes (like the microbial GHs) and oxidizing enzymes. A question for the future is if use of exogenous enzymes is economically feasible, or if endogenous enzymes in engineered organisms for high production are more desired for future biofuel production systems. The advantage using exogenous enzymes is that saccharification is general and can in a following step be used for different fermentation processes (using different microorganisms, and for production of different types of energy carriers). Endogenous enzymes can, however, be a promising alternative when developing efficient organisms for a single process. In the future, it is likely that both strategies will be in use for different purposes.

Acknowledgements Financial support from the Swedish research council Formas (project 243-2008-2196) and (229-2009-1527, for the collaborative research program SureTech) and the EU FP7 research-program AMYLOMICS is greatly appreciated.

References

Aitken D, Antizar-Ladislao B (2012) Achieving green solution: limitations and focus points for sustainable algal fuels. Energies 5:1613–1647

An H, Wilhelm WE, Searcy SW (2011) Biofuel and petroleum-based supply chain research: a literature review. Biomass Bioenergy 35:3763–3774

Araque E, Parra C, Freer J, Contreras D, Rodriguez J, Mendonca R, Baeza J (2007) Evaluation of organosolv pretreatment for the conversion of *Pinus radiata* D. Don to ethanol. Enzyme Microb Technol 43:214–219

Bayer EA, Lamed R, Himmel ME (2007) The potential of cellulases and cellulosomes for cellulosic waste management. Curr Opinion Biotechnol 18:237–245
Beg QK, Kapoor M, Mahajan L, Hoondal GS (2001) Microbial xylanases and their industrial applications: a review. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 56:326–338
Brennan L, Owende P (2010) Biofuels from microalgae—a review of technologies for production, processing, and extractions of biofuels and co-products. Renew Sustain Energy Rev 14:557–577
Brownell HH, Yu EKC, Saddler JN (1986) Steam explosion pretreatment of wood: effect of chip size, acid, moisture content, and pressure drop. Biotechnol Bioeng 28:792–801
Cadoche L, Lopez GD (1989) Assessment of size reduction as a preliminary step in the production of ethanol from lignocellulosic wastes. Biol Wastes 30:153–157
Carere CR, Sparling R, Cicek N, Levin DB (2008) Third generation biofuels via direct cellulose fermentation. Int J Mol Sci 9:1342–1360
Carlsson AS, vanBeilen J, Moller R, Clayton D (2007) Micro- and macro-algae: utility for industrial applications. In: Bowles (ed) Outputs from the EPOBIO project, CPL press, Berks, UK
Chandel AK, Singh OM (2011) Weedy lignocellulosic feedstock and microbial metabolic engineering. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 89:1289–1303
Chandra R, Takeuchi H, Hasegawa T (2012) Methane production from lignocellulosic agricultural crop wastes: a review in context to second generation of biofuel production. Renew Sustain Energy Rev 16:1462–1476
Chen S, Min M, Chen Y, Wang L, Li Y, Chen Q, Wang C, Wan Y, Wang X, Cheng Y, Deng S, Hennessy K, Lin X, Liu Y, Wang Y, Martinez B, Ruan R (2009) Review of the biological and engineering aspects of algae to fuels approach. Int J Agric Biol Eng 2:1–30
Cheng JJ, Timilsina GR (2011) Status and barriers of advanced biofuel technologies: a review. Renewable Energy 36:3541–3549
Chundawat SPS, Beckham GT, Himmel ME, Dale BE (2011) Deconstruction of lignocellulosic biomass to fuels and Chemicals. Annu Rev Chem Biomol Eng 2:121–145
Corbett K, Fordham-Skelton AP, Gatehouse JA, Davis BG (2001) Tailoring the substrate specificity of the β-glycosidase from the thermophilic archaeon *Sulfolobus solfataricus*. FEBS Lett 509:355–360
Cripps RE, Eley K, Leak DJ, Rudd B, Taylor M, Todd M, Boakes S, Martin S, Atkinson T (2009) Metabolic engineeringof *Geobacillus thermoglucosidasius* for highyield ethanol production. Met Eng 11:398–408
Demirbas MF (2011) Biofuels from algae for sustainable development. Appl Energy 88:3473–3480
Demirbas A (2010) Use of algae as biofuel sources. Energy Conv Manag 51:2738–2749
Ding SY, Xu Q, Crowley M, Zeng Y, Nimlos M, Lamed R, Bayer EA, Himmel ME (2008) A biophysical perspective on the cellulosome: new opportunities for biomass conversion. Curr Opin Biotechnol 19:218–227
Emmel A, Mathias AL, Wypych F, Ramos LP (2003) Fractionation of *Eucalyptus grandis* chips by dilute acid- catalysed steam explosion. Biores Technol. 86:105–115
Euphrosine-Moy V, Lasry T, Bes RS, Molinier J, Mathieu J (1991) Degradation of poplar lignin with ozone. Ozone Sci Eng 13:239–248
European Biofuels Technology Platform (2009) Biofuel Production (http://www.biofuelstp.eu/fuelproduction.html, accessed 2012-06-26)
Fontes CM, Gilbert HJ (2010) Cellulosomes: highly efficient nanomachines designed to deconstruct plant cell wall complex carbohydrates. Ann Rev Biochem 79:655–681
Fox DJ, Gray PP, Dunn NW, Warwick LM (1989) Comparison of alkali and steam (acid) pretreatments of lignocellulosic materials to increase enzymic susceptibility: evaluation under optimized pretreatment conditions. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 44:135–146
Galbe M, Zacchi G (2007) Pretreatment of lignocellulosic materials for efficient bioethanol production. Adv Biochem Eng/Biotechnol 108:41–65
Garrote G, Dominguez H, Parajo JC (1999) Hydrothermal processing of lignocellulosic materials. Holz Als Roh-Und Werkstoff 57:191–202

Gilbert HJ (2007) Cellulosomes: microbial nanomachines that display plasticity in quaternary structure. Mol Microbiol 63:1568–1576

Goh CS, Lee KT (2010) A visionary and conceptual macroalgae-based third-generation bioethanol (TGB) biorefinery in Sabah, Malaysia as an underlay for renewable and sustainabledevelopment. Renew Sustain Energy Rev 14:842–848

Gowen CM, Fong SS (2010) Exploring biodiversity for cellulosic biofuel production. Chem Biodivers 7:1086–1097

Grous WR, Converse AO, Grethlein HE (1986) Effect of steam explosion pretreatment on pore size and enzymatic hydrolysis of poplar. Enzyme Microb Technol 8:274–280

Hahn-Hägerdal B, Karhumaa K, Fonseca C, Spencer-Martins I, Gorwa-Grauslund MF (2007) Towards industrial pentose-fermenting yeast strains. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 74:937–953

Harris P-V, Welner D, McFarland K-C, Re E, Navarro Poulsen J-C, Brown K, Salbo R, Ding H, Vlasenko E, Merino S, Xu F, Cherry J, Larsen S, Lo Leggio L (2010) Stimulation of lignocellulosic biomass hydrolysis by proteins of glycoside hydrolase family 61: structure and function of a large, enigmatic family. Biochemistry 49:3305–3316

Harun R, Danquah MK, Forde GM (2010) Micoralgal biomass as a fermentation feedstock for bioethanol production. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 85:199–203

Hasunuma T, Kondo A (2012) Consolidated bioprocessing and simultaneous saccharification and fermentation of lignocellulose to ethanol with thermotolerant yeast strains. Process Biochem 47:1287–1294

John RP, Anisha GS, Nampoothiri KM, Pandey A (2011) Micor and macroalgal biomass: a renewable source for bioethanol. Biores Technol 102:186–193

Kassim EA, El-Shahed AS (1986) Enzymatic and chemical hydrolysis of certain cellulosic materials. Agricult Wastes 17:229–233

Kuhad RC, Gupta R, Khasa YP, Singh A, Zhang Y-HP (2011) Bioethanol production from pentose sugars: current status and future prospects. Renew Sustain Energy Rev 15:4950–4962

Kumakura M, Kaetsu I (1983) Effect of radiation pretreatment of bagasse on enzymatic and acid hydrolysis. Biomass 3:199–208

Kumakura M, Kojima T, Kaetsu I (1982) Pretreatment of lignocellulosic wastes by combination of irradiation and mechanical crushing. Biomass 2:299–308

Kumar P, Barrett DM, Delwiche MJ, Stroeve P (2009) Methods for pretreatment of lignocellulosic biomass for efficient hydrolysis and biofuel production. Ind Eng Chem Res 48:3713–3729

Kurakake M, Ide N, Komaki T (2007) Biological pretreatment with two bacterial strains for enzymatic hydrolysis of office paper. Curr Microbiol 54: 424–428

Koukiekolo R, Cho H-Y, Kosugi A, Inui M, Yukawa H, Doi RH (2005) Degradation of corn fiber by *Clostridium cellulovorans* cellulases and hemicellulases and contribution of scaffolding protein CbpA. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:3504–3511

Lewis NS, Nocera DG (2006) Powering the planet: chemical challenges in solar energy utilization. PNAS 103:15729–15735

Liang Q, Wang Q, Gao C, Wang Z, Qi Q (2011) The effect of cyclodextrins on the ethanol tolerance of microorganisms suggests potential application. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 38:753–756

MacDonald DG, Bakhshi NN, Mathews JP, Roychowdhurry A, Bajpai P, Moo-Young M (1983) Alkali treatment of corn stover to improve sugar production by enzymatic hydrolysis. Biotechnol Bioeng 25:2067–2076

Martin C, Klinke HB, Thomsen AB (2007) Wet oxidation as a pretreatment method for enhancing the enzymatic convertibility of sugarcane bagasse. Enzyme Microb Technol 40:426–432

Mathew GM, Sukumaran RK, Singhania RR, Pandey A (2008) Progress in research on fungal cellulases for lignocellulose degradation. J Sci Ind Res 67:898–907

Matsumoto N, Fukushi O, Miyanaga M, Kakihara K, Nakajima E, Yoshizumi H (1982) Industrialization of a noncooking system for alcoholic fermentation from grains. Agric Biol Chem 46:1549–1558

Matushika A, Watanabe S, Kodaki T, Makino K, Sawayama S. (2008) Bioethanol production from xylose by recombinant *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* expressing xylose reductase, NADP + -dependent xylitol dehydrogenase and xylulokinase. J Biosci Bioeng 105: 296–299

Matsushika A, Inoue H, Watanabe S, Kodaki T, Makino K, Sawayama S (2009) Efficient bioethanol production by recombinant flocculent *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* with genome-integrated NADP + -dependent xylitol dehydrogenase gene. Appl Environ Microbiol 75:3818–3822

Mba Medie F, Davies GJ, Drancourt M, Henrissat B (2012) Genome analysis highlight the different biological roles of cellulases. Nature Rev Microbiol 10:227–234

Meeuse BJD, Smith BN (1962) A note on the amylolytic breakdown of some raw algal starches. Planta 57:624–635

Mosier N, Wyman C, Dale B, Elander R, Lee YY, Holtzapple M, Ladisch M (2005) Features of promising technologies for pretreatment of lignocellulosic biomass. Biores Technol 96:673–686

Neely WC (1984) Factors affecting the pretreatment of biomass with gaseous ozone. Biotechnol Bioeng 26:59–65

Negro MJ, Manzanares P, Ballesteros I, Oliva JM, Cabanas A, Ballesteros M (2003) Hydrothermal pretreatment conditions to enhance ethanol production from poplar biomass. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 105:87–100

Palonen H, Thomsen AB, Tenkanen M, Schmidt AS, Viikari L (2004) Evaluation of wet oxidation pretreatment for enzymatic hydrolysis of softwood. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 117:1–17

Pan X, Arato C, Gilkes N, Gregg D, Mabee W, Pye K, Xiao Z, Zhang X, Saddler J (2005) Biorefining of softwoods using ethanol organosolv pulping: preliminary evaluation of processstreams for manufacture of fuel-grade ethanol and co-products. Biotechnol Bioeng 90:473–481

Pan X, Gilkes N, Kadla J, Pye K, Saka S, Gregg D, Ehara K, Xie D, Lam D, Saddler J (2006) Bioconversion of hybrid poplar to ethanol and co-products using an organosolv fractionation process: optimization of process yields. Biotechnol Bioeng 94:851–861

Panagiotou G, Christakopoulos P (2004) NADPH-dependent D-aldose reductases and xylose fermentation in *Fusarium oxysporum*. J Biosci Bioeng 97:299–304

Parikka M (2004) Global biomass fuel resources. Biomass Bioenergy 27:613–620

Phillips CM, Beeson WT, Cate JH, Marletta MA (2011) Cellobiose dehydrogenase and a copper-dependent polysaccharide monooxygenase potentiate cellulose degradation by *Neurospora crassa*. ACS Chem Biol 6:1399–1406

Platts (2011) IEA says biofuels can displace 27% of transportation fuels by 2050. (http://www.platts.com/RSSFeedDetailedNews/RSSFeed/Oil/6017103; accessed 26-06-2012)

Robertson GH, Wong DWS, Lee CC, Wagschal K, Smith MR, Orts WJ (2006) Native or raw starch digestion: a key step in energy efficient biorefining of grain. J Agricult Food Chem 54:353–365

Rodjaroen S, Juntawong N, Mahakhant A, Miyamoto K (2007) High biomass production and starch accumulation in native green algal strains cyanobacterial strains of Thailand Kasetsart. J Nat Sci 41:570–575

Saha BC (2003) Hemicellulose bioconversion. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 30:279–291

Shafizadeh F, Bradbury AGW (1979) Thermal degradation of cellulose in air and nitrogen at low temperatures. J Appl Polym Sci 23:1431–1442

Shallom D, Shoham Y (2003) Microbial hemicellulases. Curr Opin Microbiol 6:219–228

Shigechi H, Fujita Y, Koh J, Ueda M, Fukuda H, Kondo A (2000) Energy-saving direct ethanol production from low-temperature-cooked corn starch using a cell-surface engineered yeast strain co-displaying glucoamylase and α-amylase. Biochem Eng J 18:149–153

Shrank S, Farahmand F (2011) Biofuels regain momentum. Worldwatch Institute (http://www.worldwatch.org/biofuels-make-comeback-despite-tough-economy, accessed 26-06-2012)

Sjöström E (1993) Wood chemistry: fundamentals and applications. Academic, London

Stuart AS, Davey MP, Dennis JS, Horst I, Howe CJ, Lea-Smith DJ, Smith AG (2010) Biodiesel from algae: challenges and prospects. Current Opinion Biotechnol 21:277–286

Subhadra B, Edwards M (2010) An integrated renewable energy approach for algal biofuel production in united States. Energy Policy 38:4897–4902

Tassinari T, Macy C (1977) Differential speed two roll mill pretreatment of cellulosic materials for enzymatic hydrolysis. Biotechnol Bioeng 19:1321–1330

Turner P, Mamo G, Nordberg Karlsson E (2007) Potential and utilization of thermophiles and thermostable enzymes in biorefining. Microb cell fact 6(9)

Vaaje-Kolstad G, Westereng B, Horn S-J, Liu Z, Zhai H, Sorlie M, Eijsink V-G (2010) An oxidative enzyme boosting the enzymatic conversion of recalcitrant polysaccharides. Science 330:219–222

Van Dyk JS, Pletschke BI (2012) A review of lignocellulose bioconversion using enzymatic hydrolysis and synergistic cooperation between enzymes—Factors affecting enzymes, conversion and synergy. Biotechnol Adv 30:1458–1480

Van Wyk N, den Haan R, van Zyl WH (2010) Heterologous co-production of Thermobifida fusca Cel9A with other cellulases in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 87:1813–1820

Van Zyl WH, Lynd LR, den Haan R, McBride JE (2007) Consolidated bioprocessing for bioethanol production using *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Adv Biochem Eng Biotechnol 108:205–235

Varga E, Klinke HB, Reczey K, Thomsen AB (2004) High solid simultaneous saccharification and fermentation of wet oxidized corn stover to ethanol. Biotechnol Bioeng 88:567–574

Xiros C, Christakopoulos P (2009) Enhanced ethanol production from brewer's spent grain by a *Fusarium oxysporum* consolidated system. Biotechnol Biofuels 2:4

Yernool DA, McCarthy JK, Eveleigh DE, Bok JD (2000) Cloning and characterization of the glucooligosaccharide catabolic pathway betaglucan glucohydrolase and cellobiose phosphorylase in the marine hyperthermophile *Thermotoga neapolitana*. J Bacteriol 182:5172–5179

Zemke-White WL, Clements KD (1999) Chlorophyte and rhodophyte starches as factors in diet choice by marine herbivorous fish. J Exp Marine Biol Ecol 240:137–149

Zhou J, Bao L, Chang L, Liu Z, You C, Lu H (2012) Beta-xylosidase activity of a GH3 glucosidase/xylosidase from yak rumen metagenome promotes the enzymatic degradation of hemicellulosic xylans. Lett Appl Microbiol 54:79–87

Chapter 8
Developing Cellulolytic Organisms for Consolidated Bioprocessing of Lignocellulosics

Willem H. van Zyl, Riaan den Haan and Daniel C. la Grange

Abstract Lignocellulosic biomass represents an abundant, renewable feedstock for the production of biofuels and chemicals in a potentially sustainable manner. The main reason that it is not widely used at present is the technological barrier that there is no low-cost technology, either biological or thermochemical, to overcome the recalcitrance of lignocellulose. An organism that hydrolyzes the polysaccharides in biomass and simultaneously produces a commodity product such as ethanol at a high rate and titer could significantly reduce the costs of biomass conversion through the biological route. This would allow a combination of steps that are currently accomplished in different reactors into a consolidated bioprocess (CBP). While no ideal wild-type organism has been identified that can be used in CBP, several candidates are in various stages of development. This chapter assesses the *status quo* for CBP organismal development either by enabling noncellulolytic organisms to grow on cellulosic substrates, by improving product forming abilities of native cellulose utilizing organisms, or by engineering organisms with improved cellulolytic and product forming abilities. Furthermore, the state of the art of feedstock, pretreatment, and process integration options are briefly assessed.

W. H. van Zyl (✉) · R. den Haan
Department of Microbiology, University of Stellenbosch, Stellenbosch, South Africa
e-mail: whvz@sun.ac.za

D. C. la Grange
Department of Biochemistry, Microbiology and Biotechnology, University of Limpopo, Sovenga, South Africa

V. K. Gupta and M. G. Tuohy (eds.), *Biofuel Technologies*,
DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-34519-7_8,

8.1 Introduction

The increasing premium many governments place on greater energy security and environmental concerns juxtaposed with the increasing demand for and cost of oil has led to the development of an active biofuels industry (Van Zyl et al. 2011). First generation biofuels such as ethanol from corn starch or sugarcane already contribute considerable amounts of liquid fuels in several countries. However, these technologies suffer from a shortage in the availability of feedstock in order to displace a more significant amount of petroleum-based fuels. Lignocellulosic biomass represents the most abundant source of carbon in nature and is the only source that could possibly provide sufficient feedstock to satisfy the world's energy and chemicals needs in a sustainable and renewable manner (Hill et al. 2006; Van Zyl et al. 2011). Second generation biofuels, such as ethanol from cellulosic biomass, therefore seek to overcome the problem of feedstock supply shortage by utilizing the energy contained in total plant biomass. Current technologies for conversion of biomass into ethanol via a biological route commences with a pretreatment step during which physical and/or chemical processes are used to make the polymeric fractions more accessible to enzymatic hydrolyses (Stephanopoulos 2007). Feedstock origin will determine the optimal type of pretreatment required, which in turn defines the optimal enzyme mixture required in subsequent hydrolysis steps and the composition of the hydrolysis products.

Four biologically mediated events occur after pretreatment during the conversion of lignocellulose into ethanol namely: (1) production of depolymerizing enzymes, (2) hydrolysis of the polysaccharide components of pretreated biomass, (3) fermentation of the hexose (*C*6) sugars present, and (4) fermentation of pentose (*C*5) sugars present (Lynd et al. 2002). Improvements in biomass conversion technology generally involve the consolidation of two or more of these steps (Fig. 8.1). Hydrolysis and fermentation steps can be combined in simultaneous saccharification and fermentation (SSF) of hexoses or simultaneous saccharification and co-fermentation (SSCF) of both hexoses and pentoses. These processes avoid the feedback inhibition effect that released sugars have on the enzymes but are done at the cost of having to lower the temperature to a level that is suboptimal for enzymatic activity if a mesophilic process organism is used. The ultimate objective is a one-step consolidated bioprocessing (CBP) of lignocellulose to bioethanol, where all four steps occur in a single reactor and a single microorganism or microbial consortium converts pretreated biomass into a commodity product such as ethanol without the need for added enzymes. CBP would represent a breakthrough for low-cost biomass processing, due to the economic benefits of process integration (Galbe et al. 2005; Hahn-Hägerdal et al. 2007; Hamelinck et al. 2005; Robinson 2006) and avoiding the high costs of enzymes that make the biological conversion route unattractive (Anex et al. 2010; Kazi et al. 2010).

Lignocellulosic plant biomass consists of 40–55 % cellulose, 25–50 % hemicellulose, and 10–40 % lignin, depending on whether the source is hardwood, softwood, or grasses (Sun and Cheng 2002). The main polysaccharide present is

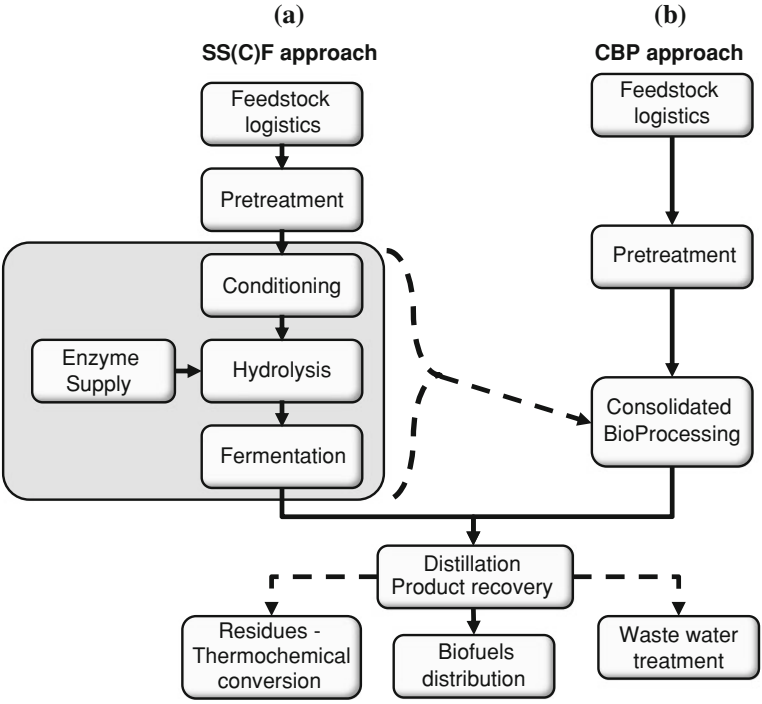


Fig. 8.1 **a** Scheme for simultaneous saccharification and (co)-fermentation (*SS(C)F*) process is illustrated in the shaded box. **b** If a recombinant organism that produces cellulases is employed in a consolidated bioprocessing (*CBP*) process, savings in process energy required by running the process at moderate temperatures and the cost of exogenous enzymes, as well as the reduction in operating units can have substantial economic benefits

water-insoluble crystalline cellulose which also represents the major fraction of fermentable sugars. Full enzymatic hydrolysis of crystalline cellulose requires the synergistic action of three major types of enzymatic activity, namely (1) endoglucanases that act in amorphous regions of cellulose and release cellodextrins as well as provide free chain ends, (2) exoglucanases, including cellodextrinases and cellobiohydrolases that act on the crystalline part of cellulose in a processive manner from free chain ends and release mainly cellobiose, and (3) β-glucosidases that hydrolyze cellobiose and small cello-oligosaccharides to glucose (Zhang and Lynd 2004). Hemicellulose refers to a number of heterogeneous polysaccharide structures, such as (arabino)xylan, galacto(gluco)mannan, and xyloglucan (Sun and Cheng 2002). These chemically diverse polymers are linked together through covalent and hydrogen bonds and can be chemically bound to the lignin fraction. Different pretreatment protocols may remove variable amounts of hemicelluloses, but it remains imperative from an economic perspective that sugars contained in the hemicellulose fraction of lignocellulose are also converted into ethanol (Hahn-Hägerdal et al. 2001). The compositions of hemicelluloses present in

lignocellulosic feedstocks and the large variety of enzymes required to hydrolyze them are reviewed elsewhere (Girio et al. 2010; Van Zyl et al. 2007). Fungi and several bacteria release the entire complement of cellulases and hemicellulases produced into their surrounding growth media. These organisms have so-called free enzymes systems and these form the basis of most commercial enzyme preparations. Free enzymes systems may contain a large diversity of enzymes whose expression may be variably induced depending on the growth substrate (Herpoël-Gimbert et al. 2008). In contrast, some bacteria such as *Clostridium cellulolyticum* and *Clostridium thermocellum* have been shown to produce lignocellulase complexes, named cellulosomes, on their cell walls (Bayer et al. 2008). The cellulosomal architecture involves multiple catalytic components assembled on a scaffoldin subunit through strong noncovalent protein–protein interactions between cohesin modules on the scaffoldin and dockerin modules on the individual enzymes (Himmel et al. 2010). This highly ordered structure of multiple enzymes in close proximity to the substrate results in a high level of enzyme–substrate–microbe synergy (Fierobe et al. 1999; Lu et al. 2006). Cellulosome producing organisms display a wide variety of catalytic subunits on the cell surface via scaffoldin, allowing the organisms to modulate cellulosome activity according to the substrate (Raman et al. 2009).

8.2 Feedstocks

The rapid increase in the demand for biofuels necessitates sustainable feedstock resources and conversion technologies (Sastri et al. 2008). In recent years, significant progress has been made toward the development of feedstocks and technologies for the production of biofuels from lignocellulosic biomass (Fortman et al. 2008). Potential cellulosic feedstocks are numerous and widespread and include woody biomass, perennial grasses, and agricultural and forest residues (Table 8.1). These feedstocks have gained popularity because they provide high biomass yield and in some cases multiple harvests per year are possible. Some of these have recently been genetically modified to provide additional beneficial properties, including reduced or altered lignin (Masarin et al. 2011; Shadle et al. 2007; Voelker et al. 2011; Wadenback et al. 2008; Wang et al. 2012), improved digestibility (Guillaumie et al. 2008; Harris et al. 2009; Shadle et al. 2007), and increased biomass production (Eriksson et al. 2000).

Eucalyptus species are among the most planted hardwoods in the world. The lumber and paper industries have been harvesting *Eucalyptus* and other woody biomass sustainably for many years (Somerville et al. 2010). Continued sustainable growth of these industries is aided by increased use of electronic media as well as paper recycling (Counsell and Allwood 2007). Harvesting is however likely to increase as legislation in many countries changes in favor of renewable energy. The potential energy available in woody biomass is enormous. It is estimated that biomass harvested in the Northern Hemisphere from wood products has

Table 8.1 Summary of biofuel feedstocks

Crop	Growth cycle (months)	Water needs (mm/season)	Average productivity (dry t/ha/year)	Ethanol yield (L/ha)
Wood				
Poplar	36	900	8	2,000
Willow	36	800	11	2,750
Eucalyptus	36	800	12	3,000
Perennial grass				
Switchgrass	12	700	15	5,000
Miscanthus	12	750	25	7,500
Napier grass	3	1,500	40	12,500
Agricultural crop				
Sugarcane	15	2,000	21	10,000
Maize	4	750	10	3,800
Drought resistant crop				
Agave	60	400	20	7,500

Adapted from Somerville et al. (2010). Ethanol yield refers to the total amount produced from a feedstock, including grain and stover or sugar and bagasse

an energy content equal to 107 % of the liquid fuel consumption of the United States (Goodale et al. 2002). Since the genome sequences of poplar (Brunner et al. 2004), willow, and eucalyptus (Paiva et al. 2011) became available, research has focused on genetically manipulating these species in order to develop feedstocks more suitable to the bioethanol industry. Much of the research is aim at reducing the cost of pretreatment by altering the lignin content (Gonzalez-Garcia et al. 2012; Porzio et al. 2012; Somerville et al. 2010).

Perennial plants such as switchgrass, *Miscanthus*, and Napier grass have high photosynthetic capacity, as well as water and nitrogen use efficiency (Ansah et al. 2010; Somerville et al. 2010). They are fast growing and have efficient root systems allowing them to reach deep into the soil for water. The root produces a network of stems and roots that holds onto soil to prevent erosion. A stand of switchgrass can be harvested annually for 10 years, while *Miscanthus* will remain productive for 10–15 years. These and other perennial grasses are capable of averaging around 30 metric tons of dry matter per hectare per year, however, perennial grasses are not being grown on a meaningful scale as yet. This is mainly because there is currently no commodity market to guarantee the price. Recently, genetically engineered switchgrass lines were produced with reduced lignin content (Fu et al. 2011). These transgenic switchgrass lines are phenotypically normal, but have reduced thermochemical, enzymatic, and microbial recalcitrance. They therefore require 300–400 % lower cellulase dosages and less severe pretreatment.

Maize is the largest crop in the world in terms of grain production at around 820 million metric tons per annum (Somerville et al. 2010). A more or less equal amount of stems and stripped cobs (stover) is potentially available for the production of biofuel. Since crop residue help to prevent erosion and guard against the loss of nutrients, excess removal would also increase the amount of fertilizer

needed to maintain good crop yields. The amount of residue that can be removed without compromising soil quality depends on soil type, topography, climatic conditions, and management practices (Hood et al. 2007). Irrespective of the amount of residue left on the land for soil maintenance, a significant amount of this cheap feedstock is still available for the production of cellulosic ethanol. Maize has been genetically modified to express hydrolytic enzymes to aid in stover hydrolysis (Hood et al. 2007) while altering the regulation of lignin biosynthesis simplifies pretreatment (Sticklen 2007).

Ethanol from sugarcane constitutes one of the largest sources of biofuels in the world (Somerville et al. 2010). Currently, 4.6 million hectares of sugarcane are used for bioethanol production in Brazil; however, the Brazilian government stated that this would be increased substantially to a maximum of 63.5 million hectares (Decree No.6.961 2009). Approximately 60 million hectares of this allocated land would be available for biofuels production. Estimates, based on the expected increase in sugarcane crops and the additional amount of ethanol produced as cellulosic fuel, are that Brazil could produce 14 % of the current world transportation fuel demand of 4,900 Gl by the year 2030 (Somerville et al. 2010). South Africa produces about 20 million tons of cane (about 50 % of Africa's production) on 325,000 hectares of land. If the full potential of the estimated 6 million hectares of land suitable for sugarcane production in Angola, Malawi, Mozambique, Tanzania, Zambia, and Zimbabwe are also realized, about 400 million tons of cane can be produced, which could yield 49 Gl, about 20 % of Africa's current total petroleum consumption (Fortman et al. 2008; Somerville et al. 2010). By selecting sugarcane lines with decreased lignin Masarin et al. (2011) could show increased conversion of the glucan component into glucose using commercial enzymes. Similar studies might in future provide sugarcane lines that would allow cost-effective production of ethanol from bagasse (Fortman et al. 2008).

Almost one-fifth of the terrestrial surface on the Earth is semiarid and prone to droughts with rainfall of between 200 and 800 mm per year (Davis et al. 2011). If this is combined with agricultural land that has fallen out of production, the amount of land available for the production of biomass using drought resistant species such as *Agave* is vast. *Agave* spp. thrives under these conditions and produces up to 34 dry tons of biomass per hectare per year. Obtaining biomass in sufficient quantities to merit the construction of commercial scale facilities will be a major concern in the future; fortunately, there are a number of different crops suitable for different environmental conditions that could enable sustainable production of sufficient quantities of biomass.

8.3 Conversion Technologies

Currently, the two primary methods for the conversion of biomass into biofuel are biochemical and thermochemical (Hess et al. 2007; Miller 2010). A detailed discussion on the thermochemical conversion of lignocellulosic feedstocks falls

outside the scope of this chapter, but is reviewed elsewhere (Bhaskar et al. 2011; Demirbas 2001). The cost and biofuel yield for each of these vary significantly depending on the implemented strategies as well as the feedstock used. Similarities to current technology used for the production of ethanol from maize have led to biochemical conversion attracting the most attention (Summarized in Fig. 8.1). Feedstock logistics and biofuel distribution is shared by both conversion technologies.

One of the major challenges of biomass harvesting and delivery to conversion facilities remains yield and density, which determines the volume of the biomass. The density of grassy feedstock to woody feedstocks can vary from $\sim$70 to $\sim$300 kg/m^3. For a 200–1,000 million liter per annum cellulosic ethanol plant, 0.8–4.0 million tons of dry biomass are required, which would require 50–250 trucks per day to deliver the biomass (Verma et al. 2011). Innovative ways of harvesting and delivering biomass to conversion facilities have to be developed to ensure cost-effective production of cellulosic ethanol at significant quantities. These could include dedicated production of biomass (e.g., as found in the sugar and paper-and-pulp industries) or the development of biomass commodity markets, parallel to agricultural commodity markets, such as grain and livestock. Defining of strict specifications for biomass delivered will be crucial to ensure a uniform feedstock for take-off by biomass conversion industries.

The aim of pretreatment is to open up the structure of lignocellulosic material by decreasing the crystallinity of cellulose, removing the hemicellulose fraction, and breaking down lignin (Verma et al. 2011). This increases the surface area making the cellulose more accessible to hydrolytic enzymes. A number of pretreatment processes have been reported in the literature (Table 8.2). Each has advantages and disadvantages. It is therefore important to optimize the pretreatment process for a particular feedstock keeping in mind the subsequent fermentation process to be used. Optimization of pretreatment should ideally be done together with enzymatic hydrolysis, this would ensure development of a process that would yield the maximum amount of fermentable sugars. The sugar stream produced through enzymatic hydrolysis is then fermented to ethanol.

8.4 CBP Organismal Development

While several wild-type microorganisms possess the ability to produce a broad range of enzymes required to hydrolyze all the polysaccharides found in lignocellulose, none of them display the ability to directly convert these into a desired product such as ethanol at economically feasible rates and titers (Hahn-Hägerdal et al. 2006; Lynd et al. 2005). In contrast, microorganisms with favorable product producing qualities often cannot utilize all the sugars available in biomass, lack cellulolytic ability, and may exhibit sensitivity to the inhibitors present in pretreated lignocellulosic biomass. Often microorganisms may also produce product mixtures where desirable products are produced along with undesirables. Some

Table 8.2 A summary of pretreatment processes reported in the literature

Category	Pretreatment method	Feedstocks used for	Advantage	Disadvantage	Reference
Physical pretreatment	Steam explosion	Highly crystalline feedstocks with complex lignin—straw	Increases enzyme digestibility Cost effective Suitable for large scale	Low hemicellulose sugar yield High temperatures required	Excoffier et al. (1991); Heitz et al. (1991); Kristensen et al. (2008); Verma et al. (2011)
	Liquid hot water	Corn fiber Wheat straw	Good cellulose digestibility High pentose recovery (up to 80 %) Low inhibitor concentrations Suitable for large scale	High temperature and pressure used	Allen et al. (2001); Dien et al. (2006); van Walsum et al. (1996)
	Mechanical size reduction (milling, crushing, grinding)	Spruce and aspen	High rate and extent of enzymatic saccharification of cellulose	Expensive Time-consuming Energy intensive No lignin removal	Ryu and Lee (1983)
	Radiation	Wheat straw	Decreased crystallinity Partial depolymerization of lignin	Slow Energy intensive Expensive	Imai et al. (2004); Yang et al. (2008)

(continued)

Table 8.2 (continued)

Category	Pretreatment method	Feedstocks used for	Advantage	Disadvantage	Reference
Chemical pretreatment	Catalyzed steam explosion	Softwood	One of the most cost-effective pretreatment methods	SO_2 is highly toxic Generates carbohydrate derived inhibitors	De Bari et al. (2007); Stenberg et al. (1998)
			Less inhibitory compounds than steam explosion	Incomplete destruction of lignin	
	Dilute acid	Most biomass sources including, hardwood, softwood, agricultural residues, waste paper, and municipal waste	High xylose yield	Sulfuric acid highly corrosive Fermentation inhibitors are produced Prehydrolyzate must be neutralized	Dien et al. (2006); Sun and Cheng (2005); Torget and Teh-An (1994)
	Alkaline pretreatment	Hardwood, agricultural residues	High degree of delignification Good solubilization of hemicellulose	Long treatment times required	Kim et al. (2003); Prior and Day (2008); Vancov and McIntosh (2011)
			Low temperature process	Conversion of alkali into irrecoverable salts	
	Ammonia fiber/freeze explosion (*AFEX*)	Most biomass sources	High degree of delignification	Low hemicellulose recovery	Bals et al. (2010); Holtzapple et al. (1992); Murnen et al. (2007)
		Agricultural residues	Negligible inhibitor production	Ammonia recovery essential for cost-efficient pretreatment	
		Not suited for high lignin feedstock	No particle size reduction needed		

(continued)

Table 8.2 (continued)

Category	Pretreatment method	Feedstocks used for	Advantage	Disadvantage	Reference
	Organosolv	–	High degree of delignification Recovery of pure low molecular weight lignin	Expensive Require high-pressure equipment Solvent recovery essential to reduce cost	Pan et al. (2008)
	pH controlled liquid hot water	Corn stover	Yield high degree of soluble oligosaccharides and mono saccharides Less that 1 % carbohydrates lost to degradation products	Currently not economically feasible	Kim et al. (2009); Mosier et al. (2005); Weil et al. (1998)
	Ionic liquids	Sugarcane bagasse, wheat straw	Effective at mild reaction conditions Possible to recover almost 100 % of ionic liquid Low toxicity biodegradable and non-flammable	High cost of ionic liquids	Feng and Chen (2008); Fukaya et al. (2008); Kuo and Lee (2009); Zhu (2008)
Biological pretreatment	–	Softwood, corn stover, bamboo	No chemicals needed Low energy requirements Mild reaction conditions Environmentally safe	Very slow process Large-space requirements	Hwang et al. (2008); Kurakake et al. (2007); Singh et al. (2008)

Verma et al. (2011), Hendriks and Zeeman (2009), Zheng et al. (2009), Wyman et al. (2005)

characteristics of an ideal CBP organism are given in Table 8.3. It may also be possible to perform CBP with a mixture of organisms with the desired properties of cellulolytic ability and product formation. The development of symbiotic consortia for lignocellulosic biofuel production was recently reviewed (Zuroff and Curtis 2012). Due to the variety of lignocellulosic feedstocks likely to be available, the diversity in pretreatment methods and the difference in desired products produced, there is scope for development of CBP organisms with a range of different traits (La Grange et al. 2010). Three different approaches have been followed to develop such an organism: (1) engineering product forming ability into organisms that are efficient biomass degraders, (2) engineering cellulolytic ability into organisms that have attractive product producing attributes, and (3) engineering cellulolytic ability and product formation into organisms with other particular positive attributes.

8.4.1 Engineering Product Forming Ability into Biomass Degraders

Several species of cellulolytic fungi, such as *Trichoderma reesei*, naturally produce a large repertoire of saccharolytic enzymes to digest lignocellulose efficiently, assimilate all lignocellulosic sugars, and convert these sugars into ethanol, showing that they naturally possess all pathways for conversion of lignocellulose into bioethanol (Chambergo et al. 2002; Lynd et al. 2002). It has been shown that a biorefinery consuming thousands of tons of biomass per day will require many tons of cellulase preparation to operate assuming that enzymes with far greater specific activity are not identified (Xu et al. 2009). Currently, only fungi naturally produce the required amounts of cellulase and some strains of *T. reesei* produce more than 100 g/L cellulase (Cherry and Fidantsef 2003). Thus, advantages of *T. reesei* as a CBP organism are: (1) the production of sufficient quantities of

Table 8.3 Characteristics of an ideal CBP organism

1. Ability to ferment all hexoses and pentoses present in lignocellulose
2. High product yield, titer, and productivity
3. High product and inhibitor tolerance
4. General robustness for industrial processes, cellulase production in toxic environment
5. Tolerance to low pH and high temperature
6. Amenability to DNA manipulation
7. High levels of heterologous protein production and secretion (if cellulolytic ability must be engineered)
8. Concurrent fermentation of sugars (hexose and pentose co-utilization)
9. GRAS status
10. Recyclability in successive processes
11. Minimum nutrient supplementation requirement

Van Zyl et al. (2007)

cellulases at reasonable cost, (2) several strains are established commercially, and (3) it can utilize all lignocellulose sugars for production of ethanol. Challenges to overcome before *T. reesei* can be considered as a CBP organism include the observations that ethanol yield, rate of production and tolerance are low, and that mixing during fermentation may require more energy owing to the filamentous cell morphology. Preliminary studies showed that *T. reesei* could produce cellulases when grown aerobically on cellulose that continued to degrade cellulose to sugars and ferment these sugars to ethanol when cultures were rendered anaerobic (Xu et al. 2009). However, acetic acid was produced as a major byproduct. The major limitation for efficient ethanol production by *T. reesei* does not lie in the absence of the relevant genes and pathways but are more likely related to the low expression of these genes or the activity of the enzymes encoded. Approaches to solving these problems are to enhance the expression of the relevant genes at the transcriptional level and/or to introduce heterologous genes that encode enzymes with higher activities and to knockout genes responsible for the production of byproducts. Recently, the laccase gene *lacA* from *Trametes* sp. AH28-2 was heterologously expressed in *T. reesei* under control of a constitutive promoter (Zhang et al. 2012). Transformants were identified that were able to secrete the recombinant laccase. Reducing sugar yields obtained from saccharification of corn residue by crude enzyme extracts prepared from the transformants increased by 31.3–71.6 %, respectively, compared to the host strain.

Another filamentous fungus, *Fusarium oxysporum*, also produces the enzymes required to break down cellulose and hemicellulose while simultaneously fermenting the released sugars to ethanol albeit at relatively low yields (Anasontzis et al. 2011; Panagiotou et al. 2005). In SSF of a cellulosic substrate a *F. oxysporum* wild-type strain was able to grow in aerobic conditions and produced ethanol with a yield of 0.35 g/g cellulose under anaerobic conditions. The strain was also shown to effectively produce a complete system of hydrolytic enzymes when grown on various agro-industrial lignocellulose by-products, such as dry citrus peels, corn cob, and brewer's spent grain with concomitant ethanol production (Anasontzis et al. 2011; Xiros et al. 2008). It was hypothesized that homologous overexpression of cellulases and hemicellulases under constitutive control, could provide a higher breakdown rate of the biomass and thus increase the supply of sugars to the ethanol production pathway. To this end, the endoxylanase two of *F. oxysporum*, was overproduced under control of the constitutive *Aspergillus nidulans gpdA* promoter (Anasontzis et al. 2011). The fermentative performance of the transformants were evaluated and compared to that of the wild type in simple CBP systems using corn cob or wheat bran as sole carbon sources. Transformants produced approximately 60 % more ethanol compared to the wild type on corn cob and wheat bran likely due to the ~2–2.5-fold higher extracellular xylanase activities in the fermentation broths of the transformants.

High-temperature conversion process conditions potentially provide a significant energy saving since reactors would not have to be cooled to mesophilic conditions before inoculation and then reheated for distillation (Xu et al. 2010). Furthermore, it has been shown that a 10 °C increase in temperature approximately doubles

enzymatic reaction rates, decreasing the amount of enzyme required (Ibrahim and El-diwany 2007). In addition, the use of reaction and fermentation temperatures in excess of 60 °C minimizes the risk of contamination. Since cellulose hydrolysis and sugar release is in most cases the rate-limiting step in a typical CBP process, high-temperature hydrolysis will be therefore be advantageous. Thermophilic bacteria capable of cellulose hydrolysis and ethanol production show great potential as CBP organisms (Xu et al. 2010). The cellulosome producing thermophilic Gram-positive anaerobic bacterium *C. thermocellum* is regarded as a potential CBP organism as it is very efficient at hydrolyzing crystalline cellulose (Lynd et al. 2002). While growth of wild-type strains is inhibited in the presence of ethanol concentrations above 2 % (v/v) strains have been evolved that remained viable at ethanol concentrations of up to 8 % (v/v) (Xu et al. 2010). This group also investigated the effect of some of these inhibitors on cellulosome activity of *C. thermocellum*. It was shown that that some organic acids actually promoted cellulolytic activity and that the *C. thermocellum* cellulosome could tolerate certain concentrations of furfural (up to 5 mM), *p*-hydroxybenzoic acid (up to 50 mM) and catechol (up to 1 mM). The *C. thermocellum* cellulosomes were also able to tolerate higher ethanol concentrations and temperatures than the *T. reesei* enzymes used commercially.

8.4.2 Engineering Cellulolytic Ability into Process Organisms

The yeast *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* has long been employed for the industrial production of ethanol (Kuyper et al. 2005; Van Dijken et al. 2000). Attributes that make it suitable for industrial ethanol production include a high rate of ethanol production from glucose (3.3 g/L/h), high ethanol tolerance, and its GRAS status. However, this yeast species has a number of shortcomings in terms of a CBP processing organism such as its inability to hydrolyze cellulose and hemicellulose or utilize pentose sugars available in lignocellulosic biomass. A number of research groups have been working on improving the substrate range of *S. cerevisiae* through genetic engineering to include the monomeric forms of sugars contained in plant biomass including xylose (Hahn-Hägerdal et al. 2007; Kuyper et al. 2005), arabinose (Karhumaa et al. 2006) and cellobiose (van Rooyen et al. 2005). There have been many reports detailing the expression of one or more cellulase or hemicellulose encoding gene(s) in *S. cerevisiae* (Van Zyl et al. 2007). Strains of *S. cerevisiae* were created that could grow on and ferment cellobiose, the main product of the action of cellobiohydrolases, at roughly the same rate as on glucose in anaerobic conditions (van Rooyen et al. 2005). Recently the high affinity cellodextrin transport system of the model cellulolytic fungus *Neurospora crassa* was reconstituted into *S. cerevisiae* (Galazka et al. 2010) leading to growth of a recombinant strain also producing an intracellular β-glucosidase on cellodextrins up to cellotetraose. Subsequently, strains of *S. cerevisiae* were engineered to co-ferment mixtures of xylose and cellobiose

(Ha et al. 2011). A xylose fermenting strain was engineered to also produce a high-affinity cellodextrin transporter and an intracellular β-glucosidase to hydrolyze cellobiose. It was shown that intracellular hydrolysis of cellobiose minimized glucose repression of xylose fermentation allowing co-consumption of cellobiose and xylose that improved ethanol yields. This was partly due to circumventing the competition between xylose and glucose for transport into the cell. Sadie et al. (2011) recently showed that expression of the gene encoding lactose permease of *Kluyveromyces lactis* (*lac*12) also facilitated transport of cellobiose into a recombinant *S. cerevisiae* strain. This report further showed the successful expression of a *Clostridium stercorarium* cellobiose phosphorylase (*cepA*) and that strains co-producing the heterologous CepA and Lac12 were able to grow on cellobiose as sole carbohydrate source.

There have also been reports showing production of cellulases in *S. cerevisiae* specifically with the aim of enabling the organism to grow on a polymeric substrate. Cho et al. (1999) showed that for SSF experiments with a strain co-producing a β-glucosidase and an exo/endocellulase activity, loadings of externally added cellulase could be reduced. Fujita et al. (2002, 2004) reported co-expression and surface display of cellulases in *S. cerevisiae* and high cell density suspensions of a strain displaying the *T. reesei* endoglucanase II, cellobiohydrolase II, and the *Aspergillus aculeatus* β-glucosidase were able to directly convert 10 g/L phosphoric acid swollen cellulose (PASC) into approximately 3 g/L ethanol. An *S. cerevisiae* strain co-expressing the *T. reesei* endoglucanase 1 (*cel*7*B*) and the *S. fibuligera* β-glucosidase 1 (*cel*3*A*) was able to grow on and convert 10 g/L PASC into ethanol up to 1.0 g/L (Den Haan et al. 2007). Jeon et al. (2009) constructed a similar strain that produced significantly more endoglucanase activity than the strain reported by Den Haan et al. (2007) and notably improved conversion of PASC into ethanol was achieved. When the processive endoglucanase Cel9A of the moderately thermophilic actinomycete *Thermobifida fusca* was functionally produced in *S. cerevisiae* growth of the strain expressing only this one cellulase encoding gene could be demonstrated on media containing PASC due to a sufficient amount of glucose cleaved from the cellulose chain (van Wyk et al. 2010). It was shown that the enzyme released cellobiose and glucose from cellulosic substrates in a ratio of approximately 2.5:1. In an effort to construct an engineered yeast with efficient cellulose degradation, Yamada et al. (2010) developed a method, cocktail delta(δ)-integration to optimize cellulase expression levels. Different cellulase expression cassettes encoding β-glucosidase, endoglucanase, or cellobiohydrolase, were integrated into yeast chromosomes in one step, and strains expressing an optimum ratio of these cellulases were selected for by growth on media containing PASC as carbon source. Although the total integrated gene copy numbers of an efficient cocktail δ-integrant strain was about half that of a conventional δ-integrant strain, the PASC degradation activity (64.9 mU/g-wet cell) was higher than that of a conventional strain (57.6 mU/g-wet cell) suggesting that optimization of the cellulase expression ratio improved PASC degradation activity more than overexpression. Matano et al. (2012) enhanced cellulase activities on a recombinant *S. cerevisiae* yeast cell surface displaying *T. reesei*

EG2 and CBH2 and *A. aculeatus* BGL1 by additionally integrating *eg*2 and *cbh*2 genes into the recombinant strain. As a result, a high ethanol titer (43.1 g/L) was produced from high-solid (200 g-dry weight/L) pretreated rice straw by performing a 2-h liquefaction and subsequent 72-h fermentation in the presence of 10 FPU/g-biomass added cellulase. Ethanol yield from the cellulosic material by the recombinant strain reached 89 % of the theoretical yield, which was 1.4-fold higher than the strain without additional gene copies.

As exoglucanase activity is required for the successful hydrolysis of crystalline cellulose, the addition of successful, high level expression of a cellobiohydrolases to these strains should enable conversion of crystalline cellulose into ethanol. While there have been reports of successful expression of cellobiohydrolase encoding genes in *S. cerevisiae* the titers achieved were generally low (Ilmen et al. 2011). Recently the expression of relatively high levels of exoglucanases in *S. cerevisiae* was reported for the first time (Ilmen et al. 2011; Mcbride et al. 2012). Ilmen et al. (2011) reported a large increase in the maximum titer achieved for two critical exocellulases: Cel6A (CBH1) and Cel7A (CBH2). The cellulase expression levels achieved in this study meets the calculated levels for growth on cellulose at rates required for an industrial process (Olson et al. 2012). Using these exoglucanases, a yeast strain was constructed that was able to convert most of the glucan available in paper sludge into ethanol (Mcbride et al. 2012). The strain was also able to displace 60 % of the enzymes required to convert the sugars available in pretreated hardwood into ethanol in an SSF configuration. A similar strain expressing three alternative cellulases produced ethanol in one step from pretreated corn stover without the addition of exogenously produced enzymes fermenting 63 % of the cellulose in 96 h to 2.6 % (v/v) ethanol (Khramtsov et al. 2011). These results demonstrate that cellulolytic *S. cerevisiae* strains can be used as a platform for developing an economical advanced biofuel process.

As it has been shown that the close proximity of multiple enzymes on the cell surface enables synergistic hydrolysis of lignocellulosic materials, several groups have attempted to reconstruct a minicellulosome on the *S. cerevisiae* cell surface (Ito et al. 2009; Lilly et al. 2009; Tsai et al. 2009; Wen et al. 2010). Ito et al. (2009) constructed a chimeric scaffoldin to allow cell surface display of both *T. reesei* EG2 and *A. aculeatus* BGL1, yielding yeast strains capable of hydrolyzing *β*-glucan. *S. cerevisiae* strains were also engineered to display a trifunctional minicellulosome consisting of a mini-scaffoldin containing a cellulose binding domain and three cohesin modules, anchored to the cell surface and three types of cellulases, EG2 and CBH2 originating from *T. reesei*, and BGL1 from *A. aculeatus*, each bearing a C-terminal dockerin (Wen et al. 2010). This strain was able to break down and ferment PASC to ethanol with a titer of 1.8 g/L. Tsai et al. (2010) engineered yeast strains capable of displaying a trifunctional scaffoldin carrying three divergent cohesin domains originating from *C. thermocellum*, *C. cellulolyticum* and *Ruminococcus flavefaciens*. In addition, strains were constructed that secreted one of the three corresponding dockerin-tagged cellulases namely an EG from *C. thermocellum*, an exoglucanase from *C. cellulolyticum*, or a BGL from *R. flavefaciens*. Using a yeast consortium composed of one strain displaying the

mini-scaffoldin and three strains secreting the dockerin-tagged cellulases, the secreted cellulases were docked onto the displayed mini-scaffoldin in a predictably organized manner. By adjusting the ratio of different populations in the consortium, cellulose hydrolysis and ethanol production was successfully fine-tuned and ~30 % of 10 g/L PASC was solubilized in 73 h. Displaying cellulosomal components on the yeast cell surface was also recently employed to create strains that could convert xylan into ethanol (Sun et al. 2012). These strains displayed mini-hemicellulosomes that consisted of a mini-scaffoldin originating from *C. thermocellum* tethered to the cell surface through the *S. cerevisiae* α-agglutinin adhesion receptor and up to three enzymes. Up to three types of hemicellulases, an endoxylanase (*T. reesei* Xyn2), an arabinofuranosidase (*Aspergillus niger* AbfB), and a *β*-xylosidase (*A. niger* XlnD), each with a C-terminal dockerin, were assembled onto the mini-scaffoldin via cohesin-dockerin interactions. The resulting quaternary trifunctional complexes exhibited an enhanced hydrolysis rate of arabinoxylan over the other configurations. Furthermore, in strains with an integrated xylose utilizing pathway, the recombinant yeast displaying a mini-hemicellulosome containing the xylanase and xylosidase could simultaneously hydrolyze and ferment birchwood xylan to ethanol although less than 1 g/L ethanol was produced.

Zymomonas mobilis is a well-known Gram-negative fermenting bacterium that produces ethanol at very high rates and is used to produce some traditional alcoholic beverages (Zhang et al. 1997). However, *Z. mobilis* cannot ferment or utilize the pentose sugar xylose and it cannot hydrolyze polysaccharides. Zhang et al. (1997) engineered a *Z. mobilis* strain capable of fermenting the major pentose sugars present in plant material, namely xylose and arabinose. Co-fermentation of 100 g/L sugar (glucose:xylose:arabinose—40:40:20) yielded an ethanol concentration of 42 g/L in 48 h. Brestic-Goachet et al. (1989) expressed the *Erwinia chrysanthemi cel5Z* in *Z. mobilis*. The maximum endoglucanase activity obtained was 1,000 IU/L with 89 % of the enzyme secreted to the extracellular medium. Expression of the *Ruminococcus albus β*-glucosidase enabled *Z. mobilis* to ferment cellobiose to ethanol very efficiently in 2 days and most of the recombinant enzyme was secreted (Yanase et al. 2005). Recently, numerous strains of *Z. mobilis* were shown to possess native extracellular activities against carboxymethyl cellulose (Linger et al. 2010). Furthermore, two cellulolytic enzymes, *E*1 and GH12 from *Acidothermus cellulolyticus*, were produced heterologously as active, soluble enzymes in *Z. mobilis*. While the *E*1 enzyme was less abundant, the GH12 enzyme comprised as much as 4.6 % of the total cell protein. Additionally, fusing predicted secretion signals native to *Z. mobilis* to the N-termini of these enzymes was shown to direct secretion of significant levels of active *E*1 and GH12 enzymes, though a significant portion of both still resided in the periplasmic space.

8.4.3 Engineering Cellulolytic Ability and Product Formation into Organisms with Favorable Attributes

Several yeast species other than *S. cerevisiae* have innate properties that make them attractive as possible CBP organisms (Lynd et al. 2005). The promise of thermotolerant yeast species as CBP organisms and recent data on ethanol production from cellulosic and hemicellulosic materials with thermotolerant yeast strains in SSF and CBP was recently reviewed by Hasunuma and Kondo (2012). The *A. aculeatus* β-glucosidase was introduced to the multistress tolerant yeast *Pichia kudriavzevii* (*Issatchenkia orientalis*) and the transformant could convert cellobiose into ethanol under acidic conditions and at temperatures exceeding 40 °C (Kitagawa et al. 2010). Strains of the yeast *Kluyveromyces marxianus* can grow at temperatures as high as 52 °C and can convert a wide range of substrates, including xylose, into ethanol (Fonseca et al. 2007). Successful SSF with a variety of feedstocks at elevated temperatures has been demonstrated with *K. marxianus* (Fonseca et al. 2007; Pessani et al. 2011). Recently, SSF conversion of pretreated switchgrass to ethanol with *K. marxianus* IMB3 was shown at 45 °C with a yield of 86 % of the theoretical maximum achieved in 168 h (Pessani et al. 2011). Genes encoding thermotolerant varieties of cellobiohydrolase, endoglucanase, and β-glucosidase were expressed in combination in a strain of *K. marxianus* (Hong et al. 2007). The resulting strain was able to grow in synthetic media containing cellobiose or carboxymethylcellulose as sole carbon source but the hydrolysis of crystalline cellulose was not shown. A *K. marxianus* strain was also engineered to display *T. reesei* endoglucanase II and *A. aculeatus* β-glucosidase on the cell surface was shown to convert 10 g/L cellulosic β-glucan into 4.24 g/L ethanol at 48 °C within 12 h (Yanase et al. 2010).

Strains of the methylotrophic yeast *Hansenula polymorpha* are also able to grow at elevated temperatures up to 48 °C and ferment glucose, cellobiose, and xylose to ethanol (Ryabova et al. 2003). Additionally, attributes such as process hardiness and a high capacity for heterologous protein production make this yeast an attractive candidate for CBP. The promise of *H. polymorpha* as a CBP organism was recently emphasized when strains were constructed that could ferment starch and xylan (Voronovsky et al., 2009). *Scheffersomyces stipitis* (formerly *Pichia stipitis*) has a substrate range including all the monomeric sugars present in lignocellulose (Jeffries and Shi 1999). Some *S. stipitis* strains produce low quantities of various cellulases and hemicellulases to break down wood into monomeric sugars although it cannot utilize polymeric cellulose as carbon source (Jeffries et al. 2007). Among the enzymes naturally produced are a β-glucosidase that allows the yeast to ferment cellobiose. Endoglucanases were successfully produced in *H. polymorpha* (Papendieck et al. 2002) and *S. stipitis* (Piotek et al. 1998). As these yeasts are capable of growth on cellobiose the recombinant strains should have the ability to hydrolyze amorphous cellulose although this aspect was not tested. The xylanolytic ability of *S. stipitis* was enhanced by the co-expression of xylanase and xylosidase encoding genes resulting in strains that displayed improved biomass

production on medium with birchwood glucuronoxylan as sole carbohydrate source (Den Haan and Van Zyl, 2003). Although mutant strains of *S. stipitis* with increased ethanol tolerance were recently isolated, *S. stipitis* remains a relatively poor fermenter (Watanabe et al. 2011). However, its ability to consume acetic acid and reduce the furan ring in furfural and hydroxymethylfurfural (HMF) creates an opportunity for this yeast to remove some of the toxins produced during cellulosic biomass conversion (Agbogbo & Coward-Kelly, 2008). This could be very beneficial in wastewater treatment. While these yeast strains all have promising attributes in terms of CBP organisms, the ethanol rates, titers, productivities, and tolerance of all of these candidates have to be improved.

Although the mesophilic Gram-negative bacterium *Escherichia coli* cannot hydrolyze cellulose or produce ethanol at appreciable quantities it has been shown to catabolize all major sugars present in plant biomass, producing organic acids and ethanol (Alterthum and Ingram 1989). Furthermore, *E. coli* has unparalleled genetic and metabolic tractability and is therefore an excellent candidate for metabolic engineering. *E. coli* has been engineered to biosynthesize the most chemically diverse range of chemicals of any organism, including hydrogen, higher alcohols, fatty acids, and terpenes (Bokinsky et al. 2011). Bräu and Sahm (1986) successfully modified *E. coli* metabolism by expressing the *Z. mobilis* pyruvate decarboxylase at high levels yielding a strain that produced ethanol at levels comparable with *Z. mobilis*. Subsequent work has focused on improving ethanol yields and tolerance, growth rate, and strain stability (Chen et al. 2009; Da Silva et al. 2005; Ingram et al. 1987, 1991; Ohta et al. 1991b; Yomano et al. 1998). Wild-type *E. coli* strains are incapable of rapid growth on cellobiose (Moniruzzaman et al. 1997); however, *Klebsiella oxytoca* contains a phosphoenol-dependent phosphotransferase system (PTS) enabling it to utilize cellobiose. The *K. oxytoca casAB* operon was expressed in the ethanol producing strain of *E. coli*. While expression was initially poor, a mutant was generated which produced 45 g/L ethanol—a yield of 94 % of the theoretical maximum. *E. coli* was also engineered to assimilate cellobiose through a phosphorolytic mechanism (Sekar et al. 2012). Cytoplasmic expression of the *Saccharophagus* cellobiose phosphorylase was shown to enable *E. coli* to use cellobiose and it was shown that the endogenous LacY permease was responsible for the transport of cellobiose. Conversion of cellobiose into ethanol in a KO11 strain background was achieved. Several endoglucanases have been expressed in *E. coli* allowing it to hydrolyze amorphous and soluble cellulose to shorter cello-oligosaccahrides (Da Silva et al. 2005; Seon et al. 2007; Srivastava et al. 1995; Wood et al. 1997; Yoo et al. 2004; Zhou et al. 2001). Zhou et al. (2001) successfully reconstructed the predominant secretion system type in Gram-negative bacteria, the type II secretion system, encoded by the *out* genes from *E. chrysanthemi*, in *E. coli*. This enabled *E. coli* to secrete more than 50 % recombinant *E. chrysanthemi Cel5Z* it produced. Recently, Shin et al. (2010) demonstrated a co-cultivation or binary strategy for CBP of xylan. Two *E. coli* strains were engineered to function cooperatively to transform xylan into ethanol. The first strain was engineered to co-express *axeA*, the acetylxylan esterase encoding gene from *Streptomyces violaceoruber* and *xyl*11*A* encoding a

xylanase gene from *Bacillus halodurans*. The recombinant enzymes were secreted into the growth medium by a method of *lpp* deletion with over 90 % efficiency. Secreted enzymes hydrolyzed xylan into xylo-oligosaccharides, which could be utilized by the second strain, designed to convert xylo-oligosaccharides into ethanol. The second strain was based on the KO11 strain optimized for ethanol production. The *KxynB* gene encoding *β*-xylosidase from *Klebsiella pneumonia* and *KxynT* encoding xyloside permease from *K. pneumoniae* were introduced into KO11. Co-cultivation of the two strains converted xylan into ethanol with a yield of about 55 % of the theoretical value. Bokinsky et al. (2011) engineered strains of *E. coli* that expressed either an endoglucanase and a *β*-glucosidase or a xylanase, and xylobiosidase under control of native promoters. Secretion was achieved through fusion of the proteins to OsmY, previously shown to enable secretion of fused proteins from *E. coli*. Growth of these strains could be demonstrated on model cellulosic and hemicellulosic substrates. Furthermore, the strains grew using either the cellulose or hemicellulose components of ionic liquid-pretreated biomass or on both components when combined as a co-culture. Strains were further engineered with biosynthesis pathways for the production of fatty-acid ethyl esters, butanol and pinene to demonstrate the production of fuel substitutes or precursors suitable for gasoline, diesel, and jet engines. Although titers and conversion rates were very low, direct conversion of ionic liquid-treated switchgrass into these biofuel components could be demonstrated without externally supplied hydrolase enzymes.

K. oxytoca is a hardy prototrophic Gram-negative bacterium with the ability to transport and catabolize cellobiose, cellotriose, xylobiose, xylotriose, sucrose, and all monomeric sugars present in lignocellulosic biomass (Zhou and Ingram 1999). Four different fermentation pathways are present in *K. oxytoca* producing lactic acid, succinate, formate, acetate, ethanol, and butanediol (Ohta et al. 1991b). Through metabolic engineering and expression of the *Z. mobilis pdc* and *adhB* genes, it was possible to generate a recombinant *K. oxytoca* strain to produce ethanol from soluble sugars at 95 % of the maximum theoretical yield (Wood and Ingram 1992). Interestingly, *K. oxytoca* has the ability to ferment xylose and glucose at equivalent rates which shortens the time required to ferment the mixtures of glucose and xylose typically present in lignocellulosic hydrolysates (Ohta et al. 1991a). Zhou and Ingram (1999) constructed a *K. oxytoca* strain expressing the *E. chrysanthemi cel*8*Y* and *cel*5*Z* endoglucanase encoding genes and the genes that encode the type II secretion system. They showed that both *Cel*8*Y* and *Cel*5*Z* were secreted effectively by *K. oxytoca* and that the strain was capable of fermenting amorphous cellulose and producing a small amount of ethanol without the addition of cellulases.

The thermophilic anaerobic bacterium *Thermoanaerobacterium saccharolyticum* is also under development as a CBP organism for biomass conversion. *T. saccharolyticum* grows in a temperature and pH range of 45–65 °C and pH 4.0–6.5 and is able to ferment a wide range of sugars present in cellulosic biomass including cellobiose, glucose, mannose, galactose, xylose, and arabinose (Shaw et al. 2008a). Unlike most organisms *T. saccharolyticum* metabolizes xylose and glucose at almost

the same rate (Shaw et al. 2008a, 2008b) but produces organic acids in addition to ethanol. Knockout mutants were created that produced almost exclusively ethanol from xylose. Furthermore, a strain with *hfs* and *ldh* deletions exhibited an increased ethanol yield from consumed sugars (Shaw et al. 2009). *T. saccharolyticum* naturally produces both a xylanase and a β-xylosidase enabling it to ferment xylan directly to ethanol (Lee et al. 1993). Furthermore, *T. saccharolyticum* was able to produce as much ethanol from Avicel with four filter paper units (FPU) of externally added enzyme in SSF as *S. cerevisiae* was with 10 FPU, the result of improved enzyme efficiency at higher temperatures (Shaw et al. 2008b). This shows the potential of this thermophile as CBP organism if a cellulolytic system can be established.

Another group of bacteria with great CBP potential is from the genus *Geobacillus*. These are thermophilic bacilli with certain species being able to ferment sugars like glucose, xylose, and arabinose at temperatures of between 55 and 70 °C, producing a mixture of lactate, formate, acetate, and ethanol (Barnard et al. 2010). Certain species like *Geobacillus* R7 also have the ability to produce lignocellulose-degrading enzymes including cellulases, xylanases, and lignases. All the above-mentioned attributes make *Geobacillus* a very good candidate for CBP; however, the production of lactate and formate is not desirable. Therefore, genetic engineering of these strains has been carried out at a British company, TMO Renewables Ltd., to improve ethanol production by *Geobacillus*. *Geobacillus thermoglucosidasius*, capable of oligosaccharide fermentation, was engineered by deletion of the *ldh* and *pfl* genes and upregulation of *pdh* to produce relatively high yields of 0.42–0.47 g ethanol/g hexose sugar, although the yield was somewhat less for pure pentose sugars (Cripps et al. 2009).

Bacillus subtilis, the best-characterized Gram-positive microorganism, is a major industrial microorganism and its potential as a CBP organism is increasingly apparent (Zhang and Zhang 2010). Among other advantages, *B. subtilis* has GRAS status, a very high protein-secreting capability, rapid growth rate with low nutrient requirement utilizing soluble pentose and hexose sugars, and native hemicellulase production. Furthermore, it tolerates high concentrations of salts and solvents, has an available genomic DNA sequence, and well-developed recombinant DNA techniques and fermentation technologies. Although it natively produces several polysaccharide-degrading enzymes, *B. subtilis* is noncellulolytic. Recently however, six cellulase genes sourced from *C. thermocellum* were cloned and expressed in *B. subtilis* and were efficiently secreted into the culture broth, showing synergistic activity on PASC and Avicel (Liu et al. 2012). It was also shown that a recombinant *B. subtilis* could grow on amorphous cellulose or pretreated biomass in chemically defined minimal *M*9 media through overexpression and secretion of its intrinsic glycoside hydrolase family five endoglucanase (Zhang et al. 2011). This stain was further optimized for direct conversion of cellulose to lactate. Finally, a mini-cellulosome was assembled on the surface of *B. subtilis*, displaying a mini-scaffoldin that could bind with three cellulases—an endoglucanase (Cel5), a processive endoglucanase (Cel9), and a cellobiohydrolase (Cel48) all originating from *C. thermocellum* (You et al. 2012). The cell-bound cellulosome exhibited

4.5- and 2.3-fold higher hydrolysis ability than cell-free cellulosome on Avicel and PASC, respectively, degrading up to 24–63 % of the substrates in 72 h.

8.5 Integrating Consolidated Bioprocessing with Existing Bio-Based Industries

The cost of second generation biofuels remains high despite significant advances in recent years. The high capital investment and energy demands of second generation cellulosic ethanol technologies necessitate their integration with first generation bio-based and thermochemical processes to minimize costs and improve energy efficiency and overall economics (Van Zyl et al. 2011). Different biological and thermochemical processes will be discussed and their potential integration in a few bio-based industries highlighted.

Three thermochemical options are available for the conversion of biomass: combustion, pyrolysis, and gasification. The simplest option is combustion (burning) of biomass in the presence of air, which generates hot gases at temperatures of around 800–1,000 °C and energy that can be harvested as heat. Pyrolysis entails heating biomass in the absence of air to about 500 °C converting the biomass into liquid (bio-oil), solid (char), and gaseous fractions. Bio-oils represent biomass in liquid form with a higher density and can be upgraded to transport fuels. Char can be used to improve soil fertility and as replacement to activated charcoal. In contrast, gasification is the conversion of biomass by partial oxidation at higher temperatures (in the range of 800–900 °C) to generate syngas that can be used for synthesis of different synthetic fuels (using the Fischer–Tropsch process) or burned for heat production. Both bio-oils and char also can be gasified as renewable feedstock for synthetic fuels production (Aden and Foust 2009; Bridgwater 2012; McKendry 2002).

During the biological processes for lignocellulose hydrolysis–fermentation nonfermentable lignin-rich residues remain, which contain large amounts of energy. These residues can provide all the heat and electricity needed for cellulosic ethanol production through high-efficiency processes, such as a high pressure boiler coupled with a multistage steam turbine (Aden and Foust 2009; Piccolo and Bezzo 2009) (Fig. 8.1). It can also provide surplus electricity production for sale into local electricity grids (Cardona and Sanchez 2007; Leibbrant 2010; Reith et al. 2002). Heat integration within biological and thermochemical routes for second generation biofuels production have the potential to increase overall energy efficiency by as much as 15 % and can reduce capital and operational costs substantially (Aden and Foust 2009; Galbe et al. 2005; Kazi et al. 2010; Leibbrant 2010). The organic loads in wastewater can be lowered through anaerobic digestion, simultaneously producing biogas that can be captured and used to generate electricity and/or process heating (Banerjee et al. 2009). Waste streams can also be combined with waste streams from local municipalities, integrating industrial and municipal wastes to improve water qualities in densely populated urban areas.

In existing industries, such as the sugar and pulp-and-paper industries, only part of the biomass is used, resulting in substantial quantities of residues remaining. Many of these residues are suitable for the production of cellulosic ethanol. By integrating such existing industries with cellulosic ethanol production, significant saving in the cost of the transport and handling of the feedstock and integration of energy consumption can be achieved (Aden and Foust 2009; Anex et al. 2010; Gnansounou et al. 2005; Hahn-Hägerdal et al. 2006; Kazi et al. 2010; Piccolo and Bezzo 2009). Improvement in better waste streams treatment can also be obtained (Goh et al. 2010; Hahn-Hägerdal et al. 2006; Soccol et al. 2010). Swedish researchers suggested that such integration could reduce the cost of cellulosic ethanol production with up to 20 % in Sweden (Hahn-Hägerdal et al. 2006; von Sivers and Zacchi 1995).

The integration of second generation cellulosic ethanol production with first generation production from sugars or starches can have multiple benefits, including providing economies of scale, reduction of capital costs and investor risk, and increased economic attractiveness and environmental acceptance (Gnansounou et al. 2005). Such integration can provide joint feedstock supply, fermentation, water and nutrient recycle, distillation, and further opportunities for energy integration (Easterly 2002; Galbe et al. 2007). This is particularly true for sugar-rich crops, such as sugarcane, sweet sorghum, and sugar beet, where integration with cellulosic ethanol processes ensure optimum use of the feedstock and its logistics (Gnansounou et al. 2005; Sims et al. 2008). These crops also allow flexibility of switching between the production of crystallized sugar and ethanol, as is currently done in Brazilian sugar mills (Gnansounou et al. 2005). Similar integration possibilities also exist for starches (corn, grain sorghum, triticale, etc.), where ethanol could be produced from the fiber-rich residues (Cardona and Sanchez 2007; Linde et al. 2010).

8.6 Conclusions

The consideration of cellulosic feedstocks for the production of biofuels could help address the demand for biofuels, but could also realize sustainability and environmental benefits. The options and quantities of feedstocks have substantially broadened and the choice of feedstocks will vary between geographical areas in terms of climate and the availability of suitable land. To date no ideal organism has been developed for CBP conversion of biomass. Yeasts are usually sufficiently robust for industrial conversion of lignocellulosics, however, lack the necessary substrate range, particularly the ability to degrade complex polysaccharides such as cellulose. The *S. cerevisiae* strain developed by the Mascoma Corporation represents the best CBP organism engineered thus far as this strain could convert several cellulosic substrates to ethanol with addition of minimal exogenous enzymes in an SSF configuration (Ilmen et al. 2011; Mcbride et al. 2012). While the advantages of using the yeasts *P. stipitis*, *K. marxianus*, and *H. polymorpha* are

well appreciated, they are not as robust as *S. cerevisiae* strains and the engineering of cellulolytic ability into these strains are currently rudimentary. None of the strains are as yet capable of utilizing crystalline cellulose and the high-level production of an exocellulase remains a requirement. New information about secretion pathways, chaperones, and metabolic engineering should help alleviate this problem in the future. Filamentous fungi on the other hand have a wide substrate range, but grow relatively slowly and do not produce enough of a desirable commodity product at titers required for commercial processes.

Bacteria generally have higher productivity rates (higher growth rates) but often lack process robustness. Compared to *S. cerevisiae*, all of the bacterial species discussed above are relatively sensitive to inhibitors associated with lignocellulosic hydrolysates (Yomano et al. 1998; Zhou and Ingram 1999). Engineering enhanced protein secretion allowed sufficient secretion of endoglucanases in *E. coli* (Zhou and Ingram 1999) and *K. oxytoca* (Ji et al. 2009). *E. coli* and *K. oxytoca* strains capable of breaking down cellulose could also be modified to produce other commodity products such as lactic acid, succinic acid, acetic acid, or 2, 3-butanediol (Ji et al. 2009). The *Geobacillus* strain used by TMO Renewables Ltd., is capable of producing ethanol at appreciable titers from pretreated lignocellulosic feedstock and represents a very promising organism for CBP.

Different candidate CBP organisms are in various stages of development for cellulose conversion into commodity products, notably ethanol. However, it has been suggested that the chance to develop one CBP organism for the conversion of all cellulosic feedstocks is rather slim. It is more likely that more than one organism may eventually be used in various biomass conversion processes and the choice may depend on the sugar composition of the feedstock, the pretreatment method used, and the end product(s) required. The high-cost disadvantage of current second generation biofuels configurations may be partially addressed through innovative methods of process integration with existing bio-based industries, in order to minimize capital investment, optimize energy efficiency, and improve overall economics. Integration between first and second generation technology processes may be the most effective way to bring second generation biofuels to market.

References

Decree No.6.961 (2009) Zoning agricultural land of sugarcane. Diário Oficial União de 18.9.10, Brazil. 17 September 2009

Aden A, Foust T (2009) Techno economic analysis of the dilute sulfuric acid and enzymatic hydrolysis process for the conversion of corn stover to ethanol. Cellulose 16:535–545

Agbogbo FK Coward-Kelly G (2008) Cellulosic ethanol production using the naturally occurring xylose-fermenting yeast *Pichia stipitis* Biotechnol Lett 30(9):1515–1524

Allen SG, Schulman D, Lichwa J, Antal MJ, Laser M, Lynd LR (2001) A Comparison between hot liquid water and steam fractionation of corn fiber. Ind Eng Chem Res 40:2934–2941

Alterthum F, Ingram LO (1989) Efficient ethanol production from glucose, lactose, and xylose by recombinant *Escherichia coli*. Appl Environ Microbiol 55:1943–1948

Anasontzis GE, Zerva A, Stathopoulou PM, Haralampidis K, Diallinas G, Karagouni AD, Hatzinikolaou DG (2011) Homologous overexpression of xylanase in *Fusarium oxysporum* increases ethanol productivity during consolidated bioprocessing (CBP) of lignocellulosics. J Biotechnol 152:16–23

Anex RP, Aden A, Kazi FK, Fortman J, Swanson RM, Wright MM, Satrio JA, Brown RC, Daugaard DE, Platon A, Kothandaraman G, Hsu DD, Dutta A (2010) Techno-economic comparison of biomass-to-transportation fuels via pyrolysis, gasification, and biochemical pathways. Fuel 89:S29–S35

Ansah T, Osafo ELK, Hasen HH (2010) Herbage yield and chemical composition of four varieties of Napier (*Pennisetum purpureum*) grass harvested at three different days after planting. Agric Biol J N Am 1:923–929

Bals B, Rogers C, Jin M, Balan V, Dale B (2010) Evaluation of ammonia fibre expansion (AFEX) pretreatment for enzymatic hydrolysis of switchgrass harvested in different seasons and locations. Biotechnol Biofuels 3:1

Banerjee S, Mudliar S, Sen R, Giri B (2009) Commercializing lignocellulosic bioethanol: technology bottlenecks and possible remedies. Biofuels, Bioprod Biorefin 4:77–93

Barnard D, Casanueva A, Tuffin M, Cowan D (2010) Extremophiles in biofuel synthesis. Environ Technol 31:871–888

Bayer EA, Lamed R, White BA, Flint HJ (2008) From cellulosomes to cellulosomics. Chem Rec 8:364–377

Bhaskar T, Bhavya B, Singh R, Naik DV, Kumar A, Goyal HB (2011) Thermochemical conversion of biomass to biofuels. In: Pandey A, Larroche S, Ricke SC, Dussap CG, Gnansounou E (eds) Biofuels: alternative feedstocks and conversion processes. Elsevier, San Diego, pp 51–78

Bokinsky G, Peralta-Yahya PP, George A, Holmes BM, Steen EJ, Dietrich J, Soon LT, Tullman-Ercek D, Voigt CA, Simmons BA, Keasling JD (2011) Synthesis of three advanced biofuels from ionic liquid-pretreated switchgrass using engineered *Escherichia coli*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 108:19949–19954

Bräu B, Sahm H (1986) Cloning and expression of the structural gene for pyruvate decarboxylase of *Zymomonas mobilis* in *Escherichia coli*. Arch Microbiol 144:296–301

Brestic-Goachet N, Gunasekaran P, Cami B, Baratti JC (1989) Transfer and expression of an *Erwinia chrysanthemi* cellulase gene in *Zymomonas mobilis*. J Gen Microbiol 135:893–902

Bridgwater AV (2012) Review of fast pyrolysis of biomass and product upgrading. Biomass Bioenerg 38:68–94

Brunner AM, Busov VB, Strauss SH (2004) Poplar genome sequence: functional genomics in an ecologically dominant plant species. Trends Plant Sci 9:49–56

Cardona CA, Sanchez OJ (2007) Fuel ethanol production: Process design trends and integration opportunities. Bioresour Technol 98:2415–2457

Chambergo FS, Bonaccorsi ED, Ferreira AJ, Ramos AS, Ferreira J Jr, Abrahao-Neto J, Farah JP, El Dorry H (2002) Elucidation of the metabolic fate of glucose in the filamentous fungus *Trichoderma reesei* using expressed sequence tag (EST) analysis and cDNA microarrays. J Biol Chem 277:13983–13988

Chen J, Zhang W, Tan L, Wang Y, He G (2009) Optimization of metabolic pathways for bioconversion of lignocellulose to ethanol through genetic engineering. Biotechnol Adv 27:593–598

Cherry JR, Fidantsef AL (2003) Directed evolution of industrial enzymes: an update. Curr Opin Biotechnol 14:438–443

Cho KM, Yoo YJ, Kang HS (1999) γ-Integration of endo/exo-glucanase and β-glucosidase genes into the yeast chromosomes for direct conversion of cellulose to ethanol. Enzyme Microb Technol 25:23–30

Counsell TAM, Allwood JM (2007) Reducing climate change gas emissions by cutting out stages in the life cycle of office paper. Resour Conserv Recycl 49:340–352

Cripps RE, Eley K, Leak DJ, Rudd B, Taylor M, Todd M, Boakes S, Martin S, Atkinson T (2009) Metabolic engineering of *Geobacillus thermoglucosidasius* for high yield ethanol production. Metab Eng 11:398–408

Da Silva GP, De Araujo EF, Silva D, Guimaraes WV (2005) Ethanolic fermentation of sucrose, sugarcane juice and molasses by *Escherichia coli* strain KO11 and *Klebsiella oxytoca* strain *P2*. Braz J Microbiol 36:395–404

Davis SC, Dohleman FG, Long SP (2011) The global potential of *Agave* as a biofuel feedstock. GCB Bioenerg 3:68–78

De Bari I, Nanna F, Braccio G (2007) SO_2-Catalyzed steam fractionation of aspen chips for bioethanol production: optimization of the catalyst impregnation. Ind Eng Chem Res 46:7711–7720

Demirbas A (2001) Biomass resource facilities and biomass conversion processing for fuels and chemicals. Energy Convers Manage 42:1357–1378

Den Haan R, Rose SH, Lynd LR, Van Zyl WH (2007) Hydrolysis and fermentation of amorphous cellulose by recombinant *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Metab Eng 9:87–94

Den Haan R Van Zyl WH (2003) Enhanced xylan degradation and utilisation by *Pichia stipitis* overproducing fungal xylanolytic enzymes. Enzyme Microb Technol. 33:620–628

Dien BS, Li XL, Iten LB, Jordan DB, Nichols NN, O'Bryan PJ, Cotta MA (2006) Enzymatic saccharification of hot-water pretreated corn fiber for production of monosaccharides. Enzyme Microb Technol 39:1137–1144

Easterly J (2002) AES Greenidge bioethanol co-location assessment: final report. Natl Renew Energy Labor, report NREL/SR-510-33001 pp 1–102

Eriksson ME, Israelsson M, Olsson O, Moritz T (2000) Increased gibberellin biosynthesis in transgenic trees promotes growth, biomass production and xylem fiber length. Nat Biotechnol 18:784–788

Excoffier G, Toussaint B, Vignon MR (1991) Saccharification of steam-exploded poplar wood. Biotechnol Bioeng 38:1308–1317

Feng L, Chen Zl (2008) Research progress on dissolution and functional modification of cellulose in ionic liquids. J Mol Liq 142:1–5

Fierobe HP, Pages S, Belaich A, Champ S, Lexa D, Belaich JP (1999) Cellulosome from *Clostridium cellulolyticum*: molecular study of the dockerin/cohesin interaction. Biochemistry 38:12822–12832

Fonseca GG, Gombert AK, Heinzle E, Wittmann C (2007) Physiology of the yeast *Kluyveromyces marxianus* during batch and chemostat cultures with glucose as the sole carbon source. FEMS Yeast Res 7:422–435

Fortman JL, Chhabra S, Mukhopadhyay A, Chou H, Lee TS, Steen E, Keasling JD (2008) Biofuel alternative to ethanol: pumping the microbial well. Trends Biotechnol 26:375–381

Fu C, Mielenz JR, Xiao X, Ge Y, Hamilton CY, Rodriguez M, Chen F, Foston M, Ragauskas A, Bouton J, Dixon RA, Wang ZY (2011) Genetic manipulation of lignin reduces recalcitrance and improves ethanol production from switchgrass. Proc Nat Acad Sci USA108:3803–3808

Fujita Y, Takahashi S, Ueda M, Tanaka A, Okada H, Morikawa Y, Kawaguchi T, Arai M, Fukuda H, Kondo A (2002) Direct and efficient production of ethanol from cellulosic material with a yeast strain displaying cellulolytic enzymes. Appl Environ Microbiol 68:5136–5141

Fujita Y, Ito J, Ueda M, Fukuda H, Kondo A (2004) Synergistic saccharification, and direct fermentation to ethanol, of amorphous cellulose by use of an engineered yeast strain codisplaying three types of cellulolytic enzyme. Appl Environ Microbiol 70:1207–1212

Fukaya Y, Hayashi K, Wada M, Ohno H (2008) Cellulose dissolution with polar ionic liquids under mild conditions: required factors for anions. Green Chem 10:44–46

Galazka JM, Tian C, Beeson WT, Martinez B, Glass NL, Cate JH (2010) Cellodextrin transport in yeast for improved biofuel production. Science 330:84–86

Galbe M, Liden G, Zacchi G (2005) Production of ethanol from biomass—research in Sweden. J Sci Ind Res India 64:905–919

Galbe M, Sassner P, Wingren A, Zacchi G (2007) Process engineering economics of bioethanol production. Adv Biochem Eng Biotechnol 108:303–327

Girio FM, Fonseca C, Carvalheiro F, Duarte LC, Marques S, Bogel-Lukasik R (2010) Hemicelluloses for fuel ethanol: a review. Bioresour Technol 101:4775–4800

Gnansounou E, Dauriat A, Wyman CE (2005) Refining sweet sorghum to ethanol and sugar: economic trade-offs in the context of North China. Bioresour Technol 96:985–1002

Goh CS, Tan KT, Lee KT, Bhatia S (2010) Bio-ethanol from lignocellulose: Status, perspectives and challenges in Malaysia. Bioresour Technol 101:4834–4841

Gonzalez-Garcia S, Iribarren D, Susmozas A, Dufour J, Murphy RJ (2012) Life cycle assessment of two alternative bioenergy systems involving *Salix* spp. biomass: bioethanol production and power generation. Appl Energy 95:111–122

Goodale CL, Apps MJ, Birdsey RA, Field CB, Heath LS, Houghton RA, Jenkins JC, Kohlmaier GH, Kurz W, Liu S, Nabuurs GJ, Nilsson S, hvidenko AZ (2002) Forest carbon sinks in the northern hemisphere. Ecol Appl 12:891–899

Guillaumie S, Goffner D, Barbier O, Martinant JP, Pichon M, Barriere Y (2008) Expression of cell wall related genes in basal and ear internodes of silking *brown-midrib-3*, caffeic acid *O*-methyltransferase (COMT) down-regulated, and normal maize plants. BMC Plant Biol 8:71

Ha SJ, Galazka JM, Rin KS, Choi JH, Yang X, Seo JH, Louise GN, Cate JH, Jin YS (2011) Engineered *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* capable of simultaneous cellobiose and xylose fermentation. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 108:504–509

Hahn-Hägerdal B, Wahlbom CF, Gardonyi M, Van Zyl WH, Cordero OR, Jonsson LJ (2001) Metabolic engineering of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* for xylose utilization. Adv Biochem Eng Biotechnol 73:53–84

Hahn-Hägerdal B, Galbe M, Gorwa-Grauslund MF, Lidén G, Zacchi G (2006) Bio-ethanol—the fuel of tomorrow from the residues of today. Trends Biotechnol 24:549–556

Hahn-Hägerdal B, Karhumaa K, Fonseca C, Spencer-Martins I, Gorwa-Grauslund MF (2007) Towards industrial pentose-fermenting yeast strains. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 74:937–953

Hamelinck CN, van Hooijdonk G, Faaij APC (2005) Ethanol from lignocellulosic biomass: techno-economic performance in short-, middle- and long-term. Biomass Bioenerg 28:384–410

Harris DARB, Stork JOZS, Debolt SETH (2009) Genetic modification in cellulose-synthase reduces crystallinity and improves biochemical conversion to fermentable sugar. GCB Bioenerg 1:51–61

Hasunuma T, Kondo A (2012) Consolidated bioprocessing and simultaneous saccharification and fermentation of lignocellulose to ethanol with thermotolerant yeast strains. Process Biochem 47:1287–1294

Heitz M, Capek-Menard E, Koeberle PG, Gagne J, Chornet E, Overend RP, Taylor JD, Yu E (1991) Fractionation of populus tremuloides at the pilot plant scale: optimization of steam pretreatment conditions using the STAKE II technology. Bioresour Technol 35:23–32

Hendriks ATWM, Zeeman G (2009) Pretreatments to enhance the digestibility of lignocellulosic biomass. Bioresour Technol 100:10–18

Herpoël-Gimbert I, Margeot A, Dolla A, Jan G, Molle D, Lignon S, Mathis H, Sigoillot JC, Monot F, Asther M (2008) Comparative secretome analyses of two *Trichoderma reesei* RUT-C30 and CL847 hypersecretory strains. Biotechnol Biofuels 1:18

Hess JR, Wright CT, Kenney KL (2007) Cellulosic biomass feedstocks and logistics for ethanol production. Biofuels, Bioprod Bioref 1:181–190

Hill J, Nelson E, Tilman D, Polasky S, Tiffany D (2006) Environmental, economic, and energetic costs and benefits of biodiesel and ethanol biofuels. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 103:11206–11210

Himmel ME, Xu Q, Luo Y, Ding SY, Lamed R, Bayer EA (2010) Microbial enzyme systems for biomass conversion: emerging paradigms. Biofuels 1:323–341

Holtzapple M, Lundeen J, Sturgis R, Lewis J, Dale B (1992) Pretreatment of lignocellulosic municipal solid waste by ammonia fiber explosion (AFEX). Appl Biochem Biotech 34–35:5–21

Hong J, Wang Y, Kumagai H, Tamaki H (2007) Construction of thermotolerant yeast expressing thermostable cellulase genes. J Biotechnol 130:114–123

Hood EE, Love R, Lane J, Bray J, Clough R, Pappu K, Drees C, Hood KR, Yoon S, Ahmad A, Howard JA (2007) Subcellular targeting is a key condition for high-level accumulation of cellulase protein in transgenic maize seed. Plant Biotechnol J 5:709–719

Hwang SS, Lee SJ, Kim HK, Ka JO, Kim KJ, Song HG (2008) Biodegradation and saccharification of wood chips of *Pinus strobus* and *Liriodendron tulipifera* by white rot fungi. J Microbiol Biotechnol 18:1819–1826

Ibrahim ASS, El-diwany A (2007) Isolation and identification of new cellulases producing thermophilic bacteria from an Egyptian hot spring and some properties of the crude enzyme. Aust J Basic Appl Sci 1:473–478

Ilmen M, Den Haan R, Brevnova E, Mcbride J, Wiswall E, Froehlich A, Koivula A, Voutilainen SP, Siika-aho M, La Grange DC, Thorngren N, Ahlgren S, Mellon M, Deleault K, Rajgarhia V, Van Zyl WH, Penttila M (2011) High level secretion of cellobiohydrolases by *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Biotechnol Biofuels 4:30

Imai M, Ikari K, Suzuki I (2004) High-performance hydrolysis of cellulose using mixed cellulase species and ultrasonication pretreatment. Biochem Eng J 17:79–83

Ingram LO, Conway T, Clark DP, Sewell GW, Preston JF (1987) Genetic engineering of ethanol production in *Escherichia coli*. Appl Environ Microbiol 53:2420–2425

Ingram LO, Conway T, Alterthum F (1991) Ethanol production by *Escherichia coli* strains co-expressing *Zymomonas* PDC and ADH genes. US Patent 5,000,000

Ito J, Kosugi A, Tanaka T, Kuroda K, Shibasaki S, Ogino C, Ueda M, Fukuda H, Doi RH, Kondo A (2009) Regulation of the display ratio of enzymes on the *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* cell surface by the immunoglobulin *G* and cellulosomal enzyme binding domains. Appl Environ Microbiol 75:4149–4154

Jeffries T, Shi NQ (1999) Genetic engineering for improved xylose fermentation by Yeasts. Adv Biochem Eng Biotechnol 65:117–161

Jeffries TW, Grigoriev IV, Grimwood J, Laplaza JM, Aerts A, Salamov A, Schmutz J, Lindquist E, Dehal P, Shapiro H, Jin YS, Passoth V, Richardson PM (2007) Genome sequence of the lignocellulose-bioconverting and xylose-fermenting yeast *Pichia stipitis*. Nat Biotechnol 25:319–326

Jeon E, Hyeon JE, Suh DJ, Suh YW, Kim SW, Song KH, Han SO (2009) Production of cellulosic ethanol in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* heterologous expressing *Clostridium thermocellum* endoglucanase and *Saccharomycopsis fibuligera* β-glucosidase genes. Mol Cells 28:369–373

Ji XJ, Huang H, Du J, Zhu JG, Ren LJ, Hu N, Li S (2009) Enhanced 2, 3-butanediol production by *Klebsiella oxytoca* using a two-stage agitation speed control strategy. Bioresour Technol 100:3410–3414

Karhumaa K, Wiedemann B, Hahn-Hagerdal B, Boles E, Gorwa-Grauslund MF (2006) Co-utilization of L-arabinose and D-xylose by laboratory and industrial *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* strains. Microb Cell Fact 5:18–28

Kazi FK, Fortman JA, Anex RP, Hsu DD, Aden A, Dutta A, Kothandaraman G (2010) Techno-economic comparison of process technologies for biochemical ethanol production from corn stover. Fuel 89:S20–S28

Khramtsov N, McDade L, Amerik A, Yu E, Divatia K, Tikhonov A, Minto M, Kabongo-Mubalamate G, Markovic Z, Ruiz-Martinez M, Henck S (2011) Industrial yeast strain engineered to ferment ethanol from lignocellulosic biomass. Bioresour Technol 102:8310–8313

Kim TH, Kim JS, Sunwoo C, Lee YY (2003) Pretreatment of corn stover by aqueous ammonia. Bioresour Technol 90:39–47

Kim Y, Hendrickson R, Mosier NS, Ladisch MR (2009) Liquid hot water pretreatment of cellulosic biomass. Biofuels. pp 93–102

Kitagawa T, Tokuhiro K, Sugiyama H, Kohda K, Isono N, Hisamatsu M, Takahashi H, Imaeda T (2010) Construction of a β-glucosidase expression system using the multistress-tolerant yeast *Issatchenkia orientalis*. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 87:1841–1853

Kristensen JB, Thygesen LG, Felby C, Jorgensen H, Elder T (2008) Cell-wall structural changes in wheat straw pretreated for bioethanol production. Biotechnol Biofuels 1:5

Kuo CH, Lee CK (2009) Enhanced enzymatic hydrolysis of sugarcane bagasse by *N*-methylmorpholine-*N*-oxide pretreatment. Bioresour Technol 100:866–871

Kurakake M, Ide N, Komaki T (2007) Biological pretreatment with two bacterial strains for enzymatic hydrolysis of office paper. Curr Microbiol 54:424–428

Kuyper M, Hartog MM, Toirkens MJ, Almering MJ, Winkler AA, Van Dijken JP, Pronk JT (2005) Metabolic engineering of a xylose-isomerase-expressing *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* strain for rapid anaerobic xylose fermentation. FEMS Yeast Res 5:399–409

La Grange DC, Den Haan R, Van Zyl WH (2010) Engineering cellulolytic ability into bioprocessing organisms. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 87:1195–1208

Lee YE, Lowe SE, Zeikus JG (1993) Regulation and characterization of xylanolytic enzymes of *Thermoanaerobacterium saccharolyticum* B6A-RI. Appl Environ Microbiol 59:763–771

Leibbrant N (2010) Techno-economic study for sugarcane bagasse to liquid biofuels in South Africa: a comparison between biological and thermochemical process routes. PhD dissertation, Stellenbosch University, South Africa, April 2010

Lilly M, Fierobe HP, Van Zyl WH, Volschenk H (2009) Heterologous expression of a *Clostridium minicellulosome* in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. FEMS Yeast Res 9:1236–1249

Linde M, Galbe M, Zacchi G (2010) Bioethanol production from non-starch carbohydrate residues in process streams from a dry-mill ethanol plant. Bioresour Technol 99:6505–6511

Linger JG, Adney WS, Darzins A (2010) Heterologous expression and extracellular secretion of cellulolytic enzymes by *Zymomonas mobilis*. Appl Environ Microbiol 76:6360–6369

Liu JM, Xin XJ, Li CX, Xu JH, Bao J (2012) Cloning of thermostable cellulase genes of *Clostridium thermocellum* and their secretive expression in *Bacillus subtilis*. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 166:652–662

Lu Y, Zhang YH, Lynd LR (2006) Enzyme-microbe synergy during cellulose hydrolysis by *Clostridium thermocellum*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 103:16165–16169

Lynd LR, Weimer PJ, Van Zyl WH, Pretorius IS (2002) Microbial cellulose utilization: Fundametals and biotechnology. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 66:506–577

Lynd LR, Van Zyl WH, McBride JE, Laser M (2005) Consolidated bioprocessing of cellulosic biomass: an update. Curr Opin Biotechnol 16:577–583

Masarin F, Gurpilhares DB, Baffa DC, Barbosa MH, Carvalho W, Ferraz A, Milagres AM (2011) Chemical composition and enzymatic digestibility of sugarcane clones selected for varied lignin content. Biotechnol Biofuels 4:55

Matano Y, Hasunuma T, Kondo A (2012) Display of cellulases on the cell surface of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* for high yield ethanol production from high-solid lignocellulosic biomass. Bioresour Technol 108:128–133

Mcbride J, Mellon M, Rajgarhia V, Brevnova E, Wiswall E, Hogsett DA, La Grange DC, Rose SH, Van Zyl WH (2012) Yeast cells expressing an exogenous cellulosome and methods of using the same. US Patent 2012/0142046A1

McKendry P (2002) Energy production from biomass (part 2): conversion technologies. Bioresour Technol 83:47–54

Miller WC (2010) Evaluation of feedstocks for cellulosic ethanol and bioproducts production in the Northwest. MSc thesis, Oregon State University

Moniruzzaman M, Lai X, York SW, Ingram LO (1997) Isolation and molecular characterization of high-performance cellobiose-fermenting spontaneous mutants of ethanologenic *Escherichia coli* KO11 containing the *Klebsiella oxytoca casAB* operon. Appl Environ Microbiol 63:4633–4637

Mosier NS, Hendrickson R, Brewer M, Ho N, Sedlak M, Dreshel R, Welch G, Dien BS, Aden A, Ladisch MR (2005) Industrial scale-up of pH-controlled liquid hot water pretreatment of corn fiber for fuel ethanol production. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 125:77–97

Murnen HK, Balan V, Chundawat SPS, Bals B, Da Costa Sousa L, Dale BE (2007) Optimization of ammonia fiber expansion (AFEX) pretreatment and enzymatic hydrolysis of *Miscanthus x giganteus* to fermentable sugars. Biotechnol Progress 23:846–850

Ohta K, Beall DS, Mejia JP, Shanmugam KT, Ingram LO (1991a) Metabolic engineering of *Klebsiella oxytoca* M5A1 for ethanol production from xylose and glucose. Appl Environ Microbiol 57:2810–2815

Ohta K, Beall DS, Mejia JP, Shanmugam KT, Ingram LO (1991b) Genetic improvement of *Escherichia coli* for ethanol production: chromosomal integration of *Zymomonas mobilis* genes encoding pyruvate decarboxylase and alcohol dehydrogenase II. Appl Environ Microbiol 57:893–900

Olson DG, McBride JE, Shaw AJ, Lynd LR (2012) Recent progress in consolidated bioprocessing. Curr Opin Biotechnol 23:1–11

Paiva JA, Prat E, Vautrin S, Santos MD, San Clemente H, Brommonschenkel S, Fonseca PG, Grattapaglia D, Song X, Ammiraju JS, Kudrna D, Wing RA, Freitas AT, Berges H, Grima-Pettenati J (2011) Advancing *Eucalyptus* genomics: identification and sequencing of lignin biosynthesis genes from deep-coverage BAC libraries. BMC Genomics 12:137

Pan X, Xie D, Yu RW, Saddler JN (2008) The bioconversion of mountain pine beetle-killed lodgepole pine to fuel ethanol using the organosolv process. Biotechnol Bioeng 101:39–48

Panagiotou G, Christakopoulos P, Olsson L (2005) Simultaneous saccharification and fermentation of cellulose by *Fusarium oxysporum F*3–growth characteristics and metabolite profiling. Enzyme Microb Technol 36:693–699

Papendieck A, Dahlems U, Gellissen G (2002) Technical enzyme production and whole-cell biocatalysis: application of *Hansenula polymorpha*. In: Gellissen G (ed) Hansenula polymorpha: biology and applications. Wiley-VCH, Weinham, pp 255–271

Pessani NK, Atiyeh HK, Wilkins MR, Bellmer DD, Banat IM (2011) Simultaneous saccharification and fermentation of Kanlow switchgrass by thermotolerant *Kluyveromyces marxianus* IMB3: the effect of enzyme loading, temperature and higher solid loadings. Bioresour Technol 102:10618–10624

Piccolo C, Bezzo F (2009) A techno-economic comparison between two technologies for bioethanol production from lignocellulose. Biomass Bioenergy 33:478–491

Piotek M, Hagedorn J, Hollenberg CP, Gellissen G, Srasser AWM (1998) Two novel gene expression systems based on the yeasts *Schwanniomyces occidentalis* and *Pichia stipitis*. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 50:331–338

Porzio GF, Prussi M, Chiaramonti D, Pari L (2012) Modelling lignocellulosic bioethanol from poplar: estimation of the level of process integration, yield and potential for co-products. J Clean Prod 34:66–75

Prior B, Day D (2008) Hydrolysis of ammonia-pretreated sugar cane bagasse with cellulase, β-glucosidase, and hemicellulase preparations. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 146:151–164

Raman B, Pan C, Hurst GB, Rodriguez M Jr, McKeown CK, Lankford PK, Samatova NF, Mielenz JR (2009) Impact of pretreated Switchgrass and biomass carbohydrates on *Clostridium thermocellum* ATCC 27405 cellulosome composition: a quantitative proteomic analysis. PLoS One 4:e5271

Reith JH, den Uil H, de Laat WTAM, Niessen JJ, de Jong E, Elbersen HW, Weusthuis R, Van Dijken JP, Raamsdonk L (2002) Co-production of bio-ethanol, electricity and heat from biomass residues. Energy Research Centre, Netherlands, report ECN-RX-02-030, July 2002

Robinson J (2006) Bio-ethanol as a household cooking fuel: a mini pilot study of the SuperBlu stove in peri-urban Malawi. MSc Thesis, Loughborough University, UK

Ryabova OB, Chmil OM, Sibirny AA (2003) Xylose and cellobiose fermentation to ethanol by the thermotolerant methylotrophic yeast *Hansenula polymorpha*. FEMS Yeast Res 4:157–164

Ryu SK, Lee JM (1983) Bioconversion of waste cellulose by using an attrition bioreactor. Biotechnol Bioeng 25:53–65

Sadie CJ, Rose SH, Den Haan R, Van Zyl WH (2011) Co-expression of a cellobiose phosphorylase and lactose permease enables intracellular cellobiose utilisation by *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 90:1373–1380

Sastri B, Lee A, Kaarsberg T, Alfstad T, Curtis M, MacNeil D (2008) World biofuels production potential. Office of Policy Analysis US Department of Energy, Washington

Sekar R, Shin HD, Chen R (2012) Engineering *Escherichia coli* cells for cellobiose assimilation through a phosphorolytic mechanism. Appl Environ Microbiol 78:1611–1614

Seon PJ, Russell JB, Wilson DB (2007) Characterization of a family 45 glycosyl hydrolase from *Fibrobacter succinogenes* S85. Anaerobe 13:83–88

Shadle G, Chen F, Srinivasa Reddy MS, Jackson L, Nakashima J, Dixon RA (2007) Down-regulation of hydroxycinnamoyl CoA: shikimate hydroxycinnamoyl transferase in transgenic alfalfa affects lignification, development and forage quality. Phytochemistry 68:1521–1529

Shaw AJ, Jenney FE, Adams MWW, Lynd LR (2008a) End-product pathways in the xylose fermenting bacterium, *Thermoanaerobacterium saccharolyticum*. Enzyme Microb Technol 42:453–458

Shaw AJ, Podkaminer KK, Desai SG, Bardsley JS, Rogers SR, Thorne PG, Hogsett DA, Lynd LR (2008b) Metabolic engineering of a thermophilic bacterium to produce ethanol at high yield. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 105:13769–13774

Shaw AJ, Hogsett DA, Lynd LR (2009) Identification of the [FeFe]-hydrogenase responsible for hydrogen generation in *Thermoanaerobacterium saccharolyticum* and demonstration of increased ethanol yield via hydrogenase knockout. J Bacteriol 191:6457–6464

Shin HD, McClendon S, Vo T, Chen RR (2010) *Escherichia coli* binary culture engineered for direct fermentation of hemicellulose to a biofuel. Appl Environ Microbiol 76:8150–8159

Sims R, Taylor M, Saddler J, Mabee W (2008) From 1st to 2nd-generation biofuel technologies—an overview of current industry and RD&D activities. International Energy Agency (IEA Bioenergy), Paris [http://www.task39.org/Publications.aspx]

Singh P, Suman A, Tiwari P, Arya N, Gaur A, Shrivastava A (2008) Biological pretreatment of sugarcane trash for its conversion to fermentable sugars. World J Microb Biot 24:667–673

Soccol CR, Vandenberghe LPdS, Medeiros ABP, Karp SG, Buckeridge M, Ramos LP, Pitarelo AP, Ferreira-Leitão V, Gottschalk LMF, Ferrara MA, Bon EPdS, de Moraes LMP, Araújo JdA, Torres FAG (2010) Bioethanol from lignocelluloses: status and perspectives in Brazil. Bioresour Technol 101:4820–4825

Somerville C, Youngs H, Taylor C, Davis SC, Long SP (2010) Feedstocks for lignocellulosic biofuels. Science 329:790–792

Srivastava R, Kumar GP, Srivastava KK (1995) Construction of a recombinant cellulolytic *Escherichia coli*. Gene 164:185–186

Stenberg K, Tengborg C, Galbe M, Zacchi G (1998) Optimisation of steam pretreatment of SO_2-impregnated mixed softwoods for ethanol production. J Chem Technol Biot 71:299–308

Stephanopoulos G (2007) Challenges in engineering microbes for biofuels production. Science 315:801–804

Sticklen MB (2007) Altering regulation of maize lignin biosynthesis enzymes via RNAi technology. US Patent 2008/0213871

Sun Y, Cheng J (2002) Hydrolysis of lignocellulosic materials for ethanol production: a review. Bioresour Technol 83:1–11

Sun Y, Cheng JJ (2005) Dilute acid pretreatment of rye straw and bermudagrass for ethanol production. Bioresour Technol 96:1599–1606

Sun J, Wen F, Si T, Xu JH, Zhao H (2012) Direct Conversion of Xylan to Ethanol by Recombinant *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* Strains Displaying an Engineered Mini-hemicellulosome. Appl Environ Microbiol 78(11):3837–3845

Torget R, Teh-An H (1994) Two-temperature dilute-acid prehydrolysis of hardwood xylan using a percolation process. Appl Biochem Biotech 45–46:5–22

Tsai SL, Oh J, Singh S, Chen R, Chen W (2009) Functional assembly of minicellulosomes on the *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* cell surface for cellulose hydrolysis and ethanol production. Appl Environ Microbiol 75:6087–6093

Tsai SL, Goyal G, Chen W (2010) Surface display of a functional minicellulosome by intracellular complementation using a synthetic yeast consortium and its application to cellulose hydrolysis and ethanol production. Appl Environ Microbiol 76:7514–7520

Van Dijken JP, Bauer J, Brambilla L, Duboc P, Francois JM, Gancedo C, Giuseppin ML, Heijnen JJ, Hoare M, Lange HC, Madden EA, Niederberger P, Nielsen J, Parrou JL, Petit T, Porro D,

Reuss M, van Riel N, Rizzi M, Steensma HY, Verrips CT, Vindelov J, Pronk JT (2000) An interlaboratory comparison of physiological and genetic properties of four *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* strains. Enzyme Microb Technol 26:706–714

van Rooyen R, Hahn-Hagerdal B, La Grange DC, Van Zyl WH (2005) Construction of cellobiose-growing and fermenting *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* strains. J Biotechnol 120:284–295

van Walsum GP, Allen SG, Spencer MJ, Laser MS, Antal MJ, Lynd LR (1996) Conversion of lignocellulosics pretreated with liquid hot water to ethanol. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 57–58:157–170

van Wyk N, Den Haan R, Van Zyl WH (2010) Heterologous co-production of *Thermobifida fusca* Cel9A with other cellulases in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 87:1813–1820

Van Zyl WH, Lynd LR, Den Haan R, McBride JE (2007) Consolidated bioprocessing for bioethanol production using *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Adv Biochem Eng Biotechnol 108:205–235

Van Zyl WH, Chimphango AFA, Den Haan R, Görgens JF, Chirwa PWC (2011) Next-generation cellulosic ethanol technologies and their contribution to a sustainable Africa. Interface Focus 1:196–211

Vancov T, McIntosh S (2011) Alkali pretreatment of cereal crop residues for second-generation biofuels. Energy Fuels 25:2754–2763

Verma A, Kumar S, Jain PK (2011) Key pretreatment technologies on cellulosic ethanol production. J Sci Res 55:57–63

Voelker SL, Lachenbruch BARB, Meinzer FC, Kitin PETE, Strauss SH (2011) Transgenic poplars with reduced lignin show impaired xylem conductivity, growth efficiency and survival. Plant, Cell Environ 34:655–668

von Sivers M, Zacchi G (1995) A techno-economical comparison of three processes for the production of ethanol from pine. Bioresour Technol 51:43–52

Voronovsky AY Rohulya OV Abbas CA Sibirny AA (2009) Development of strains of the thermotolerant yeast *Hansenula polymorpha* capable of alcoholic fermentation of starch and xylan. Metab Eng 11(4–5):234–242

Wadenback J, von Arnold S, Egertsdotter U, Walter MH, Grima-Pettenati J, Goffner D, Gellerstedt G, Gullion T, Clapham D (2008) Lignin biosynthesis in transgenic Norway spruce plants harboring an antisense construct for cinnamoyl CoA reductase (CCR). Transgenic Res 17:379–392

Wang H, Xue Y, Chen Y, Li R, Wei J (2012) Lignin modification improves the biofuel production potential in transgenic *Populus tomentosa*. Ind Crop Prod 37:170–177

Watanabe T, Watanabe I, Yamamoto M, Ando A, Nakamura T (2011) A UV-induced mutant of *Pichia stipitis* with increased ethanol production from xylose and selection of a spontaneous mutant with increased ethanol tolerance. Bioresour Technol 102:1844–1848

Weil J, Brewer M, Hendrickson R, Sarikaya A, Ladisch M (1998) Continuous pH monitoring during pretreatment of yellow poplar wood sawdust by pressure cooking in water. Appl Biochem Biotech 70–72:99–111

Wen F, Sun J, Zhao H (2010) Yeast surface display of trifunctional minicellulosomes for simultaneous saccharification and fermentation of cellulose to ethanol. Appl Environ Microbiol 76:1251–1260

Wood BE, Ingram LO (1992) Ethanol production from cellobiose, amorphous cellulose, and crystalline cellulose by recombinant *Klebsiella oxytoca* containing chromosomally integrated *Zymomonas mobilis* genes for ethanol production and plasmids expressing thermostable cellulase genes from *Clostridium thermocellum*. Appl Environ Microbiol 58:2103–2110

Wood BE, Beall DS, Ingram LO (1997) Production of recombinant bacterial endoglucanase as a co-product with ethanol during fermentation using derivitives of *Escherichia coli* KO11. Biotech Bioeng 55:547–555

Wyman CE, Dale BE, Elander RT, Holtzapple M, Ladisch MR, Lee YY (2005) Coordinated development of leading biomass pretreatment technologies. Bioresour Technol 96:1959–1966

Xiros C, Topakas E, Katapodis P, Christakopoulos P (2008) Evaluation of *Fusarium oxysporum* as an enzyme factory for the hydrolysis of brewer's spent grain with improved biodegradability for ethanol production. Ind Crop Prod 28:213–224

Xu Q, Singh A, Himmel ME (2009) Perspectives and new directions for the production of bioethanol using consolidated bioprocessing of lignocellulose. Curr Opin Biotechnol 20:364–371

Xu C, Qin Y, Li Y, Ji Y, Huang J, Song H (2010) Factors influencing cellulosome activity in consolidated bioprocessing of cellulosic ethanol. Bioresour Technol 101:9560–9569

Yamada R, Taniguchi N, Tanaka T, Ogino C, Fukuda H, Kondo A (2010) Cocktail δ-integration: a novel method to construct cellulolytic enzyme expression ratio-optimized yeast strains. Microb Cell Fact 9:32

Yanase H, Nozaki K, Okamoto K (2005) Ethanol production from cellulosic materials by genetically engineered *Zymomonas mobilis*. Biotechnol Lett 27:259–263

Yanase S, Hasunuma T, Yamada R, Tanaka T, Ogino C, Fukuda H, Kondo A (2010) Direct ethanol production from cellulosic materials at high temperature using the thermotolerant yeast *Kluyveromyces marxianus* displaying cellulolytic enzymes. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 88:381–388

Yang C, Shen Z, Yu G, Wang J (2008) Effect and aftereffect of γ radiation pretreatment on enzymatic hydrolysis of wheat straw. Bioresour Technol 99:6240–6245

Yomano LP, York SW, Ingram LO (1998) Isolation and characterization of ethanol-tolerant mutants of *Escherichia coli* KO11 for fuel ethanol production. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 20:132–138

Yoo JS, Jung YJ, Chung SY, Lee YC, Choi YL (2004) Molecular cloning and characterization of CMCase gene (*celC*) from *Salmonella typhimurium* UR. J Microbiol 42:205–210

You C, Zhang XZ, Sathitsuksanoh N, Lynd LR, Zhang YH (2012) Enhanced microbial cellulose utilization of recalcitrant cellulose by an ex vivo cellulosome-microbe complex. Appl Environ Microbiol 78:1437–1444

Zhang YH, Lynd LR (2004) Toward an aggregated understanding of enzymatic hydrolysis of cellulose: noncomplexed cellulase systems. Biotechnol Bioeng 88:797–824

Zhang XZ, Zhang YH (2010) One-step production of biocommodities from lignocellulosic biomass by recombinant cellulolytic *Bacillus subtilis*: Opportunities and challenges. Eng Life Sci 10:398–406

Zhang M, Chou YC, Picataggio SK, Finkelstein M (1997) Single *Zymomonas mobilis* strain for xylose and arabinose fermentation. US Patent 5,843,760

Zhang XZ, Sathitsuksanoh N, Zhu Z, Zhang YH (2011) One-step production of lactate from cellulose as the sole carbon source without any other organic nutrient by recombinant cellulolytic *Bacillus subtilis*. Metab Eng 13:364–372

Zhang J, Qu Y, Xiao P, Wang X, Wang T, He F (2012) Improved biomass saccharification by *Trichoderma reesei* through heterologous expression of *lacA* gene from *Trametes* sp. AH28-2. J Biosci Bioeng 113:697–703

Zheng Y, Pan Z, Zhang R (2009) Overview of biomass pretreatment for cellulosic ethanol production. Int J Agric Biol Eng 2:51–68

Zhou S, Ingram L (1999) Engineering endoglucanase-secreting strains of ethanologenic *Klebsiella oxytoca P*2. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 22:600–607

Zhou S, Davis FC, Ingram LO (2001) Gene integration and expression and extracellular secretion of *Erwinia chrysanthemi* endoglucanase CelY (*celY*) and CelZ (*celZ*) in ethanologenic *Klebsiella oxytoca P*2. Appl Environ Microbiol 67:6–14

Zhu S (2008) Use of ionic liquids for the efficient utilization of lignocellulosic materials. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 83:777–779

Zuroff TR, Curtis WR (2012) Developing symbiotic consortia for lignocellulosic biofuel production. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 93:1423–1435

Part IV
Biofuel Resources

Chapter 9
Potential Bioresources as Future Sources of Biofuels Production: An Overview

Veeranjaneya Reddy Lebaka (L)

Abstract In recent years, biofuels are receiving increasing public and scientific attention, because of the crude oil reserves of the world that are predicted to deplete in about 40 years and other factors such as uncertainties related to oil price, greenhouse gas emission, and the need for increased energy security and diversity. Biofuels are a wide range of fuels that are in some way derived from renewable bioresources. It is reported that fossil fuels—oil, coal, and natural gas—dominated the world energy economy, covering more than 80 % of the total primary energy supply. Renewable energy sources accounted for 9.8 % of the world's total primary energy supply in 2007. The wonderful development of the biofuel industry was heralded in the past few years, from the late 1970s as the renewable energy source to worldwide shortages of fossil fuels. Biofuels production is the process of preparing raw materials—starch- or sugar-containing for fermentation by microorganisms, which is currently the only microorganism used for converting sugar into alcohol and the heart of the fermentation process is the yeast cell. Demand for biofuels is increasing at a rate that will require serious consideration of alternatives to the primarily glucose-/starch-based feedstock over the next decade. Various lignocellulosic biomass sources such as agricultural residues, oils, oilseeds, wood and forest wastes, municipal solid wastes, wastes from the pulp and paper industry, and algae have the potential to serve as low-cost and abundant feedstock for biofuels production. Next generation biofuel production from high hydrocarbon (Latex producing) yielding plants and oligogeneous microorganisms are attracting the interest of many investigators in the area of novel and advanced fuels. Advanced genetic engineering tools offer the possibility of improved biodegradative capabilities of cellulases (cellulosomes) by

Veeranjaneya Reddy Lebaka (L) (✉)
Department of Microbiology, Yogi Vemana University,
Kadapa 516003 Andhra Pradesh, India
e-mail: lvereddy@yahoo.com

V. K. Gupta and M. G. Tuohy (eds.), *Biofuel Technologies*,
DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-34519-7_9,

reconstituting cellulosomes and with potent enzymes from different microbial species. Fast-growing grass species, halophytes specifically grown on marginal land and aquatic macrophytes, algae and other oil accumulating microorganisms could provide biofuel feedstock for biorefineries in the future. This chapter focuses the current status and future prospectus of research on 'liquid biofuel production from different potential substrates'. The first section discusses the introduction of biofuels, the second section gives a detailed presentation on the status and concerns of biofuels, and the third section discusses the types of biofuels and the production of especially liquid biofuels from different bioresources that are currently in use and also points to potential bioresources for future use.

9.1 Introduction

Consistent access to power, fuel, and water is important for continued growth and maintenance of human civilization. With world energy consumption predicted to increase to 54 % between 2001 and 2025, considerable focus is being directed toward the development of sustainable and carbon neutral energy sources to meet the future needs. Biofuels are an attractive alternative to current petroleum-based fuels as they can be utilized as transportation fuels with little change to current technologies. Liquid (ethanol, biodiesel) or gaseous (methane or hydrogen) biofuels are derived from organic materials such as starch, oilseeds, and animal fats, or cellulose (Fig. 9.1). Biofuels are receiving increasing public and scientific attention in their use as an alternative to petroleum-based fuels in transportation driven by four factors. First, there are increasing concerns about the world's dwindling petroleum supply amid continuing growth in demand and price volatility. Global demand for petroleum is projected to increase roughly from 50 % by 2030 to 118 million barrels per day (mbd), with the United States, Europe, and China projected to lead consumption at 28, 16, and 15 mbd, respectively. Since 1990, India's oil production has grown from about 650 thousand barrels per day to about 1 mbd in 2008.

Meanwhile, consumption has increased from 1.2 mbd from 1990 to around 3 mbd in 2008. Second, many nations are increasingly concerned about energy security. As global crude oil supply steadily declines, the remaining petroleum reserves grow increasingly concentrated, i.e., come under the control of a steadily declining number of producers. One consequence is an increasing dependence of petroleum importing regions on an ever-decreasing number of suppliers. For example, India imports the majority of its oil from about 10 countries. The gap between consumption and production has been expanding rapidly in the past few years due to growth. Consequently, India's oil imports have risen from US$ 6 billion in 1990 to $15 billion in 2000 and to US$77 billion in 2008. Various nations have taken steps explicitly aimed at increasing energy security by investing in domestic resources or considering strategies for developing alternative

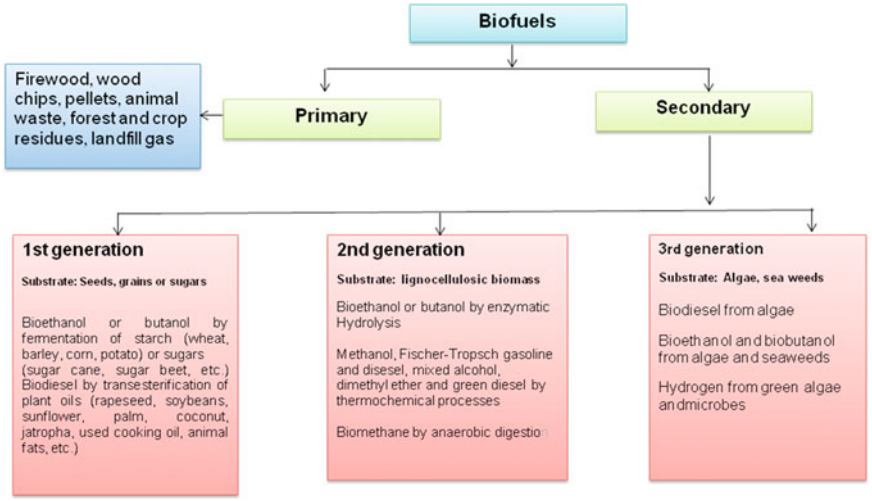


Fig. 9.1 Classification of biofuels depending on substrates used

energy sources. Third, addressing climate change will require a shift to nonpetroleum fuels, which presently account for one-fifth of the world's fossil carbon dioxide emissions and are rising at a rate of roughly 2.5 % per year. Several analyses conclude that biofuels could play a major role in strategies aimed at reducing carbon emissions and, when combined with carbon capture and sequestration technologies capable of extracting carbon dioxide from the atmosphere, minimizing atmospheric concentrations of greenhouse gases (GHGs). The fourth motivation for promoting biofuels derives from its potential to support development in rural areas of both industrialized nations, where governments are under increasing pressure to eliminate subsidies to the agricultural sector, and developing nations, where creating economic alternatives for rural communities is an abiding challenge (Azar et al. 2006; Sagar and Kartha 2007).

9.2 Concerns of Biofuel Production

The various biomass feedstock used for producing biofuels can be grouped into two basic categories: 'first generation' feedstock, which is harvested for sugar, starch, and oil content and can be converted into biofuels using conventional technologies, and 'second generation feedstock', which is harvested for total biomass and can only be converted into biofuels by advanced technical processes. Second generation feedstock can be acquired from various woody plants (e.g., hybrid poplar, eucalyptus), grassy crops (e.g., miscanthus, switchgrass, sweet sorghum), agricultural residues (e.g., bagasse, straw), and municipal solid waste (e.g., waste paper and yard waste). Second generation feedstock is considered the

least expensive and most abundant form of biomass and in energy content is comparable to first generation feedstock. The limiting factor for the use of second generation feedstock for biofuel production is the nonavailability of low-cost production and processing technologies that efficiently convert biomass into liquid fuel (Fig. 9.2). Consequently, current production economics are more favorable for conversion of first generation feedstock into biofuels. Biomass processing costs in ascending order are as follows: lignocellulose, starches, vegetable oils, latex (terpenes), algal lipids. Vegetable oils, starches, and sugarcane currently have lower conversion costs than other feedstock. Terpenes and algal lipids are currently too expensive to be used as liquid biofuel feedstock. Hence, many countries that foster biofuel development generally promote the use of agricultural and oil crops that are already produced on a large scale for human and animal consumption. For example, all of Brazil's ethanol production is derived from sugarcane, currently the highest volume ethanol feedstock worldwide. In the US, more that 90 % of the ethanol comes from corn, the world's second largest fuel crop and one of the most important agricultural crops globally. In Europe, about 70 % of the biodiesel is made from rapeseed, the world's second largest source of plant oils, with most of the remainder coming from sunflower seeds. Moreover, nearly all of the biodiesel produced in the US comes from soybeans, the world's largest source of plant oil for food and fuel. Interestingly, the two crops with the largest planted area worldwide, wheat and rice, are not significant sources of biofuel due to high

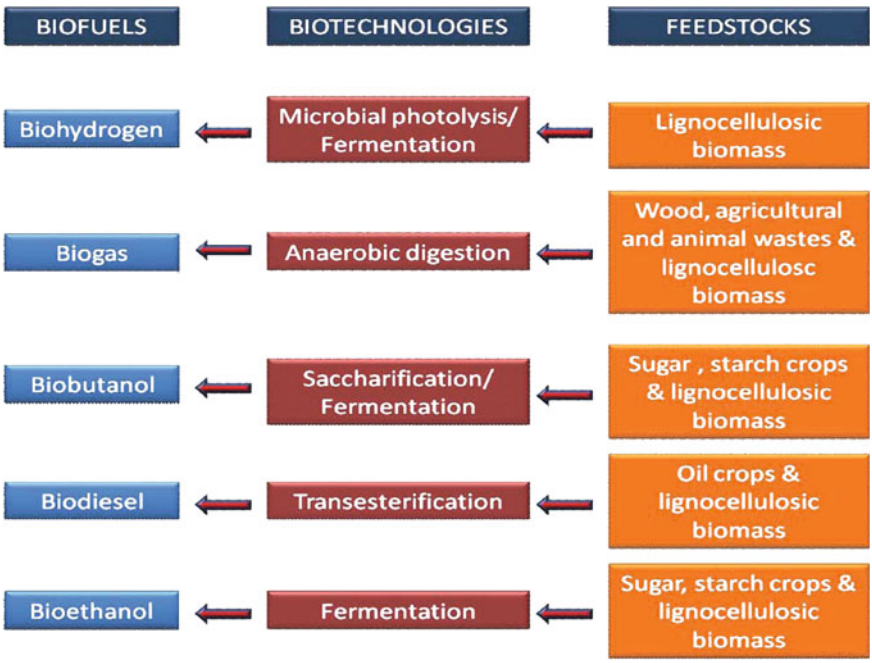


Fig. 9.2 Technologies used in production of various biofuels

demand as food. The use of agricultural crops as first generation feedstock for biofuel production raises ethical and moral questions due to the rising cost of food as well as direct competition with agriculture for arable land and food processing facilities.

Roughly 29 % (51×10^9 ha) of the Earth's surface is covered by land. Of this, about 10 % (4.9×10^9 ha) has been put into productive use. Productive use lands can be classified under three categories: (1) pastures and rangeland, (2) crops, and (3) settled land. Roughly 67 % of productive use land is devoted to pastures and rangeland, 29 % is devoted to crops, and human settlements cover about 4 % (about 0.2×10^9 ha). Agricultural food production doubled between 1961 and 1996 with only a 10 % increase in the land under cultivation, although irrigated cropland has increased by about 70 % over the past four decades (Foley et al. 2005). Agriculture accounts for an estimated 70–80 % of global water use, although for many countries the percentage is even higher (Gui et al. 2008). As world population and affluence increase, agriculture will face increased pressure to produce food more efficiently and to maintain the ecological sustainability of arable lands. In addition, the intensive use of fertilizers and pesticides on crops has also caused significant environmental problems. Rainforests in Brazil and South East Asia are currently being cleared at an unprecedented rate for soybean and oil palm plantations for the production of biofuels. Environmentalists are now debating the negative impact of biofuels production by deforestation activities and destruction of ecosystems (FAO 2006; Gui et al. 2008).

Approximately, 8 % of plant-based oil production is used as biodiesel, and this has contributed to price increases of oil crops such as rapeseed, palm, and soybean over the last few years. Increasing demand for corn for ethanol production in the United States has escalated the price of corn in Mexico, almost tripling between 2006 and 2007, and has led to a tortilla crisis in that country. This is an issue beyond just culinary or cultural overtones because poor Mexicans get more than 40 % of their protein from tortillas. At the same time, chicken feed costs in the United States increased by 40 % between the summer of 2006 and early 2007 because of rising corn prices. In addition, prices of sugar beets, wheat, maize, sugarcane, oilseeds, and cassava were 10, 16, 23, 43, and 54 % higher, respectively, than their baseline 2020 prices (Johanson and Azar 2007).

The Food and Agriculture Organization estimates that there were 963 million chronically undernourished people in developing countries in 2008 with attendant enormous human suffering and social and economic costs. About three quarters of these people are extremely poor rural inhabitants, mainly landless small farmers living in impoverished regions, underemployed agricultural laborers, and other artisans and traders whose livelihood depends on these groups (Manzoye 2001). The impoverishment of these groups has increased in many instances as the prices of agricultural commodities have shown not only a decline over the long term but also short-term volatility. Moreover, a decline in food prices often does not benefit this group because they are not purchasers of food. In such instances, a rise in food prices due to biofuels benefits countries and households that are net producers of

food, including the rural poor whose livelihoods are closely tied to the agricultural economy (Runge and Senauer 2007).

The world's arable land should remain for food crop cultivation in the light of environmental, economic, ethical, and moral issues. Furthermore, most of the second generation feedstock plants can be grown on marginal lands, thus avoiding competition with agriculture and fostering price stability in food commodities. Field et al. (2008) estimated abandoned lands at approximately 450 Mha worldwide. Additionally, a great deal of degraded land faces abandonment in the future if overuse continues. Estimates of moderately degraded lands (those lands with significant decreases in productivity) are up to 910 Mha worldwide, and the combined abandoned and degraded land area of 1,300–1,400 Mha is substantial when compared with the 5,700 Mha used for agriculture and animal production (Daily 1995; FAO 2000). Farming of biofuel crops on marginal or abandoned lands allows wasteland utilization, combats desertification, and also has potential economic benefits for small farmers.

9.3 Liquid Biofuels

The two primary pathways involved for producing liquid biofuels from biomass are biochemical conversion and thermochemical conversion. The most commonly known liquid biofuels such as ethanol, biodiesel, and butanol are produced through biochemical conversion of plant products (juice, grains, and whole biomass) that are derived from photosynthesis (Fig. 9.3). There are two main thermochemical pathways for converting biomass into liquid fuel, i.e., pyrolysis and thermochemical gasification. Pyrolysis uses high temperatures in the absence of oxygen to convert the biomass into liquid 'bio-oil', solid charcoal, and light gases (Kheshgi et al. 2000). Bio-oil is best suited for use as a fuel for stationary electric power or thermal energy applications, rather than as a transportation fuel (Ma and Hanna 1999). Thermochemical gasification, which entails partial combustion of a feedstock, involves decomposition of biomass into a gas consisting primarily of hydrogen, carbon monoxide, water vapor, nitrogen (unless gasified in oxygen rather than air), and small quantities of methane and higher hydrocarbons. This synthesis gas (or "syngas") can be then be cleaned and used as chemical feedstock in a manner very similar to petrochemical feedstock. Thermochemical gasification is an attractive alternative for producing biofuels because it can be used on many feedstock in addition to the starch, sugar, or oil food crops that are the basis of ethanol and biodiesel today. It can make use of the cellulosic fraction of biomass, as well as the lignin fraction, which typically comprises 20–30 % of woody biomass. Thermochemical gasification makes potential energy sources of waste streams, agricultural residues, and dedicated energy crops that can be grown on less-valuable land than annual food crops. Four biofuel options undergoing

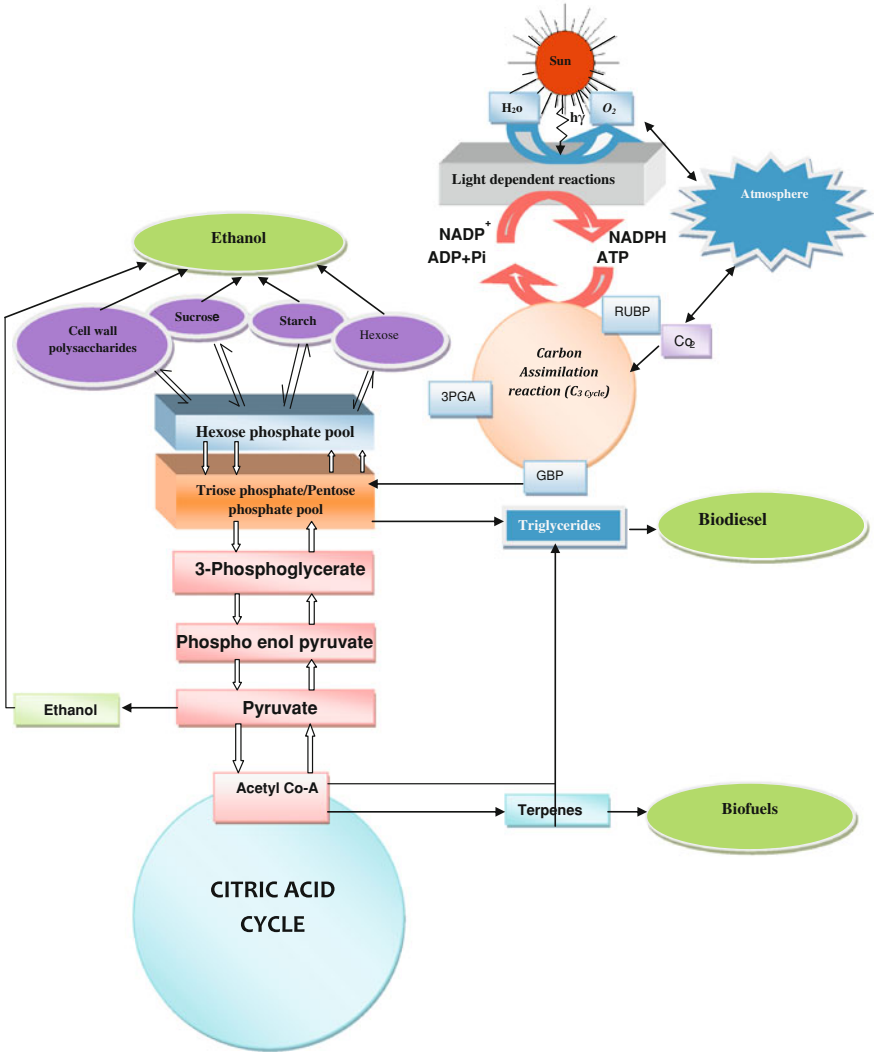


Fig. 9.3 Photosynthesis as the source of all biofuels

development that are produced via the thermochemical gasification route are methanol, hydrogen, Fischer–Topsch liquids, and dimethyl ether (Hamelinck and Faaji 2006). The importance of other alternative fuels such as biobutanol, biojet fuel, biohydrogen, biotolune, and numerous other hydrocarbon compounds have not received significant attention as compared to ethanol and biodiesel for various reasons.

9.3.1 Bioethanol

Ethanol if produced using a renewable substrates is named as bioethanol. Ethanol, both renewable and environmentally friendly, is believed to be one of the best alternatives, leading to a dramatic increase in its production capacity. China and India contributed 11 % to global ethanol production in 2006, and production levels were much lower in other countries (Johnston 2008; Naik et al. 2010). Ethanol can be produced from a variety of substrates including sugar-laden crops (e.g., sugarcane, sugar beet), starch-laden crops (e.g., corn and cassava), and lignocellulosic biomass. The substrate selection depends on availability depending upon countries' agricultural practices (Table 9.1). Cellulosic ethanol derives its appeal from the fact that it can be acquired from various choices of second generation feedstock. Production of ethanol from sugar-laden crops is the simplest route; the main steps are milling, pressing, fermentation, and distillation. Ethanol production from starch-laden crops requires the additional steps of liquefaction and saccharification (conversion of sugar). Presently, roughly 60 % of ethanol production is sugar based and 40 % is starch based. A key characteristic of cellulosic biomass is that it

Table 9.1 Fuel ethanol programs and feedstock used in some countries

Country	Feedstock	Percentage of ethanol in gasoline blends, % (v/v)	Remarks
Brazil	Sugarcane	24	ProAlcool program; hydrous ethanol is also used as fuel instead of gasoline
USA	Corn	10	Oxygenation of gasoline is mandatory in dirtiest cities; taxincentives; some states have banned MTBE; 5 % blends are also available
Canada	Corn, wheat, barley	7.5–10	Tax incentives; provincial programs aimed to meet Kyoto protocol
Colombia	Sugarcane	10	Began in November 2005; total tax exemption
Spain	Wheat, barley	–	Ethanol is used for ETBE production; direct gasoline blending is possible
France	Sugar beet, wheat, corn	–	Ethanol is used for ETBE production; direct gasoline blending is possible
Sweden	Wheat	5–85	Blends are also available; there is no ETBE production
China	Corn, wheat		Trial use of fuel ethanol in central and northeastern regions
India	Sugarcane	5–10	Ethanol blends are mandatory in all states
Thailand	Cassava, sugarcane, rice	10	All gasoline stations in Bangkok must sell ethanol blends; ethanol blends will be mandatory from 2007

is naturally resistant to decomposition into sugar molecules. Following pretreatment with steam and/or acid, cellulosic biomass produces a liquid slurry consisting mostly of hemicelluloses and lignin. More efficient and less-costly enzymes can be used to decompose cellulose and hemicelluloses into fermentable sugars, followed by treatment with specialized bacteria or yeasts that convert sugars into ethanol. The use of lignocellulosic biomass in biofuel production and future research needs have been recently summarized by Carroll and Somerville (2009).

The world's top ethanol fuel producers in 2008 were the United States with 9.0 bg (billion US liquid gallons) and Brazil (6.47 bg), accounting for 89 % of world production. Strong incentives, coupled with other initiatives, are giving rise to fledging ethanol industries in countries such as Canada, China, Thailand, Colombia, India, Australia, and some Central American countries. Nevertheless, ethanol is yet to make a significant impact on world oil consumption. Currently, India produces about 0.66 bg of ethanol, which is primarily used for potable and industrial purposes. Despite a 2004 mandate requiring 5 % ethanol blending with fuel, currently only a very small amount of ethanol is blended with petrol (Licht 2008).

9.3.1.1 Substrates for Ethanol Production

Well-studied and commercial technologies for ethanol production are crop based, utilizing substrates such as sugarcane juice, beet juice, molasses, and corn starch. Since the cost of raw materials can be as high as 40 % of the bioethanol cost (von Sivers et al. 1994; Wyman 1999), researchers have concentrated on utilizing lignocelluloses since the later 1990s. This natural and potentially cheap and abundant polymer is found as agricultural waste (wheat and rice straw, corn stalks, soybean residues, sugarcane bagasse), industrial waste (pulp and paper industry), forestry residues, municipal solid waste, etc. (Wiselogel et al. 1996). It has been estimated that lignocelluloses accounts for about 50 % of the biomass in the world and 10–50 billion tons.

9.3.1.2 Ethanol from Sugars

In general, the sugarcane juice and molasses (by-products of sugar mills) are the main feedstock for ethanol production. In Brazil, about 79 % of ethanol is produced from fresh sugarcane juice and the remaining percentage from cane molasses (Wilkie et al. 2000). Sugarcane molasses is the main feedstock for ethanol production in India; cane juice is not presently used for this purpose (Ghosh and Ghose 2003). Sugar beet juice and molasses are other sources of fermentable sugars for ethanol fermentation (production) especially in Europe. In the industrial production of ethanol, yeast, *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* is the most employed microorganism due to its capability to hydrolyze cane sucrose into glucose and fructose, two easily assimilable hexoses/sugars. Aeration is an

important factor for growth and ethanol production by *S. cerevisiae*. Although this microorganism has the ability to grow under anaerobic conditions, small amounts of oxygen are needed for the synthesis of substances like fatty acids and sterols. The oxygen may be supplied through the addition to the medium of some chemicals like urea hydrogen peroxide (carbamide peroxide), which also contributes to the reduction of bacterial contaminants as claimed in the patent of Narendranath et al. (2000). Other yeasts, as *Schizosaccharomyces pombe*, present the additional advantage of tolerating high osmotic pressures (high amounts of salts) and high solids content (Bullock 2002). Among bacteria, the most promising microorganism is *Zymomonas mobilis*, which has a low energy efficiency resulting in a higher ethanol yield (up to 97 % of theoretical maximum). However, its range of fermentable substrates is too narrow (glucose, fructose, and sucrose). Another disadvantage of the use of this bacterium during the fermentation of sugarcane syrup and other sucrose-based media is the formation of the polysaccharide levan (made up of fructose units), which increases the viscosity of fermentation broth, and of sorbitol, a product of fructose reduction that decreases the efficiency of the conversion of sucrose into ethanol (Lee and Huang 2000).

The high osmolality of the media based on cane molasses is negative for ethanolic fermentation. This osmolality is related to the concentration of sugars and salts in the medium. Different studies have been carried out in order to obtain *S. cerevisiae* strains with greater salt and temperature tolerance. For example, Morimura et al. (1997) developed by protoplast fusion and manipulating culture conditions, flocculating strains capable of growing at 35 °C and at molasses concentration of 22 % (w/v). Under these conditions and using repeated-batch cultures at laboratory scale, ethanol concentration of 91 g/l and productivities of 2.7 g/(l h) were obtained. However, the principal approach for avoiding the negative influence of salts and other compounds on the fermentation is through the conditioning of molasses by the addition of different compounds neutralizing the inhibitory effects of the medium components. In addition, molasses should be supplemented with nutritional factors promoting the yeast growth.

With the prevailing interest in high gravity fermentation both from quality and economic considerations, research and development efforts are being made to understand the process of alcohol production, namely excretion and tolerance by fermenting yeast strain. Earlier, several researchers investigated the increased production of ethanol by adding certain growth factors such as ergosterol, oleic acid, vegetable oils, fatty acids, soy flour, skimmed milk powder, chitin, polysaccharides, and fungal mycelium (Andersen and Stier 1953; Casey et al. 1984; Deepak and Visvanathan 1984; Viegas et al. 1984; Damoano and Wang 1985; Patil and Patil 1989). Similar studies were made by Reddy and Reddy (2005, 2006) using malted horse gram flour and finger millet flour.

9.3.1.3 Ethanol from Starch

Starch is a one of the best and most high yielding feedstock for ethanol production, but yeast *S. cereviciae* cannot utilize it directly. Hydrolysis is required to produce ethanol from starch by fermentation. Starch was traditionally hydrolyzed by acids, but the specificity of the enzymes, their inherent mild reaction conditions, and the absence of secondary reactions have made the amylases to be the catalysts generally used for this process. There are two steps present in hydrolysis of starch using amylases. First, these starch suspensions should be brought to high temperatures (90–110 °C) for the breakdown of starch kernels. The product of this first step, called liquefaction, is a starch solution containing dextrines and small amounts of glucose. In second step, the liquefied starch is subject to saccharification at lower temperatures (60–70 °C) through glucoamylase obtained generally from *Aspergillus niger* or *Rhizopus* species (Pandey et al. 2000; Shigechi et al. 2004). Apar and Ö zbek (2004) provide information about the effects of operating conditions on the enzymatic hydrolysis of corn starch using commercial a-amylase. In previous years, the possibility of hydrolyzing starch at low temperatures for achieving energy savings is being investigated (Robertson et al. 2006).

Potential Starchy Substrates for Ethanol Production

Corn:

Ethanol is produced almost exclusively from corn in the USA. Corn is milled for extracting starch, which is enzymatically treated for obtaining glucose syrup. Then, this syrup is fermented into ethanol. There are two types of corn milling in the industry: wet and dry. During the wet-milling process, corn grain is separated into its components. Starch is converted into ethanol and the remaining components are sold as co-products. During dry-milling, grains are not fractionated and all their nutrients enter the process and are concentrated into a distillation co-product utilized for animal feed called Dried Distiller's Grains with solubles (DDGS) (Gaulati et al. 1996).

Wheat:

Generally in Europe, ethanol is mostly produced from beet molasses; in some countries like France it is also produced from wheat by a process similar to that of corn. Some efforts have been made for optimizing fermentation conditions. For example, Wang et al. (1999) have determined the optimal fermentation temperature and specific gravity of the wheat mash. Soni et al. (2003) have optimized the conditions for starch hydrolysis using α-amylase and glucoamylase obtained by solid-state fermentation of wheat bran.

Cassava:

Cassava is an important alternative source of starch for ethanol production and for production of glucose syrups. Cassava is the tuber that has gained most interest due to its availability in tropical countries being one of the top ten more important tropical crops. Ethanol production from cassava can be accomplished using either

the whole cassava tuber or the starch extracted from it. Starch extraction can be carried out through a high-yield large-volume industrialized process as the Alfa Laval extraction method (FAO 2004), or by a traditional process for small- and mid-scale plants. This process can be considered as the equivalent of the wet-milling process for ethanol production from corn. The production of cassava with high starch content (85–90 % dry matter) and less protein and minerals content is relatively simple.

Others:

Besides corn and wheat, ethanol can be produced from rye, barley, triticale (Wang et al. 1997), and sorghum (Prasad et al. 2007). For these cereals, some pretreatments have proved to be useful. Abd-Aziz (2002) suggested the utilization of sago palm for ethanol production in the case of Malaysia. The ethanol production from bananas and banana wastes using commercial a-amylase and glucoamylase has been studied by Hammond et al. (1996). In their work, an ethanol yield of 0.5 L EtOH/kg dry matter of ripe bananas was obtained. The processing of starch-containing food wastes by adding malt to the pulverized feedstock has been patented (Chung and Nam 2002). One of the most promising crops for fuel ethanol production is sweet sorghum, which produces grains with high starch content, stalks with high sucrose content and leaves, and bagasse with high lignocellulosic content. In addition, this crop can be cultivated in both temperate and tropical countries requiring only one-third of the water needed for cane cropping and half of the water required by corn. Moreover, it is tolerant to the drought, flooding, and saline alkalinity (Winner Network 2002). Grassi (1999) reports that from some varieties of sweet sorghum, the following productivities can be obtained: 5 ton/Ha grains, 8 ton/Ha sugar, and 17 ton dry matter/Ha lignocellulosics. The estimated price for fuel ethanol production from this feedstock is US$200–300/$m^3$, whereas the corresponding one for sugarcane ethanol is 260, for corn ethanol is 300–420, and for lignocellulosic ethanol is 450.

9.3.1.4 Ethanol from Lignocellulosic Biomass

Lignocellulosic complex is the most abundant biopolymer on the Earth. It is considered that lignocellulosic biomass comprises about 50 % of world biomass and its annual production was estimated at 10–50 billion tons. Many lignocellulosic materials have been tested for bioethanol production as observed in Table 9.5. In general, prospective lignocellulosic materials for fuel ethanol production can be divided into six main groups: crop residues (cane bagasse, corn stover, wheat straw, rice straw, rice hulls, barley straw, sweet sorghum bagasse, olive stones and pulp), hardwood (aspen, poplar), softwood (pine, spruce), cellulose wastes (newsprint, waste office paper, recycled paper sludge), herbaceous biomass (alfalfa hay, switchgrass, reed canary grass, coastal Bermudagrass, timothy grass), and municipal solid wastes (MSW). The composition of most of these materials can be found elsewhere (e.g. Sun and Cheng 2002). Numerous studies for developing large-scale production of ethanol from lignocellulosics have been

carried out in the world. However, the main limiting factor is the higher degree of complexity inherent to the processing of this feedstock. This is related to the nature and composition of lignocellulosic biomass. Two of the main polymers of the biomass should be broken down into fermentable sugars in order to be converted into ethanol or other valuable products. But this degradation process is complicated, energy-consuming, and incompletely developed.

Pretreatment of Lignocellulosic Biomass

Feedstock pretreatment is the main processing challenge in the ethanol production from lignocellulosic biomass. The lignocellulosic complex is made up of a matrix of cellulose and lignin bound by hemicellulose chains. During the pretreatment, this matrix should be broken in order to reduce the crystallinity degree of the cellulose and increase the fraction of amorphous cellulose, the most suitable form for enzymatic attack. Additionally, the main part of hemicellulose should be hydrolyzed and lignin should be released or even degraded. The fact that the cellulose hydrolysis is affected by the porosity (accessible surface area) of lignocellulosic materials should be also considered. The yield of cellulose hydrolysis is less than 20 % of the theoretical when pretreatment is not carried out, whereas the yield after pretreatment often exceeds 90 % of theoretical (Lynd 1996). Therefore, the aim of the pretreatment is the removal of lignin and hemicellulose, the reduction of crystalline cellulose, and the increase in the porosity of the materials. Additionally, the pretreatment should improve the formation of sugars or the ability to form them during the succeeding enzymatic hydrolysis, and avoid the formation of inhibitors for subsequent hydrolysis and fermentation processes. For the pretreatment of lignocellulosics, several physical, physical–chemical, chemical, and biological processes have been proposed and developed and every method has its own merits and demerits (Sun and Cheng 2002). During pretreatment and hydrolysis of lignocellulosic biomass, a great amount of compounds that can seriously inhibit the subsequent fermentation are formed in addition to fermentable sugars. Inhibitory substances are generated as a result of the hydrolysis of the extractive components, organic and sugar acids esterified to hemicellulose (acetic, formic, glucuronic, galacturonic), and solubilized phenolic derivatives. Hence, detoxification of the lignocelluloses hydrolysate is essential for better fermentation and product yields. Detoxification methods can be physical, chemical, or biological. As pointed out by Palmqvist and Hahn-Hägerdal (2000), these methods cannot be directly compared because they vary in the neutralization degree of the inhibitors.

9.3.1.5 Comparison of the Main Types of Feedstock

The selection of the suitable feedstock for ethanol production strongly depends on the local conditions. Evidently, North American and European countries have

based their ethanol industry on the starchy materials due to their agro-ecological conditions. These conditions are not appropriate for cultivation of sugarcane, the highest yielding feedstock. The use of starchy crops, specifically corn, for bioethanol production has provoked a hot debate on the suitability of these raw materials considering the energy input required for their production (Patzek et al. 2005; Pimentel 2003; Shapouri et al. 2003). For energy considerations crops yield should be analyzed. The calculated ethanol yield from corn is greater than that from sugarcane because of the higher amount of fermentable sugars (glucose) that may be released from the original starchy material (Table 9.2). However, the annual ethanol yield from each hectare of cultivated corn is lower than that for sugarcane. For the case of beet molasses, the yield per ton of feedstock is lower compared to corn, but as the beet productivity per cultivated hectare is considerably higher, the annual ethanol yield expressed in L/(Ha year) is higher related to starchy materials (beet: 6,600, dry-milled wheat: 3,214, wet milled wheat: 2,555) (Poitrat 1999). On the other hand, the high moisture content of cassava implies the use of a greater amount of feedstock to reach the same starch content related to corn. However, the crop yields of cassava are higher than that of corn. Moreover, the corn yield in some tropical countries is significantly lower than the corn yield in the USA favoring the use of cassava instead of corn in such countries. For instance, the yield of technified corn in Colombia reaches only 3.9 ton/Ha whereas the cassava yield can reach 30 ton/Ha. This yield leads to an ethanol yield of 5,400 L/(Ha year), greater than the expected yield from corn under Colombian conditions that reaches 4,329 L/(Ha year) (Agrocadenas 2006).

Lignocellulosic materials represent a promising option as a feedstock for ethanol production considering their output/input energy ratio, their great availability both in tropical and temperate countries, their low cost (primarily related to their transport), and their ethanol yields (Table 9.2). One of the advantages of the use of lignocellulosic biomass is that this feedstock is not directly related to food production. This implies the production of bioethanol without the need of employing vast extensions of fertile cultivable land for cropping cane or corn exclusively dedicated to the bioenergy production. In addition, lignocellulosics is a resource that can be processed in different ways for production of many other products like synthesis gas, methanol, hydrogen, and electricity (Chum and Overend 2001). The selection of the lignocellulosic feedstock is the interest of each country for transferring value to the produced wastes, especially for those wastes that do not have value as a food. For the case of the USA, corn stover is considered one of the most promising feedstock due to its wide availability. The total availability of this material in such a way that its recollection and use be environmentally sustainable, has been estimated in about 80–100 million dry tons per year becoming the most abundant agricultural residue in the world. Kadam and McMillan (2003), citing nonpublished data from the NREL, indicate that the theoretical yield of this material is 480 L EtOH/dry tons, assuming that both hexoses and pentoses can be fermented into ethanol. These authors point out that 33 million tons per year of corn stover would be necessary to ensure the total ethanol production of 11,000 million liters per year considering a more realistic yield of 330 L EtOH/dry

Table 9.2 Comparative indexes for the three main types of feedstock for fuel ethanol production

Item	Sucrose-containing materials	Starchy materials	Lignocellulosic biomass	Remarks	References
Feedstock yield, ton/Ha	70–122.9			Sugarcane; Brazil, Colombia	Agrocadenas (2006)
		20		Cassava	Agrocadenas (2006)
		35		Sweet sorghum	Agrocadenas (2006)
		1.5–3.0		Wheat	Agrocadenas (2006)
		6–10.07		Corn; USA	Agrocadenas (2006)
			19.6–34.40	Cane bagasse	Moreira (2000)
			6.59–11.06	Corn stover	Kim and Dale (2004)
			1.93–3.86	Wheat straw	Kim and Dale (2004)
Feedstock cost	US$/kg 0.0100			sugarcane; Brazil	Macedo and Nogueira (2005)
		0.0760 Corn;		USA	McAloon et al. (2000)
	0.0124	1,300		Cane/corn; Colombia	Quintero et al. (2007)
			0.0295	Dry corn stover, USA	Aden et al. (2002)
EtOH yield, l/ton	70			sugarcane juice	Moreira and Goldemberg (1999)
	100			Sugar beet	Berg (2001)
		180		Cassava	Agrocadenas (2006)
		86		Sweet sorghum	Agrocadenas (2006)
		340–350		Wheat	Agrocadenas (2006)
		370		Corn	Agrocadenas (2006)
		403.1		Corn, wet milling	Gulati et al. (1996)
		419.4–460.6		Corn, dry milling	Gulati et al. (1996)
			140	Cane bagasse	Moreira (2000)
			261.3	Wheat straw	Kim and Dale (2004)
			227.7	Corn stover	Kim and Dale (2004)
			330	Dry corn stover; USA	Kadam and McMillan (2003)

(continued)

Table 9.2 (continued)

Item	Sucrose-containing materials	Starchy materials	Lignocellulosic biomass	Remarks	References
Annual EtOH yield, L/(Ha year)	5,345–9,381			Sugarcane; Brazil, Colombia	Agrocadenas (2006)
	6,600			Sugar beet; France	Poitrat (1999)
			3,600	Cassava	Agrocadenas (2006)
			9,030	Sweet sorghum	Agrocadenas (2006)
			1,020–3,214	Wheat	Agrocadenas (2006), Poitrat (1999)
			6,600	Corn	Agrocadenas (2006)
Production costs, US$/L anhydrous EtOH	0.1980			Sugarcane; Brazil	Xavier (2007)
	0.2153	0.3381		Sugarcane/corn; Colombia	Quintero et al. (2007)
		0.2325	0.3963	Corn/corn stover; USA	McAloon et al. (2000)
Output/input energy ratio	8.0			Sugarcane	Berg (2001)
	1.9			Sugar beet	Berg (2001)
		1.34–1.53		Corn; USA	Berg (2001), Shapouri et al. (2003)
			6.0	Biomass	Berg (2001)
Possibility of co-generation	Yes	No	Yes		
Co-products	Concentrated stillage for fertilization	DDGS (dry milling)	Lignin as feedstock for chemicals		

Source Sanchez and Cardona (2008)

tons. The above-mentioned demonstrates the vast possibilities of biomass taking into account that, in this case, there will be no competition for cultivable land with crops dedicated to food production.

Other studies have been oriented to the use of rice straw for ethanol production (Kadam et al. 2000). Kim and Dale (2004) provide an interesting panorama on the size of the bioethanol feedstock resource at global and regional levels considering wasted crops (crops lost in distribution) and lignocellulosic biomass (crop residues and sugarcane bagasse). These authors estimate that the global potential ethanol production from these feedstock accounts 491 GL/year that is 16 times higher than current ethanol production. This amount of bioethanol could replace 32 % of global gasoline consumption. For them, rice straw is the feedstock that potentially could produce the largest amounts of ethanol, followed by wheat straw in countries like India and China. However, the great-scale ethanol production from lignocellulosic biomass could entail serious economic and environmental consequences (Berndes et al. 2001). These authors estimate that labor requirements for bioenergy production on a great scale in whatever country should not exceed 1 % of total manpower. Grassi (1999) points out that the development of bioenergy production technologies would represent the creation of 200,000 direct and indirect jobs and the reduction of 255 million tons per year of CO_2 in 2010. Once these technological limitations that are conversion processes of biomass into ethanol are overcome, lignocellulosic biomass will be the main feedstock for ethanol production.

A complete economic and environmental evaluation of the different feedstock is required in order to make decisions on the most appropriate raw materials for fuel ethanol production in each case. A useful approach for performing such evaluations is to employ simulation tools based on realistic data obtained from existing ethanol production facilities, pilot plants, or mathematical models. In addition, this approach allows the analysis of how different technological configurations (e.g., SHF or SSF) have influence on the indicators of the overall process. Examples of these comparative studies can be found in the works of McAloon et al. (2000) and Cardona et al. (2005) for corn and lignocellulosic ethanol, Quintero et al. (2007) for sugarcane and corn ethanol, and Aden et al. (2002) and Wooley et al. (1999) for lignocellulosic biomass. By comparing all three types of feedstock (sugar, starch, and lignocellulose), conversion of lignocellulosic biomass into ethanol is economical and sustainable technology through the usage of best hydrolysis methods (Table 9.3).

9.4 Biobutanol

Butanol is a four carbon alcohol ($C_4H_{10}O$). It contains more hydrogen and carbon compared to ethanol (Ramey 2004). Butanol fermentation was first discovered by Pasteur in 1861, and this work was followed by studies on the production of this chemical and feedstock by various investigators in the latter part of the nineteenth

Table 9.3 Research trends and priorities for improving fuel ethanol and butanol production from different feedstock

Issue	All feedstock	Sucrose-containing materials	Starchy materials	Lignocellulosic biomass
Feedstock	Reduction in costs of feedstock by improving crop yields, pest resistance, and cropping systems	Increase in crop productivity	Utilization of native starchy material other than cereal grains (cassava, indigenous roots, etc.)	Evaluation of the use of dedicated energy crops
				Genetic modification of herbaceous plants for changing their carbohydrate content
			Development of corn hybrids with higher extractable starch or with higher fermentable starch content	Economic utilization of different and alternative wastes like MSW
			Genetic improvement of corn (e.g. ''self-processing grains")	
Pretreatment		Removal of impurities and toxic substances from molasses	Reduction of energy costs of liquefaction	Reduction of milling power
				Optimization of steam explosion and dilute acid pretreatment
				Development of LHW, AFEX, and alkaline hydrolysis
				Reduced formation of inhibitors
				Recycling of concentrated acids
Hydrolysis			Low-temperature digestion of starch	Increase in specific activity, thermal stability, and cellulose-specific binding of cellulases (e.g. by protein engineering). Reduction of costs of cellulases production (10-fold reduction). Cellulases production by solid-state fermentation. Recycling of cellulases improvement of acid hydrolysis of MSW
Fermentation	Continuous fermentation with high cell density and increased yields and productivity	Reduction of inhibition by ethanol	Recombinant strains of yeasts with increased productivity and ethanol tolerance	Increase in conversion of glucose and pentoses into ethanol
		Microorganisms with increased osmotolerance or flocculating properties	High cell-density fermentation (e.g. immobilized cells, flocculating yeasts, membrane reactors, etc.)	Recombinant strains with increased stability and efficiency for assimilating hexoses and pentoses, and for working at higher temperatures
				Very high gravity fermentations
				Development of strains more tolerant to the inhibitors
				Increase of ethanol tolerance in pentose fermenting microorganism.

Source Sanchez and Cardona (2008)

century. In the early part of the twentieth century, Chaim Weizman (Manchester University 1912) isolated a bacterial strain capable of producing significant amounts of acetone and butanol that was named *Clostridium acetobutylicum*. Butanol is easier to blend with gasoline and other hydrocarbon products and also contains more heat energy than ethanol, which equates to a 25 % increase in harvestable energy (Btu's). It contains 110,000 BTUs per gallon, closer to gasoline's 115,000 BTUs, and is safer to handle with a Reid Value of 0.33 psi, which is a measure of a fluid's rate of evaporation when compared to gasoline at 4.5 and ethanol at 2.0 psi. Butanol is far less corrosive than ethanol and can be shipped and distributed through existing pipelines and filling stations. An 85 % butanol/gasoline blend can be used in unmodified petrol engines and butanol is much less evaporative than gasoline or ethanol, making it safer to use and generating fewer volatile organic compound (VOC) emissions (Qureshi et al. 2010a, b). Butanol contains 22 % oxygen making it a beneficiary fuel extender that is cleaner burning than ethanol (Ezeji et al. 2007). Ramey (2004) also reported that when consumed in an internal combustion engine it yields only carbon dioxide, making it more environmental friendly than biofuel.

9.4.1 Substrates for Butanol Production

Butanol producing cultures can utilize a wide variety of carbohydrates including lactose, sucrose (molasses), glucose, fructose, mannose, dextrin, starch, xylose, arabinose, and inulin derived from feed materials such as whey permeate, maize, millet, rye, sugar beet, wheat, oats, Jerusalem artichoke, and sulfite waste liquor (a by-product of paper industry that contains glucose, xylose, and arabinose). Xylose and arabinose are pentose sugars and are present in cellulosic substrates. The ability to use all these carbohydrates makes it possible to ferment nearly all the agricultural substrates such as woody biomass, agricultural residues, waste materials, and energy crops including switchgrass and miscanthus (Table 9.4).

9.4.1.1 Molasses and Whey Permeate

As a feedstock, cane molasses has numerous advantages compared to maize including easy handling and the fact that it contains sucrose that is easily hydrolyzed by solventogenic Acetone–Butanol–Ethanol (ABE) clostridia followed by the conversion of sugars into butanol. Additional advantages of molasses have been described elsewhere (Qureshi and Blaschek 2005). Whey permeate, a by-product of the dairy industry, is another valuable substrate that contains approximately 44–50 g/l lactose. Butanol-producing cultures can hydrolyze lactose to its component sugars followed by their use for producing butanol (Maddox et al. 1993). The culture does not require any additional exogenous enzyme for this hydrolysis. Whey permeates with this concentration of lactose is an ideal substrate

Table 9.4 Agricultural residues used for butanol production

Substrate	Culture	Max ABE concentration (g/l)	ABE yield (7)	ABE production (g/l.h)	Comments	References
Potato starch	*C. actobutylicum* DSM1731	12.1	0.241	0.24	Unhydrolyzed potato starch	Gutierrez et al. (1998)
Mixed Ag Res.	*C. beijerinckii* BA101	14.8	–	0.22	Actual agricultural waste	Jesse et al. (2002)
Corn fiber	*C. beijerinckii* BA101	9.3 + 0.5	0.39	0.10	Lime and XAD-4 treated	Qureshi et al. (2008)
DDGS	*C. saccharobutylicum* P262	12.1	0.31	–	Lime-treated DDGS	Ezeji and Blaschek (2008)
Wheat straw	*C. beijerinckii* P260	47.6	0.37	0.36	Simultaneous product removal	Qureshi et al. (2007)
Barley straw	*C. beijerinckii* P260	26.6	0.43	0.39	Lime-treated hydrolysate	Qureshi et al. (2010a, b)
Corn stover	*C. beijerinckii* P260	26.3	0.44	0.31	Lime-treated hydrolysate	Qureshi et al. (2010a, b)
Corn stover	*C. acetobutylicum* P262	25.7	0.34	–	Corn stover treated with SO2	Parekh et al. (1988)
Switchgrass	*C. beijerinckii* P260	14.6	0.39	0.17	Dilution with water	Qureshi et al. (2010a, b)
HW, CC, SS	*C. acetobutylicum2*	–	0.36	–	Large plant in Soviet Union	Zverlov et al. (2006)
Corncobs	*C. acetobutylicum* IFP913	20.5	0.31	0.96	48 m^3 size reactor	Marcha et al. (1992)
Inulin	*C. acetobutylicum* IFP9042	23–24	–	0.671	Inulinase was used	Marcha et al. (1985)

Source Qureshi (2010)

for butanol fermentation as the culture cannot use more than 50 g/l sugar for producing ABE in a batch process. This limitation is because of the butanol toxicity to the culture. Soya molasses is another substrate that can be used for butanol fermentation. Spray-dried soya molasses contain approximately 746 g carbohydrates per kg of which 434 g/kg (58 %) are fermentable sugars including glucose, sucrose, fructose, and galactose (Qureshi et al. 2001). The sugars, pinitol, raffinose, verbascose, melibiose, and stachyose cannot be fermented by *Clostridia*. However, their use should be possible after hydrolysis either using enzymes or dilute acid. Alternately, a solventogenic strain can be developed that can hydrolyze these sugars to monomeric carbohydrates and convert them into butanol. In addition to the above-mentioned substrates, substrates such as contaminated maize and fruit industry wastes have been demonstrated to be useful for this fermentation (Jesse 2002).

9.4.1.2 Starch

Since *Clostridia* are capable of hydrolyzing starch, potatoes and potato wastes have been evaluated as potential substrates for fermentation (Table 9.4). Starch concentration in the medium was limited to 45–48 g/l. To investigate if the hydrolytic step is required before fermentation, both hydrolyzed and unhydrolyzed potatoes were used for this fermentation. Unhydrolyzed potato starch resulted in the production of 12 g/l ABE, whereas after hydrolysis it resulted in the production of 10.4–11.4 g/l ABE suggesting that hydrolysis is not a requirement for using this substrate for ABE fermentation. Similarly, maize starch can be readily fermented to ABE.

9.4.1.3 Lignocellulose

Including the above traditional substrates, there are some novel and potential lignocellulosic substrates like maize fiber, maize stover, DDGE, wheat straw, rice straw, barley straw, switch grass, hemp waste, corn cobs, and sunflower shells available for ABE production (Table 9.4). Maize fiber is a by-product of the maize wet milling process and contains 60–70 % carbohydrates. One-fourth amount of butanol can be produced from available maize fiber. Maize fiber xylan is also evaluated for the production of ABE (Qureshi et al. 2006). Distillers dry grains and soluble (DDGS) is a by-product of the ethanol fermentation industry using dry milling process, where after fermentation, solids that contain maize fiber, cell mass, and other insoluble components are removed and dried. In a recent study, Ezeji and Blaschek (2008) used hydrolyzed DDGS for the production of butanol using *C. beijerinckii* BA101, *C. beijerinckii* P260, *C. acetobutylicum* 824, *C. sacchrobutylicum* P262, and *C. butylicum* 592.

Wheat straw is another potential substrate that can be used for the production of ABE. In a recent study, wheat straw was pretreated using dilute (1 %, v/v) sulfuric

acid followed by enzymatic hydrolysis (Qureshi et al. 2007). The hydrolysate obtained was subjected to butanol fermentation using *C. beijerinckii* P260. Fermentation was vigorous and up to 25.0 g/l ABE was produced with a productivity of 0.60 g/l.h. Switchgrass is an energy crop and can be used for producing fuels including ABE. For this study, switchgrass hydrolysates were prepared as described for wheat straw and barley straw hydrolysates. The resultant hydrolysate was subjected to fermentation without any additional treatment and it resulted in the production of 1.5 g/l ABE. As this ABE concentration is low, it was speculated that fermentation inhibitors were present in the hydrolysate. In order to produce ABE, the above three detoxification techniques were applied to the hydrolysate. Upon dilution with water, the culture was able to produce 14.6 g/l ABE (Qureshi et al. 2010a, b).

Researchers put their efforts to reduce the use of food or feed-grade substrates including molasses and rye flour; an attempt was made to utilize agricultural waste materials such as hemp waste, corn cobs, and sunflower shells (Zverlov 2006). These substrates are high in pentose sugars and low in hexoses such as glucose and galactose. These agricultural residues were hydrolyzed using dilute sulfuric acid treatment at temperatures ranging from 115 to 125 °C. The hydrolysates obtained were mixed with rye flour or molasses before fermentation, possibly because of an inability of the culture to grow in undiluted or untreated hydrolysates. In another extensive report on the conversion of corn cobs into ABE, Marchal et al. (1992) demonstrated successful corn cob hydrolysis and the production of butanol using *C. acetobutylicum*. Corn cobs were pretreated using steam explosion followed by hydrolysis using enzymes. Fermentation studies also performed in a 4 L bioreactor and scaled up to 50 m^3 system. In a 48 m^3 bioreactor, 20.5 g/l total ABE was produced with an ABE yield and productivity of 0.31 and 0.45 g/l.h, respectively. The Jerusalem artichoke is an agricultural crop with considerable potential as a carbohydrate substrate for butanol production by fermentation (Jones and Woods 1986). Marchal et al. (1985) investigated the use of Jerusalem artichoke juice for acetone butanol production and isolated a microbial strain that possessed inulinase activity. However, supplementation with additional inulinase enzyme for complete hydrolysis was necessary prior to butanol fermentation. With an optimized process, these investigators were able to produce 23–24 g/l acetone butanol. This process was tested at the pilot plant scale.

9.5 Biodiesel

Biodiesel is a widely used biofuel, defined as monoalkyl esters of long chain fatty acids derived from renewable feedstock, such as vegetable oil, animal fats, algae, etc. Biodiesel, considered as a possible substitute of conventional diesel fuel, usually consists of fatty acid methyl/ethyl esters, obtained from triglycerides by transesterification with methanol/ethanol respectively (Fig. 9.4). Biodiesel production capacity is growing rapidly, with an average annual growth rate from 2002

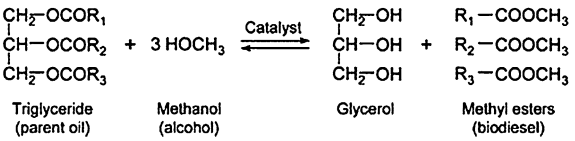


Fig. 9.4 Transesterification of oil to biodiesel (R_1–R_3 are hydrocarbon groups)

to 2006 of over 40 %. In the year 2006, the total world production was about 5–6 million tons, with 4.9 million tons processed in Europe (of which 2.7 million tons was produced from Germany), and most of the remainder from the United States. With the adoption of the Renewable Fuel Standards imposed in 2008, biofuels consumption is required to increase to 135 billion liters by 2022. The most common way of upgrading fats and oils to a transportation fuel is by transesterification. The first step in transesterification is production of diglycerides and alkyl esters, followed by monoglycerides, and finally alkyl esters and glycerol. All of these reactions are reversible, and excess alcohol (usually methanol) is used to drive the reaction to completion with yields of alkyl esters (Ma and Hanna 1999). Catalysts investigated for transesterification are either acids, bases, both liquid and heterogeneous, as well as free or immobilized enzymes (Haas et al. 2006; Kaieda et al. 1999; Komers et al. 2001; Ma and Hanna, 1999; Meher et al. 2006; Suppes et al. 2001, 2004). Enzymes are potentially useful compared to alkaline or acid catalyst, because they are:

1. More compatible with variations in the quality of the raw material and reusable.
2. Enzymes can produce biodiesel in fewer process steps using less energy and with drastically reduced amount of wastewater;
3. Are able to improve product separation and yield a higher quality of glycerol (Fukuda 2001; Kaieda et al. 1999; Kumari et al. 2007; Meher et al. 2006).

9.5.1 Potential Substrates Used for Biodiesel Production

9.5.1.1 Vegetable Oils

Some plants are efficient in the conversion of solar energy into reduced hydrocarbons or "oils". Soybean and palm trees as well as microalgae produce oils, which can be harvested and used in the production of a variety of biofuels. Vegetable oils have come to the fore for biodiesel production due to economy and feasibility. It is the similarities in the constitution of vegetable oils and petroleum-derived diesel that make vegetable oils suitable for conversion into biodiesel (Demirbas 2009; Bajpai and Tyagi 2006; Ma and Hanna 1999). Vegetable oils are naturally insoluble in water and are hydrophobic substances. Their general make-up consists of one glycerol to three fatty acids, thereby they are frequently referred to as triglycerides (Ma and Hanna 1999). The characteristics of the fat are influenced by the nature of the fatty acids attached to the glycerin; the nature of the fatty acids can have a knock-on effect on the characteristics of the biodiesel.

Vegetable oils include edible oils, nonedible oils, waste edible oils [sometimes called waste vegetable oil (WVO), and used vegetable oil (UVO)]. There are more than 50 papers cited in (Fukuda 2001) relating to biodiesel production from vegetable oils. A variety of vegetable oils such as sunflower oil, olive oil, and soybean oil have been used for production of biodiesel. The choice of vegetable oil feedstock depends on availability and is country specific. The technology for converting edible oil into biodiesel is well established (Table 9.5).

9.5.1.2 Tree Born Oils

The nonedible and tree born oils that were included are jatropha (*Jatropha curcas*), rubber seed (*Hevea brasiliensis*), castor (*Ricinus communis* L.), sea mango (*Cerbera odollam* or *Cerbera manghas*), Paradise Tree (*Simarouba glauca*), and Indian Beech Tree (*Pongamia pinnata*) (Table 9.5). There are potential problems with converting nonedible oil into biodiesel associated with high free fatty acid (FFA) content. *Biodiesel*. In excess of 350 oil bearing crops have been identified of which only a handful are considered viable for conversion into biodiesel; a table of these crops has been recently published by Demirbas (2009). The National Biodiesel Mission, formulated by the Planning Commission of the Government of India also emphasized the production of biodiesel from oils of nonedible crops

Table 9.5 Virgin oils used for biodiesel production

Oil name	References
Babassu	Merc on et al. (2000)
Borage seed	Stevenson et al. (1994)
Corn	Stevenson et al. (1994)
Cottonseed	Köse et al. (2002)
Jatropha curcas	Shah and Gupta (2007)
Karanj (*Pongamia pinnata*)	Modi et al. (2007)
Mahua (*Madhuca indica*)	Kumari et al. (2007)
Olive	Hoq et al. (1985)
Palm	Knezevic et al. (1998)
Palm kernel	Abigor et al. (2000)
Peanut	Stevenson et al. (1994)
Rapeseed	Linko et al. (1998)
Rice bran	Lai et al. (2005)
Safflower	Iso et al. (2001)
Soybean	Kaieda et al. (1999)
Sunflower	Mittelbach (1990)
Butterfat	Garcia et al. (1992)
Hoki liver oil	Stevenson et al. (1994)
Menhaden oil	Torres et al. (2003)
Tuna oil	Shimada et al. (2002)

Source Fjerbaek et al. (2008)

such as jatropha, jojoba, mahua, neem, karanja, wild apricot, cheura, kokum, *Simaroba*, and tung through a scheme called 'Integrated development of Tree Borne Oilseeds (TBO)'. Nearly half a dozen Indian states have set aside a total of 1.72 million hectares of land for jatropha cultivation and small quantities of jatropha biodiesel are already being sold to public sector oil companies (Tiwari et al. 2007).

9.5.1.3 Animal Fats

The most commonly considered animal fats are those derived from poultry, pork, and beef (Sharma et al. 2008). While one research group (Bajpai and Tyagi 2006) reported on the conversion of animal fats for biodiesel, other groups (Maa and Hanna 1999) have argued that although animal fats are mentioned regularly, their uses are limited as some of the methods for converting vegetable fats are not applicable to animal fats due to the natural differences between the two types of fats. Researchers have also produced biodiesel from salmon oil and waste animal fat. Although it would not be economical to raise fish or other animals simply for the fat, the use of fat by-products from hogs, cattle, and poultry adds value to the livestock industry (Reyes et al. 2006).

9.5.1.4 Microbial Oils

One concept currently under review is the use of algae as an oil producer for the manufacture of biodiesel. Oils of algae, fungi, and bacteria also have been investigated for biodiesel production (Schenk et al. 2008 and Strobel et al. 2008). Microalgae have a high potential as biodiesel precursors because many of them are very rich in oils, sometimes with oil contents over 80 % of their dry weight, although not all species are suitable as biodiesel production oils (Chisti 2008; Manzanera 2011). Besides, these microorganisms are able to double their biomass in less than 24 h, achieving a reduction between 49- and 132-fold in the medium culture time required by a rapeseed or soybean field. Furthermore, microalgae cultures require low maintenance and can grow in wastewaters, nonpotable water or water unsuitable for agriculture, as well as in seawater (Mata et al. 2010). The production of microalgae biodiesel could be combined with the CO_2 removal from power generation facilities (Benemann 1997) or the synthesis of several valuable products, from bioethanol or biohydrogen to organic chemicals and food supplements (Banerjee et al. 2002; Chisti 2007; Harun et al. 2010). Research has shown that the oil content of algae per hectare can be a staggering 200 times more than the most productive land-based crop (algae are the fastest growing photosynthetic organisms and have the potential to produce 46 tons of oil/hectare/year). This is a promising lead for new generation biofuels, without compromising with food supply as these can be cultivated on nonagricultural lands. However, microalgae biomass-based biofuels have several problems ranging from the optimization of

high density and large surface units of production to the location of the microalgae production unit. Anyway, the main decisions to take are the adoption of open or closed systems, and the election of batch or continuous operation mode. As will be discussed below, depending on the system and mode of operation choice, there will be different advantages and drawbacks.

Microalgae are not the only option to produce biofuels from oily biomass. Multiple prokaryotes and eukaryotes can accumulate high amounts of lipids. But, as occurred with microalgae, not all species are suitable for biodiesel production owing to differences in the kind of storage lipids. Thus, as stated by Waltermann and Steinbüchel (2010), many prokaryotes synthesize polymeric compounds such as poly(3-hydroxybutyrate) (PHB) or other polyhydroxyalkanoates (PHAs), whereas only a few genera show accumulation of triacylglycerols (TAGs) and wax esters (WEs) in the form of intracellular lipid bodies. On the other hand, storage TAGs are often found in eukaryotes, while PHAs are absent, and WE accumulation has only been reported in jojoba (*Simmondsia chinensis*). All these lipids are energy and carbon storage compounds that ensure the metabolism viability during starvation periods. Similar to the formation of PHAs, TAGs, and WE, synthesis is promoted by cellular stress and during imbalanced growth; for instance, by nitrogen scarcity alongside the abundance of a carbon source (Kalscheuer et al. 2004). The most interesting prokaryote genera in terms of accumulation of TAGs are nocardioforms such as *Mycobacterium sp*., *Nocardia sp*., *Rhodococcus sp*., *Micromonospora sp*., *Dietzia sp*., and *Gordonia sp*., alongside streptomycetes, which accumulate TAGs in the cells and the mycelia. TAGs storage is also frequently shown by members of the Gram-negative genus *Acinetobacter* (although, in this case, WE are the dominant inclusion bodies components) (Waltermann and Steinbüchel 2010). Within eukaryotes, with the exception of algae, yeasts of the genera *Candida* (non *albicans*) (Amaretti et al. 2010), *Saccharomyces* (Kalscheuer et al. 2004; Waltermann and Steinbüchel 2010), and *Rhodotorula* (Cheirsilp et al. 2011) are the most interesting ones to produce biodiesel feedstock. Steinbüchel and collaborators have worked on the heterologous expression of the nonspecific acyl transferase WS/DGAT from *Acinetobacter calcoaceticus* ADP1 in *S. cerevisiae* H1246 (a mutant strain incapable of accumulating TAGs) (Kalscheuer et al. 2004). These authors found that the yeast recovered the ability to accumulate TAGs, as well as fatty acid ethyl esters and fatty isoamyl esters. This finding showed that the *A. calcoaceticus* transferase had a high potential for biotechnological production of a large variety of lipids, either in prokaryotic or eukaryotic hosts. From this basis, as will be discussed in detail in Sect. 4.3, they worked on *Escherichia coli* TOP 10 (Invitrogen) and obtained an engineered strain able to produce fatty acid ethyl esters (biodiesel) directly from oleic acid and glucose (Kalscheuer et al. 2006).

Another possibility is combining the biomass obtained from microalgae and yeast, as recently proposed by Cheirsilp et al. (2011). These authors studied a mixed culture of oleaginous yeast *Rhodotorula glutinis* and microalga *Chlorella vulgaris* in industrial wastes. The used effluents, including both a seafood processing wastewater and molasses from a sugarcane plant. They found a synergistic

effect in the mixed culture. *R. glutinis* grew faster and accumulated more lipids in the presence of *C. vulgaris* that acted as an oxygen generator for yeast, while the microalgae obtained surplus CO_2 from yeast. The optimal conditions for lipid production were 1:1 microalga to yeast ratio initial pH of 5.0, molasses concentration at 1 %, 200 rpm shaking, and light intensity at 5.0 klux under 16:8 h light and dark cycles (Cheirsilp et al. 2011).

9.6 Latex Yielding Plants as a Source of Biofuels

Latex is usually an extractable complex mixture of triglycerides, waxes, terpenes, phytosterols, and other modified isoprenoid compounds from plants. When latex yielding plants are scraped or injured or a slit is made in the plant, high energy hydrocarbon fluids in the form of either latex or resin are exuded. Therefore, latex yielding plants are called 'hydrocarbon producing plants or petroleum plants or petroplants', and their crop 'petrocrop'. There has been much interest in cultivating plants rich in hydrocarbons or 'biocrude' as renewable sources of chemicals, for use as liquid fuel, and chemical feedstock (Buchanan et al. 1978 and Calvin 1979). For over three decades, many of the hydrocarbons yielding plants have been cultivated on an experimental basis in the United States, India, Japan, and a few other countries.

Bassham (1977) suggested that "energy farms of petroplants" be developed on arid and semiarid lands in the southwestern United States. These lands are potentially highly productive because of high solar radiation and a long growing season. Calvin (1977) reported that latex bearing plants are the most obvious alternative renewable source of fuel and chemical feedstock. Buchanan et al. (1978) evaluated 100 plant species found in the United States and suggested some as candidates for hydrocarbon production on energy farms. Johanson and Hinman (1980) stressed that developing biocrude farming and extracting facilities on marginal lands is desirable because they would not compete with food and fiber crops. Several species of plants were surveyed as potential feedstock for biocrude production in arid lands. Calvin (1982) considered *Euphorbia lathyris* (gopher plant) to be a kind of 'energy farm' capable of producing a mixture of reduced terpenoids which can be converted into a gasoline-like substance.

McLaughlin and Hoffmann (1982) surveyed about 400 accessions (195 species and varieties from 107 genera and 35 families) of either latex or resin producing plants from southwestern North America. Latex-bearing plants, particularly *Asclepias* spp. and *Euphorbia* spp., received the most attention. *Calotropis procera* (Ait.) R. Br. (Asclepiadaceae), commonly known as Aak, secretes latex containing high concentrations of extractable hydrocarbons which have been suggested as a substitute for conventional petroleum resources (Erdman and Erdman 1981). *C. procera* grows profusely with minimal care, a feature that reduces production costs. Furthermore, its ability to flourish on marginal arid and semiarid land is advantageous as its commercial development will not compete with other

conventional agricultural crops. Other members of Asclepiadaceae (milkweeds) have been proposed as renewable sources of fuel chemicals and chemical feedstock. The entire shoot of some species of *Asclepias* (*A. syriaca* L., *A. speciosa* Torr., *A. curassavica* L) have been examined for latex constituents and caloric value (Nemethy et al. 1979; Adams et al. 1983; Emon and Seiber 1985).

The Central Arid Zone Research Institute (Jodhpur. India) considered *C. procera* as a source material for biocrude. Several plant species yielding hydrocarbons were also tested as potential biocrude feedstock at the National Botanical Research Institute (Lucknow, India) in collaboration with the Indian Institute of Petroleum, Dehradun. Of the 400 species surveyed, 60 were identified as potentially useful based on availability, yield, and ease of extraction. This list was further reduced to 26 candidate species which are potentially exploitable commercially. The report was submitted as a basis for further research on petrocrops in India. In intensive studies of 10 latex euphorbs, isoprenes were quantified and compared with those of *Parthenium argentatum*, a known source of potentially exploitable hydrocarbons (Ratti et al. 1995). *Pedilanthus tithymaloides* Poit, which prefers marginal wasteland in northern and eastern India, was also evaluated as a renewable source of hydrocarbons. A white amorphous mixture of hydrocarbons comparable to gasoline was obtained by elution of the column by petroleum ether (De et al. 1997). Succulent latex-producing species like *E. tirucalli*, *E. antiquorum*, *E. nivula*, *E. milli*, and *P. tithymaloides* are grown in Karnataka and other parts of South India as hedge or ornamental plants. Nonsucculent latex producers such as *E. geniculata*, *E. corrigiodes*, *E. palcherrima*, *Synadenium grantii* are also grown in South India. In other parts of India, *E. antisyphilitica*, *C. procera*, and *Gyrostegia glandiflora* are grown, all of which are quite promising as sources of hydrocarbons. *Manihot esculenta* (tapioca) produces a latex yielding tuber which can be used for alcohol production, while other parts of the plant yield hydrocarbons (Nagendrappa 2000). The identification and characterization of latex yielding plants that may be potential sources of biocrude is one important contribution that plant biologists can make at present to the development of alternate biofuels. Research is also necessary to understand latex production at the whole plant level, to identify the main components of latex, and to elucidate the pathways of latex biosynthesis for the usage of these plants as potential renewable bioresources in the near future.

9.7 Conclusions and Future Perspectives

In conclusion, the above said liquid biofuels can be produced from various simple sugars, starch (starchy crops) lignocellulosic biomass, and oils. Bioethanol and Biobutanol are currently being produced from sugarcane and starch-containing substrates. It is definite that lingocellulosic biomass is the only option of substrate/feedstock for the production of both ethanol and butanol in the future. These plant-based substrates are abundant in nature, are outside the human food chain, and require low maintenance which makes them relatively inexpensive to grow. Many

interrelated aspects need investigation, but information about lignocellulosic biomass potential of a few species on a particular regional site opens the opportunity of selecting future biofuel candidates. However, the technical and economical challenges in bioconversion of lignocellulosic substrates are large. Although several options have been reported by different researchers for the lignocellulose-to-ethanol conversion process, the following factors are required to be carefully assessed in comparison with a well-established ethanol production using sugar or starch substrates. (1) Development of low-cost strategies of cellulose and hemicelluloses hydrolysis to soluble sugars. (2) A maximum fermentation-efficient process/fermenting organism converting a hydrolysate that contains both hexoses and pentose sugars including fermentation inhibitory compounds. (3) A consolidated bioprocess for the integration to minimize the demand of overall process energy. To overcome the above challenges and to produce sustainable biofuels the following five major research steps need to be taken:

(1) The process of enzymatic hydrolysis of agricultural substrates needs to be improved, which can be approached with the use of cheaper and of higher specific activity crude enzymes, by synthesis of enzyme in a process of reduced production cost, and by novel technology for the handling of large amounts of solids.
(2) The development of such microbial strains which are not only robust fermenting organisms, but also are at the same time more tolerant to inhibitors present in substrate-hydrolysates. These specially developed strains should be able to ferment all sugars available from the raw material in concentrated hydrolysates, giving high productivity of alcohols and withstanding high alcohol concentration in the medium.
(3) Investigate the possibility of breeding plants having desirable characters, especially low lignin contents to minimize recalcitrance to bioconversion along with increasing biomass yields. Improvements in genetics, agronomy, and the conversion process will undoubtedly help in the development of a feasible biofuel production system from biomass which can enhance and improve the feedstock availability and efficiency of biofuel production.
(4) A well-thought strategy for the process integration to reduce the number of steps involved in overall production process.
(5) Working on 3-R strategy: Recycling, Reduction, and Reuse of any by-products and wastes generated in the process to reduce the energy demand and protect the environment.

Currently, biodiesel is produced from vegetable oils, tree born oils, and animal fats. However, the economics of this process is still uncertain. The microbiological production process is extremely promising for the future usage. Algae grow as a thin surface layer in ponds, hence harvesting miles and miles of growth to get large amounts of biodiesel is needed. Huge ponds are required to grow microalgae in quantities that make the process commercially feasible. Growing of microalgae in natural lakes or ocean shores is suggestible. However, the invasiveness of algae could present an environmental hazard, since the grown algae will destroy and

overtake the ecosystem. I have pointed out the advantages that fatty acid-based biofuel production in cyanobacteria might offer and have explored the possible strategies that might be used in developing such systems. As biotechnology moves forward, genetic engineering to increase photosynthetic efficiency of the cyanobacteria and to adapt these organisms to the unnatural environment imposed by large-scale photo-bioreactors, will no doubt take central stage. Plenty of research funded by various national agencies, as well as multinational oil companies is very essential to start-up biotechnology companies to aim at making algal biodiesel a significant fraction of the diesel used in transportation in the next 20 years. Production of biofuels from hydrocarbon yielding plants is one of the novel and potential renewable bioresources for the future. The production of biofuels from second generation feedstock like latex avoids competition with agriculture, food processing technologies and ensures the global food safety.

It has been well accepted globally that there is much potential for the biofuel market and it is only matter of time before they are more available than petroleum-based fuels. The development and use of biofuels as an alternate to fossil fuels, still require a more advanced technological development, to increase their feasibility by enhancing the energy balance and reducing the emissions and production cost, are true alternatives that complete the biofuels' future scheme.

Acknowledgments The author acknowledges the Department of Science and Technology, Government of India for the financial support given in the form of a research Project entitled "Biotechnological production of Acetone-Butanol-Ethanol (ABE) from agricultural biomass using solventogenic bacteria" (Ref No: SR/FT/LS-79/2009).

References

Abd-Aziz S (2002) Sago starch and its utilization. J Biosci Bioeng 94:526–529

Abigor RD, Uadia PO, Foglia TA, Haas MJ, Jones KC, Okpefa E, Obibuzor JU, Bafor ME (2000) Lipase-catalyzed production of biodiesel fuel from some Nigerian lauric oils. Biochem Soc Trans 28(6):979–981

Adams RP, Balandrin L, Hogge W, Craig A, Price S (1983) Analysis of the non-polar extractables of *Asclepias speciosa*. J Amer Oil Chem Soc 60:1315–1318

Aden A, Ruth M, Ibsen KN, Jechura J, Neeves K, Sheehan J, Wallace R (2002) Lignocellulosic biomass to ethanol process design and economics utilizing co-current dilute acid prehydrolysis and enzymatic hydrolysis for corn stover. NREL report TP-510-32438http://www.nrel.gov/docs/fy02osti/32438.pdf, June.

Agrocadenas (2006) Colombia, Ministry of Agricultural and Rural Development. <http://www.agrocadenas.gov.co/home.htm> (Feb 2007)

Andersen AA, Stier TJB (1953) Anaerobic nutrition of *S. cerevisiae*. I. Ergosterol requirement for growth in a defined medium. J Cell Biol Comp Physiol 41:23–26

Apar DK, Ozbek B (2004) α-Amylase inactivation during corn starch hydrolysis process. Process Biochem 39:1877–1892

Azar C, Lindglen K, Larson E, Mollersten K (2006) Carbon capture and storage from fossil fuels and biomass—costs and potential role in stabilizing the atmosphere. Clim Change 74:47–49

Bajpai D, Tyagi VK (2006) Biodiesel: source, production, composition, properties and its benefits. J Olio Sci 55:487–502

Banerjee A, Sharma R, Chisti Y, Banerjee UC (2002) Botryococcus braunii: a renewable source of hydrocarbons and other chemicals. Crit Revs Biotechnol 22:245–279
Bassham JA (1977) Increasing crop production through more controlled photosynthesis. Science 197:630–638
Benemann JR (1997) CO_2 mitigation with microalgae systems. Energ Conver Manage 38:475–479
Berg C (2001) World Fuel Ethanol. Analysis and Outlook. F.O. Licht. http://www.agraeurope.co.uk/FOLstudies/FOL-Spec04.html/. Accessed Mar 2004
Berndes G, Azar C, Kaberger T, Abrahamson D (2001) The feasibility of large-scale lignocellulose-based bioenergy production. Biomass Bioenerg 20:371–383
Buchanan RA, Cull IM, Otey FH, Russell CR (1978) Hydrocarbon and rubber -producing crops: evaluation of 100 US plant species. Econ Bot 32:146–153
Bullock GE (2002) Ethanol from sugarcane. Sugar Research Institute, Australia, p 192
Calvin M (1977) Hydrocarbons via photosynthesis. Energ Res 1:299–327
Calvin M (1979) Petroleum plantations for fuel and materials. Bioscience 29:533–538
Calvin M (1982) Oils from plants. In: BARC Science Seminar, US Dept of Agriculture,Beltsville Agricultural Research Center, MD
Cardona CA, Sanchez OJ, Montoya MI, Quintero JA (2005) Analysis of fuel ethanol production processes using lignocellulosic biomass and starch as feedstocks. In: Seventh world congress of chemical engineering, Glasgow
Carroll A, Somerville C (2009) Cellulosic biofuels. Ann Rev Plant Biol 60:165–182
Casey GP, Magnus CA, Ingledew WM (1984) High-gravity brewing: effects of nutrition on yeast composition, fermentative ability, and alcohol production. Appl Environ Microbiol 48:639–646
Cheirsilp B, Suwannarat W, Niyomdecha R (2011) Mixed culture of oleaginous yeast *Rhodotorula glutinis* and microalga *Chlorella vulgaris* for lipid production from industrial wastes and its use as biodiesel feedstock. New Biotechnol (In Press)
Chisti Y (2007) Biodiesel from microalgae. Biotechnol Adv 25:294–306
Chisti Y (2008) Biodiesel from microalgae beats bioethanol. Trends Biotechnol 26:126
Chum HL, Overend RP (2001) Biomass and renewable fuels. Fuel Proces Technol 71:187–195
Chung BH, Nam JG (2002) Process for producing high concentration of ethanol using food wastes by fermentation. Patent KR20020072326
Daily GC (1995) Restoring value to the world's degraded lands. Science 269:350–354
Damoano D, Wang SS (1985) Improvements in ethanol concentration and fermentor ethanol productivity in yeast fermentations using whole soy flour in batch and continuous recycle systems. Biotechnol Lett 71:35–140
De S, Bag A, Mukherji S (1997) Potential use of *Pedilanthus tithymaloides* Poit. as a renewable resource of plant hydrocarbons. Bot Bull Acad Sin 38:105–108
Deepak S, Visvanathan L (1984) Effects of oils and fatty acids on the tolerance of distillers yeast to alcohol and temperature. Enzyme Microb Technol 6:78–80
Demirbas A (2009) Progress and recent trends in biodiesel fuels. Energ Conserv Manage 50:14–34
Emon JV, Seiber JN (1985) Chemical constituents and energy content of two milk weeds, *Asclepias speciosa* and *A. curassavica*. Econ Bot 39:44–55
Erdman MD, Erdman BA (1981) Calotropis procera as a source of hydrocarbons. Econ Bot 35:467–472
Ezeji TC, Blaschek HP (2008) Fermentation of dried distillers' grains and soluble (DDGS) hydrolysates to solvents and value-added products by solventogenic clostridia. Bioresour Technol 99:5232–5242
Ezeji TC, Qureshi N, Blaschek HP (2007) Bioproduction of butanol from biomass: from genes to bioreactors. Curr Opin Biotechnol 18:220–227
Field B, Campbell JE, Lobell DB (2008) Biomass energy: the scale of the potential resource. Trends Ecol Evol 23:65–72
Fjerbaek L, Christensen KV, Norddahl B (2008) A review of the current state of biodiesel production using enzymatic transesterification. Biotechnol Bioengg 102:1298–1315

Foley JA, De Fries R, Asner GP, Barford C, Bonan G, Carpenter SR, Chapin FS, Coe MT, Daily GC, Gibbs HK, Hekowski JH, Hollowan T, Howard EA, Kucharik CJ, Monfreda C, Patz JA, Pentice IC, Ramankutty N, Snyder PK (2005) Global consequences of land use. Science 309:570–574

Food Agric Organ (FAO) (2000) Land resource potential and constraints at regional and country levels. World soil resources rep. 90, Rome

Food Agric Organ (FAO) (2006) Food Agricultural Organization statistical year book, 2005-2006. Rome

Food and Agriculture Organization (FAO) (2004) Global cassava market study. Business opportunities for the use of cassava. Proceedings of the validation forum on the global cassava development strategy, vol 6, FAO Rome

Fukuda H (2001) Biodiesel fuel production by transesterification of oils. J Biosci Bioeng 92:405–416

Garcia HS, Malcata FX, Hill CG, Amundson CH (1992) Use of Candida rugosa lipase immobilized in a spiral wound membrane reactor for the hydrolysis of milk fat. Enzyme Microb Technol 14(7):535–545

Ghosh P, Ghose TK (2003) Bioethanol in India: recent past and emerging future. Adv Biochem Engg/Biotechnol 85:1–27

Grassi G (1999) Modern bioenergy in the European union. Renew Energ 16:985–990

Gui MM, Lee KT, Bhatia S (2008) Feasibility of edible vs. non-edible oil vs waste edible oil as biodiesel feedstock. Energy 33:1646–1653

Gulati M, Kohlman K, Ladish MR, Hespell R, Bothast RJ (1996) Assessment of ethanol production options for corn products. Bioresour Technol 5:253–264

Gutierrez NA, Maddox IS, Schuster KC, Swoboda H, Gapes JR (1998) Strain comparison and medium preparation for the acetone–butanol–ethanol (ABE) fermentation process using a substrate of potato. Bioresour Technol 66:263–265

Haas MJ, McAloon AJ, Yee WC, Foglia TA (2006) A process model to estimate biodiesel production costs. Bioresour Technol 97:671–678

Hamelinck CN, Faaji APC (2006) Outlook for advanced biofuels. Energ Policy 34:3268–3283

Hammond JB, Egg R, Diggins D, Coble CG (1996) Alcohol from bananas. Bioresource Technol 56:125–130

Harun R, Singh M, Forde GM, Danquah MK (2010) Bioprocess engineering of microalgae to produce a variety of consumer products. Renew Sust Ener Revs 14:1037–1047

Hoq MM, Yamane T, Shimizu S (1985) Continuous hydrolysis of olive oil by lipase in microporous hydrophobic membrane bioreactor. J Am Oil Chem Soc 62(6):1016–1021

Iso M, Chen B, Eguchi M, Kudo T, Shrestha S (2001) Production of biodiesel fuel from triglycerides and alcohol using immobilized lipase. J Mol Catal B: Enzym 16(1):53–58

Jesse T, Ezeji TC, Qureshi N, Blaschek HP (2002) Production of butanol from starch-based waste packing peanuts and agricultural waste. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 29:117–123

Johanson DJA, Azar C (2007) A scenario based analysis of land use competition between bioenergy and food production in the US. Climatic Change 82:267–291

Johnson JD, Hinman CW (1980) Oils and rubber from arid land plants. Science 208:460–464

Johnston J (2008) New world for biofuels. Energ Law 86:10–14

Jones DT, Woods DR (1986) Acetone-butanol fermentation revisited. Microbiol Rev 50:484–524

Kadam KL, Forrest LH, Jacobson WA (2000) Rice straw as a lignocellulosic resource: collection, processing, transportation, and environmental aspects. Biomass Bioenerg 18:369–389

Kadam KL, McMillan JD (2003) Availability of corn stover as a sustainable feedstock for bioethanol production. Bioresour Technol 88:17–25

Kaieda M, Samukawa T, Matsumoto T, Ban K, Kondo A, Shimada Y, Noda H, Nomoto F, Ohtsuka K, Izumoto E, Fukuda H (1999) Biodiesel fuel production from plant oil catalyzed by *Rhizopus oryzae* lipase in a water-containing system without an organic solvent. J Biosci Bioeng 88:627–631

Kalscheuer R, Luftmann H, Steinbüchel A (2004) Synthesis of novel lipids in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* by heterologous expression of an unspecific bacterial acyltransferase. Appl Environ Microbiol 70:7119–7125

Kalscheuer R, Stolting T, Steinbuchel A (2006) Microdiesel: *Escherichia coli* engineered for fuel production. Microbiol-Sgm 152:2529–2536

Kheshgi HS, Prince RC, Marland G (2000) The potential of biomass fuels in the context of global climate change: focus on transportation fuels. Ann Rev Energ Environ 25:199–244

Kim S, Dale BE (2004) Global potential bioethanol production from wasted crops and crop residues. Biomass Bioenerg 26:361–375

Knezevic Z, Mojovic L, Adnadjevic B (1998) Palm oil hydrolysis by lipase from Candida cylindracea immobilized on zeolite type Y. Enzyme Microb Technol 22(4):275–280

Komers K, Stloukal R, Machek J, Skopal F (2001) Biodiesel from rapeseed oil, methanol and KOH 3: analysis of composition of actual reaction mixture. Eur J Lipid Sci Technol 103:363–371

Kumari V, Shah S, Gupta MN (2007) Preparation of biodiesel by lipasecatalyzed transesterification of high free fatty acid containing oil from Madhuca indica. Energy Fuels 21(1):368–372

Köse O, Tüter M, Aksoy HA (2002) Immobilized Candida antarctica lipasecatalyzed alcoholysis of cotton seed oil in a solvent-free medium. Bioresour Technol 83(2):125–129

Lai CC, Zullaikah S, Vali SR, Ju YH (2005) Lipase-catalyzed production of biodiesel from rice bran oil. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 80(3):331– 337

Lee WC, Huang CT (2000) Modeling of ethanol fermentation using *Zymomonas mobilis* ATCC 10988 grown on the media containing glucose and fructose. Biochem Engg J 4:217–227

Licht FO (2008) World fuel ethanol production. Renewable fuels association. http://www.ethanolrfa.org/resource/facts/trade

Linko YY, Lamsa M, Wu X, Uosukainen E, Seppala J, Linko P (1998) Biodegradableproducts by lipase biocatalysis. J Biotechnol 66(1):41–50

Lynd LR (1996) Overview and evaluation of fuel ethanol from cellulosic biomass: technology, economics, the environment, and policy. Ann Rev Energ Environ 21:403–465

Ma F, Hanna MA (1999) Biodiesel production: a review. Bioresour Technol 70:1–15

Macedo IC, Nogueira LAH (2005) Evaluation of ethanol production expansion in Brazil. In:Cadernos NAE/Núcleo de Assuntos Estrategicos da Presidência da Repú blica. Biofuels,Section 2. Brasília (Brazil), Núcleo de Assuntos Estratégicos da Presidência da Repú blica,pp. 113–220

Maddox IS, Qureshi N, Gutierrez NA (1993) Utilization of whey and process technology by Clostridia. In: Woods DR (ed) The Clostridia and biotechnology. Butterworth Heinemann, MA, pp 343–369

Manzanera M (2011) Biofuels from Oily Biomass, In: *Carbon-neutral fuels and energy carriers*. Muradov M, Veziroghu N (eds), 635-663, CRC, Taylor & Francis Group, Orlando. ISBN 978-143-9818-57-2

Manzoyer M (2001) Protecting small farmers and the rural poor in the context of globalization. FAO, Rome

Marchal R, Blanchet D, Vandecasteele JP (1985) Industrial optimization of acetone-butanol fermentation: a study of the optimization of Jerusalem artichokes. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 23:92–98

Marchal R, Ropars M, Pourquie J, Fayolle F, Vandecasteele JP (1992) Large-scale enzymatic hydrolysis of agricultural lignocellulosic biomass. Part 2: conversion into acetonebutanol. Bioresour Technol 42:205–217

Mata TM, Martins AA, Caetano NS (2010) Microalgae for biodiesel production and other applications: a review. Renew Sustain Energ Rev 14:217–232

McAloon A, Taylor F, Yee W, Ibsen K, Wooley R (2000) Determining the cost of producing ethanol from corn starch and lignocellulosic feedstocks. Technical report NREL/TP-580-28893. National Renewable Energy Laboratory. Golden, CO (USA) p 35

McLaughlin SP, Hoffmann JJ (1982) Survey of biocrude- producing plants from the Southwest. Econ Bot 36:323–339
Meher LC, Sagar DV, Naik SN (2006) Technical aspects of biodiesel production by transesterification: a review. Renew Sustain Energ Rev 10:248–268
Merc on F, Sant Anna GL, JrNobrega R (2000) Enzyme hydrolysis of babassu oil in a membrane bioreactor. J Am Oil Chem Soc 77(10): 1043–1048
Microalgae to produce a variety of consumer products. Renew Sust Ener Revs. 14:1037–1047
Microbiol Biotechnol 52:741–755
Modi MK, Reddy JRC, Rao BVSK, Prasad RBN (2007) Lipase-mediated conversion of vegetable oils into biodiesel using ethyl acetate as acyl acceptor. Bioresour Technol 98(6):1260–1264
Mittelbach M (1990) Lipase catalyzed alcoholysis of sunflower oil. J Am Oil Chem Soc 67(3):168–170
Moreira J, Goldemberg J (1999) The alcohol program. Energy Policy 27:229–245
Moreira JS (2000) Sugarcane for energy–recent results and progress in Brazil. Energ Sust Develop 4 (3):43–54
Morimura S, Zhong YL, Kida K (1997) Ethanol production by repeated-batch fermentation at high temperature in a molasses medium containing a high concentration of total sugar by a thermotolerant flocculating yeast with improved salt-tolerance. J Ferm Bioengg 83:271–274
Nagendrappa G (2000) Liquid fuels from plants: can we meet our petroleum needs from plants. Resonance 5:47–55
Naik SN, Goud VV, Rout PK, Dalai AK (2010) Production of first and second generation biofuels: a comprehensive review. Renew Sustain Energ Rev 14:578–597
Narendranath NV, Thomas KC, Ingledew WM (2000) Use of urea hydrogen peroxide in fuel alcohol production. Patent CA2300807
Nemethy EK, Otvos JW, Calvin M (1979) Analysis of extractables from one *Euphorbia*. J Amer Oil Chem Soc 56:957–960
Palmqvist E, Hahn-Hägerdal B (2000) Fermentation of lignocellulosic hydrolysates. I: inhibition and detoxification. Bioresour Technol 74:17–24
Pandey A, Nigam P, Soccol CR, Soccol VT, Singh D, Mohan R (2000) Advances in microbial amylases. Biotechnol Appl Biochem 31:135–152
Parekh SR, Parekh RS, Wayman M (1988) Ethanol and butanol production by fermentationof enzymatically saccharified SO2-prehydrolysed lignocellulosics. Enzyme Microb Technol110:660–668
Patil SG, Patil BG (1989) Chitin supplement speeds up the ethanol production in cane molasses fermentation. Enzyme Microb Technol 11:38–43
Patzek TW, Anti SM, Campos R, Ha KW, Lee J, Li B, Padnick J, Yee SA (2005) Ethanol from corn: clean renewable fuel for the future, or drain on our resources and pockets? Environ Develop Sustain 7:319–336
Pimentel D (2003) Ethanol fuels: energy balance, economics, and environmental impacts are negative. Nat Resour Res 12:127–134
Poitrat E (1999) The potential of liquid biofuels in France. Renew Energ 16:1084–1089
Prasad S, Singh A, Jain N, Joshi HC (2007) Ethanol production from sweet sorghum syrup for utilization as automotive fuel in India. Energ Fuel 21: 2415–2420
Quintero JA, Montoya MI, Sa′nchez OJ, Giraldo OH, Cardona CA (2007) Fuel ethanol production from sugarcane and corn: comparative analysis for a Colombian case. Energy. doi:10.1016/j.energy.2007.10.001
Qureshi N, Blaschek HP (2005) Butanol production from agricultural biomass. In: Shetty K, Pometto A, Paliyath G (eds) Food Biotechnology. Taylor and Francis Group plc, Boca Raton, pp 525–551
Qureshi N, Li X, Hughes SR, Saha BC, Cotta MA (2006) Production of acetone butanol ethanol from corn fiber xylan using *Clostridium acetobutylicum*. Biotechnol Prog 22:673–680
Qureshi N, Lolas A, Blaschek HP (2001) Soy molasses as fermentation substrate for production of butanol using *Clostridium beijerinckii* BA101. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 26:290–295

Qureshi N, Saha BC, Cotta MA (2007) Butanol production from wheat straw hydrolysate using *Clostridium beijerinckii*. Bioprocess Biosyst Eng 30:419–427

Qureshi N, Saha BC, Hector RE, Hughes SR, Cotta MA (2008) Butanol production from wheat straw by simultaneous saccharification and fermentation using Clostridium beijerinckii: Part I–Batch fermentation. Biomass Bioener 32:168–175

Qureshi N, Saha BC, Dien B, Hector RE, Cotta MA (2010a) Production of butanol (a biofuel) from agricultural residues: part I e use of barley straw hydrolysate. Biomass Bioenerg 34:559–565

Qureshi N (2010) Agricultural residues and energy crops as potentially economical and novel substrates for microbial production of butanol (a biofuel). Perspec Agric Vet Sci Nutri Nat Resour 5:1–8

Qureshi N, Saha BC, Hector RE, Dien B, Hughes SR, Liu S (2010b) Production of butanol (a biofuel) from agricultural residues: II—use of corn stover and switchgrass hydrolysates. Biomass Bioenerg 34:566–571

Ramey D (2004) Butanol advances in biofuels. The Light Party, Washington pp 105–118

Ratti N, Siddhu OP, Behl HM (1995) Quantification of polyisoprenes from some promising Euphorbs. Bioresour Technol 52:231–235

Reddy LVA, Reddy OVS (2005) Improvement of ethanol production in very high gravity fermentation by horse gram (*Dolichos biflorus*) flour supplementation. Lett Appl Microbiol 41:440–444

Reddy LVA, Reddy OVS (2006) Rapid and enhanced production of ethanol in very high gravity (VHG) sugar fermentation by *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*: role of finger millet (Eleusine coracana L) flour. Process Biochem 41:726–729

Reyes JF, Sepulveda MA, Lo PM (2006) Emissions and power of a diesel engine fuelled with crude and refined biodiesel from salmon oil. Fuel 85:1714–1719

Robertson GH, Wong DWS, Lee CC, Wagschal K, Smith MR, Orts WJ (2006) Native or raw starch digestion: a key step in energy efficient biorefining of grain. J Agricul Food Chem 54:353–365

Runge CF, Senauer B (2007) How biofuels could starve the poor. Foreign Aff 86:41–54

Sagar AD, Kartha S (2007) Bioenergy and sustainable development? Annu Rev Enviorn Resour 32:131–167

Sanchez OJ, Cardona CA (2008) Trends in biotechnological production of fuel ethanol from different feedstocks. Bioresour Technol 99:5270–5295

Schenk PM, Thomas-Hall SR, Stephans E, Mark VC (2008) Second generation biofuels: high efficiency microalgae for biodiesel production. Bioenergy 1:20–43

Shah S, Gupta MN (2007) Lipase catalyzed preparation of biodiesel from Jatropha oil in asolvent-free system. Process Biochem 42(3):409–414

Shapouri H, Duffield JA, Wang M (2003) The energy balance of corn ethanol revisited. Trans ASAE 46:959–968

Sharma YC, Singh B, Upadhay SN (2008) Advancements in development and characterization of biodiesel: a review. Fuel 87:2355–2373

Shigechi H, Fujita Y, Koh J, Ueda M, Fukuda H, Kondo A (2004) Energy-saving direct ethanol production from low-temperaturecooked corn starch using a cell-surface engineered yeast strain codisplaying glucoamylase and α-amylase. Biochem Engg J 18:149–153

Shimada Y, Watanabe Y, Sugihara A, Tominaga Y (2002) Enzymatic alcoholysis for biodiesel fuel production and application of the reaction to oil processing. J Mol Catal B: Enzym 17(3–5):133–142

Soni SK, Kaur A, Gupta JK (2003) A solid state fermentation based bacterial a-amylase and fungal glucoamylase system and its suitability for the hydrolysis of wheat starch. Process Biochem 39:185–192

Stevenson DE, Stanley RA, Furneaux RH (1994) Near-quantitative production of fatty acidalkyl esters by lipase-catalyzed alcoholysis of fats and oils with adsorption of glycerol by silicagel. Enzyme Microb Technol 16(6):478–484

Strobel G, Knighton B, Kluck K, Livinghouse T, Ren y, Griffin M, Spakowicz D, Sears J (2008) The production of myco-diesel hydrocarbons and their derivatives by the endophytic fungus *Gliocladium roseum* (NRRL 50072). Microbiol 154:3319–3328

Sun Y, Cheng J (2002) Hydrolysis of lignocellulosic materials for ethanol production: a review. Bioresour Technol 83:1–11

Suppes GJ, Bockwinkel K, Lucas S, Botts JB, Mason MH, Heppert JA (2001) Calcium carbonate catalyzed alcoholysis of fats and oils. J Am Oil Chem Soc 78:139–145

Suppes GJ, Dasari MA, Doskocil EJ, Mankidy PJ, Goff MJ (2004) Transesterification of soybean oil with zeolite and metal catalysts. Appl Catal A 257:213–223

synthetic waste water by algae. Ecolog Eng 28:64–70

Tiwari AK, Kumar A, Rahamen H (2007) Biodiesel production from Jatropha oil (*Jatropha curcas*) with high free fatty acids: an optimized process. Biomass Bioenerg 31:569–578

Torres CF, Moeljadi M, Hill CG (2003) Lipase-catalyzed ethanolysis of fish oils: Multi-responsekinetics. Biotechnol Bioeng 83(3):274–281

Viegas CA, Correia ISA, Novais JM (1984) Rapid production of high concentration of ethanol by S. bayanus: mechanism of action of soy flour supplementation. Biotechnol Lett 7:515–520

Von Sivers M, Zacchi G, Olsson L, Hahn-Hägerdal B (1994) Cost analysis of ethanol from willow using recombinant *Escherichia coli*. Biotechnol Prog 10:555–560

Waltermann M, Steinbüchel A (2010) Neutral lipid bodies in prokaryotes: recent insights into structure, formation and relationship to eukaryotic lipid depots. J Bactriol 187:3607–3619

Wang S, Ingledew W, Thomas K, Sosulski K, Sosulski F (1999) Optimization of fermentation temperature and mash specific gravity for fuel alcohol production. Cereal Chem 76:82–86

Wang S, Sosulski K, Sosulski F, Ingledew M (1997) Effect of sequential abrasion on starch composition of five cereals for ethanol fermentation. Food Res Inter 30:603–609

Wilkie AC, Riedesel KJ, Owens JM (2000) Stillage characterization and anaerobic treatment of ethanol stillage from conventional and cellulosic feedstocks. Biomass Bioenerg 19:63–102

Winner Network (2002) Village level bioenergy system based on sweet sorghum. http://www.w3c.org/TR/1999/REC-html401-19991224/loose.dtd (Oct 2004)

Wiselogel A, Tyson J, Johnsson D (1996) Biomass feedstock resources and composition. In: Wyman CE (ed) Handbook on bioethanol: production and utilization. Taylor and Francis, Washington, pp 105–118

Wooley R, Ruth M, Sheehan J, Ibsen K, Majdeski H, Galvez A (1999) Lignocellulosic biomass to ethanol process design and economics utilizing co-current dilute acid prehydrolysis and enzymatic hydrolysis. Current and futuristic scenarios. Technical Report NREL/TP-580-26157. National Renewable Energy Laboratory. Golden, CO (USA), p 123

Wyman CE (1999) Opportunities and technological challenges of bioethanol. Presentation to the committee to review the R and D strategy for biomass-derived ethanol and biodiesel transportation fuels. Review for the research strategy for biomass-derived transportation fuels. National Research Council. National Academy, Washington, pp 1–48

Xavier MR (2007) The Brazilian sugarcane ethanol experience. Issue Analysis, no. 3, Washington, USA, Competitive Enterprise Institute. 11 p

Zverlov VV, Berezina O, Velikodvorskaya GA, Schwarz WH (2006) Bacterial acetone and butanol production by industrial fermentation in the Soviet union: use of hydrolyzed agricultural waste for biorefinery. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 71:587–597

Chapter 10
Second Generation Bio-Ethanol and Renewable Chemicals from Lignocellulosics

Sudip Kumar Rakshit

Abstract The emission of greenhouse gases (GHG) as result of consumption of fossil fuels and the finite nature of these resources provide the impetus for looking alternate sources of clean energy, which can be produced in a sustainable manner. As far as liquid fuels for transportation are concerned the production of bio-ethanol has been focus of considerable research. The use of starch-based (first generation) agricultural products as substrates for this conversion are possible but raises concerns about food security. The utilization of lignocellulosic residues for these purposes has been studied for a few decades. While it is possible to produce ethanol from such biomass, it is difficult to do so in an economically feasible way at the present cost of petroleum and ethanol. This chapter focuses on some of the innovative methods that are being attempted to overcome the bottlenecks to such processes. A broad overview of the potential use of lignocellulosics for the production of chemicals is also presented. The latter biorefining route will result in a materials with higher market value than ethanol, reduce our dependence on petroleum for a host of products used in day-to-day applications, and will also provide a sustainable alternative using the large amounts of lignocellulosic biomass found in many parts of the world.

10.1 Introduction

Biomass is produced as a part of the carbon cycle when carbon dioxide is fixed photosynthetically by plants. This can be used directly as fuels or after they are converted into fossil fuels after extended periods of time. Utilization of the

S. K. Rakshit (✉)
Canada Research Chair in Bioenergy and Biorefining Processes, Lakehead University, Thunder Bay, ON P7B 5E1, Canada
e-mail: skrait57@gmail.com; srakshit@lakeheadu.ca

V. K. Gupta and M. G. Tuohy (eds.), *Biofuel Technologies*,
DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-34519-7_10,

biomass to produce energy (Saxena et al. 2009; Blottnitz et al. 2007; Huber et al. 2006) and value added products (Werpy and Petersen 2004a; Jong et al. 2012) is presently the focus of considerable research.

At the moment, there is nearly total dominance of fossil fuel-driven internal combustion engines for road transportation. This is because liquid fuels are easy to carry and convert into energy for the development of efficient engines and for the practicality of cars and vehicles that help us travel. However, as greenhouse gases (GHG) produce these fuels, the effect they have on climate and the finite nature of their availability indicate that development of alternate clean energy sources will be necessary in the near or middle term.

The alternatives that are being studied have to be renewable energy options which should have ease of application, meet the specifications of the engines that are being used, should be cost effective, and most importantly have a positive carbon balance. Electric motors will lead to the cleanest form of energy and bring the greatest benefit to the environment. However, their cost needs to be reduced further and their applicability for different classes of vehicles needs to be further developed. In all probability, transportation fuels will be a mix of a number of options (Pichon 2009).

Renewable liquid biofuels from biomass are not expected to require substantial modification of the existing motor engines and is thus considered to be an attractive proposition. Depending on the feedstock from which they are produced, these fuels have been designated to be first or second generation biofuels (Wikipedia Encyclopedia 2012). The starting materials for first generation biofuels are sugars and oil and include starch in corn, wheat, barley, and cassava, sucrose from cane sugar and vegetable oils from palm oil, jatropha, and so on. Second generation biofuels can be produced from the cellulose present in woody biomass, agricultural residues, and wastes. These materials are often associated with lignin and hence are called lignocellulosic biomass. Agricultural residues include the straw of wheat and rice, sugarcane bagasse, stem and roots from foodcrops, the top ends of trees like eucalyptus not used in paper manufacture, fast developing tall grass, and so on. The possibility of using wood from the huge forest industry, especially in North America and the Nordic countries, is also being explored. While considerable research had been carried out with these residues for more than two decades, the finite nature of fossil fuels and their effect on nature has led to considerable focus on second generation biofuels recently. This chapter will focus on the present situation, the bottlenecks to their development, and the future of these fuels which could potentially make a contribution to the development of a low carbon society. As the market price of ethanol is very low at present, the attempts being made to derive higher value renewable chemicals from the cellulose hydrolysis will also be presented.

10.2 First Generation Biofuels

Brazil, with rich sources of sugarcane, was the first country to industrialize the production of bioethanol from cane sugar. This was followed by the US, Germany, and Malaysia using sugarcane, corn, rapeseed oil, and palm oil, respectively. Countries like Thailand have now developed a road map for the increased production of first generation biofuels using locally produced cassava, sugarcane molasses, and so on. While these are either developed countries or rapidly developing economies, the lease of land to major multinational companies in less developed countries has opened considerable debate about long-term returns to the local communities. The availability of surplus agricultural produce, growing energy needs in the transport sector, and the possibility of reducing the oil import bill have been the driving forces for these developments. The environmental benefit of possible reduced GHG gas emission is more often an afterthought and not always substantiated. This is often evident from the fact that the producers of these fuels often do not take into account the effect of large water requirements for the production and the effect on the local communities. They are driven by the costs of the imported oil, the expected increase in their price, and the increasing demand for transportation fuels.

The major concern with first generation biofuel production is the effect on food security and the availability of the raw material in a sustained manner. Deforestation, change in land use patterns, and loss biodiversity are related concerns in this respect. Additionally, many governments are encouraging biofuel production by providing incentives in the form of subsidies. It is not clear whether this will benefit the economies in the long run. It will also require closer studies to determine the perceived GHG reduction benefits. For this, careful life cycle analysis (LCA) needs to be carried out, locally, taking into account the inputs like fertilizers required for their production and the transportation costs to the point of bioconversion among other parameters (BIO Intelligence Service 2010). The production of biodiesel from jatropha, which is not part of the food chain, is often encouraged. Biodiesel from jatropha is making considerable inroads in India (McGee 2006) and a number of developing countries as it has the potential of using arid and wastelands.

The effect of using food resources for fuel production in a local situation having a food surplus could lead to increased food pricing in the world market and increase the price bill for a food import in less developed countries of the world. Many of the sustainability issues raised for the production of first generation biofuels have indicated the potential benefits of alternative second generation biofuels. The latter, though technically a reality, have a number of barriers to overcome before they can be an economically feasible alternative.

10.3 Second Generation Biofuels

In this chapter, we refer to the bioconversion of lignocellulosic residues into ethanol as second generation biofuels. It must be emphasized here that a number of alternative second generation biofuels are in various stages of development. These include the Gas-to-liquid Fischer-Tropsh process which is also overall a biomass to liquid (BtL) process, biohydrogen involving gasification of the biomass and then reforming the methane produced, high temperature upgrading (HTU) of wet biomass, etc. As far as second generation biofuels are concerned most of the research investment is in the biochemical transformation of lignocellulosics into glucose and hence to bioethanol.

The major steps in the production of lignocellulosic bioethanol (Fig. 10.1) include first of all the separation of cellulose and (soluble) hemicelluloses from the woody or fibrous biomass. These sources of sugar are protected by lignin preventing its easy breakdown. A number of methods have been attempted over the years to pre-treat the lignocellulosic residues for this purpose (Kumar et al. 2009); Galbe and Zachi (2007);(Taherzadeh and Karimi 2008). These include treatment with acids, bases, solvents, steam explosion, ionic liquids, and so on. Depending on the substrate this has been efficient to different extents. However, nature has

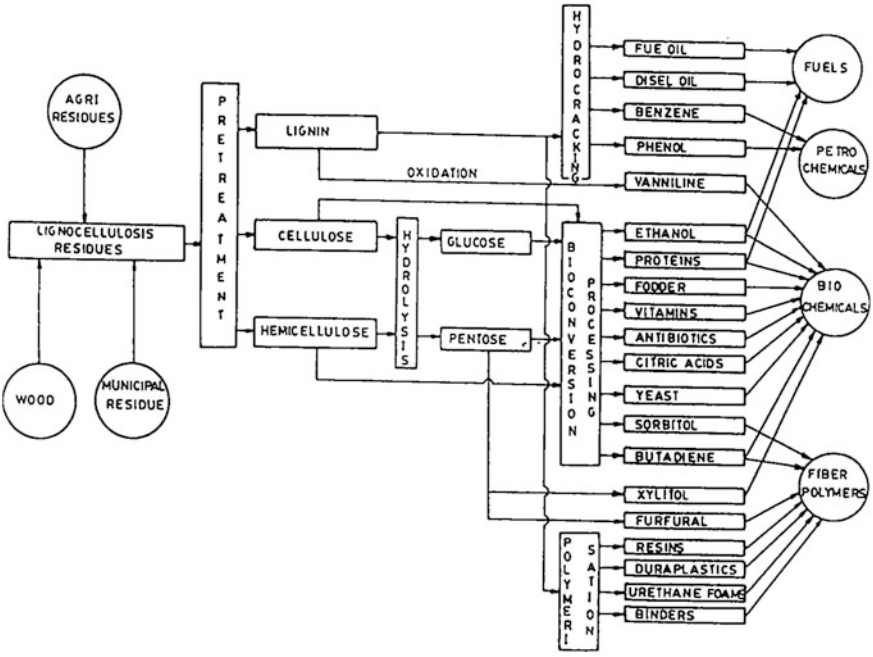


Fig. 10.1 The different steps in the bioconversion of lignocellulosic residues into ethanol. The possibility of using the different components obtained by pretreatment and hydrolysis to produce value added products by hydrocracking, bioconversion, and polymerization is also indicated

evolved this complex structure of lignin and cellulose to make the plants and trees sturdy. Hence some innovative or combination of methods, taking into account the complex structure of the natural biomass, will be required to make the cellulose present easily accessible to hydrolysis.

The cellulosic pulp extracted following pretreatment then has to be hydrolyzed to its component glucose monomer using different catalysts including acids and the cellulase enzyme complex. The severe conditions required for acid hydrolysis make construction of efficient reactors difficult. Besides, these conditions convert the sugars produced into inversion compounds which are difficult to ferment and convert into other products. The search for a source of cellulase enzyme which can break down cellulose easily and can itself be produced in a cost-effective manner has not been easy. The cost of the enzymes produced by fungal, yeast, and bacterial sources often contributes to nearly 40 % of the cost of producing ethanol by this route (Klein-Marcuschamer et al. 2012).

The sugar syrup obtained on hydrolysis has then to be fermented using yeast or bacterial strains to produce ethanol. Besides the glucose (C-6) content of cellulose from lignocellulosic substances, the possible co-fermentation of the components (C-5) of hemicellulosics to alcohol is also being explored. The slower fermentation of the C-5 components to alcohol by certain microorganisms and the inhibitory effects of the metabolites obtained by C-6 and C-5 fermentation further slow down co-fermentation (Yah et al. 2010).

Yeast fermentation of glucose to ethanol is relatively easy and ethanol concentrations of up to 12 % can be obtained. Like the first generation bioethanol, the fermented ethanol product has then to be distilled to 95 % concentration in order to make them suitable for blending with gasoline to produce gasohol. Azeotropic distillation required to get ethanol concentration to levels suitable for blending adds to the costs.

10.4 Advantages and Barriers to the Bioconversion of Lignocellulosics into Ethanol

10.4.1 Distribution of the Substrate

The major advantage of the use of lignocellulosic residues over the agricultural products used in first generation biofuels is the low cost and availability of the agricultural, forest, grass, and wastes. Their use has no impact on food security unless food crops are replaced by energy crops, especially in areas where they are not found in sufficient quantities. The fuel crops can also be grown in unutilized marginal and arid land without requiring substantial fertilizer inputs. They have higher yields in terms of energy per land area. With proper breeding methods and the use of biotechnological techniques this can be further improved in terms of yields and quality of the product.

The utilization of agricultural residues like wheat and rice straw and bagasse can be constrained by the need to put about 50 % of these residues back to the land for soil sustainability. The use of alternative feedstock like switchgrass, miscanthus, poplar, eucalyptus, and willow is presently under study. In our laboratory, we are working on the possibility of utilizing water hyacinth and typha grass which are clogs in many river streams especially in many tropical developing countries (Guragain et al. 2011). With its high water content and relatively simple composition water hyacinth can serve as a good substrate. Our own initial studies have shown that pretreatment of typha grass requires lower severity while using acid catalyzed organosolv methods. Genetic modification to produce plant biomass with reduced lignin protection of the cellulose and the cellulose itself being of a nature that it can be easily broken down to its monomer can be developed.

The bulk density of such lignocellulosic residues makes harvesting, treating, transporting, storing, and delivering large volumes of biomass feedstock require careful logistical analysis prior to plant investment and construction.

10.4.2 Pretreatment for Delignification

Different processes involved in the bioconversion of lignocellulosics, such as pretreatment and distillation after fermentation, are energy intensive. There is considerable research required to overcome the so-called biological barriers if cellulosic ethanol is to become a viable option. Overcoming the first major bottleneck to use of lignocellulosics is to find ways to barriers caused by lignin to the hydrolysis of the cellulose content. While the use of dilute acids, steam explosion, and organosolv methods are considered the most effective at the moment, a better understanding of the interactions between the different components of the different lignocellulosic resides will be required bring about delignification under less severe and cheaper ways. A number of forest biomass rich countries including Canada are focusing on the use of the lignin separated for a variety of applications and success in this could bring about a win–win situation as far as use of the cellulose for ethanol production is concerned.

10.4.3 Enzyme Hydrolysis

The second bottleneck is the need for a better and cheaper biocatalyst, an enzyme, which breaks down the cellulosics into glucose. While recycling and reuse of enzymes is considered important, the break of the solid substrate by a soluble has made this difficult. The use of traditional cellulose enzymes obtained from fungal and bacterial sources, even if they are produced in enhanced amounts by genetic engineering methods may not be enough. The effectiveness and cost of the enzymes still remain a problem. In our lab, we are discussed the possibility of

using the metagenomic approach to possibly screen for a new more potent cellulase enzyme which is used by bovine animals to break down cellulose (Nuguyen et al. 2012). This approach allows the separation of genomes from microorganisms which are unculturable in classical media and the expression of the cellullase gene in known hosts. Novel and innovative ideas like this need to be developed to produce better enzymes with increased conversion activity. Our own understanding of this is that in order to be as effective in breaking down these lignocellulosics, as the herbivorous, we will not just select one or a set of enzymes, but a whole combination of enzymes that are produced by a society of microorganisms in the rumen of these animals.

The simultaneous saccharification and fermentation (SSF) processes of the hydrolytic products is an area of considerable research. However, loss of enzymes increases costs in both the SSF and the two-stage process. In order to utilize both the pentose sugars in the hemicellulosic component and the glucose derived from cellulose, co-culture techniques are being developed. In order to overcome the problems of inhibition of one culture on another, the possibility of immobilizing one and using the other in free state is being explored. Genetic medication of yeast inherently capable of converting hexoses into ethanol to have the additional capability of converting pentoses will overcome many problems associated with co-cultures (Ho et al. 1998). The development of strains resistant to high levels of sugars and alcohols and inhibitors generated during the pretreatment process will also lead to more effective processes.

Research in this field has been considerable over the past few decades. Various types of biomass including forest products, agricultural residues, grass family lignocellulosics, and waste streams have been attempted as substrate. A number of pretreatment methods have been developed and compared. Enzymes from fungus (e.g. Trichoderma ressei), genetically modified microbes and mixture of enzymes from different sources have been tested. More than a thousand possible permutations and combinations have been estimated. While benefiting from the lessons learned from this, it is important to look for innovative new methods to overcome the major bottlenecks which make this process economically unacceptable at the moment.

The cost effectiveness of bioethanol from second generation is also dependent on the gasoline market. When the cost of crude oil reached USD 100–140 per barrel, second generation biofuels seemed suddenly to become competitive. But with the price falling back to 80–90 USD per barrel, the spurt of activity in the development of the industry has slowed down considerably. In Thailand, a pilot plant for the production of biofuel was set up rapidly when the price fluctuation of crude had reached its peak. While this might seem like an opportunity lost, in the long-term utilization and building of this facility may pay dividends. For example, the cost balance may be tilted more in favor of second generation biofuels if penalties or a carbon tax are imposed for higher CO_2 emissions.

The size and location of industrial level facilities will also require a detailed study of supply chains including availability and supply of raw materials and water, distances involved, etc. The optimal size of production facility will depend also on the ground reality in specific situations in developing countries.

Policies for the development of second generation biofuels may be as important as the technologies that need to be developed. While second generation biofuels can lead to mitigation and help reduce the effect of transportation on the environment, subsidy and support of first generation biofuels may push back its commercialization possibilities. A pro-second generation biofuel policy is realistically possible only if the strategy is to reduce carbon dioxide emissions over that of short-term benefits. As such a policy looks unrealistic at the moment, the option would be able to encourage both first and second generation biofuels with increased research and development incentives for the latter.

As in the case of first generation biofuels, adequate LCA needs to be done on a case-by-case basis. Present studies indicate that while second generation biofuels are better than first generation biofuels, the bioconversion of lignocellulosic residues can reduce GHG emissions by around 90 % when compared to fossil petroleum (EUCAR study 2007). A comparison of GHG impacts of transportation fuels against those for stationary applications indicated that under some conditions biofuels will be superior while in others biopower will be favored. Broad and unequivocal statements are difficult (Larson 2005).

It is clear that the industrialized world has considerable confidence that the existing hurdles for second generation biofuel technology can be overcome in a cost-effective way with greater research development and innovation. However, this will need greater collaboration and joint efforts. Evidence of this is the US Government's support to industry, aimed at making cellulosic ethanol cost-competitive with petrol. The activities under the EU's 7th Research Framework Programme which have an increased focus on second generation biofuels also indicate this prioritization.

10.4.4 Production of Renewable Chemicals

The number of chemicals and products that are dependent on the oil and natural gas industry drive the economics of the industry. While only 4 % of the crude oil inputs are used for the production of chemicals, it accounts for nearly 40 % of its profit margins (Werpy and Petersen 2004b). The finite nature of fossil fuels, the availability of large amounts of biomass, search for alternate used beyond pulp and paper, and the low cost of bioethanol, all suggest that the use of biomass for the production of chemicals holds a lot of potential. Some reports forecast that the world's renewable chemicals market will reach a level of US$76.8 billion by the year 2017 (Global Industry Analysts 2010).

The use of biological routes to produce renewable chemicals is attracting a lot of interest as they are carried out under much milder conditions and have a much lower impact on human health and environment. The growing opportunities in the renewable chemicals market will attract the interest of large conventional chemical

companies. This drive will be higher in the developed countries where environmental concerns are an overriding factor. This may not be the case in many developing and emerging economies where the improving living standards of the citizens is a greater priority and often environmental concerns are given lower importance.

Even today, only a small number of chemicals are produced from renewable resources by fermentation. The production of lactic acid, acetic acid, and ethanol are the only processes which can compete with petrochemical routes. Changing fermentation technologies together with genetic engineering can broaden the product spectrum of microorganisms. Recombinant microorganisms with altered sugar metabolism are able to ferment sugar to chemicals, which the corresponding wild-type strain does not produce (Danner and Braun 1999).

In the 1970s, ethanol was used to act as a basic building block in the organic chemical industry, when chemicals like ethylene and acetaldehyde were synthesized from fermented alcohol. In places like India where ethanol by fermentation was cheap, they were used for the production of chemicals like acetic acid, acetic anhydride, or ethyl acetate from fermentation ethanol (Danner and Braun 1999). This route remained unexplored with the fall in prices and availability of petroleum. However, the present impetus on climate change mitigation and the finite nature of fossil fuels have brought these developments into focus again.

The concept of a biorefinery to produce useful chemicals from biomass is thus an area of immense interest and investment. Similar to a petroleum refinery, a biorefinery would have to integrate conversion processes with the required equipments to biomass. The goal would be to produce high-value low-volume and low-value high-volume products. The high-value products need to enhance the profitability of the whole process (Fernando et al. 2006).

An NREL and PNNL study identified (Aden et al. 2004) 12 building blocks that have the most potential for success. The chemicals included 1,4-succinic, -fumaric, and -malic acids, 2,5-furan dicarboxylic acid, 3-hydroxy propionic acid, aspartic acid, glucaric acid, glutamic acid, itaconic acid, levulinic acid, 3-hydroxybutyrolactone, glycerol, sorbitol, and xylitol/arabinitol. The study also found that biological transformations account for the majority of the routes from plant feedstocks to building blocks, but chemical transformations predominate in the conversion of building blocks into molecular derivatives and intermediates. They also highlight the R&D needs that could help improve the economics of producing these building blocks and derivatives.

As an example, succinic acid is of special interest, because it may serve as an intermediate in the production of chemicals like butane-1,4-diol, tetrahydrofuran, g-butyrolactone, or adipic acid (precursor to nylon). These in turn are used in the textile, plastics and resins, detergents, and the food industry. In the petrochemical route, it is produced by hydrogenation of maleic anhydride (Danner and Braun 1999). The biorefining route to such chemicals indicates that they may be economically feasible and are either commercialized or will be commercialized soon.

10.5 Conclusions and the Way Forward

It is clear that second generation bioethanol can have a more favorable GHG balance. They do not have any effect on food security as they use resources which do affect food supply. The use of grasses or other invasive plants or the use of genetically modified non-food and feed crops could make them more acceptable. However, the technological barriers have to be overcome to make the process cost-effective as compared to gasoline. A mix of different existing and innovative options and a rise in costs of fossil fuels may accelerate the drive toward second generation biofuels, especially bioethanol.

The biorefining concept will develop to the expected potential if there are no dramatic changes in the energy production sector and carbon sequestration remains a challenge. The variability of the products streams' from biochemical conversion, often intermediate products, has to be reduced. Integration into the existing chemical production plants or new chemical streams producing a whole new line of chemicals may be developed.

A combination of bioconversion and chemical processes can lead to a wide spectrum of products that can be used as solvents, fiber, and new polymers with different functional characteristics. With the continued expansion of this sector, it will be prudent for industry to develop a niche for themselves, while the market is still expanding.

References

Aden A, Bozell J, Holladay J, White J, Manheim A (2004) Top value added chemicals from biomass. Pacific Northwest National Laboratory and National Renewable Energy Laboratory, Richland, p 76

BIO Intelligence Service (2010) Life cycle analyses applied to first generation biofuels used in France: major insights and learnings. Technical coordination ADEME—service bioresources

Danner H, Braun R (1999) Biotechnology for the production of commodity chemicals from biomass. Chem Soc Rev 28:395–405

EUCAR/JRC/CONCAWE (2007) A joint study, well to wheel analysis of future automobiles fuels and power trains in the European context. http://ies.jrc.ec.europa.eu/WTW.html

Eric D. Larson (2005) Lifecycle Analyses of GHG Impacts of Biofuels for Transport, based on the presentation at the Workshop on Biofuels for the Transport Sector, organized by the Science and Technology Advisory Panel of the Global Environment Facility, 29 Aug 1 Sep, New Delhi, India

Fernando S, Adhikari S, Chanda CC, Murali N (2006) Biorefineries: current status, challenges and future direction. Energy Fuels 20:1727–1737

Galbe M, Zacchi G (2007) Pretreatment of lignocellulosic materials for efficient bioethanol production. Adv Biochem Eng Biotechnol 108:41–65

Guragain YN, Coninck JD, Husson F, Durand A, Rakshit SK (2011) Comparison of some new pretreatment methods for second generation bioethanol production from wheat straw and water hyacinth. Bioresour Technol 102:4416–4424

Ho NWY, Chen Z, Brainard AP (1998) Genetically engineered SaccharomycesYeast capable of effective cofermentation of Glucose and Xylose. Appl Environ Microbiol 64:1852–1859

Huber GW, Iborra S, Corma A (2006) Synthesis of transportation fuels from biomass: chemistry, catalysts, and engineering. Chem Rev 106:4044–4098

Jong ED, Higson A, Walsh P, Wellisch M (2012) Bio-based chemicals, value added products from biorefineries. In: IEA bioenergy task 42, French

Klein-Marcuschamer D, Oleskowicz-Popiel P, Simmons BA, Blanch HW (2012) The challenge of enzyme cost in the production of lignocellulosic biofuels. Biotechnol Bioeng 109:1083–1087

Kumar P, Barrett DM, Delwiche MJ, Stroeve P (2009) Methods for pretreatment of lignocellulosic biomass for efficient hydrolysis and biofuel production. Ind Eng Chem Res 48:3713–3729

McGee T (2006) Biodiesel in India: Jatropha takes center stage. Energy/renewable energy. http://www.treehugger.com/renewable-energy/biodiesel-in-india-jatropha-takes-center-stage.html

Nguyen NH, Maruset L, Uengwetwanit T, Mhuantong W, Harnpicharnchai P, Champreda V, Tanapongpipat S, Jirajaroenrat K, Rakshit SK, Eurwilaichitr L, Pongpattanakitshote S (2012) Identification and characterization of a cellulase-encoding gene from the buffalo rumen metagenomic library. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 76:1075–1084

Pichon P (2009) What will power the cars of the future? IFP 2009. http:\Biofuels\general\IFP\animation\on\biofuel\options\in\transportatioj.mht

Saxena RC, Adhikari DK, Goyal HB (2009) Biomass based energy fuel through biochemical routes: a review. Renew Sustain Energy Rev 13:167–178

Taherzadeh MJ, Karimi K (2008) Pretreatment of lignocellulosic wastes to improve ethanol and biogas production: a review. Int J Mol Sci 9:1621–1651

von Blottnitz H, Curran MA (2007) A review of assessments conducted on bio-ethanol as a transportation fuel from a net energy, greenhouse gas, and environmental life cycle perspective. J Clean Prod 15:607–661

Werpy T, Petersen G (2004) USDOE's top sugar derived building blocks. http://www.nrel.gov/docs/fy04osti/35523.pdf

Werpy T (2009) BIO-World conference in Biotechnology and Bioprocessing, July 19–22, Montreal, Canada

Wikipedia Encyclopedia (2012) Second generation biofuels. http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Second_generation_biofuels

Yah CS, Iyuke SE, Unuabonah EI, Pillay O (2010) Temperature optimization for bioethanol production from corn cobs using mixed yeast strains. Online J Biol Sci 10:103–108

Part V
Biofuels, Co-products and Associated Technologies

Chapter 11
Fermentative Biohydrogen Production Using Microbial Consortia

Radhika Singh

Abstract Hydrogen offers the long-term potential for an energy system that produces near-zero emissions and is based on domestically available resources. Most of the hydrogen at the present technological development is generated from fossil fuels through thermochemical processes. Biohydrogen production is crucial to sustainable global clean energy supply and a promising alternative to fossil fuels. It has the potential to eliminate most of the problems the fossil fuels create. Biohydrogen production has become important because of its potential to become inexhaustible, low-cost and renewable source of clean energy. With the use of appropriate technologies, biohydrogen would be the desired clean product of the microbial process. Fermentative route of hydrogen production from carbohydrate-rich renewable sources such as biomass or waste materials is a feasible approach. Fermentative hydrogen can be produced either by dark fermentation or by photofermentation or by a combination of both (sequential and combined dark and photofermentation). Both sequential and combined dark and photofermentations have resulted in good hydrogen formation yields of 8 mol H_2 mol^{-1} glucose. Comparatively low hydrogen formation rates and yields are achieved in the combined fermentation because of adverse interactions and different nutritional needs of different bacteria.

R. Singh (✉)
Department of Chemistry, Dayalbagh Educational Institute, Dayalbagh, Agra 282 110, India
e-mail: radhika1263@gmail.com

V. K. Gupta and M. G. Tuohy (eds.), *Biofuel Technologies*,
DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-34519-7_11,

11.1 Introduction

Fossil fuels have been used as the main source of energy to fulfil the world wide demand. Coal, oil, and natural gas are the main reserves and their long-time use has resulted into resource depletion, environmental and public health problems. Global warming is the main evident as there has been an increase in the global average air and ocean temperature, melting of snow and ice and rising of the global average sea level (IPCC 2007). This has resulted in serious impacts on the ecosystems, food and water resources and hence on human health. To overcome this situation, there is a global need to introduce sustainable energy solutions to the society which are clean and renewable. According to the European Commission, renewable energy resources improve the energy security and there is decrease in the carbon dioxide emission (European Commission 2006). The renewable energy products mainly include biohydrogen, biogas or biomethane, bioethanol, biobutanol and biodiesel (European Commission 2003). These all are renewable and clean fuel source and do not add to global warming.

Biofuels are wide ranges of fuels which are derived from solid biomass, liquid fuels and various biogases. Biofuels are categorised into different generations according to the type of biomass used. Fermentation of sugars result in the first generation biofuels while the second generation biofuels are from non-food crops. Algae-based biofuels are in the third generation category and biofuels created by processes other than above will be in the fourth generation category. Consumption of biofuels produces no net carbon dioxide emissions and does not release sulphur. It has less toxic and particulate emissions than fossil fuels.

Hydrogen is the simplest element known to man. It is the most plentiful gas in the universe and also environment friendly and renewable. The atmosphere contains 0.07 % of hydrogen and the Earth's surface has 0.14 % of hydrogen. Hydrogen is lighter than air due to which it is mainly found as methane, water, etc. Hydrogen is a promising energy carrier of the future and can be derived from variety of energy sources. It is used in fuel cells with high efficiency (142.35 kJ/g). This means that on burning 1 gm of hydrogen, 142.35 kJ of energy is produced (Xianyan and Youcai 2009). It is categorised as a clean fuel—as its combustion produces only water—hence making it a non-polluting and carbon-free alternative. Its usage does not contribute to greenhouse gases. It has been reported that 50 million tonnes of hydrogen are traded globally per annum with a growth rate of almost 10 % per year (National Hydrogen Energy Roadmap 2002). Based on the National Hydrogen Program of the United States, the contribution of hydrogen to total energy market will be 8–10 % by 2025 (Kapdan and Kargi 2006). The US Department of Energy (2007) has declared that hydrogen power and transport systems will be available in all regions of the United States by the year 2040. With an increasing need for hydrogen energy, development of cost-effective and efficient hydrogen-production technologies has gained significant attention (Valdez et al. 2005a).

The only drawback of hydrogen as a fuel is that when it is burnt it releases such a large amount of energy that nitrogen and oxygen gases present in the atmosphere form different nitrogen oxides (NOXs) in traces. Combustion of hydrogen can also result in the formation of hydrogen peroxide as

$$H_2 + O_2 \rightarrow H_2O_2 \tag{11.1}$$

Hydrogen peroxide formed can discharge peroxide radicals to the atmosphere which can result in photochemical smog. Generally, the yield of hydrogen peroxide is extremely low. Catalytic converters, which can destroy hydrogen peroxide before it escapes into the atmosphere, can be installed wherever hydrogen is burnt as a fuel.

At industrial level, the most common methods for producing hydrogen include steam reformation of natural gas, coal gasification and splitting of water with electricity generated from fossil fuels. Carbon dioxide and greenhouse gases are released by these industrial methods of hydrogen production. Some microorganisms produce hydrogen naturally. Bio-hydrogen is production of hydrogen by the use of micro-organisms. Biohydrogen is one of the biofuels of the future, combining its ability to potentially reduce the dependence on foreign oil and contribute to lower the greenhouse gases (GHG) emission. Awareness regarding the future role of hydrogen as clean fuel for fuel cells producing near-zero emissions and as an intermediate energy carrier for storage and transport of renewable energy is increasing worldwide. Hydrogen is currently more expensive than other fuel options. It is likely to play a major role in the economy in the long run, if technology improvements succeed in bringing down costs. Biohydrogen production employing renewable biomass may be a potential answer to overcome some of the economic constraints to fulfil many of our energy needs. Sugarcane juice, molasses or distillery effluents can be used as substrates because they contain sugar in sufficient amount.

11.2 Biohydrogen Production Mechanisms

Hydrogen can be produced biologically by three mechanisms:

i. *Fermentative Hydrogen Production* Hydrogen can be produced by the fermentation of sugars by bacterial species such as *E.coli*, *Enterobacter aerogenes*, *Clostridium butyricum*, etc. This fermentation is classified as "dark fermentation" as it does not require light energy. Organic compounds can be fermented to produce hydrogen both in the presence and absence of light. Fermentative bacteria have high hydrogen evolution rates as compared to other biological hydrogen-production processes.

ii. *Hydrogen Production by Nitrogenase* Purple nonsulphur (PNS) photosynthetic bacteria such as *Rhodopseudomonas palustris* and *Rhodobacter sphaeroides* can generate hydrogen in the presence of light under anoxic conditions. These bacteria contain nitrogenase enzyme and can generate hydrogen under nitrogen limited conditions. Few cyanobacteria species contain nitrogenase enzymes which can produce hydrogen as a byproduct of nitrogen fixation. They obtain electrons, required for reduction of protons to molecular hydrogen, from the oxidation of organic compounds. A simple reaction can be written as:

$$2H^+ + 2e^- \rightarrow H_2 \tag{11.2}$$

This reaction can be catalysed either by nitrogenase or hydrogenase enzymes (Falciatore and Bowler 2002).

iii. *Biophotolytic Hydrogen Production* Water can be microbially splitted into its elements hydrogen and oxygen in the presence of sunlight. Use of hydrogen in fuel cells can directly produce electricity with water as the byproduct. This carbon-free energy cycle can complement the electric grid for all energy usage: industrial, transportation and residential. Hydrogen production by biophotolysis involves water—which is a clean, renewable, carbon-free substrate available in inexhaustible amounts. Green algae and Cyanobacteria are commonly used for an efficient conversion of solar energy to hydrogen. Splitting of water during biophotolysis results in production of oxygen. Hydrogenase enzyme, responsible for formation of hydrogen, is sensitive to oxygen. Hydrogenase can be engineered and used in bioinspired nanostructures that maintain optimal conditions for hydrogen production.

Anaerobic fermentation is the degradation of organic materials by microorganisms in the absence of oxygen. It is a multistep biological process in which the biodegradable organics are finally converted to methane and carbon dioxide. Hydrogen and volatile fatty acids (VFAs) are formed in the intermediate step. Anaerobic digestion is widely used as a renewable energy source because the process produces biogas (a mixture of methane and carbon dioxide) suitable for energy production and this can substitute fossil fuels. The nutrient-rich digestate which is the leftover solid after digestion is a good organic fertilizer. As compared to methane, hydrogen is a more efficient fuel. Hydrogen can be produced via anaerobic fermentation by inhibiting methane formation or hydrogen consumption. VFAs formed as one of the intermediates can also be further degraded to form hydrogen and carbon dioxide. The carbon dioxide formed during the fermentation process is believed to enter the carbon cycle and is used during photosynthesis and hence does not contribute to global warming.

Fermentative route of hydrogen production from carbohydrate-rich renewable sources such as biomass or waste materials is a promising approach provided that the rates and yields of hydrogen formation are improved to economically feasible levels and large-scale operations are developed (Perera et al. 2010). Fermentative hydrogen can be produced either by dark fermentation or by photofermentation or by a combination of both.

11.3 Dark Fermentation

The oxidation of the substrate by bacteria generates electrons which need to be disposed off in order to maintain the electrical neutrality. Oxygen is the electron acceptor under the aerobic conditions while under the anaerobic or anoxic conditions other compounds, such as protons, act as the electron acceptor and are reduced to molecular hydrogen (Das and Veziroglu 2001; Levin et al. 2004). Carbohydrates, mainly glucose, are the preferred carbon sources for this process, which predominantly give rise to acetic and butyric acids together with hydrogen evolution (Eqs. 11.3 and 11.4; Nath et al. 2005).

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 + 2H_2O \rightarrow \underset{\text{Acetic acid}}{2CH_3COOH} + 2CO_2 + 4H_2 \tag{11.3}$$

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 + 2H_2O \rightarrow \underset{\text{Butyric acid}}{2CH_3CH_2COOH} + 2CO_2 + 2H_2 \tag{11.4}$$

Here, glucose is initially converted to pyruvate (glycolysis), which is further oxidised to acetyl-CoA. Acetyl-CoA is converted to acetyl phosphate and results in the generation of ATP and formation of acetate. This oxidation to acetyl-CoA requires a ferredoxin (Fd) reduction. Reduced Fd is oxidised by hydrogenase which regenerates Fd(ox) and releases electrons as molecular hydrogen (Nath and Das 2004; Nath et al. 2005). The overall reaction of the processes can be described as follows:

$$\text{Pyruvate} + \text{CoA} + 2\text{Fd(ox)} \rightarrow \text{Acetyl-CoA} + 2\text{Fd(red)} + CO_2 \tag{11.5}$$

and,

$$2H^+ + \text{Fd(red)} \rightarrow H_2 + \text{Fd(ox)} \tag{11.6}$$

The reactions given in Eqs. (11.3) and (11.4) are exothermic and do not require any external energy for its completion. Theoretically, 4 mol hydrogen can be produced per mole of glucose when acetic acid is the only VFA formed. Lower yields are practically obtained as some of the carbohydrate (glucose) is used up for growth and maintenance. Two moles of hydrogen are formed per mole of glucose if butyric acid is the only VFA formed and one mole hydrogen per mole of glucose is formed when propionic acid is the only VFA formed (Kim et al. 2006; Luo et al. 2010). Yields are low as the end products contain both acetate and butyrate (Nath et al. 2005). When both acetic acid and butyric acids are VFAs formed, one mole of glucose gives 2.5 mol of hydrogen (Krupp and Widmann 2008). Lower production yield are obtained in case of mixed nonsterile conditions (Arooj et al. 2008; Vazquez and Varaldo 2009; Argun and Kargi 2009). This is primarily due to the presence of hydrogen consumers such as methanogens (Vazquez and Varaldo 2009; Argun and Kargi 2009; Ray et al. 2010), homoacetogens, sulphate and nitrate reducing bacteria (Vazquez and Varaldo 2009; Guo et al. 2010). Although

hydrogen is produced at a higher rate, the yield of hydrogen from the fermentation process is lower than that of other chemical or electrochemical processes. Low conversion efficiencies of the substrate used is a constraint of the process.

Carbohydrates can be fermented under anaerobic conditions by a broad spectrum of heterotrophic bacteria to produce hydrogen, VFAs and carbon dioxide (Hawkes et al. 2007; Vazquez and Varaldo 2009; Dasgupta et al. 2010; Sagnak et al. 2010). Most common of these are spore forming *Clostridium* species, facultative *Enterobacter* species and *Bacillus* species (Kapdan and Kargı 2006; Bartels et al. 2010; Xu et al. 2010). Few thermophilic bacteria (Hawkes et al. 2007; Dasgupta et al. 2010; Hniman et al. 2011; Karadag 2011) and anaerobic acidogenic sludge (Kapdan and Kargı 2006; Hawkes et al. 2008; Oztekin et al. 2008; Vazquez and Varaldo 2009; Argun et al. 2009a) are also widely used. Formation of molecular hydrogen is catalysed by the enzyme hydrogenase (Nicolet et al. 2010; Trohalaki and Pachter 2010). Monosaccharides are normally the main carbon source (Argun et al. 2008a, 2009b; Vazquez and Varaldo 2009; Cai et al. 2010). Higher saccharides are hydrolysed by acid or enzymes to monosaccharides which are then fermented anaerobically (Sagnak et al. 2010).

Hydrogen gas formation rate and yield are the two most important criteria used in selecting the most suitable bacteria for fermentative hydrogen production. Hydrogen gas production rate (HPR) is defined as the amount of hydrogen (ml) produced per unit time and per unit reactor volume (volumetric rate) or per unit biomass (specific rate; SHPR) (Chen et al. 2008). The yield (HY) is defined as the amount of hydrogen produced per amount of substrate consumed (mol H_2/mol glucose) (Chen et al. 2008; Cakir et al. 2010). HPR, SHPR and HY can be expressed as (Eqs. 11.7–11.9):

$$\text{Volumetric hydrogen production rate (HPR)} = \frac{\text{Total amount of hydrogen produced (ml)}}{\text{Reactor volume (ml) x Time duration}} \tag{11.7}$$

$$\text{Specific hydrogen production rate (SHPR)} = \frac{\text{Total amount of hydrogen produced (ml)}}{\text{Mass of substrate used x Time duration}} \tag{11.8}$$

$$\text{Hydrogen production yield (HY)} = \frac{\text{Amount of hydrogen produced (mol)}}{\text{Amount of substrate consumed (mol)}} \tag{11.9}$$

The molar yield of hydrogen and the cost of the feedstock are the two main barriers for fermentation technology. The main challenge in fermentative production of hydrogen is that only less than 15 % of the energy from the organic source can typically be obtained in the form of hydrogen (Logan 2004). Major efforts are hence directed to increase the hydrogen yield. The US Department of Energy (2007) programme goal for fermentation technology is to realise yields of 4 and 6 mol H_2/mol of glucose by 2013 and 2018, respectively, as well as to

achieve 3 and 6 months of continuous operation for the same years. Additionally, some integrated strategies are now under development, such as the two-step fermentation process or the use of modified microbial fuel cells (Ueno et al. 2001; de Vrije and Claasen 2003; Logan and Regan 2006). Through these coupled processes, more hydrogen or energy per mol of substrate can be achieved in the second stage.

Different types of wastes like organic fraction of municipal solid wastes (OFMSW) are important feedstocks for hydrogen production. On an average, almost 50 % of the municipal solid wastes of under developed countries consist of fermentable and biodegradable fraction (Valdez et al. 2005b). Food wastes constitute a major OFMSW. The OFMSW has a significant potential of biological hydrogen production, which also depends on its composition (Okamoto et al. 2000). Lay et al. (2003) have reported that the hydrogen-production potential of carbohydrate-rich high solid organic wastes (HSOW; rice and potato) is about 20-fold higher than of fat-rich HSOW (fat meat and chicken skin) and protein-rich HSOW (egg and lean meat). An increase in alkalinity has been observed on addition of sewage sludge to the food waste. This has enhanced overall hydrogen-production potential most probably due to high protein content in sewage sludge. Ammonia is produced from proteinaceous substances such as peptone, which neutralises volatile fatty acids which would otherwise reduce the pH (Cheng et al. 2002; Mohanakrishna et al. 2010). Hence, a good buffering microenvironment is probably maintained, which supports fermentation and also provides micronutrients, organic matter and microbial biomass.

Crucial roles of nutrients like Nitrogen (N), phosphorous (P), Iron (Fe) and sulphur (S) have been reported for hydrogen production by dark fermentation (Hawkes et al. 2007). Nutritional requirements of acidogenic bacteria depend on the type of bacteria and the experimental conditions. Optimal C/N and C/P ratios in dark fermentation ranged between 11.4/1 and 200/1 for COD/N and between 73/1 and 970/1 for COD/P ratios, respectively (Hawkes et al. 2007; Argun et al. 2008a; Sreethawong et al. 2010).

A huge spectrum of substrates can be used for biohydrogen production ranging from simple monosaccharides like glucose (Li et al. 2008), sucrose (Antonopoulou et al. 2007), organic wastewater (Show et al. 2011), starch containing wastewater e.g. cassava wastewater (Yokoi et al. 2001, 2002; Sangyoka et al. 2007), dairy wastewater (Venkata Mohan et al. 2007), sweet potato starch residue (Lay et al. 2012), cheese whey (Kargi et al. 2012a, b), food waste (Ruknongsaeng et al. 2005; Bansal et al. 2011, 2012). It takes longer fermentation time to degrade starch and cellulose as they have to be first hydrolysed into monosaccharide before being used for hydrogen production. Biohydrogen production by fermentation of carbohydrate-rich renewable materials reduces the release of carbon dioxide (Van Ginkel et al. 2005; Refaat and Sheltawy 2008).

Biomass is a stored source of solar energy initially collected by plants during photosynthesis. Carbon dioxide is captured in the process, which is then converted to complex molecules like cellulose, hemicelluloses and lignin. Biomass term includes a wide range of organic materials produced from plants and animals that

feed on plants. Crop residues (primary residues), forest and wood process residues (secondary residues), animal and human wastes, organic municipal solid wastes, food processing wastes (secondary and tertiary residues), purpose grown energy crops and short rotation forests are examples of biomass (IEA 2008). Wastes and biomass rich in sugars and complex carbohydrates can be used as efficient substrates for the generation of biohydrogen (Ntaikou et al. 2010). This process converts waste to energy which also helps in the stabilization of the waste.

Primary residues and energy crops constitute "green wastes" which have large amount of microbial convertible carbohydrates. Woody wastes contain about 70 % cellulose and hemicelluloses (dried weight), and 25–35 % lignin which covers the polysaccharides (Take et al. 2006). Direct conversion of green wastes to biohydrogen by anaerobic fermentation is difficult because of their complex composition and polymeric structure (Ren et al. 2009a; Guo et al. 2010; Ntaikou et al. 2010). Cellulose and hemicelluloses can be anaerobically fermented to biohydrogen, but lignin is not degraded under anaerobic conditions. Lignin restricts the degradation of cellulose and hemicelluloses as the bonding in lignocelluloses resist mobilisation. Also, lignin is often inhibitory to microbial growth (de Vrije and Claasen 2003). Hence for effective biohydrogen production, it is necessary to pretreat green wastes to destroy the polymeric bonding structure of lignin. Delignification of green wastes can be done by physicochemical treatment and enzymatic treatment. Hydrogen can be produced economically from wastes and wastewater as a useful product and this would effectively reduce waste treatment and disposal costs (Van Ginkel et al. 2005). Dark fermentation of the organic fraction of solid wastes (Bansal et al. 2011, 2012) also produces hydrogen. Cellulose is an important constituent of agricultural waste and waste generated by the pulp and paper industry (Cheng et al. 2011).

Biohydrogen production by dark fermentation has been carried out using both pure and mixed cultures. Pure cultures of *Clostridium* species, such as *Clostridium butyricum*, *Clostridium acetobutyricum*, *Clostridium beijerinckii*, *Clostridium thermolacticum*, *Clostridium saccharoperbutylacetonicum*, *Clostridium pasteurianum*, etc. efficiently convert carbohydrates to acetate, butyrate, hydrogen, carbon dioxide and organic solvents (Chong et al. 2009). Few thermophilic bacteria like *Thermotoga neapolitana*, *Thermotoga elfii* and *Caldicellulosiruptor saccharolyticus* can produce biohydrogen by dark fermentation (de Vrije et al. 2002; Nguyen et al. 2008; Ivanova et al. 2009).

Several unidentified mixed anaerobic bacteria have been used to produce biohydrogen from wastewaters and renewable raw materials (Wu et al. 2009; Bansal et al. 2012; Mohanakrishna et al. 2010). Production of biohydrogen by anaerobic fermentation using mixed cultures is easy to operate and control (Wang and Wan 2009). Hence, mixed culture serves as an ideal system for biohydrogen production from wastes and wastewaters. They can be used under anaerobic or microaerobic conditions and are more robust and not easily contaminated. Biohydrogen can be produced from complex substrates using mixed cultures as they have the capability to adapt to a variety of carbon sources. Utilising mixed culture is extremely important and suitable for nonsterile, ever-changing, complex environment of the

wastewater. Few anaerobic mixed cultures produce hydrogen which is simultaneously consumed by hydrogen consuming microorganisms e.g. methane producing bacteria. Hence, hydrogen consumers should be inhibited for an efficient production of biohydrogen. The physiological differences between hydrogen producers and hydrogen consumers govern different methods used for the enrichment of hydrogen producing inoculum. Mixed cultures are pretreated by exposing to extreme environments such as high temperature, extreme acidity and alkalinity, etc., which inhibits or inactivates hydrogen consumers and only robust spore forming hydrogen producing bacteria survive. Mixed culture can be taken from different natural sources like cow dung (Bansal et al. 2012) or soil (Logan et al. 2002).

Pretreatment of the inoculum partially or totally eliminates or inhibits hydrogen consumers. Pretreatment of the parent inocula is said to accelerate the hydrolysis step which reduces the impact of the rate-limiting step and increase hydrogen production (Zhu and Bèland 2006). Hydrogen gas is produced in the acidogenic stage of anaerobic metabolism (Kapdan and Kargı 2006; Vazquez and Varaldo 2009). Optimal hydrogen production has been observed between pH 5.5 and 6.5 (Kapdan and Kargi 2006; Mu et al. 2006; Wei et al. 2010). Solvent formation has been observed at low pH of 4.5. It has been observed that *Clostridium acetobutylicum*, *Clostridium butylicum* and *Clostridium beijerinkii* can produce ethanol, butanol and acetone at low pH ranges hence reducing hydrogen formation (Datar et al. 2007; Ezeji et al. 2007). Dark fermentation has also been carried out at alkaline pH (Zhao et al. 2010). High pH of 10 was taken to avoid formation of propionic acid and also to inhibit methanogens or hydrogen consumers. Hydrogen production by dark fermentation can be under mesophilic (25–40 °C), thermophilic (40–65 °C) or hyperthermophilic (greater than 80 °C) conditions (Levin and Chahine 2010). Fermentation in the thermophilic range gives higher yield of hydrogen most probably because of complete or partial elimination of hydrogen consumers and increase in metabolic activity of bacteria (Karadag 2011). Some of other pretreatment methods studied are sterilization (Kotay and Das 2009), microwave-assisted radiations (Guo et al. 2010) and ultrasonication (Venkata Mohan et al. 2008). Oxidation–reduction potential (ORP) is also an important parameter affecting hydrogen production by dark fermentation. For example, if ORP values are out of the range of −200 and −250 mV, which is optimal value for *Clostridium* sp., a decrease in hydrogen production has been observed.

11.3.1 Batch Reactor Studies

Majority of the dark fermentation studies for hydrogen gas production have been carried out in batch reactors with different types of bacteria and substrates. Batch fermentations are usually subject to substrate and product inhibitions yielding low hydrogen gas productivities. The reported batch studies were mainly aimed to identify conditions enhancing hydrogen production by substrate and culture selections and adjustment of operation parameters.

Ntaikou et al. (2008) have used *Ruminococcus albus* as inoculum culture for hydrogen production from sweet sorghum biomass. Vegetable waste supplemented with sewage has been used for hydrogen production by dark fermentation (Mohanakrishna et al. 2010; Bansal et al. 2011, 2012). High total volatile fatty acid (TVFA) concentrations (of which 65 % was acetic acid) resulted in reduction in pH and hence adversely effected hydrogen gas formation. Hydrogen can also be produced by batch dark fermentation using hydrolyzates produced from steam explosion of corn stover (Datar et al. 2007).

Heat pretreated anaerobic sludge was used as inoculum culture and hydrogen, carbon dioxide, acetic acid and butyric acids were the major products formed. Increase in the substrate concentration beyond 25 g L^{-1} resulted in decrease in hydrogen formation rate, because of the inhibitory effect of VFAs in the medium (Datar et al. 2007; Lee et al. 2008). Hydrogen gas production by thermophilic–anaerobic fermentation was found to be more effective than mesophilic fermentation and high hydrogen yields close to the theoretical yield of 4 mol H_2 per mol glucose have been obtained (Commission of European Communities 2009; Zeidan and van Neil 2010). Product inhibition on hydrogen gas formation in dark fermentation was investigated by increasing acetate concentration in the fermentation medium (Wang et al. 2008). Almost 50 % of the substrate was converted to VFAs consisting of 60 % butyric acid. Increase in acetate concentrations gradually decreased the rate and yield of hydrogen formation. A noncompetitive product inhibition model was used to describe the product inhibition.

Hydrogen was produced from carbohydrate-rich organic wastewater in a sequencing batch reactor (Chen et al. 2009). Effects of pH (4.9–6.7), and cyclic duration (4, 6, and 8 h) were investigated by using pretreated anaerobic sludge. pH of the fermentation medium decreased because of accumulations of VFAs. pH and durations of the cycles affect hydrogen gas production by sequencing batch operation.

Effects of C/N and C/P ratios on hydrogen gas formation rate and yield by dark fermentation of wheat powder solution has been studied by Argun et al. (2008a). Nitrogen and phosphorous were externally added to the fermentation media in the desired concentrations. Optimal yield was obtained at C/N/P ratio of 100/0.5/0.1 (w w^{-1} w^{-1}).

Both sterile and nonsterile inoculum cultures have been used for hydrogen production from various sources through dark fermentation. Different yields were reported when complex and pure carbon sources were used. Yields around 3 mol H_2 mol^{-1} glucose were reported at low glucose concentrations (less than 5 g L^{-1}) resulting in low volatile fatty acids formation with no considerable product inhibition (Datar et al. 2007; Lin et al. 2007; Ntaikou et al. 2008). Hydrogen formation yields at higher initial carbohydrate concentrations, above 10 g L^{-1}, were around 1.0–2.0 mol H_2 mol^{-1} glucose; which is probably due to the inhibition caused by VFAs. On the other hand, hydrogen formation rate had an increasing trend with an increasing initial substrate concentration up to 20 g glucose L^{-1} followed with a decrease at higher substrate concentrations (Datar et al. 2007; Lee et al. 2008; Argun et al. 2008b).

11.3.2 Continuous Reactor Studies

Dark fermentation studies carried out in a continuous reactor resulted in a constant product quality, production rate and the yield with high productivities at the steady state as compared to that in a batch reactor. Suspended and immobilized cultures were used in a continuous stirred tank reactors (CSTRs) and upflow anaerobic sludge blanket (UASB) reactors for biohydrogen production (Van Ginkel and Logan 2003; Van Ginkel et al. 2005; Ren et al. 2006; Krupp and Widmann 2008; Azbar et al. 2009). Effects of HRT (1, 2.5, 5 and 10 h) and glucose loading rate (0.5–18.9 g COD h^{-1}) on the rate and yield of hydrogen gas formation were studied by Van Ginkel and Logan (2003) using heat shocked agricultural soil as inoculum in dark continuous fermentation. High feed glucose concentrations at low HRT levels resulted in flocculation which adversely affected hydrogen formation.

Continuous operation was found to be more advantageous for immobilized-cell systems (Zhang et al. 2008). Lee et al. (2007) have used a membrane cell recycle reactor (MCR) along with a CSTR. MCR provided high cell concentrations in the fermenter allowing operation at high dilution rates. 20 g COD L^{-1} of fructose was taken as the carbon source. Agitated granular sludge bed reactor (AGSB) fed with starch has been operated in a continuous mode (Cheng et al. 2008). Anaerobic sludge immobilized on powdered activated carbon was used as inoculum and effects of pH (5.5 and 6) and HRT (0.5, 1, 2, 12 h) on hydrogen gas formation was investigated. Presence of *Clostridium* species and *Bifidobacterium* species in the microbial consortia was reported to play crucial role in hydrogen gas formation.

Higher hydrogen formation rates (up to 7600 ml H_2 L^{-1} h^{-1}) as compared to batch systems (max. 1119 ml H_2 L^{-1} h^{-1}) with relatively lower yields (less than 3 mol H_2 mol^{-1} glucose) have been obtained in continuous reactors as compared to batch systems (Lee et al. 2008; Zhang et al. 2008). High biomass concentrations in immobilized-cell reactors provided considerable advantages over CSTR such as high loading rates, low HRTs with extremely high hydrogen formation rates (Lee et al. 2007). Suspended cell CSTRs provided higher yields when compared to immobilized systems. CSTRs could not tolerate high substrate loadings at low hydraulic retention times (HRTs); less than 10 h, due to rapid biomass flocculation adversely affecting hydrogen-production performance (Van Ginkel and Logan 2003). Immobilized-cell reactors are more advantageous than suspended cell CSTR with respect to high hydrogen productivities. However, lower hydrogen yield obtained in immobilized-cell reactors is an important disadvantage (Cheng et al. 2008). Neither continuous suspended cell nor immobilized systems were found to be capable of providing both high hydrogen yields and high rates under high substrate loading rates and low HRT levels.

11.3.3 Fed-Batch Reactor Studies

High cell density fed-batch operation has considerable advantage as compared to batch and continuous operations and is usually used to overcome substrate/product and toxic compound inhibitions encountered at high substrate concentrations. In a fed-batch reactor, metabolic rates can be adjusted by adjusting the feed flow rate and composition of the substrate. The substrate solution is added with a rate sufficient to support the bacterial community and to eliminate the substrate and product inhibitions with no effluent removal. The reactor substrate concentration reaches a low quasi steady-state level when the substrate consumption rate is equal to the feeding rate (Argun and Kargi 2011). When the reactor is full, the contents are allowed to settle. The supernatant containing the products are removed and then another cycle of fed-batch operation is started. Cell-retention time can be adjusted by removing a fraction of settled bacteria. Biohydrogen production in a fed-batch reactor has not been much explored. Chin et al. (2003) reported hydrogen production by fed-batch operation with an extremely high feed glucose concentration (500 g L^{-1}). A long-term fed-batch operation resulted in a constant hydrogen formation yield of 2 mol H_2 mol^{-1} glucose and a rate of 930 ml H_2 h^{-1}. Kargi and Parmukoglu (2008) investigated hydrogen production from boiled waste wheat powder (WP) by fed-batch operation and studied effects of substrate loading rate on rate and yield of hydrogen gas. Maximum hydrogen produced was 3.1 mol per mole of glucose at a rate of 36 ml H_2 h^{-1}. Feed contained 20 g L^{-1} WP with a loading rate of 4 g WP d^{-1}.

Hydrogen production from sweet potato starch in repeated fed-batch reactors using pure culture of *Clostridium butyricum* and co-culture of *Clostridium butyricum* and *Enterobacter aerogenes* was studied by Yokoi et al. (2001). They compared hydrogen-production capabilities in the presence of 0.1 % polypeptone as nitrogen source. Co-culture of *C. butyricum* and *E. Aerogenes* was found to be more effective than pure culture of *C. Butyricum*. Yield of hydrogen obtained was 2.3–2.4 mol per mole of glucose up to 2 % feed starch concentration. A similar co-culture approach through repeated fed-batch operation in the presence of corn steep liquor as nitrogen source has been reported to give a yield of 2.1 mol H_2 mol^{-1} glucose (Yokoi et al. 2002).

11.4 Photo-Fermentation

Photosynthetic nonsulphur (PNS) bacteria can convert VFAs to H_2 and CO_2 under anaerobic conditions (Das and Veziroğlu 2001; Levin et al. 2004; Kapdan and Kargi 2006; Westermann et al. 2008). PNS bacteria also have the ability to use carbon sources like glucose, sucrose and succinate rather than volatile fatty acids for hydrogen production (Fang et al. 2006; Jeong et al. 2008; Li et al. 2009). Commonly used PNS bacteria for photofermentative hydrogen production are

Rhodobacter sphaeroides 0.U001, *Rhodobacter capsulatus*, *Rhodobacter sphaeroides*-RV, *Rhodobacter sulfidophilus*, *Rhodopseudomonas palustris* and *Rhodospirillum rubrum* (Basak and Das 2007). Both nitrogenase and hydrogenase enzymes are present in PNS bacteria (Das and Veziroğlu 2001; Dasgupta et al. 2010). Nitrogenase is the main enzyme responsible in molecular hydrogen production under anaerobic conditions (Koku et al. 2002; Dasgupta et al. 2010). Iron (Fe) and molybdenum (Mo) are known to be the most important cofactors required by the nitrogenase enzyme in hydrogen production (Fascetti et al. 1998). The limited use of nitrogen source is of special importance since every 20 μM of ammonia was reported to cause inhibition on the nitrogenase enzyme responsible for hydrogen formation (Koku et al. 2002). The malate/glutamate ratio greater than 1 for effective hydrogen formation by photofermentation has been recommended (Koku et al. 2002).

Hydrogen gas formation from acetic acid by photofermentation can be represented by the following Eq. (11.10) (Manish and Banerjee 2008; Uyar et al. 2009). Due to positive free energy change, the reaction is not spontaneous requiring external energy input in the form of light which could be provided as artificial or solar light source (Rocha et al. 2001; Chen et al. 2010; Argun and Kargi 2010b). As presented in the equation, theoretically 4 mol H_2 can be produced from 1 mol acetic acid when acetic acid is the only VFA formed.

$$CH_3COOH + 2H_2O \rightarrow 4H_2 + 2CO_2 \quad \Delta G^0 = +104\,kJ \tag{11.10}$$

Efficient hydrogen production by photofermentation is sensitive to environmental conditions (Argun et al. 2008c; Tuna et al. 2009; Ozmihci and Kargi 2010a). Optimal pH and temperature ranges were reported to be 6.8–7.5 and 31–36 °C respectively (Koku et al. 2002). Suitable wave length and light intensities for photofermentation were reported to be between 400 and 1000 nm (Koku et al. 2002; Akkerman et al. 2002), 6 and 10 klux, respectively (Basak and Das 2007). Major hurdles in photofermentation were reported to be lack of preferred carbon sources such as malate and lactate, nonuniform light distribution through fermentation broth and metabolic shift from hydrogen production to polyhydroxy butyrate synthesis (PHB) (Koku et al. 2002; Basak and Das 2007; Das and Veziroğlu 2008).

Hydrogen-production performance of PNS bacteria has been evaluated on the basis of the hydrogen yield and the light efficiency (Akkerman et al. 2002). The yield coefficient is the ratio of the amount of produced hydrogen to the consumed carbon source. The light efficiency denotes the ratio of generated hydrogen energy to the supplied light energy. Depending on the carbon source, hydrogen formation yields up to 80 % of the theoretical yield were reported in the literature (Fascetti and Todini 1995; Akkerman et al. 2002; Basak and Das 2009; Bretner et al. 2010). Light conversion efficiencies varied between 0.2 and 9.3 % (Akkerman et al. 2002; Koku et al. 2002). A light efficiency of 10 % for PNS bacteria corresponds to the theoretical maximum of photochemical efficiency (Akkerman et al. 2002; Bianchi et al. 2010).

According to the following relationship (Akkerman et al. 2002), the light efficiency can be increased by reducing the supplied light energy to the reactor (Eq. 11.11):

$$\text{Light efficiency } (\%) = \frac{\text{Hydrogen production rate } \times \text{ Hydrogen energy content}}{\text{Absorbed light energy}} \tag{11.11}$$

Light efficiencies around 10 % level were obtained only at low light intensities and low hydrogen rates which is dependent on the fraction of energy absorbed by the bacteria and the energy loss during the several steps of excitation and electron transfers (Akkerman et al. 2002). Dasgupta et al. (2010) proposed genetic strain development by modification of light-harvesting antenna complexes responsible for capturing solar energy, reduction in pigment content of bacteria, improvement in nitrogenase enzyme efficiency and reduction in uptake of hydrogenase enzymes. Reactor geometry and light distribution are the key factors for efficient conversion of solar energy to hydrogen (Koku et al. 2002; Basak and Das 2007; Berberoglu and Pilon 2010). Light distribution inside photobioreactors constitutes the most important parameter effecting hydrogen-production rate (Akkerman et al. 2002). Optimisation of light distribution with high reactor surface area is an essential factor to enhance the light efficiency in photofermentation (Akkerman et al. 2002; Dasgupta et al. 2010). Operating parameters also affect the photofermentation process efficiency.

Net energy ratio (NER) is used to determine the process efficiency (Eq. 11.12), which is the ratio of total energy produced to energy required for plant operations like mixing, pumping, aeration and cooling (Burgess and Velasco 2007). NER greater than one can be obtained by improving the light conversion efficiency to hydrogen (Dasgupta et al. 2010).

$$\text{NER} = \frac{\sum \text{ Energy produced (biomass/hydrogen)}}{\sum \text{ Energy input (mixing, aeration, pumping, cooling etc.)}} \tag{11.12}$$

Immobilisation of PNS bacteria on solid matrix yields higher hydrogen formation rates than the suspended culture (Levin et al. 2004).

11.4.1 Batch Reactor Studies

Majority batch studies were carried out using pure carbon sources in sterile and nutrient-rich fermentation media investigating optimum operating conditions, culture selections, nutrient concentrations and inhibitory conditions. Most of photofermentation experiments utilising solar irradiation as light source were studied indoor.

Fang et al. (2006) used *R. sphaeroides* as biocatalyst to study photofermentative hydrogen production from glucose. Nitrogen and light sources were sodium

glutamate and tungsten lamp (light intensity of 135 Wm^{-2}), respectively. Hydrogen gas was produced from starch by a new strain called *Rubrivivax gelatinosus* which was reported to be capable of utilising a wide range of carbon sources (Li and Fang 2008). Tao et al. (2008) have used a PNS strain ZX-5 which produces hydrogen most efficiently from butyrate as compared to succinate, lactate, malate, acetate, pyruvate, valerate, isobutyrate, xylose, fructose, maltose, sucrose, propionate, D-mannitol and glucose. The ZX-5 strain is also a potential hydrogen producer from wastewaters utilising wide range of carbon sources.

Hydrogen production was enhanced through more efficient light penetration using an annular photobioreactor (Basak and Das 2009). The reported hydrogen yield corresponds to 75 % of the theoretical yield which is 6 mol H_2/mol malate (Uyar et al. 2009). Eroğlu et al. (2008) have used a temperature controlled flat-plate solar bioreactor (8 L) for batch hydrogen production from malate, lactate, acetate and olive mill wastewater (OMW). *R. sphaeroides* OU 001 was used as the inoculum culture and outdoor experiments were carried out. Acid-hydrolysed wheat starch was subjected to photofermentation using three different *Rhodobacter* species. *R. sphaeroides*-RV yielded the highest hydrogen-production yield and rate among the other strains tested. Hydrogen gas formation increased with total sugar concentration up to 8.5 g L^{-1} and the optimum was found to be 5 g L^{-1} resulting in the highest rate and yield (Kapdan et al. 2009).

11.4.2 Continuous Reactor Studies

Hydrogen yields and rates varied in continuous photofermentation depending on the substrate, inoculum culture and experimental conditions. Yields up to 80 % of the theoretical yield have been reported depending on the substrate used (Fascetti and Todini 1995). Long hydraulic retention times HRTs of 25 h (Fascetti et al. 1998) to 120 h (Jeong et al. 2007) are required indicating slow conversion of VFAs to H_2 and CO_2 by PNS bacteria.

Continuous hydrogen gas production experiments from carbon monoxide (CO) using *R. rubrum* have been carried out (Najafpour et al. 2003). CO was oxidised to CO_2 while water was reduced to H_2. Hydrogen gas was produced at the rate of 397.5 ml H_2 g^{-1} h^{-1} and was 80 % of the theoretical yield. Fermentation of lactic acid by *R. sphaeroides*-RV was carried out in two-stage chemostat for hydrogen production (Fascetti and Todini 1995). The first reactor was used for nitrogen removal and for bacterial growth while the second reactor was for hydrogen production. Increasing nitrogen concentration adversely affected hydrogen formation due to inhibition of the nitrogenase enzyme. Fascetti et al. (1998) investigated hydrogen production from dark fermentation effluent (DFE) of source selected municipal solid wastes with *R. sphaeroides*-RV by continuous photofermentation. 1 L photobioreactor was operated at HRT = 25 h and was illuminated with 100 klux tungsten lamp to yield the highest SHPR of 100 ml H_2 g^{-1} h^{-1}. Continuous hydrogen production in a pneumatic flat panel photobioreactor was

operated by using *Rhodobacter pseudomonas* as an inoculum culture (Hoekema et al. 2002). The reactor was first run in batch mode followed by continuous operation at HRT = 28.5 h, 175 Wm^{-2} illumination, 30 °C and pH = 6.8–7.0. Mixing was provided by recirculating argon gas through the reactor. Hydrogen production was not observed from batch operation due to high residual ammonium levels and high acetate concentrations. CO_2 was identified as an essential nutrient for growth of PNS bacteria and should not be removed by continuous gas sparging (Hoekema et al. 2002).

Studies for continuous photofermentation have been carried out mostly by suspended cultures rather than using immobilized cells. High hydrogen gas formation rate of 1300 ml H_2 L^{-1} h^{-1} with 75 % substrate conversion efficiency was reported in a study where *R. sphaeroides*-RV was immobilized on porous glass indicating an advantage over suspended culture (Tsygankov et al. 1994).

11.4.3 Fed-Batch Reactor Studies

Almost 80 % of the theoretical yield of biohydrogen was produced from acetate in a fed-batch mode using *Rhodopseudomonas faecalis* strain RLD-53 (Ren et al. 2009b). The reactor was illuminated by 4 klux incandescent lamp source. pH and temperature were controlled at 7.0 and 35 °C, respectively. An 80 L pilot scale photobioreactor was operated in the fed-batch mode in outdoor conditions in a green house. The highest conversion efficiency was 1 % (Boran et al. 2010).

11.5 Sequential Dark and Photofermentations

Dark fermentation results in low hydrogen yields due to accumulation of VFAs in the medium (Brentner et al. 2010). The VFA fermentation capability of PNS bacteria provides a unique opportunity for valorization of DFE as a substrate for photofermentation (Ozmihci and Kargi 2010a; Perera et al. 2010; Chen et al. 2010; Su et al. 2010; Laurinavichene et al. 2010; Afsar et al. 2011). When dark and photofermentations are operated simultaneously, the maximum theoretical hydrogen yield increases to 12 mol H_2 mol^{-1} glucose when acetic acid is the sole product in the dark fermentation (Chen et al. 2010; Su et al. 2010; Ozmihci and Kargi 2010b). For effective photofermentation TVFA and NH_4^+ concentrations in the DFE must be below 2500 and 40 mg L^{-1}, respectively (Argun et al. 2008c; Ozmihci and Kargi 2010a, b; Su et al. 2009a, b; Ozgur et al. 2010; Cheng et al. 2011). Dilution, ammonium stripping, centrifugation and sterilization of DFE have been used as pretreatment steps to reduce TVFA and NH_4^+ below certain limits (Argun et al. 2008c; Argun and Kargi 2010a). Residual glucose in DFE results in a shift of glucose to VFA fermentation by PNS bacteria which takes a long time resulting in low hydrogen gas productivities (Argun and Kargi 2010b). Hence,

DFE should to be favourably ammonia and glucose deficient with desirable VFA concentration (less than 2500 mg L^{-1}) for effective hydrogen gas production by photofermentation (Argun et al. 2008c). Biomass can be acid hydrolysed before fermentation or biohydrolysis step can be incorporated into dark fermentation. Direct photofermentation of carbohydrates derived from acid hydrolysis of biomass can also be carried out. Pretreatment of DFE prior photofermentation and neutralisation after acid hydrolysis are important (Argun and Kargi 2011).

Sequential dark and photofermentation of glucose can be represented by following reactions (Manish and Banerjee 2008) when acetic acid is the only VFA produced.

Dark fermentation:

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 + 2H_2O \underset{\Delta G^\circ = -206\,kJ}{\longrightarrow} 2CH_3COOH + 4H_2 + 2CO_2 \quad (11.13)$$

Photofermentation:

$$2CH_3COOH + 4H_2O \underset{\Delta G^\circ = 104.6 \times 2 = 209.2\,kJ}{\longrightarrow} 8H_2 + 4CO_2 \quad (11.14)$$

Sequential or combined dark and photofermentation (overall reaction):

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6H_2O \underset{\Delta G^\circ = 3.2\,kJ}{\longrightarrow} 12H_2 + 6CO_2 \quad (11.15)$$

The overall maximum theoretical yield in sequential fermentation is 12 mol H_2 mol^{-1} glucose when acetic acid is the only VFA produced (Eqs. 11.13 and 11.14). Actual yields are much lower than that due to formation of a mixture of VFAs and utilisation of part of the substrate for growth, maintenance and PHB formation (Argun et al. 2008c; Argun and Kargi 2010a). An overall yield of minimum 8 mol H_2 mol^{-1} glucose is aimed for an economically viable process (Chen et al. 2010).

Hydrogen gas production studies from waste and pure carbon sources by sequential dark and photofermentation using different operational modes have been reported to have considerably higher yields than single-stage dark or photofermentation. However, hydrogen formation rates in sequential fermentation are lower than those of dark fermentations alone. PNS bacteria require long HRTs (up to 5 days) for efficient conversion of VFAs to hydrogen in a continuous reactor. The highest hydrogen productions are obtained using repeated-batch operation mode where the substrate concentrations varied between 5 and 25 g glucose L^{-1}. Highest hydrogen formation yield of 7.2 mol H_2 mol^{-1} glucose is reported by Yokoi et al. (2002) where medium containing 10 g L^{-1} sweet potato starch was fermented by sequential dark and photofermentation operated in a fed-batch mode. Co-culture of *E. aerogenes* HO-39 and *Clostridium butyricum* has been used in dark fermentation producing hydrogen and VFAs. *R. sphaeroides* efficiently converts VFAs present in DFE by photofermentation and addition of sodium molybdate and EDTA was stated to be crucial in enhancing photofermentation yield. Yokoi et al. (2001) earlier used this approach and obtained a total yield of 7.0 mol H_2 mol^{-1} glucose from sweet potato starch in sequential dark and photofermentation.

Sequential dark and photofermentations increased hydrogen yield by minimum 5 mol H_2 mol^{-1} glucose. Reduced hydrogen productivity was obtained due to slow hydrogen gas production by photofermentation. DFE should be pretreated prior to photofermentation. Increase in cell density and high substrate loading, for example by using immobilized-cell reactors and fed-batch operations, need to be extensively explored.

11.6 Combined Dark and Photofermentation

Dark and photofermentation can be carried out in a single reactor in which VFAs produced by dark fermentation can be converted to hydrogen and carbon dioxide by photofermentation. Theoretically, 12 mol hydrogen per mol of glucose can be obtained by combined dark and photofermentations (Eq. 11.15). Thermodynamically, 600 °C and 34.5 MPa are required for the above conversion (Ni et al. 2006). This conversion can be carried out at room temperature and atmospheric pressure (Kapdan and Kargi 2006) by combined fermentation at a slower rate (Levin et al. 2004).

It has been reported than an ideal combined fermentation proceeds with less than 5 g L^{-1} glucose, at 30 °C and pH 7.00. Using a proper biomass ratio of PNS/dark fermentation bacteria, suitable light/dark illumination cycle and supplementation of Fe(II) and Mo aid in the combined fermentation (Argun and Kargi 2010b; Kargi and Ozmihci 2010). PNS bacteria are capable of fermenting carbohydrates along with dark fermentation bacteria to produce VFA. A long lag time is taken by PNS bacteria to shift from carbohydrate fermentation to VFA fermentation. This creates a hindrance in the combined dark and photofermentations (Argun and Kargi 2010c). Accumulation of VFAs takes place hence causing inhibition of dark fermentation and PNS bacteria (Ozmihci and Kargi 2010b). This problem can be partially solved by utilisation of low carbohydrate concentration and simultaneous removal of VFAs from the medium. A pH between 7 and 7.5, ORP of −150 Mv, temperature of 30 °C and HRT more than 6 days are optimal conditions for combined fermentation (Argun and Kargi 2010c). PNS bacteria are more sensitive to changes in environmental conditions; hence, the operating parameters assigned are more towards to that of photofermentation than dark fermentation. Higher hydrogen yields are obtained in combined fermentation as compared to single-stage dark or photofermentation. However, lower hydrogen formation rates are obtained as compared to single-stage dark fermentation (less than 35 ml H_2 L^{-1} h^{-1}). Majority of the combined fermentation studies have been carried out by suspended and immobilized cultures in batch reactors. Conventional batch reactors can normally operate with 5 g substrate/L, but this concentration can be increased by 10 folds if the reactor is operated in repeated fed-batch mode (Yokoi et al. 1998).

Asada et al. (2006) have reported the highest yield of 7.1 mol H_2 mol^{-1} glucose in combined fermentation. A co-culture of *Lactobacillus delbrueckii* NBRC 13953 and *R. sphaeroides*-RV were used. Hydrogen production in combined fermentation from sucrose under 4 klux light illumination was enhanced using statistical

experiment design methods (Sun et al. 2010). Highest hydrogen-production yield was reported to be 10.16 mol H_2 mol^{-1} sucrose equivalent to 5.08 mol H_2 mol^{-1} hexose. Yokoi et al. (1998) have produced hydrogen in fed-batch reactor by combined fermentation. *Rhodobacter* sp. M-19 and *C. Butyricum* were used as inoculum cultures in an initial ratio of 10:1. A high yield of 6.6 mol H_2 mol^{-1} glucose was obtained.

A hybrid annular bioreactor was operated in a continuous mode for combined dark and light fermentation. *Clostridium beijerinkii* DSM 791 and *R. sphaeroides*-RV were used as microbial strains with a biomass ratio 1:3.9. Low hydrogen formation rates and yields were reported because of accumulation of VFA and also the suboptimal conditions for dark and light fermentations (Argun and Kargi 2010c).

11.7 Conclusions

An ideal process scheme for fermentative hydrogen production should give a cheap, simple and robust operation with high hydrogen formation rate and yield. Commonly used batch reactors are seldom inhibited because of high initial substrate and final product concentrations. This can be avoided by slow feeding of substrate and continuous removal of products like VFAs, solvents and hydrogen. Continuous operation results in constant quality product at steady state.

Highest hydrogen formation rate (7.5 L H_2 L^{-1} h^{-1}) has been reported in a single-stage continuous dark fermentation immobilized reactor operated at low HRT of 15 min. Low hydrogen yields (maximum 3 mol H_2 mol^{-1} glucose) were obtained in the continuous mode. Higher yields can be achieved in a batch reactor at low initial substrate concentrations (less than 5 g glucose L^{-1}). Higher yields (about 3 mol H_2 mol^{-1} glucose) and rates can be achieved at high speed substrate concentration in fed-batch operation mode.

DFE can undergo photofermentation to produce hydrogen gas from VFAs by using PNS bacteria (mainly *Rhodobacter* sp.). Photofermentation requires strict control of environmental conditions, unusual nutrient requirements (Fe, Mo, V, glutamate, vitamins etc.) and uniform light intensities. PNS bacteria are more sensitive to changes in ambient conditions. Lower hydrogen-production rates are achieved by *Rhodobacter* sp. (0.17 L H_2 L^{-1} h^{-1}) as compared to that of dark fermentation. Almost 80 % of the theoretical yields have been achieved under low light intensities and low hydrogen formation rates. PNS bacteria cannot tolerate NH_4^+ and VFAs above 40 and 2500 mg L^{-1} respectively due to substrate inhibition. These limitations reduce hydrogen gas productivity in batch fermentation. Although continuous suspended cultures have slightly better hydrogen yields, immobilisation of PNS bacteria on solid matrices (e.g. porous glass) increases the rates of hydrogen formation appreciably (3600–3800 ml H_2 L^{-1} h^{-1}). High cell density fed-batch culture with controlled feeding and environmental conditions has been the most suitable operation mode resulting in both high hydrogen formation rates and yields.

Both sequential and combined dark and photofermentations have been experimented to improve hydrogen formation yields to the economical level of 8 mol H_2 mol^{-1}glucose. Sequential fermentations require larger fermenter volumes and separation/pretreatment units in between the two stages. In combined fermentation, both dark and photofermentation take place in the same reactor which makes it easier to operate. However, higher hydrogen gas yields and productivities are obtained in sequential mode than the combined one due to the longer lag times between the dark and light fermentation in the latter case. Also, adverse interactions and different nutritional needs of different bacteria result in low hydrogen formation rates and yields in the combined fermentation and hence making the sequential fermentation a preferable one.

References

Afsar N, Özgür E, Gürgan M, Akköse S, Yücel M, Gündüz U, Eroğlu I (2011) Hydrogen productivity of photosynthetic bacteria on dark fermenter effluent of potato steam peels hydrsylate. Int J Hydrogen Energy 36:432–438

Akkerman I, Janssen M, Rocha J, Wijffels RH (2002) Photobiological hydrogen production: photochemical efficiency and bioreactor design. Int J Hydrogen Energy 27:1195–1208

Antonopoulou G, Ntaikou I, Gavala HN, Skiadas IV, Angelopoulos K, Lyberatos G (2007) Biohydrogen production from sweet sorghum biomass using mixed acidogenic cultures and pure cultures of *Ruminococcus Albus*. Global NEST J 9:144–151

Argun H, Kargi F (2009) Effects of sludge pre-treatment method on bio-hydrogen production by dark fermentation of waste ground wheat. Int J Hydrogen Energy 34:8543–8548

Argun H, Kargi F (2010a) Photo-fermentative hydrogen gas production from dark fermentation effluent of ground wheat solution: effects of light source and light intensity. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:1595–1603

Argun H, Kargi F (2010b) Effects of light source, intensity and lighting regime on bio-hydrogen production from ground wheat starch by combined dark and photo-fermentations. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:1604–1612

Argun H, Kargi F (2010c) Continuous bio-hydrogen production from ground wheat starch by combined fermentation using annular-hybrid bioreactor. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:6170–6178

Argun H, Kargi F (2011) Bio-hydrogen production by different operational modes of dark and photo fermentation: an overview. Int J Hydrogen Energy 36:7443–7459

Argun H, Kargi F, Kapdan IK, Oztekin R (2008a) Bio-hydrogen production by dark fermentation of wheat powder solution: effects on C/N and C/P ratio on hydrogen yield and formation rate. Int J Hydrogen Energy 33:1813–1819

Argun H, Kargi F, Kapdan IK, Oztekin R (2008b) Batch dark fermentation of powdered wheat starch to hydrogen gas: effects of the initial substrate and biomass concentrations. Int J Hydrogen Energy 33:6109–6115

Argun H, Kargi F, Kapdan IK (2008c) Light fermentation of dark fermentation effluent for biohydrogen production by different *Rhodobacter* species at different initial volatile fatty acid (VFA) concentrations. Int J Hydrogen Energy 33:7405–7412

Argun H, Kargi F, Kapdan IK (2009a) Microbial culture selection for bio-hydrogen production from waste ground wheat by dark fermentation. Int J Hydrogen Energy 34:2195–2200

Argun H, Kargi F, Kapdan IK (2009b) Hydrogen production by combined dark and light fermentation of ground wheat solution. Int J Hydrogen Energy 34:4305–4311

Arooj MF, Han SK, Kim SH, Kim DH, Shin HS (2008) Continuous bio-hydrogen production in a CSTR using starch as substrate. Int J Hydrogen Energy 33:3289–3294

Asada Y, Takumoto M, Aihara Y, Oku M, Ishimi K, Wakayama T (2006) Hydrogen production by co-cultures of *Lactobacillus* and a photosynthetic bacteria *Rhodobacter sphaeroides*-RV. Int J Hydrogen Energy 31:1509–1531

Azbar N, Dokgoz FTC, Keskin T, Korkmaz KS, Syed HM (2009) Continuous fermentative hydrogen production from cheese whey wastewater under thermophilic anaerobic conditions. Int J Hydrogen Energy 34:7441–7447

Bansal SK, Singhal Y, Singh R (2011) Biohydrogen production with different ratios of kitchen waste and inoculum in lab scale batch reactor at moderate temperature, published by Springer e-book, Chemistry of Phytopotentials: Health, Energy and Environmental Perspectives, pp 213–216. ISBN: 978-3-642-23393-7

Bansal SK, Singhal Y, Singh R (2012) Biohydrogen production by anaerobic treatment from kitchen waste using mixed culture. J Human Welfare Ecol 2. ISSN No. 2249-8125. Accepted for publication

Bartels JR, Pate MB, Olson NK (2010) An economic survey of hydrogen production from conventional and alternative energy sources. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:8371–8384

Basak N, Das D (2007) The prospect of purple non-sulfur (PNS) photosynthetic bacteria for hydrogen production: the present state of the art. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 23:31–42

Basak N, Das D (2009) Photofermentative hydrogen production using purple non-sulfur bacteria *Rhodobacter sphaeroides* O.U.001 in an annular photobioreactor: a case study. Int J Hydrogen Energy 33:911–919

Berberoglu H, Pilon L (2010) Maximizing the solar to H_2 energy conversion efficiency of outdoor photobioreactors using mixed cultures. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:500–510

Bianchi L, Mannelli F, Viti C, Adessi A, Philippis RD (2010) Hydrogen-producing purple non-sulfur bacteria isolated from the trophic lake Averno (Naples, Italy). Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:12216–12223

Boran E, Ozgür E, van der Burg J, Yücel M, Gunduz U, Eroğlu I (2010) Biological hydrogen production by *Rhodobacter capsulatus* in solar tubular photo bioreactor. J Cleaner Prod 18:529–535

Brentner LB, Peccia J, Zimmerman JB (2010) Challenges in developing biohydrogen as a sustainable energy source: implications for a research agenda. Environ Sci Technol 44:2243–2254

Burgess G, Velasco JGF (2007) Materials, operational energy inputs, and net energy ratio for photobiological hydrogen production. Int J Hydrogen Energy 32:1225–1234

Cai G, Jin B, Saint C, Monis P (2010) Metabolic flux analysis of hydrogen production network by *Clostridium butyricum* W5: effect of pH and glucose concentrations. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:6681–6690

Cakir A, Ozmihci S, Kargi F (2010) Comparison of bio-hydrogen production from hydrolyzed wheat starch by mesophilic and thermophilic dark fermentation. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:13214–13218

Chen CY, Yang MH, Yeh KL, Liu CH, Chang JS (2008) Bio-hydrogen production using sequential two-stage dark and photo fermentation processes. Int J Hydrogen Energy 33:4755–4762

Chen WH, Sung S, Chen SY (2009) Biological hydrogen production in an anaerobic sequencing batch reactor: pH and cyclic duration effects. Int J Hydrogen Energy 34:227–234

Chen CY, Yeh KL, Lo YC, Wang HM, Chang JS (2010) Engineering strategies for the enhanced photo-H_2 production using effluents of dark fermentation processes as substrate. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:13356–13364

Cheng SS, Cheng SM, Chen ST (2002) Effect of volatile fatty acids on a thermophilic anaerobic hydrogen fermentation process degrading peptone. Water Sci Technol 46:209–214

Cheng CH, Hung CH, Lee KS, Liau PY, Liang CM, Yang LH et al (2008) Microbial community structure of a starch-feeding fermentative hydrogen production reactor operated under different incubation conditions. Int J Hydrogen Energy 33:5242–5249

Cheng J, Su H, Zhou J, Song W, Cen K (2011) Hydrogen production by mixed bacteria through dark and photo-fermentation. Int J Hydrogen Energy 36:450–457

Chin HL, Chen ZS, Chou CP (2003) Fed batch operation using *Clostridium acetobutylicum* suspension culture as biocatalyst for enhancing hydrogen production. Biotechnol Prog 19:383–388

Chong ML, Rahim RA, Shirai Y, Hassan MA (2009) Biohydrogen production by *Clostridium butyricum* EB6 from palm oil mill effluent. Int J Hydrogen Energy 34:7173–7181

Commission of European Communities (2009) Sixth framework programme, priority 6 Sustainable energy systems integrated project 019825. Acronym: HYVOLUTION, Nonthermal production of pure hydrogen from biomass. http://www.bio-hydrogen.nl/hyvolution/31231/7/0/20

Das D, Veziroglu TN (2001) Hydrogen production by biological processes: a survey of literature. Int J Hydrogen Energy 26:13–28

Das D, Veziroğlu TN (2008) Advances in biological hydrogen production processes. Int J Hydrogen Energy 33:6046–6057

Dasgupta CN, Gilbert JJ, Lindblad P, Heidorn T, Borgvang SA, Skjanes K et al (2010) Recent trends on the development of photobiological processes and photobioreactors for the improvement of hydrogen production. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:10218–10238

Datar R, Huang J, Maness PC, Mohagheghi A, Czernik S, Chornet E (2007) Hydrogen production from the fermentation of corn stover biomass pretreated with a steam-explosion process. Int J Hydrogen Energy 32:932–939

de Vrije T, Claasen PAM (2003) Dark hydrogen fermentation. In: Reith JH, Wijffels RH, Barten H (eds) Bio-methane and bio-hydrogen. Dutch Biological Hydrogen Foundation, The Hague, The Netherlands, pp 103–123

de Vrije T, de Haas GG, Tan GB, Keijsers ERP, Claassen PAM (2002) Pretratment of *Miscanthus* for hydrogen production by *Thermotoga elfii*. Int J Hydrogen Energy 27:1381–1390

Eroğlu I, Tabanoğlu A, Gündüz U, Eroğlu E, Yücel M (2008) Hydrogen production by *Rhodobacter sphaeroides* O.U.001 in a flat plate solar bioreactor. Int J Hydrogen Energy 33:531–541

European Commission (2003) Directive 2003/30/EC of the European Parliament and of the council of May 2003 on the promotion of the use of biofuels or other renewable fuels for transport. Internet document available at: http://ec.europa.eu/energy/res/legislation/doc/biofuels/en_final.pdf

European Commission (2006) Green paper. A European strategy for sustainable, competitive and secure Energy (SEC[2006] 317). Internet document available at: http://ec.europa.eu/energy/greenpaperenergy/doc/2006_03_08_gp_document_en.pdf

Ezeji TC, Quereshi N, Blaschek HP (2007) Bioproduction of butanol from biomass: from genes to bioreactors. Curr Biotechnol 18:220–227

Falciatore A, Bowler C (2002) Revealing the molecular secrets of marine diatoms. Annu Rev Plant Biol 53:109–130

Fang HHP, Zhu H, Zhang T (2006) Phototrophic hydrogen production from glucose by pure and co-cultures of *Clostridium butyricum* and *Rhodobacter sphaeroides*. Int J Hydrogen Energy 31:2223–2230

Fascetti E, Todini O (1995) *Rhodobacter sphaeroides* RV cultivation and hydrogen production in a one-and two stage chemostat. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 44:300–305

Fascetti E, D'addario E, Todini O, Robertiello A (1998) Photosynthetic hydrogen evolution with volatile organic acids derived from the fermentation of source selected municipal solid wastes. Int J Hydrogen Energy 23:753–760

Guo XM, Trably E, Latrille E, Carrĕre H, Steyer JP (2010) Hydrogen production from agricultural waste by dark fermentation: a review. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:10660–106673

Hawkes FR, Hussy I, Kyazze G, Dinsdale RM, Hawkes DL (2007) Continuous dark fermentative hydrogen production by mesophilic microflora: principles and progress. Int J Hydrogen Energy 32:172–184

Hawkes FR, Forsey H, Premier GC, Dinsdale RM, Hawkes DL, Guwy AJ, Maddy J, Cherryman S, Shine J, Dn Auty (2008) Fermentative production of hydrogen from a wheat flour industry co-product. Bioresour Technol 99:5020–5029

Hniman A, Thong SO, Prasertsan P (2011) Developing a thermphilic hydrogen-producing microbial consortia from geothermal spring for efficient utilization of xylose and glucose mixed substrates and oil palm trunk hydrolysate. Int J Hydrogen Energy 36:8785–8793

Hoekema S, Bijmans M, Janssen M, Tramper J, Wijffels RH (2002) A pneumatically agitated flat-panel photobioreactor with gas re-circulation: anaerobic photoheterotrophic cultivation of a purple non-sulfur bacterium. Int J Hydrogen Energy 27:1331–1338

IEA (2008) World Energy Outlook 2208. In: OECD/IEA, Paris: 578 cross reference

IPCC (2007) Intergovernmental panel on climate change fourth assessment report. Climate change 2007: synthesis report. Summary for policymakers. http://www.ipcc.ch/pdf/assessment-report/ar4/syr/ar4_syr_spm.pdf (cross reference)

Ivanova G, Rákhely G, Kovács KL (2009) Thermophilic biohydrogen production from energy plants by *Caldicellulosiruptor saccharolyticus* and comparison with related studies. Int J Hydrogen Energy 34:3659–3670

Jeong TY, Cha GJ, Yoo ik, Kim DJ (2007) Hydrogen production from waste activated sludge by using separation membrane acid fermentation reactor and photosynthetic reactor. Int J Hydrogen Energy 32:525–530

Jeong TY, Ch GC, Yeom SH, Choi SS (2008) Comparison of hydrogen production by four representative hydrogen producing bacteria. J Ind Eng Chem 14:333–337

Kapdan IK, Kargı F (2006) Bio-hydrogen production from waste materials. Enzym Microb Technol 38:569–582

Kapdan IK, Kargi F, Öztekin R, Argun H (2009) Bio-hydrogen production from acid hydrolyzed wheat starch by photofermentation using different *Rhodobacter* sp. Int J Hydrogen Energy 34:2201–2207

Karadag D (2011) Anaerobic hydrogen production at elevated temperature (60 °C) by enriched mixed consortia from mesophilic sources. Int J Hydrogen Energy 36:458–465

Kargi F, Ozmihci S (2010) Effects of dark/light bacteria ratio on bio-hydrogen production by combined fed-batch fementation of ground wheat starch. Int J Hydrogen Energy 34:869–874

Kargi F, Pamukoglu MY (2008) Dark fermentation of ground wheat starch for bio-hydrogen production by fed-batch operation. Int J Hydrogen Energy 34:2940–2946

Kargi F, Eren NS, Ozmihci S (2012a) Hydrogen gas production from cheese whey powder (CWP) solution by thermophilic dark fermentation. Int J Hydrogen Energy 37(3):2260–2266

Kargi F, Eren NS, Ozmihci S (2012b) Biohydrogen production from cheese whey powder (CWP) solution: comparison of thermophilic and mesophilic dark fermentations. Int J Hydrogen Energy 37(10):8338–8342

Kim DH, Han SK, Kim SH, Shin HS (2006) Effect of gas sparging on continuous fermentative hydrogen production. Int J Hydrogen Energy 31:2155–2169

Koku H, Eroğlu I, Gündüz U, Yücel M (2002) Aspects of the metabolism of hydrogen production by *Rhodobacter sphaeroides*. Int J Hydrogen Energy 27:1315–1329

Kotay SM, Das D (2009) Novel dark fermentation involving bioaugmentation with constructed bacterial consortium for enhanced biohydrogen production from pretreated sewage sludge. Int J Hydrogen Energy 34:7489–7496

Krupp M, Widmann R (2008) Bio-hydrogen production by dark fermentation: experiences of continuous operation in large lab scale. Int J Hydrogen Energy 34:4509–4516

Laurinavichene TV, Belokopytov BF, Laurinavichius KS, Tekucheva DN, Seibert M, Tsygankov AA (2010) Towards the integration of dark- and photo-fermentative waste treatment. 3. Potato as substrate for sequential dark fermentation and light-driven H_2 production. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:8536–8543

Lay JJ, Fan KS, Chang J, Ku CH (2003) Influence of chemical nature of organic wastes on their conversion to hydrogen by heat-shock digested sludge. Int J Hydrogen Energy 28:1361–1367

Lay CH, Lin HC, Sen B, Chu CY, Lin CY (2012) Simultaneous hydrogen and ethanol production from sweet potato via dark fermentation. J Cleaner Prod 27:155–164

Lee KS, Lin PJ, Fangchiang K, Chang JS (2007) Continuous hydrogen production by anaerobic mixed microflora using a hollow-fiber microfiltration membrane bioreactor. Int J Hydrogen Energy 32:950–957

Lee KS, Hsu YF, Lo YC, Lin PJ, Lin CY, Chang JS (2008) Exploring optimal environmental factors for fermentative hydrogen production from starch using mixed anaerobic microflora. Int J Hydrogen Energy 33:1565–1572

Levin DB, Chahine R (2010) Challenges for renewable hydrogen production from biomass. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:4962–4969

Levin DB, Pitt L, Love M (2004) Bio-hydrogen production: prospects and limitations to practical application. Int J Hydrogen Energy 29:173–185

Li RY, Fang HHHP (2008) Hydrogen production characteristics of photoheterotrophic *Rubrivivax gelatinosus* L31. Int J Hydrogen Energy 33:974–980

Li Z, Wang H, Tang Z, Wang X, Bai J (2008) Effects of pH value and substrate concentration on hydrogen production from the anaerobic fermentation of glucose. Int J Hydrogen Energy 33:7413–7418

Li X, Wang YH, Zhang SL, Chu J, Zhang M, Huang MZ et al (2009) Enhancement of phototrophic hydrogen production by *Rhodobacter sphaeroides* ZX-5 using a novel strategy shaking and extra-light supplementation approach. Int J Hydrogen Energy 34:4517–4523

Lin PY, Whang LM, Wu YR, Ren WJ, Hsiao CJ, Li SL et al (2007) Biological hydrogen production of the genus *Clostridium*: metabolic study and mathematical model simulation. Int J Hydrogen Energy 32:1728–1735

Logan BE (2004) Extracting hydrogen and electricity from renewable resources. Environ Sci Technol 38:160A–167A

Logan BE, Regan JM (2006) Microbial fuel cells—challenges and applications. Environ Sci Technol 40:5172–5180

Logan BE, Oh SE, Kim IS, Ginkel SV (2002) Biological hydrogen production measured in batch anaerobic respirometers. Environ Sci Technol 36:2530–2535

Luo G, Xie L, Zou Z, Wang W, Zhou Q, Shim H (2010) Anaerobic treatment of cassava stillage for hydrogen and methane production in continuously stirred tank reactor (CSTR) under high organic loading rate (OLR). Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:11733–11737

Manish S, Banerjee R (2008) Comparison of bio-hydrogen production processes. Int J Hydrogen Energy 33:279–286

Mohanakrishna G, Goud RK, Mohan SV, Sarma PN (2010) Enhancing bio-hydrogen production through sewage supplementation of composite vegetable based market waste. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:533–541

Mu Y, Wang G, Yu HQ (2006) Kinetic modelling of batch hydrogen production process by mixed anaerobic cultures. Bioresour Technol 97:1302–1307

Najafpour G, Younesi H, Mohamed AR (2003) Continuous hydrogen production via fermentation of synthesis gas. Petrol Coal 45:154–155

Nath K, Das D (2004) Improvement of fermentative hydrogen production: Various approaches. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 65:520–529

Nath K, Kumar A, Das D (2005) Hydrogen production by *Rhodobacter sphaeroides* strain O.U. 001 using spent media of *Enterobacter cloacae* strain DM11. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 68:533–541

National Hydrogen Energy Roadmap (2002) Toward a more secure and cleaner energy future for America; Washington (cross reference)

Nguyen TAD, Kim JP, Kim MS, Oh YK, Sim SJ (2008) Optimization of hydrogen production by hyperthermophilic eubacteria, *Thermotoga maritama* and *Thermotoga neapolitana* in batch fermentation. Int J Hydrogen Energy 33:1483–1488

Ni M, Leung DYC, Leung MKH, Sumathy K (2006) An overview of hydrogen production from biomass. Fuel Process Technol 87:461–472

Nicolet Y, Camps JCF, Fontecave M (2010) Maturation of [FeFe]-hydrogenases: structures and mechanisms. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:10750–10760

Ntaikou I, Gavala HN, Kornaros M, Lyberatos G (2008) Hydrogen production from sugars and sweet sorghum biomass using *Ruminococcus albus*. Int J Hydrogen Energy 33:1153–1163

Ntaikou I, Antonopoulou G, Lyberatos G (2010) Biohydrogen production from biomass and wastes via dark fermentation: a review. Waste Biomass Valoriz 1(1):21–39

Okamoto M, Miyahara T, Mizuno O, Noike T (2000) Biological hydrogen potential of materials characteristic of the organic fraction of municipal solid wastes. Water Sci Technol 41:25–32

Özgür E, Mars AE, Peksel B, Louwerse A, Yücel M, Gündüz U, Claassen PAM, Eroğlu I (2010) Biohydrogen production from beet molasses by sequential dark and photofermentation. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:511–517

Ozmihci S, Kargi F (2010a) Bio-hydrogen production by photofermentation of dark fermentation effluent with intermittent feeding and effluent removal. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:6674–6680

Ozmihci S, Kargi F (2010b) Comparison of different mixed cultures for bio-hydrogen production from ground wheat starch by combined dark and light fermentation. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 37:341–347

Oztekin R, Kapdan IK, Kargi F, Argun H (2008) Optimization of media composition for hydrogen gas production from hydrolyzed wheat starch by dark fermentation. Int J Hydrogen Energy 33:4083–4090

Perera KRJ, Ketheesan B, Gadhamshetty V, Nirmalakhandan N (2010) Fermentative biohydrogen production: evaluation of net energy gain. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:12224–12233

Ray S, Reaume SJ, Lalman JA (2010) Developing a statistical model to predict hydrogen production by a mixed anaerobic mesophilic culture. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:5332–5342

Refaat AA, El Sheltawy ST (2008) Biohydrogen production by *Clostridium beijerinckii*. WIT Trans Ecol Environ 1:123–132

Ren N, Li J, Li B, Wang Y, Liu S (2006) Bio-hydrogen production from molasses by anaerobic fermentation with a pilotscale bioreactor system. Int J Hydrogen Energy 31:2147–2157

Ren N, Wang A, Cao G, Xu J, Gao L (2009a) Bioconversion of lignocellulosic biomass to biohydrogen: potential and challenges. Biotechnol Adv 27:1051–1060

Ren NQ, Liu BF, Zheng GX, Xing DF, Zhao X, Guo WQ, Ding J (2009b) Strategy for enhancing photo-hydrogen production yield by repeated fed-batch cultures. Int J Hydrogen Energy 34:7579–7584

Rocha JS, Barbosa MJ, Wijffels RH (2001) Hydrogen production by photosynthetic bacteria: culture media, yields and efficiencies. In: Miyake J, Matsunaga T, San Pietro A (eds) Biohydrogen II. Pergamon. Elsevier Science, pp 3–32. ISBN 0-08-043947-0

Ruknongsaeng P, Reungsang A, Moonamart S, Danvirutai P (2005) Influent of nitrogen, acetate and propionate on hydrogen production from pineapple waste extract by *Rhodospirillum rubrum*. J Water Environ Technol 13:93–117

Sagnak R, Kapdan IK, Kargi F (2010) Dark fermentation of acid hydrolyzed ground wheat starch for bio-hydrogen production by periodic feeding and effluent removal. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:9630–9636

Sangyoka S, Reungsang A, Moonamart S (2007) Repeated-batch fermentative for biohydrogen production from cassava starch manufacturing wastewater. Pakistan J Biol Sci 10:1782–1789

Show KY, Lee DJ, Zang ZP (2011) Production of biohydrogen: current perspectives and future prospects. Biofuels: alternative feedstocks and conversion processes. Elsevier; Chapter 20, pp 467–479

Singhal Y, Singh R (2012) Initial effect of different pretreatment methods on energy recovery from Petha Wastewater by Anaerobic Digestion, Communicated to Waste and Biomass Valorization, Under review

Sreethawong T, Chatsiriwatana S, Rangsunvigit P, Chavadej S (2010) Hydrogen production from cassava wastewater using an anaerobic sequencing batch reactor: effects of operational parameters, COD: N ratio, and organic acid composition. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:4092–4102

Su H, Cheng J, Zhou J, Song W, Cen K (2009a) Improving hydrogen production from cassava starch by combination of dark and photo fermentation. Int J Hydrogen Energy 34:1780–1786

Su H, Ceng J, Zhou J, Song W, Cen K (2009b) Combination of dark- and photo-fermentation to enhance hydrogen production and energy conversion efficiency. Int J Hydrogen Energy 34:8846–8853

Su H, Cheng J, Zhou J, Song W, Cen K (2010) Hydrogen production from water hyacinth through dark- and photo- fermentation. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:8929–8937

Sun Q, Xiao W, Xi D, Shi J, Yan X, Zhou Z (2010) Statistical optimization of bio-hydrogen production from sucrose by a co-culture of *Clostridium acidisoli* and *Rhodobacter sphaeroides*. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:4076–4084

Take H, Andou Y, Nakamura Y, Kobayashi F, Kurimoto Y, Kuwahara M (2006) Production of methane gas from Japanese cedar chips pretreated by various delignification methods. Biochem Eng J 28:30–35

Tao Y, He Y, Wu Y, Liu F, Li X, Zong W et al (2008) Characteristics of a new photosynthetic bacterial strain for hydrogen production and its application in wastewater treatment. Int J Hydrogen Energy 33:522–530

Trohalki S, Pachter R (2010) The effects of the dimethylether bridging moiety in the H-cluster of the *Clostridium pasteurianum* hydogenase on the mechanism of H_2 production: a quantum mechanics/molecular mechanics study. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:13179–13185

Tsygankov AA, Hirata Y, Miyake M, Asada Y, Miyake J (1994) Photobioreactor with photosynthetic bacteria immobilized on porous glass for hydrogen photoproduction. J Ferment Bioeng 77:575–578

Tuna E, Kargi F, Argun H (2009) Hydrogen gas production by electrohydrolysis of volatile fatty acid (VFA) containing dark fermentation effluent. Int J Hydrogen Energy 34:262–269

Ueno Y, Haruta S, Ishii M, Igarashi Y (2001) Microbial community in anaerobic hydrogen-producing microflora enriched from sludge compost. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 57:555–562

U.S. Department of Energy (2007) Hydrogen, fuel cells and infrastructure technologies program, multi-year research. Development and Demonstration Plan, U.S. Department of Energy

Uyar B, Eroglu I, Yucel M, Gunduz U (2009) Photofermentative hydrogen production from volatile fatty acids present in dark fermentation effluents. Int J Hydrogen Energy 34:4517–4523

Valdez-Vazquez I, Sparling R, Risbey D, Rinderknecht-Seijas N, Poggi N-Varaldo HM (2005a) Hydrogen generation via anaerobic fermentation of paper mill wastes. Bioresour Technol 96:1907–1913

Valdez-Vazquez I, Rios-Leal E, Esparza-Garcia F, Cecchi F, Poggi-Varaldo HM (2005b) Semi-continuous solid substrate anaerobic reactors for H-2 production from organic waste: mesophilic versus thermophilic regime. Int J Hydrogen Energy 30:1383–1391

Van Ginkel SW, Logan B (2003) Increased biological hydrogen production with reduced organic loading. Water Res 39:3819–3826

Van Ginkel SW, Oh SE, Logan BE (2005) Biohydrogen gas production from food processing and domestic wastewaters. Int J Hydrogen Energy 30:1535–1542

Vazquez IV, Varaldo HMP (2009) Hydrogen production by fermentative consortia. Renew Sustain Energy Rev 13:1000–1013

Venkata Mohan S, Lalit BV, Sarma PN (2007) Anaerobic biohydrogen production from dairy wastewater treatment in sequencing batch reactor (AnSBR): effect of organic loading rate. Enzyme Microb Technol 41:506–515

Venkata Mohan S, Lalit BV, Sarma PN (2008) Effect of various pretreatment methods on anaerobic mixed microflora to enhance biohydroen production utilizing dairy wastewater as substrate. Bioresour Technol 99:59–67

Wang J, Wan W (2009) Factors influencing fermentative hydrogen production: a review. Int J Hydrogen Energy 34:799–811

Wang Y, Zhao QB, Mu Y, Yu HQ, Harada H, Li YY (2008) Biohydrogen production with mixed anaerobic cultures in the presence of high-concentration acetate. Int J Hydrogen Energy 33:1164–1171

Wei J, Liu ZT, Zhang X (2010) Bio-hydrogen production from starch wastewater and application in fuel cell. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:2949–2952

Westermann P, Jorgensen B, Lange L, Ahring BK, Christensen CH (2008) Maximizing renewable hydrogen production from biomass in a bio/catalytic refinery. Int J Hydrogen Energy 32:4135–4141

Wu X, Zhu J, Dong C, Miller C, Li Y, Wang L, Yao W (2009) Continuous biohydrogen production from liquid swine manure supplemented with glucose using an anaerobic sequencing batch reactor. Int J Hydrogen Energy 34:6636–6645

Xianyan C, Youcai Z (2009) The influence of sodium on biohydrogen production from food waste by anaerobic fermentation. J Mater Cycles Waste Manag 11(2009):244–250

Xu JF, Ren NQ, Wang AJ, Qiu J, Zhao QL, Feng YJ, Liu BF (2010) Cell growth and hydrogen production on the mixture of xylose and glucose using a novel strain of *Clostridium* sp. HR-1 isolated from cow dung compost. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:13467–13474

Yokoi H, Saitsu AS, Uchida H, Hirose J, Hayashi S, Takasaki Y (1998) H2 production from starch by mixed culture of *Clostridium butyricum* and *Rhodobacter* sp M-19. Biotechnol Lett 20:895–899

Yokoi H, Tokushige T, Hirose J, Hayashi S, Takasaki Y (2001) Microbial hydrogen production from sweet potato starch residue. J Biosci Bioeng 91:58–63

Yokoi H, Maki R, Hirose J, Hayashi S (2002) Microbial production of hydrogen from starch manufacturing wastes. Biomass Bioeng 22:389–395

Zeidan AA, van Niel EWJ (2010) A quantitative analysis of hydrogen production efficiency of the extreme thermophile *Caldicellulosiruptor owensensis* OLT. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:1089–1098

Zhang ZP, Show KY, Tay JH, Liang DT, Lee DJ (2008) Bio-hydrogen production with anaerobic fluidized bed reactors—a comparison of biofilm-based and granule-based systems. Int J Hydrogen Energy 33:1559–1564

Zhao Y, Chen Z, Zhang D, Zhu X (2010) Waste activated sludge fermentation for hydrogen production enhanced by anaerobic process improvement and acetobacteria inhibition: the role of fermentation pH. Environ Sci Technol 44:3317–3323

Zhu H, Bèland M (2006) Evaluation of alternative methods of preparing hydrogen producing seeds from digested wastewater sludge. Int J Hydrogen Energy 31:1980–1988

Chapter 12
Biohydrogen as Biofuel: Future Prospects and Avenues for Improvements

Jahangir Imam, Puneet Kumar Singh and Pratyoosh Shukla

Abstract Biological hydrogen production is one of the most imperative and demanding areas of research and technology development as a clean, efficient, and sustainable energy option to be considered as imminent fuel. The successful biohydrogen production needs technology improvement, use of updated microbial technologies to generate, and developing innovative proficient methods of bio-hydrogen production. This review explains the various possibilities toward the advancement of biohydrogen production methods, microbial technology involved in different methods with their benefits and shortcomings. It also spotlights on the avenues for enhancement in biohydrogen production and the future prospects of exploiting biohydrogen as prominent biofuel.

Keywords Bio-hydrogen · Hydrogenase · Biophotolysis · Photofermentation · Dark fermentation · Genetically modified microorganisms · Bioreactors

12.1 Introduction

Today in this twenty-first century there is large demand of chemical hydrogen as energy fuel. But the world is also having challenges to meet the demand. Fossil fuels serve as the primary source of energy to fulfill world's energy requirement

J. Imam
Biotechnology Laboratory, Central Rainfed Upland Rice Research Station (CRRI), Hazaribagh, Jharkhand 825301, India

P. K. Singh · P. Shukla (✉)
Enzyme Technology and Protein Bioinformatics Laboratory, Department of Microbiology, Maharshi Dayanand University, Rohtak, Haryana 124001, India
e-mail: pratyoosh.shukla@gmail.com

V. K. Gupta and M. G. Tuohy (eds.), *Biofuel Technologies*,
DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-34519-7_12,

and are the major energy provider (80 %). These fossil fuels are exhaustible and also releases greenhouse gases (CO_2, CH_4 and CO) in the environment resulting in global warming and pollution. Therefore, the concept of sustainable energy development was evolved for a livable future where human needs are met while keeping the balance with nature (Vijayaraghavan and Soom 2006). There are lots of interests among technologists to generate clean and sustainable energy from renewable carbon source (Bhat 2000).

Presently, 96 % of all hydrogen are derived from fossil fuels, with 48 % from natural gas, 30 % from hydrocarbons, 18 % from coal, 4 % from electrolysis, and about 1 % is produced by biomass (Fig. 12.1). Hydrogen is considered as the most important fuel as it has low emission, it is environment friendly, renewable, does not evolve any greenhouse gases, and also contain high energy content per unit mass of any known fuel (143 GJL^{-1}). It can also easily converted into electricity by fuel cell and on combustion gives water as the only by product (Das et al. 2008).

Hydrogen produced from renewable sources such as water, organic waste or biomass, either biologically or photobiologically is termed as biohydrogen (Vijayraghavan and Ahmed 2006). Microbial production of hydrogen by anaerobic fermentation or by photosynthesis has been reported (Fig. 12.2). The anaerobic fermentation process is a choice for biohydrogen production over photosynthesis as it does not require sunlight. But now microorganisms like algae, cyanobacteria are also used for the production of biohydrogen.

Therefore, this review will focus on the different methods available for the biohydrogen production, its application and future aspects. We will also discuss the important improvement which can be exploited for the biohydrogen production.

12.2 Different Methods of Biohydrogen Production

Many microorganisms produce hydrogen as their byproduct during anaerobic fermentation processes. Some microorganisms like green algae, cyanobecteria produce enzymes to convert water into hydrogen in the presence of thermal energy source such as sunlight. This process is known as photobiological process. In biological hydrogen production process, hydrogen formation and consumption are

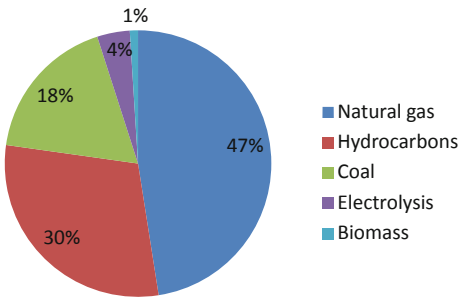


Fig. 12.1 Different sources of hydrogen production

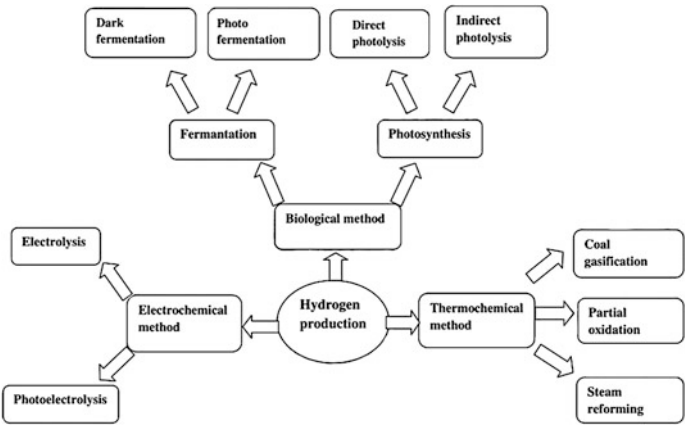


Fig. 12.2 Different methods of hydrogen production

uncoupled, so that hydrogen is available as the final product (Reith et al. 2003). There are various biological methods available for hydrogen production. Table 12.1 gives an overview of biological hydrogen production process, which is being explored in fundamental and applied research.

12.2.1 Direct Biophotolysis

This biological process utilizes solar energy and photosynthesis system of microalgae to convert water into hydrogen. It uses the same photosynthesis system as present in plants and algae but instead of generating carbon containing products, it produces hydrogen. Here, both Photosystem I (PS I) and Photosystem II (PS II) photosynthetic systems are involved and with the help of sunlight, it converts the most easily available substrate, water into oxygen and hydrogen (Fig. 12.2). This can help in unlimited production of hydrogen in this methods becomes successful in future (Fig. 12.3).

In direct biophotolysis, the hydrogen production time is very less since the hydrogenase enzyme activity is sensitive to simultaneously oxygen production at high level. This is a major setback of using this method for biohydrogen production. This problem has been overcome by the use of green algae, *Chlamydomonas reinhardtti* which maintain low O_2 level (Melis et al. 2000) but the H_2 produced is very low (Benemann 2000).

12.2.2 Indirect Biophotolysis

The sensitivity of H_2 evolution to O_2 is been minimized in indirect photolysis by splitting O_2 and H_2 production. In this, CO_2 is first fixed as storage carbohydrate

Table 12.1 Overview of different biological hydrogen production methods with their advantages (Reith et al. 2003; Kaushik Nath and Debabrata Das 2004)

S.No.	Methods	General reaction	Microorganisms used	Advantages
1	Direct biophotolysis	$2\ H_2O + \text{light} \rightarrow 2H_2 + O_2$	Microalgae	Can produce H_2 from water and sunlight Solar conversion energy increased by 10 folds as compared to trees and crops
2	Indirect biophotolysis	Overall reaction: $12H_2O + \text{light} \rightarrow 12H_2 + 6O_2$	Microalgae, Cyanobacteria	Can produce H_2 from water Has the ability to fix N_2 from atmosphere
3	Photofermentations	$CH_3COOH + 2\ H_2O + \text{light} \rightarrow 4\ H_2 + 2\ CO_2$	Purple bacteria, Microalgae	A wide spectral light energy can be used by these bacteria Can use different waste material such as distillery effluent, waste etc.
4	Dark fermentation	$C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6H_2O \rightarrow 12H_2 + 6CO_2$	Fermentative bacteria	It can produce H_2 all day long without light A verity of carbon source can be used as substrate It produces valuable metabolites such as butyric, lactic and acetic acids as by products It is anaerobic process so there is no problem of O_2 limitation
5	Hybrid fermentation technology (Two-Phase $H_2 + CH_4$ Fermentation)	(a) $C_6H_{12}O_6 + 2H_2O \rightarrow 4H_2 + 2CH_3COOH + 2CO_2$ (Stage I) (b) $2CH_3COOH \rightarrow 2CH_4 + 2CO_2$ (Stage II)	Fermentative bacteria + Methanogenic bacteria	Two-stage fermentation can improve the overall yield of hydrogen

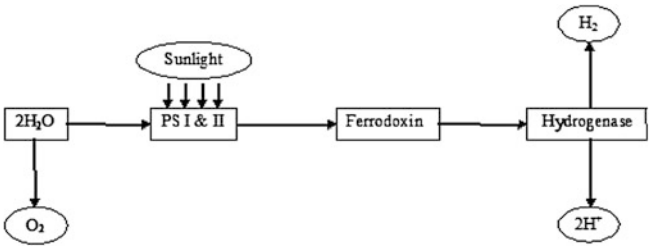


Fig. 12.3 Direct biophotolysis

with the evolution of O_2 which is followed by its conversion to H_2 by dark anaerobic fermentation processes (Fig. 12.4).

$$6H_2O + 6CO_2 + \text{light} \rightarrow C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6O_2$$

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 + 12H_2O \rightarrow 12H_2 + 6CO_2$$

Over all

$$12H_2O + \text{Light} \rightarrow 12H_2 + 6O_2$$

Cyanobacteria and various types of green algae fixes both, the CO_2 and the nitrogen from the atmosphere with the help of PS II and nitrogenase enzyme. Since the nitrogenase enzyme is localized in heterocyst, it provides an oxygen free environment for hydrogen production.

12.2.3 Photofermentation

In photofermentation, H_2 production occurs under oxygen deficient condition using high energy and organic acids. These reactions are performed by purple nonsulfur bacteria because of the presence of nitrogenase enzyme. The overall pathways for the photofermentation process can be expressed as (Fig. 12.5):

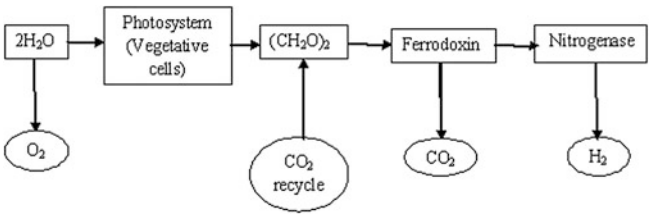


Fig. 12.4 Indirect biophotolysis

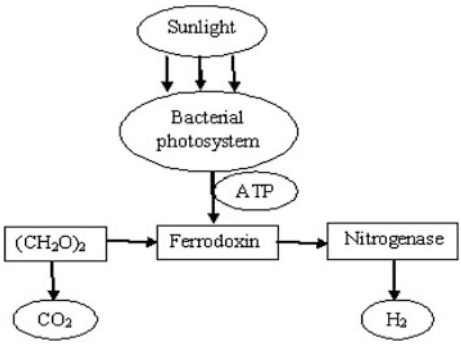


Fig. 12.5 Photofermentation process by photosynthetic bacteria

These photosynthetic bacteria lack PSI which is an advantage as it eliminates the sensitivity of H_2 production to high O_2 concentration. These phototropic bacteria can easily convert the light energy into H_2 using cheap organic substrate (Boltan 1996; Fedorov et al. 1998; Tsygankov et al. 1994). Both the batch (Zurrer and Bachofan 1979) as well as continuous culture (Fascetti and Todini 1995) processes can be employed for H_2 production. In spite of having these advantages, the photochemical efficiency is low (3–10 %) (Das et al. 2008). This may be due to two reasons:

1. Inhomogeneous light distribution in the bioreactor.
2. Low nitrogenase activity.

This can be improved by improving the design of bioreactor, so that homogeneous light distribution occurs in bioreactor and may improve photoconversion efficiency microorganisms as well as maintaining the maximum nitrogenase activity. The major bottleneck of this method of H_2 production in practical application is that the process requires a large surface area to collect light energy, and the construction of such large bioreactor is usually cost expensive.

12.2.4 Dark Fermentation

These phenomena occur under anaerobic condition. In this, the bacterial oxidation of the substrate generates electron which is then accepted by proton, an electron acceptor and get reduced to molecular H_2 (Das and Veziroglu 2001; Levin et al. 2004). Dark fermentation has high H_2 evolution rate but the yield is low in comparison to other chemical and electrochemical process. The reason for this low H_2 yield is that the end product contains both acetate and butyrate. Moreover, if H_2 yield is increased the reaction becomes thermodynamically unstable (Das et al. 2008, Fig. 12.6).

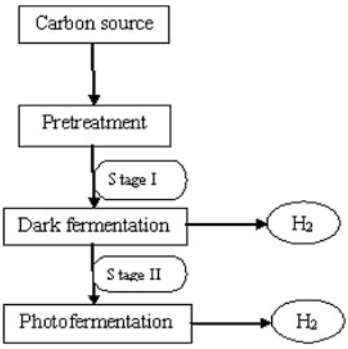


Fig. 12.6 Dark fermentation

12.2.5 Hybrid Fermentation Technology

This technology is based on combining the two fermentation process to enhance H_2 production yield (Das et al. 2008). The synergy of the process lies in the maximum conversion of the substrate which otherwise fails to achieve a complete conversion due to thermodynamic limitation (Liu et al. 2005). There were two combined systems developed on the basis of hybrid fermentation technology:

1. Dark and photofermentative bioreactors.
2. Bioelectrochemically assisted microbial bioreactors.

12.2.5.1 Dark and Photofermentative Bioreactors

In this system, the light independent bacteria and photosynthetic bacteria provide an integrated system for maintaining the H_2 yield (Yokoi et al. 1998). In this two stage fermentative system, limit dark fermentation occurs in which carbohydrate is converted into H_2 by photosynthetic bacteria in photobioreactor. This combines fermentation process results in the production of 12 ml of H_2 from 1 ml of glucose. This hybrid fermentation process is highly efficient in a sense that it requires only one substrate and it releases H_2 in both the stages.

12.2.5.2 Bioelectrochemically Assisted Microbial Bioreactors

This bioreactor technology is based on electrochemical cell, with the involvement of microbial fuel cells (MFC). In this, MFC produce photons and electrons due to the oxidation of organic matter by the bacteria (Ishikawa et al. 2006; Schotz and Schroder 2003) and the photon (H_2) get evolved at cathode. In Bioelectrochemically assisted microbial reactor (BEAMR), H_2 is evolved at the cathode (Liu 2005) using biodegradable material. Both the MFC and BEAMR systems are efficient

and have similarities; therefore scientists are trying to develop system where both the systems could be forced or exploited for each other.

The different method described above for biohydrogen production has its own advantage and disadvantage. No single method can produce H_2 in large amount to fulfill the requirement of world's H_2 demand. Even though these technologies have greatly advanced during the last two decades, the general commercialization is still lagging. We need to improve our R&D and industrial sector and also manage their research to improve biohydrogen production at commercial scale.

12.3 Biohydrogen Producing Microorganisms

There are several groups of microorganisms that can produce hydrogen. These are basically divided into two broad groups, one is heterotrophic bacteria which require supply of chemically bound energy in the form of household waste, industrial waste, effluents etc., and they are independent of sunlight. The other group is mainly the photosynthetic bacteria which utilize sunlight for hydrogen production. Another group of photosynthetic bacteria is cyanobacteria, which has nitrogen fixation properties and produces hydrogen as byproduct. The common class of hydrogen producing microorganisms is strictly anaerobic. Some facultative bacteria have been identified for hydrogen production if the enzyme hydrogenase is present in the bacteria. Recently, aerobic bacteria have also been reported to produce hydrogen. Eukaryotic green algae also possess hydrogenase enzyme and can be used to produce biohydrogen (Table 12.2).

12.4 Bottleneck in Biohydrogen Production

In the coming time, the world will face the energy crisis as well as the degradation of the environment. The fossil fuel based energy will deplete and the human kind will be in great danger. This can be only stopped by increasing our dependence to H_2 energy-based economy instead of fossil fuel based economy. But the transition from fossil fuel to H_2 energy is not easy because of the following bottlenecks which are listed below:

1. Low H_2 yield from any available method.
2. The H_2 production pathways in microorganisms are still not completely elucidated.
3. Low availability of cheap substrate.
4. Cheap methods should be developed to process the raw material industrially.
5. Presently, there is not a single microorganism available which can produce more than 4 mol H_2/mol of glucose.
6. Highly efficient bioreactor is still not developed.

Table 12.2 List of various groups of microorganisms with their advantages and disadvantages

Group	Microorganisms	Advantages	Disadvantages
I	Green algae	Can produce H_2 from water and sunlight	Sunlight dependent
			Sensitivity of hydrogenase to high oxygen concentration
		CO_2 is the sole carbon source	Require H_2O as an additional substrate
		Presence of hydrogenase enzyme	
II	Cyanobacteria	Can produce H_2 from water and sunlight	Sunlight dependent
			Inhibitory effect of oxygen on nitrogenase
		CO_2 is the sole carbon source	Requirement of CO_2 gas
		Nitrogenase enzyme is involved in H_2 production	
III	Photosynthetic bacteria	Utilizes sunlight as energy source	Sunlight dependent
			Low photochemical efficiencies (3–10 %)
		Can utilize cheap organic or inorganic wastes	Inhomogeneity of light distribution in bioreactor
		Versatile metabolic capabilities	
		Lack of PS II	
		No O_2 inhibition of hydrogen production	
IV	Fermentative bacteria	Light independent	Require treatment of fermented broth
		Different and cheap raw materials can be used	CO_2 is required
		Produces valuable by-products	
		No O_2 inhibition problem	

7. The H_2 production reaction is thermodynamically unstable. Hence, the system must be developed to keep the partial H_2 pressure low (Thauer et al. 1977, Vijayaraghavan and Soom 2006).
8. Sensitivity of hydrogenase enzyme to O_2 and H_2 partial pressure effect in H_2 production yield.
9. Little knowledge about the H_2 producing microorganisms.
10. Lack of sensibility, poor economy, and much dependence to fossil fuel energy source.
11. H_2 purification and storage.

12.5 Avenues for Improvement in Biohydrogen Production

Many methods and processes must be improved and advanced in near future to overcome the bottleneck in biohydrogen products and to increase the H_2 yield to fulfill the world's demand.

12.5.1 Genetically Modified Microorganisms

Today, genetic engineering is the key area of focus for the improvement of strains for H_2 production (Das et al. 2008). In photofermentation, the presence of pigment in photosynthetic bacteria hinders the high distribution in photobioreactor. By genetically modifying the potential pigment protein expression, we can allow the efficient light absorption (Miyake et al. 1998). Miyake et al. (1998) found a mutant strain of *Rhozobacter sphaeroids* by or irradiation mutation in which LH1/LH2 (Light Harvesting 1/Light Harvesting 2) ratio was altered and he found that the H_2 production is increased to 1.4 times. Akhtar and Jones (2008) have made a synthetic operon of hydrogenase in a single plasmid to overcome the problem of heterogeneous gene expression. One another approach is to change the *E.coli* host system which has faster growth ratio and can easily commercialized.

Currently, genetically modified microorganisms use is a challenge because of the possibility of horizontal gene transfer and plasmid instability.

12.5.2 Metabolic Engineering of Microorganisms

The genetic manipulation of some eukaryotes, regulatory or transport pathways can be done to increase the H_2 production yield. Some examples of metabolic engineering for H_2 production are:

1. Blocking the formation of alcohol and some acids by redirecting their pathways.
2. H_2 production can be increased by directing the carbon flow into synthesis of formate (Yoshida et al. 2006).
3. By increasing the substrate utilization efficiency of microorganisms.

So by understanding the metabolic pathways and function it can be targeted and manipulated easily to regulate the H_2 production.

12.5.3 Modification of Hydrogenase Enzyme

Hydrogenase enzyme is one of the important aspects of research, since it is the key enzyme of the biohydrogen production. it provides the overexpression of this enzymes may lead to reduced yield of H_2 (Morimoto et al. 2005).

12.5.4 Improvement of Bioreactor Design

To fulfill the need of making biohydrogen as a fuel in near future, it chiefly depends on success of converting the process from lab scale to industrial scale. In

Table 12.3 List of modified bioreactors for hydrogen production

Microorganisms	Raw materials	Type of modification	Reference
Rhodobacter sphaeroides RV	Basal medium with lactate and glutamate	Multi-layered photobioreactor (MLPR)	Kondo et al. (2006)
Rhodopseudomonas palustris WP3-5	Acetate	internal optical fiber illumination	Chen and Chang (2006)
Sewage sludge	Sucrose	Fixed bed bioreactor with activated carbon	Chang et al. (2002)
Activated sludge and digested sludge	Glucose	Anaerobic fluidized bed reactor	Zhang et al. (2003)
Anaerobic sludge	Sucrose	Polymethy methacrylate(PMMA) immobilized cells	Wu and Chang (2007)
Sludge from wastewater treatment plant	Sucrose	Carrier-induced granular sludge bed (CIGSB)	Lee et al. (2006)
Sludge from wastewater treatment plant	Sucrose	Fluisized bed reactor (FBR)	Wu et al. (2007)
Enterobacter cloacae IIT-BT 08	Sucrose	Rhomboidal bioreactor	Kumar and Das (2001)

this, bioreactor plays a very important part; in bioreactor design its efficiency, robustness, and reliability are important parameters which need to be addressed. Different types of bioreactors have been modified to design a suitable bioreactor which can be used for H_2 production (Table 12.3).

12.5.5 Utilization of Inexpensive Raw Material

For large-scale industrial production of biohydrogen , use of inexpensive raw material is desirable. The main criteria for the selection of a substrate for H_2 production are its availability, cost, carbohydrate content, and biodegradability (Kapdan and Kargi 2006). Therefore, research should also be focused on cheap, easily available, and low-cost raw material which can be used in industrial scale without compromising in the production yield of H_2.

12.6 Future Prospects

For our energy requirements, we are almost totally dependent on carbon-containing fossil fuel sources like oil, coal, and natural gas. These fossil fuels have been formed over millions of years from plant biomass. With the rapid use of these fossil fuel resources, it will be exhausted in the near future. The other major

concern of continuous use of fossil fuels is, on combustion they releases greenhouse gases like CO_2 and other which is the main reason of global warming and climate change. Therefore, many research groups all over the world have focused their research on biological hydrogen production from cheap raw material with the help of microorganisms.

The biohydrogen is considered as a future dream fuel because it has many advantages over the existing energy sources. It is renewable, does not release any greenhouse gases, has high energy content, can be converted into electricity and most importantly on combustion it releases water as the byproduct (Das et al. 2008).

Today, there is lot of focus on biological hydrogen production at small-scale mainly because of two reasons (1) can utilize renewable energy resources, and (2) usually operated at ambient temperature and atmospheric pressure. The small-scale biohydrogen production at location where the raw materials are easily available is the ideal choice for biohydrogen production. In this, the biohydrogen gas produced can be either used directly at the point of production ("Stand-alone system") or supplied at another location ("grid-connected production system"). The potential of biohydrogen production is not only decided by the characteristics and cost of the production process, but also by its integration into the overall energy infrastructure (Reith et al. 2003).

The transition from fossil fuel based energy sources to biohydrogen-based energy sources is not easy and also not feasible in the short term because of the above mentioned problems. This work has to be addressed at different levels from lab scale to industrial scale to its commercialization to make biohydrogen the 'future dream fuel'. To make this possible, we also have to focus our research in the following areas:

1. Improvement of H_2 production processes using cheap raw material.
2. Improvement of microbial strain for the utilization of various carbon substrates.
3. Use of mixed culture consortium for better uptake of substrate and more H_2 production.
4. Improvement of various bioreactor designs.
5. Standardization of scaling up of H_2 production.

12.7 Conclusions

Biohydrogen is most commonly produced by algae and bacteria and is regarded as prospective biofuel. It is also considered as the 'energy carrier of the future' being a clean energy source with high-energy content as compared to hydrocarbon fuels. Various improvement areas of research are presently envisaged toward increasing the efficiency by developing oxygen-tolerant FeFe-hydrogenases and boosted H_2 production rates by advanced electron transfer. Further, few aspects viz., augmentation of chlorophyll (Chl) antenna size in green algae to maximize

photobiological solar conversion efficiency resulting in better light exploitation and superior photosynthetic productivity by the green alga mass culture are on the spotlight these days. Nevertheless, the majorities of issues are improving bioreactor design through following approaches:

- Restricting photosynthetic H_2 production by buildup of a proton gradient.
- Inhibition of photosynthetic H_2 production by CO_2.
- Bicarbonate binding at PS II for proficient photosynthetic activity.
- Efficient conversion of solar energy into chemical energy stored in molecular H_2.

However, unlike fossil fuels, petroleum, natural gas, and biomass, hydrogen is not readily available in nature and diverse methods can be applied for biohydrogen production. This appraisal describes the latest idea of this challenging field of research which can provide suitable options to researchers to develop their learning toward experimenting with biohydrogen production utilizing modern state-of-the-art technologies. Despite the fact that each method has its own merits and demerits but in entirety if biohydrogen has to be used as marketable fuel and it has to be cost-effective and effortlessly available.

References

Akhtar MK, Jones PR (2008) Engineering of a synthetic hydF-hydE-hydG-hydA operon for biohydrogen production. Anal Biochem 373:170–172

Benemann JR (2000) Hydrogen production by microalgae. J Appl Phycol 12:291–300

Bhat MK (2000) Cellulases and related enzymes in biotechnology. Biotechnol Adv 18:355–383

Bolton JR (1996) Solar photoproduction of hydrogen: a review. Sol Energy 57(1):37–50

Chang JS, Lee KS, Lin PJ (2002) Biohydrogen production with fixed-bed bioreactors. Int J Hydrogen Energy 27:1167–1174

Chen CY, Chang JS (2006) Enhancing phototropic hydrogen production by solid-carrier assisted fermentation and internal optical-fiber illumination. Process Biochem 41:2041–2049

Das D, Khanna N, Veziroğlu TN (2008) Recent developments in biological hydrogen production processes. Chem Ind Chem Eng Q 14(2):57–67

Das D, Veziroglu TN (2001) Hydrogen production by biological processes: a survey of literature. Int J Hydrogen Energy 26:13–28

Fascetti E, Todini O (1995) Rhodobacter sphaeroides RV cultivation and hydrogen production in a one- and two-stage chemostat. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 22:300–305

Fedorov AS, Tsygankov AA, Rao KK, Hall DO (1998) Hydrogen photoproduction by *Rhodobacter sphaeroides* immobilised on polyurethane foam. Biotechnol Lett 20:1007–1009

Ferchichi M, Crabbe E, Gil GH, Hintz W, Almadidy A (2005) Influence of initial pH on hydrogen production from cheese whey. J Biotech 120:402–409

Ishikawa M, Yamamura S, Tamkamura Y, Sode K, Tamiya E, Tomiyama M (2006) Development of a compact high-density microbial hydrogen reactor for portable bio-fuel cell system. Int J Hydrogen Energy 31(11):1484–1489

Kapdan IK, Kargi F (2006) Bio-hydrogen production from waste materials. Enzyme Microb Technol 38:569–582

Kondo K, Wakayama T, Miyake J (2006) Efficient hydrogen production using a multilayered photobioreactor and a photo synthetic bacterium with reduced pigment. Int J Hydrogen Energy 31:1522–1526

Kumar N, Das D (2001) Enzyme Continuous hydrogen production by immobilized Enterobacter cloacae IIT-BT 08 using lignocellulosic materials as solid matrices. Microbiol Technol 29:280–287

Lee KS, Lo YC, Lin PJ, Chang JS (2006) Improving biohydrogen production in a carrier induced granular sludge bed by altering physical configurarion and agitation pattern of the bioreactor. Int J Hydrogen Energy 31:648–1657

Levin DB, Pitt L, Love M (2004) Biohydrogen production: prospects and limitations to practical application. Int J Hydrogen Energy 29:173–185

Liu H, Got S, Logan BE (2005) Electrochemically assisted microbial production of hydrogen from acetate. Environ Sci Technol 39(11):4317–4320

Melis A, Zhang L, Forestier M, Ghirardi ML, Seibert M (2000) Sustained photobiological hydrogen gas production upon reversible inactivation of oxygen evolution in the green alga. Chlamydomonas reinhardtii. Plant Physiol 122(1):127–136

Miyake M, Sekine M, Vasilieva LG, Nakada E, Wakayama T, Asada TY (1998) Miyake J. In: Zaborsky OR, Benemann JR, Matsunaga T, Miyake J, San Pietro A (eds) BioHydrogen. Plenum Press, New York, pp 81–86

Morimoto K, Kimura T, Sakka K, Ohmiya K (2005) Overexpression of a hydrogenase gene in Clostridium paraputrificum to enhance hydrogen gas production. FEMS Microbiol Lett 246:229–234

Nath K, Das D (2004) Biohydrogen production as a potential energy resource- Present state of art. J Sci Ind Res 63:729-738

O-Thong S, Prasertsan P, Intrasungkha N, Dhamwichukorn S, Birkeland NK (2007) Improvement of biohydrogen production and treatment efficiency on palm oil mill effluent with nutrient supplementation at thermophilic condition using an anerobic sequencing batch reactor. Enzy Microb Technol 41:583–590

Pan J, Zhang R, El-Mashad HM, Sun H, Ying Y (2008) Effect of food to microorganism ratio on biohydrogen production from food waste via anaerobic fermentation. Int J Hydrogen Energy 33:6968–6975

Reith ZH, Wijffelo RH, Barten H (2003) Bio-methane and Bio-hydrogen: Status and perspective of biological methane and hydrogen production. Dutch Biological Hydrogen Foundation, The Hague

Ren NQ, Li JZ, Li BK, Wang Y, Liu SR (2006) Biohydrogen production from molasses by anaerobic fermentation with a pilot scale bioreactor system. Int J Hydrogen Energy 31:2147–2157

Schotz F, Schroder U (2003) Baterial batteries. Nature Biotechnol 21:3–4

Thauer RK, Jungermann K, Decker K (1977) Energy conservation in chemotrophic anaerobic bacteria. Bacteriol Rev 41:100–180

Tsygankov AA, Hirata Y, Miyake M, Asada Y, Miyake J (1994) Photobioreactor with photosynthetic bacteria immobilized in porous-glass for hydrogen photoproduction. Ferment Bioeng 77:575–578

Van GSW, Oh SE, Logan BE (2005) Biohydrogen gas production from food processing and domestic wastewaters. Int J Hydrogen Energy 30:1535–1542

Venkata MS, Lalit BV, Sarma PN (2007) Anaerobic biohydrogen production from diary wastewater treatment in sequencing batch reactor (AnSBR): effect of organic loading rate. Enzy Microb Technol 41:506–515

Vijayaraghavan K, Ahmad D (2006) Biohydrogen generation from palm oil mill effluent using anaerobic contact filter. Int J Hydrogen Energy 31:1284–1291

Vijayaraghavan K, Soom MAM (2006) Trends in bio-hydrogen generation—a review. Environ Sci 3(4):255–271

Wu KJ, Chang CF, Chang JS (2007) Simultaneous production of biohydrogen and bioethanol with fluidized-bed and packed-bed bioreactors containing immobilized anaerobic sludge. Process Biochem 42:1165–1171

Wu KJ, Chang JS (2007) Batch and continuous fermentative production of hydrogen with anaerobic sludge entrapped in a composite polymeric matrix. Process Biochem 42:279–284

Yokoi H, Mori S, Hirose J, Hayashi S, Takasaki Y (1998) Factors affecting hydrogen production from cassava wastewater by a co-culture of anaerobic sludge and *Rhodospirillum rubrum*. Biotechol Lett 20:890

Yoshida A, Nishimura T, Kawaguchi H, Inui M, Yukawa H (2006) Enhanced hydrogen production from formic acid by formate hydrogen lyase-overexpressing escherichia coli strains. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 71(11):6762–6768

Zhang T, Liu H, Fang HHP (2003) Biohydrogen production from starch in wastewater under thermophilic condition. J Environ Mang 69:149–156

Zurrer H, Bachofen R (1979) Hydrogen production by the photosynthetic bacterium *Rhodospirillum rubrum*. Appl Environ Microbiol 37:789–793

Chapter 13
Biohydrogen Production from Microalgae

Dheeraj Rathore and Anoop Singh

Abstract Algal biohydrogen is thought to be the ideal energy source being free from air pollution and global warming as energy consumption is arrested with this technology and the environment has been protected in an ecofriendly and sustainable manner. For sustainability assessment, a life cycle assessment approach is most relevant to avoid issues in problem shifting and also assess the environmental impacts and resources used throughout a product's life cycle and consider all attributes or aspects of natural environment, human health, and resources. The LCA of algal biohydrogen can play a major role in technological improvement and decision making for development of policies.

13.1 Introduction

Finding sufficient supplies of clean energy for the future is one of the most daunting challenges for humanity and is intimately linked to global stability, economic prosperity, and quality of life (Singh et al. 2010a, b, 2011a). Presently, most of the energy demand is fullfiled by fossil fuels. The global petroleum demand has increased steadily from 57 million barrels a day^{-1} in 1973 to 1985 million barrels a day^{-1} in 2009 and will continue to increase in line with the

D. Rathore
Department of Conservation Biology, School of Biological Science, College of Natural and Mathematical Sciences, University of Dodoma, Dodoma, Tanzania
e-mail: rathoredheeraj5@gmail.com

A. Singh (✉)
The Flourish Realm Institute of Environmental Development and Sustainability (The FRIENDS), Mungisapur, Nandpur, Kanpur Dehat 209301 UP, India
e-mail: apsinghenv@gmail.com

V. K. Gupta and M. G. Tuohy (eds.), *Biofuel Technologies*,
DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-34519-7_13,

world's economy (Saraf and Hastings 2011). The increasing energy demands will speed up the exhaustion of finite fossil fuels. United Arab Emirates, one of the major oil export countries, wil fail to meet the share in the oil and natural gas demands by 2015 and 2042, respectively (Kazim and Veziroglu 2001). The fossil fuel resources in Egypt will be exhausted within one to two decades (Abdallah et al. 1999). Using petroleum-based fuels creates atmospheric pollution during combustion. Apart from emission of greenhouse gas (GHG) CO_2, air contaminants like NO_X, SO_X, CO, particulate matter, and volatile organic compounds are produced (Klass 1998). The commitment made by signatories of the Kyoto Protocol (1998) and their future expansion in the up-coming Copenhagen meeting to reduce greenhouse gas emissions to mitigate global warming has specifically targeted combustion CO_2 from fossil fuels released into the atmosphere.

The continued use of fossil fuel is now widely recognized as unsustainable because of depleting supplies and the contribution of these fuels to accumulation of carbon dioxide in the environment. Renewable, carbon neutral, energy resources are necessary for environmental and economic sustainability (Prasad et al. 2007a, b; Singh and Olsen 2011). In the past few years energy researches have come up with several alternate options for a renewable and sustanable source of energy (Nigam and Singh 2011; Singh et al. 2011b, 2012). As described by Hoffert et al. (2002) future reductions in the ecological footprint of energy generation will reside in a multifaceted approach that includes the use of hydrogen, bio-energy, wind, nuclear, solar power, and fossil fuels from which carbon is sequestered.

Hydrogen gas is seen as a strong candidate for future energy carrier by virtue of the fact that it is renewable, does not evolve the greenhouse gas CO_2 in combustion, liberates large amounts of energy per unit weight in combustion, and is easily converted into electricity by fuel cell (www.oilgee.com 2012). Hydrogen is a clean and renewable energy source that does not produce carbon dioxide as a byproduct when used in fuel cells for electricity generation. Progress in the late 1990s contributed to a breakthrough in terms of sustainable hydrogen production. However, the problem is with the way it is produced. Although hydrogen biogas can be efficiently produced at the laboratory level, there is no known commercially operating hydrogen from biomass production facility in the world today (Zhu and Beland 2006).

H_2 production is primarily the domain of algae and bacteria. Nature has created biological reactions that use sunlight for the oxidation of water (oxygenic photosynthesis), and enzymes that use electrons for the generation of H_2 (hydrogenases). Oxygen adversely affects the function of the hydrogenase enzyme (Erbes et al. 1979; Ghirardi et al. 2000) and acts as a positive suppressor of hydrogenase gene expression (Florin et al. 2001; Happe and Kaminski 2002). Hans Gaffron discovered the hydrogen metabolism in unicellular green algae, which are eukaryotic organisms of oxygenic photosynthesis (Gaffron 1939, 1940). Gaffron observed that, under anaerobic conditions, the green alga *Scenedesmus obliquus* can either use H_2 as electron donor in the CO_2 fixation process in the dark (Gaffron 1944), or evolve H_2 in the light (Gaffron and Rubin 1942).

This chapter is an insight into the investigation so far conducted in the field of suitability of H_2 as replacement of conventional fossil fuel, ways of its efficient bioproduction from micro algae, and the barriers in the field.

13.2 Suitability of H_2 Production from Algae

Algae are one of the oldest life-forms. They are primitive plants, with thalloid body structure, naked reproductive cells, and have chlorophyll '*a*' as their primary photosynthetic pigment (Lee 1980). Algae structures are primarily for energy conversion without any development beyond cells, and their simple development allows them to adapt to prevailing environmental conditions and prosper in the long term.

Interest in green algae emanates from the fact that, in principle, they can employ the highly efficient process of photosynthesis to produce hydrogen (H_2), a valuable fuel, from the most abundant of the natural resources, sunlight and water (H_2O) (Melis and Happe 2004). Under optimal growth conditions, green algae grow with remarkable rates, reaching biomass duplication times of 6 h in the laboratory (Smith et al. 1990) and 24 h under mass culture ambient conditions (Ben-Amotz and Avron 1990). The first scientific investigation of H_2 evolution by microalgae was reported by Gaffron and Rubin (1942), who demonstrated that after a period of dark anaerobic 'adaptation', the green alga *S. obliquus* produces H_2 in the dark at low rates, with H_2 production greatly stimulated in the light, though only for relatively brief periods. Other noteworthy observations were that uncouplers and low CO_2 concentrations stimulated light-driven H_2 production in green microalgae.

Stuart and Gaffron (1972) wrote 'We conclude that all of the algae tested are able to photo produce H_2 via noncyclic electron flow through photosystem I to hydrogenase.' Other investigators, many of them associates of Gaffron, contributed with observations on photosynthetic hydrogen production in other unicellular green algae, including *Chlorella* (Spruit 1958; Kessler 1973), *Chlamydomonas* (Frenkel 1952; Frenkel and Lewin 1954; McBride et al. 1977; Greenbaum 1982, 1988; Maione and Gibbs 1986a, b) and other related organisms (Miura et al. 1986, 1992). So far, cyanobacteria and green algae are the only known organisms with both an oxygenic photosynthesis and a hydrogen production (Schutz et al. 2004). While H_2 production in cyanobacteria is mostly coupled to nitrogen fixation, unicellular green algae utilize photosynthetically generated electrons for H^+ reduction. Kessler (1974) summarized the relevant information in a review article, showing that many but not all green algal species are equipped for molecular H_2 metabolism. Nevertheless, the ability of green algae to photosynthetically generate molecular H_2 has captivated the fascination and interest of the scientific community because of the many *fundamental* aspects and the *practical* implications of the process (Melis and Happe 2001).

13.3 Production Pathways

Hydrogen has the largest energy content per weight of any known fuel, and can be produced by various means (Hallenbeck and Benemann 2002; Levin et al. 2004). Unfortunately, both the main methods for hydrogen production, electrolysis of water and thermocatalytic reformation of hydrogen-rich compounds, usually require high-energy inputs obtained from non-renewable resources (Levin et al. 2004). Biological production of hydrogen solves this problem by using microorganisms to convert biomass or solar energy into hydrogen gas (Hallenbeck and Benemann 2002; Das and Veziroglu 2001). Although Gaffron and Rubin (1942) considered both water and carbohydrates as sources of electrons for H_2 evolution, they favored the latter as the main source. Spruit (1958) found evidence supporting water as the main electron donor in such a reaction.

A schematic representation of the photosynthetic reactions in the chloroplast thylakoid membrane of green algae is demonstrated in Fig. 13.1. In photosynthesis, excitation energy from sun is transferred from antenna pigments of light-harvesting complexes (LHC) of photosystem II to photoactive chlorophyll molecule (P680) of the reaction center. As a result, strongly oxidizing cation radical $P680^+$ is formed which catalyzes oxidation of water in the oxygen evolving complex (OEC) of PS II through a series of redox active components including the tyrozine Z residue (YZ) and Mn_4O_4Ca cluster located at the luminal side of the thylakoid membrane (Goussias et al. 2002; Kern and Renger 2007; Barber 2008). Electron released from $P680^+$ accepted by a negatively charged radical of the Mg-free chlorophyll pigment pheophytin (Pheo). The reduced Pheo quickly passes an extra electron to the PS II primary quinone molecule (QA). The QA is tightly bound to PS II and acts as a single-electron carrier. From QA, an electron is transferred to the secondary quinone molecule (QB), a two-electron and two-proton acceptor. In double reduced and protonated form, QBH2 is loosely bound to PS II and thus it can be exchanged with the oxidized QB from the plastoquinone (PQ) pool. After that, an electron is transported further to PS I via the PQ pool, cytochrome b6f complex (cyt b6f), and plastocyanin (PC). Subsequent to light excitation PS I passes an electron to the soluble protein ferredoxin (Fd) through a series of electron carriers including chlorophylls P700 and A0, quinone A1, and iron-sulfur clusters FX, FA, and FB. In the stroma, an electron is transferred from the reduced Fd to the $NADP^+$ with the formation of NADPH by a process catalyzed by the ferredoxin-NADP-reductase (FNR). In chloroplast NADPH is used as reducing power for fixation of carbon dioxide in the dark reaction (Bassham et al. 1950). This electron pathway corresponds to the linear electron transport (LET) (Antal et al. 2011). However, electrons can be alternatively redirected from the reduced Fd backward to the PQ pool through the putative ferredoxin-quinone-reductase (FQR) in the so-called cyclic electron transport around PS I (CET; Moss and Bendall 1984). Such CET can be induced when FNR becomes inactive or carbon fixation proceeds at a slow rate which takes place in dark adapted plants or under different environmental stresses (Golding and Johnson 2003; Breyton et al. 2006).

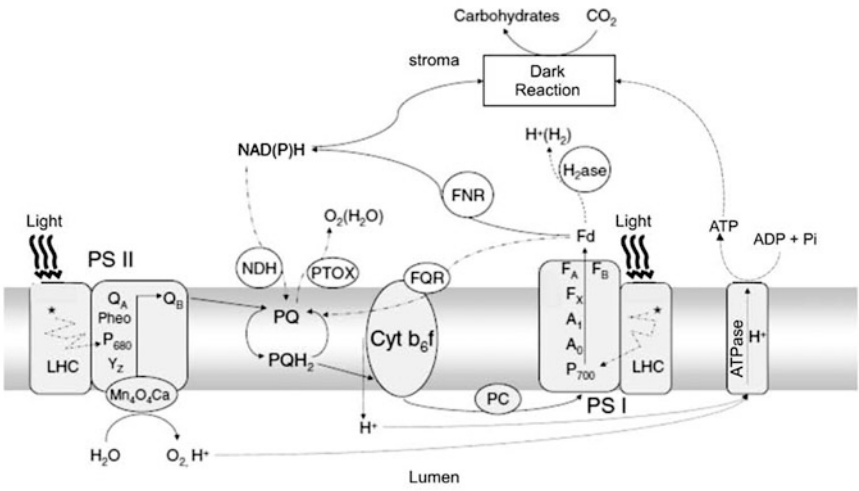


Fig. 13.1 A scheme of the photosynthetic reactions in the chloroplast thylakoid membrane of green algae. Dash–dot line shows excite ion migration from antenna to the reaction center. The major electron transfer pathways are indicated by solid lines. The pathways involved in chlororespiration, cyclic electron flow around PS I, and the Mehler reaction are shown by dash–dot–dot lines. The dashed line designates the oxygen-sensitive electron transport rout induced under anaerobic conditions. Reactions coupled to the generation of proton gradient and to the ATP synthesis are depicted by dotted lines (*Source*: Antal et al. 2011)

Production of H_2 from algae is mainly based on the photolysis of water molecule in the process light reaction of photosynthesis. Hydrogen production is a property of many phototrophic organisms (Weaver et al. 1980; Appel and Schulz 1998; Asada and Miyake 1999; Boichenko et al. 2001), and the list of H_2 producers includes several hundred species from different genera of both prokaryotes and eukaryotes (Boichenko and Hoffmann 1994). Oxygenic photosynthetic organisms, such as plants, green, red, brown, and yellow algae, and cyanobacteria, use water as a source of electrons and protons in photosynthesis. Among these organisms only green microalgae and cyanobacteria have been shown to sustain hydrogen production (Hall et al. 1995; Melis et al. 2000; Sakurai et al. 2004). The enzyme mediating H_2 production in green algae is the reversible (or bidirectional) hydrogenase that catalyzes the following ferredoxin (Fd)-linked reaction in the absence of ATP input (Boichenko and Hoffman 1994):

Hydrogenase

$$2H^+ + 2e^- \leftrightarrow H_2$$

The available H_2 energy production processes from algal biomass can be divided into two general categories: thermochemical and biological processes. Combustion, pyrolysis, liquefaction, and gasification are the four thermochemical

processes. Direct biophotolysis, indirect biophotolysis, biological water–gas shift reaction, photo-fermentation, and dark-fermentation are the five biological processes (Ni et al. 2006). This chapter is limited to bioproduction of H_2 from the algae; therefore only direct photolysis and indirect photolysis are covered in detail.

13.3.1 Direct Photolysis

The German plant physiologist Hans Gaffron (1939) discovered hydrogen metabolism in green algae. Direct photolysis based on the efficacy of algae to splitting of water molecule directly into hydrogen and oxygen. Protons and electrons extracted via the water-splitting process are recombined by a chloroplast hydrogenase to form molecular hydrogen gas with a purity of up to 98 % (Hankamer et al. 2007). Both green algae and cyanobacteria depend on photosynthesis as the starting point for all subsequent hydrogen production. The conversion of solar energy into hydrogen starts with antenna pigments such as chlorophylls, carotenoids, and phycobilisomes (Prince and Kheshgi 2005). In most oxygenic photosynthetic organisms including green micro-algae light-harvesting pigments are associated with two photosystems, PS I and PS II (Fig. 13.1; Nelson and Yocum 2006). The process of light harvesting, electron transfer, and proton production in micro green algae was reviewed by Antal et al. (2011). In green algae, hydrogen evolution is mediated by (FeFe)-H_2ase (reviewed by Ghirardi et al. 2007) which crystal structure has been recently reported (Stripp et al. 2009). The enzyme catalyzes a simple reversible reaction:

$$2H^+ + 2Fd_{reduced} \leftrightarrow H_2 + 2Fd_{oxidized}$$

where equilibrium is strongly shifted to the right side. (FeFe)-H_2ase is highly efficient in hydrogen generation, each molecule of the enzyme being able to produce up to 10^4 gas molecules per second at room temperature (Hatchikian et al. 1992).

Unfortunately, the reversible hydrogenase in green algae is highly sensitive to O_2, which irreversibly inactivates the enzyme's activity within minutes (Ghirardi et al. 1997). As a consequence, the direct photoproduction of H_2 from water in algal cultures is difficult to sustain. The sensitivity of hydrogenase to O_2 generated by normal photosynthesis has until now precluded consideration of green algae for possible use in applied H_2-producing systems. Both chemical and mechanical methods have been developed to remove O_2 produced by the photosynthetic activity of the algal cells. These have included the addition of O_2 scavengers (Healey 1970; Randt and Senger 1985), the use of added reductants (Randt and Senger 1985), and the purging the cultures with inert gases (Greenbaum 1982; Gfeller and Gibbs 1984). However, all these methods are expensive upon scale-up and realistically may not be applicable to applied systems.

13.3.2 Indirect Photolysis

The problem of H_2ase sensitivity to oxygen is solved by separating in space or time reactions of water splitting and hydrogen evolution. There are many different ways that indirect biophotolysis is done, but in most strategies, the first step involves growing the photosynthetic organism in large quantities to obtain biomass rich in carbohydrates. The second step varies, but usually involves using biomass in a hydrogen-producing fermentation (Hallenbeck and Benemann 2002; Levin et al. 2004; Zaborsky 1998). The first step fixes CO_2, providing biomass and carbohydrate stores, and the second step produces hydrogen from those stores (Juanita and Wang 2009). During the second stage, the algae are deprived of sulfur thereby inducing anaerobic conditions and stimulating consistent hydrogen production (Melis and Happe 2001). However, this process is not as energetically efficient as direct biophotolysis (Prince and Kheshgi 2005). Gaudernack (1998) explained indirect biophotolysis in four steps process which include: (1) biomass production by photosynthesis, (2) biomass concentration, (3) aerobic dark fermentation yielding 4 mol hydrogen/mol glucose in the algae cell, along with 2 mol of acetates, and (4) conversion of 2 mol of acetates into hydrogen, respectively.

Melis et al. (2000) reported a H_2 production process uses the green alga *Chlamydomonas reinhardtii* in which separation of the photosynthetic O_2 evolution from H_2 production in time is achieved via sulfur deprivation of the cells. Under these conditions, the biosynthesis of the photosynthetic proteins is obstructed and the alga starts to respire the earlier photosynthetically evolved O_2. As O_2 is consumed a whole array of various fermentative pathways may also turn on, including the degradation of the damaged proteins and stored carbohydrates to yield H_2.

13.4 Algae Engineering

Understanding the molecular fundamentals of hydrogen production and utilization in biological systems is a goal of supreme importance for present energy research. Hydrogen was a vital energy source for organisms during the early stages of our planet but under reducing atmospheric conditions (i.e., in the absence of a substantial amount of oxygen), this process gradually lost its importance with the development of a photosynthetic machinery that was able to exploit light energy more efficiently, particularly when Photosystem I (PS I) and Photosystem II (PS II) were combined into one light-triggered photosynthetic electron transport (ET) chain. This photosystem was even capable of oxidizing water in PS II using light, providing plenty of energy. Hydrogen-dependent processes therefore lost their central role as a necessity for the survival of most cells. In consequence, there was no strong evolutionary pressure for the design of oxygen-resistant hydrogenases and the increasing oxygen content of the atmosphere produced by the water-splitting process led to these enzymes being switched off (Horner et al. 2002).

Today, hydrogenases still exist in bacteria and microalgae (i.e., cyanobacteria and unicellular green algae) but their genes are mostly activated under anaerobic conditions and their main function is twofold: either to provide an alternative electron source to aid survival under suboptimal conditions or to capture electrons as a kind of security valve to prevent dangerous over-reduction of the electron transport chain (Appel and Schulz 1998). Among the three principally different types of hydrogenases in nature—[Fe-only]-type, [NiFe]-type and [Fe-S-cluster-free]-type (Lyon et al. 2004) hydrogenase belongs to the [Fe-only]-type are usually the simplest hydrogenases (only one subunit in the case of *Chlamydomonas*) and the most active hydrogenases known (up to 2000 H_2S_1) present in green alga (Happe et al. 2002; Girbal et al. 2005).

Hydrogenase, the unique class of enzymes, catalyzes the formation and decomposition of the simplest molecule occurring in biology: H_2. The seemingly uncomplicated task is solved by sophisticated macromolecular machinery. Hydrogenases are metalloenzymes harboring Ni and Fe, or only Fe atoms, arranged in unique structure in their active center. Redox metalloenzymes in general are extremely sensitive to inactivation by oxygen, high temperature, CO, CN, and various additional environmental factors. Oxygen inactivation is thought to occur by the direct interaction of O_2 with the [2Fe-2S] center on the catalytic H-cluster (Adams 1990; Chen et al. 2002). The optimization of H_2 photoproduction requires identification of an O_2-tolerant H_2ase as the active site metal cluster of HydA is O_2 labile (Beer et al. 2009).

Recent advances with respect to the identification of genes involved in [FeFe] H_2ase (Posewitz et al. 2004; Girbal et al. 2005; McGlynn et al. 2008) and [NiFe] H_2ase (Schubert et al. 2007; Ludwig et al. 2009) maturation and regulation, and the development of heterologous expression systems for both classes of enzyme (Posewitz et al. 2004; Girbal et al. 2005; Lenz et al. 2005; King et al. 2006; Sybirna et al. 2008), make it feasible to biochemically characterize H_2ases by heterologous expression in organisms that do not possess endogenous H_2ase machinery. Target genes identified through bioprospecting efforts can therefore be characterized genetically and biochemically using heterologous expression studies. Moreover, the natural diversity of genes encoding other key enzymes with relevance to bioenergy can be examined, and exploited using similar approaches (Beer et al. 2009).

[Fe]-hydrogenase genes (termed HydA) were identified in different green algae (Florin et al. 2001; Wunschiers et al. 2001; Winkler et al. 2002, 2004; Forestier et al. 2003). The HydA coding sequence showed a typical mosaic structure of a nuclear-encoded gene with seven introns and eight exons. Hydrogenase genes have also been cloned and reported in the literature from the unicellular green algae *S. obliquus* (Florin et al. 2001; Wunschiers et al. 2001), *Chlorella fusca* (Winkler et al. 2002) and *Chlamydomonas moewusii* (Winkler et al. 2004). In *S. obliquus*, the genomic DNA of the HydA gene contains five introns and six exons, encoding a protein with a molecular mass of 44.5 kDa (Florin et al. 2001).

All [Fe]-hydrogenases incorporate a [2Fe-2S] cluster bridged by a cysteine residue to a [4Fe-4S] cluster at the catalytic site (the H-cluster), and have unusual ligands such as CO, CN, and di(thiol)methylamine (Fan and Hall 2001; Nicolet et al. 2001). Three other conserved cysteine residues bind the H-cluster to the protein matrix. Most of these enzymes also contain additional iron–sulfur centers that act as electron relays to and from donor and acceptor carriers (Peters 1999; Nicolet et al. 2000). However, these cofactors are absent from the green algal enzymes (Florin et al. 2001; Forestier et al. 2001; Wünschiers et al. 2001; Happe and Kaminski 2002; Winkler et al. 2002).

Recently, there has been considerable progress in identifying relevant bioenergy genes and pathways in microalgae, and powerful genetic techniques have been developed to engineer some strains via the targeted disruption of endogenous genes and/or transgene expression. Collectively, the progress that has been realized in these areas is rapidly advancing our ability to genetically optimize the production of targeted biofuels (reviewed in Beer et al. 2009). Some studies indicated that mutagenesis can be used to decrease the O_2 sensitivity of the hydrogenase and thus eventually lead to a system that produces H_2 under aerobic conditions (McTavish et al. 1995; Ghirardi et al. 1997; Seibert et al. 2001; Flynn et al. 1999, 2002). One of the most significant advances in algal genetics is the development of improved gene silencing strategies in *C. reinhardtii*. High-throughput artificial miRNA (amiRNA) techniques for gene knockdown, which are highly specific and stable, were recently reported (Molnar et al. 2009; Zhao et al. 2009).

13.5 Sustainability

Sustainable development, although a widely used phrase and idea, has many different meanings and therefore provokes many different responses. In broad terms, the concept of sustainable development is an attempt to combine growing concerns about a range of environmental issues with socio-economic issues. The sustainable development implies smooth transition to more effective technologies from a point view of an environmental impact and energy efficiency (Dincer 2008). New hydrogen powered fuel cell technologies in both its high and low-temperature derivatives are more effective and cleaner than conventional energy technologies, and can be considered one of the pillars of a future sustainable energy system (Kwak et al. 2004). Biological hydrogen production presents a possible avenue for the large-scale sustainable generation of hydrogen needed to fuel a future hydrogen economy.

Hydrogen is an ideal, clean, and potentially sustainable energy carrier for the future due to its abundance and non-polluting nature. Numerous bacteria, cyanobacteria, and algae are capable of producing hydrogen from water, solar energy, and a variety of organic substrates. H_2 has been identified as one of the most promising fuels for the future (Abraham 2002; EU Commission 2002; Koizumi 2002). The US, European Union, and Japan have already embarked on establishing

H_2 fuel stations, and in parallel, car manufacturers have invested extensively in the development of H_2 fuel cell-powered cars (Hankamer et al. 2007).

The energy content of hydrogen has the highest for per weight of any known fuel, and can be produced by various means (Hallenbeck and Benemann 2002; Levin et al. 2004). A by-product of hydrogen, when used either in combustion or as fuel cell, is only pure water, making it an attractive non-polluting energy carrier (Oh et al. 2003; Lin and Lay 2004).

13.6 Life Cycle Assessment

LCA is a tool to assess the environmental impacts and resources used throughout a product's life cycle and consider all attributes or aspects of the natural environment, human health, and resources (Singh et al. 2010c; Korres et al. 2010). Rodríguez et al. (2011) have concluded in an LCA study that an LCA-based indicator might be an effective tool to compare alternative energy routes in terms of environmental impact and indirect natural resource costs toward different services and commodities. The overall energy balance of using hydrogen as vehicle fuel does indeed seem to be less beneficial than gasoline. But being the only non-carbon fuel it may still make sense to produce hydrogen with algae if some of the obstacles are solved. Investigations of the environmental benefits and impacts in a life cycle perspective are scarce. Only a few LCA-studies has been performed specifically on biohydrogen production.

LCA allows the possibility to compare different biohydrogen production approaches and identify the environmental "hot spots" of the whole process. Inventory analysis and the results of different researchers in this field permit to find values of selected ecoindicators in order to evaluate the biohydrogen production efficiency with the selection of the best initial data for life cycle analysis. These ecoindicators weigh the resources needed for biohydrogen production system (Romagnoli et al. 2011).

Romagnoli et al. (2011) conducted an LCA study to identify and evaluate the life cycle environmental and human health impacts of the entire supply chain associated with the production of biohydrogen from photosynthetic process technology. In this study, six biohydrogen production methods were analyzed, i.e.,

1. Cycling photobiological hydrogen production from *C. reinhardtii* with forced sulfur deprivation.
2. Oxygenic photosynthesis coupled to H_2 production by hydrogenase enzyme in green algae.
3. Oxygenic photosynthesis coupled to H_2 production by nitrogenase enzyme in cyanobacteria.
4. Nonoxygenic photosynthesis coupled to H_2 production by nitrogenase-catalyzed enzyme in cyanobacteria.
5. Indirect microalgal biophotolysis (*C. Reinhardtii*).
6. Fermentation (2 stage bioreactor).

The results of this study indicated the need for further improvements in order to reach reasonable industrial biohydrogen production. Romagnoli and co-workers concluded that using biohydrogen to produce electricity offers more environmental benefits than using a fossil fuel-based source and they claimed positive results in terms of climate change and human health categories. The LCA studies can further be used as a tool for identification of the main environmental improvements in technology development, policy decisions, and as an additional strength in the growing hydrogen market. The LCA of algal biohydrogen is very important before taking them into consideration for commercial scale production and making a policy for that purpose.

13.7 Technical Barriers

According to Edwards et al. (2006) the following are the possible scientific and technical challenges associated with the hydrogen economy:

- Lowering the cost of hydrogen production to a level comparable to the energy cost of fossil fuel.
- Development of a CO_2-free route for the mass production of sustainable hydrogen at a competitive cost.
- Development of a safe and efficient national infrastructure for hydrogen delivery and distribution.
- Development of viable hydrogen storage systems for both vehicular and stationary applications.
- Dramatic reduction in costs and significant improvement in the durability of fuel cell systems.

13.8 Future Perspective

Vincent Rosner highlighted the following points for future development in algal biohydrogen production to make it a sustainable energy source during the presentation of the 19th World Hydrogen Energy Conference (Rosner 2012).

- Development of design cells with increased production rate (>100x);
- Design of a commercial production plant;
- Implementation of biomass utilization;
- Energetic improvement of process components;
- Involvement of illumination over sunlight;
- Assessment and benchmark.

The process of hydrogen production by green algae has practical implications because it pertains to the question of energy supply and demand for the entire

world. The algal hydrogen production promises to positively alter the equation on energy supply and demand, alleviate global warming, and mitigate environmental pollution, as hydrogen is generated from water since water is the only by-product of hydrogen combustion. The manifestation of photosynthetic hydrogen production from algae will bring about technological developments in many directions and will find many applications (Melis and Happe 2004). Algal biohydrogen is currently more expensive in comparison to fossil fuel, so it is likely to play a major role in the economy in the long run, if technological development succeeds in bringing down costs. The algal biohydrogen production may be a potential answer to overcome some of the economic constraints to fulfill many of the energy needs.

13.9 Conclusion

Bioproduction of H_2 is considered as the ultimate cleanest energy carrier to be generated from renewable sources. Most of the algae and cynobacteria are able to photoproduce H_2 with the help of water and CO_2 as raw materials using a unique class of enzyme hydrogenase. Although a number of advances have been made recently, the practical development of biohydrogen production is a long-term prospect, commensurate with the time frame required to adopt hydrogen as a major fuel source. There are a number of technical challenges in each area that must be overcome before these technologies can be adopted on a practical large scale. Extensive R&D in this area is underway worldwide. An LCA will help in accessing the sustainability of algal biohydrogen production and adopting the appropriate policies for that.

References

Abdallah MAH, Asfour SS, Veziroglu TN (1999) Solar-hydrogen energy system for Egypt. Int J Hydrogen Energy 24:505–517

Abraham S (2002) Toward a more secure and cleaner energy future for America: national hydrogen energy roadmap; production, delivery, storage, conversion, applications, public education and outreach. US Department of Energy, Washington

Adams MWW (1990) The structure and mechanism of iron hydrogenases. Biochim Biophys Acta 1020:115–145

Antal TK, Krendelev TE, Rubin AB (2011) Acclimation of green algae to sulfur deficiency: underlying mechanisms and application for hydrogen production. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 89:3–15

Appel J, Schulz R (1998) Hydrogen metabolism in organisms with oxygenic photosynthesis: hydrogenases as important regulatory devices for a proper redox poising? J Photochem Photobiol 47:1–11

Asada Y, Miyake J (1999) Photobiological hydrogen production. J Biosci Bioeng 88:1–6

Barber J (2008) Crystal structure of the oxygen-evolving complex of photosystem II. Inorg Chem 47:1700–1710

Bassham J, Benson A, Calvin M (1950) The path of carbon in photosynthesis. J Biol Chem 185:781–787
Beer LL, Boyd ES, Peters JW, Posewitz MC (2009) Engineering algae for biohydrogen and biofuel production. Curr Opin Biotechnol 20:264–271
Ben-Amotz A, Avron M (1990) The biotechnology of cultivating the halotolerant alga *Dunaliella*. Trends Biotechnol 8:121–128
Boichenko VA, Hoffmann P (1994) Photosynthetic hydrogen-production in prokaryotes and eukaryotes: occurrence, mechanism, and functions. Photosynthetica 30:527–552
Boichenko VA, Greenbaum E, Seibert M (2001) Hydrogen production by photosynthetic microorganisms. In: Archer MD, Barber J (eds) Photoconversion of solar energy: molecular to global photosynthesis, vol 2. Imperial College Press, London
Breyton C, Nandha B, Johnson GN, Joliot P, Finazzi G (2006) Redox modulation of cyclic electron flow around photosystem I in C3 plants. Biochem 45:13465–13475
Chen Z, Lemon BJ, Huang S, Swartz DJ, Peters JW, Bagley KA (2002) Infrared studies of the CO-inhibited form of the Fe-only hydrogenase from Clostridium pasteurianum I: examination of its light sensitivity at cryogenic temperatures. Biochem 41:2036–2043
EU Commission (2002) Commission launches high level group on hydrogen and fuel cells. EU Institutions Press, Brussels
Das D, Veziroglu TN (2001) Hydrogen production by biological processes: a survey of literature. Int J Hydrogen Energy 26:13–28
Dincer I (2008) Hydrogen and fuel cell technologies for sustainable future. Jord J Mech Ind Eng 2(1):1–14
Edwards PP, Kuznetsov V, David WIF, Brandon N (2006) Hydrogen and fuel cells: towards a sustainable energy future. Mini energy project, Foresight
Erbes DL, King D, Gibbs M (1979) Inactivation of hydrogenase in cell-free extracts and whole cells of *Chlamydomonas reinhardtii* by oxygen. Plant Physiol 63:1138–1142
Fan HJ, Hall MB (2001) A capable bridging ligand for Fe-only hydrogenase: density functional calculations of a low-energy route for heterocyclic cleavage and formation of dihydrogen. J Am Chem Soc 123:3828–3829
Florin L, Tsokoglou A, Happe T (2001) A novel type of iron hydrogenase in the green alga Scenedesmus obliquus is linked to the photosynthetic electron transport chain. J Biol Chem 276:6125–6132
Flynn T, Ghirardi ML, Seibert M (1999) Isolation of chlamydomonas mutants with improved oxygen-tolerance. In: Division of fuel chemistry preprints of symposia, 218th ACS national meeting, vol 44. pp 846–850
Flynn T, Ghirardi ML, Seibert M (2002) Accumulation of multiple O_2-tolerant phenotypes in H_2-producing strains of *Chlamydomonas reinhardtii* by sequential application of chemical mutagenesis and selection. Int J Hydrogen Energy 27:1421–1430
Forestier M, Zhang L, King P, Plummer S, Ahmann D, Seibert M, Ghirardi M (2001) The cloning of two hydrogenase genes from the green alga *Chlamydomonas reinhardtii*. In: Proceedings of the 12th international congress on photosynthesis, Brisbane, Australia, http://www.publish.csiro.au/ps2001, CSIRO Publishing, Melbourne, Australia, 18–23 Aug 2001
Forestier M, King P, Zhang L, Posewitz M, Schwarzer S, Happe T, Ghirardi ML, Seibert M (2003) Expression of two [Fe]-hydrogenases in *Chlamydomonas reinhardtii* under anaerobic conditions. Eur J Biochem 270:2750–2758
Frenkel AW (1952) Hydrogen evolution of the flagellate green alga *Chlamydomonas moewusi*. Arch Biochem Biophys 38:219–230
Frenkel AW, Lewin RA (1954) Photoreduction by Chlamydomonas. Am J Bot 41:586–589
Gaffron H (1939) Reduction of CO_2 with H_2 in green plants. Nature 143:204–205
Gaffron H (1940) Carbon dioxide reduction with molecular hydrogen in green algae. Am J Bot 27:273–283
Gaffron H (1944) Photosynthesis, photoreduction and dark reduction of carbon dioxide in certain algae. Biol Rev Cambridge Philos Soc 19:1–20

Gaffron H, Rubin J (1942) Fermentative and photochemical production of hydrogen in algae. J Gen Physiol 26:219–240

Gaudernack B (1998) Photoproduction of hydrogen, IEA agreement on the production and utilization of hydrogen, annual report, IEA/H_2/AR-98

Gfeller RP, Gibbs M (1984) Fermentative metabolism of *Chlamydomonas reinhardtii*, I: analysis of fermentative products from starch in dark and light. Plant Physiol 75:212–218

Ghirardi ML, Togasaki RK, Seibert M (1997) Oxygen sensitivity of algal H_2-production. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 63–65:141–151

Ghirardi ML, Kosourov SN, Tsygankov AA, Seibert M (2000) Two phase photobiological algal H_2-production system. In: Proceedings of the 2000 DOE hydrogen program review. NREL/CP-70-28890

Ghirardi ML, Posewitz MC, Maness PC, Dubini A, Yu J, Seibert M (2007) Hydrogenases and hydrogen photoproduction in oxygenic photosynthetic organisms. Annu Rev Plant Biol 58:71–91

Girbal L, von Abendroth G, Winkler M, Benton PMC, Meynial-Salles I, Croux C, Peters JW, Happe T, Soucaille P (2005) Homologous and heterologous overexpression in Clostridium acetobutylicum and characterization of purified clostridial and algal Fe-only hydrogenases with high specific activities. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:2777–2781

Golding AJ, Johnson GN (2003) Down regulation of linear and activation of cycling electron flow during drought. Planta 218:107–114

Goussias C, Boussac A, Rutherford AW (2002) Photosystem II and photosynthetic oxidation of water: an overview. Phil Trans R Soc Lond B357:1369–1381

Greenbaum E (1982) Photosynthetic hydrogen and oxygen production: kinetic studies. Science 196:879–880

Greenbaum E (1988) Energetic efficiency of hydrogen photo evolution by algal water splitting. Biophys J 54:365–368

Hall DO, Markov SA, Watanabe Y, Rao K (1995) The potential applications of cyanobacterial photosynthesis for clean technologies. Photosynth Res 46:159–167

Hallenbeck PC, Benemann JR (2002) Biological hydrogen production; fundamentals and limiting processes. Int J Hydrogen Energy 27:1185–1193

Hankamer B, Lehr F, Rupprecht J, Mussgnug JH, Posten C, Kruse O (2007) Photosynthetic biomass and H_2 production by green algae: from bioengineering to bioreactor scale-up. Physiol Plantarum 131:10–21

Happe T, Kaminski A (2002) Differential regulation of the Fe hydrogenase during anaerobic adaptation in the green alga *Chlamydomonas reinhardtii*. Eur J Biochem 269:1022–1032

Happe T, Winkler M, Hemschemeier A, Kaminski A (2002) Hydrogenases in green algae: do they save the algae's life and solve our energy problems? Trends Plant Sci 7:246–250

Hatchikian EC, Forget N, Fernandez VM, Williams R, Cammack R (1992) Further characterization of the [Fe] hydrogenase from Desulfovibrio desulfuricans ATCC 7757. Eur J Biochem 209:357–365

Healey FP (1970) The mechanism of hydrogen evolution by *Chlamidomonas moewusii*. Plant Physiol 45:153–159

Hoffert MI, Calderia K, Benford G, Criswell DR, Green C, Herzog H, Jain AK, Kheshgi HS, Lackner KS, Lewis JS, Lightfoot HD, Manheimer W, Mankins JC, Manel ME, Perkins LJ, Schlesinger ME, Volk T, Wigley TML (2002) Advanced technology paths to global climate stability: energy for a greenhouse planet. Science 298(5595):981–987

Horner D, Heil B, Happe T, Embley M (2002) Iron hydrogenases, ancient enzymes in modern eukaryotes. Trends Biochem Sci 27:148–153

Juanita M, Wang G (2009) Metabolic pathway engineering for enhanced biohydrogen production. Int J Hydrogen Energy 34:7404–7416

Kazim A, Veziroglu TN (2001) Utilization of solar-hydrogen energy in the UAE to maintain its share in the world energy market for the 21st century. Renewable Energy 24:259–274

Kern J, Renger G (2007) Photosystem II: structure and mechanism of the water: plastoquinone oxidoreductase. Photosynth Res 94:183–202

Kessler E (1973) Effect of anaerobiosis on photosynthetic reactions and nitrogen metabolism of algae with and without hydrogenase. Arch Microbiol 93:91–100
Kessler E (1974) Hydrogenase, photoreduction and anaerobic growth of algae. In: Steward WDP (ed) Algal physiology and biochemistry. Blackwell, Oxford
King PW, Posewitz MC, Ghirardi ML, Seibert M (2006) Functional studies of [FeFe] hydrogenase maturation in an *Escherichia coli* biosynthetic system. J Bacteriol 188: 2163–2172
Klass LD (1998) Biomass for renewable energy fuels and chemicals. Academic, New York, pp 1–2
Koizumi J (2002) Policy speech by prime minister Junichiro Koizumi to the 154th session of the diet. Office of the cabinet public relations, cabinet secretariat, Tokyo, Japan
Korres NE, Singh A, Nizami AS, Murphy JD (2010) Is grass biomethane a sustainable transport biofuel? Biofuels Bioprod Bioref 4:310–325
Kwak HY, Lee HS, Jung JY, Jeon JS, Park DR (2004) Exergetic and thermo economic analysis of a 200 kW phosphoric acid fuel cell plant. Fuel 83(14–15):2087–2094
Kyoto Protocol (1998) Kyoto protocol to the united nations framework convention on climate change, united nations, www.unfccc.int/essential_background/Kyoto Protocol/background/items/1351.php
Lee RE (1980) Phycology. Cambridge University Press, New York
Lenz O, Gleiche A, Strack A, Friedrich B (2005) Requirements for heterologous production of a complex metalloenzyme: the membrane-bound [NiFe] hydrogenase. J Bacteriol 187: 6590–6595
Levin DB, Pitt L, Love M (2004) Biohydrogen production: prospects and limitations to practical application. Int J Hydrogen Energy 29:173–185
Lin CY, Lay CH (2004) Effects of carbonate and phosphate concentrations on hydrogen production using anaerobic sewage sludge microflora. Int J Hydrogen Energy 29:275–281
Ludwig M, Schubert T, Zebger I, Wisitruangsakul N, Saggu M, Strack A, Lenz O, Hildebrandt P, Friedrich B (2009) Concerted action of two novel auxiliary proteins in assembly of the active site in a membrane-bound [NiFe] hydrogenase. J Biol Chem 284:2159–2168
Lyon EJ, Shima S, Buurmn G, Chowdhuri S, Btschauer A, Steinbach K, Thauer RK (2004) UV-A/blue-light inactivation of the 'metal-free' hydrogenase (Hmd) from methanogenic archaea. Eur J Biochem 271:195–204
Maione TE, Gibbs M (1986a) Association of the chloroplastic respiratory and photosynthetic electron transport chains of *C. reinhardii* with photoreduction and the oxyhydrogen reaction. Plant Physiol 80:364–368
Maione TE, Gibbs M (1986b) Hydrogenase-mediated activities in isolated chloroplasts of *Chlamydomonas reinhardii*. Plant Physiol 80:360–363
McBride AC, Lien S, Togasaki RK, San Pietro A (1977) Mutational analysis of *Chlamydomonas reinhardi*: application to biological energy conversion. In: Mitsui A, Miyachi S, San Pietro A, Tamura S (eds) Biological solar energy conversion, Academic, New York, pp 77–86
McGlynn SE, Shepard EM, Winslow MA, Naumov AV, Duschene KS, Posewitz MC, Broderick WE, Broderick JB, Peters JW (2008) HydF as a scaffold protein in [FeFe] hydrogenase H-cluster biosynthesis. FEBS Lett 582:2183–2187
McTavish H, Sayavedra-Soto LA, Arp DJ (1995) Substitution of *Azotobacter vinelandii* hydrogenase small subunit cysteins by serines can create insensitivity to inhibition by O_2 and preferentially damages H_2 oxidation over H_2 evolution. J Bact 177:3960–3964
Melis A, Happe T (2001) Hydrogen production: green algae as a source of energy. Plant Physiol 127:740–748
Melis A, Happe T (2004) Trails of green alga hydrogen research: from Hans Gaffron to new frontiers. Photosynth Res 80:401–409
Melis A, Zhang L, Foestier M, Ghirardi ML, Seibert M (2000) Sustained photobiological hydrogen gas production upon reversible inactivation of oxygen evolution in the green alga *Chlamydomonas reinhardtii*. Plant Physiol 122:127–133

Miura Y, Ohta S, Mano M, Miyamoto K (1986) Isolation and characterization of a unicellular green alga exhibiting high activity in dark hydrogen production. Agric Biol Chem 50:2837–2844

Miura Y, Matsuoka S, Miyamoto K, Saltoh C (1992) Stably sustained hydrogen production with high molar yield through a combination of a marine green alga and a photosynthetic bacterium. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 56:751–754

Molnar A, Bassett A, Thuenemann E, Schwach F, Karkare S, Ossowski S, Weigel D, Baulcombe D (2009) Highly specific gene silencing by artificial microRNAs in the unicellular alga Chlamydomonas reinhardtii. Plant J 58:165–174

Moss DA, Bendall DS (1984) Cyclic electron transport in chloroplasts: the Q-cycle and the site of action of antimycin. Biochim Biophys Acta 767:389–395

Nelson N, Yocum CF (2006) Structure and function of Photosystems I and II. Annu Rev Plant Biol 57:521–565

Ni M, Leung DYC, Leung MKH, Sumathy K (2006) An overview of hydrogen production from biomass. Fuel Processing Technol 87:461–472

Nicolet Y, Lemon BJ, Fontecilla-Camps JC, Peters JW (2000) A novel FeS cluster in Fe-only hydrogenases. Trends Biochem Sci 25:138–142

Nicolet Y, deLancy AL, Vernede X, Fernandez VM, Hatchikian EC, Fontecilla-Camps JC (2001) Crystallographic and FTIR spectroscopic evidence of changes in Fe coordination upon reduction of the active site of the Fe-only hydrogenase from D. desulfuricans. J Am Chem Soc 123:1596–1601

Nigam PS, Singh A (2011) Production of liquid biofuels from renewable resources. Prog Energy Combust Sci 37:52–68

Oh YK, Park MS, Seol EH, Lee SJ, Park S (2003) Isolation of hydrogen-producing bacteria from granular sludge of an upflow anaerobic sludge blanket reactor. Biotechnol Biopro Eng 8: 54–57

Peters JW (1999) Structure and mechanism of iron-only hydrogenases. Curr Opin Struct Biol 9:670–676

Posewitz MC, King PW, Smolinski SL, Zhang L, Seibert M, Ghirardi ML (2004) Discovery of two novel radical Sadenosylmethionine proteins required for the assembly of an active [Fe] hydrogenase. J Biol Chem 279:25711–25720

Prasad S, Singh A, Joshi HC (2007a) Ethanol as an alternative fuel from agricultural, industrial and urban residues. Resour Conserv Recycl 50:1–39

Prasad S, Singh A, Jain N, Joshi HC (2007b) Ethanol production from sweet sorghum syrup for utilization as automotive fuel in India. Energy Fuels 21(4):2415–2420

Prince RC, Kheshgi HS (2005) The photobiological production of hydrogen: potential efficiency and effectiveness as a renewable fuel. Critical Rev Microbiol 31:19–31

Randt C, Senger H (1985) Participation of the two photosystems in light dependent hydrogen evolution in *Scenedesmus obliquus*. Photochem Photobiol 42:553–557

Rodríguez MAR, De Ruyck J, Roque Díaz P, Verma VK, Bram S (2011) An LCA based indicator for evaluation of alternative energy routes. Appl Energy 88:630–635

Romagnoli F, Blumberga D, Pilicka I (2011) Life cycle assessment of biohydrogen production in photosynthetic processes. Int J Hydrogen Energy 36:7866–7871

Rosner V (2012) Life cycle assessment and process development of photobiological hydrogen production: from laboratory to large scale applications. In: 19th world hydrogen energy conference, Toronto, Canada, 3–7 June 2012, http://www.whec2012.com/wp-content/uploads/2012/06/WHEC2012_Presentation_Rosner_S.pdf. Accessed 24 Aug 2012

Sakurai H, Masukawa H, Dawar S, Yoshino F (2004) Photobiological hydrogen production by cyanobacteria utilizing nitrogenase systems-present status and future development. In: Miyake J, Igarashi Y, Rögner M (eds) Biohydrogen III: renewable energy system by biological energy conversion. Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp 84–93

Saraf M, Hastings A (2011) Biofuels, the role of biotechnology to improve their sustainability and profitability. In: Lichtfouse E (ed) Biodiversity, biofuels, agroforestry and conservation agriculture, 123 sustainable agriculture reviews 5, Springer

Schubert T, Lenz O, Krause E, Volkmer R, Friedrich B (2007) Chaperones specific for the membrane-bound [NiFe]-hydrogenase interact with the Tat signal peptide of the small subunit precursor in *Ralstonia eutropha* H16 mol. Microbiol 66:453–467

Schutz K, Happe T, Troshina O, Lindblad P, Leitao E, Oliveira P, Tamagnini P (2004) Cyanobacterial H_2 production: a comparative analysis. Planta 218:350–359

Seibert M, Flynn TY, Ghiradi ML (2001) Strategies for improving oxygen tolerance of algal hydrogen production. In: Miyake J, Matsunaga T, Pietro AS (eds) Biohydrogen II. Pergamon, Elsevier Science, Amsterdam, pp 67–77

Singh A, Olsen SI (2011) Critical analysis of biochemical conversion, sustainability and life cycle assessment of algal biofuels. Appl Energy 88:3548–3555

Singh A, Pant D, Korres NE, Nizami AS, Prasad S, Murphy JD (2010a) Key issues in life cycle assessment of ethanol production from lignocellulosic biomass: challenges and perspectives. Bioresour Technol 101(13):5003–5012

Singh A, Smyth BM, Murphy JD (2010b) A biofuel strategy for Ireland with an emphasis on production of biomethane and minimization of land-take. Renew Sustain Energy Rev 14(1):277–288

Singh A Korres NE Murphy JD (2010c) Grass biomethane: A sustainable alternative industry for grassland. Grassland in a Changing World 2010, 23rd General Meeting of the European Grassland Federation, Aug 29th–Sep 2nd, 2010, Germany. pp 1–15

Singh A, Nizami AS, Korres NE, Murphy JD (2011a) The effect of reactor design on the sustainability of grass biomethane. Renew Sustain Energy Rev 15(3):1567–1574

Singh A, Olsen SI, Nigam PS (2011b) A viable technology to generate third generation biofuels. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 86(11):1349–1353

Singh A, Pant D, Olsen SI, Nigam PS (2012) Key issues to consider in microalgae based biodiesel. Energy Educ Sci Technol Part A: Energy Sci Res 29(1):687–700

Smith BM, Morrissey PJ, Guenther JE, Nemson JA, Harrison MA, Allen JF, Melis A (1990) Response of the photosynthetic apparatus in *Dunaliella salina* (green algae) to irradiance stress. Plant Physiol 93:1433–1440

Spruit CJP (1958) Simultaneous photoproduction of hydrogen and oxygen by *Chlorella*. Mededel Landbouwhogeschool Wageningen 58:1–17

Stripp S, Sanganas O, Happe T, Haumann M (2009) The structure of the active site H-cluster of [FeFe] hydrogenase from the green alga Chlamydomonas reinhardtii studied by X-ray absorption spectroscopy. Biochem 48:5042–5049

Stuart TS, Gaffron H (1972) The mechanism of hydrogen photoproduction by several algae: II. The contribution of photosystem II. Planta 106:101–112

Sybirna K, Antoine T, Lindberg P, Fourmond V, Rousset M, Mejean V, Bottin H (2008) Shewanella oneidensis: a new and efficient system for expression and maturation of heterologous [Fe–Fe] hydrogenase from Chlamydomonas reinhardtii. BMC Biotechnol 8(73):1–8

Weaver PF, Lien S, Seibert M (1980) Photobiological production of hydrogen. Solar Energy 24:3–45

Winkler M, Heil B, Heil B, Happe T (2002) Isolation and molecular characterization of the [Fe]-hydrogenase from the unicellular green alga *Chlorella fusca*. Biochim Biophys Acta 1576:330–334

Winkler M, Maeurer C, Hemschemeier A, Happe T (2004) The isolation of green algal strains with outstanding H_2-productivity. In: Miyake J, Igarashi Y, Roegner M (eds) Biohydrogen III. Elsevier Science, Oxford

Wünschiers R, Senger H, Schulz R (2001) Electron pathways involved in H_2-metabolism in the green alga *Scenedesmus obliquus*. Biochim Biophys Acta 1503:271–278

www.oilgee.com (2012) Hydrogen from alge. DOE 28 June 2012

Zaborsky O (1998) Biohydrogen. Plenum Press, New York

Zhao T, Wang W, Bai X, Qi Y (2009) Gene silencing by artificial microRNAs in Chlamydomonas. Plant J 58:157–164

Zhu H, Beland M (2006) Evaluation of alternative methods of preparing hydrogen producing seeds from digested wastewater sludge. Int J Hydrogen Energy 31:1980–1988

Chapter 14
Microbial Fuel Cells for Sustainable Bioenergy Generation: Principles and Perspective Applications

S. Venkata Mohan, S. Srikanth, G. Velvizhi and M. Lenin Babu

Abstract The energy gain in microbes is driven by oxidizing an electron donor and reducing an electron acceptor. Variation in the electron acceptor conditions creates a feasibility to harness energy. In order to support the microbial respiration, electrons will transfer to the exocellular medium toward the available electron acceptor, especially in the absence of oxygen. The microbes can use a wide range of electron acceptors such as metals, nutrients, minerals, etc., including solid electrodes. When the microbes use the solid electrode as electron acceptors, the setup is called microbial fuel cell (MFC) and the electrons can be harvested and used for different applications. MFC can be defined as a microbially catalyzed electrochemical system which can facilitate the direct conversion of substrate to electricity through a cascade of redox reactions, especially in the absence of oxygen. Linking the microbial metabolism to anode and then transmitting the electrons to cathode generates a net electrical power from the degradation of available electron donor. This concept of MFC operation has expanded considerable interest in the recent research due to its application in the energy recovery from wastewater. Microbes in MFC can also use variety of organic or inorganic electron donors as well as acceptors to produce a surfeit of desirable biofuels or biochemicals which is termed as microbial electrosynthesis. Apart from the electrogensis, the applications of MFC are widespread in different fields including waste/wastewater remediation, toxic pollutants/xenobiotics removal, recovery of commercially viable products, sequestration of CO_2, harvesting the energy stored in marine sediments, desalination, etc. In this chapter, an attempt was made to bring out all the existing applications of MFC into one platform to make a comprehensive understanding on the inherent potential of microbial metabolism, when the designated electron acceptor is present.

S. Venkata Mohan (✉) · S. Srikanth · G. Velvizhi · M. Lenin Babu
Bioengineering and Environmental Centre (BEEC), CSIR-Indian Institute of Chemical Technology (CSIR-IICT), Hyderabad 500007, India
e-mail: vmohan_s@yahoo.com; svmohan@iict.res.in

V. K. Gupta and M. G. Tuohy (eds.), *Biofuel Technologies*,
DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-34519-7_14,

14.1 Introduction

Increasing global energy demand and depleting fossil fuels has put forward the necessity for searching alternative fuels. Microbial fuel cell (MFC) is one such alternative route where the microbial membrane potentials will be utilized for harnessing power (bioelectricity) by introducing the artificial electron accepting conditions. MFC can be defined as a biologically catalyzed electrochemical (bioelectrochemical) system which can facilitate direct conversion of chemical energy (from substrate/fuel) to electrical energy through a cascade of redox reactions in the absence of oxygen (Kjeldsen et al. 2002; Logan 2008, 2010; Franks and Nevin 2010; Venkata Mohan and Srikanth 2011; Venkata Mohan 2012). The microbial respiration (reduction) separated from fermentation (oxidation) by ion selective membrane [mostly proton exchange membrane (PEM)] in a defined fuel cell introduced with the artificial electron acceptor/carriers (electrodes) can harness bioenergy in the form of bioelectricity. MFC application for bioelectricity generation from various substrates including waste/wastewater has gained prominence in recent bioenergy scenario due to its sustainable nature. Apart from power generation, application of MFC can also be extended to the production of other commercially viable reduced end products such as organic acids, aldehydes, alcohols, etc. (Logan 2010; Rabaey and Rozendal 2010). On the other hand, removal of various toxic pollutants and remediation of waste is one of the areas, where much of the MFC application is being observed more recently (Venkata Mohan et al. 2009a; Mohanakrishna et al. 2010a). Considering these toxic pollutants and waste/wastewater as electron donor or acceptor, in the MFC will pave a path to overwhelm the existing difficulties in treating them along with the generation of sustainable energy. A paradigm shift from the waste remediation to the energy generation is gaining importance in the recent scenario of bioenergy research. MFC also plays a major role in carbon cycle by reducing carbon dioxide (CO_2) to various viable fuel alternatives viz., ethanol, butanol, etc., in its terminal reduction reactions along with the power generation, contributing its part in reducing the carbon footprints on the Earth (Rabaey and Rozendal 2010). This chapter cohesively outlines and describes the basic principles associated with MFC operation with particular emphasis to sustainable power generation along with its other potential applications.

14.2 Principles of MFC

14.2.1 Mechanism of Power Generation

Microbes in nature carry their metabolic activities (both anabolism and catabolism) either in presence of oxygen (aerobic) or in its absence (anaerobic). Irrespective of the nature of metabolism, all the microbes will involve in the

utilization of available substrate (fermentation) generating the reducing equivalents [protons (H^+) and electrons (e^-)] in the form of redox carriers (NAD^+, FAD^+, FMN^+, etc.) which will help in generating the energy [adenosine triphosphate (ATP)] during respiration (Kim and Gadd 2008; Nelson and Cox 2008). Glycolysis is O_2 sensitive and hence it is common in both the aerobic and anaerobic metabolisms which convert the six-carbon glucose into two molecules of three-carbon pyruvate. Aerobic metabolism further proceeds with the tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle and oxidative phosphorylation generating CO_2 and H_2O, whereas anaerobic metabolism continues with the interconversion reactions generating CH_4, CO_2, and H_2O. Both the processes generate the reducing equivalents attached with the redox carriers which are high-energy molecules. These reducing equivalents generated during fermentation will always move through a series of redox components toward an available terminal electron acceptor (TEA) generating a proton motive force that helps in generating energy-rich phosphate bonds ATP which is useful for the microbial growth and subsequent metabolic activities. However, the function of TEA is based on the thermodynamic hierarchy of the electron acceptors available in the system (Kim and Gadd 2008). In the presence of O_2, due to maximum reduction potential in the biological system and strong electronegative nature, the reducing equivalents will pass through a redox cascade of respiratory/electron-transport chain (ETC) toward O_2 where ATP is generated through oxidative phosphorylation (Kim and Gadd 2008; Nelson and Cox 2008). In the absence of O_2, other electron accepting molecules available in the system will drive the electron flow through the redox cascade. However, the electron flow slows down due to the thermodynamic feasibility of the reaction and the reducing equivalents enter a series of interconversion reactions resulting in the formation of energy rich reduced end products. Due to the less positive redox potentials of oxidants, the energy gain from the anaerobic metabolism is considerably low compared to the aerobic metabolism for the microbe (Schroder 2007; Nelson and Cox 2008). However, during anaerobic metabolism, there is a feasibility of harnessing the electrons available in the system in various forms of bioenergy or valuable bioproducts. MFC function mainly based on harnessing these available electrons by artificially introduced electrodes as intermediary electron acceptors (Fig. 14.1).

14.2.2 Electron Discharge from the Biocatalyst

Microbes with high electron discharge capability are considered to be electrochemically active and are crucial in the MFC operation. Electron transfer from the biocatalyst metabolic activities to the anode (intermediary electron acceptor) is catalyzed by two mechanisms, viz., direct electron transfer (DET) and mediated electron transfer (MET), based on the electron carrier involved (Fig. 14.2). DET is possible by means of physical contact of the bacterial cell with the anode and without the involvement of any redox species or mediator. Some of the membrane

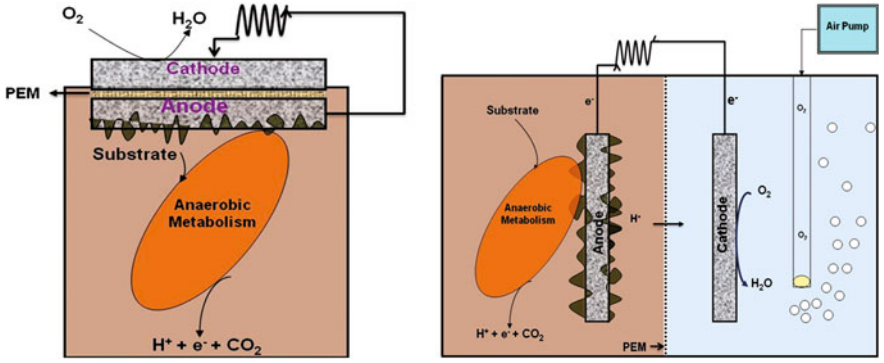


Fig. 14.1 Schematic representation of single (*air cathode*) and dual (*aerated cathode*) chambered MFC depicting the anodic oxidation and cathodic reduction reactions

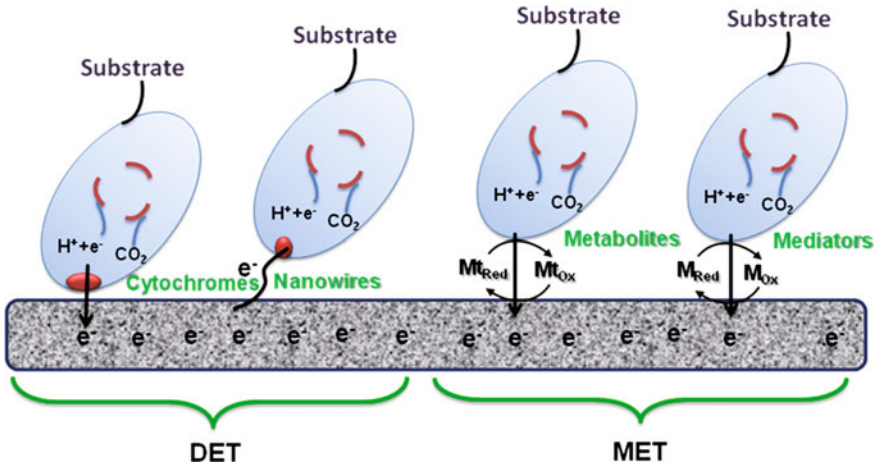


Fig. 14.2 Schematic representation of electron transfer mechanism from microbial metabolism to the anode

bound cell organelles viz., cytochromes, nanowires, etc., will help in the electron transfer from outer membrane of the bacterial cell to the external electron acceptor (anode). *Geobacter*, *Rhodoferax*, and *Shewanella* are the most-studied bacterial species for their exocellular electron transfer through membrane bound organelles (Kim et al. 1999; Chaudhuri and Lovley 2003; Holmes et al. 2004; Lovley 2006; Chang et al. 2006; Schroder 2007).

The name MET itself indicates the involvement of mediators for the exocellular electron transfer from the biocatalyst to the anode. The mediators may be artificially added or naturally excreted soluble shuttlers or primary and secondary metabolites from bacterial metabolism (Schroder 2007). Both the natural and

artificial mediators are available for the electron transfer in a wide range, viz., inorganic compounds such as iron or magnesium containing metal complexes, organic compounds such as quinine and phenazine derivatives.

Microbes grown under electron acceptor depleted conditions and distant from the anode will also tend to release low molecular weight electron shuttling compounds through secondary metabolic pathways, e.g., pyocyanine and 2-amino-3-carboxy-1, 4-naphthoquinone (ACNQ), phenazine-1-carboxamide, etc., (Newman and Kolter 2000; Hernandez and Newman 2001; Newman 2001). *Pseudomonas* group of microbes secretes pyocyanin and pyovirdin like colored compounds for the electron shuttling. Phenazines, phenoxazines, quinines, etc., are the natural mediators investigated in the literature for their suitability as mediators (Bennetto et al. 1983; Roller et al. 1984; Bennetto 1990; Park and Zeikus 1999; Newman and Kolter 2000; Park and Zeikus 2000; Rabaey et al. 2004; Schroder 2007).

14.2.3 Fuel Cell Behavior and Half Cell Potentials

The change in fuel cell behavior under varying external resistances (polarization) helps to understand the performance of fuel cell in terms of maximum power density, cell design point, half cell potentials, etc. (Logan et al. 2006; Venkata Mohan et al. 2008a). Polarization is a powerful tool for the analysis and characterization of fuel cells. Polarization curve is plotted by considering the change in current density over cell voltage and power density with the function of external resistance. Decrease in resistance will increase the electron flow through the circuit generating higher currents which lowers the potential difference between anode and cathode. However for higher power output, both the current and voltage should be high because power is the product of both. The resistance at which both the current and voltage are optimum resulting in higher power is called cell design point beyond which the fuel cell can be operated effectively. Operation of MFC below the cell design point will cause instability because of higher currents and lower voltages (Venkata Mohan et al. 2008b). Change in half cell potentials for anode and cathode over varying external load is also crucial to assess the start-up of electron discharge from the biocatalyst to the anode, reaction rates of cathodic reduction, interaction between cathode and TEA, etc. (Srikanth et al. 2010a).

Voltage curve of polarization helps in depicting the internal losses of the system that hamper the electron flow from biocatalyst to the anode. An S-shaped voltage curve will be obtained for an ideal MFC where the initial part depicts the activation overpotentials, middle part depicts ohmic losses, and the terminal part depicts concentration losses (Fig. 14.3). Certain amount of energy is required to carry out any biological reaction which is considered as activation energy. All the reactants must cross an activation energy barrier to form as products. Similarly, oxidation at the anode or reduction at the bacterial surface or interior requires certain activation energy which incurs potential loss accounting for the activation overpotential (Larminie and Dicks 2000; Velvizhi and Venkata Mohan 2012).

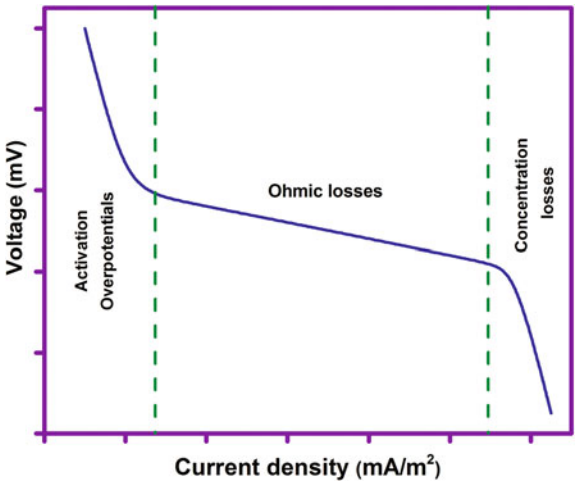


Fig. 14.3 Voltage curve of polarization against current density with the function of varying external resistance depicting the possible internal losses during the electron transfer from microbe to the anode

Activation overpotentials are important in the lower current density zones (below 1 mA/cm^2) and hence they are considered as the most important parameter/factor during MFC operation (Rabeay et al. 2005; Velvizhi et al. 2012). These overpotentials can be overcome by increasing the operation temperature, anode surface area, concentration of redox shuttlers, etc.

Ohmic losses are caused by the electrical resistances of the electrodes, solution–electrode interface, and the electrolyte–membrane interface. Controlling the ohmic losses is important to harness higher power densities because these losses occur at the middle zone where the optimum voltage and current are generated. These losses can be overwhelmed by increasing the electrical conductivity of the electrolyte or by using highly conductive electrode materials. Usage of noble metal electrodes (such as platinum, titanium, etc.) increases the economics of MFC operation. However, considering waste as anodic fuel increases the electrolyte conductivity and manages the economics (Rabeay et al. 2005; Velvizhi et al. 2012). Concentration losses occur due to the large oxidative force of the anode, where the electron donor is being oxidized at faster rate releasing more number of reducing equivalents than they can be transported to the anode surface and then to the cathode. However, this is important at higher current densities where the MFC becomes unstable and hence, it is not necessary to consider these losses in MFC operation. Only in the case of thick nonconductive biofilm formation on anode, hampering of electron transfer occurs to the anode surface, where the concentration polarization will be an obstruction (Rabeay et al. 2005; Velvizhi et al. 2012). However, electrochemically active MFC with higher current outputs will prefer the formation of thin and open biofilm, and hence it is not a significant problem. Apart from the above-mentioned losses, the electrons will also be lost during the competitive metabolic activities which require similar precursor compound, termed as electron quenching (Sect. 14.3.2.1).

14.3 Applications of MFC

The reducing equivalents generated during MFC operation have multiple applications in the energy generation as well as waste remediation areas. Broadly MFC application can be classified as a power generator, wastewater treatment unit, and system for the recovery of value-added products. Reducing equivalents generated from substrate metabolism gets reduced in presence of an electron acceptor at physically distinct component of MFC (cathode) and results in power generation. Alternatively, when the waste/wastewater functions as an electron donor or acceptor, its remediation gets manifested either through anodic oxidation or cathodic reduction under defined conditions. Similarly, when some of the oxidized metabolites act as electron acceptors during MFC operation and forms as reduced end products having commercial importance. Apart from these three, several other diverse applications are reported for MFC based on their configuration and mode of operation which also will fall in either or all of these three categories.

14.3.1 Power Generator

Protons and electrons are generated during microbially catalyzed oxidation at anode and the protons will migrate to the cathode through PEM creating a potential difference between the anode and cathode against which the electrons will flow through the circuit where they get reduced in presence of TEA generating power. Microbially catalyzed oxidation of substrate takes place at anode Eq. (14.1) generating the reducing equivalents, while their reduction takes place at cathode Eq. (14.2). Overall reaction occurring with MFC is represented by Eq. (14.3).

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6H_2O \rightarrow 6CO_2 + 24H^+ + 24e^- \text{ (Anode)} \tag{14.1}$$

$$4e^- + 4H^+ + O_2 \rightarrow 2H_2O \text{(Cathode)} \tag{14.2}$$

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6H_2O + 6O_2 \rightarrow 6CO_2 + 12H_2O \text{(Overall)} \tag{14.3}$$

The PEM introduced between the fermentation (anode) and respiration (cathode) will mimic the function of external membrane generating a potential gradient, while the electrodes will act as redox components of the cell assisting in the electron flow toward TEA. Electron transfer from its source (metabolism) to the sink TEA will be driven by the potential difference between the redox components of the microbe and fuel cell (Fig. 14.4). The membrane potential across the cascade of membrane components is called proton motive force due to which the reducing equivalents will reach the intermembrane space. The electrons will reach anode creating a negative anodic potential, while the protons will go to the cathode creating a positive potential. The difference between positive cathodic and negative anodic potentials is considered as cell voltage which drives the electron flow

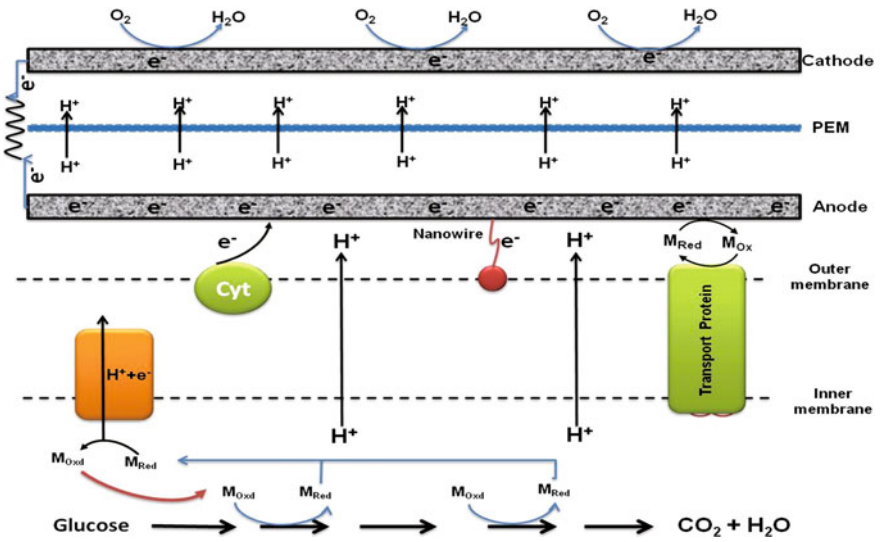


Fig. 14.4 Schematic representation of reducing equivalents generation and their transfer to TEA including the principle and mechanism of electron mobility from its source to sink [M_{Ox} oxidized mediator; M_{Red} reduced mediator]

from anode to cathode [electron motive force (*emf*)]. Overall, the electron transfer from its source to sink is purely based on the differences in the redox potentials of the components of the fuel cell irrespective of their nature (biological or chemical or physical). MFC function as power generator was well established by using a wide range of substrates as electron donors and acceptors in the anode and cathode chambers, respectively. However, electrogenic activity of MFC is governed by several physical, biological, and operational factors.

14.3.1.1 Physical Factors

MFC depends on the physical components including fuel cell configuration, anolyte volume, electrode materials, membrane, etc., which are to be considered crucial in regulating the power generation. Basically MFC configurations can be classified into two types based on the physical separation of fermentation (anode) and respiration (cathode) viz., dual and single chambers (Fig. 14.1). In the dual chamber, both the anode and cathode are immersed in liquid medium supporting the electron donor and acceptor conditions, respectively. While in the single chamber configuration, only anode is immersed in the liquid medium (anolyte) supporting the electron donor conditions and the cathode was exposed to ambient air. Initially, MFC operation was mostly with double chamber configuration (Venkata Mohan et al. 2007a, 2008a, b, c; Zhang et al. 2009a) and later shifted to single chamber operation (Venkata Mohan et al. 2008d, 2009b) to reduce the

construction costs and increase the ease of operation. The electrogenic efficiency of MFC will vary based on the electron acceptor conditions. Oxygen (O_2) is considered to be the best-known electron acceptor in the biological redox system. Apart from O_2, Fe^{3+} (potassium ferricyanide), and Mn^{2+} (potassium permanganate) are most-studied electron acceptors in dual chamber MFC as catholytes (You et al. 2006; Venkata Mohan et al. 2008b, c, e). Fe^{3+} depicted higher power generation over other electron acceptors which might be due to its strong oxidizing nature and greater mass transfer rate along with lower activation energy required for the cathodic reaction. The usage of metals as electron acceptors has a drawback of replenishment metal ions after exhaustion and their discharge in the environment also toxic. Hence, it is suggested to use O_2 (aerated/open air cathode) as electron acceptor in MFC. The performance of single chamber is relatively low compared to double chamber in terms of electrogenic activity due to the inherent limitations in the cathodic reduction reactions. However, single chamber configuration is similar to the existing conventional wastewater treatment units, and hence can be easily implemented for the full-scale integrated wastewater treatment (Venkata Mohan et al. 2008a). Apart from these basic configurations, U-tube MFC, serpentine MFC, and few other configurations were also studied. Irrespective of the configuration, MFC performance was independent of reactor volume because the possible theoretical potential in MFC is around 1.2 V [NAD^+ (-0.32 V) and (O_2 +0.816 V) are available higher electron donor and acceptors in the biological system]. Henceforth, stacks of smaller MFCs connected in series will result in a cumulated voltage that can be used for real-time applications (Venkata Mohan et al. 2011b).

The nature of solid electron acceptors (electrodes) used in MFC can also influence the power generation efficiency due to its role as intermediary electron transferring agent from the source to sink. The growth of electrochemically active microbes also depends on the anode properties which can effectively accept the electrons from the microbial metabolism (Cheng et al. 2006). The materials used in MFC as electrode should have characteristics of being electrically conductive, biocompatible, and chemically stable in the reactor solution, efficient electron discharge and should sustain its properties with time. The other characteristics viz., high porosity, nonfouling nature, geometrical appearance, easily accessible, and should fit for large scale (Chaudhuri and Lovley 2003; Srikanth et al. 2011a), which help in the increased performance. Carbon based materials viz., graphite, graphene, and carbon were most widely used materials as anode in various forms such as cloth, brush, plate, etc. Graphite in its native form and modified with nanomaterials and other catalysts has functioned as good anode material in many of MFC studies but it has its limitations for large-scale applications (Srikanth et al. 2011a; Mohanakrishna et al. 2012). The synergistic interaction of the microbes with different anode materials was also evaluated to understand the change in electron discharge and microbial growth patterns of MFC (Srikanth et al. 2011a). Apart from carbon-based materials, application of platinum, titanium, vanadium, nickel, stainless steel, aluminum, brass, and copper were also studied among which nickel and stainless steel can be effectively used in the economic point of view.

Ion exchange membrane used to separate both the chambers is also an important physical factor effecting MFC performance. Initially MFC studies were carried out with salt bridge between anode and cathode for the exchange of ions. In the later stages, PEM was used and extensively studied for its function in exchanging the protons specifically to the cathode chamber (Venkata Mohan et al. 2008b, c, d, e, f). PEM is a sulfonated tetrafluorethylene copolymer, consisting of a hydrophobic fluorocarbon backbone (–CF2–CF2–) to which hydrophilic sulfonate groups (SO^{3-}) are attached. The presence of negatively charged sulfonate groups in the membrane explains the high level of proton conductivity of PEM (Rozendal et al. 2006). Apart from PEM, different other ion exchange membranes viz., glass wool, cation and anion exchange membranes, were also studied in MFC (Venkata Mohan et al. 2008a; Pandit et al. 2012). PEM depicted higher potential development over other membranes due to the selective proton exchange which avoids the interference of other reactions in MFC causing losses. However, the usage of PEM increases the cost of MFC construction and decreases its application feasibility in the wastewater treatment.

14.3.1.2 Biological Factors

Apart from physical factors, nature of microbes used along with their growth and synergistic interaction with the electrode, mechanism of electron transfer from the microbes and the role of electron shuttlers, etc., will also govern the power generation in MFC. Microbes used in the anodic oxidation play a major role in the MFC performance. The extracellular electron transfer rate is influenced by the potential difference between the final electron carrier and the anode, irrespective of the mechanism (Newman and Kolter 2000; Marsili et al. 2008; Lee et al. 2009). The cell compartmentalization and the more complicated architecture of cell respiratory chains give an advantage of harnessing the energy from biocatalyst. Initial studies of MFC were carried out with pure cultures and later the research was shifted toward the application of mixed consortia as biocatalyst in MFC where the synergistic association among the individual strains will result in higher power output. Most of the reported electrochemically active microbes are facultative and metal reducing in nature. Metal reducing species have the special ability to act as self-mediators, transferring electrons to the anode through physical contact. These organisms have an outer membrane cytochrome oxidase type *c* protein that allows transfer of electrons from the interior of the bacteria cell membrane to the exterior of the cell membrane. Some species will be able to discharge electrons using electron shuttlers (either naturally secreted or artificially added) to the anode (Sect. 14.2.2). Most widely studied strains include *Geobacter sulfurreducens* (Dumas et al. 2007), *Shewanella haliotis* ATCC 49138 (Raghavulu et al. 2012), *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* (Raghavulu et al. 2011a), *Rhodoferax ferrireducens* (Chaudhuri and Lovley 2003), *Desulfuromonas acetoxidans* (Bond et al. 2002), *Klebsiella pneumonia* (Zhang et al. 2008), etc. *Shewanella, Geobacter* and *Pseudomonas* are the most widely studied strains in MFC for their electrochemical activity and

Table 14.1 Table representing MFC operation with mixed culture as biocatalyst

Source of the inoculums	Electron donor	MFC configuration	Power (mW)	Reference
Anaerobic mixed consortia	Designed synthetic wastewater with glucose	Dual chamber	0.086	Venkata Mohan et al. (2008c)
Anaerobic mixed consortia	Composite chemical wastewater	Dual chamber	0.421	Venkata Mohan et al. (2009a)
Mixture of aerobic and anaerobic sludge	Azo dye with glucose	Single chamber	0.09	Sun et al. (2009)
Anaerobic sludge from wastewater plan	Ethanol	Dual chamber	0.025	Kim et al. (2007)
Mixed bacterial culture	Glucuronic acid	Single chamber	1.18	Catal et al. (2008)
Leachate and sludge	Landfill leachate	Dual chamber	0.0004	Greenman et al. (2009)
Rumen microorganism from rumen of a cow	Cellulose	Dual chamber	0.02	Yazdi et al. (2007)
Mixed aerobic activated sludge and anaerobic sludge	Phenol	Dual chamber	0.1	Luo et al. (2010)
Mixed bacterial culture	Xylose	Single chamber	0.74	Catal et al. (2008)
Anaerobic sludge	Designed synthetic wastewater with glucose and glutamate	U-shape	0.02	Zuo et al. (2008)

electron transfer mechanisms. *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* (Yeast), a lower eukaryote can also be considered as a potential biocatalyst in MFC (Raghavulu et al. 2011b). However, the sort of flexibility with mixed culture seems beneficial for MFC application and provides a definite advantage toward power generation, especially when waste is considered as electron donor. The syntrophic association of microbes present in mixed culture can be considered as mixotrophy as the mutual interactions among their metabolic activities will have an added advantage of harnessing the electrons from the multiple components of waste. The electron flux through a series of metabolic reactions will result in a chance of harnessing them as bioelectricity. Several studies have been reported on the application of mixed culture in MFC with diverse wastewater (Table 14.1). Biofilm formation on the surface of the anode will significantly influence the current generation in MFC irrespective of microbe nature (Bond et al. 2002; Logan and Regan 2006). Understanding the formation of biofilm and its function in MFC is also important as it correlates with the amount of active biomass that can potentially use the electrode as the electron acceptor. Thick biofilm coverage on anode will have negative impact on power generation because the external layers of biofilm experience difficulty in discharging the electrons onto the anode. Hence, the anode of MFC always prefers thin and open biofilms unlike conventional biological systems to avoid the obstruction of electron flow (Wang et al. 2009). However, the increasing biofilm growth on anode showed increased MFC performance (Venkata Mohan et al. 2008d). Selective enrichment of electrochemically active biofilm on

the anode surface might be the reason behind this which may be thin but enriched with the electroactive strains.

14.3.1.3 Operational Factors

MFC performance is also regulated by the operational factors viz., nature of electron donor, organic load, retention time, redox condition (pH), microenvironment, etc. MFC can use a diverse range of substrates (anolyte fuel) as electron donors in the anodic oxidation to generate the reducing equivalents. Among the simple substrates, glucose and acetate are the most widely used electron donors (Table 14.2). Diverse range of waste/wastewater can also be used as anodic fuel which is an asset to the existing waste remediation approaches. Simple domestic sewage to the complex industrial wastewater has been studied as anodic fuel in MFC (Venkata Mohan et al. 2011a; Srikanth and Venkata Mohan 2012a, b; Behera et al. 2010). However, the power generation of MFC depends on the characteristics and biodegradability of the waste used (Sect. 14.3.2.1). Further, the power generation in MFC depends on the organic load of wastewater. Highly biodegradable waste can be loaded at higher loading rates, while low biodegradable waste will interfere with the metabolism of microbes at higher loading rates. The retention time of the MFC also varies based on the loading of anolyte. Higher loadings can continue the generation of reducing equivalents for longer periods, while lower loading rates can retain the electrogenesis for less time (Reddy et al. 2010; Velvizhi and Venkata Mohan 2011; Jadhav and Ghangrekar 2009).

Neutral pH is the optimum condition for many bacterial growth and metabolic activities. Most of the enzymes function near neutral pH and the biomolecules of the cell become unstable at extreme pH. Hence, the internal pH of microbe is maintained at neutral redox microenvironment irrespective of the external pH (Kim and Gadd 2008). However, the external pH can bring alterations in the microbial activities including synthesis of biomolecules and ion transport across membrane. MFC performance also depends on the redox conditions of the fermentation (anolyte). External acidophilic pH is defended by the excessive production of acid shock proteins that consume the H^+ entered the cell and bring the

Table 14.2 Simple substrates used as electron donors in single chambered MFC

Simple substrate	Power density (mW/m^2)	Conversion efficiency (%)	Reference
Glucose	401	10	Sharma and Baikun (2010)
Acetate	368	16	Sharma and Baikun (2010)
Starch	242	21	Min and Logan (2004)
Butyrate	305	7.8	Liu et al. (2005a)
Dextran	150	17	Min and Logan (2004)
Peptone	269	6	Heilmann and Logan (2006)
Ethanol	302	–	Kim et al. (2007)

internal pH to near neutral. On the contrary, the extreme alkalophilic pH can be defended by the function of Na^+/H^+ antiport pump which converts the proton motive force to the sodium motive force (Kim and Gadd 2008). The exocellular electron transfer to the anode is dependent on the operating pH which creates a proton gradient between cell interior and surrounding environment. Higher performance was reported at acidophilic pH over neutral and basic pH in diverse configurations of MFC (Raghavulu et al. 2009a, b; Jadhav and Ghangrekar 2009). The electron transfer is independent of external pH when the circuit is connected against resistance. The closed circuit creates a strong proton motive force on anode due to the continuous reduction of protons with the electron acceptor in the terminal reaction. Moreover, the metabolic activities of biocatalyst will be higher and waste remediation also favors neutral pH.

Most of the MFC research was confined to the operation of anodic chamber under anaerobic microenvironment but few reports are also available on the application of aerobic metabolic function at anode (Ringeisen et al. 2007; Rodrigo et al. 2007; Venkata Mohan et al. 2008f). If a low level of oxygen is allowed in the anode chamber which cannot neutralize all the electrons generated in the system, remaining electrons can be harnessed. This has an added advantage of higher treatment efficiency including some toxic compounds (dyes and colored compounds) which needs sequential alternative microenvironments. Overall, high carbon concentration, low oxygen levels, and least possible distance between anode and cathode are the prerequisites for the power generation from aerobic MFC. However, detailed studies pertaining to the process understanding are required to establish the advantages of oxygen presence at anode.

14.3.2 Bioelectrochemical Treatment

More recently MFC documented good efficiency of waste remediation compared to conventional anaerobic treatment process (Kim et al. 2000; Bond et al. 2002; Rabaey et al. 2003; Liu et al. 2005a; Hu et al. 2008; Lee et al. 2008; Biffinger et al. 2008; Sun et al. 2009; Aelterman 2009; Chae et al. 2009; Luo et al. 2010; Oh et al. 2010; Velvizhi and Venkata Mohan 2011; Venkata Mohan and Chandrasekhar 2011a). Due to its function as wastewater treatment unit, MFC can be also called as bioelectrochemical treatment system (BET) when wastewater treatment was prime motto. The principle of BET relies on the fact that electrochemically active microorganisms can transfer electrons from a reduced electron donor to an electrode and finally to an oxidized electron acceptor generating power. Therefore, it can be presumed that coupling of bioanode to a counter electrode (cathode) will have definite positive influence on the overall wastewater treatment efficiency, which has to be tapped (Venkata Mohan and Chandrasekhar 2011a). During BET operation, there exists a possibility to integrate diverse components viz., biological, physical, and chemical in anodic chamber and provides an opportunity to

trigger multiple reactions namely biochemical, physical, physicochemical, electrochemical, oxidation, etc. which cohesively can be termed as bioelectrochemical reactions as a result of substrate metabolic activity and subsequent secondary reactions. The anode chamber of MFC resembles conventional anaerobic bioreactor and mimics the function of a conventional electrochemical cell used for wastewater treatment where the redox reactions help in the degradation of organic matter and toxic/xenobiotic pollutants (Venkata Mohan et al. 2009a; Mohanakrishna et al. 2010a). Potential difference between anodic oxidation and cathodic reduction reactions will have positive influence on the pollutant removal in MFC. The *in situ* biopotential generated helps in the enhancement of degradation of different pollutants in both the anode and cathode chambers. Due to the anodic oxidation potential reactive species like OH^-, O^-, etc., are generated at anode surface which helps to break the complex chemical structures present in wastewater. Sometimes, pollutants themselves act as mediators in electron transfer. For example, elemental sulfur present in the wastewater acts as mediator for electron transfer to the anode and converts to sulfate in the MFC which is easier for degradation (Dutta et al. 2009). Azo dyes also act as mediators for the electron transfer in the MFC and decolorize during reduction (Mu et al. 2009a). Biohazardous toxic compounds such as endocrine disrupting estrogens can also be considered as mediator molecules in MFC (Kiran Kumar et al. 2012).

14.3.2.1 Waste/Wastewater as Electron Donor

Substrate is regarded as one of the most important biological factors in BET/MFC affecting the electron delivery. BET can utilize a wide range of substrates as electron donors including inorganic and organic molecules. However, the efficiency of electron delivery depends on the oxidation state of electron donor and the ratio of the electron donor to the microbe that can oxidize it. Among the simple substrates, glucose and acetate are most widely used anodic fuels with both pure and mixed cultures. However, acetate as electron donor has the advantage of low electron loss over glucose. Any substrate having the possibility of undergoing multiple metabolic pathways will prone to electron loss which can be considered as electron quenching. Glucose is the known best simple substrate that can be oxidized by almost all kinds of microbes but its degradation consist of multiple conversion pathways and hence the electrons will be lost during its conversion. Although the number of electrons generated from glucose is higher than acetate, the energy conversion efficiency is less due to the electron losses. Especially with mixed bacterial suspensions, this problem is significant due to the possible diverse metabolisms. Apart from glucose and acetate several other substrates, viz., sucrose, starch, butyrate, dextran, peptone, ethanol, etc., were also evaluated as anodic fuels (Table 14.2).

BET/MFCs are versatile to utilize wide variety of substrate explored as feed in microbial extracting electric current from a wide range of soluble or dissolved complex organic wastes. The characteristics of the wastewater vary based on the

raw materials used as the source for its generation. Domestic wastewater is considered to be simple and highly biodegradable in nature with low substrate load and hence power generation lasts for only few hours (Venkata Mohan et al. 2009b). Dairy wastewater is rich in nitrogenous compounds such as milk proteins which also may interfere with the power generation. On the contrary, distillery based wastewater is rich in carbon source but due to the presence of complex elements to interference with power generation (Mohankrishna et al. 2010a). The complex nature of pharmaceutical wastewater and low biodegradable nature creates difficulty in their conversion to the reducing equivalents, and moreover the electrons and protons generated will be accepted by the pollutants as intermediary acceptors for their removal instead of generating current. A wide range of wastewater including domestic wastewater (Venkata Mohan et al. 2009b; Jiang et al. 2012), diary wastewater (Saravanan et al. 2010; Venkata Mohan et al. 2010a), potato wastewater (Cusick et al. 2011), pharmaceutical wastewater (Velvizhi and Venkata Mohan 2011), paper industry wastewater (Huang and Logan 2008), swine waste (Min et al. 2005), food waste (Goud et al. 2011; Goud and Venkata Mohan 2011), wheat straw hydrolysate (Zhang et al. 2009a), distillery wastewater (Mohanakrishna et al. 2010a), chocolate Industry wastewater (Patil et al. 2009), vegetable wastewater (Venkata Mohan et al. 2010b), cheese wastewater (Antonopoulou et al. 2009), etc., were studied as electron donors in MFC. Similarly, lignocellulosic biomass (Ren et al. 2007; Wang et al. 2009), dye wastewater (Pant et al. 2008; Sun et al. 2009), landfill leachates (Kjeldsen et al. 2002; Zhang et al. 2008; Greenman et al. 2009; Gálvez et al. 2009), cellulose and chitin (Yazdi et al. 2007), and reed mannagrass (Strik et al. 2008), etc., were also studied in MFC as electron donors. MFC can also be operated in solid phase operation (Venkata Mohan and Chandrasekhar 2011b). Waste generated from different origins, viz., industries, commercial areas, residential areas, etc., can also be potential electron donors in MFC. However, waste having higher biodegradability such as, dairy based wastewater, food wastewater, market based vegetable waste, kitchen based waste, etc., will have good power generation capacity, while the industrial wastewater having low biodegradability will depict lower power output. Still, wastewater could be considered as a potential substrate for MFC due to the dual benefits of converting negative valued waste into bioenergy. However, optimization is still required for up-scaling the process with consorted efforts.

14.3.2.2 Pollutants as Electron Donors/Acceptors

Apart from electron donor, electron acceptor function is also crucial in BET/MFC, especially when waste remediation is considered. Chemotrophic microbes can utilize various pollutants at anode by oxidation discharging the electrons (electron donors) and also can utilize them as electron acceptors in respiration (anaerobic) at cathode which facilitate their remediation. Apart from enhanced substrate removal efficiency, the fuel cell systems also showed considerable reduction in color and total dissolved solids (TDS) of the wastewater in anode chamber (Mohanakrishna

et al. 2010a; Venkata Mohan et al. 2010a, b). Removal of pollutants, such as sulfide (Rabaey et al. 2006), nitrates (Clauwaert et al. 2007; Virdis et al. 2008), perchlorate (Thrash et al. 2007) and chlorinated organic compounds (Aulenta et al. 2007), are also reported in cathode chamber of fuel cell operation during power generation. Apart from oxygen, other compounds viz., nitrates, sulfates, phenol, nitrobenzene, dye molecules (azo dye), etc., will also function as electron acceptors at cathode to accomplish the respiration which facilitates the electron discharge in the circuit (bioelectricity) along with their remediation. However, their function as electron acceptor is based on the thermodynamic hierarchy (Sect. 14.2.3). Some of the compounds viz., sulfur, metals, estrogens, etc., can act as redox mediators for the electron transfer (Kiran Kumar et al. 2012; Chandrasekhar and Venkata Mohan 2012). Nitrates are the best-known electron acceptors after O_2 accounting for denitrification which is an environmentally important microbial process reducing nitrate or nitrite to generate a proton motive force under anaerobic conditions. Denitrifiers have a similar electron-transport system to aerobic respiratory organisms (Kim and Gadd 2008). Similarly, some other microbes and Archea use sulfate and elemental sulfur as their electron acceptor and reduce them. It is also essential to remove nitrogen and sulfur from wastewater treatment plants before discharge to prevent eutrophication. However, microbes which use nitrates as electron acceptors are mostly facultative and which use sulfate/sulfur as electron acceptor are obligate in nature (Kim and Gadd 2008). Nitrates get reduced by both assimilative and dissimilative processes where in assimilative pathway, they are consumed by the microbes as nutrient source for the cellular material, while in dissimilative process they act as electron acceptors (Clauwaert et al. 2007; Kim and Gadd 2008; Virdis et al. 2008; Velvizhi and Venkata Mohan 2011). Some microbes can only use nitrate as electron acceptor but some can use nitrate as both nutrients source as well as electron acceptor. Nitrate gets converted to nitrite by consuming two electrons which further accepts one more electron forming nitric oxide and then get reduced to nitrous oxide by accepting one more electron finally forming nitrogen by accepting one more electron. On the whole the conversion of nitrate to nitrogen, it requires five electrons (Fig. 14.5). Similarly, treatment of inorganic sulfur compounds in MFC also got considerable importance. Sulfate is initially reduced to sulfide and then to hydrogen sulfide when considered as electron acceptor. Sulfide can also be oxidized to elemental sulfur, when considered at anodic oxidation (Fig. 14.5). Sulfide forms as an intermediate during the oxidation of organic compounds and sulfide is oxidized to elemental sulfur. The elemental sulfur deposits on the anode and acts as mediator for the electron transfer instead of anode during the carbon oxidation (Rabaey et al. 2005). Sulfate reduced to sulfide using organics as electron donor by sulfate reducing bacteria to sulfide. More oxidized forms of sulfur such as sulfite, sulfate, and polysulfides can be generated, due to the presence of both sulfides and (microbiologically formed) elemental sulfur (Dutta et al. 2009).

On the other hand, some microbes oxidize (assimilatory reduction) or reduce (dissimilatory reduction) metal ions as electron acceptors or donors. The known metal ions acting as electron acceptors are iron, manganese, selenium, uranium,

chromium, arsenic, vanadium, and cobalt which are considered to be potent pollutants in the environment and their removal is essential prior to waste disposal. Most of the organic compounds degradation under anaerobic conditions is coupled with the ferric iron reduction because of its huge availability on the Earth (Kim and Gadd 2008). MFC can also use the colored dye compounds as alternate electron acceptors which results in their removal. Azo dye and Acid Orange 7 (AO7) are studied for their function as electron acceptors in MFC. The mechanism of their reduction was also fully exploited where they are converted into their reduced intermediates after accepting the reducing equivalents at cathode under anaerobic respiration (Fig. 14.5). Color removal from industrial wastewater, such as distillery and pharmaceutical wastewater, were also reported during anodic oxidation (Venkata Mohan et al. 2009a; Mohanakrishna et al. 2010a; Venkata Mohan et al. 2010a, b; Velvizhi and Venkata Mohan 2011). The toxic halogens and other hydrocarbons are recalcitrant to aerobic remediation but they also can serve as electron acceptors for anaerobic respiration. Apart from these, nitrobenzenes, polyalcohols, and phenols also studied for their treatment either through oxidation or reduction in MFC. Remediation of polyaromatic hydrocarbons was also reported through redox reactions of MFC (Table 14.3).

Pollutant removal during BET operation is possible mainly due to direct (DAO) and indirect anodic oxidation (IAO) mechanisms. The pollutants are adsorbed on the anode surface and get destroyed by the anodic electron transfer reactions in the DAO, whereas the IAO pollutants will be oxidized by the oxidants formed electrochemically on the anode surface under in situ biopotential. DAO facilitates

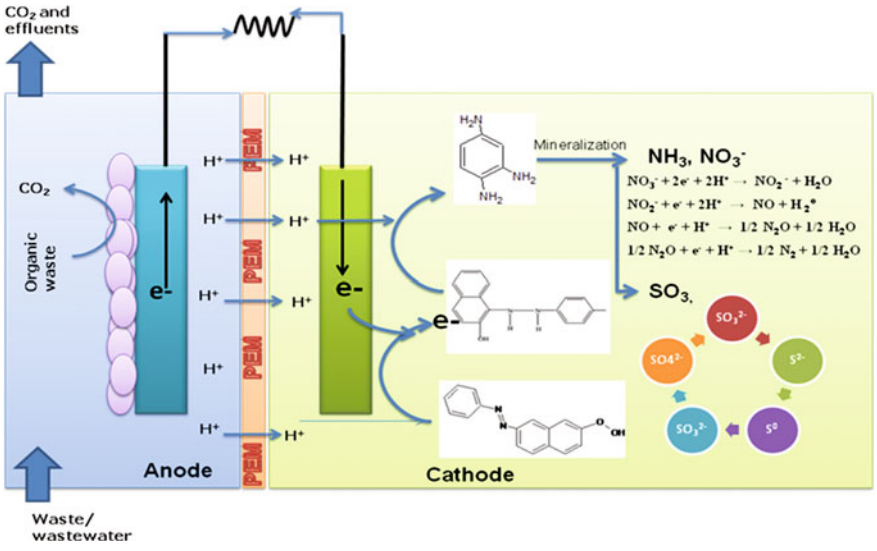


Fig. 14.5 Schematic representation of the anodic oxidation of wastewater as well as cathodic reduction mechanism pertaining to various toxic pollutants, xenobiotics, and nutrients when acting as electron acceptors during BET/MFC operation

Table 14.3 Pollutants functioning as electron donors and acceptors during fuel cell operation

Specific pollutant	Electron acceptor	MFC configuration	Power density	Removal efficiency (% and CE %)	Reference
Pollutant as electron donor					
Phenol	Oxygen	Double chamber	9.1 mW/m^2	90	Luo et al. (2009)
Polyalcohols	Oxygen	Single chamber	2,650 mW/m^2	90	Catal et al. (2008)
Indole	Ferricyanide	Double chamber	51.2 W/m^3	88	Luo et al. (2010)
Estriol	Oxygen	Single chamber	28.32 mW/m^2	54	Kiran Kumar et al. (2012)
Ethenyl estradiol	Oxygen	Single chamber	12.46 mW/m^2	38	Kiran Kumar et al. (2012)
Specific pollutant	Electron donor	MFC configuration	Power Denisty/ Current	Removal efficiency (% and CE %)	Reference
Pollutant as electron acceptor					
Nitrate	Acetate	Double chamber	9.4 mW/m^2	84	Lefebvre et al. (2008)
Sulfide	Acetate	Double chamber	37 W/m^3	87	Dutta et al. (2009)
Perchlorate	Sodium acetate	Double chamber	0.28 mA	97	Butler et al. (2010)
Azo dye	Glucose	Double chamber	110 mW/m^2	77	Mu et al. (2009a)
Nitrobenzene	Sodium acetate	Double chamber	16.5 A/m^3	98	Mu et al. (2009b)
Selenite	Acetate	Double chamber	2,200 mW/m^2	99	Catal et al. (2009)
Nitrophenols	Acetate	Double chamber	–	70	Zhu and Ni (2009)
Pyridine	Glucose	Double chamber	1.7 W/m^3	95	Zhang et al. (2009b)

formation of primary oxidants which further react on the anode yielding secondary oxidants, such as chlorine dioxide and ozone, which might have significant positive effect on the color removal efficiency through the oxidation process. Reactions between water and radicals near the anode could yield molecular oxygen, free chlorine and hydrogen peroxide, hypochlorous acid, etc. which also helps in color/organic oxidation (Mohanakrishna et al. 2010a; Venkata Mohan and Srikanth 2011). Few reports are also available regarding the cathodic function in the effective removal of pollutants. Azo dyes (Mu et al. 2009a), nitrobenzene (Mu et al. 2009b), and nitrate (Lefebvre et al. 2008) are some of the pollutants studied in the cathode chamber of BET. Hypothetically, it can be assumed that in cathode chamber under anaerobic condition, most of the pollutants act as TEA for power generation. Treatment pertaining to anodic chamber was relatively less compared to cathode. Pollutants in the anodic chamber also act as mediators for electron transfer to anode which can increase the power generation efficiency with simultaneous reduction of pollutants. Very less work has been reported in the use of pollutants as mediators. Apart from substrate removal, the fuel cell also showed considerable reduction of toxicity, color, and TDS in wastewater (Venkata Mohan et al. 2010b; Mohanakrishna et al. 2010b; Velvizhi and Venkata Mohan 2011). Application of MFC was also extended to treat solid waste and the toxic aromatic hydrocarbons by using the *in situ* biopotential and considering anode as electron acceptor (Venkata Mohan and Chandrasekhar 2011a, b). Studies related to the mechanism of pollutant reduction and their role in electron transfer or acceptance will give a spectrum of practical feasibility of this technology for the removal of toxic pollutants.

14.3.3 Microbial Electro-Synthesizer

Reduction mechanism at cathode can be effectively used not only for pollutant removal but also for the generation of reduced end products having commercial value. The product formation is based on the electron acceptor and the redox potential of the MFC. For example, ethanol can be formed at cathode by considering acetate as electron acceptor under a redox potential of −0.28 V. Likewise, a diverse range of value-added products can be harnessed from the MFC, especially at cathode in the absence of O_2 as electron acceptor, along with the power generation (Rabaey and Rozendal 2010). Based on the electron accepting conditions at the cathode, different compounds can be synthesized and therefore MFC can also be used for product recovery other than treatment unit. Some of the reactions require less redox potential which can be accomplished by the *in situ* generated biopotential, while some reactions require more redox potential at cathode which cannot be accomplished by the *in situ* potentials (Rabaey and Rozendal 2010). In such cases, the designated redox potential is maintained by applying small external potentials to meet the energy necessary to cross the energy barrier for product formation. Hydrogen production through cathodic reduction

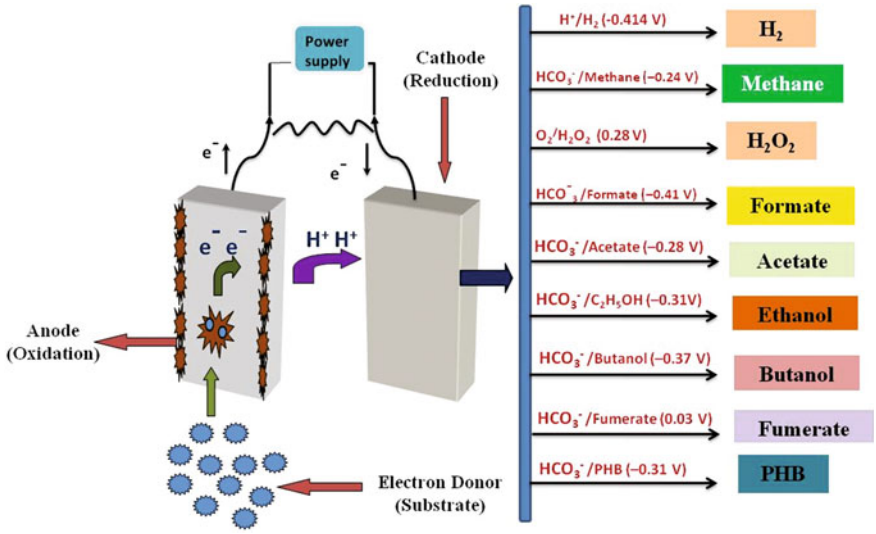


Fig. 14.6 Schematic representation of bioelectrochemical system including its function towards the formation of various reduced end products having commercial importance

reaction has been extensively studied in MFC till date, under the name microbial electrolysis cell (MEC). Other valuable products known to be harnessed at MFC cathode are acetate, ethanol, hydrogen peroxide, butanol, etc. (Fig. 14.6). However, there is scope to generate number of products using the potential driven reduction process at cathode along with power during MFC operation.

14.3.3.1 Microbial Electrolysis for H_2 Recovery

Hydrogen is one of the alternative renewable fuels having high impact in the present bioenergy research. H_2 is considered as green fuel due to the nonemission of green house gases at combustion and have high energy value (122 kJ/Kg) over other existing biofuels. H_2 can be produced through chemical, physical, and biological mechanisms (Venkata Mohan 2010, 2009; Venkata Mohan et al. 2011a). However, H_2 production through biological route, especially through acidogenic fermentation, has attracted recent science due to the lower economics of the process. Moreover, considering wastewater as substrate for the H_2 production is significant due to its dual benefits, viz., H_2 production and waste remediation (Venkata Mohan 2008, 2010). The technology was well established and understood with respect to the operational and regulating factors (Venkata Mohan et al. 2007b, Venkata Mohan et al. 2008g). However, there are some drawbacks for the fermentative H_2 production, viz., low substrate conversion efficiency, accumulation of carbon rich acid intermediates, sudden drop in system pH, etc. (Venkata Mohan et al. 2007b, 2008g; Venkata Mohan and Goud 2012). Some strategies

were developed to overcome these problems such as pretreatment of inoculums (Venkata Mohan et al. 2008g; Srikanth et al. 2010b), secondary integration of photo biological H_2 production (Srikanth et al. 2009; Rashmi Chandra and Venkata Mohan 2011), MFC (Mohanakrishna et al. 2010b), methanogenesis (Venkata Mohan et al. 2008h), polyhydroxy alkanoates production (Reddy and Venkata Mohan 2012), etc. MEC is representing as an alternative H_2 production process by combining the conventional acidogenic process with electrochemical hydrolysis where the activation energy required for the electrolysis is reduced by the microbial metabolism (Call and Logan 2008; Logan et al. 2008 Venkata Mohan and Lenin Babu 2011). Due to the combination of both the processes, the H_2 production from MEC is significantly higher compared to the conventional acidogenic process (Cheng and Logan 2007). Applying additional voltage to the in situ potential generated by the bacterial cell, allows bioenergy generation like hydrogen and methane or various products like hydrogen peroxide at cathode (Liu et al. 2005b; Venkata Mohan and Lenin Babu 2011). Previously, this bioelectrolytic process has been referred to as a biocatalyzed electrolysis cell (BEC) or a bioelectrochemically assisted microbial reactor (BEAMR) (Logan et al. 2005; Ditzig et al. 2007; Tartakovsky et al. 2009) and for the past few years it has been termed as electrohydrogenesis or microbial electrolysis. The performance of MEC has significantly improved within few years after its discovery (Liu et al. 2005b; Logan et al. 2005). MEC is based on the principle that reducing equivalents are generated at anode from the oxidation of organic matter by the electrogenic microbes and get reduced to hydrogen at cathode (Liu et al. 2005b). Recently, few research groups are working towards integrating the wastewater treatment with MEC to produce economically feasible biohydrogen generation. MEC can also utilize the acid-rich effluents generated from hydrogen bioreactor as substrates for H_2 production (Lalaurette et al. 2009). The protons transferred to cathode were reduced to H_2 in presence of electrons coming from the anode under small applied voltages which is required to cross the endothermic barrier to form H_2 gas. The standard redox potential for the reduction of protons to H_2 is -0.414 V which is generally not possible to generate in situ in the system and hence to favor the formation of H_2, an additional voltage is required. Low-energy consumption compared to water electrolysis, high product (H_2) recovery and substrate degradation than dark fermentation process makes MEC as an alternate and potential replacement for the escalating global energy demands. MEC systems are based on a number of components, each of which will play a vital role that can influence the performance efficiency viz., biocatalyst, electrode materials, membranes, applied potential, nature of substrate and its loading rate. Different types of bacterial cultures viz, pure strains, combination of two strains, mixed cultures etc. have been used for the operating MEC (Call et al. 2009; Selembo et al. 2009. Jeremiasse et al. 2010; Venkata Mohan and Lenin Babu 2011). However, H_2 production will vary based on the nature biocatalyst used and the operating conditions. Initially, MEC was operated in dual chamber and later shifted to single chamber where both the electrodes will be placed in the same electrolyte and differentiated based on the external power source connected to the electrodes. Ion selective membranes also

play crucial role in determining the efficiency of MEC but they tend to increase the internal resistance. Similar to the MFC, a multielectrode MEC is required to enhance the biogas generation due to the possible lower cell voltage irrespective of the volume (Rader and Logan 2010). MEC is capable of converting a wide variety of soluble organic matter in wastewater to bioenergy such as H_2 with simultaneous waste treatment (Call and Logan 2008) or CH_4 (Clauwaert and Verstraete 2009). Diverse range of substrates from simple domestic wastewater to complex industrial wastewater can serve as substrate in MEC with good product recovery as well as their treatment. Application of external voltage results in the dominant growth of electrochemically active microbes on anode which can effectively discharge higher number of electrons from the substrate oxidation (Wang et al. 2009; Srikanth et al. 2010a; Venkata Mohan and Lenin Babu 2011). Microbial identification on the anode has shown the dominance of electrogenic microbes on anode during MEC operation (Table 14.4).

14.3.3.2 Other Reduced End Products

Microbial electro synthesis/bioelectrosynthesis is the process of production of chemical compounds through a series of microbially or enzymatically catalyzed reactions in a specially designed electrochemical cell called bioelectrochemical system (BES). Microbially catalyzed synthesis of organic or inorganic compounds in an electrochemical cell where the electricity driven reduction or oxidation of diverse feed stocks. Interaction between biocatalysts and solid electron acceptors (electrodes) forms the basis for microbial electrosynthesis (Rabaey and Rozendal 2010). After H_2, the reduction of CO_2 to reduced end products is other rapidly growing technology (Rabaey and Rozendal 2010). CO_2 in combination with the H_2 and CO (syngas) can be reduced to different products, viz., acetate, ethanol, butanol, etc. However, the conversion is based on the applied potential and the efficiency is based on the gas composition (Rabaey and Rozendal 2010). The disadvantage in CO_2 reduction to organic compounds by considering it as electron acceptor is the requirement of higher number of electrons. For example, the reduction of butyrate to butanol requires only four electrons, while the reduction of CO_2 to butanol requires 24 electrons accounting for higher power requirement for this reaction to happen. However, CO_2 availability is ubiquitous and it is good electron acceptor. Anyhow, its removal from the atmosphere is necessary in the environmental concern to remove carbon footprints (Rabaey and Rozendal 2010). With the aid of small input of electric power, many value-added compounds were formed at the cathode and the major achievements are as follows., the yield of glutamic acid was increased during glucose fermentation (Hongo and Iwahara 1979), yield of butanol was increased during *Clostridium acetobutylicum* fermentation (Kim and Kim 1988), neutral red when electrically reduced serves as the sole electron donor for the growth of *Actinobacillus succinogenes* and for methane production by using mixed population (Park et al. 1999), Acetate formation was shifted to propionate by mediated current supply during glucose fermentation,

Table 14.4 Different electron donors used during MEC operation along with the respective biocatalysts and hydrogen yields

Electron donor	Biocatalyst	MEC configuration	Hydrogen yield	Reference
Acetate	Enriched anode respiring bacteria from MFC	Single chamber; membraneless	4.3 m^3H_2/m^3/day	Lee and Rittmann (2010)
	Anaerobic sludge	Double chamber; with PEM	1.12 mol H_2	Sun et al. (2008)
	Acetic acid fed MFC bacteria	Multi electrode MEC	0.53 m^3H_2/m^3/day	Rader and Logan (2010)
	Shewanella oneidensis	Single chamber; membrane less	0.69 m^3H_2/m^3/day	Hu et al. (2008)
	Geobacter sulfurreducens	Single chamber; membrane less	1.9 m^3H_2/m^3/day	Call et al. (2009)
	Geobacter metallireducens	Single chamber; membrane less	1.3–0.1 m^3	Call et al. (2009)
	Clostridium thermocellum 27,405	Single chamber; cylindrical MEC	Acetic acid-1,400 ml H_2/g COD	Lalaurette et al. (2009)
Succinic acid	*Clostridium thermocellum* 27,405	Single chamber; cylindrical MEC	1,100–130 ml H_2/g COD	Lalaurette et al. (2009)
Formic acid	*Clostridium thermocellum* 27,405	Single chamber; cylindrical MEC	810–260 ml-H_2/g COD	Lalaurette et al. (2009)
Glycerol	Heat treated anaerobic sludge	Single chamber; membrane less	5.39 mmol H_2	Escapa et al. (2009)
Microbial nutrient medium	Mixed culture	Two identical electrochemical cells operated in continuous mode	0.63 m^3H_2/m^3/day	Jeremiasse et al. (2010)
Swine wastewater	Exoelectrogenic bacteria	Single chamber; membrane less	0.9–1.0 m^3H_2/m^3/day	Wagner et al. (2009)
Bovine serum albumin	Exoelectrogenic bacteria	Single chamber; membrane less	21.0 ± 5.0 mmol H_2/g COD	Lu et al. (2010)
Winery wastewater	Exoelectrogenic bacteria	Single chamber; membrane less	0.17–0.01 m^3H_2/m^3/day	Cusick et al. (2010)
Domestic waste water	Exoelectrogenic bacteria	Single chamber; membrane less	0.28–0.04 m^3H_2/m^3/day	Cusick et al. (2010)
Municipal solid waste	Endogenous bacteria of municipal solid waste	Single chamber; membrane less	0.035 m^3H_2/m^3/day	Dictor et al. (2010)
Designed synthetic wastewater	Anaerobic mixed consortia	Single chamber; membrane less	8.42 mol H_2/Kg COD_R-day	Venkata Mohan and Lenin Babu (2011)
Artificial wastewater	Sewage sludge	Double chamber MEC	35 ml H_2	Cheng et al. (2010)

By applying mediated current to the microbial population enhances acetate consumption and ethanol production (Steinbusch et al. 2010), DET from cathode to Geobacter species is established where the biofilm attached involves in the reduction of the fumerate to succinate (Gregory et al. 2004).

14.3.4 Other Applications

Apart from the above-mentioned characteristics, MFC has other faced such as photosynthetic fuel cells, carbon capture cells, sediment based benthic fuel cells, marine applications, and desalination, plant-based (rhizodeposit based) power generation, biocathode and application as biosensor. However, all these applications are still in the state of infancy and needs deeper understanding for their practical implications. Photosynthetic fuel cells (PhFC) are similar to the MFC in operation but instead of chemotrophic mechanism, phototrophic bacteria will act as biocatalyst. PhFC utilizes sunlight as electron donor and the electron will pass through a cascade of proteins generating a proton motive force similar to the MFC and provides feasibility to harness bioelectricity (Chandra et al. 2012). However, algae application as anodic biocatalyst restricts electrogenic efficiency due to its oxygenic photosynthesis where oxygen will be evolved through biophotolysis mechanism unlike photobacteria (anoxygenic photosynthesis) which scavenges all the reducing equivalents generated in the system. Applications of PhFC can be extended to the utilization of acidogenic effluents rich in volatile fatty acids to convert them as either lipids or carbohydrates or other value-added products along with the power generation (Strik et al. 2008). Sediment-based MFC also has a wide applicability due to the possibility of converting their rich organic composition into power. Moreover, the sediment MFC is devoid of PEM which is the costliest material in MFC construction. The sediment-enriched organisms are also highly electrogenic and can discharge the electrons effectively into the exterior environment. Benthic MFC are sediment type which creates the feasibility of harnessing bioelectricity from aquatic ecosystem using natural habitants through employing sediment type fuel cell assemblies by placing electrode in the sediment as anode and connecting it in an electrical circuit to another electrode as cathode in the overlying water layer (Reimers et al. 2001; Bond et al. 2002; Holmes et al. 2004; Venkata Mohan et al. 2009c; Lenin Babu and Venkata Mohan 2012). The electrons flow from anode to cathode through an external circuit, while protons diffuse through the water between the electrodes and develop potential difference which is necessary for current generation. Microbes in the sediment surface layer are also potent reductants which use the metals and other toxic substances (Mn^{2+}, Fe^{2+} and S^{2-}) for electron transfer making them reduced (Tender et al. 2002; Bond and Lovley 2003; Reimers et al. 2005; Ryckelynck et al. 2005; Lowy et al. 2006). The sediment assembly can also be extended to marine applications where the anode is embedded in the anaerobic marine sediment and cathode is overlying in the aerobic sea water (Reimers et al. 2001; Bond et al. 2002; Tender et al. 2002;

Holmes et al. 2004). Application of marine fuel cell could be used to measure both physical and chemical parameters in low-power consuming instrumentation in the marine environment to operate where the operation will be for long term (Shantaram et al. 2005; Lowy et al. 2006). Power generation from the growing plants or from the conversion of organic source at their rhizodeposits to electricity by introducing electrodes was also gaining prominence recently (Cho et al. 2008; Kaku et al. 2008; Strik et al. 2008; Venkata Mohan et al. 2011b). Microorganisms or immobilized enzymes can also act as electron acceptors or initiate the electron acceptor reactions at cathode (Rhoads et al. 2005; He and Angenent 2006; Rosenbaum et al. 2011; Venkata Mohan and Srikanth 2011; Srikanth and Venkata Mohan 2012a, b; Behera et al. 2010). Application of biocathodes for the bioremediation as well as bioelectrosynthesis is gaining prominence in the recent time. Removal of pollutants viz., nitrates, sulfates, metals, etc., through reduction at cathode and conversion of electron acceptors such as CO_2, acetate, etc., to the reduced commercial end products requires the maintenance of certain potential (Rabaey and Rozendal 2010; Srikanth and Venkata Mohan 2012a). Usage of biocathodes will generate some potential which reduces the energy required to cross the activation barrier to form the product and hence biocathode garnered significant importance. However, there are drawbacks with the biocathode application such as electron loss and the alteration of product formation etc. (He and Angenent 2006; Rosenbaum et al. 2011; Srikanth and Venkata Mohan 2012a, b). MFC was also reported as biosensor for the identification of target substrate, BOD, COD, etc., through electroactive biofilms as sensing element and can reflect the real-time microbial activity of bioprocess (Gil et al. 2003; Chang et al. 2004; Spanjers and Van Lier 2006; Di Lorenzo et al. 2009). The multiple functions of MFC can be fully exploited and established in the near future which benefits the society with respect to growing energy demands as well as environmental pollution problems.

14.4 Summary and Future Scope

MFC/BES is one of the alternative ecofriendly devices which facilitate various forms of bioenergy/byproduct generation including waste remediation. The performance of MFC has been studied for different applications using a wide spectrum of substrates as electron donors and acceptors to generate power with their simultaneous remediation. However, there still remain various constraints to make this technology as a viable alternative to the existing technologies. Construction cost of MFC should be reduced as well as its efficiency needs significant increment. The theoretical possible potential is only −1.2 V (from single cell) and hence stacking of number of fuel cells in series with yield feasible power. Membrane-less systems such as sediment type fuel cells should be developed to avoid the membrane cost at large scale. More important is that the application of MFC for the removal of toxic pollutants and xenobiotics should be extensively

studied for their implementation in the existing effluent treatment plants to enhance their treatment efficiency. Detailed studies are required on the recovery of commercially viable reduced end products which increases the economic viability of this application. CO_2 can be considered as viable electron acceptor at cathode and the products such as ethanol and butanol can be recovered, normally used for blending the existing fuels, and will have immediate market value. However, many questions and issues need to be resolved in order to make this technology viable as well as feasible for clean energy production with simultaneous waste remediation.

Acknowledgments Author thanks Director, CSIR-IICT for his encouragement. Funding from CSIR in the form of XII five year network project on 'Sustainable Waste Management Technologies for Chemical and Allied Industries (SETCA)' is greatly acknowledged.

References

Aelterman P (2009) Microbial fuel cells for the treatment of waste streams with energy recovery. Ph.D. Thesis, Gent University, Belgium

Antonopoulou A, Stamatelatou K, Bebelis S, Lyberatos G (2009) Using cheese whey as a source of energy in a microbial fuel cell. In: Proceedings of 11th international conference on Environ Sci Technol

Aulenta F, Catervi A, Majone M, Panero S, Reale P, Rossetti S (2007) Electron transfer from a solid-state electrode assisted by methyl viologen sustains efficient microbial reductive dechlorination of TCE. Environ Sci Technol 41:2554–2559

Babu ML, Venkata Mohan S (2012) Influence of graphite flake addition to sediment on electrogenesis in a sediment-type fuel cell. Biores Technol 110:206–213

Behera M, Jana PS, Ghangrekar MM (2010) Performance evaluation of low cost microbial fuel cell fabricated using earthen pot with biotic and abiotic cathode. Bioreso Techno 101:1183–1189

Bennetto HP (1990) Electricity generation by microorganisms. Biotechnol Adv 1:163–168

Bennetto HP, Stirling JL, Tanaka K, Vega CA (1983) Anodic reactions in microbial fuel cells. Biotechnol Bioeng 25:559–568

Biffinger JC, Byrd JN, Dudley BL, Ringeisen BR (2008) Oxygen exposure promotes fuel diversity for Shewanella oneidensis microbial fuel cells. Biosens Bioelectron 23:820–826

Bond DR, Lovley DR (2003) Electricity generation by Geobacter sulfurreducens attached to electrodes. Appl Environ Microbiol 69:1548–1555

Bond DR, Holmes DE, Tender LM, Lovley DR (2002) Electrode-reducing microorganisms harvesting energy from marine sediments. Science 295:483–485

Butler CS, Clauwaert P, Green SJ, Verstraete W, Nerenberg R (2010) Bioelectrochemical perchlorate reduction in a microbial fuel cell. Environ Sci Technol 44:4685–4691

Call D, Logan BE (2008) Hydrogen production in a single chamber microbial electrolysis cell lacking a membrane. Environ Sci Technol 42:3401–3406

Call DF, Wagner RC, Logan BE (2009) Hydrogen production by geobacter species and a mixed consortium in a microbial electrolysis cell. Appl Environ Microbiol 75:7579–7587

Catal T, Xu S, Li K, Bermek H, Liu H (2008) Electricity generation from polyalcohols in single-chamber microbial fuel cells. Biosens Bioelectron 24:855–860

Catal T, Bermek H, Liu H (2009) Removal of selenite from wastewater using microbial fuel cells. Biotechnol Lett 31:1211–1216

Chae KJ, Choi MJ, Lee JW, Kim KY, Kim IS (2009) Effect of different substrates on the performance, bacterial diversity, and bacterial viability in microbial fuel cells. Biores Technol 100:3518–3525

Chandra R, Venkata Mohan S (2011) Microalgal community and their growth conditions influence biohydrogen production during integration of dark-fermentation and photo-fermentation processes. Int J Hydrogen Energy 36:12211–12219

Chandra R, Subhash GV, Venkata Mohan S (2012) Mixotrophic operation of photo-bioelectrocatalytic fuel cell under anoxygenic microenvironment enhances the light dependent bioelectrogenic activity. Biores Technol 109:46–56

Chandrasekhar K, Venkata Mohan S (2012) Bio-electrochemical remediation of real field petroleum sludge as an electron donor with simultaneous power generation facilitates biotransformation of PAH: effect of substrate concentration. Biores Technol 110:517–525

Chang IS, Jang JK, Gil GC, Kim M, Kim HJ, Cho BW, Kim BH (2004) Continuous determination of biochemical oxygen demand using microbial fuel cell type biosensor. Biosens Bioelectron 19:607–613

Chang S, Moon H, Bretschger O, Jang JK, Park HI, Nealson KH, Kim BH (2006) Electrochemically active bacteria (EAB) and mediator-less microbial fuel cells. J Microbiol Biotechnol 16:163–177

Chaudhuri SK, Lovley DR (2003) Electricity generation by direct oxidation of glucose in mediatorless microbial fuel cells. Nat Biotechnol 21:1229–1232

Cheng S, Logan BE (2007) Sustainable and efficient biohydrogen production via electro-hydrogenesis. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 104:18871–18873

Cheng S, Liu H, Logan BE (2006) Power densities using different cathode catalysts (Pt and CoTMPP) and polymer binders (Nafion and PTFE) in single chamber microbial fuel cells. Environ Sci Technol 40:364–369

Cheng S, Xing D, Logan BE (2010) Electricity generation of single-chamber microbial fuel cells at low temperature. Biosens Bioelectron 26:1913–1917

Cho YK, Donohue TJ, Tejedor I, Anderson MA, McMahon KD, Noguera DR (2008) Development of a solar-powered microbial fuel cell. J Appl Microbiol 104:640–650

Clauwaert P, Verstraete W (2009) Methanogenesis in membraneless microbial electrolysis cells. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 82:829–836

Clauwaert P, Rabaey K, Aelterman P, DeSchamphelaire L, Pham TH, Boeckx P, Boon N, Verstraete W (2007) Biological denitrification in microbial fuel cells. Environ Sci Technol 41:3354–3360

Cusick RD, Kiely PD, Logan BE (2010) A monetary comparison of energy recovered from microbial fuel cells and microbial electrolysis cells fed winery or domestic wastewaters. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:8855–8861

Cusick R, Call DF, Selembo PA, Regan JM, Logan BE (2011) Anode microbial communities produced by changing from microbial fuel cell to microbial electrolysis cell operation using two different wastewaters biores. Technol 102:388–394

Di Lorenzo M, Curtis TP, Head IM, Scott K (2009) A single-chamber microbial fuel cell as a biosensor for wastewaters. Water Res 43:3145–3154

Dictor MC, Joulian C, Touze S, Ignatiadis I (2010) Electro-stimulated biological production of hydrogen from municipal solid waste Dominique guyonnet. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:10682–10692

Ditzig J, Liu H, Logan BE (2007) Production of hydrogen from domestic wastewater using a bioelectrochemically assisted microbial reactor. Int J Hydrogen Energy 32:2296–2304

Dumas C, Mollica A, F'eron D, Basseguy R, Etcheverry L, Bergel A (2007) Marine microbial fuel cell: use of stainless steel electrodes as anode and cathode materials. Electrochim Acta 53:468–473

Dutta PK, Keller J, Yuan Z, Rozendal RA, Rabaey K (2009) Role of sulfur during acetate oxidation in biological anodes. Environ Sci Technol 43:3839–3845

Escapa A, Manuel MF, Moran A, Gomez X, Guiot SR, Tartakovsky B (2009) Hydrogen production from glycerol in a membraneless microbial electrolysis cell. Energy Fuels 23:4612–4618

Franks AE, Nevin KP (2010) Microbial fuel cells, a current review. Energies 3:899–919

Galvez A, Greenman J, Ieropoulos I (2009) Landfill leachate treatment with microbial fuel cells; scale-up through plurality. Biores Technol 100:5085–5091

Gil GC, Chang IS, Kim BH, Kim M, Jang JK, Park HS, Kim J (2003) Operational parameters affecting the performance of a mediator-less microbial fuel cell. Biosens Bioelectron 18:327–334

Goud RK, Venkata Mohan S (2011) Pre-fermentation of waste as a strategy to enhance the performance of single chambered microbial fuel cell (MFC). Int J Hydrogen Energy 36:13753–13762

Goud RK, Babu PS, Venkata Mohan S (2011) Canteen based composite food waste as potential anodic fuel for bioelectricity generation in single chambered microbial fuel cell (MFC): bio-electrochemical evaluation under increasing substrate loading condition. Int J Hydrogen Energy 36:6210–6218

Greenman J, Gálvez A, Giusti L, Ieropoulos I (2009) Electricity from landfill leachate using microbial fuel cells: comparison with a biological aerated filter. Enz Microbiol Technol 44:112–119

Gregory KB, Bond DR, Lovley DR (2004) Graphite electrodes as electron donors for anaerobic respiration. Environ Microbiol 6:596–604

He Z, Angenent LT (2006) Application of bacterial biocathodes in microbial fuel cells. Electroanal 18:2009–2015

Heilmann J, Logan BE (2006) Production of electricity from proteins using a microbial fuel cell. Water Environ Res 78:531–537

Hernandez ME, Newman DK (2001) Extracellular electron transfer. Cell Mol Life Sci 58:1562–1571

Holmes DE, Nicoll JS, Bond DR (2004) Potential role of a novel psychrotolerant member of the family geobacteraceae, geopsychrobacter electrodiphilus gene.nov., sp.nov., in electricity production by a marine sediment fuel cell. Appl Environ Microbiol 70:6023–6030

Hongo M, Iwahara M (1979) Determination of electroenergizing conditions for L-glutamic acid fermentation. Agric Biol Chem 43:2083–2086

Hu H, Fan Y, Liu H (2008) Hydrogen production using single-chamber membrane-free microbial electrolysis cells. Water Res 42:4172–4178

Huang L, Logan BE (2008) Electricity generation and treatment of paper recycling wastewater using a microbial fuel cell. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 80:349–355

Jadhav GS, Ghangrekar MM (2009) Performance of microbial fuel cell subjected to variation in pH, temperature, external load and substrate concentration. Biores Technol 100:717–723

Jeremiasse AW, Hubertus V, Cees H, Buisman JN (2010) Microbial electrolysis cell with a microbial biocathode. Bioelectrochemistry 78:39–43

Jiang H, Luo S, Shi X, Dai M, Guo R (2012) A novel microbial fuel cell and photobioreactor system for continuous domestic wastewater treatment and bioelectricity generation Biotechnol Lett

Kaku N, Yonezawa N, Kodama Y, Watanable K (2008) Plant/microbe cooperation for electricity generation in a rice paddy field. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 79:43–49

Kim BH, Gadd GM (2008) Bacterial physiology and metabolism. Cambridge university press

Kim TS, Kim BH (1988) Electron flow shift in clostridium acetobutylicum by electrochemically introduced reducing equivalent. Biotechnol Lett 10:123–128

Kim BH, Kim HJ, Hyun MS, Park DH (1999) Direct electrode reaction of Fe(III) reducing bacterium, Shewanella putrefaciens. J Microbiol Biotechnol 9:127–131

Kim N, Choi Y, Jung S, Kim S (2000) Effect of initial carbon sources on the performance of microbial fuel cells containing proteus vulgaris. Biotechnol Bioeng 70:109–114

Kim JR, Jung SH, Regan JM, Logan BE (2007) Electricity generation and microbial community analysis of alcohol powered microbial fuel cells. Biores Technol 98:2568–2577

Kiran Kumar A, Reddy MV, Chandrasekhar K, Srikanth S, Venkata Mohan S (2012) Endocrine disruptive estrogens role in electron transfer: bio-electrochemical remediation with microbial mediated electrogenesis. Biores Technol 104:547–556

Kjeldsen P, Barlaz MA, Rooker AP, Baun A, Ledin A, Christensen TH (2002) Present and long-term composition of MSW landfill leachate: a review. Crit Rev Environ Sci Technol 32:297–336

Lalaurette E, Thammannagowda S, Mohagheghi A, Maness PC, Logan BE (2009) Hydrogen production from cellulose in a two-stage process combining fermentation and electrohydrogenesis. Int J Hydrogen Energy 34:6201–6210

Larminie J, Dicks A (2000) In: Fuel cell systems explained, Wiley, Chichester, p 308

Lee HS, Rittmann BE (2010) Significance of biological hydrogen oxidation in a continuous single-chamber microbial electrolysis cell. Environ Sci Technol 44:948–954

Lee HS, Parameswaran P, Kato-Marcus A, Torres CI, Rittman BE (2008) Evaluation of energy-conversion efficiencies in microbial fuel cells (MFCs) utilizing fermentable and non-fermentable substrates. Water Res 42:1501–1510

Lee HS, Torres C, Rittmann BE (2009) Effects of substrate diffusion and anode potential on kinetic parameters for anode-respiring bacteria. Environ Sci Technol 43:7571–7577

Lefebvre O, Mamun A, Ng HY (2008) A microbial fuel cell equipped with a biocathode for organic removal and denitrification. Water Sci Technol 58:881–885

Liu H, Cheng SA, Logan BE (2005a) Production of electricity from acetate or butyrate using a single-chamber microbial fuel cell. Environ Sci Technol 39:658–662

Liu H, Grot S, Logan BE (2005b) Electrochemically assisted microbial production of hydrogen from acetate. Environ Sci Technol 39:4317–4320

Logan BE (2008) Microbial fuel cells, Wiley Inc, Hoboken

Logan BE (2010) Scaling up microbial fuel cells and other bioelectrochemical Systems. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 85:1665–1671

Logan BE, Regan JM (2006) Electricity-producing bacterial communities in microbial fuel cells. Trends Microbiol 14:512–518

Logan BE, Liu H, Grot S, Mallouk TA (2005) Bioelectrochemically assisted microbial reactor (BEAMR) that generates hydrogen gas. U.S. Utility Patent Application, vol 11(180), p 454

Logan BE, Hamelers B, Rozendal R, Schroder U, Keller J, Freguia S, Aelterman P, Verstraete W, Rabaey K (2006) Microbial fuel cells: methodology and technology. Environ Sci Technol 40:516–528

Logan BE, Rozendal RA, Hamelers HVM, Call D, Chen S, Sleutels THJA, Jeremiasse AW (2008) Microbial electrolysis cells (MECs) for high yield hydrogen gas production from organic matter. Environ Sci Technol 42:8630–8640

Lovley DR (2006) Microbial fuel cells: novel microbial physiologies and engineering approaches. Cur Opin Biotechnol 17:327–332

Lowy DA, Tender LM, Zeikus J, Park DH, Lovley DR (2006) Harvesting energy from the marine sediment–water interface II: kinetic activity of anode materials. Biosens Bioelectron 21:2058–2063

Lu L, Xing D, Xie T, Ren N, Logan BE (2010) Hydrogen production from proteins via electrohydrogenesis in microbial electrolysis cells. Biosens Bioelectron 25:2690–2695

Luo Y, Liu G, Zhang R, Jin S (2009) Phenol degradation in microbial fuel cells. Chem Eng J 147:259–264

Luo Y, Liu G, Zhang R, Zhang C (2010) Power generation from furfural using the microbial fuel cell. J Power Sources 195:190–194

Marsili E, Baron DB, Shikhare ID, Coursolle D, Gralnick JA, Bond DR (2008) Shewanella secretes flavins that mediate extracellular electron transfer. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 105:3968–3973

Min B, Logan BE (2004) Continuous electricity generation from domestic wastewater and organic substrates in a flat plate microbial fuel cell. Environ Sci Technol 38:5809–5814

Min B, Kim JR, Oh SE, Regan JM, Logan BE (2005) Electricity generation from swine wastewater using microbial fuel cells. Water Res 39:4961–4968

Mohanakrishna G, Venkata Mohan S, Sarma PN (2010a) Bio-electrochemical treatment of distillery wastewater in microbial fuel cell facilitating decolorization and desalination along with power generation. J Hazard Mater 177:487–494

Mohanakrishna G, Venkata Mohan S, Sarma PN (2010b) Utilizing acid-rich effluents of fermentative hydrogen production process as substrate for harnessing bioelectricity: an integrative approach. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:3440–3449

Mohanakrishna G, Krishna Mohan S, Venkata Mohan S (2012) Carbon based nanotubes and nanopowder as impregnated electrode structures for enhanced power generation: Evaluation with real field wastewater. Appl Energy 95:31–37

Mu Y, Rabaey K, Rene A, Zhiguo R, Yuan Z, Keller J (2009a) Decolorization of azo dyes in bioelectrochemical systems. Environ Sci Technol 43:5137–5143

Mu Y, Rozendal RA, Rabaey K, Yuan Z, Keller J (2009b) Nitrobenzene removal in bioelectrochemical systems environ. Sci Technol 43:8690–8695

Nelson DL, Cox MM (2008) Lehninger principles of biochemistry, 4th edn. WH Freeman, New York

Newman DK (2001) How bacteria respire minerals. Science 292:1312–1313

Newman DK, Kolter RA (2000) A role of excreted quinones in extracellular electron transport. Nature 405:94–97

Oh ST, Kim JR, Premier GC, Lee TH, Kim C, Sloan WT (2010) Sustainable wastewater treatment: how might microbial fuel cells contribute. Biotechnol Adv 28:871–881

Pandit S, Ghosh S, Ghangrekar MM, Das D (2012). Performance of an anion exchange membrane in association with cathodic parameters in a dual chamber microbial fuel cell. Int J of Hydrogen Energy 37:9383–9392

Pant D, Singh A, Satyawali Y, Gupta RK (2008) Effect of carbon and nitrogen source amendment on synthetic dyes decolourizing efficiency of white-rot fungus, phanerochaete chrysosporium. J Environ Biol 29:79–84

Park DH, Zeikus JG (1999) Utilization of electrically reduced neutral red by actinobacillus succinogenes: physiological function of neutral red in membranedriven fumarate reduction and energy conservation. J Bacteriol 181:2403–2410

Park DH, Zeikus JG (2000) Electricity generation in microbial fuel cells using neutral red as an electronophore. Appl Environ Microbiol 66:1292–1297

Park DH, Laivenieks M, Guettler MV, Jain MK, Zeikus JG (1999) Microbial utilization of electrically reduced neutral red as the sole electron donor for growth and metabolite production. Appl Environ Microbiol 65:2912–2917

Patil SA, Surakasi VP, Koul S, Ljmulwar S, Vivek A, Shouche YS, Kapadnis BP (2009) Electricity generation using chocolate industry wastewater and its treatment in activated sludge based microbial fuel cell and analysis of developed microbial community in the anode chamber. Biores Technol 100:5132–5139

Rabaey K, Rozendal RA (2010) Microbial electrosynthesis—revisiting the electrical route for microbial production. Nat Rev Microbiol 8:706–716

Rabaey K, Lissens G, Siciliano SD, Verstraete W (2003) A microbial fuel cell capable of converting glucose to electricity at high rate and efficiency. Biotechnol Lett 25:1531–1535

Rabaey K, Read ST, Clauwaert P, Freguia S, Bond PL, Blackall LL, Keller J (2004) Cathodic oxygen reduction catalyzed by bacteria in microbial fuel cell. ISME J 2:519–527

Rabaey K, Lissens G, Verstraete W (2005) Microbial fuel cells: performances and perspectives. In: Lens P, Westermann P, Haberbauer M, Moreno A (eds) Biofuels for fuel cells: renewable energy from biomass fermentation, pp 375–396

Rabaey K, VandeSompel K, Maignien L, Boon N, Aelterman P, Clauwaert P, DeSchamphelaire L, Pham HT, Vermeulen J, Verhaege M, Lens P, Verstraete W (2006) Microbial fuel cells for sulfide removal. Environ Sci Technol 40:5218–5224

Rader GK, Logan BE (2010) Multi-electrode continuous flow microbial electrolysis cell for biogas production from acetate. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:8848–8854

Raghavulu SV, Sarma PN, Venkata Mohan S (2011a) Comparative bio-electrochemical analysis of pseudomonas aeruginosa and escherichia coli with anaerobic consortia as anodic biocatalyst for biofuel cell application. J Appl Microbiol 110:666–674

Raghavulu SV, Goud RK, Sarma PN, Venkata Mohan S (2011b) Saccharomyces cerevisiae as anodic biocatalyst for power generation in biofuel cell: influence of redox condition and substrate load. Biores Technol 102:2751–2757

Raghavulu SV, Babu PS, Goud RK, Subhash GV, Srikanth S, Venkata Mohan S (2012) Bioaugmentation of electrochemically active strain to enhance the electron discharge of mixed culture: process evaluation through electro-kinetic analysis. RSC Advances 2:677–688

Raghuvulu SV, Venkata Mohan S, Goud RK, Sarma PN (2009a) Anodic pH microenvironment influence on microbial fuel cell (MFC) performance in concurrence with aerated and ferricyanide catholytes. Electrochem Commun 11:371–375

Raghuvulu SV, Venkata Mohan S, Reddy MV, Mohanakrishna G, Sarma PN (2009b) Behavior of single chambered mediatorless microbial fuel cell (MFC) at acidophilic, neutral and alkaline microenvironments during chemical wastewater treatment. Int J Hydrogen Energy 34:7547–7554

Reddy MV, Venkata Mohan S (2012) Influence of aerobic and anoxic microenvironments on polyhydroxyalkanoates (PHA) production from food waste and acidogenic effluents using aerobic consortia. Biores Technol 103:313–321

Reddy MV, Srikanth S, Venkata Mohan S, Sarma PN (2010) Phosphatase and dehydrogenase activities in anodic chamber of single chamber microbial fuel cell (MFC) at variable substrate loading conditions. Bioelectrochemistry 77:125–132

Reimers CE, Tender LM, Fertig S, Wang W (2001) Harvesting energy from the marine sediment-water interface. Environ Sci Technol 35:192–195

Reimers C, Girguis P, Westall J, Newman D, Stecher H, Howell K, Alleau Y (2005) Using electrochemical methods to study redox processes and harvest energy from marine sediments. In: Goldschmidt conference abstracts. Oxidation–reduction reactions in marine sediments

Ren Z, Ward TE, Regan JM (2007) Electricity production from cellulose in a microbial fuel cell using a defined binary culture. Environ Sci Technol 41:4781–4786

Rhoads A, Beyenal H, Lewandowski Z (2005) A microbial fuel cell using anaerobic respiration as an anodic reaction and biomineralized manganese as a cathodic reactant. Environ Sci Technol 39:4666–4671

Ringeisen BR, Ray R, Little B (2007) A miniature microbial fuel cell operating with an aerobic anode chamber. J Power Sources 165:591–597

Rodrigo MA, Canizares P, Lobato J, Paz R, Saez C, Linares JJ (2007) Production of electricity from the treatment of urban waste water using a microbial fuel cell. J Power Sources 169:198–204

Roller SD, Bennetto HP, Delaney GM, Mason JR, Stirling JL, Thurston CF (1984) Electron—transfer coupling in microbial fuel cells: 1 Comparision of redox-mediator reduction rates and respiratory rates of bacteria. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 34:3–12

Rosenbaum M, Aulenta F, Villano M, Angenent LT (2011) Cathodes as electron donors for microbial metabolism: which extracellular electron transfer mechanisms are involved? Biores Technol 102:324–333

Rozendal RA, Hamelers HVV, Buisman CJN (2006) Effects of membrane cation transport on pH and microbial fuel cell performance. Environ Sci Technol 40:5206–5211

Ryckelynck N, Stecher HA III, Reimers CE (2005) Understanding the anodic mechanism of a seafloor fuel cell: interactions between geochemistry and microbial activity. Biogeochemistry 76:113–139

Saravanan R, Arun A, Venkata Mohan S, Jegadeesan Kandavelu T, Veeramanikandan (2010) Membraneless dairy wastewater-sediment interface for bioelectricity generation employing sediment microbial fuel cell (SMFC). Afr J Microbiol Res 4:2640–2646

Schroder U (2007) Anodic electron transfer mechanisms in microbial fuel cells and their energy efficiency. Phys Chem 9:2619–2629

Selembo PA, Merrill MD, Logan BE (2009) The use of stainless steel and nickel alloys as low-cost cathodes in microbial electrolysis cells. J Power Sources 190:271–278

Shantaram A, Beyenal H, Veluchamy RRA, Lewandowski Z (2005) Wireless sensors powered by microbial fuel cell. Environ Sci Technol 39:5037–5042

Sharma Y, Baikun LB (2010) The variation of power generation with organic substrates in single-chamber microbial fuel cells (SCMFCs). Biores Technol 101:1844–1850

Spanjers H, van Lier JB (2006) Instrumentation in anaerobic treatment—research and practice. Water Sci Technol 53:63–76

Srikanth S, Venkata Mohan S (2012a) Change in electrogenic activity of the microbial fuel cell (MFC) with the function of biocathode microenvironment as terminal electron accepting condition: influence on overpotentials and bio-electro kinetics. Biores Technol.

Srikanth S, Venkateswar Reddy M, Venkata Mohan S (2012b). Microaerophilic microenvironment at biocathode enhances electrogenesis with simultaneous synthesis of polyhydroxyalkanoates (PHA) in bioelectrochemical system (BES). Biores Technol 125:291–299

Srikanth S, Venkata Mohan S, Devi MP, Babu ML, Sarma PN (2009) Effluents with soluble metabolites generated from acidogenic to methanogenic processes as substrate for additional hydrogen production through photo-biological process. Int J Hydrogen Energy 34:1771–1779

Srikanth S, Venkata Mohan S, Sarma PN (2010a) Positive anodic poised potential regulates microbial fuel cell performance with the function of open and closed circuitry. Biores Technol 101:5337–5344

Srikanth S, Venkata Mohan S, Lalit Babu V, Sarma PN (2010b) Metabolic shift and electron discharge pattern of anaerobic consortia as a function of pretreatment method applied during fermentative hydrogen production. Int J Hydrogen Energy 35:10693–10700

Srikanth S, Pavani T, Sarma PN, Venkata Mohan S (2011) Synergistic interaction of biocatalyst with bio-anode as a function of electrode materials. Int J Hydrogen Energy 36:2271–2280

Steinbusch KJJ, Hamelers HVM, Schaap JD, Kampman C, Buisman CJN (2010) Bioelectrochemical ethanol production through mediated acetate reduction by mixed cultures. Environ Sci Technol 44:513–517

Strik DPBTB, Terlouw H, Hubertus VM, Buisman HCJN (2008) Renewable sustainable biocatalyzed electricity production in a photosynthetic algal microbial fuel cell (PAMFC). Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 81:659–668

Sun M, Sheng GP, Zhang L, Xia CR, Mu ZX, Liu XW, Wang HL, Yu HQ, Qi R, Yu T, Yang M (2008) An MEC-MFC-coupled system for biohydrogen production from acetate. Environ Sci Technol 42:8095–8100

Sun M, Sheng GP, Mu ZX, Liu XW, Chen YZ, Wang HL, Yu HQ (2009) Manipulating the hydrogen production from acetate in a microbial electrolysis cell-microbial fuel cell-coupled system. J Power Sources 191:338–343

Tartakovsky B, Manuel MF, Wang H, Guiot SR (2009) High rate membrane-less microbial electrolysis cell for continuous hydrogen production. Int J Hydrogen Energy 34:672–677

Tender LM, Reimers CE, Stecher HA, Holmes DE, Bond DR, Lowy DA, Pilobello K, Fertig SJ, Lovley DR (2002) Harnessing microbially generated power on the seafloor. Nat Biotechnol 20:821–825

Thrash JC, Van Trump JI, Weber KA, Miller E, Achenbach LA, Coates JD (2007) Electrochemical stimulation of microbial perchlorate reduction. Environ Sci Technol 41:1740–1746

Velvizhi G, Venkata Mohan S (2011) Biocatalyst behavior under self-induced electrogenic microenvironment in comparison with anaerobic treatment: evaluation with pharmaceutical wastewater for multi-pollutant removal. Biores Technol 102:10784–10793

Velvizhi G, Venkata Mohan S (2012) Electrogenic activity and electron losses under increasing organic load of recalcitrant pharmaceutical wastewater. Int J Hydrogen Energy 37:5969–5978

Velvizhi G, Babu PS, Mohanakrishna G, Srikanth S, Venkata Mohan S (2012) Evaluation of voltage sag-regain phases to understand the stability of bioelectrochemical system: electrokinetic analysis. RSC Advances 2:1379–1386

Venkata Mohan S (2008) Fermentative hydrogen production with simultaneous wastewater treatment: influence of pretreatment and system operating conditions. J Sci Ind Res 67:950–961

Venkata Mohan S (2009) Harnessing of biohydrogen from wastewater treatment using mixed fermentative consortia: process evaluation towards optimization. Int J Hydrogen Energy 34:7460–7474

Venkata Mohan S (2010) Waste to renewable energy: a sustainable and green approach towards production of biohydrogen by acidogenic fermentation. In: Singh Om V, Harvey Steven P (eds) Sustainable biotechnology: sources of renewable energy, Springer, Netherlands (ISBN: 978-90-481-3294-2), p 129–164

Venkata Mohan S, Babu ML (2011) Dehydrogenase activity in association with poised potential during biohydrogen production in single chamber microbial electrolysis cell. Biores Technol 102:8457–8465

Venkata Mohan S, Chandrasekhar K (2011a) Solid phase microbial fuel cell (SMFC) for harnessing bioelectricity from composite food waste fermentation: Influence of electrode assembly and buffering capacity. Biores Technol 102:7077–7085

Venkata Mohan S, Chandrasekhar K (2011b) Self-induced bio-potential and graphite electron accepting conditions enhances petroleum sludge degradation in bio-electrochemical system with simultaneous power generation. Biores Technol 102:9532–9541

Venkata Mohan S, Goud RK (2012) Pretreatment of biocatalyst as viable option for sustained production of biohydrogen from wastewater treatment, in biogas production. In: Mudhoo A (ed) Pretreatment methods in anaerobic digestion, Wiley, Inc., Hoboken 11:291–311

Venkata Mohan S, Srikanth S (2011) Enhanced wastewater treatment efficiency through microbial catalyzed oxidation and reduction: Synergistic effect of biocathode microenvironment. Biores Technol 102:10210–10220

Venkata Mohan S, Veer Raghuvulu S, Srikanth S, Sarma PN (2007a) Bioelectricity production by meditorless microbial fuel cell (MFC) under acidophilic condition using wastewater as substrate: influence of substrate loading rate. Curr Sci 92:1720–1726

Venkata Mohan S, Bhaskar YV, Sarma PN (2007b) Biohydrogen production from chemical wastewater treatment by selectively enriched anaerobic mixed consortia in biofilm configured reactor operated in periodic discontinuous batch mode. Water Res 41:2652–2664

Venkata Mohan S, Veer Raghuvulu S, Sarma PN (2008a) Biochemical evaluation of bioelectricity production process from anaerobic wastewater treatment in a single chambered microbial fuel cell (MFC) employing glass wool membrane. Biosens Bioelectron 23:1326–1332

Venkata Mohan S, Mohanakrishna G, Srikanth S, Sarma PN (2008b) Harnessing of bioelectricity in microbial fuel cell (MFC) employing aerated cathode through anaerobic treatment of chemical wastewater using selectively enriched hydrogen producing mixed consortia. Fuel 87:2667–2676

Venkata Mohan S, Saravanan R, Veer Raghuvulu S, Mohankrishna G, Sarma PN (2008c) Bioelectricity production from wastewater treatment in dual chambered microbial fuel cell (MFC) using selectively enriched mixed microflora: effect of catholyte. Biores Technol 99:596–603

Venkata Mohan S, Veer Raghuvulu S, Sarma PN (2008d) Influence of anodic biofilm growth on bioelectricity production in single chambered mediatorless microbial fuel cell using mixed anaerobic consortia. Biosens Bioelectron 24:41–47

Venkata Mohan S, Mohanakrishna G, Reddy BP, Sarvanan R, Sarma PN (2008e) Bioelectricity generation from chemical wastewater treatment in mediatorless (anode) microbial fuel cell (MFC) using selectively enriched hydrogen producing mixed culture under acidophilic microenvironment. Biochem Eng J 39:121–130

Venkata Mohan S, Mohanakrishna G, Sarma PN (2008f) Effect of anodic metabolic function on bioelectricity generation and substrate degradation in single chambered microbial fuel cell. Environ Sci Technol 42:8088–8094

Venkata Mohan S, Lalit Babu V, Sarma PN (2008g) Effect of various pretreatment methods on anaerobic mixed microflora to enhance biohydrogen production utilizing dairy wastewater as substrate. Biores Technol 99:59–67

Venkata Mohan S, Mohankrishna G, Sarma PN (2008h) Integration of acidogenic and methanogenic processes for simultaneous production of biohydrogen and methane from wastewater treatment. Int J Hydrogen Energy 33:2156–2166

Venkata Mohan S, Veer Raghuvulu S, Dinakar P, Sarma PN (2009a) Integrated function of microbial fuel cell (MFC) as bio-electrochemical treatment system associated with bioelectricity generation under higher substrate load. Biosen Bioelect 24:2021–2027

Venkata Mohan S, Srikanth S, Sarma PN (2009b) Non-catalyzed microbial fuel cell (MFC) with open air cathode for bioelectricity generation during acidogenic wastewater treatment. Bioelectrochemistry 75:130–135

Venkata Mohan S, Srikanth S, Veer Raghuvulu S, Mohanakrishna G, Kiran Kumar A, Sarma PN (2009c) Evaluation of the potential of various aquatic eco-systems in harnessing bioelectricity through benthic fuel cell: effect of electrode assembly and water characteristics. Biores Technol 100:2240–2246

Venkata Mohan S, Mohanakrishna G, Velvizhi G, Lalit Babu V, Sarma PN (2010a) Bio-catalyzed electrochemical treatment of real field dairy wastewater with simultaneous power generation. Biochem Eng J 51:32–39

Venkata Mohan S, Mohanakrishna G, Sarma PN (2010b) Composite vegetable waste as renewable resource for bioelectricity generation through non-catalyzed open-air cathode microbial fuel cell. Biores Technol 101:970–976

Venkata Mohan S, Mohanakrishna G, Srikanth S (2011a) Biohydrogen Production from Industrial Effluents (Chapter 22). In: Pandey A, Larroche C, Ricke SC, Dussap C-G, Gnansounou E (eds) Biofuels: alternative feedstocks and conversion processes, Academic Press, Elsevier, Burlington, pp 499–524 (ISBN: 978-0-12-385099-7)

Venkata Mohan S, Mohanakrishna G, Chiranjeevi P (2011b) Sustainable power generation from floating macrophytes based ecological microenvironment through embedded fuel cells along with simultaneous wastewater treatment. Biores Technol 102:7036–7042

Virdis B, Rabaey K, Yuan Z, Keller J (2008) Microbial fuel cells for simultaneous carbon and nitrogen removal. Water Res 42:3013–3024

Wagner RC, Regan JM, Oh SE, Zuo Y, Logan BE (2009) Hydrogen production from swine wastewater. Water Res 43:1480–1488

Wang X, Cheng S, Feng Y, Merrill MD, Saito T, Logan BE (2009) The use of carbon mesh anodes and the effect of different pretreatment methods on power production in microbial fuel cells. Environ Sci Technol 43:6870–6874

Yazdi RH, Christy AD, Dehority BA, Morrison M, Yu Z, Tuovinen OH (2007) Electricity generation from cellulose by rumen microorganisms in microbial fuel cells. Biotechnol Bioeng 97:1398–1407

You S, Zhao Q, Zhang J, Jiang J, Zhao S (2006) A microbial fuel cell using permanganate as the cathodic electron acceptor. J Power Sources 162:1409–1415

Zhang JN, Zhao QL, You SJ, Jiang JQ, Ren NQ (2008) Continuous electricity production from leachate in a novel upflow air-cathode membrane-free microbial fuel cell. Water Sci Technol 57:1017–1021

Zhang Y, Min B, Huang L, Angelidaki I (2009a) Generation of electricity and analysis of microbial communities in wheat straw biomass-powered microbial fuel cells. Appl Environ Microbiol 75:3389–3395

Zhang C, Li M, Liu G, Luo H, Zhang R (2009b) Pyridine degradation in the microbial fuel cell. J Hazard Mater 172:465–471

Zhu X, Ni J (2009) Simultaneous processes of electricity generation and p-nitrophenol degradation in a microbial fuel cell. Electrochem comm 11:274–277

Zuo Y, Xing D, Regan JM, Logan BE (2008) Isolation of the exoelectrogenic bacterium ochrobactrum anthropi YZ-1 by using a U-tube microbial fuel cell. Appl Environ Microbiol 74:3130–3137

Chapter 15
Biomethanation Potential of Biological and Other Wastes

J. C. Costa, D. Z. Sousa, M. A. Pereira, A. J. M. Stams and M. M. Alves

Abstract Anaerobic technology has been traditionally applied for the treatment of carbon rich wastewater and organic residues. Anaerobic processes can be fully integrated in the biobased economy concept for resource recovery. After a brief introduction about applications of anaerobic processes to industrial wastewater treatment, agriculture feedstock and organic fraction of municipal solid waste, the position of anaerobic processes in biorefinery concepts is presented. Integration of anaerobic digestion with these processes can help in the maximisation of the economic value of the biomass used, while reducing the waste streams produced and mitigating greenhouse gases emissions. Besides the integration of biogas in the existing full-scale bioethanol and biodiesel production processes, the potential applications of biogas in the second generation lignocellulosic, algae and syngas-based biorefinery platforms are discussed.

J. C. Costa · D. Z. Sousa · M. A. Pereira · A. J. M. Stams · M. M. Alves (✉)
IBB—Institute for Biotechnology and Bioengineering, Centre of Biological Engineering, Universidade do Minho, 4710-057 Braga, Portugal
e-mail: madalena.alves@deb.uminho.pt

J. C. Costa
e-mail: carloscosta@deb.uminho.pt

D. Z. Sousa
e-mail: dianasousa@deb.uminho.pt

M. A. Pereira
e-mail: alcina@deb.uminho.pt

A. J. M. Stams
e-mail: fons.stams@wur.nl

A. J. M. Stams
Laboratory of Microbiology, Wageningen University, Dreijenplein 10 6703 HB Wageningen, The Netherlands

V. K. Gupta and M. G. Tuohy (eds.), *Biofuel Technologies*,
DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-34519-7_15,

15.1 Introduction

We are presently living in the transition from a linear economy (cradle to grave) founded on abundant fossil resources to a circular biobased economy concept (cradle to cradle), where waste and by-products should re-enter the cycle of production and the energy carried should derive from renewable sources. In the circular economy's thinking, biorefinery concepts based on a variety of bioresources, by-products and (bio) wastes are emerging. There is a huge opportunity for anaerobic digestion (AD) as multi-functional process that integrates environmental protection, renewable energy production, nutrients and water recycling (Fig. 15.1). Anaerobic conversion processes should be the core of any treatment process of biodegradable waste or carbon rich wastewater, though complemented with appropriate post-treatment processes either biological or physicochemical (Van Lier and Lettinga 1999). The wide range of feedstocks suitable for biogas production includes animal waste, municipal sludge, industrial wastewater and organic fractions of municipal solid waste (OFMSW), as well as aquatic and terrestrial energy crops whenever available for energy production. One of the main advantages of AD is the possibility of recovering renewable energy in the form of biogas, which is a versatile energy carrier that can be used for electricity production, heating purposes, vehicle and jet fuel and replacement of natural gas by injection of upgraded biogas in the natural gas grid. In addition, biogas may be considered as starting compound for biotechnological production of chemicals. On the other hand, organic waste stabilisation and nutrient redistribution are, besides energy production, objectives of any AD plant (Fig. 15.1).

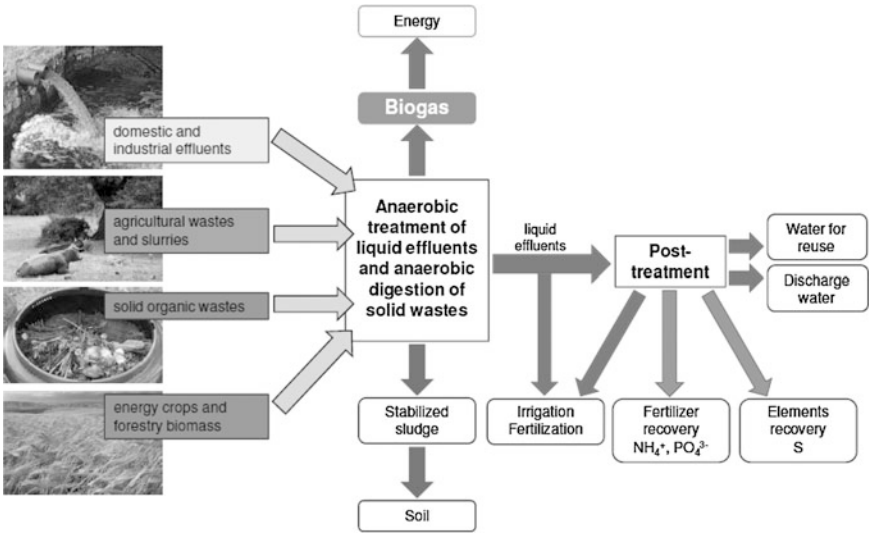


Fig. 15.1 The role of anaerobic processes for sustainable bio-resources recovery (adapted from van Lier and Lettinga 1999)

15.2 Current Applications of Anaerobic Processes

15.2.1 The Biochemical Process of Methane Production

Anaerobic digestion of complex organic substrates proceeds through a series of parallel and sequential steps, with several groups of microorganisms involved. Figure 15.2 depicts the main pathways of the anaerobic degradation of complex substrates under methanogenic conditions. AD starts with the hydrolysis of complex substrates to simpler compounds. Complex substrates, such as carbohydrates, proteins and lipids, are normally present in the form of suspended compounds or colloidal matter and, before transport through the cellular membrane, need to be transformed into smaller molecules. Such process takes place during the hydrolysis step, in which these complex compounds are hydrolysed into their basic building units. This step is aided by extracellular enzymes (hydrolases), which are excreted by fermentative bacteria. Carbohydrates are converted into soluble sugars (saccharides) by cellulases, amylases, xylanases and other hydrolytic enzymes; proteins are degraded via peptides and amino acids by proteases and peptidases; and, lipids are transformed into long chain fatty acids (LCFA) and glycerol by lipases. In the case of complex particulate substrates, hydrolysis of biopolymers can be the rate limiting step in the whole degradation process (Masse et al. 2002; Van Lier et al. 2001; Vavilin et al. 1996). An efficient hydrolysis step is important to make complex substrates accessible for the anaerobic microbial communities, optimising the methanogenic potential of the (waste) water to be treated.

Products formed during the hydrolysis step are further converted inside the bacterial cells in a process known as acidogenesis (or fermentation). Acidogenesis

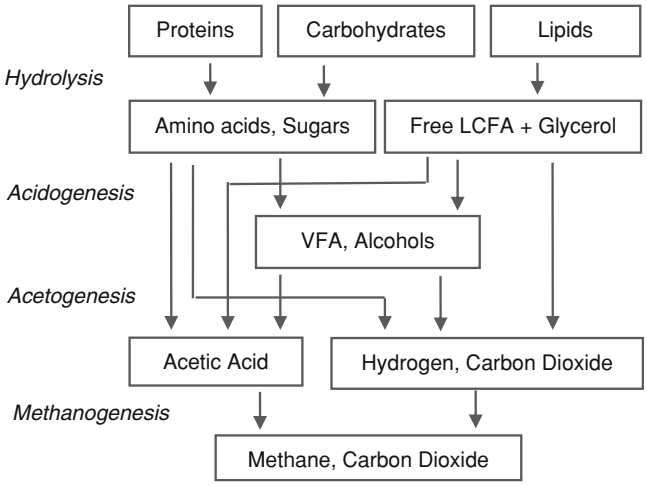


Fig. 15.2 Simplified representation of the anaerobic digestion process (Pereira 2003 adapted from Gujer and Zehnder 1983)

is the first energy yielding step during anaerobic digestion and consists in the degradation of soluble substrates, without the presence of an external electron acceptor. Main substrates for acidogenesis include soluble saccharides, amino acids and glycerol and results in the formation of acetate, propionate, butyrate, carbon dioxide, hydrogen and other organic products, such as lactate and alcohols (Harper and Pohland 1986). Soluble sugars are largely converted into acetate and hydrogen, but formation of propionate, butyrate, lactate and ethanol occurs as well. LCFA degradation requires an external electron acceptor for oxidation, and therefore is covered in the acetogenesis section. Nevertheless, hydrogenation of unsaturated fatty-acids might take place during the acidogenesis step. Normally, the bacteria responsible for the hydrolysis also ferments the resulting monomers (Schink 1997). In general, these bacteria have a short doubling time, and therefore acidogenesis is not regarded as a limiting step in the process of anaerobic digestion (Gujer and Zehnder 1983; Mosey 1983).

Fermentation products (short chain fatty acids and alcohols) and LCFA (resulting from lipid hydrolysis) can be further oxidised to acetate by obligate hydrogen producing acetogens in the acetogenic step. Fatty acids oxidation is coupled to the reduction of hydrogen ions or bicarbonate, functioning as external electron acceptors, to form hydrogen and formate, respectively. Under standard conditions (Temperature of 0 °C and Pressure of 1 atm), these reactions are thermodynamically unfavourable, and the complete conversion of the substrates only proceeds when hydrogen and formate concentration is kept low (Schink and Stams 2006; Stams and Plugge 2009). This is achieved by syntrophic association with hydrogen and formate-utilising microorganisms.

In the presence of inorganic electron acceptors other than protons and CO_2, competition for different substrates may occur. Such is the case of wastewaters containing sulfate, in which sulfate-reducing bacteria can compete with syntrophic acetogenic bacteria for electrons resulting from fatty-acids, and with methanogens for electrons resulting from hydrogen and acetate (Stams et al. 2005).

Methanogenesis is the production of methane and, in various environments, is the final step in the degradation of organic matter. This highly specialised process is carried out by methanogenic archaea, which metabolise the end products of the previous reactions (mainly hydrogen, carbon dioxide, formate, methanol, methylamines, and acetate) to form methane. In anaerobic bioreactors, this process mainly occurs through two pathways: (1) carbon dioxide reduction (hydrogenotrophic methanogenesis (Boone et al. 1989; Schink 1997)), and (2) acetate dissimilation (acetoclastic methanogenesis (Jetten et al. 1992)) (Fig. 15.2). Several authors have reported methanogenesis as being the rate-limiting conversion in the whole anaerobic digestion process in bioreactors (Fang et al. 1995; Huang et al. 2003).

15.2.2 Anaerobic Digestion of Slurries and Biowaste

Anaerobic digestion is already an effective and mature technology to produce renewable energy carriers from organic waste, to reduce odour and pathogen levels in manure and produce a biofertilizer, to reduce greenhouse gas emission from a farmstead and to treat food waste/by-products (Cantrell et al. 2008; Mata-Alvarez et al. 2000; Weiland 2010). According to data from the EurObserv'ER (2010) between 2000 and 2009, the biogas produced in Europe increased about five times. However, there are large differences of biogas technology implementation in Europe. For instance, in Germany, 51.5 ton oil equivalent (TOE) were produced per 1,000 inhabitants as biogas primary energy in 2009, whereas in Portugal only 2.2 TOE/1,000 inhabitants were produced in the same period. The average of the European Union countries was 16.7 TOE/1,000 inhabitants.

In theory, all types of biowaste can be used for biogas production. The composition of the biogas and the biogas productivity depends on the feedstock, on the reactor type and organic loading rate applied, and on the microbial consortium activity. Table 15.1 presents some data on the biogas yields for some types of waste and raw materials. There is a long tradition of anaerobic sewage sludge and animal manure treatment. Presently, agricultural applications are mainly based in co-digestion of manure with available co-substrates such as harvest residues, top and leaves of sugar beets, organic wastes from agriculture related activities, food waste, collected municipal biowaste from households and energy crops (Weiland 2010). The advantages of co-digestion are (Cecchi et al. 1996; Mata-alvarez et al. 2000; Murto et al. 2004; Neves 2009):

- Dilution of toxic substances coming from any of the substrates involved, including, possible detoxification of some xenobiotics, based on co-metabolism process;
- Improved nutrient balance reducing micro and macronutrient deficiency;
- Improving process stability;
- The use of a co-substrate can also help to establish the required moisture contents of the digester feed. Better handling and digestibility can be achieved by mixing solid waste with diluted waste;
- In addition, economic advantages can be significant, derived from the fact of sharing equipment.

Table 15.1 Average biogas yields of several substrates (adapted from Weiland 2010)

	Substrate	m^3 biogas t^{-1} feedstock
Agricultural wastes	Cow manure	25
	Pig manure	30
Agricultural raw materials	Grass	100
	Fodder beets	110
	Wheat corn	630
Non-agricultural wastes	Biowaste	120
	Food residues	240
	Used grease	800

15.2.3 Anaerobic Wastewater Treatment

The application of anaerobic technology for industrial wastewater treatment is also established (Rajeshwari et al. 2000; Angenent et al. 2004). High-rate anaerobic wastewater treatment technology has become a standard for a certain range of industrial wastewaters. Thousands of full-scale installations are in operation worldwide, treating mainly wastewater containing readily degradable organic pollutants such as Volatile Fatty Acids (VFA) and carbohydrates. Reliable technologies, such as the upflow anaerobic sludge blanket (UASB), the expanded granular sludge bed (EGSB) and the internal circulation (IC) reactors, promoted the confidence in AD technology. Recently, the inverted anaerobic sludge blanket (IASB) reactor (Alves et al. 2007) was developed for the treatment of effluents with high content of lipids and the proof of concept demonstrated an efficient treatment capacity for an extremely concentrated slaughterhouse effluent. The first full-scale reference is presently under construction.

15.3 The Role of Biogas in Biorefinery Platforms

15.3.1 Introduction

According to the International Energy Agency (IEA) Bioenergy Task 42, "biorefinery is the sustainable processing of biomass into a spectrum of marketable products (food, feed, materials, chemicals) and energy (fuels, power, heat)".

The integration of AD technology within a biobased economy is a logical and intuitive step now. Biorefineries for the production of chemicals and biofuels from vegetable biomass have been in focus in the recent years (Langeveld et al. 2010). Special attention has been given to the development and optimisation of processes for the production of ethanol and biodiesel, which are presently done at full scale in several countries. Brazil and the United States have well established and growing economy based on ethanol production. Second generation ethanol from lignocellulosic biomass is emerging and will be a mature technology in the near future. Biodiesel production from vegetable oils is representative in countries such as Germany and France. Integration of AD with these processes can help in the maximisation of the economic value of the biomass used, while reducing the waste streams produced and mitigating greenhouse gases emissions. Besides, other products such as compost can be produced and further recycled for agriculture purposes or for vegetable biomass growth.

15.3.2 Biogas Opportunities in Bioethanol Production

First generation bioethanol, derived from starch crops like corn and wheat, or sugar crops like sugar cane and sugar beet, has been rapidly adopted as a primary

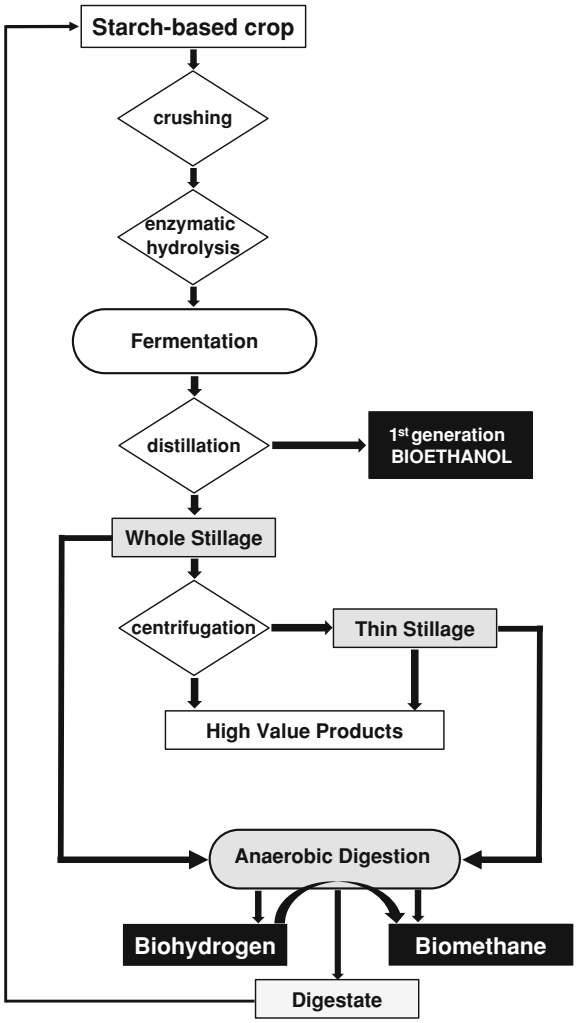


Fig. 15.3 Biorefinery concept for the production of bioethanol from sugar-based crops, including an anaerobic digestion step for the energetic valorisation of the by-products

transportation fuel in the United States and Brazil. Total world production grew from 17.1 billion litres in 2000 to 86.9 billion litres in 2010, with the United States as the top producer with 50 billion litres, mainly corn-derived ethanol, followed by Brazil with 26 billion litres using sugarcane as primary feedstock. The European Union produced 4.4 billion litres of ethanol in 2010, accounting for 5.1 % of world's production (Lichts 2010).

Typical steps on current sugar-based ethanol technology include milling of the sugar cane (or sugar beet crops) to extract the juice, fermentation of sugar to ethanol by yeast and distillation of ethanol (Fig. 15.3). For starch (cereal) based crops, similar procedures are performed, with an additional hydrolysis step to break down the polymers into simple C6 sugars (Fig. 15.4). Both processes produce large amounts of by-products, namely:

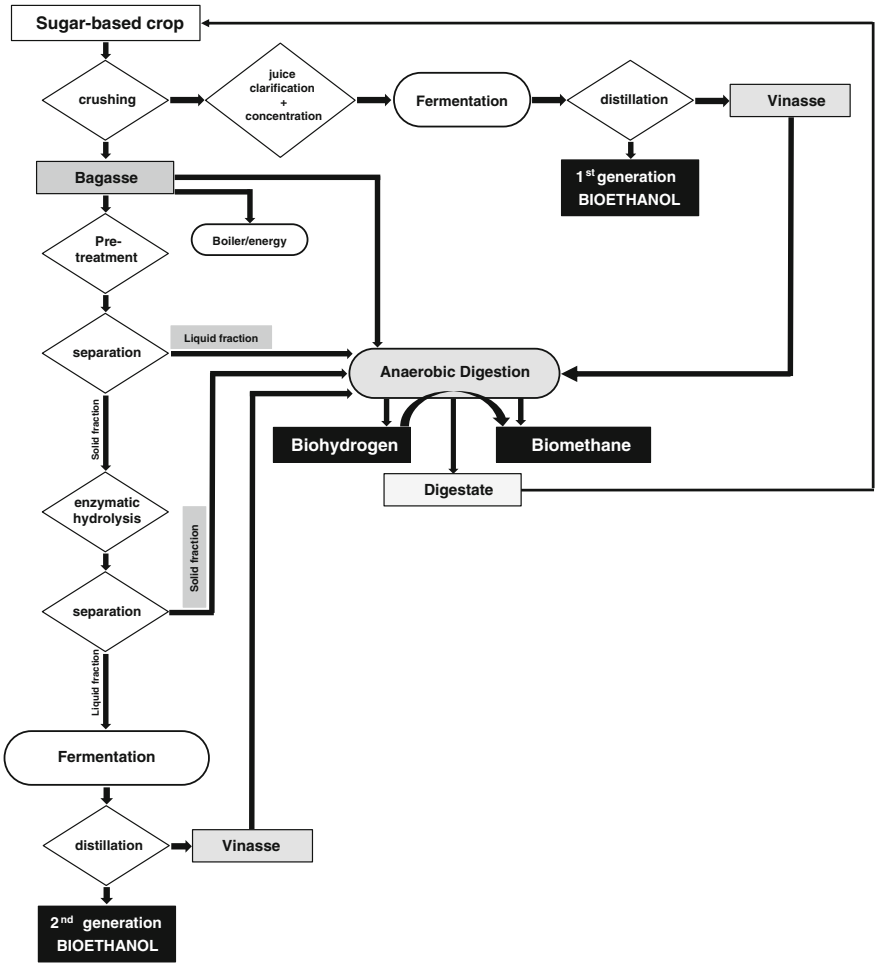


Fig. 15.4 Biorefinery concept for the production of bioethanol from starch-based crops, including an anaerobic digestion step for the energetic valorisation of the by-products

- Bagasse: the biomass left over after sugarcane has been crushed and the juice extracted. Approximately 240 kg are generated per ton of sugarcane (Dias et al. 2009);
- Vinasse: the effluent obtained after ethanol is distilled from the fermented sugar mixture,
- Whole stillage: the effluent obtained after ethanol is distilled from the fermented cereal mixture. Up to 20 litres per litre of ethanol produced depending on the feedstock used (van Haandel and Catunda 1994).

In a traditional corn-to-ethanol process, the whole stillage is centrifuged to produce wet cake (solid fraction) and thin stillage (liquid fraction). A significant

fraction (around 50 %) of the thin stillage is recycled as backset to the second stage of the liquefaction process and the remaining part is evapourated to syrup. The syrup is then mixed with the centrifuged solids to produce distiller's dried grains with soluble (DDGS) that are sold as livestock feed (Eskicioglu et al. 2011). DDGS processing (centrifuging, evaporation and drying) is energy demanding. It can account for approximately 35 % of electricity and 30 % of natural gas consumption of a bioethanol plant (Meredith 2003). Currently, it is still profitable to process whole stillage and sell as animal feed, but as fuel demand increases, the risks of DDGS market saturation increase as well.

Anaerobic digestion has long been considered an alternative approach to handle ethanol by-products, reduce the environmental impact of the generated wastewaters and improve the net energy balance ratio of the process (Figs. 15.3 and 15.4) (Plugge et al. 2009). Research has primarily been focused on thin stillage because it is the largest wastewater contributor. In the 1980s, mesophilic studies on corn thin stillage reported promising performances with methane yields of 250–370 L CH_4 kg^{-1} chemical oxygen demand (COD) removed that could replace about 60 % of the daily energy requirement of the bioethanol plant (Stover et al. 1984). In recent studies, AD of corn thin stillage was evaluated at thermophilic conditions. Whole stillage exits the distillation column at above 55 °C, and thus heating demand to achieve thermophilic digestion is not so high and can provide improved efficiency and economics. Schaefer and Sung (2008) reported methane yields ranging between 600 and 700 L CH_4 kg^{-1} volatile solids (VS) removed during AD of thin corn stillage in thermophilic continuous stirred-tank reactor (CSTR) operated at 30, 20 and 15 days hydraulic retention time (HRT). It was estimated that natural gas consumption at corn derived ethanol plants could be reduced by 43–59 % with this level of methane production. In another study, thin corn stillage was treated in thermophilic sequencing batch reactors (SBR) to produce 254 L CH_4 kg^{-1} TCOD fed with a 10 day HRT (Agler et al. 2008). These authors also estimated that the methane generated would reduce natural gas consumption in conventional dry grind ethanol plants by 51 %, improving the net energy balance ratio of ethanol from 1.26 (conventional) to 1.70. Lee and co-workers (2011) demonstrate that mesophilic anaerobic digestion might provide a more attractive option for enhancing the net energy gain in the existing corn-to-ethanol industry. Thin corn stillage treatment in a mesophilic CSTR at 25 day HRT rendered a methane yield of 271 L CH_4 kg^{-1} COD fed, which if incorporated in a corn-to-ethanol plant could increase the net energy balance ratio to 1.80.

Mesophilic or thermophilic digestion of whole corn stillage has only recently been studied. Biochemical methane potential (BMP) batch assays indicated significant methane potential for whole corn stillage at concentrations ranging from 6.35 to 50.8 g TCOD L^{-1}. Specific methane yields ranging between 401 and 458 L CH_4 kg^{-1} VS added and between 429 and 693 L CH_4 kg^{-1} VS added were obtained at mesophilic and thermophilic condition, respectively (Eskicioglu et al. 2011). However, continuous flow experiments with the full-strength whole corn stillage (254 g TCOD L^{-1}) at organic loading rates of 4.25, 6.30 and

9.05 g TCOD L^{-1} d^{-1} indicated unstable performance under thermophilic conditions and at mesophilic temperatures. Only at 60 day HRT was stable.

In sugarcane-based ethanol plants (Fig. 15.3), the bagasse generated is presently used directly as a solid biofuel to co-generate heat and electricity which is used in the plant and also sold to the electricity grid (Amorim et al. 2011). The vinasse produced (around 12 L for each litre of ethanol distilled (Amorim et al. 2011)), rich in minerals, such as potassium, calcium, magnesium, nitrogen and phosphorus, has been used as a fertilizer in the sugarcane fields. However, the increasing volume of vinasse is saturating the soil and threatening the quality of the ground water. It is not economically feasible to transport the vinasse over longer distances, and therefore a solution to this environmental problem should be found on location. AD is a viable approach to treat cane vinasse (Blonkaja et al. 2003; Peréz-Garcia et al. 2005; Seth et al. 1995; Souza et al. 1992) and contributes for the production of renewable energy.

Bagasse combustion and AD of vinasse are presently implemented at some distilleries at full scale (van Haandel 2005). By using steam turbines fuelled with bagasse combustion, electric power can be generated at a rate of 1 MWh per m^3 of produced alcohol. Anaerobic digestion can be applied to vinasse to produce enough biogas for 0.5 MWh/m^3 of alcohol, bringing total electric power production from subproducts to 1.5 MWh/m^3 of alcohol (van Haandel 2005).

Nowadays, bagasse is also generally recognised as a promising feedstock for cellulosic ethanol production, i.e. second generation (2G) bioethanol (derived from the non-food component of biomass) (Fig. 15.3), and it is expected that biofuel produced in this way will have less impact on the environment. Most processes and technologies for 2G bioethanol are still under development in different research activities and pilot/demo plants but are not yet on the market (IEA 2010). The challenge for biorefineries in the future is to use all side- and by-products from industry processes as well as crop residues.

Production of bioethanol, methane and heat from sugarcane bagasse in a biorefinery concept has been recently evaluated by Rabelo and co-workers (2011). Four different biofuel production scenarios showed that 63–65 % of the energy produced by bagasse combustion could be recovered by combining ethanol production with the combustion of lignin and hydrolysis residues, and AD of pretreatment liquors, whereas only 32–33 % of the energy was recovered by bioethanol production alone (Rabelo et al. 2011). The possibility of using wheat straw for the production of bioethanol (from cellulose), biohydrogen (from hemicellulose) and biogas (from effluents of bioethanol and biohydrogen production) was also evaluated (Kaparaju et al. 2009). Fermentation of cellulose, obtained from hydrothermal pre-treatment of wheat straw and enzymatic hydrolysis, yielded 0.41 g ethanol g^{-1} glucose, while dark fermentation of the hydrolysate produced 178.0 mL H_2 g^{-1} sugars, and the effluents from both bioethanol and biohydrogen processes produced methane with the yields of 0.324 and 0.381 m^3 kg^{-1} VS added, respectively. Six different wheat straws to biofuel production scenarios were further evaluated showing that either use of wheat straw for biogas production or multi-fuel production were energetically most efficient processes

compared to the production of mono-fuel such as bioethanol when fermenting C6 sugars alone (Kaparaju et al. 2009). Other studies focused on the evaluation of whole-crop biorefinery concept. For instance, Luo and co-workers (2011) investigated the utilisation of the whole rapeseed plant (seed and straw) for multiple biofuels production. An ethanol yield of 0.15 g^{-1} ethanol g^{-1} dry straw was obtained after combined alkaline peroxide and steam pre-treatment. Methane alone or hydrogen and methane were produced, in batch, from the individual process by-products (rapeseed cake, glycerol, hydrolysate and stillage) at similar energy yields (11–15 kJ g^{-1} VS). In continuous operation, only the two stage hydrogen and methane fermentation could work stably at an organic loading rate up to 6 g COD L^{-1} d^{-1} with average yields of 45 mL H_2 g^{-1} VS and 347 mL $CH_4 g^{-1}$ VS (Luo et al. 2011). The energy recovery efficiency from rapeseed plant increased from 20 % in the conventional biodiesel process to 60 % in the biorefinery concept, by utilisation of the whole rapeseed plant for biodiesel, bioethanol, biohydrogen and methane production.

15.3.3 Biogas Opportunities in Biodiesel Production

First generation biodiesel is produced from vegetable oils of oleaginous plants (e.g. rapeseed, soybean, sunflower, palm oil, etc.) by transesterification processes or cracking (Nigam and Singh 2011). The competition with agricultural land raised ethical issues and new generations of biodiesel appeared: the second generation from non-edible vegetable oil (e.g. jatropha) and from wastes (e.g. animal fat), and the third generation of biodiesel from algae (Rittmann 2008). Globally, there are more than 350 oil-bearing crops identified as potential sources for biodiesel production (Atabani et al. 2012). From the available techniques for oil conversion in biodiesel, transesterification of oil with alcohol in the presence of a catalyst is the most used and technically feasible (Marchetti et al. 2007).

The costs associated with biodiesel are a limiting factor for their utilisation. In future biorefinery concepts, by-products from the cultivation of energy crops should be used to produce other biofuels and/or added value products. For instance, although biodiesel could be the ultimate economical product in a biorefinery, the by-products from this process can also be utilised for the production of methane and hydrogen in anaerobic digesters, and consequently improving the energy and economic balance of these production systems (Borjesson and Mattiasson 2008). Besides, the excess energy can be sold to the public electricity grid, and the AD digestate may be used as fertilizer for the production of new biomass crops. The main biodiesel derived by-products are:

- Crude glycerol: it occurs in vegetable oils at a level of approximately 10 % (w/w). The make-up of crude glycerol varies depending on the parent feedstock and the biodiesel production process. Crude glycerol generated by the most usual method of homogeneous base-catalysed transesterification, and separated from biodiesel

by settling, contains approximately 50–60 % of glycerol, 12–16 % of alkalies (especially in the form of alkali soaps and hydroxides), 15–18 % of methyl esters, 8–12 % of methanol and 2–3 % of water (Kocsisova and Cvengroš 2006). COD of crude glycerol can exceed 1,000 g L^{-1} and the pH goes over 9.

- Biodiesel processing wastewater: water is used at the end of the biodiesel production chain to remove impurities such as excess of oil and methanol, residual catalyst, soap and glycerol. A large amount of wastewater is generated in this process, from 0.2 to 1.2 L per litre of biodiesel produced. This wastewater has a high pH value of approximately 9 and a COD content of hundreds of grams per litre, which is particularly attributed to methanol, glycerol and oil and grease (Phukingngam et al. 2011).
- Crop waste after oil extraction (cake): it refers to the remaining biomass (aquatic and terrestrial energy crop) after the oil extraction for biodiesel production. This waste still hold some lipids. Traces of solvent, salts and pigments are other examples of elements that may be found in the waste.

Wastes and by-products from the biodiesel industry still contain high energetic potential. To optimize the energetic balance of both aquatic and terrestrial crops used for biodiesel production, an anaerobic digestion process can be included in a biorefinery structure to convert the wastes and by-products in methane and hydrogen (Fig. 15.5).

Glycerol is the main by-product of biodiesel production (by the transesterification process). The crude glycerol possesses very low value because of the impurities contained. As the demand and production of biodiesel grow exponentially, the huge amounts of glycerol produced and subsequent destination is a problematic issue associated with biodiesel manufacturing. Usually, crude glycerol is refined and channelled to markets in the pharmaceutical and cosmetic industries (Demirbas 2009). When refined to a chemically pure substance, it would be a very valuable by-product. Purifying it to that stage is costly and generally out of the range of economic feasibility for the majority of small/medium biodiesel facilities. Currently, some biodiesel producing companies from the European Union are facing problems in getting rid of excess glycerol, as disposal is also quite expensive (Luo et al. 2011). Studies have been conducted to investigate alternative glycerol utilisation routes such as production of ethanol, 1, 3-propanediol and other high value products (Silva et al. 2009). Also, the AD of crude glycerol to produce methane and hydrogen is being explored to make biodiesel more competitive. However, high contents of COD and possible accumulation of fatty acids, the presence of methanol, inorganic salts, unreacted mono-, di-and triglycerides and methyl esters and the lack of nitrogen represents severe disadvantages for AD since these characteristics can inhibit the process.

The co-digestion of crude glycerol with a complementary substrate is the most used technique to overcome these problems, by decreasing the C:N ratio or by diluting the waste. For example, the co-digestion of potato processing wastewater with glycerol increased the methane per litre of wastewater treated by a factor of 1.5 (Ma et al. 2008). Adding glycerol to manure can increase significantly the

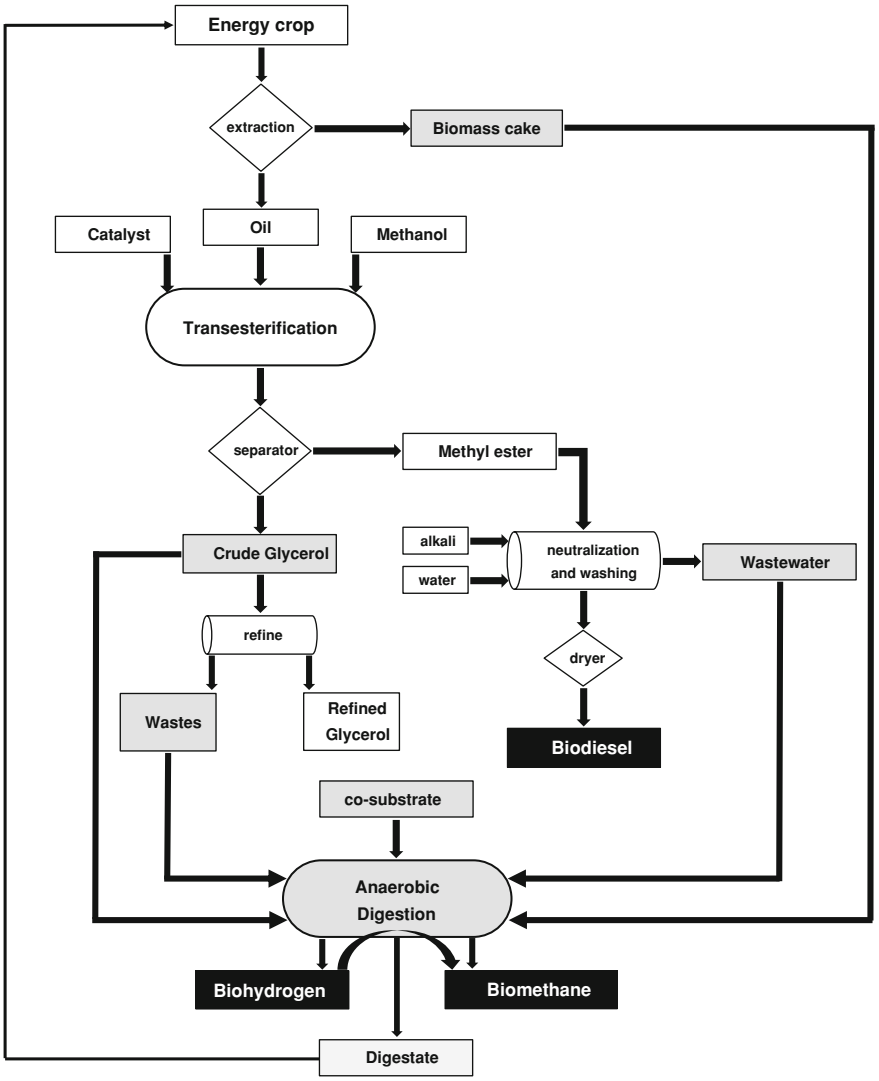


Fig. 15.5 Biorefinery concept for production of biodiesel, including an anaerobic digestion step for the energetic valorisation of wastes and by-products

methane production. Under mesophilic conditions, the addition of 4 % glycerol to screened manure increased biogas production by up to 400 %, and at thermophilic conditions, using sonicated mixtures of ground cattle manure with 6 % added glycerol, 0.35 m^3 CH_4 kg^{-1} COD removed were obtained (Castrillón et al. 2011). Amon and co-workers (2006) showed that the addition of crude glycerol (6 %) to a mixture of maize silage, pig manure and rapeseed meal, increased methane production from 570 to 680 L CH_4 kg^{-1} VS. Mesophilic anaerobic treatment of crude

glycerol as an only organic substrate is feasible, although the specific inhibition effects and requirements resulting from the nature and composition of the substrate can cause difficulties (Kolesarova et al. 2011). Glycerol should be carefully added to an anaerobic co-digestion facility because if certain threshold values are exceeded, severe damages can be done to the process and partial or complete inhibition can be caused. Different limits were reported, from 1 to 6 % of glycerol (Amon et al. 2006; Fountoulakis et al. 2010; Holm-Nielsen et al. 2008). At those limits no VFA accumulation was observed as signal of organic overloading. The different limits may be explained by the different characteristics of the co-substrate, mainly related with their nitrogen content and respective C:N ratio imposed in the anaerobic reactor.

Besides the traditional vegetable oil and animal fat, other substrates have been used to produce biodiesel, such as used-cooking oils. Also, biodiesel from microalgae is gaining market relevance, although mainly in research and development stage (see Sect. 15.3.4). According to the EN14214 (2008), the biodiesel obtained by the catalysed transesterification process requires purification, which generates large amounts of highly polluted wastewater. This wastewater has pH values in the range of 9.2–10.8, COD from 168 to 300 g L^{-1} and fat content of 18–22 g L^{-1} (Jaruwat et al. 2010). A combination of acidification—electrocoagulation with a subsequent AD step to efficiently purify wastewater derived from biodiesel manufacturing was developed (Siles et al. 2011). The anaerobic biodegradability of acidified—electrocoagulated wastewater was found to be 98 %, while the methane yield coefficient reached 297 L CH_4 kg^{-1} COD removed (1 atm, 0 °C). Also, the anaerobic co-digestion of glycerol and wastewater derived from biodiesel manufacturing, in which COD was found to be 1,054 and 428 g L^{-1}, respectively, was studied in batch laboratory-scale reactors at mesophilic temperature (Siles et al. 2010). Wastewater biodegradability was found to be near 100 %, while the methane yield coefficient was 310 L CH_4 kg^{-1} COD removed (1 atm, 25 °C).

The AD of the energy crop fraction not rich in oil and the remaining fraction after oil extraction are potentially good candidates for valorisation in an AD process. The high nitrogen content of lipid-free cake may be problematic for the process if ammonia exceeds inhibitory values (0.1–1.1 g N L^{-1}). Though the rapeseed cake can be efficiently degraded with a methane yield of 378 L CH_4 kg^{-1} VS, corresponding to 82 % of the theoretical value (Luo et al. 2011). Gunaseelan (2009) examined two integrated biorefineries schemes for the energetic valorisation of *Jatropha curcus*: (1) convert plant pruning, fruit hulls and de-oiled seed cake to methane concomitantly with oil to biodiesel, and (2) convert the seeds, plant pruning and fruit hulls entirely to methane. According to the author, the first scheme would produce 90 GJ ha^{-1} y^{-1} (with 54 GJ from the oil) and the second alternative would produce 97 GJ ha^{-1} y^{-1}. These results were obtained based on batch assays; therefore, conclusions should be drawn carefully.

As conclusion is possible to state that anaerobic co-digestion technology could be readily integrated into existing biodiesel facilities, thus establishing true biorefineries and revolutionising the biodiesel industry by dramatically improving its economics (Yazdani and Gonzalez 2007). Besides, AD could help circumvent the

disadvantages of chemical catalysis such as low product specificity, use of high pressure and/or temperatures, inability to use crude glycerol with high levels of contaminants, etc. For instance, for 1 ha rapeseed plant per year, 1,230 kg biodiesel and 627 kg ethanol could be obtained, but also, 27.4 kg hydrogen and 1,626 kg methane can be achieved by anaerobic co-digestion of the by-products (Luo et al. 2011).

15.3.4 Biogas Opportunities from Algae

Currently, biodiesel from vegetable oils and bioethanol from starch or sugar crops are the most technically feasible and commercialised alternative renewable biofuels. Algae should be seen as a promising source for bioenergy production in the future, since it has several advantages over other energy crops, including high yields and growth rates, the capacity to capture CO_2, and do not compete with food crops for arable land (Table 15.2). Two major drawbacks are still associated with the production and transformation of algae to bioenergy, i.e. the quantity of nutrients required and the high costs associated with dewatering. The inclusion of

Table 15.2 Advantages and disadvantages of algae biomass as energy crop

Advantages	Disadvantages
High photon conversion efficiency (high biomass yields per hectare)	Costs of cultivation
Produced all year round	Supply of CO_2 for high efficiency production
High growth rates	Harvesting process
Numerous species	High sodium concentration in marine species
Load on freshwater source is reduced (can utilise salt and wastewater streams)	Presence of sand
Do not compromise food production (improved land use efficiency)	High content of nitrogen and phosphate
Help in bio-fixation of waste CO_2 (CO_2-neutral fuel production)	Low C/N ratio
Assimilate nutrients and produce dissolved oxygen	
Does not require herbicides or pesticides application	
Valuable co-products such as proteins and residual biomass (fertilizer)	
Biochemical composition can be mutated to increase the yield	
Low lignin content	
Releases low amounts of H_2S	
Produces non-toxic and highly biodegradable biofuels	
Double credits under new EU directives	

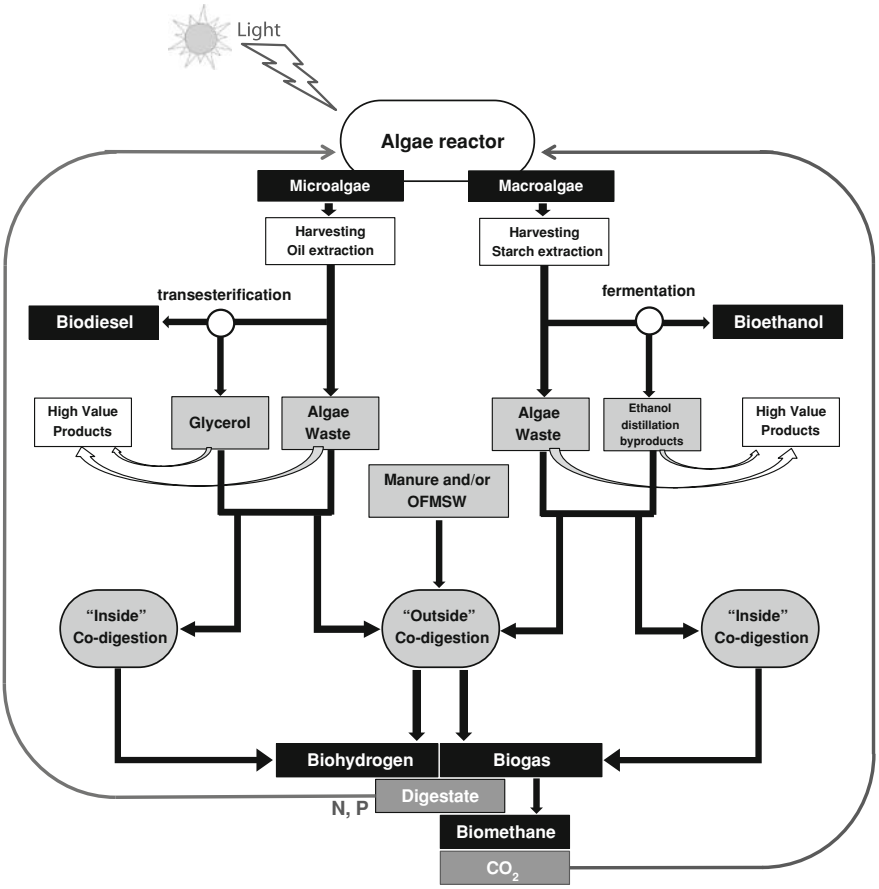


Fig. 15.6 Algae-based biorefinery showing the several biofuels produced and the potential role of anaerobic co-digestion

an AD process, in a biorefinery concept (Fig. 15.6), may help in overcoming both problems since it may provide the necessary nutrients (and CO_2) for the biomass cultivation, and supply the energy needed for a positive economical balance.

Algae are already used for the production of several high value products, including pigments, antioxidants, fatty acids, vitamins, pharmaceutical products and protein-rich feed for both animal and human consumption. Regarding the biofuels market, algae are the only feedstock potentially capable of completely replace the fossil fuel dependency. In the last three or four decades, many public and private investors, like ExxonMobil, have become interested and millions of dollars have been invested worldwide. Research in algae-biomass for biodiesel, bioethanol, biogas and hydrogen is a hot topic nowadays, although there is not yet production of biofuel from algae at a commercial scale (Demirbas 2009; Rusten and Sahu 2011).

Both micro (photosynthetic cells mostly unicellular) and macroalgae (multicellular, fast growing, marine and freshwater plant-like) have the necessary characteristics to be used as biomass for biofuel production. Microalgae can have up to 80 % of the dry weight in lipids, being therefore a potential good energy crop for biodiesel production. The yields of oil and fuels can be much higher (10–100 times) than terrestrial energy crops. However, unlike terrestrial energy crops, extensive drying is required before the biofuels production as the presence of water will inhibit several downstream processes, such as lipid extraction and transesterification.

The extraction of lipids from microalgae generates a by-product, mainly composed of proteins and polysaccharides, which can go up to 60 % of the total biomass. There is an increased demand for protein-rich substances available for human food and animal feed. However, in a more integrated approach, microalgae residues can be fermented to produce bioethanol and/or biogas and have further high-value products extracted in a biorefinery type concept (Fig. 15.6). Also, a two-step AD biorefinery may be a good alternative, with the consecutive production of hydrogen and methane. Mussgnug and co-workers (2010) observed an increase of 23 % in the methane yield from *Chlamydomonas reinhardtii* after H_2 production, compared with the AD of fresh microalgae.

There is no substantial knowledge about the production of bioethanol from microalgae and/or microalgae wastes but there are several research studies exploring their methane potential (Table 15.3). The methane yield is very dependent on the algae species, values of 187 and up to 387 L CH_4 kg^{-1} VS were obtained with *Scenedesmus obliquus* and *Chlamydomonas reinhardtii*, respectively. Regarding the biohydrogen production, 66 L H_2 kg^{-1} VS were obtained with the residues of *Scenedesmus* after transesterification and pre-treatment with NaOH at 100 °C (Yang et al. 2011).

Macroalgae are more suitable for bioethanol or biogas production, due to the high carbohydrates content that can go up to 60 %, depending on the species, the season and place of cultivation. In contrast, the low content in lipids makes the biodiesel production unfeasible. Currently, no commercially credible assessment of the economic feasibility of macroalgae cultivation for biofuel production has been published. However, several research studies report the BMP of macroalgae (Table 15.3). Species from the genera *Gracilaria*, *Laminaria*, *Ulva* and *Sargassum* are the most studied and with highest methane potential. Currently, the vast majority of macroalgae are collected for human consumption and for hydrocolloid production.

The use of macroalgae resources is improbable to support a stand-alone biogas or bioethanol process. However, it is possible to introduce these processes into an existing facility where other biomass raw materials can be processed, such as co-digestion with manure or the OFMSW (Fig. 15.6). Couple algae production and wastewater treatment seems a very promising approach to two big markets, fuels production and wastewater treatment. In fact, wastewaters derived from municipal, agricultural and industrial activities potentially provide cost-effective and sustainable means of algae-biomass growth for subsequent biofuels production

Table 15.3 Macro and microalgae species and respective biochemical methane potential (BMP)

	$\%CH_4$	L CH_4 kg^{-1} VS	Conditions	Pre-treatment	Reference
Microalgae					
Arthrospira platensis	61	293	38 °C/batch	–	Mussgnug et al. (2010)
Chlamydomonas reinhardtii	66	387	38 °C/batch	–	Mussgnug et al. (2010)
Chlamydomonas reinhardtii	–	310	38 °C/batch	24 h @ 105 °C	Mussgnug et al. (2010)
Chlamydomonas reinhardtii	–	476	38 °C/batch	H_2 production	Mussgnug et al. (2010)
Chlorella sp.	–	245	35 °C/CSTR (HRT = 15d)	Dried, transesterification, add glycerol	Ehimen et al. (2011)
Chlorella sp.	68	302	35 °C/CSTR (HRT = 15d)	Dried, transesterification	Ehimen et al. (2011)
Chlorella kessleri	65	218	38 °C/batch		Mussgnug et al. (2010)
Chlorella kessleri	–	159	38 °C/batch	24 h @ 105 °C	Mussgnug et al. (2010)
Chlorella vulgaris	–	240	35 °C/CSTR (HRT = 28d)	–	Ras et al. (2011)
Dunaliella salina	64	323	38 °C/batch	–	Mussgnug et al. (2010)
Euglena gracilis	67	325	38 °C/batch	–	Mussgnug et al. (2010)
Scenedesmus obliquus	62	178	38 °C/batch	–	Mussgnug et al. (2010)
Macroalgae					
Enteromorpha sp.	–	154 ± 7	37 °C/batch	–	Costa et al. (2012)
Gelidium amanssii	–	239	35 °C/batch	Ethanol production (fermentation residue)	Park et al. (2012)
Gelidium amanssii	–	283	35 °C/batch	Ethanol production (saccharification residue)	Park et al. (2012)
Gracilaria sp.	–	280–400	35 °C/batch	–	Bird et al. (1990)
Gracilaria sp.	–	182 ± 23	37 °C/batch	–	Costa et al. (2012)
Laminaria sp.	–	260–280	–	–	Chynoweth (2005)

(continued)

Table 15.3 (continued)

	$\%CH_4$	L CH_4 kg^{-1} VS	Conditions	Pre-treatment	Reference
Laminaria digitata	–	500	–	–	Morand and Briand (1999)
Laminaria digitata	–	219	35 °C/batch	–	Adams et al. (2011)
Macrocystis	–	390–410	–	–	Chynoweth (2005)
Ulva sp.	59	110	35 °C/batch	–	Briand and Morand (1997)
Ulva sp.	55	94	35 °C/batch	Washed	Briand and Morand (1997)
Ulva sp.	49	145	35 °C/batch	Dried	Briand and Morand (1997)
Ulva sp.	52	177	35 °C/batch	Ground dried	Briand and Morand (1997)
Ulva sp.	54	203	35 °C/CSTR (HRT = 15d)	Grounded	Briand and Morand (1997)
Ulva sp. (hydrolysis juice)	–	313–330	BFBR (HRT = 2.5–5d)	Pre-hydrolysed	Morand and Briand (1999)
Ulva sp.	–	127	35 °C/batch	–	Otsuka and Yoshino (2004)
Ulva sp.	–	180	35 °C/batch	Washed, dried, grounded	Otsuka and Yoshino (2004)
Ulva sp.	–	148	35 °C/batch	Centrifuged and grounded	Peu et al. (2011)
Ulva sp.	–	196 ± 9	37 °C/batch	–	Costa et al. (2012)
Sargassum fluitans	–	143–182	–	–	Gunaseelan (1997)
Sargassum pteropleuron	–	119–171	–	–	Gunaseelan (1997)
Sargassum sp.	–	260–380	–	–	Chynoweth (2005)
Sargassum spp.	–	120–190	35 °C/batch	–	Bird et al. (1990)
Seaweed	44	120	37 °C/batch	–	Nkemka and Murto (2010)
Seaweed (leachate)	62	120	37 °C/batch	Pre-hydrolysed	Nkemka and Murto (2010)

(Pittman et al. 2011). AD may be used to convert the algae-biomass in bioenergy (biogas and hydrogen), and algae may act as a remediation agent by removing nutrients and sequestering CO_2, making an in situ biomethane upgrade. It was already reported that the anaerobic co-digestion of *Ulva* sp. with waste activated sludge seems to have a positive synergetic effect on the sludge biodegradability rate, with an increase up to 26 % (Costa et al. 2012).

The biogas produced in the AD step may serve as the primary source of energy for the production and conversion of the algae-biomass. Moreover, the CO_2 generated from the combustion of biogas or from the purification to biomethane, and the nutrient-rich digestate formed during the AD, can be recycled in a closed-loop to produce algae-biomass (Fig. 15.6). Two main bottlenecks can be identified in the AD of algae biomass. First, the biochemical composition and the nature of the cell wall may decrease their biodegradability. Then, the high cellular protein content, impaired after the oil extraction in the case of microalgae, imposes a low C/N ratio (around 6:1), far from the ideal for anaerobic digestion, and may potentially result in the production of toxic ammonia concentrations (Sialve et al. 2009). The co-digestion of microalgae residues with a nutrient-deficient co-substrate, such as glycerol, the major by-product generated in the biodiesel industry, has the potential to improve the overall energy recovered as methane. It was reported that a C/N ratio of 12.4 increased the methane production by more than 50 % when co-digesting the microalgae residues with glycerol, compared with the methane production obtained by digesting the residues alone (Ehimen et al. 2011). It is important to state that glycerol is a versatile chemical with more than 1,000 known commercial applications; however, this market has becoming saturated due to the strong growth in biodiesel production.

In conclusion, we can say that microalgae have high oil content but are difficult to cultivate and harvest and macroalgae present low-cost cultivation and harvesting possibilities but are low in lipids. In a biorefinery all routes should be explored, either to produce biofuels or high-value products. Therefore, it seems very attractive the integration of an AD step in an algae-based biorefinery since it seems the logical answer for the two major drawbacks previously detected, generates energy that can balance the unfavourable energetic bill, and can provide the nutrients and carbon dioxide needed for the biomass growth. Concomitantly, algae may be seen as a bioremediation agent to remove nutrients and capture CO_2 in a wastewater treatment plant.

15.3.5 Biogas from Syngas

Anaerobic digestion is suitable for converting virtually all organic materials to methane. However, some more recalcitrant substrates, such as lignocellulosic biomass or other dry wastes (plastic and rubber, etc.), demand (thermo) chemical pre-treatments, which are often costly and do not always substantially improve methane production. Gasification of all kind of compact biomass/wastes, followed by a biological process for the conversion of the resulting syngas (mixture of CO,

CO_2 and H_2) to methane, would be a feasible and promising alternative for the valorisation of recalcitrant materials.

Coal gasification has been traditionally used to produce syngas, which can be further used in thermochemical catalytic processes to produce fuels, such as methane (Fig. 15.7a). However, syngas bioconversion (Fig. 15.7b) has several advantages over catalytic processes: it can operate at milder temperatures and pressures, a fix CO/H_2 ratio is not required, there is less susceptibility to the impurities in the gas, and it does not require any costly pre-treatment of the feed gas or costly metal catalysts (Abubackar et al. 2011; Henstra et al. 2007). Syngas direct conversion to methane can be accomplished by various methanogens, such as *Methanosarcina* and *Methanothermobacter* species (Eqs. 15.1 and 15.2) (Daniels et al. 1977; O'Brien et al. 1984; Rother and Metcalf 2004).

$$4CO + 2H_2O \rightarrow 3CO_2 + CH_4 \tag{15.1}$$

$$CO + 3H_2 \rightarrow CH_4 + H_2O \tag{15.2}$$

Alternatively, a two-step process could be designed in which:

1. CO is firstly converted into acetate by acetogenic carboxydotrophic bacteria (Eqs. 15.3 and 15.4) or to H_2 by bacteria able to perform the water shift reaction (Eq. 15.5):

$$4CO + 4H_2O \rightarrow CH_3COO^- + 2HCO_3^- + 3H^+ \tag{15.3}$$

$$2CO + 2H_2 \rightarrow CH_3COO^- + H^+ \tag{15.4}$$

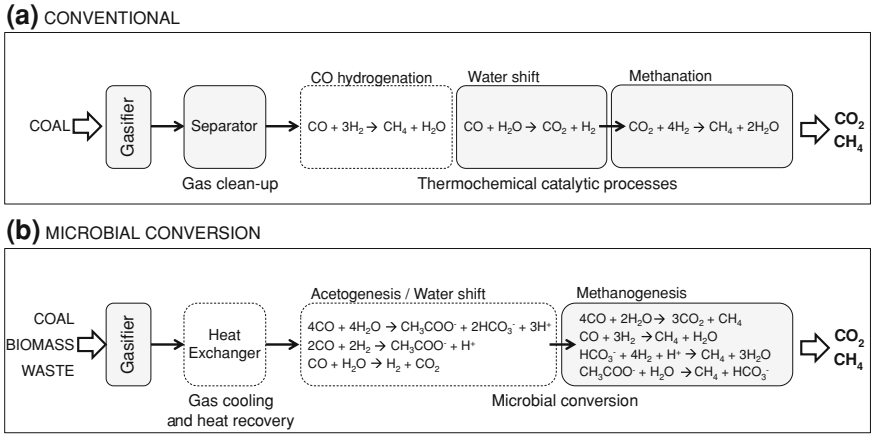


Fig. 15.7 Conventional (thermochemical) **a** and microbiological **b** routes for methane production from syngas deriving from coal, biomass or recalcitrant wastes (adapted from Basu et al. 1993)

$$CO + H_2O \rightarrow H_2 + CO_2 \quad (15.5)$$

2. Acetate and H_2 are further converted into methane by acetoclastic (Eq. 15.6) and hydrogenotrophic (Eq. 15.7) methanogens:

$$CH_3COO^- + H_2O \rightarrow CH_4 + HCO_3^- \quad (15.6)$$

$$4H_2 + HCO_3^- + H^+ \rightarrow CH_4 + 3H_2O \quad (15.7)$$

Hydrogenotrophic methanogens can utilise H_2 and CO_2 initially present in syngas for producing methane as well.

The capability of CO conversion to acetate has been identified in several bacteria from different taxa, e.g. *Clostridium*, *Peptostreptococcus*, *Moorella* and *Desulfotomaculum* species (Henstra et al. 2007). H_2 production via water shift reaction has been shown to occur in anaerobic bacteria, as for example *Rhodospirillum rubrum* (Kerby et al. 1995), *Rhodopseudomonas palustris* (Jung et al. 1999), *Carboxydothermus hydrogenoformans* (Svetlitchnyi et al. 2001), *Carboxydibrachium pacificum* (Sokolova et al. 2001), *Carboxydocella thermoautotrophica* (Sokolova et al. 2002), *Thermincola carboxydiphila* (Sokolova et al. 2005), etc.

Thus far, most of the studies on syngas anaerobic conversion have focused on the utilisation of pure cultures of microorganisms and strongly directed to ethanol production (Abrini et al. 1994; Cotter et al. 2009; Kundiyana et al. 2011). Fu and Mazzella (1990) described the potential of using pure/defined-cultures to convert CO and H_2 into methane. These authors developed a two-stage process for continuous syngas conversion: in the first stage, a small amount of syngas feed was used by *Peptostreptococcus productus* to produce acetate, which would be used in the second stage bioreactor for stimulating culture growth. The second stage employed a co-culture of *Rhodospirillum rubrum* and *Methanobacterium formicicum* for combined water shift and methanation of the remaining syngas feed.

Syngas conversion to methane by anaerobic mixed cultures is practically unexplored, and few reports are available on this subject (Guiot et al. 2011; Sipma et al. 2003). Sipma and co-workers (2003) tested seven anaerobic sludges from wastewater treatment reactors for their ability to convert CO at 30 and 55 °C. All the tested sludges could convert CO in the assays at mesophilic temperature, with a CO depletion rate between 0.14 and 0.62 mmol CO day^{-1}. Conversion of CO at 55 °C was achieved by five of the tested sludges and CO depletion rates varied between 0.73 and 1.32 mmol CO day^{-1}. Methane and/or acetate and methane and/or H_2 were the main products deriving from CO conversion during incubation at mesophilic and thermophilic conditions, respectively. Continuous CO conversion to methane, using a closed-loop 30 L gas-lift reactor, has been shown by Guiot et al. (2011). A maximum CO conversion of 75 % was obtained for a CO partial pressure of 0.6 atm and a gas recirculation ratio of 1:20. Under these conditions, methane yield (CH_4/CO) was approximately 95 % and other metabolites accumulated only at trace concentrations.

15.4 Future Prospects

Anaerobic digestion is an established technology with thousands of known applications worldwide. In a circular biobased economy concept (cradle to cradle), the reuse of all waste streams to produce valuable products and/or fuels should be mandatory. AD represents a relatively cheap technology, that integrated in biodiesel and/or bioethanol facilities, in a biorefinery concept, can represent a significant milestone in the economic viability of those technologies by using their (waste) water and by-products to generate biofuels (biomethane and/or biohydrogen) and a biofertilizer.

Several topics still need optimisation to definitively make AD of energy crops and biofuels production by-products economically feasible. Development of efficient and economically viable pre-treatments to improve the biodegradation of more recalcitrant feedstocks is urgent to increase the yield of AD processes. Biogas produced in AD plants is primarily composed of methane and CO_2, but it contains traces of other gases (NH_3, H_2S, etc.). To be used as a vehicle fuel or injected in the natural gas grid it has to be upgraded and compressed. Diverse technologies have been developed during the past years (water scrubbing, carbon molecular sieves, membranes, etc.). These techniques are costly and independent from the AD process, therefore suitable and costly technologies still to be developed.

Algae are the only crop capable of replacing the fossil fuel dependency, even though all the potential of algae-based biorefineries, it is still in the beginning of its development and many research and development is needed to achieve the desired efficiency and competitiveness. Genetic and metabolic engineering is likely to play an important role in improving microalgae strains to increase the lipids content and the easiness of extraction. The possibility to release valuable biochemical molecules using enzymatic hydrolysis from microalgae without dewatering the culture could have a major impact on the energetic needs for algae biofuels production. In fact, drying the algal biomass consumes about 69 % of the input energy (Jones and Mayfield 2011; Sander and Murthy 2010). Algae are a remediation agent that can be used in wastewater treatment. Couple algae-biomass production, nutrients removal, CO_2 sequestration and biogas production may represent an important milestone in the bioenergy goals, since the market of wastewater treatment is immense. However, an appropriate technology for biomass harvesting must be developed to bridge these technologies.

Concerning the syngas platform biorefinery, a significant challenge for the effective utilisation of syngas biologically is clearly the modest gas-liquid mass-transfer rates of the conventional gas–liquid contacting technologies (e.g. stirred tank reactors, airlift reactors or bubble columns) and the low solubility of the major syngas components in the aqueous culture medium (Bredwell et al. 1999). In fact, microbial syngas conversion depends strongly on the mass transfer of syngas to water (van Kasteren et al. 2005). One way of addressing this issue, and a future challenge in syngas fermentation, is the improvement of the volumetric mass transfer coefficient (kLa) for syngas-components and the development of appropriate bioreactor design.

In the future, biogas production will be based on a wide range of aquatic and terrestrial energy crops that will grow with sustainable and versatile methods. Organic waste, by-products from the food, agriculture and biorefinery industry will be naturally included in the several AD plants available worldwide.

References

Abrini J, Naveau H, Nyns EJ (1994) *Clostridium autoethanogenum* sp nov, an anaerobic bacterium that produces ethanol from carbon monoxide. Arch Microbiol 161:345–351

Abubackar HN, Veiga MC, Kennes C (2011) Biological conversion of carbon monoxide: rich syngas or waste gases to bioethanol. Biofuel Bioprod Bior 5:93–114

Adams JMM, Toop TA, Donnison IS, Gallagher JA (2011) Seasonal variation in *Laminaria digitata* and its impact on biochemical conversion routes to biofuels. Bioresour Technol 102:9976–9984

Agler M, Garcia M, Lee E, Schilicher M, Angenent L (2008) Thermophilic anaerobic digestion to increase the net energy balance of corn grain ethanol. Environ Sci Technol 42:6723–6729

Alves MM, Picavet MA, Pereira MA, Cavaleiro AJ, Sousa DZ (2007) Novel anaerobic reactor for the removal of long chain fatty acids from fat containing wastewater. Patent number WO/2007/058557

Amon T, Amon B, Kryvoruchko V, Bodiroza V, Pötsch E, Zollitsch W (2006) Optimising methane yield from anaerobic digestion of manure: effects of dairy systems and of glycerin supplementation. Int Congr Ser 1293:217–220

Amorim HV, Lopes ML, Oliveira JVC, Buckerige MS, Goldman GH (2011) Scientific challenges of bioethanol production in Brazil. Appl Microbiol Biot 91:1267–1275

Angenent LT, Karim K, Al-Dahhan MH, Wrenn BA, Domínguez-Espinosa R (2004) Production of bioenergy and biochemicals from industrial and agricultural wastewater. Trends Biotechnol 22:477–485

Atabani AE, Silitonga AS, Badruddin IA, Mahlia TMI, Masjuki HH, Mekhilef S (2012) A comprehensive review on biodiesel as an alternative energy resource and its characteristics. Renew Sust Energ Rev 16:2070–2093

Basu R, Klasson KT, Clausen EC, Gaddy JL (1993) Biological conversion of synthesis gas. Bioreactor studies. Topical Report. Foster Wheeler USA Corporation, DOE contract no. DE-AC21-86MC23077

Bird KT, Chynoweth DP, Jerger DE (1990) Effects of marine algal proximate composition on methane yields. J Appl Phycol 2:207–213

Blonskaja V, Menert A, Vilu R (2003) Use of two-stage anaerobic treatment for distillery waste. Environ Res 7:671–678

Boone DR, Johnson RL, Liu Y (1989) Diffusion of the interspecies electron carriers H_2 and formate in methanogenic ecosystems and its implications in the measurement of Km for H_2 or formate uptake. Appl Environ Microb 55:1735–1741

Borjesson P, Mattiasson B (2008) Biogas as a resource-efficient vehicle fuel. Trends Biotechnol 26:7–13

Bredwell MD, Srivastava P, Worden RM (1999) Reactor design issues for synthesis-gas fermentations. Biotechnol Prog 15:834–844

Briand X, Morand P (1997) Anaerobic digestion of Ulva sp. 1. Relationship between Ulva composition and methanisation. J Appl Phycol 9:511–524

Cantrell KB, Ducey T, Ro KS, Hunt PG (2008) Livestock waste-to-bioenergy generation opportunities. Bioresour Technol 99:7941–7953

Castrillón L, Fernández-Nava Y, Ormaechea P, Marañón E (2011) Optimization of biogas production from cattle manure by pre-treatment with ultrasound and co-digestion with crude glycerin. Bioresour Technol 102:7845–7849

Cecchi F, Pavan P, Mata-Alvarez J (1996) Anaerobic co-digestion of sewage sludge: application to the macroalgae from the Venice lagoon. Resour Conserv Recy 17:57–66
Chynoweth DP (2005) Renewable biomethane from land and ocean energy crops and organic wastes. HortSci 40:283–286
Costa JC, Gonçalves PR, Nobre A, Alves MM (2012) Biomethanation potential of macroalgae Ulva spp and Gracilaria spp and in co-digestion with waste activated sludge. Bioresour Technol 114:320–326
Cotter JL, Chinn MS, Grunden AM (2009) Influence of process parameters on growth of Clostridium ljungdahlii and Clostridium autoethanogenum on synthesis gas. Enzyme Microb Technol 44:281–288
Daniels L, Fuchs G, Thauer RK, Zeikus JG (1977) Carbon monoxide oxidation by methanogenic bacteria. J Bacteriol 132:118–126
Demirbas A (2009) Progress and recent trends in biodiesel fuels. Energ Convers Manage 50:14–34
Dias MOS, Ensinas AV, Nebra SA, Maciel Filho R, Rossell CEV, Maciel MRW (2009) Production of bioethanol and other bio-materials from sugarcane bagasse: integration to conventional bioethanol production process. Chem Eng Res Des 87:1206–1216
Ehimen EA, Sun ZF, Carrington CG, Birch EJ, Eaton-Rye JJ (2011) Anaerobic digestion of microalgae residues resulting from the biodiesel production process. Appl Energ 88:3454–3463
EN14214 (2008) Automative Fuels. Fatty acid methyl esters (FAME) for diesel engines. Requirements and test methods
Eskicioglu C, Kennedy KJ, Marin J, Strehler B (2011) Anaerobic digestion of whole stillage from dry-gring corn ethanol plant under mesophilic and thermophilic conditions. Bioresour Technol 102:1079–1086
EurObserv'ER (2010) Biogas Barometer—November 2010. Systèmes Solaires, le journal des énergies renouvelables, 200:104–119. http://www.eurobserv-er.org/pdf/baro200b.pdf
Fang HHP, Chui HK, Li YY (1995) Anaerobic degradation of butyrate in a UASB reactor. Bioresour Technol 51:75–81
Fountoulakis MS, Petousi I, Manios T (2010) Co-digestion of sewage sludge with glycerol to boost biogas production. Waste Manage 30:1849–1853
Fu RK, Mazzella G (1990) Evaluation of biological conversion of coal-derived synthesis gas. Topical report. University of Arkansas, University of Arkansas, DOE contract no. DE-FG21-90MC27225
Guiot SR, Cimpoia R, Carayon G (2011) Potential of wastewater-treating anaerobic granules for biomethanation of synthesis gas. Environ Sci Technol 45:2006–2012
Gujer W, Zehnder AJB (1983) Conversion processes in anaerobic digestion. Water Sci Technol 15:127–167
Gunaseelan VN (1997) Anaerobic digestion of biomass for methane production: a review. Biomass Bioenerg 13:83–114
Gunaseelan VN (2009) Biomass estimates, characteristics, biochemical methane potential, kinetics and energy flow from Jatropha curcus on dry lands. Biomass Bioenerg 33:589–596
Harper SR, Pohland FG (1986) Recent developments in hydrogen management during anaerobic biological wastewater treatment. Biotechnol Bioeng 28:585–602
Henstra AM, Sipma J, Rinzema A, Stams AJM (2007) Microbiology of synthesis gas fermentation for biofuel production. Curr Opin Biotechnol 18:200–206
Holm-Nielsen JB, Lomborg CJ, Oleskowicz-Popiel P, Esbensen KH (2008) Online near infrared monitoring of glycerol-boosted anaerobic digestion processes: evaluation of process analytical technologies. Biotechnol Bioeng 99:302–313
Huang JS, Jih CG, Lin SD, Ting WH (2003) Process kinetics of UASB reactors treating non-inhibitory substrate. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 78:762–772
IEA (2010) Sustainable production of second-generation biofuels. OECD/IEA, Paris. http://www.iea.org/papers/2010/second_generation_biofuels.pdf. Cited 24 May 2012
Jaruwat P, Kongjao S, Hunsom M (2010) Management of biodiesel wastewater by the combined processes of chemical recovery and electrochemical treatment. Energ Convers Manage 51:531–537

Jetten MSM, Stams AJM, Zehnder AJB (1992) Methanogenesis from acetate: a comparison of the acetate metabolism in *Methanothrix soehngenii* and *Methanosarcina* spp. FEMS Microbiol Rev 88:181–197

Jones CS, Mayfield SP (2011) Algae biofuels: versatility for the future of bioenergy. Curr Opin Biotech 23:346–351

Jung GY, Jung HO, Kim JR, Ahn Y, Park S (1999) Isolation and characterization of Rhodopseudomonas palustris P4 which utilizes CO with the production of H2. Biotechnol Lett 21:525–529

Kaparaju P, Serrano M, Thomsen AB, Kongjan P, Angelidaki I (2009) Bioethanol, biohydrogen and biogas production from wheat straw in a biorefinery concept. Bioresour Technol 100:2562–2568

Kerby RL, Ludden PW, Roberts GP (1995) Carbon monoxide dependent growth of Rhodospirillum rubrum. J Bacteriol 177:2241–2244

Kocsisová T, Cvengroš J (2006) G-phase form methyl ester production—splitting and refining. Pet Coal 48:1–5

Kolesárová N, Hutňan M, Špalková V, Kuffa R, Bodík I (2011) Anaerobic treatment of biodiesel by-products in a pilot scale reactor. Chem Pap 65:447–453

Kundiyana DK, Wilkins MR, Maddipati P, Huhnke RL (2011) Effect of temperature, pH and buffer presence on ethanol production from synthesis gas by Clostridium ragsdalei. Bioresour Technol 102:5794–5799

Langeveld JWA, Dixon J, Jaworski JF (2010) Development perspectives of the biobased economy: a review. Crop Sci 50:S142–S151

Lee P-H, Bae J, Kim J, Chen W-H (2011) Mesophilic anaerobic digestion of corn thin stillage: a technical and energetic assessment of the corn-to-ethanol industry integrated with anaerobic digestion. J Chem Technol Biot 86:1514–1520

Lichts FO (2010) Industry Statistics: 2010 World Fuel Ethanol Production. Renewable Fuels Association. Available via http://www.ethanolrfa.org/pages/statistics#E. Cited 19 Feb 2012

Luo G, Talebnia F, Karakashev D, Xie L, Zhou Q, Angelidaki I (2011) Enhanced bioenergy recovery from rapeseed plant in a biorefinery concept. Bioresour Technol 102:1433–1439

Ma J, Van Wambeke M, Carballa M, Verstraete W (2008) Improvement of the anaerobic treatment of potato processing wastewater in a UASB reactor by co-digestion with glycerol. Biotechnol Lett 30:861–867

Marchetti JM, Miguel VU, Errazu AF (2007) Possible methods for biodiesel production. Renew Sust Energ Rev 11:1300–1311

Masse L, Masse DI, Kennedy KJ, Chou SP (2002) Neutral fat hydrolysis and long-chain fatty acid oxidation during anaerobic digestion of slaughterhouse wastewater. Biotechnol Bioeng 79:43–52

Mata-Alvarez J, Macé S, Llabres P (2000) Anaerobic digestion of organic solid wastes an overview of research achievements and perspectives. Bioresour Technol 74:3–16

Meredith J (2003) Understanding energy use and energy users in contemporary ethanol plants. In: Jacques KA, Lyons TP, Kelsall DR (eds) The alcohol textbook, 4th edn. Nottingham University Press, Nottingham, pp 355–361

Morand P, Briand X (1999) Anaerobic digestion of Ulva sp. 2. Study of Ulva degradation and methanisation of liquefaction juices. J Appl Phycol 11:165–177

Mosey FE (1983) Mathematical modeling of the anaerobic digestion process: regulatory mechanisms for the formation of short-chain volatile acids from glucose. Water Sci Technol 15:209–232

Murto M, Björnsson L, Mattiasson B (2004) Impact of food industrial waste on anaerobic co-digestion of sewage sludge and pig manure. J Environ Manage 70:101–107

Mussgnug JH, Klassen V, Schlüter A, Kruse O (2010) Microalgae as substrates for fermentative biogas production in a combined biorefinery concept. J Biotechnol 150:51–56

Neves L (2009) Anaerobic co-digestion of organic wastes. University of Minho, Braga, Portugal. http://hdl.handle.net/1822/9875

Nigam PS, Singh A (2011) Production of liquid biofuels from renewable resources. Prog Energ Combust 37:52–68
Nkemka VN, Murto M (2010) Evaluation of biogas production from seaweed in batch tests and in UASB reactors combined with the removal of heavy metals. J Environ Manage 91:1573–1579
O'Brien JM, Wolkin RH, Moench TT, Morgan JB, Zeikus JG (1984) Association of hydrogen metabolism with unitrophic or mixotrophic growth of Methanosarcina barkeri on carbon monoxide. J Bacteriol 158:373–375
Otsuka K, Yoshino A (2004) A fundamental study on anaerobic digestion of sea lettuce. OCEANS '04 MTS/IEEE TECHNO-OCEAN '04, Conference proceedings, 3:1770–1773
Park J-H, Yoon J–J, Park H-D, Lim DJ, Kim S-H (2012) Anaerobic digestibility of algal bioethanol residue. Bioresour Technol 113:78–82
Pereira MA (2003) Anaerobic biodegradation of long chain fatty acids—biomethanisation of biomass-associated LCFA as a challenge for the anaerobic treatment of effluents with high lipid-LCFA content. University of Minho, Braga, Portugal. http://hdl.handle.net/1822/4650
Pérez-García M, Romero-García LI, Rodríguez-Cano R, Sales-Márquez D (2005) Effect of pH influent conditions in fixed-film reactors for anaerobic thermophilic treatment of wine-distillery wastewater. Water Sci Technol 51:183–189
Peu P, Sassi J-F, Girault R, Picard S, Saint-Cast P, Béline F, Dabert P (2011) Sulphur fate and anaerobic biodegradation potential during co-digestion of seaweed biomass (*Ulva* sp.) with pig slurry. Bioresour Technol 102:10794–10802
Phukingngam D, Chavalparit O, Somchai D, Ongwandee M (2011) Anaerobic baffled reactor treatment of biodiesel-processing wastewater with high strength of methanol and glycerol: reactor performance and biogas production. Chem Pap 65:644–651
Pittman JK, Dean AP, Osundeko O (2011) he potential of sustainable algal biofuel production using wastewater resources. Bioresour Technol 102:17–25
Plugge CM, Van Lier JB, Stams AJM, Jeison D (2009) Microbial energy production from biomass. In: Rabaey K, Angenent L, Schroder U, Keller J (eds) Bioelectrochemical systems. IWA Publishing, London, pp 17–38
Rabelo SC, Carrere H, Maciel Filho R, Costa AC (2011) Production of bioethanol, methane and heat from sugarcane bagasse in a biorefinery concept. Bioresour Technol 102:7887–7895
Rajeshwari KV, Balakrishnan M, Kansal A, Lata K, Kishore VVN (2000) State-of-the-art of anaerobic digestion technology for industrial wastewater treatment. Renew Sust Energ Rev 4:135–156
Ras M, Lardon L, Sialve B, Bernet N, Steyer J-P (2011) Experimental study on a coupled process of production and anaerobic digestion of *Chlorella vulgaris*. Bioresour Technol 102:200–206
Rittmann BE (2008) Opportunities for renewable bioenergy using microorganisms. Biotechnol Bioeng 100:203–212
Rother M, Metcalf WW (2004) Anaerobic growth of *Methanosarcina acetivorans C2A* on carbon monoxide: an unusual way of life for a methanogenic archaeon. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 101:16929–16934
Rusten B, Sahu AK (2011) Microalgae growth for nutrient recovery from sludge liquor and production of renewable bioenergy. Water Sci Technol 64:1195–1201
Sander K, Murthy GS (2010) Life cycle analysis of algae biodiesel. Int J Life Cycle Assess 15:704–714
Schaefer SH, Sung S (2008) Retooling the ethanol industry: thermophilic anaerobic digestion of thin stillage for methane production and pollution prevention. Water Environ Res 80:101–108
Schink B (1997) Energetics of syntrophic cooperation in methanogenic degradation. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 61:262–280
Schink B, Stams AJM (2006) Syntrophism among prokaryotes. Prokaryotes 2:309–335
Seth R, Goyal SK, Handa BK (1995) Fixed film biomethanation of distillery spentwash using low cost porous media. Resour Conserv Recy 14:79–89
Sialve B, Bernet N, Bernard O (2009) Anaerobic digestion of microalgae as a necessary step to make microalgal biodiesel sustainable. Biotechnol Adv 27:409–416

Siles JA, Martín MA, Chica AF, Martín A (2010) Anaerobic co-digestion of glycerol and wastewater derived from biodiesel manufacturing. Bioresour Technol 101:6315–6321

Siles JA, Gutiérrez MC, Martín MA, Martín A (2011) Physical–chemical and biomethanization treatments of wastewater from biodiesel manufacturing. Bioresour Technol 102:6348–6351

Silva GP, Mack M, Contiero J (2009) Glycerol: a promising and abundant carbon source for industrial microbiology. Biotechnol Adv 27:30–39

Sipma J, Lens PNL, Stams AJM, Lettinga G (2003) Carbon monoxide conversion by anaerobic bioreactor sludges. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 44:271–277

Sokolova TG, Gonzalez JM, Kostrikina NA, Chernyh NA, Tourova TP, Kato C, Bonch-Osmolovskaya EA, Robb FT (2001) *Carboxydobrachium pacificum* gen nov, sp nov., a new anaerobic, thermophilic, CO-utilizing marine bacterium from Okinawa Trough. Int J Syst Evol Micr 51:141–149

Sokolova TG, Kostrikina NA, Chernyh NA, Tourova TP, Kolganova TV, Bonch-Osmolovskaya EA (2002) *Carboxydocella thermautotrophica* gen. nov., sp nov., a novel anaerobic, CO-utilizing thermophile from a Kamchatkan hot spring. Int J Syst Evol Micr 52:1961–1967

Sokolova TG, Kostrikina NA, Chernyh NA, Kolganova TV, Tourova TP, Bonch-Osmolovskaya EA (2005) *Thermincola carboxydiphila* gen nov, sp nov, a novel anaerobic, carboxydotrophic, hydrogenogenic bacterium from a hot spring of the Lake Baikal area. Int J Syst Evol Micr 55:2069–2073

Souza ME, Fuzaro G, Polegato AR (1992) Thermophilic anaerobic digestion of vinasse in pilot plant UASB reactor. Water Sci Technol 25:213–222

Stams AJM, Plugge CM (2009) Electron transfer in syntrophic communities of anaerobic bacteria and archaea. Nat Rev Microbiol 7:568–577

Stams AJM, Plugge CM, De Bok FAM, Van Houten BHGW, Lens P, Dijkman H, Weijma J (2005) Metabolic interactions in methanogenic and sulfate-reducing bioreactors. Water Sci Technol 52:13–20

Stover EL, Gomathinayagam G, Gonzalez R (1984) Use of methane from anaerobic treatment of stillage for fuel alcohol production. 39th industrial water conference. Purdue University, West Lafayette, Indiana: Butterworth, Boston, pp 95–104

Svetlitchnyi V, Peschel C, Acker G, Meyer O (2001) Two membrane-associated NiFeS-carbon monoxide dehydrogenases from the anaerobic carbon-monoxide-utilizing eubacterium Carboxydothermus hydrogenoformans. J Bacteriol 183:5134–5144

Van Haandel AC (2005) Integrated energy production and reduction of the environmental impact at alcohol distillery plants. Water Sci Technol 52:49–57

Van Haandel AC, Catunda PFC (1994) Profitability increase of alcohol distilleries by the rational use of byproducts. Water Sci Technol 29:117–124

Van Kasteren JMN, van der Waall WR, Guo J, Verberne R (2005) Bio-ethanol from syngas. Eindhoven University of Technology (TU/e), I. &. E, Ed

Van Lier JB, Letting G (1999) Appropriate technologies for effective management of industrial and domestic waste waters: the decentralised approach. Water Sci Technol 40:171–183

Van Lier JB, Tilche A, Ahring BK, Macarie H, Moletta R, Dohanyos M, Pol LWH, Lens P, Verstraete W (2001) New perspectives in anaerobic digestion. Water Sci Technol 43:1–18

Vavilin VA, Rytov SV, Lokshina LY (1996) A description of hydrolysis kinetics in anaerobic degradation of particulate organic matter. Bioresour Technol 56:229–237

Weiland P (2010) Biogas production: current state and perspectives. Appl Microbiol Biot 85:849–860

Yang Z, Guo R, Xu X, Fan X, Li X (2011) Thermo-alkaline pretreatment of lipid-extracted microalgal biomass residues enhances hydrogen production. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 86:454–460

Yazdani SS, Gonzalez R (2007) Anaerobic fermentation of glycerol: a path to economic viability for the biofuels industry. Curr Opin Biotech 18:213–219

Chapter 16
Production of Bioethanol from Biomass: An Overview

Óscar J. Sánchez and Sandra Montoya

Abstract This chapter analyzes the main research trends on production of fuel ethanol from lignocellulosic materials. The main features of different pretreatment and detoxification methods are presented. The importance of process integration to simplify the overall process and improve the conversion of biomass into ethanol is discussed. Strategies for microbial strain development are disclosed in the framework of such integrated processes like simultaneous saccharification and co-fermentation and consolidated bioprocessing. The main challenges to fully develop the biomass-to-ethanol process are highlighted. Finally, the need of integrating the research efforts on molecular techniques and process integration is recognized.

16.1 Lignocellulosic Biomass as Feedstock

The biomass is organic matter made by living organisms that contain energy stored from the sun. The radiant energy from sunlight is absorbed by plants. This energy is converted into chemical energy in the form of glucose, starch or cellulose, through photosynthesis. The energy contained in the biomass (bioenergy) can be released and used by means of its combustion. Thus, the woody biomass is employed by many rural communities all around the world for heating and cooking. The biomass can also be burned in boilers to produce heat and electricity (solid biofuels). In addition, it can be transformed into liquid biofuels that, in turn,

Ó. J. Sánchez (✉) · S. Montoya
Institute of Agricultural Biotechnology, Universidad de Caldas, Calle 65 No. 26-10, Manizales, Colombia
e-mail: osanchez@ucaldas.edu.co

V. K. Gupta and M. G. Tuohy (eds.), *Biofuel Technologies*,
DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-34519-7_16,

are used by the transport sector. Many organic materials can be converted into gaseous biofuels by anaerobic digestion. In this way, the biomass has become the fourth largest energy source after coal, oil and natural gas. It is the most important renewable energy option at present. In terms of energy, the annual global primary production of biomass is equivalent to the 4,500 EJ (1 EJ = 10^{18} J) of solar energy captured each year. The global energy consumption is 490 EJ today, but the current use of biomass for energy is only 50 EJ, mainly in the form of traditional noncommercial woody biomass (Ladanai and Vinterbäck 2009).

The lignocellulosic biomass represents a source of sugars with a great availability on Earth. Many of the materials with a high lignocellulosic content are wastes from different economic activities, in particular, agricultural residues. Thus, their economic utilization for biofuel production implies the employ of plant material not usable for human food. The lignocellulosic biomass has the potential of being a valuable feedstock for production not only of liquid and solid biofuels, but also of a relatively wide spectrum of chemicals and materials. In fact, in the framework of the future biorefineries, the biomass can become the long-term source of hydrocarbon chains and building blocks needed for the humankind to meet its huge requirements of basic organic compounds, synthetic polymers, pharmaceuticals, housing products, and among many others.

In the specific case of the liquid biofuels, the lignocellulosic biomass has acquired great relevance due to its significant content of different fermentable sugars that can be processed into ethanol or even into other fuel alcohols like butanol. These so-called second generation biofuels do not employ the fermentable sugars obtained from resources utilized for food production as sugarcane, sugar beet, corn, or other cereals. Thus, the "food vs. fuel" dilemma can be solved in an environmentally and socially sustainable way leading to the potential global utilization of the vast biomass resources available in almost each country of the world. This ideal situation contrasts with the control exercised by governments and corporations on fossil resources, which are not distributed evenly in the crust. In addition, the biomass is a renewable resource that can be used to sustainably supply bioethanol over the long term. Moreover, it is recognized that the utilization of fuel ethanol produced from lignocellulosics allows the net reduction of greenhouse gas emissions and can contribute to the diversification of rural economies in particular cases (e.g. dedicated energy crops).

However, the main drawback of the lignocellulosic biomass is its recalcitrance that imposes several challenges to the scientific and engineering global community. Due to this recalcitrance, the valuable sugars contained in the biomass are not easily accessible making necessary the employ of chemical and biochemical agents and physical chemical procedures to breakdown the complex lignocellulosic structure. In addition, the most used industrial ethanologenic microorganisms are not capable of assimilating in an efficient way all the sugars released during the processing of biomass. This decreases the conversion and product yield of the overall process and discourages high scale commercial projects for bioethanol production from lignocellulosic materials. Fortunately, the ongoing research and development as well as the existing demonstrative facilities allow being optimistic

about the possibility to use this versatile resource for fuel ethanol production on a large scale as a realistic alternative to fossil fuels.

The lignocellulosic complex is the most abundant biological material on Earth. Its production is estimated at about 200×10^9 ton per year, only 3 % of which is used in nonfood areas, such as the paper and pulp industries (Zhang 2008). An important fraction of economically significant crops corresponds to lignocellulosic materials. For instance, in European countries, 35 % of the harvested over ground biomass of the wheat crop is straw and 45 % is grain (Claassen et al. 1999). The lignocellulosic biomass is made up of very complex biopolymers nonusable for food. The main components of lignocellulosic biomass are cellulose, hemicellulose, and lignin in addition to a small amount of extractives, acids, and minerals (Cardona et al. 2010b).

The cellulose, a β-glucan, is a polymer composed of glucose molecules linked by β (1,4) bonds. It contains between 7,000 and 15,000 glucose units. Due to its linear nature and to the interactions by hydrogen bonds between the OH groups of a same chain or of different chains, cellulose forms very stable crystalline microfibers difficult to break. In general, the cellulose composes 40–60 % of dry matter of lignocellulosic biomass (Hamelinck et al. 2003). The hemicellulose composes 20–40 % of lignocellulosic biomass and consists of very short branched chains of monosaccharide units (200 in average). In their order, the monosaccharides present in hemicellulose are xylose and arabinose (both pentoses), and galactose, glucose and mannose (these latter sugars are hexoses). Other carbohydrate-related compounds like glucuronic, methyl glucuronic and galacturonic acids are also present in hemicellulose structure. Furthermore, the hemicellulose contains, in a lower proportion, acetyl groups esterified to some OH groups of its different sugars. Due to the predominance of xylose, the hemicellulose can be considered as a xylan. Considering its branched structure, the hemicellulose does not form crystalline structures but amorphous ones. Thus, this biopolymer is more soluble in water and has a higher susceptibility to the hydrolysis (Hamelinck et al. 2003). The cellulose and hemicellulose are the source of fermentable sugars for different process microorganisms to convert them into ethanol.

The lignin comprises from 10 to 25 % of lignocellulosic biomass. This component is a very complex phenolic polymer composed of phenyl propane units linked by C–C and C–O–C bonds forming a three-dimensional amorphous structure (Lee 1997). The structural units of lignin are based on the cinnamyl alcohols. Thus, *p*-hydroxyphenyl units are derived from the *p*-coumaryl alcohol, the guaiacyl units are derived from the coniferyl alcohol, and the syringyl units are derived from the sinapyl alcohol. The lignin has hydrophobic character and is a sort of cement between the cells. The interaction and combination between the hemicellulose and lignin provide a covering shell to the cellulose making its degradation more difficult.

The different lignocellulosic materials can be classified into the following groups according to their origin: agricultural wastes (straws, corn stover), agroindustrial residues (sugarcane bagasse, olive stone), hardwood (poplar, oak, birch, and aspen), softwood (pine, fir, cedar, and spruce), cellulosic wastes (newspaper,

waste office paper, and paper sludge), herbaceous biomass (switchgrass, alfalfa hay, and coastal Bermuda grass), and municipal solid waste (wasted paper, cardboard, fruit and vegetable peels, garden residues, and wood items). The most representative materials regarding their potential as feedstock for fuel ethanol production among the agricultural and agro-industrial residues are sugarcane bagasse, corn stover, and wheat straw.

Sugarcane bagasse is generated in sugar mills after extracting the juice from the cane stalks. It is used as a solid biofuel for production of steam and electricity required by the same sugar-production process, remaining frequently an electricity surplus to be sold to the grid (Cardona and Sánchez 2007). About 540 million tons per year of sugarcane bagasse are produced (Cardona et al. 2010a). The yield of bagasse from each ton of sugarcane ranges from 280 kg (Moreira 2000) to 312 kg (Kim and Dale 2004). In turn, the ethanol yield from bagasse reaches 140 L/ton, which implies a global potential production of ethanol from cane bagasse of 58.2 million L/year, an amount greater than all the ethanol produced worldwide in 2007 (Cardona et al. 2010b; Kim and Dale 2004). One feature of cane bagasse related to the other lignocellulosic materials is its low ash content (about 2.4 %) that implies a better performance during fermentation.

Corn stover comprises the stems, leaves, and cobs resulting from corn harvest and is considered as a very promising feedstock for ethanol production in USA, since it is the most abundant agricultural residue in that country: 196 million ton (Graham et al. 2007). A factor to be considered in the case of agricultural residues is that, unlike sugarcane bagasse, their total utilization can lead to soil erosion and reduction of its organic matter content, so the sustainable fraction of collectable crop residues should be defined. Conservation tillage practices for crop residue removal require that 30 % or more of the soil surface be covered with crop residues after planting to reduce soil erosion by water (Kim and Dale 2004). Cereals straws comprise the dry stalks of a cereal plant, crushed or not, after the grain or seed has been removed and have a high content of hemicellulose related to cellulose. Wheat straw presents a high availability in the world (about 529 million ton/year). Wheat straw is an attractive low cost feedstock for production of fuel ethanol because of abundance, renewability and low lignin content. Wheat straw contains lower amounts of lignin and higher levels of cellulose and hemicellulose compared to corn stover (Buranov and Mazza 2008).

Wood lignocellulosic biomass has been considered as a potential feedstock for bioethanol not only in the case of the wood itself, but also in the case of its derivatives (sawdust, shavings, and the collected biomass resulting from forestry activities such as branches, stalks, trunk pieces and trees from forest thinning). Softwood has a higher content of lignin making it more difficult to process into fuel ethanol compared to hardwood. Herbaceous biomass, in turn, represents the lignocellulosic materials from grasses and related plants that have neither woody stems nor woody roots. These plants present reduced lignin content, grow very fast and have reduced nutritional requirements, so they are excellent candidates for their exploitation as crops dedicated to bioenergy production. In this sense, switchgrass has been proposed repeatedly with this purpose.

16.2 Biomass-to-Ethanol Process

Conversion of lignocellulosic raw materials into fuel ethanol is a complex process. It requires several steps, some of which are not completely developed at the present day. Compared to the ethanol production from sucrose-containing materials like sugarcane and sugar beet, the biomass processing implies a greater amount of unit processes and involves a higher amount of substances to be dealt with. For instance, after the breakdown of the lignocellulosic complex, many compounds are released along with several types of carbohydrates (fermentable and not fermentable) present in the lignocellulosic matrix. In addition, some degradation products are formed that can be toxic for fermenting microorganisms. For this reason, it is necessary to include additional steps such as detoxification and neutralization of the pretreated biomass. Moreover, the main component to be transformed into ethanol, the cellulose, should be hydrolyzed prior to or simultaneously with the fermentation step. This hydrolysis step is also distinctive of the production of fuel ethanol from starchy materials like corn. The comparison of ethanol production processes from the three main types of feedstocks is presented in Table 16.1.

Regarding the possibilities to implement several ways of process integration, the biomass-to-ethanol process offers some significant opportunities, which is derived of its inherent complexity. As a mean to decrease the productions costs and improve the efficiency of the different processing steps, the accomplishment of two or more procedures in one single vessel or in a coupled way has become one of the main research directions for production of ethanol from biomass. The goal is to decrease the cost of producing one liter of ethanol from lignocellulosic materials compared to the employ of sucrose-containing feedstocks or starchy materials (see Table 16.1).

The conversion of lignocellulosic biomass into fuel ethanol requires several process steps: pretreatment, detoxification, cellulose hydrolysis, fermentation, ethanol separation and dehydration, and effluent treatment. In addition, the production of some co-products may require some additional steps in the framework of the biorefinery concept.

16.2.1 Pretreatment of Lignocellulosic Biomass

The pretreatment plays a key role in the overall process for ethanol production from biomass. If this step is not successfully accomplished, the conversion of feedstocks will become very low and the costs will be unjustifiably high. The pretreatment procedures themselves and their efficiency directly affect the amount, availability, and quality of the fermentable sugars that will be assimilated by the microorganisms during the subsequent fermentation, the step where the ethanol is formed. At the same time, this process step is energy consuming and may require the addition of chemicals that need to be accounted in the final ethanol cost and environmental performance of the global process. In fact, the pretreatment is one

Table 16.1 Comparison of ethanol production processes

Aspect	Sugar to ethanol	Starch to ethanol	Biomass to ethanol
Availability of raw materials	High	Medium	Very high
Utilization of food resources	Yes	Yes	No
Conditioning of feedstock	Milling, simple pH adjustment	Wet or dry milling	Milling
Pretreatment	Not required	Not required	Required; partial or total degradation of hemicellulose
Detoxification	Not required	Not required	Some degradation products after pretreatment should be removed
Hydrolysis of carbohydrate polymers	Not required	Amylases are used	Cellulases or acids are used
Fermentation	Batch and continuous regimes; fermentation of glucose and fructose	Batch and continuous regimes; glucose fermentation	Mainly batch processes; hexose fermentation, pentose fermentation (optional)
Process microorganism	*S. cerevisiae*, *Z. mobilis*	*S. cerevisiae*, *Z. mobilis*, *K. marxianus*; amylolytic recombinant yeasts	*S. cerevisiae*, *Z. mobilis*, *C. thermocellum*; recombinant *S. cerevisiae*, *Z. mobilis*, *E. coli*
Possibilities of reaction–reaction integration	Not needed	SSF, CBP	SSF, SSCF, CBP
Possibilities of reaction–separation integration	Yes	Yes	Yes
Possibilities of energy integration	Yes	Yes	Yes
Possibilities of co-generation	Yes; sugarcane bagasse can be burned to obtain thermal and electric energy	No	Yes; solid residue containing lignin can be employed for co-generation
Main co-products	Concentrated stillage for fertilization; press mud for animal feed	DDGS (dry milling); CCDS (wet milling)	Furfural, bioproducts from xylose fermentation, and lignin
Existing large-scale commercial production facilities	Yes, mostly in some tropical countries (Brazil, India, Colombia)	Yes, mostly in North America and Europe	No
Production costs, US$/L anhydrous ethanol (Sánchez and Cardona 2008)	0.198–0.215	0.233–0.338	0.396
Ouput/input energy ratio (Sánchez and Cardona 2008)	8.0 (sugarcane); 1.9 (sugar beet)	1.34–1.53	6.0

CBP consolidated bioprocessing, *CCDS* corn condensed distiller's solubles, *DDGS* dried distiller's grains with solubles, *SSCF* simultaneous saccharification and co-fermentation, *SSF* simultaneous saccharification and fermentation

of the most expensive steps: the unit costs of pretreatment can reach about US$0.08/L EtOH (Mosier et al. 2005).

As mentioned above, the lignocellulosic biomass is a complex where the lignin and hemicellulose represent a sort of seal covering the cellulose, the biopolymer with the highest potential to release the fermentable glucose. Therefore, the pretreatment of the lignocellulosic materials has the following goals:

- Breakdown of the cellulose-hemicellulose matrix.
- Reduction of the crystallinity degree of cellulose and increase of the fraction of amorphous cellulose.
- Hydrolysis of hemicellulose and formation of hexoses and pentoses derived from it.
- Release and partial degradation of lignin.
- Increase of the biomass porosity.
- Reduction of the formation of by-products inhibiting the subsequent steps of cellulose hydrolysis and fermentation.
- Elimination of the need of reducing the biomass particle size.

During the last 50 years, many methods to pretreat the lignocellulosic biomass for ethanol production have been proposed. Some of these methods have reached a certain degree of maturity (e.g. dilute-acid pretreatment), while it is expected that the research on other less aggressive methods can contribute to the improvement of the overall process in terms of both economic and environmental performance. These methods can be divided into physical, chemical, physical–chemical, and biological. In a previous review (Sánchez and Cardona 2008) and in the well-known work of Sun and Cheng (2002), the details of several of these procedures were disclosed. The main features of the pretreatment methods are presented in Table 16.2.

Most reports on ethanol production from biomass involve the use of dilute-acid pretreatment, steam explosion, ammonia fiber explosion (AFEX), alkaline pretreatment, and organosolv process. The first two methods share certain similarity related to the employ of moderate or high pressure under acidic conditions (steam explosion releases acetic acid or may be improved by adding sulfuric acid) making the cellulose more accessible to further enzymatic hydrolysis and allowing the formation of pentoses and hexoses from hemicellulose. It is considered that steam explosion is the most effective method for hardwood while dilute-acid hydrolysis shows higher recovery of hemicellulose-derived sugars, although it is most expensive due to the need of neutralizing the resulting streams from the process (Lynd 1996; Sánchez and Cardona 2008). Both methods release potential toxic substances for fermenting microorganisms. AFEX is one of the leading pretreatment technologies, which significantly enhances enzymatic digestibility without physically stripping out hemicellulose and lignin from the biomass, unlike other pretreatments (Gao et al. 2010). Although AFEX has lower levels of inhibitor generation and lignin loss, it requires the addition of xylanases to degrade the remaining hemicellulose (Lau et al. 2009). The latter two pretreatment methods mentioned above are chemical procedures that do not need high pressures and exhibit a high decrease of the crystallinity degree of cellulose and significant

Table 16.2 Main features of different pretreatment methods of the lignocellulosic biomass

Method	Fundament	Further cellulose conversion	Hemicellulose degradation	Lignin degradation/ solubilization	Inhibitors formation	Remarks	References
Physical methods:							
Mechanical comminution	Size reduction of biomass particles	50–60 %	–	No	No	Very high energy costs; reduces cellulose crystallinity	Alvo and Belkacemi (1997)
Pyrolysis	Thermal treatment without oxygen	–	Yes	No	Mostly phenols, benzene, furan, furfuryl derivatives, and oxygenat. compounds	>300 °C; formation of volatile products and char	Khiyami et al. (2005)
Physical chemical methods:							
Steam explosion	Hydrothermal treatment using saturated steam with subsequent decompression	Up to 90 %	80–100 %	No	Yes, mostly furfural	160–290 °C, $p = 0.69$–4.85 MPa; high solids load (>50 %); acids released from biomass catalyze the process; addition of H_2SO_4, SO_2 or CO_2 improves the effic. of further enzyme hydrolysis; hardwood	Ballesteros et al. (2004), Hamelinck et al. (2005)
Liquid hot water (LHW)	Pressurized hot water	>90 %	80–100 %	20–50 % lignin solubiliz.	None or low	170–230 °C, $p > 5$ MPa; low solids load (< 20 %)	Laser et al. (2002)
Ammonia fiber explosion (AFEX)	Ammonia treatment under pressure with subsequent decompression	50–90 %	0–60 %	10–20 % lignin solubiliz.	None or low	90–130 °C, $p = 1.12$–4.48 MPa	Dale et al. (1996), Gao et al. (2010)
CO_2 explosion	CO_2 treatment under pressure with subsequent decompression	>75 %	Yes	No	No	Up to 200 °C, $p = 5.62$ MPa	Agbor et al. (2011), Menon and Rao (2012), Sun and Cheng (2002)

(continued)

Table 16.2 (continued)

Method	Fundament	Further cellulose conversion	Hemicellulose degradation	Lignin degradation/ solubilization	Inhibitors formation	Remarks	References
Chemical methods:							
Ozonolysis	Treatment using ozone	>57 %	–	Yes	No	20–25 °C, $p = 0.1$ MPa; hardwood and softwood	Sun and Cheng (2002)
Dilute-acid hydrolysis	Treatment using dilute acids under moderate pressure and high temperature	–	80–100 %	No	Yes	120–200 °C, $p = 1$ MPa; 0.75–5 % H_2SO_4, HCl or HNO_3; up to 40 % solids load; hardwood, herbaceous biomass	Hamelinck et al. (2005)
Concentrated-acid hydrolysis	Treatment by concentrated acids and high temperature	–	~100 %	–	Yes; glucose degradation products	170–190 °C, $p = 0.1$ MPa; 10–30 % H_2SO_4; high solids load; acid recovery needed; MSW	Cuzens and Miller (1997)
Alkaline hydrolysis	Treatment using alkalis at moderate temperature	>65 %	>50 %	24–55 % lignin removal	Low	60–120 °C, $p = 0.1$ MPa; NaOH, $Ca(OH)_2$; hardwood	Kaar and Holtzapple (2000)
Microwave/radio-frequency assisted alkaline pretreatment	Dielectric heating of biomass presoaked in alkaline solutions by microwave or radio frequency	50–60 % (MW)/ 68 % (RF)	–	~100 % (MW)/ 75 % (RF) lignin removal	–	190 °C (MW)/90 °C (RF), $p = 0.1$ MPa; 0.1–0.2 g alkali/g biom.; 2.45 GHz (MW)/ 27.12 MHz (RF); 10–50 % solids load	Hu and Wen (2008), Hu et al. (2008)
Oxidative delignification	Use of peroxidase and H_2O_2	95 %	~100 %	50 % lignin solubiliz.	–	20 °C, $p = 0.1$ MPa; 2 % H_2O_2	Sun and Cheng (2002)
Wet oxidation	Treatment using oxygen under pressure and water	–	–	Yes	Yes	195 °C, $pO_2 = 1.2$ MPa; small amounts of Na_2CO_3 or H_2SO_4; high solids load	Varga et al. (2004)

(continued)

Table 16.2 (continued)

Method	Fundament	Further cellulose conversion	Hemicellulose degradation	Lignin degradation/ solubilization	Inhibitors formation	Remarks	References
Organosolv process	Treatment using organic solvents	–	~100 %	~100 % lignin solubiliz.	Yes	100–250 °C, $p = 0.1$ MPa; methanol, ethanol, acetone, ethylene glycol; solvent recovery needed; hardwood and softwood	Agbor et al. (2011), Pan et al. (2005)
SPORL	Treatment by dilute solutions of sodium bisulfite and sulfuric acid (liquor)	–	64–100 %	Up to 40 % lignin removal	Yes; basically furfural and HMF	180 °C, $p = 0.1$ MPa; 3:1 ratio of liquor to biomass	Zhu et al. (2010)
Pretreatment with ionic liquids	Dissolution of biomass by selecting proper ionic liquids, then addition of an anti-solvent to precipitate pretreated biomass without lignin	75–90 %	Yes	32–94 % lignin solubiliz.	Low	120 °C, $p = 0.1$ MPa; cations: alkyl methylimidazolium, alkyl methyl-pyridinium; anions: acetate, alkyl phosphate	Tan and Lee (2012), Weerachanchai et al. (2012)
Biological methods:							
Fungal pretreatment	Solid-state cultivation of brown-, white- and soft-rot fungi on biomass particles	–	–	Yes	No	30 °C, $p = 0.1$ MPa; slow process (3–5 weeks); fungi produces cellulases, xylanases and ligninases	Tengerdy and Szakacs (2003), Wang et al. (2012)
Biorganosolv pretreatment	Fungi decompose the lignin network followed by ethanol treatment	–	90–100 %	Partial lignin degradat.	No	30 °C (cultivat.), 140–200 °C (ethanolysis), $p = 0.1$ MPa	Itoh et al. (2003)

HMF hydroxylmethyl furfural, *MSW* municipal solid waste, *MW* microwave, *RF* radio frequency, *SPORL* Sulfite pretreatment to overcome recalcitrance of lignocellulose

efficiencies in the degradation of lignin (especially in the case of organosolv process). The main attractive feature of the alkaline pretreatment is its simplicity but with less efficiency in terms of further cellulose conversion. The employ of organic solvents is very suitable for lignocellulosic materials with high lignin content (e.g. softwood), but has the main disadvantage that they have to be recovered, which adds additional costs to the overall process. Undoubtedly, the separation, solubilization, or degradation of lignin is quite desirable, since it can alter or block the binding of cellulases to the cellulose in the following processing steps. Taking into account that one of the challenges of the biomass-to-ethanol process is the increase of the specific activity of these costly enzymes, methods that allow the fractionation of biomass (separation of cellulose and lignin, hydrolysis of hemicellulose) are very attractive, but the level of development of such procedures is still immature to justify a cost-effective operation. One alternative is the combination of two (or more) pretreatment methods in such a way that, during the first pretreatment procedure, the lignocellulosic matrix breaks down, the fraction of amorphous cellulose increases and hemicellulose degrades to recover valuable sugars, and then the lignin can be separated or degraded through the second pretreatment method. For instance, Shahbazi et al. (2005) proposed a sequential fractionation scheme involving steam explosion and alkaline delignification where several products can be obtained during the pretreatment of softwood: extractives, cellulose, lignin, and solubilized hemicellulose.

The pretreatment with liquid hot water (LHW) is one of the most promising and attainable at mid term method (10–15 years). Laser et al. (2002) point out that this method is comparable to dilute-acid pretreatment but without addition of acids or generation of neutralization wastes. LHW presents elevated recovery rates of pentoses and do not produce inhibitors under optimal conditions. However, the allowable solids load is much less than that for steam explosion that is usually greater than 50 %.

Recently, some relatively novel pretreatment methods are being developed. The utilization of ionic liquids offers some significant advantages related to their ability of solubilizing the lignocellulosic biomass at moderate temperature and under atmospheric pressure. The properties of the ionic liquids (extractive capabilities, low melting point, nonvolatility, high polarity, environmental friendliness, and high possibilities of being functionalized to act as acids, bases or ligands, among others) have made them to be very suitable to extract lignin and dissolve the carbohydrates present in the biomass (mostly cellulose) decreasing its crystallinity (Weerachanchai et al. 2012). During pretreatment with ionic liquids, they act as solvent to dissolve cellulose or lignin or both biopolymers disrupting the shield formed by lignin and hemicellulose. Ionic liquids can also alter cellulose crystalline structure when the dissolved cellulose is regenerated for subsequent reutilizations. This is accomplished by precipitating out from ionic liquids through the addition of anti-solvent such as water, methanol, ethanol and acetone (Tan and Lee 2012). Thus, the resulting pretreated biomass is essentially more susceptible to the enzymatic hydrolysis overcoming the barrier of the biomass recalcitrance.

Among the novel pretreatment methods proposed, the combination of microwave or radio frequency with alkaline pretreatment should be highlighted. In this case, the dielectric heating (microwave or radio frequency) uses the ability of some compounds to transform electromagnetic energy into heat. When the biomass is treated by dielectric heating, the more polar part will absorb more energy leading to a "hot spot" within nonhomogeneous materials. This type of heating results in an "explosion" effect among the particles and improves the disruption of the recalcitrant structures of the biomass (Hu et al. 2008). Other efforts have been directed to the application of electrolyzed water at low pH, which has a strong oxidizing effect, or at high pH, which has a reducing potential. The employ of electrolyzed water may allow further cellulose conversion of up to 95 % if combined with other methods like a mild alkaline pretreatment in order to remove the lignin and the hemicellulose with a minimum formation of inhibitors (Wang et al. 2010). Other new pretreatment methods like the sulfite pretreatment to overcome recalcitrance of lignocellulose (SPORL) have shown a promising performance as well (see Table 16.2).

The fungal pretreatment is a low-cost option to improve the digestibility and fermentability of the lignocellulosic biomass, although its main drawbacks are the length of the process and the fact that the fungi consume part of the carbohydrates that, otherwise, could be converted into ethanol during the fermentation step. In particular, the white-rot fungi like *Coriolus versicolor* have the ability to degrade the lignin present in the biomass favoring the subsequent cellulose hydrolysis and glucose fermentation. If the biological pretreatment is followed with other procedure like LHW, the efficiency of the overall process can be significantly enhanced. Wang et al. (2012) demonstrated this approach obtaining, in addition, a high hemicellulose removal and significant increases in glucose yield during the following hydrolysis step using commercial cellulases. If the fungal pretreatment is accomplished following other mild pretreatment method, the length of the overall process can be significantly reduced. For instance, Yu et al. (2009) combined a chemical pretreatment (2 % H_2O_2 during 48 h) with the delignification using solid-state cultures of *Pleorotus ostreatus* and reached a reduction of the biological pretreatment from 60 to 18 d. The authors indicate that the enhancing of the efficiency could possibly attribute to the structure disruption of the biomass during the first pretreatment step. It should be noted that white-rot fungi produces cellulases as well, along with other valuable bioproducts like bioactive polysaccharides (Montoya et al. 2011a, b).

16.2.2 Detoxification of Biomass Hydrolyzates

After the pretreatment step, the lignocellulosic complex is broken down in a high degree, the cellulose reduces its crystallinity degree, the lignin and the cellulose are separated from each other, and the hemicellulose is mainly degraded. The resulting biomass slurry is separated into a solid fraction containing cellulose and lignin, and

a liquid fraction that contains the soluble compounds including the products of the hemicellulose hydrolysis. One indicator of the pretreatment efficiency is the recovery of sugars, i.e., the amount of released xylose, arabinose, mannose and other sugars derived from the hemicellulose. The sugars contained in this hemicellulose hydrolyzate are valuable considering that there exist some yeasts and other microorganisms, which are able to assimilate them in order to synthesize ethanol. Ethanol produced in this way is added to the ethanol produced during the conventional fermentation of the glucose released during the cellulose hydrolysis in order to improve the efficiency of the overall biomass-to-ethanol process. However, some degradation products formed as consequence of the action of chemicals, high temperature or pressure during pretreatment remain in the hemicellulose hydrolyzate along with extractives from the biomass itself. For instance, the furfural is formed as a degradation product of the xylose released under temperatures higher than 120 °C. In addition, the lignin can be partially degraded in dependence on the pretreatment method. This partial degradation is responsible for the phenolic compounds present in the hemicellulose hydrolyzate. If this hydrolyzate is to be used as a culture medium for ethanologenic fermentation (during the pentose fermentation as represented in Fig. 16.1), all these compounds are potentially toxic for the pentose-assimilating microorganisms. Alternatively, the whole slurry obtained after pretreatment can be directed to the cellulose hydrolysis step in order to obtain glucose. Thus, all the sugars from the hemicellulose degradation and cellulose hydrolysis (biomass hydrolyzate) are then fermented into ethanol by special microorganisms assimilating both hexoses (mostly glucose) and pentoses (mostly xylose) as will be discussed below. Nevertheless, the toxic compounds are present in this biomass hydrolyzate as well decreasing the efficiency of the fermentation step. For this reason, a detoxification step is required in both processing alternatives.

Several detoxification methods have been proposed in the framework of fuel ethanol production from lignocellulosic biomass. As in the case of the pretreatment, these methods can be divided into physical, chemical, and biological, whose main features are presented in Table 16.3. Alkaline detoxification is the most employed detoxification method, especially when $Ca(OH)_2$ is used (overliming). The addition of alkali up to very high pH values leads to the formation of a significant amount of precipitate composed by calcium salts, which entrain the inhibitory compounds or causes them to settle. In addition, many inhibitors are unstable at pH higher than 9. Alkaline treatment is considered one of the best detoxification procedures since a high percentage of substances such as furan aldehydes and phenolic compounds can be removed by this method, improving the fermentability of the resulting liquid medium especially when biomass hydrolyzates pretreated by dilute acid are employed (Persson et al. 2002). However, this method implies the implementation of a neutralization step after the lime is added and a subsequent filtration procedure to remove the precipitate. This negatively affects the economy of the global process.

The fermenting microorganisms such as yeast has a natural ability to reduce the furan aldehydes to the corresponding less inhibitory alcohols. This biological conversion of inhibitors into less inhibitory compounds directly in the fermenter is

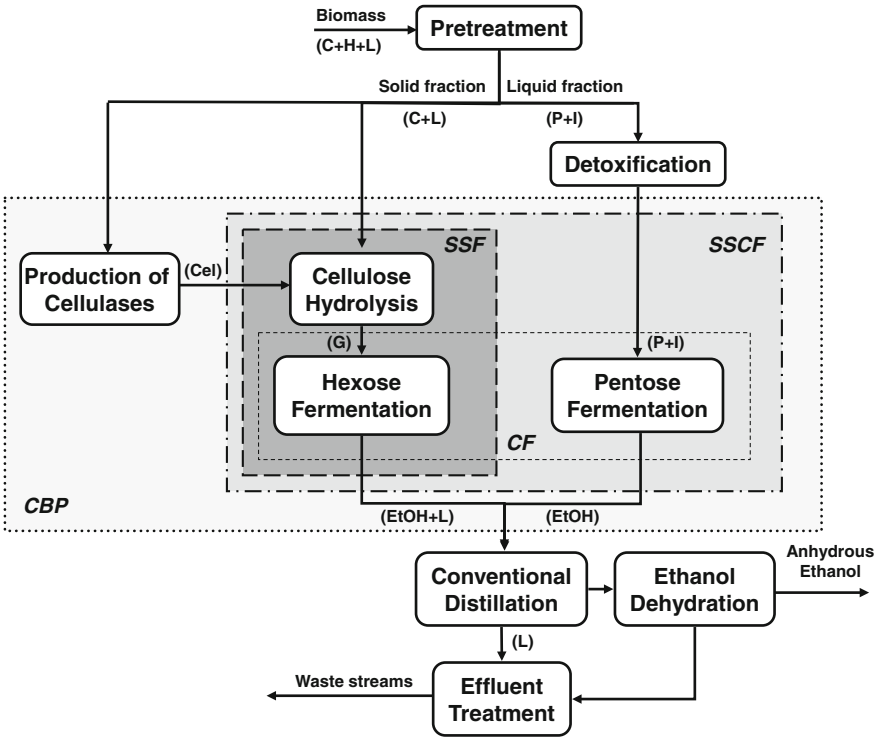


Fig. 16.1 Schematic diagram of the overall process for fuel ethanol production from lignocellulosic biomass. The possibilities for reaction–reaction integration are shown. *CF* co-fermentation, *SSF* simultaneous saccharification and fermentation, *SSCF* simultaneous saccharification and co-fermentation, *CBP* consolidated bioprocessing. Main components of the streams: *C* cellulose, *H* hemicellulose, *L* lignin, *Cel* cellulases, *G* glucose, *P* pentoses, *I* inhibitors, *EtOH* ethanol. From Cardona and Sánchez (2007)

named in situ detoxification. However, reduction of furfural by *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* has been associated with effects such as increased consumption of NADH, decreased growth, decreased ethanol productivity, and accumulation of toxic levels of acetaldehyde (Alriksson et al. 2011). Thus, the biological in situ detoxification of furfural may therefore represent a partially inhibited fermentation. In particular, it has been suggested that the primary cause of inhibition by furfural was the process of its reduction rather than a direct inhibitory action for the case of ethanologenic *Escherichia coli* (Miller et al. 2009). Precisely, a novel detoxification method proposed by Alriksson et al. (2011) implies the addition of reducing agents such as sodium dithionite or sodium sulfite directly to the fermentation vessel in order to accomplish the in situ reduction of inhibitors like furfural. In this way, the efficiency of the fermentation can be significantly enhanced and the ethanol yield can reach values above the reference fermentation based on a medium containing glucose and mannose without inhibitors.

Table 16.3 Main features of different detoxification methods of the hemicellulose hydrolyzate resulting from the pretreatment step

Method	Fundament	Remarks	Relative yield[a]	References
Physical methods				
Evaporation	Volatile inhibitors are removed	Reduction of acetic acidand phenolic compounds in nonvolatile fraction	93 %	Palmqvist and Hahn-Hägerdal (2000)
Extraction	Removal of inhibitors by using organic solvents	Diethyl ether, ethyl acetate; 3:1 org. phase to aqueous phase ratio	93 %	Cantarella et al. (2004), Palmqvist and Hahn-Hägerdal (2000)
Adsorption	Inhibitors are retained in the adsorbent bed	Activated carbon, amberlite hydrophobic adsorbent; some loss of sugars	90 %	Lee et al. (2011), Weil et al. (2002)
Chemical methods				
Neutralization	Modification of solubility of toxic compounds, then removal of them by membrane filtration or adsorption	$Ca(OH)_2$, CaO, NaOH, pH = 6	–	Cantarella et al. (2004), Yu and Zhang (2003)
Overliming	Removal of toxic compounds by entrainment in the precipitate of calcium salts (e.g. gypsum)	$Ca(OH)_2$, pH = 9–10.5, 50 °C; mostly removal of furfural, HMF, acetic acid, and part of phenolic compounds; low sugar loss	Comparable to that of ref. fermn.	Lin et al. (2012), Palmqvist and Hahn-Hägerdal (2000), Saha et al. (2005)
Ionic exchange	Resins adsorbs the inhibitors, regeneration with ammonia	Amberlyst A20, Poly(4-vinyl pyridine); removal of acetic acid, furfural and phenolic compounds	Comparable to that of ref. fermn.	Wooley et al. (1999b), Xie et al. (2005)
Detoxification with reducing agents	Reducing agents improves the conversion of furan aldehydes by the fermenting microorganisms	Sodium dithionite or sulfite; implementation of in situ detoxification during fermentation	>100 %	Alriksson et al. (2011)
Biological methods				
Enzymatic detoxification	Degradation (oxidation) of phenolic compounds by ligninases	Laccase, lignin peroxidase, 30 °C	–	Moreno et al. (2012)
Microbial detoxification	Bacteria degrade toxic compounds without utilizing sugars	50 °C, *Ureibacillus thermosphaericus*	Comparable to that of overliming	Okuda et al. (2008)

[a] Comparison of the ethanol yield for fermentation of the detoxified hydrolyzate related to that of the reference fermentation (100 %) based on a glucose-based medium without inhibitors
HMF hydroxymethyl furfural, *ref. fermn* reference fermentation

16.2.3 Cellulose Hydrolysis

The cellulose is the main source of fermentable sugars present in the lignocellulosic biomass for ethanologenic fermentation. After pretreatment and detoxification steps, the cellulose has been separated from the lignocellulosic complex and increased its amorphous fraction. Thus, this biopolymer is ready for its hydrolysis into glucose units or even for its direct conversion into ethanol. Unfortunately, the two microorganisms with the greatest probability to be used in a commercial process for bioethanol production at high scale nowadays (*S. cerevisiae* or *Zymomonas mobilis* are not able to assimilate the cellulose. For this reason, almost all the process configurations proposed for production of ethanol from lignocellulosics comprise a cellulose hydrolysis step. This process can be carried out by strong acids or cellulolytic enzymes. The former method implies the use of dilute or concentrated sulfuric or hydrochloric acids. The hydrolysis of cellulose through dilute acids is performed at 200–240 °C at 1.5 % acid concentration and entails the partial degradation of glucose into hydroxymethyl furfural (HMF) and other nondesirable products. The hydrolysis using concentrated acids (e.g. 30–70 % H_2SO_4) exhibits higher glucose yields (about 90 %) in relatively short times (10–12 h), but the acid recovery is required (Sánchez and Cardona 2008). This significantly increases the cost of the hydrolysis step.

The employ of cellulases has demonstrated better results for the subsequent fermentation since no degradation products are formed from glucose. However, the process is slower than the acid-catalyzed hydrolysis. Actually, complex cellulolytic preparations are used within the process for fuel ethanol production from biomass. These preparations contain several types of cellulases each one with different mechanisms of action on the cellulose. In general, the commercial cellulolytic products are obtained from *Trichoderma reesei* by submerged aerobic fermentation using glucose or lignocellulosic materials as feedstocks. This fungus releases a mixture of cellulases, among which at least two cellobiohydrolases, five endoglucanases, β-glucosidases and hemicellulases can be found (Zhang and Lynd 2004). Cellobiohydrolases break down $\beta(1,4)$ linkages from nonreducing or reducing ends of the cellulose chain releasing cellobiose or even glucose, whereas endoglucanases hydrolyze these same linkages randomly inside the chain. The action of cellobiohydrolases causes a gradual decrease in the polymerization degree while endoglucanases cause the rupture of cellulose in smaller chains reducing rapidly the polymerization degree. Endoglucanases especially act on amorphous cellulose, whereas cellobiohydrolases are capable to act on crystalline cellulose as well (Lynd et al. 2002). The β-glucosidases are responsible of hydrolyzing cellobiose formed by the action of cellobiohydrolases into two molecules of glucose. The combined action of these enzymes is synergic leading to the conversion of cellulose into glucose. The cellulases should be adsorbed onto the surface of substrate particles before hydrolysis of insoluble cellulose takes place. Three-dimensional structure of these particles in combination with their size and shape determines if β-glycosidic bonds are or are not accessible to enzymatic

attack (Zhang and Lynd 2004). This makes hydrolysis process to be slower related to the enzymatic degradation of other biopolymers. For comparison, the hydrolysis rate of starch by amylases is 100 times faster than the hydrolysis rate of cellulose by cellulases under industrial processing conditions (Cardona et al. 2010b). The most important factors to be taken into account for hydrolysis of cellulose contained in lignocellulosic materials are the reaction time, temperature, pH, enzyme dosage, and substrate load.

The utilization of cellulases directly affects the global costs of biomass-to-ethanol process. The cellulases available for ethanol industry account for 36–45 % of the costs of bioethanol produced from lignocellulosic materials. According to different evaluations (Mielenz 2001; Reith et al. 2002; Sheehan and Himmel 1999), a 30 % reduction in capital costs and 10-fold decrease in the cost of current cellulases are required for this process to be competitive related to ethanol produced from starchy materials. These analyses evidence the need of improving the cellulase performance in the following aspects: Increase of thermal stability, improvement of the binding to cellulose, increase of specific activity, and reduction of the non-specific binding to lignin. In particular, the increase of specific activity of cellulases may reduce the costs significantly. It is estimated that a 10-fold increase in specific activity could lead to US¢15.85 savings per liter of ethanol produced. Among the strategies to enhance the specific activity are the increase in the efficiency of active sites through protein engineering or random mutagenesis, augment of thermal tolerance, improvement in the degradation of the crystalline structure of cellulose, enhancement of the synergism among the cellulases from different sources, and reduction of non-specific bindings (Cardona et al. 2010b; Sheehan and Himmel 1999).

In general, the costs of cellulases are considered high. The cost of the currently available cellulase preparations is very high that limits the commercial implementation of ethanol production from biomass. This cost can reach US$16/100,000 filter paper units (FPU, a way for measuring cellulase activity). Percival Zhang et al. (2006) point out that Genencor International and Novozymes Biotech have developed submerged fermentation processes allowing the reduction of the cellulase cost from US$5.40/gal ethanol to about US$0.20/gal ethanol. Reduction in the cost of cellulases can be achieved only by concerted efforts, which address several aspects of enzyme production from the raw material used for production to microbial strain improvement. Use of cheaper raw materials and cost-effective fermentation strategies like solid-state fermentation can improve the economics of cellulase production (Sukumaran et al. 2009). According to preliminary evaluations of the National Renewable Energy Laboratory of the United States (NREL) cited by Tengerdy and Szakacs (2003), the cost of in situ cellulase production by submerged culture is US$0.38/100,000 FPU. Hence, cellulase costs comprise 20 % of ethanol production costs assuming them in US$1.5/gallon. On the other hand, and as cited above, commercial cellulase cost is prohibitive for this process. In contrast, these authors indicate that the cost for producing cellulases by solid-state fermentation of corn stover would be US$0.15/100,000 FPU that would correspond to US$0.12/gal EtOH, i.e. near 8 % of total costs.

Reduction in the cost of fuel ethanol may also be achieved by efficient technologies for saccharification (hydrolysis), which includes the use of more effective enzyme cocktails and hydrolysis conditions. *Trichoderma* fungi currently employed for commercial cellulase production produce very less quantities of β-glucosidase compared to the other cellulases. As cellobiohydrolases are inhibited by cellobiose, β-glucosidase from other source needs to be added in order to complement the action of the cellulases from this fungus. Moreover, the product of the reaction catalyzed by the β-glucosidase, the glucose, inhibits it. Due to this, the efficiency of enzymatic hydrolysis cannot be improved much more by increasing enzyme loading, so most of the enzyme added for saccharification remains unutilized. In this way, commercial preparations are supplemented with β-glucosidases from sources like *Aspergillus niger*. In the seek of a cost-effective process, the production of *T. reesei* cellulases and *A. niger* β-glucosidase by solid-state fermentation is being developed (Sukumaran et al. 2009).

In general, the main research directions for cellulase engineering of noncomplexed cellulase systems (fungal cellulases) are aimed at the rational design (protein engineering) for each cellulase, based on knowledge of the cellulase structure and the catalytic mechanism. In addition, the research efforts are also aimed at the directed evolution for each cellulase, in which the improved enzymes or ones with new properties were selected or screened after random mutagenesis and/or molecular recombination. The greatest advantage of directed evolution is that it is independent of knowledge of enzyme structure and of the interactions between enzyme and substrate. Finally, the research trends should be also directed to the reconstitution of cellulase mixtures (cocktails) active on insoluble cellulosic substrates, yielding an improved hydrolysis rate or higher cellulose digestibility (Percival Zhang et al. 2006).

16.2.4 Fermentation Step

During the fermentation step, all the sugars derived from the pretreatment and cellulose hydrolysis steps are converted into ethanol by using one or different fermenting microorganisms. There exist several options to perform this conversion depending on the type of sugars assimilated by the process microorganisms and on the technological configuration of the process.

16.2.4.1 Fermentation of Cellulose Hydrolyzates

Once the cellulose has been hydrolyzed, the resulting glucose-containing stream should be processed into ethanol. For this, conventional fermentation using yeast is mostly used. In this sense, the process is similar to that employed for fermenting the glucose solutions obtained after the enzymatic hydrolysis of the starch when starchy materials are used as feedstock. The ethanolic fermentation is one of the most

studied biological processes. Nevertheless, the need of increasing the efficiency of ethanol production including the usage of alternative feedstocks has led to the development of new fermentation methods with better techno-economic and environmental indicators. Traditionally, the most used microorganism for ethanolic fermentation is the yeast *S. cerevisiae*. However, for ethanol production from lignocellulosic biomass, there is a wider variety of process microorganisms employed (e.g. *Zymomonas* bacteria, xylose-assimilating yeasts, or thermophilic clostridia). *S. cerevisiae* converts hexoses in pyruvate through glycolysis, which is decarboxylated to obtain acetaldehyde that is finally reduced to ethanol generating two moles of ATP by each mol of consumed hexose under anaerobic conditions. In addition, this microorganism also has the ability to convert hexoses in CO_2 by aerobic respiration favoring the production of yeast cells. Therefore, aeration is an important factor for both cell growth and ethanol production. Although these yeasts have the ability to grow under anaerobic conditions, small amounts of oxygen are needed for synthesis of such substances like fatty acids and sterols. Inhibition of cell growth by ethanol decreases at microaerobic conditions related to fully anaerobic cultivation. *S. cerevisiae* has demonstrated its elevated resistance to the presence of inhibitors in the lignocellulosic hydrolyzate. In the case of the more productive continuous regime, one way to enhance this resistance is the increase in the cell retention to prevent wash-out and maintain high yeast cell density.

Other yeast species have been proposed for fermentation of cellulose hydrolyzates. In particular, the thermotolerant yeast *Kluyveromyces marxianus* has demonstrated their capability for fermenting glucose at relatively high temperatures of 40–45 °C (Singh et al. 1998). The bacterium *Z. mobilis* is one promising ethanologenic microorganism considering its ethanol yield higher than that of *S. cerevisiae* and its growth rate. The spectrum of assimilable substrate by this bacterium is quite similar to the yeast: glucose, fructose, sucrose and maltose.

The fermentation of cellulose hydrolyzates obtained after the enzymatic hydrolysis of the washed solid fraction of the pretreated biomass generally does not imply special difficulties since the inhibitor concentrations are very low. Nevertheless, compared to starch and sugarcane fermentations, the sugar concentrations after hydrolysis are often low with values approaching typically not more than 70 g/L (Brethauer and Wyman 2010). This is explained by the difficulties associated to the handling of suspensions with solids concentrations greater than 10 % by weight to the bioreactors for enzymatic hydrolysis of cellulose and to the inhibition of cellulases with the glucose formed. Thus, a concentration of the hydrolyzate stream might be needed to achieve higher concentrations, but the operating costs would be increased as well.

The fermentation of the hydrolyzates can carried out batchwise or continuously. In the latter case, the recycling of part of the effluent stream could be required due to the need of maintaining a high cell concentration. However, the recycling leads to the accumulation of inhibitors within the fermenter. Thus, a detoxification process is required if the whole slurry from pretreatment step enters the cellulose hydrolysis and fermentation steps.

16.2.4.2 Pentose Fermentation

The detoxified hemicellulose hydrolyzate resulting from the pretreatment step contains an important amount of pentoses and hexoses. The xylose, a pentose, is the most relevant sugar of this hydrolyzate. To take advantage of this stream, xylose-assimilating yeasts can be employed to produce ethanol, but in this case, the biomass utilization rates are lower related to microorganisms that only assimilate hexoses. Ogier et al. (1999) have compiled information about the main fermentative indexes for the most promising pentose-assimilating yeasts: *Candida shehatae*, *Pichia stipitis* and *Pachysolen tannophilus*. Most pentose-fermenting yeasts are mesophiles. One of the main challenges in pentose fermentation lies in the fact that the productivities of pentose utilizing microorganisms are less than those of hexose-fermenting ones. On the other hand, there are a few cases where the immobilization of these yeasts increases the ethanol productivity (Chandrakant and Bisaria 1998), unlike the case of hexose-fermenting yeasts or *Z. mobilis*. Generally, the assimilation rate of pentoses by natural pentose-fermenting microorganisms is slower than that for hexoses. For example, although *P. stipitis* yeast can naturally ferment pentose sugars to ethanol, hexose sugars are used preferentially, and pentose uptake is competitively inhibited by hexoses. Thus, pentose fermentation is only possible at very low glucose concentrations. In addition, microaerophilic conditions are required, which are difficult to maintain in large-scale systems, and even then yields are low (Brethauer and Wyman 2010).

The dimorphic filamentous fungus *Mucor indicus* is a promising alternative to *S. cerevisiae* as it is capable of xylose fermentation, is safe for humans, and produces ethanol from hexoses with comparable yields and productivities. Brethauer and Wyman (2010) have indicated the possibility of implementing continuous processes for ethanol production from biomass using this microorganism. Other microorganisms are able to assimilate both hexoses and pentoses. In particular, thermophilic clostridia have the ability to utilize xylose and synthesize ethanol as well. Ogier et al. (1999) also have compiled information about the fermentative indexes for the xylose-assimilating thermophilic bacteria *Clostridium thermosaccharolyticum*, *Thermoanaerobacter ethanolicus* and *Bacillus stearothermophilus*. Lynd et al. (2001) report low concentrations (in the order of 25 g/L) of ethanol obtained by *C. thermosaccharolyticum* cultivated in xylose-based media during batch and continuous cultures. These authors studied the influence of different factors limiting the substrate utilization for continuous cultures at progressively higher feed xylose concentrations.

16.2.4.3 Co-fermentation of Lignocellulosic Hydrolyzates

The co-fermentation process is aimed at the complete assimilation by the microbial cells of all the sugars resulting from lignocellulosic degradation and consists in the employ of a mixture of two or more compatible microorganisms that assimilate both the hexoses and pentoses present in the medium. This means that

the fermentation is carried out by a mixed culture. However, the use of mixed cultures faces the problem consisting in that microorganisms utilizing only hexoses grow faster than pentose-utilizing microorganisms leading to a more elevated conversion of hexoses into ethanol (Cardona and Sánchez 2007). To solve this problem, the employ of respiratory deficient mutants of the hexose-fermenting microorganisms has been proposed. In this way, the fermentation and growth activities of the pentose-fermenting microorganisms are increased considering that they grow very low when are cultivated along with rapid hexose-fermenting yeasts. Considering the indicators for the process using only the glucose-assimilating bacterium *Z. mobilis* grown on the biomass hydrolyzate, the productivities of the mixed culture are less than those of the bacterium, but the yields are comparable, which offers a space for further research (Delgenes et al. 1996). One of the additional problems arisen in this kind of configurations is that pentose-fermenting yeasts present a greater inhibition by ethanol that limits the use of concentrated substrates in the system (Cardona et al. 2010b).

Other variant of co-fermentation consists in the utilization of a single microorganism capable of assimilating both hexoses and pentoses in an optimal way allowing high conversion and ethanol yield. Although in the nature these microorganisms exist, their efficiency and ethanol conversion rates are reduced for implementation of an industrial process. Hence, the addition of an enzyme transforming the xylose into xylulose (xylose-isomerase) to the culture medium has been proposed. In this way, microorganisms exhibiting high rates of conversion to ethanol and elevated yields (like *S. cerevisiae*) can assimilate the xylulose involving it in the metabolic pathways leading to the ethanol. On the other hand, a high efficiency in the conversion to ethanol can be reached through the genetic modification of yeasts or bacteria already adapted to the ethanolic fermentation. The microorganisms most commonly modified for this purpose are *S. cerevisiae* and *Z. mobilis*, to which genes encoding the assimilation of pentoses have been introduced. The other approach for genetic modification is the introduction of genes encoding the metabolic pathways for ethanol production to microorganisms that are capable of fermenting both hexoses and pentoses in their native form. The "design" of ethanologenic bacteria like *E. coli* or *Klebsiella oxytoca* is an example of such type of approach. The employ of these recombinant microorganisms allows the implementation of the co-fermentation process intended to the more complete utilization of the sugars contained in the hydrolyzates of lignocellulosic biomass (Cardona and Sánchez 2007).

16.2.5 Ethanol Recovery and Dehydration

The recovery of ethanol produced by different technological configurations and from diverse types of feedstocks is accomplished in a very similar way. The ethanol content in the culture broth resulting from fermentation processes oscillates between 2.5 and 10 % (by weight). The utilization of fuel ethanol as a

gasoline oxygenate requires a high-purity ethanol, so it is necessary to concentrate the ethyl alcohol up to 99.5 % obtaining the anhydrous ethanol, which is the suitable form used for ethanol-gasoline blends. The first step of the ethanol recovery scheme is the concentration of ethanol contained in culture broths. This process is carried out in a distillation (concentration) column achieving ethanol content about 50 %. This product is removed from the column by a side stream. The overhead vapors contain mostly CO_2 (about 84 %), a significant amount of ethanol (12 %), and a small amount of water. The following step is the rectification of this concentrated stream in order to obtain a product with 90–92 % ethanol composition, which is near to the azeotropic mixture of ethanol and water (95.6 %). To achieve 99.5 % or more of ethanol purity from streams containing 90–92 % ethanol, it is necessary to employ nonconventional separation operations like pressure-swing distillation, azeotropic distillation, extractive distillation, adsorption, and pervaporation. All these operations have found industrial application in the fuel ethanol industry (Cardona et al. 2010b).

The adsorption is one of the most important unit operations currently employed in the biofuel industry for ethanol dehydration. In this operation, the ethanol–water mixture passes through an apparatus usually cylindrical that contains a bed with an adsorbent material. Due to the difference in the affinity of molecules of water and ethanol with respect to the adsorbent, the former remains entrapped in the bed while the ethyl alcohol passes through this same bed increasing its concentration in the stream leaving the apparatus. Adsorption of water employing the so-called molecular sieves to dehydrate ethanol has been the technology that has acquired more development in the last years in the fuel ethanol industry. In fact, this technology has been replacing the azeotropic distillation (Cardona et al. 2009).

The adsorption operation requires that, once the adsorbent bed is saturated with the water that needs to be removed, its desorption should be accomplished to make possible the reutilization of the adsorbent material (regeneration cycle). For regeneration of the sieves, hot gas is needed. This rapidly deteriorates them especially if the bed is fed with a liquid stream during the previous water adsorption cycle. To counter this deterioration, the pressure-swing adsorption (PSA) technology was developed. This technology involves the use of two adsorption beds. While one bed produces vapors of anhydrous ethanol superheated under pressure, the other one is regenerated under vacuum conditions by recirculating a small portion of superheated ethanol vapors through the saturated sieves. The system feeding is carried out using the overhead vapors from the rectification column. The ethanolic vapors obtained in the regeneration cycle and that can contain 28 % water are recirculated to the rectification column (Montoya et al. 2005; Wooley et al. 1999b). In this way, the molecular sieves life can be prolonged for several years that, in turn implies very low costs related to the replacement of adsorbent material, and therefore reduced operating costs (Guan and Hu 2003; Madson and Monceaux 1995). The process flowsheet for ethanol recovery and dehydration in the case of the adsorption with molecular sieves is depicted in Fig. 16.2.

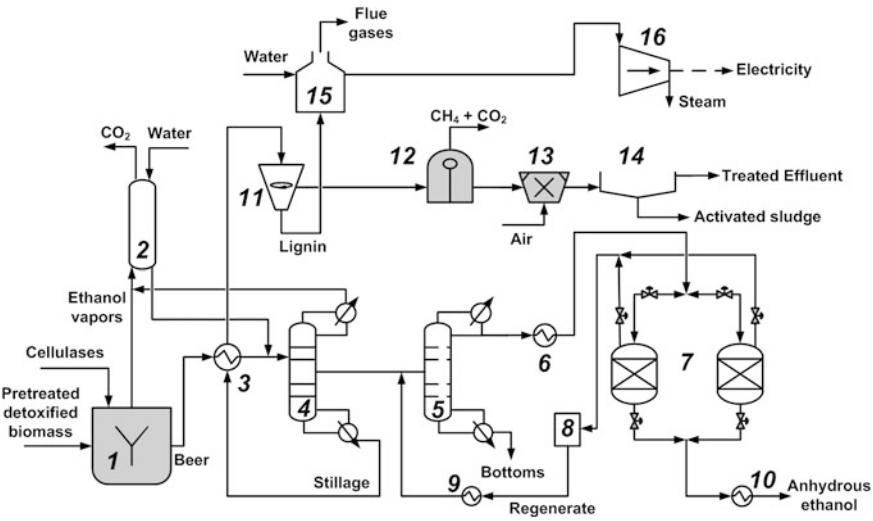


Fig. 16.2 Process flowsheet of product concentration, dehydration by molecular sieves and effluent treatment steps for ethanol production from lignocellulosic biomass; *1* SSCF bioreactor, *2* scrubber for recovery of ethanol vapors, *3* preheater, *4* concentration column, *5* rectification column, *6* 9 heat exchangers, *7* molecular sieves, *8* regenerate tank, *10* product cooler, *11* centrifuge, *12* anaerobic digester, *13* activated sludge tank, *14* clarifier, 15 boiler/burner, *16* turbogenerator

16.2.6 Effluent Treatment

Fuel ethanol production from lignocellulosic biomass generates solid wastes, atmospheric emissions, and liquid effluents. The atmospheric emissions mostly correspond to the gas outlet stream from fermenters or integrated bioreactors that is washed with water in the scrubbers in order to recover the volatilized ethanol (see Fig. 16.2). The gases exiting from the scrubbers contain mainly carbon dioxide that is released into the atmosphere. The CO_2 can be employed for production of dry ice or beverages. However, if these gases are not utilized, they should be considered in the calculation of the environmental impact of ethanol producing facilities (Cardona et al. 2010b). In this regard, it should be emphasized that the bioethanol practically presents net emissions of CO_2 near to zero considering that the plant biomass already fixed the CO_2 during its growth and only this carbon dioxide is released during the combustion of fuel ethanol in the engines. In contrast, the burning of fossil fuels releases into the atmosphere additional amounts of carbon dioxide that was fixed by the plant biomass millions years ago.

The solid wastes formed during production of fuel ethanol are strongly linked to the raw material from which it is produced. The production of lignocellulosic ethanol generates lignin as the most important solid residue. This polymer can be isolated during the pretreatment step if some pretreatment methods like the pretreatment with solvents (organosolv process) or oxidative delignification are

employed (this fact is considered in Fig. 16.3 et seq.). Nevertheless, most pretreatment methods allow that the lignin remains in the solid fraction resulting from this processing step along with the cellulose. After enzymatic hydrolysis using cellulases, the lignin remains in the liquid suspension until the end of the process where it can be recovered from the stillage stream as shown in Fig. 16.2. The lignin has a high-energy value (25.4 MJ/kg), and therefore it is used as a solid biofuel for feeding boilers or cogeneration.

The stillage is the major effluent of all flowsheets for ethanol production involving the submerged fermentation of streams containing sugars or carbohydrate polymers. The stillage represents the residual liquid material obtained after distillation of ethanol from the fermented wort (wine) and contains both solid and soluble matter. Precisely, the elevated organic load of the stillage is responsible of the high polluting properties of this burden, so this stream should undergo treatment to reduce this load and minimize the environmental impact during its discharge to the water streams. Due to the elevated organic matter content of stillage, methods for its treatment and economic utilization should be implemented in the industry. Among the most used methods for stillage treatment, the irrigation, recycling, evaporation, incineration, anaerobic digestion, and composting should be highlighted. Some of the new treatment methods allow the production of value-added products as discussed elsewhere (Cardona et al. 2010b). By applying process systems engineering tools like process simulation, Cardona et al. (2006) performed the evaluation of several option for treatment of the stillage generated during ethanol production from biomass. The results obtained show that the best option comprises the centrifugation of stillage, incineration of the solids obtained in a cogeneration unit for production of power and steam, and anaerobic digestion of the thin stillage resulting from centrifugation followed by aerobic biological treatment. This configuration is schematically depicted in Fig. 16.2. The proposed treatment of the thin stillage coincides with the treatment scheme suggested by Merrick and Company (1998).

16.3 Process Integration for Ethanol Production from Biomass

The process integration offers a great potential to process industry through the improvement of chemical and biotechnological processes. This potential is especially recognized if considering the many ways in which process integration contributes to the enhancement of energy efficiency of many industrial processes as detailed in a previous work (Cardona et al. 2008). Process integration, as a mean for process intensification, is a successful approach for designing improved technological configurations for fuel ethanol production in which production costs can be reduced. This fact is remarkably important taking into account that the main objective of using liquid biofuels like bioethanol is the progressive displacement of

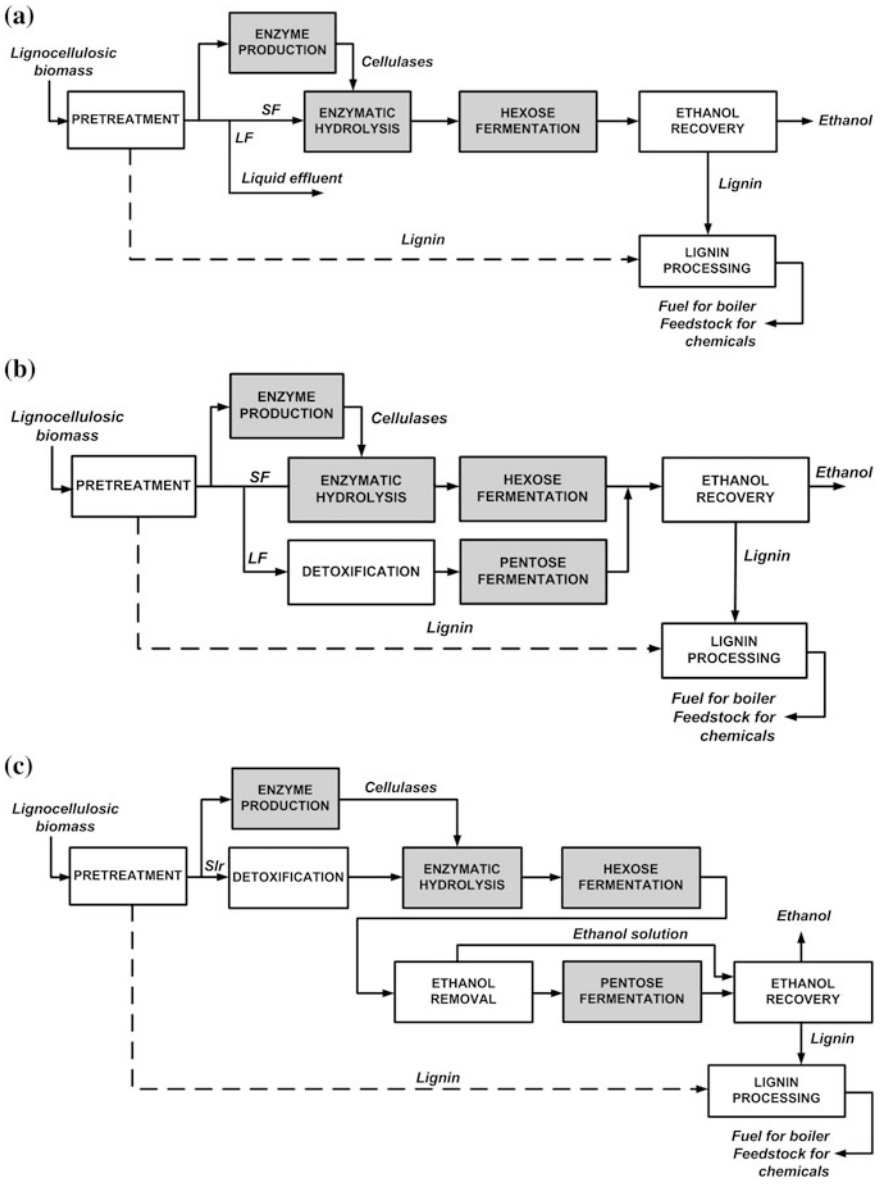


Fig. 16.3 Technological options for fuel ethanol production from lignocellulosic biomass by separate hydrolysis and fermentation (*SHF*). **a** SHF without utilization of hemicellulose-derived pentoses, **b** SHF with hexose and pentose fermentation performed in parallel, **c** SHF with pentose fermentation performed after hexose fermentation; *LF* liquid fraction, *SF* solid fraction, *Slr* slurry, the *gray-shaded boxes* represent enzymatic or microbial processes; the *dashed lines* represent an optional source of lignin when a pretreatment method allowing the fractionation of biomass is used (e.g. organosolv process)

fossil fuels that implies the sustainable exploitation of the huge biomass resources of our planet and the utilization of clean and renewable energy sources.

16.3.1 Reaction–Reaction Integration

Process integration is gaining more and more interest due to the advantages related to its application in the case of bioethanol production: reduction of energy costs, decrease in the size and number of process units, intensification of the biological and downstream processes, improvement of environmental performance of the overall process, and among others. For instance, the combination in a same single unit of the enzymatic hydrolysis and the microbial transformation leads to the reduction of the negative effect due to the inhibition of the enzymes caused by the products of the reaction catalyzed by them. This corresponds to an integration of the reaction–reaction type. There exist different possibilities for reaction–reaction integration during production of ethanol from lignocellulosic biomass (see Fig. 16.1). This type of integration mainly includes the combination of the enzymatic reactions for hydrolysis of cellulose with the microbial conversion of formed sugars into ethyl alcohol.

To expose the possibilities of process integration in the framework of biomass-to-ethanol process, it is necessary to indicate the main features of the basic non-integrated configuration, the separate hydrolysis and fermentation. Then, different integrations options are briefly described.

16.3.1.1 Separate Hydrolysis and Fermentation

The initial configuration proposed for bioethanol production comprises the cellulose hydrolysis followed by the fermentation of the glucose released during the enzymatic process. This configuration is called separate hydrolysis and fermentation (SHF) and has a sequential character. The main feature of SHF is that each step can be performed at its optimal operating conditions (for instance, 50 °C and pH of 4.5 for cellulose hydrolysis and 32 °C and pH of 4–5 for yeast fermentation). SHF is the technology with most possibilities to be implemented at demonstration semi-industrial facilities or commercial scale. In fact, most of the existing demonstration plant for bioethanol production from lignocellulosics employs this technology. For instance, Abengoa Bioenergy has developed a SHF technology on a pilot scale in York (Nebraska, USA), which has been tested in the demonstration plant located in Salamanca (Spain). This plant has operated over 5,000 h continuously, achieving a production of 5 million liters of ethanol per year from cereal straw and herbaceous biomass. It is considered the largest demonstration plant in the existence to produce second-generation bioethanol in the world. This company has announced the beginning of construction of the first

commercial plant that will produce 100 million L/year of bioethanol from corn stover, wheat straw, and switchgrass in Hugoton (Kansas, USA) (Abengoa 2011).

The main options for producing ethanol from biomass by SHF are depicted in Fig. 16.3. It should be noted that detoxification is not needed if the pretreated biomass is thoroughly washed with water in order to obtain a solid stream containing cellulose (and lignin) to be converted into glucose by the cellulases. Although several companies are developing new and more effective cellulases for ethanol industry, their cost is still elevated so most designs proposed involve the production of the cellulase required by the process in the same ethanol production facilities (in situ cellulase production). For this, part of the pretreated biomass is diverted to a submerged aerobic fermentation where fungal cells utilize it to synthesize extracellular cellulases. However, this scheme does not make use of the sugar released during the pretreatment that undoubtedly reduce the overall conversion of the process and final ethanol yields.

In order to increase the conversion of biomass into ethanol, the sugars derived from hemicellulose degradation should be utilized. For this, xylose-fermenting microorganisms like *C. shehatae* or *P. stipitis* are employed to produce ethanol from the hemicellulose hydrolyzate (this process is indicated as pentose fermentation in Fig. 16.3) along with the conventional yeast used for fermentation of the glucose derived from cellulose hydrolysis (hexose fermentation). In this case, the pentose fermentation can be carried out in a separate unit in parallel or after the glucose fermentation. In the latter scheme, ethanol should be removed from the broth resulting from hexose fermentation to decrease the end-product inhibition effect of the growth rate for xylose-assimilating yeasts, which are more sensitive to ethanol than glucose-assimilating yeasts or bacteria. In addition, a detoxification step is required as the whole slurry from pretreatment enters the cellulose hydrolysis and the two fermentation steps. This slurry contains toxic compounds that can inhibit not only the growth of fermenting microorganisms, but also the enzymes employed for glucose production from cellulose even if it is diluted with water.

Depending on the pretreatment method, the lignin can be recovered in this step (e.g. by the organosolv process) or remain in the stillage of the distillation column used for the preliminary ethanol recovery. Thus, the lignin can be separated from the stillage by centrifugation and burnt in boiler for generating the steam required by the overall process. Alternatively, the lignin may be employed as a feedstock for production of valuable chemicals or adsorbents like activated charcoal.

16.3.1.2 Separate Hydrolysis and Co-fermentation

The first integration approach is to perform the transformation of both pentoses and hexoses in one single fermenting unit (see Fig. 16.4). This process can be called separate hydrolysis and co-fermentation (SHCF), and has the advantage of reduced capital costs since no additional vessel is required for pentose fermentation. SHCF can be considered an example of reaction–reaction integration since

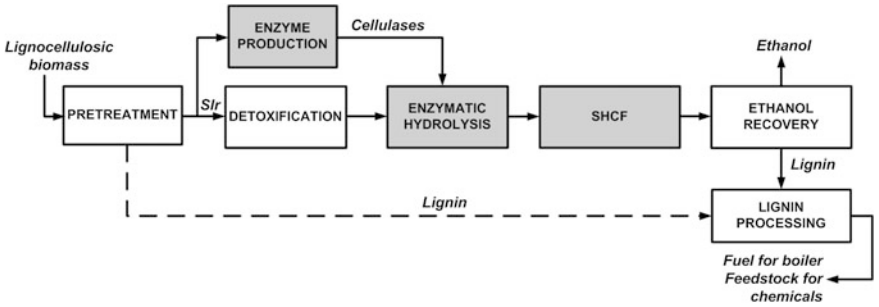


Fig. 16.4 Schematic diagram of fuel ethanol production from lignocellulosic biomass by separate hydrolysis and co-fermentation (SHCF); *Slr* slurry, the *gray-shaded boxes* represent enzymatic or microbial processes; the *dashed lines* represent an optional source of lignin when a pretreatment method allowing the fractionation of biomass is used (e.g. organosolv process)

two biochemical processes (fermentation of glucose and fermentation of xylose) are combined and simultaneously performed in the same single unit. Although xylose-utilizing yeasts can carry out the co-fermentation of glucose and xylose, their ethanol yields are low. As mentioned above, mixed cultures can be used but problems associated with the optimal conditions for fermentation of two different microorganisms are arisen. For this reason, the current research trends are aimed at developing microorganisms with the ability of assimilating both types of sugars with increased ethanol yields by using recombinant DNA technology. There are many works reporting the development of specific strains of ethanol producing microorganisms with these desired traits. Thus, recombinant *S. cerevisiae* (Hong et al. 2003; Zaldivar et al. 2005) or *Zymomonas mobilis* (Leksawasdi et al. 2001) strains have been developed. Alternatively, bacteria naturally assimilating these two sugars like *E. coli* are transformed in order to obtain an ethanologenic microorganism (Dien et al. 1998; Ingram et al. 1999; Vinuselvi and Lee 2012).

16.3.1.3 Simultaneous Saccharification and Fermentation

One of the most important advances in bioethanol industry is the development and implementation of processes in which the hydrolysis of the glucan (starch, cellulose) and the conversion of glucose into ethanol are carried out in a simultaneous way in the same single unit. This process is known as simultaneous saccharification and fermentation (SSF) and has been successfully implemented in the production of ethanol from corn, especially in wet-milling plants. The concept of SSF process was firstly described by Takagi et al. (1977). Takagi, Suzuki and Gauss had previously patented the SSF technology for bioethanol production (Gauss et al. 1976) by which the yeasts metabolize simultaneously the glucose into ethanol in situ during the enzymatic saccharification of the cellulose. This patent expired in 1993 and it has been utilized for small-scale demonstrations (Ingram and Doran 1995), but until now, no commercial plants have been built at industrial level.

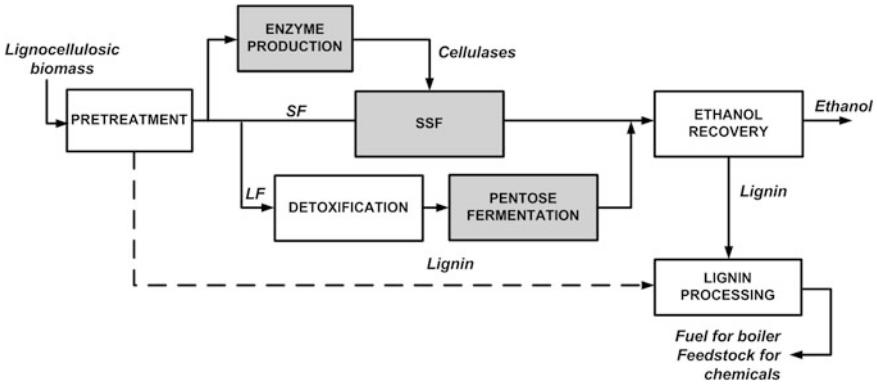


Fig. 16.5 Schematic diagram of fuel ethanol production from lignocellulosic biomass by simultaneous saccharification and fermentation (*SSF*); *LF* liquid fraction, *SF* solid fraction, the *gray-shaded boxes* represent enzymatic or microbial processes; the *dashed lines* represent an optional source of lignin when a pretreatment method allowing the fractionation of biomass is used (e.g. organosolv process)

Conversion of cellulose into ethanol by SSF implies that several enzymes with cellulolytic activity (basically endoglucanases, cellobiohydrolases and β-glucosidase) are added to the suspension obtained by mixing water with the solid fraction resulting from the pretreatment step and that contains cellulose and lignin (Fig. 16.5). In the same way, glucose-fermenting microorganisms (yeasts) are added to this mixture in the bioreactor where SSF is accomplished for immediately converting the glucose formed into ethanol. Taking into account that sugars (glucose, cellobiose) are much more inhibitory for conversion process than ethanol is, SSF can reach higher rates, yields and ethanol concentrations compared to SHF (Wyman et al. 1992). The increased ethanol concentration in the culture broth allows the reduction of energy costs during distillation. In addition, SSF offers an easier operation and a lower equipment requirement than the sequential process since no hydrolysis reactors are needed. Moreover, the presence of ethanol in the broth makes it less vulnerable to the action of undesired microorganisms (Wyman 1994). Nevertheless, SSF has the inconvenient that the optimal conditions for hydrolysis and fermentation are different, which implies a difficult control and optimization of process parameters. In addition, larger amounts of exogenous enzymes are required (Cardona and Sánchez 2007).

A significant amount of reports on batch SSF has been published recognizing, in this way, that this integrated process is one of the most promising. Nevertheless, only limited information has been published about continuous SSF. The continuous regime for SSF entails experimental challenges related to the homogenous delivery of solid substrate, the extended run times needed, and the complexities of the continuous systems as stated by Brethauer and Wyman (2010). These authors point out that batch systems are hampered by mixing problems at high solid substrate loadings, which can be avoided by operation of a CSTR (continuous

stirred-tank reactor) with high conversion of insolubles to ethanol. Furthermore, in a batch reactor, the high amounts of β-glucosidase added are only required at the beginning of the reaction when cellobiose production is highest. They suggest that β-glucosidase loading can be reduced in a continuous system because cellobiose production slows with conversion.

As mentioned above, one of the main disadvantages of SSF processes using lignocellulosic biomass lies in the different optimum conditions of enzymatic hydrolysis of cellulose and fermentation. Varga et al. (2004) proposed a nonisothermal regime for batch SSF process applied to wet oxidized corn stover; In the first step of SSF, small amounts of cellulases were added at 50 °C in order to obtain better mixing conditions. In the second step, more cellulases were added along with the yeast *S. cerevisiae* at 30 °C. In this way, the final solid concentration in the hydrolyzate could be increased up to 17 % dry matter concentration achieving 78 % ethanol yield. In general, increased cultivation temperature accelerates metabolic processes and lowers the refrigeration requirements. Yeasts as *K. marxianus* have been tested as potential ethanol producers at temperatures higher than 40 °C. Ballesteros et al. (2001) carried out several fed-batch SSF tests at 42 °C during 72 h using *K. marxianus* in the case of by-products of olive oil extraction achieving 76 % ethanol yields of theoretical for olive pulp. If, when thermotolerant yeasts are used, the microbial cells can also assimilate pentoses, the SSF process can become more promising. Yeasts as *Candida acidothermophilum*, *C. brassicae*, *S. uvarum* and *Hansenula polymorpha* can be used for these purposes. In this case, the addition of a larger amount of nutrients to the medium is required. The difficulty lies in the fact that higher temperatures enhance the inhibitory effect of ethanol. Therefore, the isolation and selection of microorganisms that could be adapted in a better way to these hard conditions should be continued.

One of the most relevant factors in the alcoholic fermentation is the possibility of infection by acidolactic bacteria. This problem has been reported for both batch (Stenberg et al. 2000) and continuous regimes (Schell et al. 2004) of SSF processes. These bacteria can consume the sugars not utilized by the main ethanologenic microorganisms used during SSF and represent a challenge for the design of effective biomass-to-ethanol processes. Therefore, the utilization of microorganisms capable of assimilating all the sugars present in the feed stream of the SSF is crucial to avoid the proliferation of undesired contaminating microbes. This suggests the need of a higher degree of reaction–reaction integration.

16.3.1.4 Simultaneous Saccharification and Co-fermentation

A higher degree of integration can be achieved by including the fermentation of hemicellulose-derived pentoses in the same single unit where SSF is carried out. This process is called simultaneous saccharification and co-fermentation (SSCF). In this way, only two vessels (one for enzyme production and the other for the SSCF process) are employed for conversion of the pretreated lignocellulosic

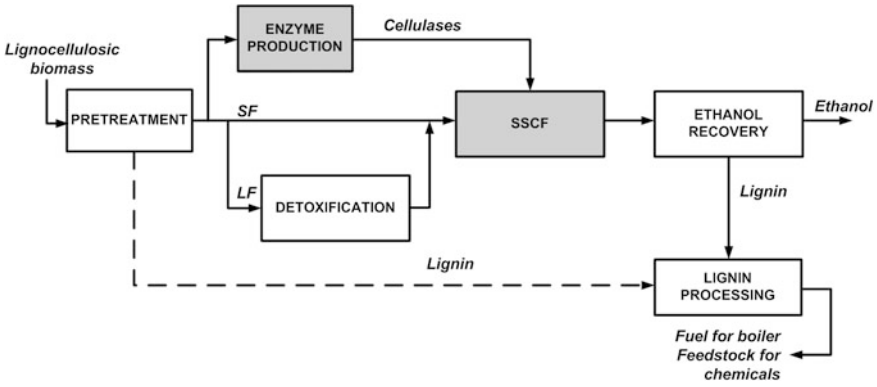


Fig. 16.6 Schematic diagram of fuel ethanol production from lignocellulosic biomass by simultaneous saccharification and co-fermentation (*SSCF*), *LF* liquid fraction, *SF* solid fraction, the *gray-shaded boxes* represent enzymatic or microbial processes; the *dashed lines* represent an optional source of lignin when a pretreatment method allowing the fractionation of biomass is used (e.g. organosolv process)

biomass into ethanol in one integrated process as that depicted in Fig. 16.6. During the SSCF, the hydrolysis of cellulose by using cellulases added to the bioreactor, the fermentation of the glucose released from the enzymatic process, and the fermentation of pentoses present in the feed stream are simultaneously accomplished in the same single unit. Besides the effectiveness of the employed cellulases, the key factor in SSCF is the utilization of an efficient ethanol-producing microorganism with the ability of assimilating not only hexoses (mainly glucose), but also the pentoses (mainly xylose) released during the pretreatment step as a result of hemicellulose degradation. For this, genetically engineered microorganisms like *S. cerevisiae* (Jin et al. 2010), *Z. mobilis* (McMillan et al. 1999) and *E.coli* (Kang et al. 2010) has been developed and favorably proven in SSCF processes for ethanol production from lignocellulosic materials.

In an initial stage, the co-fermentation of mixed cultures was studied (Cardona and Sánchez 2007). For example, the co-culture of *P. stipitis* and *Brettanomyces clausennii* has been employed for the SSCF of aspen at a trade-off temperature of 38 °C yielding 369 L EtOH per ton of aspen during batch process, as reported by Olsson and Hahn-Hägerdal (1996). However, actual SSCF process using one process microorganism has been demonstrated in the case of ethanol production from yellow poplar through a bench-scale integrated process that included the dilute-acid pretreatment of feedstock, conditioning of hydrolyzate for fermentation, and a batch SSCF (McMillan et al. 1999). In this case, the recombinant bacterium *Z. mobilis* assimilating xylose was used. SSCF is the process on which is based on the technology designed as a model process by the NREL for production of fuel ethanol from aspen wood chips (Wooley et al. 1999b) and corn stover (Aden et al. 2002). It is projected that SSCF can be carried out in continuous regime with a residence time for the whole system of cascade fermenters of 7 d at

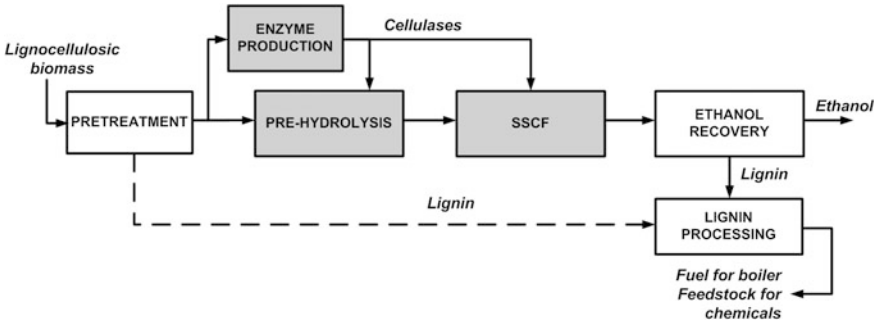


Fig. 16.7 Schematic diagram of fuel ethanol production from lignocellulosic biomass by a two-step simultaneous saccharification and co-fermentation (*SSCF*); the *gray-shaded boxes* represent enzymatic or microbial processes; the *dashed lines* represent an optional source of lignin when a pretreatment method allowing the fractionation of biomass is used (e.g. organosolv process)

30 °C (Cardona and Sánchez 2007). As in the case of SSF of biomass, the development of microbial strains able to grow at elevated temperatures can improve the techno-economic indicators of the process. Thus, ethanol-producing microorganisms capable to assimilate both types of sugars at temperatures higher than 50 °C could reduce the cellulase costs by a half taking into account that a 20 °C increase during saccharification can lead to double cellulose hydrolysis rate (Wooley et al. 1999a).

The configuration shown in Fig. 16.6 implies the separation of the slurry of pretreated biomass, washing of the solid fraction, and detoxification of the liquid hemicellulose hydrolyzate in order to prepare and condition the feed stream to the SSCF bioreactor. All these operations add costs and complexity to the overall process. For this reason, new trends in the development of SSCF processes are aimed at the development of microorganisms resistant to the toxic compounds formed during the pretreatment step. In this way, the whole slurry could be directly fed to the SSCF bioreactor without the need of any separation or washing step and avoiding the costly detoxification. Geddes et al. (2011) point out that newly developed strains such *E. coli* MM160 and *S. cerevisiae* 424A can be used for these purposes. However, the final ethanol concentrations and yields are still low for a large-scale commercial operation, although the results obtained are better than those for most SSF processes. These problems may be explained by the high solids content of the stream entering the SSCF bioreactor, which can achieve 10–20 %. One way to tackle this challenge is to implement a two-step process where a pre-hydrolysis is carried out before the actual SSCF. In this way, a sort of liquefaction analogous to the corn-to-ethanol process is carried out to reduce the solids level and enhance the efficiency of the enzymatic hydrolysis. After this step, the stream containing about 10–15 % solids undergoes SSCF (see Fig. 16.7). It is envisioned that such pre-hydrolysis can be effectively performed in a CSTR with a residence time between 1 and 6 h (Geddes et al. 2011). Other difficulty that can be overcome by a two-step SSCF process is the low xylose uptake rate related to

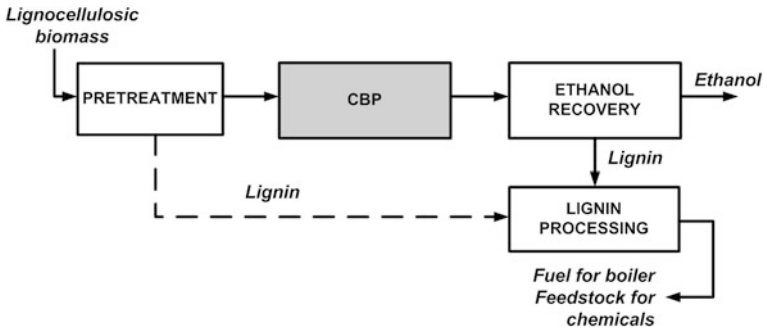


Fig. 16.8 Schematic diagram of fuel ethanol production from lignocellulosic biomass by consolidated bioprocessing (*CBP*); the *gray-shaded box* represents a microbial process; the *dashed lines* represent an optional source of lignin when a pretreatment method allowing the fractionation of biomass is used (e.g. organosolv process)

glucose. For instance, Jin et al. (2010) proposed a two-step SSCF process on AFEX-treated switchgrass using commercial enzymes and the inhibitor-resistant *S. cerevisiae* 424A, which gives higher ethanol yield with improved xylose consumption compared to the corresponding SSCF process. The process included the hydrolysis of the hemicellulose remaining in the pretreated biomass with hemicellulases first to release xylose, which was then fermented by recombinant *S. cerevisiae* 424A, followed by adding cellulases to hydrolyze the cellulose into glucose and continue the fermentation.

16.3.1.5 Consolidated Bioprocessing

The highest degree of integration is represented by a configuration where the fermentable sugars and polysaccharides (mostly cellulose) resulting from the pretreatment of lignocellulosic biomass are directly converted into ethanol by a microorganism (or consortium of microorganisms) in one single unit (see Fig. 16.8). This process is known as consolidated bioprocessing (CBP) and leads to the maximum reduction of process units during the biomass-to-ethanol process. Schematically, CBP consists in the unification of all the enzymatic and microbial processes represented by gray-shaded boxes in Figs. 16.3–16.7. This configuration implies that no capital or operation expenditures are required for enzyme production within the process. In this way, there is no need of adding the costly cellulolytic enzymes to the biomass to obtain significant amounts of glucose. In addition, the deviation of part of the feedstock to the production of cellulases is not further required since the CBP concept entails that a single microorganism produces the needed enzymatic complexes to degrade the cellulose and even the hemicellulose.

It is considered that the costs of ethanol production from biomass can be significantly reduced by improving the conversion of lignocellulosics. Lynd (1996)

had projected that the reduction of production costs due to an advanced configuration involving the CBP is three times greater than the reduction related to the scale economy of the process and ten times greater than the reduction associated with a lower cost of the feedstock. This decrease would be accomplished thanks to the reduction of more than eight times in the costs of biological conversion (Lynd et al. 1996). Afterwards, Lynd et al. (2005) reported the comparative simulation of SSCF and CBP processes assuming aggressive performance parameters intended to be representative of mature technologies. Their results indicate that production costs of ethanol for SSCF can reach US¢ 4.99 per liter including the costs of dedicated cellulase production, whereas CBP can give total costs of only US¢ 1.11 per liter demonstrating the future effectiveness of this process configuration.

To develop an effective CBP process to produce fuel ethanol from biomass, a suitable microorganism has to be selected. The candidate CBP microorganism should exhibit the following features:

- Be resistant to the inhibitors generated during the pretreatment.
- Produce cellulases or cellulolytic complexes to convert the cellulose into glucose.
- Produce hemicellulases to obtain a higher amount of pentoses and other hemicellulose-derived sugars.
- Convert the hexoses (glucose, mannose and galactose) into ethanol.
- Convert the pentoses (xylose and arabinose) into ethanol.
- Show reduced end-product inhibition by the ethanol formed.
- Reduce the amount of fermentation by-products like lactate or acetic acid.
- Show high growth rates.
- Produce high ethanol titres.
- Be stable under industrial conditions.

As can be inferred from previous sections, such a microorganism capable of transforming biomass into ethanol with high yield and efficiency does not exist in the nature. However, some naturally occurring microorganisms exhibit most of the above-mentioned traits but with low ethanol yields. The thermophilic bacterium *Clostridium thermocellum* is one of these microorganisms, since it is able to degrade cellulose and convert the glucose obtained into ethanol. *C. thermosaccharolyticum*, in turn, has the ability to utilize pentoses. As both bacteria can be cultured in the same vessel under the same fermentation conditions, their mixed cultivation represents a CBP process to produce ethanol from biomass. Other thermophilic clostridia can be cultured along with *C. thermocellum* in order to depolymerize lignocellulosic carbohydrate polymers and utilize pentoses as *C. thermolacticum* obtaining significant ethanol yields (Xu and Tschirner 2011). In fact, the production of ethanol from biomass by using *C. thermocellum* is a first step toward CBP as has been demonstrated experimentally (Shao et al. 2011; South et al. 1993). Nevertheless, the employ of clostridia has some important drawbacks as their low ethanol tolerance and reduced ethanol yields due to the formation of acetic acid and salts of other organic acids like lactates (Baskaran et al. 1995; McMillan 1997; Wyman 1994). This makes that the final ethanol

concentrations be low (0.8–60 g/L) compared to the traditionally used yeasts with long cultivation times of 3–12 days (Szczodrak and Fiedurek 1996).

Unlike fungi employed for cellulase production in the framework of SHF, SSF, and SSCF processes, thermophilic bacteria like *C. thermocellum* do not secrete individual cellulolytic enzymes to the culture medium to degrade the cellulose. These microbes have a complexed cellulase system named cellulosome that represents a multi-enzyme consortium that efficiently binds to heterogeneous insoluble cellulose-containing substrates being anchored to the bacterial cells, i.e. the cellulose hydrolysis implies the formation of a cellulose-enzyme-microbe complex. The cellulosome shows a higher efficiency in cellulose hydrolysis compared to the non-complexed cellulase systems from fungi like *T. reesei*. Lynd et al. (1999, 2002) point out that most research efforts on cellulose hydrolysis are being carried out within the context of the enzymatically oriented intellectual paradigm, which focuses on cellulose hydrolysis as primarily an enzymatic rather than microbial phenomenon. In this context, the development of SHF, SSF, and SSCF processes that utilizes fungal cellulases is in the framework of this paradigm. In contrast, the development of CBP processes for bioethanol production corresponds to the microbial oriented paradigm, which considers the cellulose hydrolysis as a microbial phenomenon. As there exists no natural microorganism exhibiting the whole combination of features required for efficient CBP-based ethanol production, intensive research on genetic modification of different microbial strains is being carried out in past two decades. In the framework of the CBP, two strategies have been employed: native cellulolytic strategy and recombinant cellulolytic strategy. The main aspects of these strategies are presented in Table 16.4. Undoubtedly, ongoing research efforts on genetic and metabolic engineering will make possible the development of effective and stable strains of microorganisms to convert lignocellulosic biomass into ethanol. This fact will surely imply a qualitative improvement in the industrial production of fuel ethanol in the future.

16.3.2 Reaction–Separation Integration

Reaction–reaction integration allows the increase of process efficiency through the improvement of reaction processes. However, separation is the step where major costs are generated in process industry. Therefore, reaction–separation integration could have a significant impact on the overall biomass-to-ethanol process. The reaction–separation integration is particularly an attractive alternative for the intensification of alcoholic fermentation processes. When ethanol is removed from the culture broth, its inhibition effect on growth rate is diminished or neutralized that leads to a substantial improvement in the performance of ethanol-producing microorganisms. This improved performance may permit the increase of substrate conversion into ethanol. In particular, higher conversions make possible the utilization of concentrated culture media (with sugars content greater than 150 g/L) resulting in increased process productivities. From energy viewpoint, this type of

Table 16.4 Strategies for developing genetically modified microorganisms to be used in the framework of the CBP-based ethanol production from lignocellulosic biomass

Strategy	Native cellulolytic	Recombinant cellulolytic
Fundament	Modify microorganisms having a high native cellulolytic activity to improve ethanol production	Modify microorganisms having high ethanol yields making them cellulase producers
Challenges	Increase of ethanol yield, titres and tolerance Reduction or elimination of fermentation by-products	Complexity of the insertion of cellulolytic genes into the hosts Improve cellulose and hemicellulose degradation rates
Cellulase system	Complexed (cellulosome)	Non-complexed/minicellulosomes
Host microorganism	*C. thermocellum*, *C. cellulolyticum*	*S. cerevisiae*, *Z. mobilis*; ethanologenic *E. coli*, *K. oxytoca*
Enzymes expressed	Pyruvate decarboxylase from *Z. mobilis dd*Alcohol dehydrogenase from *Z. mobilis*	Endo/exoglucanase from *Bacillus* sp. *β*-glucosidase from *B. circulans* Cellobiohydrolase from *Thermoascus aurantiacus* Endoglucanases from *T. reesei*
Ethanol titre	Up to 26 g/L	1–40 g/L
References	Guedon et al. (2002), Lynd et al. (2005)	Cho and Yoo (1999), Hong et al. (2003), Zhou and Ingram (2001)

integration leads to the increase of ethanol concentration in the culture broth. This fact has a direct effect on distillation costs since more concentrated streams feeding the columns imply lower steam demands for the reboilers and therefore, lower energy costs.

This type of integration can be accomplished by coupling the separation unit to the fermenter (conjugated process) or combining the cultivation and the separation in the same unit (simultaneous process). For instance, vacuum chamber, stripping columns or pervaporation modules can be coupled to fermentation vessels. Alternatively, the membrane modules can be submerged in the culture broth or an extractive agent can be directly added to the cultivation medium during the fermentation process. These options for reaction–separation integration are presented in Table 16.5. Furthermore, one unit where reaction–reaction integration is applied (e.g. SSF) may be coupled to a separation unit. This represents a process with an integration of the reaction–reaction–separation type allowing a higher degree of integration.

16.3.3 Separation–Separation Integration

The separation–separation integration is particularly relevant for ethanol recovery and dehydration. This type of integration is accomplished by coupling two or more separation units with different mass-transfer foundations. For instance, the extractive distillation employed for ethanol dehydration combines the distillation

Table 16.5 Different options of reaction–separation integration for production of fuel ethanol

Option	Fundament	Remarks	References
Vacuum	Coupling the fermentation tank to a vacuum chamber allows ethanol removal due to its higher volatility	50 mm Hg; cell recycling; productivity 23–82 g/(L × h); high energy costs	Costa et al. (2001), Cysewski and Wilke (1977)
Gas stripping	Ethanol removal by absorption employing a stripping gas	Stripping gas: CO_2; fermenter coupled to a stripping column; productivity 8–16 g/(L × h)	Dale and Moelhman (2001), Taylor et al. (1996, 2000)
Membrane	Broth is passed across selective membrane to remove ethanol from water	Different types of membranes (e.g. silicate or polypropylene membranes); membrane distillation or pervaporation modules coupled to fermenter; productivity 2–48 g/(L × h); membrane fouling	Brandberg et al. (2005), Lee et al. (2000), (Nakamura et al. 2001), Sánchez et al. (2005)
Extractive fermentation	Addition of selective solvent to the broth for ethanol removal followed by decantation and recycling of aqueous phase to fermenter	Solvents: fatty alcohols like *n*-dodecanol, mixture of biocompatible solvents; in situ extraction or separate extractor coupled to fermenter; possibility of SSEF and HFMEF; productivity 1–55 g/(L × h); solvent regeneration is required	Kang et al. (1990), Moritz and Duff (1996), Sánchez et al. (2006)

HFMEF hollow-fiber membrane extractive fermenter, *SSEF* simultaneous saccharification and extractive fermentation

with the liquid–liquid extraction in order to "break" the ethanol–water azeotrope in multi-column systems. Variations to this process have been proposed like the utilization of salts (NaCl, KCl, KI, or $CaCl_2$) as extractive agents in a process called saline extractive distillation that involves conventional distillation and crystallization by vacuum evaporation and spray drying for salt recovery (Llano-Restrepo and Aguilar-Arias 2003; Pinto et al. 2000). On the other hand, the utilization of pervaporation modules for ethanol dehydration through their coupling to the previous distillation step is other example of separation–separation

integration (Tsuyomoto et al. 1997). Different evaluations indicate that this dehydration scheme has lower operation costs than azeotropic or extractive distillation (Szitkai et al. 2002; Tsuyomoto et al. 1997) but higher than adsorption using molecular sieves (Sánchez and Cardona 2012).

16.4 Conclusion

The advantages of the biofuels in general, and bioethanol in particular, are evident considering the progressive depletion of the fossil fuel reserves and the changes of the global climate generated by their use. Bioethanol is an environmentally clean source of energy with a high output-input energy ratio and represents an important commodity in the world energy market. Its production from sucrose-containing materials has attained a considerable degree of maturity but can directly affect the food safety. Ethanol from starchy materials has already affected the food safety and its environmental benefits are not clear. In contrast, biomass ethanol (a second generation biofuel) does not compete for food resources, its energy balance is favorable and the worldwide availability of lignocellulosic materials allows that almost all the countries can produce it. However, the production costs of ethanol from lignocellulosic biomass are still high. Many research groups and centers in different countries are making progress in the task of lowering production costs of lignocellulosic ethanol. Nevertheless, the challenges to overcome are still formidable.

The current pretreatment methods should be optimized considering the future commercial operation of ethanol production facilities employing biomass as feedstock. Some pretreatment technologies seem to have reached their best indicators (e.g., dilute acid pretreatment) and others show incremental improvements. New promising methods have to be tested at pilot scale and demonstration facilities (SPORL, ionic liquids) but they represent disruptive innovation techniques. The main goal is oriented to the reduction of inhibitor generation, biomass fractionation, improved sugars recovery, and enhancement of cellulose digestibility.

The cost of cellulolytic enzymes remains high despite the great progress of the enzyme-producing companies. Although the technologies developed for in situ production of enzymes have achieved some cost reductions, the relatively low specific activity of those enzymes and the binding of cellulases to other polymers like lignin represent serious challenges to be undertaken through genetic and metabolic engineering. The change of paradigm oriented to consider the cellulose hydrolysis as a microbial process will entail significant improvements toward the simplification of the overall process by highly integrated technologies such as CBP. However, the newly developed microbial strains for CBP are far from their industrial cost-effective utilization. In this way, such integrated processes like SSF and SSCF will be the preferred option in the mid-term. One important issue in the strain development is the utilization of microorganisms resistant to inhibitor. This will allow an important process simplification since the utilization of the whole

slurry of pretreated lignocellulosic biomass and the elimination of the detoxification procedures will have beneficial economic and environmental effects on the overall biomass-to-ethanol process. On the other hand, the application of reaction–separation integration has the potential to improve the fermentation performance by diminishing the end-product inhibition effect on growth rate. In this sense, new membranes technologies are being developed and other upgraded techniques for ethanol removal from culture broth as extractive fermentation could potentially represent important advances.

Undoubtedly, the multidisciplinary research efforts that combine new molecular approaches for strain development and process integration in the framework of process systems engineering, will allow expansion and commercial implementation of innovative technologies to exploit the vast resources of lignocellulosic materials available to mankind in a cost-effective and environmentally sustainable way.

References

Abengoa (2011) Annual Report 2011. Abengoa Bioenergy

Aden A, Ruth M, Ibsen K, Jechura J, Neeves K, Sheehan J, Wallace B, Montague L, Slayton A, Lukas J (2002) Lignocellulosic biomass to ethanol process design and economics utilizing co-current dilute acid prehydrolysis and enzymatic hydrolysis for corn stover. National Renewable Energy Laboratory, Golden

Agbor VB, Cicek N, Sparling R, Berlin A, Levin DB (2011) Biomass pretreatment: fundamentals toward application. Biotechnol Adv 29(6):675–685

Alriksson B, Cavka A, Jonsson LJ (2011) Improving the fermentability of enzymatic hydrolysates of lignocellulose through chemical in-situ detoxification with reducing agents. Bioresour Technol 102(2):1254–1263

Alvo P, Belkacemi K (1997) Enzymatic saccharification of milled timothy (*Phleum pretense* L.) and alfalfa (*Medicago sativa* L.). Bioresour Technol 61:185–198

Ballesteros I, Oliva JM, Sáez F, Ballesteros M (2001) Ethanol production from lignocellulosic byproducts of olive oil extraction. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 91–93:237–252

Ballesteros M, Oliva JM, Negro MJ, Manzanares P, Ballesteros I (2004) Ethanol from lignocellulosic materials by a simultaneous saccharification and fermentation process (SFS) with *Kluyveromyces marxianus CECT 10875*. Process Biochem 39:1843–1848

Baskaran S, Ahn H-J, Lynd LR (1995) Investigation of the ethanol tolerance of Clostridium thermosaccharolyticum in continuous culture. Biotechnol Prog 11:276–281

Brandberg T, Sanandaji N, Gustafsson L, Franzén CJ (2005) Continuous fermentation of undetoxified dilute acid lignocellulose hydrolysate by *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* ATCC 96581 using cell recirculation. Biotechnol Prog 21:1093–1101

Brethauer S, Wyman CE (2010) Review: Continuous hydrolysis and fermentation for cellulosic ethanol production. Bioresour Technol 101(13):4862–4874

Buranov AU, Mazza G (2008) Lignin in straw of herbaceous crops. Ind Crops Prod 28(3):237–259

Cantarella M, Cantarella L, Gallifuoco A, Spera A, Alfani F (2004) Comparison of different detoxification methods for steam-exploded poplar wood as a substrate for the bioproduction of ethanol in SHF and SSF. Process Biochem 39:1533–1542

Cardona CA, Sánchez ÓJ (2007) Fuel ethanol production: Process design trends and integration opportunities. Bioresour Technol 98:2415–2457

Cardona CA, Sánchez ÓJ, Rossero JI (2006) Analysis of integrated schemas for effluent treatment during fuel ethanol production. Paper presented at the 17th international congress of chemical and process engineering (CHISA 2006), Prague, Czech Republic

Cardona CA, Gutiérrez LF, Sánchez OJ (2008) Process integration: Base for energy saving. In: Bergmann DM (ed) Energy efficiency research advances. Nova Science Publishers, Hauppauge, pp 173–212

Cardona CA, Quintero JA, Sánchez ÓJ (2009) Challenges in fuel ethanol production. Int Rev Chem Eng 1(6):581–597

Cardona CA, Quintero JA, Paz IC (2010a) Production of bioethanol from sugarcane bagasse: status and perspectives. Bioresour Technol 101(13):4754–4766

Cardona CA, Sánchez ÓJ, Gutiérrez LF (2010b) Process synthesis for fuel ethanol production. Biotechnology and bioprocessing, 1st edn. CRC Press, Boca Raton

Chandrakant P, Bisaria VS (1998) Simultaneous bioconversion of cellulose and hemicellulose to ethanol. Crit Rev Biotechnol 18(4):295–331

Cho KM, Yoo YJ (1999) Novel SSF process for ethanol production from microcrystalline cellulose using the δ-integrated recombinant yeast, *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* L2612δGC. J Microb Biotechnol 9(3):340–345

Claassen PAM, van Lier JB, López Contreras AM, van Niel EWJ, Sijtsma L, Stams AJM, de Vries SS, Weusthuis RA (1999) Utilisation of biomass for the supply of energy carriers. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 52:741–755

Costa AC, Atala DIP, Maugeri F, Maciel R (2001) Factorial design and simulation for the optimization and determination of control structures for an extractive alcoholic fermentation. Process Biochem 37:125–137

Cuzens JC, Miller JR (1997) Acid hydrolysis of bagasse for ethanol production. Renew Energy 10(2–3):285–290

Cysewski GR, Wilke CR (1977) Rapid ethanol fermentations using vacuum and cell recycle. Biotechnol Bioeng 19:1125–1143

Dale MC Moelhman M (2001) Enzymatic simultaneous saccharification and fermentation (SSF) of biomass to ethanol in a pilot 130 liter multistage continuous reactor separator. In: Bioenergy 2000, Moving Technology into the Marketplace, Buffalo

Dale BE, Leong CK, Pham TK, Esquivel VM, Rios I, Latimer VM (1996) Hydrolysis of lignocellulosics at low enzyme levels: application of the AFEX process. Bioresour Technol 56:111–116

Delgenes JP, Laplace JM, Moletta R, Navarro JM (1996) Comparative study of separated fermentations and cofermentation processes to produce ethanol from hardwood derives hydrolysates. Biomass Bioenergy 11(4):353–360

Dien BS, Hespell RB, Wyckoff HA, Bothast RJ (1998) Fermentation of hexose and pentose sugars using a novel ethanologenic *Escherichia coli* strain. Enzyme Microb Technol 23:366–371

Gao D, Chundawat SP, Krishnan C, Balan V, Dale BE (2010) Mixture optimization of six core glycosyl hydrolases for maximizing saccharification of ammonia fiber expansion (AFEX) pretreated corn stover. Bioresour Technol 101(8):2770–2781

Gauss WF, Suzuki S, Takagi M (1976) Manufacture of alcohol from cellulosic materials using plural ferments. United States Patent US3990944

Geddes CC, Nieves IU, Ingram LO (2011) Advances in ethanol production. Curr Opin Biotechnol 22(3):312–319

Graham RL, Nelson R, Sheehan J, Perlack RD, Wright LL (2007) Current and potential US corn stover supplies. Agron J 99(1):1–11

Guan J, Hu X (2003) Simulation and analysis of pressure swing adsorption: ethanol drying process by the electric analogue. Sep Purif Technol 31:31–35

Guedon E, Desvaux M, Petitdemange H (2002) Improvement of cellulolytic properties of *Clostridium cellulolyticum* by metabolic engineering. Appl Environ Microbiol 68(1):53–58

Hamelinck CN, Hooijdonk Gv, Faaij APC (2003) Prospects for ethanol from lignocellulosic biomass: techno-economic performance as development progresses. Utrecht University, Utrecht

Hamelinck CN, van Hooijdonk G, Faaij APC (2005) Ethanol from lignocellulosic biomass: techno-economic performance in short-, middle- and long-term. Biomass Bioenergy 28:384–410

Hong J, Tamaki H, Yamamoto K, Kumagai H (2003) Cloning of a gene encoding thermostable cellobiohydrolase from *Thermoascus aurantiacus* and its expression in yeast. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 63:42–50

Hu Z, Wen Z (2008) Enhancing enzymatic digestibility of switchgrass by microwave-assisted alkali pretreatment. Biochem Eng J 38(3):369–378

Hu Z, Wang Y, Wen Z (2008) Alkali (NaOH) pretreatment of switchgrass by radio frequency-based dielectric heating. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 148(1–3):71–81

Ingram LO, Doran JB (1995) Conversion of cellulosic materials to ethanol. FEMS Microbiol Rev 16:235–241

Ingram LO, Aldrich HC, Borges ACC, Causey TB, Martinez A, Morales F, Saleh A, Underwood SA, Yomano LP, York SW, Zaldivar J, Zhou S (1999) Enteric bacterial catalysts for fuel ethanol production. Biotechnol Prog 15:855–866

Itoh H, Wada M, Honda Y, Kuwahara M, Watanabe T (2003) Bioorganosolve pretreatments for simultaneous saccharification and fermentation of beech wood by ethanolysis and white rot fungi. J Biotechnol 103:273–280

Jin M, Lau MW, Balan V, Dale BE (2010) Two-step SSCF to convert AFEX-treated switchgrass to ethanol using commercial enzymes and Saccharomyces cerevisiae 424A(LNH-ST). Bioresour Technol 101(21):8171–8178

Kaar WE, Holtzapple MT (2000) Using lime pretreatment to facilitate the enzymic hydrolysis of corn stover. Biomass Bioenergy 18:189–199

Kang W, Shukla R, Sirkar KK (1990) Ethanol production in a microporous hollow-fiber-based extractive fermentor with immobilized yeast. Biotechnol Bioeng 36:826–833

Kang L, Wang W, Lee YY (2010) Bioconversion of kraft paper mill sludges to ethanol by SSF and SSCF. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 161(1–8):53–66

Khiyami MA, Pometto AL III, Brown RC (2005) Detoxification of corn stover and corn starch pyrolysis liquors by Pseudomonas putida and *Streptomyces setonii* suspended cells and plastic compost support biofilms. J Agric Food Chem 53:2978–2987

Kim S, Dale BE (2004) Global potential bioethanol production from wasted crops and crop residues. Biomass Bioenergy 26:361–375

Ladanai S, Vinterbäck J (2009) Global potential of sustainable biomass for energy. Swedish University of Agricultural Sciences and Department of Energy and Technology, Uppsala

Laser M, Schulman D, Allen SG, Lichwa J, Antal MJ Jr, Lynd LR (2002) A comparison of liquid hot water and steam pretreatments of sugar cane bagasse for bioconversion to ethanol. Bioresour Technol 81:33–44

Lau MW, Gunawan C, Dale BE (2009) The impacts of pretreatment on the fermentability of pretreated lignocellulosic biomass: a comparative evaluation between ammonia fiber expansion and dilute acid pretreatment. Biotechnol Biofuels 2:30

Lee J (1997) Biological conversion of lignocellulosic biomass to ethanol. J Biotechnol 56:1–24

Lee WG, Park BG, Chang YK, Chang HN, Lee JS, Park SC (2000) Continuous ethanol production from concentrated wood hydrolysates in an internal membrane-filtration bioreactor. Biotechnol Prog 16:302–304

Lee JM, Venditti RA, Jameel H, Kenealy WR (2011) Detoxification of woody hydrolyzates with activated carbon for bioconversion to ethanol by the thermophilic anaerobic bacterium Thermoanaerobacterium saccharolyticum. Biomass Bioenergy 35(1):626–636

Leksawasdi N, Joachimsthal EL, Rogers PL (2001) Mathematical modeling of ethanol production from glucose/xylose mixtures by recombinant *Zymomonas mobilis*. Biotechnol Lett 23:1087–1093

Lin TH, Huang CF, Guo GL, Hwang WS, Huang SL (2012) Pilot-scale ethanol production from rice straw hydrolysates using xylose-fermenting Pichia stipitis. Bioresour Technol 116:314–319

Llano-Restrepo M, Aguilar-Arias J (2003) Modeling and simulation of saline extractive distillation columns for the production of absolute etanol. Comput Chem Eng 27(4):527–549

Lynd LR (1996) Overview and evaluation of fuel ethanol from cellulosic biomass: Technology, economics, the environment, and policy. Annu Rev Energy Env 21:403–465

Lynd LR, Elander RT, Wyman CE (1996) Likely features and costs of mature biomass ethanol technology. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 57(58):741–761

Lynd LR, Wyman CE, Gerngross TU (1999) Biocommodity engineering. Biotechnol Prog 15:777–793

Lynd LR, Lyford K, South CR, Walsum GPv, Levenson K (2001) Evaluation of paper sludges for amenability to enzymatic hydrolysis and conversion to ethanol. Tappi J 84:50–69

Lynd LR, Weimer PJ, van Zyl WH, Pretorious IS (2002) Microbial cellulose utilization: Fundamentals and biotechnology. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 66(3):506–577

Lynd LR, van Zyl WH, McBride JE, Laser M (2005) Consolidated bioprocessing of cellulosic biomass: an update. Curr Opin Biotechnol 16:577–583

Madson PW, Monceaux DA (1995) Fuel ethanol production. In: Lyons TP, Kelsall DR, Murtagh JE (eds) The alcohol textbook. University Press, Nottingham, pp 257–268

McMillan JD (1997) Bioethanol production: status and prospects. Renew Energy 10(2/3):295–302

McMillan JD, Newman MM, Templeton DW, Mohagheghi A (1999) Simultaneous saccharification and cofermentation of dilute-acid pretreated yellow poplar hardwood to ethanol using xylose-fermenting *Zymomonas mobilis*. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 77–79:649–665

Menon V, Rao M (2012) Trends in bioconversion of lignocellulose: Biofuels, platform chemicals and biorefinery concept. Prog Energy Combust Sci 38(4):522–550

Merrick and Company (1998) Wastewater treatment options for the biomass-to-ethanol process. Merrick and Company, USA

Mielenz JR (2001) Ethanol production from biomass: technology and commercialization status. Curr Opin Microbiol 4:324–329

Miller EN, Jarboe LR, Yomano LP, York SW, Shanmugam KT, Ingram LO (2009) Silencing of NADPH-dependent oxidoreductase genes (yqhD and dkgA) in furfural-resistant ethanologenic *Escherichia coli*. Appl Environ Microbiol 75:4315–4323

Montoya MI, Quintero JA, Sánchez ÓJ, Cardona CA (2005) Efecto del esquema de separación de producto en la producción biotecnológica de alcohol carburante. In: II Simposio sobre Biofábricas, Medellín

Montoya S, Orrego CE, Levin L (2011) Modeling *Grifola frondosa* fungal growth during solid-state fermentation. Eng Life Sci 11:316–321

Montoya S, Orrego CE, Levin L (2012) Growth, fruiting and lignocellulolytic enzyme production by the edible mushroom *Grifola frondosa* (maitake). World J Microbiol Biotechnol 28:1533–1541

Moreira JS (2000) Sugarcane for energy—recent results and progress in Brazil. Energy Sustainable Dev 4(3):43–54

Moreno AD, Ibarra D, Fernandez JL, Ballesteros M (2012) Different laccase detoxification strategies for ethanol production from lignocellulosic biomass by the thermotolerant yeast *Kluyveromyces marxianus* CECT 10875. Bioresour Technol 106:101–109

Moritz JW, Duff SJB (1996) Simultaneous saccharification and extractive fermentation of cellulosic substrates. Biotechnol Bioeng 49(5):504–511

Mosier N, Wyman C, Dale B, Elander R, Lee YY, Holtzapple M, Ladisch M (2005) Features of promising technologies for pretreatment of lignocellulosic biomass. Bioresour Technol 96:673–686

Nakamura Y, Sawada T, Inoue E (2001) Enhanced ethanol production from enzymatically treated steam-exploded rice straw using extractive fermentation. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 76:879–884

Ogier J-C, Ballerini D, Leygue J-P, Rigal L, Pourquié J (1999) Production d'éthanol à partir de biomasse lignocellulosique. Oil Gas Sci Technol Rev de l'IFP 54(1):67–94

Okuda N, Soneura M, Ninomiya K, Katakura Y, Shioya S (2008) Biological detoxification of waste house wood hydrolysate using *Ureibacillus thermosphaericus* for bioethanol production. J Biosci Bioeng 106(2):128–133

Olsson L, Hahn-Hägerdal B (1996) Fermentation of lignocellulosic hydrolysates for ethanol production. Enzyme Microb Technol 18:312–331

Palmqvist E, Hahn-Hägerdal B (2000) Fermentation of lignocellulosic hydrolysates. I: inhibition and detoxification. Bioresour Technol 74:17–24

Pan X, Arato C, Gilkes N, Gregg D, Mabee W, Pye K, Xiao Z, Zhang X, Saddler J (2005) Biorefining of softwoods using ethanol organosolv pulping: Preliminary evaluation of process streams for manufacture of fuel-grade ethanol and co-products. Biotechnol Bioeng 90(4):473–481

Percival Zhang YH, Himmel ME, Mielenz JR (2006) Outlook for cellulase improvement: screening and selection strategies. Biotechnol Adv 24(5):452–481

Persson P, Andersson J, Gorton L, Larsson S, Nilvebrant N-O, Jönsson LJ (2002) Effect of different forms of alkali treatment on specific fermentation inhibitors and on the fermentability of lignocellulose hydrolysates for production of fuel ethanol. J Agric Food Chem 50:5318–5325

Pinto RTP, W-M MR, Lintomen L (2000) Saline extractive distillation process for ethanol purification. Comput Chem Eng 24:1689–1694

Reith JH, den Uil H, van Veen H, de Laat WTAM, Niessen JJ, de Jong E, Elbersen HW, Weusthuis R, van Dijken JP, Raamsdonk L (2002) Co-production of bioethanol, electricity and heat from biomass residues. In: 12th European conference and technology exhibition on biomass for energy, industry and climate protection, Amsterdam

Saha BC, Iten LB, Cotta MA, Wu YV (2005) Dilute acid pretreatment, enzymatic saccharification and fermentation of wheat straw to ethanol. Process Biochem 40:3693–3700

Sánchez OJ, Cardona CA (2008) Trends in biotechnological production of fuel ethanol from different feedstocks. Bioresour Technol 99:5270–5295

Sánchez ÓJ, Cardona CA (2012) Conceptual design of cost-effective and environmentally-friendly configurations for fuel ethanol production from sugarcane by knowledge-based process synthesis. Bioresour Technol 104:305–314

Sánchez OJ, Cardona CA, Cubides DC (2005) Modeling of simultaneous saccharification and fermentation process coupled with pervaporation for fuel ethanol production. In: 2nd Mercosur congress on chemical engineering and 4th mercosur congress on process systems engineering, Rio de Janeiro, Brazil

Sánchez OJ, Gutiérrez LF, Cardona CA, Fraga ES (2006) Analysis of extractive fermentation process for ethanol production using a rigorous model and a short-cut method. In: Bogle IDL, Žilinskas J (eds) Computer aided methods in optimal design and operations, vol 7., Series on computers and operations researchWorld Scientific Publishing Co, Singapore, pp 207–216

Schell DJ, Riley CJ, Dowe N, Farmer J, Ibsen KN, Ruth MF, Toon ST, Lumpkin RE (2004) A bioethanol process development unit: initial operating experiences and results with a corn fiber feedstock. Bioresour Technol 91:179–188

Shahbazi A, Li Y, Mims MR (2005) Application of sequential aqueous steam treatments to the fractionation of softwood. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 121–124:973–987

Shao X, Jin M, Guseva A, Liu C, Balan V, Hogsett D, Dale BE, Lynd L (2011) Conversion for Avicel and AFEX pretreated corn stover by *Clostridium thermocellum* and simultaneous saccharification and fermentation: insights into microbial conversion of pretreated cellulosic biomass. Bioresour Technol 102(17):8040–8045

Sheehan J, Himmel M (1999) Enzymes, energy, and the environment: a strategic perspective on the US Department of Energy's research and development activities for bioethanol. Biotechnol Prog 15:817–827

Singh D, Nigam P, Banat IM, Marchant R, McHale AP (1998) Ethanol production at elevated temperatures and alcohol concentrations. Part II: Use of *Kluyveromyces marxianus* IMB3. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 14:823–834

South CR, Hogsett DA, Lynd LR (1993) Continuous fermentation of cellulosic biomass to ethanol. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 39(40):587–600

Stenberg K, Galbe M, Zacchi G (2000) The influence of lactic acid formation on the simultaneous saccharification and fermentation (SSF) of softwood to ethanol. Enzyme Microb Technol 26:71–79

Sukumaran RK, Singhania RR, Mathew GM, Pandey A (2009) Cellulase production using biomass feed stock and its application in lignocellulose saccharification for bio-ethanol production. Renew Energy 34(2):421–424

Sun Y, Cheng J (2002) Hydrolysis of lignocellulosic materials for ethanol production: a review. Bioresour Technol 83:1–11

Szczodrak J, Fiedurek J (1996) Technology for conversion of lignocellulosic biomass to ethanol. Biomass Bioenergy 10(5/6):367–375

Szitkai Z, Lelkes Z, Rev E, Fonyo Z (2002) Optimization of hybrid ethanol dehydration systems. Chem Eng Process 41:631–646

Takagi M, Abe S, Suzuki S, Emert GH, Yata N (1977) A method for production of ethanol directly from cellulose using cellulase and yeast. In: Ghose TK (ed) Proceedings of bioconversion symposium, Delhi, IIT, pp 551–571

Tan HT, Lee KT (2012) Understanding the impact of ionic liquid pretreatment on biomass and enzymatic hydrolysis. Chem Eng J 183:448–458

Taylor F, Kurantz MJ, Goldberg N, Craig JC Jr (1996) Control of packed column fouling in the continuous fermentation and stripping of ethanol. Biotechnol Bioeng 51:33–39

Taylor F, Kurantz MJ, Goldberg N, McAloon AJ, Craig JC Jr (2000) Dry-grind process for fuel ethanol by continuous fermentation and stripping. Biotechnol Prog 16:541–547

Tengerdy RP, Szakacs G (2003) Bioconversion of lignocellulose in solid substrate fermentation. Biochem Eng J 13:169–179

Tsuyomoto M, Teramoto A, Meares P (1997) Dehydration of ethanol on a pilot plant scale, using a new type of hollow-fiber membrane. J Membr Sci 133:83–94

Varga E, Klinkle HB, Réczey K, Thomsen AB (2004) High solid simultaneous saccharification and fermentation of wet oxidized corn stover to ethanol. Biotechnol Bioeng 88(5):567–574

Vinuselvi P, Lee SK (2012) Engineered Escherichia coli capable of co-utilization of cellobiose and xylose. Enzyme Microb Technol 50(1):1–4

Wang B, Wang X, Feng H (2010) Deconstructing recalcitrant *Miscanthus* with alkaline peroxide and electrolyzed water. Bioresour Technol 101(2):752–760

Wang W, Yuan T, Wang K, Cui B, Dai Y (2012) Combination of biological pretreatment with liquid hot water pretreatment to enhance enzymatic hydrolysis of *Populus tomentosa*. Bioresour Technol 107:282–286

Weerachanchai P, Leong SS, Chang MW, Ching CB, Lee JM (2012) Improvement of biomass properties by pretreatment with ionic liquids for bioconversion process. Bioresour Technol 111:453–459

Weil JR, Dien B, Bothast R, Hendrickson R, Mosier NS, Ladisch MR (2002) Removal of fermentation inhibitors formed during pretreatment of biomass by polymeric adsorbents. Ind Eng Chem Res 41:6132–6138

Wooley R, Ruth M, Glassner D, Sheejan J (1999a) Process design and costing of bioethanol technology: a tool for determining the status and direction of research and development. Biotechnol Prog 15:794–803

Wooley R, Ruth M, Sheehan J, Ibsen K, Majdeski H, Galvez A (1999b) Lignocellulosic biomass to ethanol process design and economics utilizing co-current dilute acid prehydrolysis and enzymatic hydrolysis. Current and futuristic scenarios. National Renewable Energy Laboratory, Golden

Wyman CE (1994) Ethanol from lignocellulosic biomass: Technology, economics, and opportunities. Bioresour Technol 50:3–16

Wyman CE, Spindler DD, Grohmann K (1992) Simultaneous saccharification and fermentation of several lignocellulosic feedstocks to fuel ethanol. Biomass Bioenergy 3(5):301–307

Xie Y, Phelps D, Lee C-H, Sedlak M, Ho N, Wang N-HL (2005) Comparison of two adsorbents for sugar recovery from biomass hydrolyzate. Ind Eng Chem Res 44:6816–6823

Xu L, Tschirner U (2011) Improved ethanol production from various carbohydrates through anaerobic thermophilic co-culture. Bioresour Technol 102(21):10065–10071

Yu Z, Zhang H (2003) Pretreatments of cellulose pyrolysate for ethanol production by *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, *Pichia* sp. YZ-1 and *Zymomonas mobilis*. Biomass Bioenergy 24:257–262

Yu J, Zhang J, He J, Liu Z, Yu Z (2009) Combinations of mild physical or chemical pretreatment with biological pretreatment for enzymatic hydrolysis of rice hull. Bioresour Technol 100(2):903–908

Zaldivar J, Roca C, Le Foll C, Hahn-Hägerdal B, Olsson L (2005) Ethanolic fermentation of acid pre-treated starch industry effluents by recombinant *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* strains. Bioresour Technol 96:1670–1676

Zhang YH (2008) Reviving the carbohydrate economy via multi-product lignocellulose biorefineries. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 35(5):367–375

Zhang Y-HP, Lynd LR (2004) Toward an aggregated understanding of enzymatic hydrolysis of cellulose: Noncomplexed cellulose systems. Biotechnol Bioeng 8(7):797–824

Zhou S, Ingram LO (2001) Simultaneous saccharification and fermentation of amorphous cellulose to ethanol by recombinant *Klebsiella oxytoca* SZ21 without supplemental cellulase. Biotechnol Lett 23(18):1455–1462

Zhu JY, Zhu W, Obryan P, Dien BS, Tian S, Gleisner R, Pan XJ (2010) Ethanol production from SPORL-pretreated lodgepole pine: preliminary evaluation of mass balance and process energy efficiency. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 86(5):1355–1365

Chapter 17
Biobutanol Production from Biomass

Johanna Niemistö, Paula Saavalainen, Ritva Isomäki, Tanja Kolli, Mika Huuhtanen and Riitta L. Keiski

Abstract There is a demand for the increased production and usage of biofuels from both environmental and a political point of view. Biobutanol has great potential to become a novel replacement fuel for gasoline and diesel or an additive compound of these fuels in the future. This chapter reveals the superior fuel properties of butanol over ethanol, including better energy content, usability, safety, and easier distribution of the fuel. Traditional biochemical (acetone-butanol-ethanol fermentation) and chemical production processes of butanol are reviewed. In addition, the novel production routes of biobutanol are highlighted. Challenges in the implementation of feasible biochemical production processes of butanol in industrial scale include cost of raw materials, low product yield from fermentation, and expensive processing techniques. Process development techniques and different methods in order to increase the yield of fermentative butanol production by means of for instance new processing technologies and metabolic engineering are discussed.

17.1 Introduction

The interest for production and usage of biofuels is promoted by limited fossil fuel resources, environmental concerns and tightening legislation regarding the use of fossil fuels as well as release of carbon dioxide (CO_2) and other emissions in the air. The share of biofuels in transportation fuel markets is expected to grow rapidly during the next decades. Bioethanol and biodiesel are currently the dominant

J. Niemistö (✉) · P. Saavalainen · R. Isomäki · T. Kolli · M. Huuhtanen · R. L. Keiski
Mass and Heat Transfer Process Laboratory, Department of Process and Environmental Engineering, University of Oulu, P.O. Box 4300, FI-90014 Oulu, Finland
e-mail: johanna.niemisto@oulu.fi

V. K. Gupta and M. G. Tuohy (eds.), *Biofuel Technologies*,
DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-34519-7_17,

biobased fuels in transportation. However, new alternative renewable fuels are also needed to fulfill the increasing fuel demands in the future. With many advantageous properties and numerous utilization ways, biobutanol has a great potential to become a novel renewable biofuel alternative for the fuel and chemical market.

Although there are several alternatives for the production of butanol from biomass-based materials, butanol is produced nowadays mainly via catalytic processes starting from fossil fuels. This review chapter points out the shortages of biomass-based processes and focuses on the target points for process developments needed in order to gain a feasible and competitive biobutanol production process.

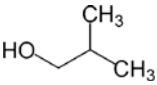
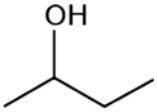
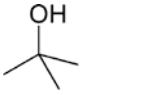
17.2 Properties and Usage of Butanol

Butanol (C_4H_9OH), also called as butyl alcohol, or biobutanol if produced from biomass, has four structural isomers with the common names of *n*-butanol, isobutanol, *sec*-butanol, and *tert*-butanol (Table 17.1). Butanol is used mainly as an intermediate compound for butyl acrylate and methacrylate esters, which are needed for lacquers, paints, and surface coatings. Butyl acetates and glycol ethers are also common derivatives produced from butanol (Kirschner 2006). In addition, butanol is used as a direct solvent and as raw material in the manufacturing of textiles and plasticizers, amino resins and butylamines (Burridge 2009). Chemical and physical properties such as boiling point, octane number, and viscosity of butanol can vary between different isomers, but the main applications in use as solvents, industrial cleaners, or biofuels are the same for all isomers.

Besides the use of butanol as a solvent and a platform chemical, superior fuel properties enable its use as direct transportation fuel or fuel additive:

- **Distribution.** As less corrosive and having lower water solubility than ethanol, butanol can be distributed via existing pipelines and distribution stations.
- **Blending ability with gasoline and diesel**. Compared to ethanol, blending is possible in higher concentrations without any vehicle retrofitting. Thereby the share of renewable components in the final fuel mixture could be increased.
- **Energy content, octane values and air to fuel ratio.** Values are closer to gasoline compared to ethanol. Fuel economy (km/L) is better than with ethanol.
- **Usability.** Compared to ethanol, the lower heat of vaporization enables the easier starting of a motor in cold weather and decreases the ignition problems. In addition, tendencies toward cavitation and vapor lock problems are lower in the case of butanol and the need for special fuel blends during summer and winter time can be reduced.
- **Safety.** Butanol is safer to use and handle compared to ethanol due to the lower vapor pressure and higher flash point. In addition, butanol generates lower amounts of volatile organic compound (VOC) emissions in internal combustion engines.

Table 17.1 Molecular structure, production and use of butanol isomers (Hahn et al. 2012; Jin et al. 2011)

Isomer	Molecular structure	Production methods	Main use
n-butanol 1-butanol		fermentation Reppe synthesis Oxo synthesis crotonaldehyde hydrogenation	Solvent, thinner, or platform chemical in surface coatings, plastic and textile industry, gasoline additive
isobutanol 2-methyl-1-propanol		fermentation Reppe synthesis Oxo synthesis catalytic hydrogenation of carbon monoxide homologization reaction	Solvent, diluent, and additive for nitrocellulose and synthetic resins. Component of cleaners and printing inks, gasoline additive
sec-butanol 2-butanol		acid-catalyzed hydration of *n*-butene	Solvent, component of brake fluids, cleaning agents, perfumes, and fruit essence. Mainly hydrogenated to 2-butanone and used as a solvent
tert-butanol 2-methyl-2-propanol		2-methylpropene hydration a by-product of methyl *tert*-butyl ether and propylene oxide production	Solvent, used e.g. in preparation of peroxides, oil-soluble resins, and antioxidants.

Butanol can be mixed in various blending ratios with gasoline, ethanol, or diesel. Studies in relation to pure and mixed butanol combustion in engines using techniques of spark ignition (SI), direct injection (DI), compression ignition (CI), or cooperative fuel research (CFR) have been performed intensively during the past few years (Dernotte et al. 2010; Szwaja and Naber 2010; Wallner and Frazee 2010; Cairns et al. 2009; Wallner et al. 2009). Jin et al. (2011) have reviewed the combustion studies done by several research groups. They concluded that engine power is not reduced in unmodified SI engines when the butanol content in gasoline blends is below 20 vol %. The emissions of soot, carbon monoxide (CO), and nitrogen oxides (NO_x) are reduced in the butanol-diesel blends compared with pure diesel combustion (Rakopoulos et al. 2010). However, depending on the used engine type, blending ratios and operating conditions, total hydrocarbon, CO and NO_x emissions may also increase in some cases with SI engines. More experimental research and development of kinetic models are needed in order to optimize the combustion process (Jin et al. 2011).

Butanol can be used also as raw material for the production of oxygenated diesel fuels. For example, dibutyl ether (DBE) can be produced by partial dehydration of butanol using sulfonated mesoporous silica and organosilica as catalysts (Sow et al. 2005). In addition, saturated hydrocarbon fuels can be produced e.g. by catalytic dehydration of *n*-butanol to 1-and 2-butene at low temperatures between

200 and 350 °C (Lu et al. 1995). Butene can be further oligomerizated with cation exchange resins or catalysts such as amorphous silico-aluminas, polyphosphoric acid, or zeolites with large pores to produce jet and diesel fuels (reviewed e.g. by Harvey and Meylemans 2011). Further, Wright et al. (2008) used methylaluminoxane (MAO) activated metallocene catalysts for the high selectivity conversion of 1-butene to oligomers, which can be further processed to jet fuels.

17.3 History of Butanol Production

Figure 17.1 represents the highlights and turning points of the butanol production. Pasteur reported in 1861 about the formation of butanol in the microbial fermentation (Gabriel 1928). In the early twentieth century, acetone, amyl alcohol, and butanol were produced by fermentation of starch-based biomasses for further production of synthetic rubber (Fitz 1878; Gabriel and Crawford 1930): Fernbach isolated and patented a bacterial culture producing butanol from potato starch in 1911 and, soon after that, in 1912, Fernbach's former assistant Weizmann isolated a strain using starch as a substrate with a higher product yield (Gabriel 1928; Jones and Woods 1986). The isolated bacterium strain was later named as *Clostridium acetobutylicum* and it has been the most studied and used microorganism for butanol production. Both the Fernbach and the Weizmann processes have been used in industrial scale production plants for the production of acetone and butanol. During the First World War (1914–1918) acetone was the main product of the fermentation processes, required in the production of cordite i.e., smokeless gunpowder. Butanol turned to be the main product in 1920 as it was found to have good solvent properties for the manufacturing of quick drying lacquers needed in fast expanding automobile industry (Gabriel 1928; Gabriel and Crawford 1930). Over the following decades, biobutanol was produced widely in several industrial plants all over the world (García et al. 2011). In spite of continuous research and process development activities, many of the plants were closed down in the 1960s because of the risen costs of substrates. Petrochemical synthesis processes started to dominate the manufacturing of butanol as they are more cost efficient.

Research related to the biochemical fermentation process continued, however, mainly in academia and in some pilot plants (Nimcevic and Gapes 2000). New feed stocks, development of pretreatment methods, improvement of fermentation practices and downstream processes have been actively studied during the past few decades and several reviews are published recently (Jin et al. 2011; García et al. 2011; Kumar and Gayen 2011; Ezeji et al. 2010; Ezeji et al. 2007). China has restarted the acetone-butanol-ethanol (ABE) production in several production plants already in operation (Ni and Sun 2009). In addition, several companies e.g. BP, DuPont, Cobalt Biofuels, Green Biologics, Gevo, Metabolic Explorer, and TetraVitae Bioscience are developing biobutanol production processes intensively and new production facilities are expected to be opened in the near future (Jin et al. 2011).

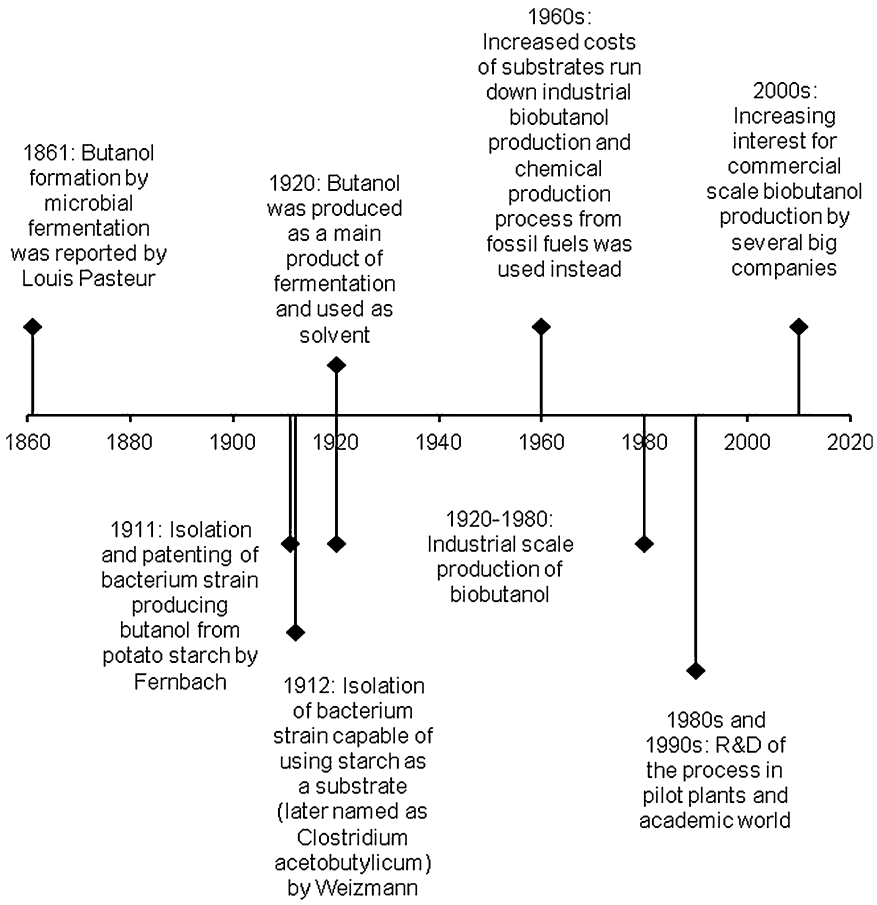


Fig. 17.1 Milestones of (bio) butanol production

17.4 Chemical Production Processes

17.4.1 Traditional Chemical Production Processes

Currently, butanol is almost exclusively produced from fossil fuels originated hydrocarbons via chemical routes. Traditional industrial chemical processes for butanol production are Oxo synthesis also known as hydro formylation (Eqs. 1, 2 and 3 in Fig. 17.2), Reppe synthesis (Eq. 4) and crotonaldehyde hydrogenation (Eqs. 5, 6 and 7) shown in Fig. 17.2.

In Oxo synthesis, carbon monoxide and hydrogen are added to propylene in the liquid phase. Catalysts such as cobalt (Co), rhodium (Rh), or ruthenium (Ru) are used. The first reaction step produces a butyraldehyde mixture, which is further hydrogenated to *n*-butanol and isobutanol. The catalysts and reaction conditions

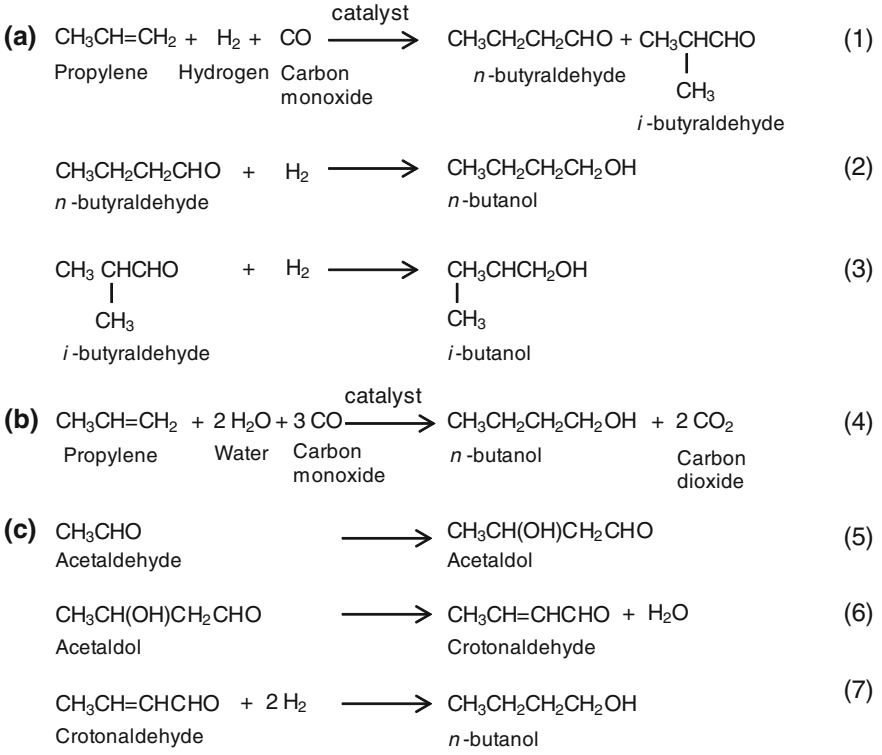


Fig. 17.2 Chemical synthesis of butanol via **a** Oxo synthesis, **b** Reppe synthesis and **c** crotonaldehyde hydrogenation

such as pressure and temperature used lead to different ratios of butanol isomers (Hahn et al. 2012; Falbe 1970). According to Chauvel and Lefebvre (1989), the required temperatures and pressures vary between 110–180 °C and 5–35 MPa for cobalt catalysts, while with rhodium processes are done at 70–120 °C and 1.5–30 MPa. Lower temperature and pressure conditions are used normally with modified catalysts such as cobalt hydrocarbonyl substituted by a phosphine or carbonyl rhodium modified by triphenylphosphine.

The Reppe process starts also from propylene and carbon monoxide, but water is used instead of H_2 and tertiary ammonium salt of polynuclear iron carbonyl hydrides as a catalyst. Carbon dioxide is produced in addition to *n*-butanol and isobutanol. Reaction takes place at lower temperatures and pressures (100 °C and 0.5–2 MPa) compared with the Oxo reaction, but the needed process technologies are more expensive. Thus, the Reppe process has not been found commercially successful (Hahn et al. 2012; Chauvel and Lefebvre 1989; Falbe 1970).

Hydrogenation of crotonaldehyde was the preferred process for butanol production prior to the development of the Oxo synthesis. Process includes steps of aldolization of acetaldehyde, dehydration of produced acetaldol to crotonaldehyde followed by hydrogenation to *n*-butanol. Both gaseous and liquid phase processes are developed, commonly in the presence of copper (Cu) or chromium (Cr) catalysts at 170–180 °C or at lower temperatures when nickel (Ni) catalysts are used (Hahn et al. 2012; Weissermel and Arpe 2003).

17.4.2 Novel Catalytic Routes with Renewable Feed stocks

Almost all of the industrially produced butanol has been manufactured by the Oxo reaction from fossil fuel-based materials. Renewable starting materials for the catalytic production routes are desirable, and thereby the interest to find proper catalysts for these processes has increased strongly during the past few years. Crotonaldehyde hydrogenation is assumed to have a more important role in the future due to the possibility to convert bioethanol produced by fermentation to acetaldehyde and further to *n*-butanol (Hahn et al. 2012). Calcium or strontium substituted hydroxyapatite catalysts, such as $Ca_{10}(PO_4)_6(OH)_2$ or $Sr_{10}(PO_4)_6(OH)_2$, have been found to be promising for the conversion of ethanol to *n*-butanol (Ogo et al. 2011; Tsuchida et al. 2006, 2008a, b). Moreover, zeolites (Ndou et al. 2003) and supported metal catalysts e.g. Ni/γ-Al_2O_3 (Yang et al. 2004) have been studied. Almost all ethanol-to-*n*-butanol processes have been reported to be operated in gas phase. Therefore, liquid-phase catalytic conversion of ethanol to 1-butanol is interesting (Riittonen et al. 2012). Table 17.2 summarizes some catalytic studies on the chemical conversion of ethanol to butanol.

In most heterogeneous *n*-butanol formation reactions presented, ethanol with carrier gas (N_2 or He) is introduced on the catalyst surface at temperatures from 200 to 450 °C. In these cases, the ethanol conversion has been varied between 2 and almost 100 % depending on catalytic material used. An autoclave reactor has been used in the direct catalytic valorization of liquid ethanol conversion to *n*-butanol. In these cases, the conversion of ethanol is between 2 and 18 % and the selectivity to butanol up to 62 % (Riittonen et al. 2012; Marcu et al. 2009).

The main challenges of the recent studies have been to find out novel and proper catalysts for the synthesis of butanol as well as to understand or clarify the reaction mechanism of *n*-butanol formation. To improve ethanol conversion, the effect of the catalyst composition has often been studied more closely. For example, the optimum amount of Cu addition on MgAl-oxide has been found to be between 5 and 10 wt %, the obtained maximum conversion of ethanol being around 4.1–4.5 % and selectivity to butanol from 40 to 42 % (Marcu et al. 2009). In addition, the partial substitution of Al_2O_3 by iron (Fe) has been shown to have an effect on the ethanol condensation (León et al. 2011b). It has been found that the product distribution in the catalytic conversion of ethanol is dependent on the catalysts. Therefore, several reaction mechanisms for catalytic ethanol reaction to

Table 17.2 Catalytic conversion of ethanol to butanol

Catalyst	Reaction conditions (phase, T, p)	Product composition	Conversion, *n*-butanol selectivity or yield	References
MgO/C (10 or 20 wt % Mg)	CH_3OH:C_2H_5OH in N_2, 1 Pa, 310–400 °C, 1.4 MPa, ambient T	H_2, CO_2, C_3H_6, acetylene, *i*-butane, *trans*- and *cis*-butene, C_2H_4, O_2, CH_4, CO, N_2	$X_{C_2H_5OH}$[a] = 15 % at 300 °C, $X_{C_2H_5OH}$ = 70–98 % at 360 °C, $X_{C_2H_5OH}$ = 91 % at 400 °C	Olson et al. (2004)
Ni/MgO (3 wt % Ni)	CH_3OH:C_2H_5OH in N_2, 360 °C, 1 Pa	H_2, CO_2, C_3H_6, acetylene, *i*-butane, *trans*- and *cis*-butene, C_2H_4, O_2, CH_4, CO, N_2	$X_{C_2H_5OH}$ = 47 %	Olson et al. (2004)
Mg–Al mixed oxides	200–450 °C, 5.5 vol % C_2H_5OH in He	Ethylene, acetaldehyde, 2-butenal	$X_{C_2H_5OH}$ ~ 90 % at 450 °C	León et al. (2011a)
Mg–Al 3:1 mixed oxides	12 vol % C_2H_5OH in N_2	Ethylene, acetaldehyde, butanol, butyraldehyde	$X_{C_2H_5OH}$ ~ 33 % at 350 °C $S^{b}_{butanol}$ = 38 %	Carvalho et al. (2012)
Fe/Mg–Al mixed oxides	200–450 °C, 0.1 MPa, 5.5 vol % C_2H_5OH in He	Butanol, 1,3- butadiene	$X_{C_2H_5OH}$ ~ 90–100 % at 450 °C	León et al. (2011b)
Cu/Mg–Al mixed oxides	50 ml C_2H_5OH, 200–260 °C, autogenic pressure, stirring	*n*-butanol, 1,1-diethoxyethane, acetaldehyde, ethyl acetate, butyraldehyde, methyl ethyl ketone, diethyl ester	$X_{C_2H_5OH}$ ~ 4.5 % $S_{butanol}$ ~ 40 %	Marcu et al. (2009)
Ca-P, Ca-V, Sr-P, Sr-V hydroxyapatite catalysts	300 °C, 1 Pa, 16.1 vol % C_2H_5OH in Ar	1-butanol, 2-butenol, acetaldehyde, crotonaldehyde	$X_{C_2H_5OH}$ = 5.8–7.6 % $S_{butanol}$ = 8.1–74.5 %	Ogo et al. (2011)
MgO, CaO, Ca/P	300–450 °C, 0.1 MPa, 16.4 vol % C_2H_5OH in He	Acetaldehyde, butyraldehyde, crotonaldehyde, 1-butanol, 1-hexanol, 2-ehyl-1-butanol, 1-octanol, 2-ethyl-1-hexanol, 1-decanol, 1-hexene etc.	$X_{C_2H_5OH}$ = max 26 % $S_{butanol}$ = max 76 %	Tsuchida et al. (2006, 2008a, b)

(continued)

Table 17.2 (continued)

Catalyst	Reaction conditions (phase, T, p)	Product composition	Conversion, *n*-butanol selectivity or yield	References
γ-Al_2O_3 MgO	450 °C, 0.1 MPa, 10 ml C_2H_5OH in N_2	Acetal, butanal, crotonal, 2-butanol, butanol, crotanol	Al: $X_{C_2H_5OH}$ = 82 % $Y^c_{butanol}$ = 0 % Mg: $X_{C_2H_5OH}$ = 56 % $Y_{butanol}$ = 18 %	Ndou et al. (2003)
Ni, Fe or Co/γ-Al_2O_3	200 °C, 0.1 MPa	Acetaldehyde, butaldehyde, ethanyl acetate, *n*-butanol	Ni: $X_{C_2H_5OH}$ = 19 % $S_{butanol}$ = 64 % Fe: $X_{C_2H_5OH}$ = 3 % $S_{butanol}$ = 0 % Co: $X_{C_2H_5OH}$ = 17 % $S_{butanol}$ = 23 %	Yang et al. (2004)
Ru, Rh, Pd, Pt, Au or Ni on Al_2O_3	Mini-reactor, up to 250 °C, up to 10 MPa, 1.5 ml C_2H_5OH in He	Acetaldehyde, diethyl ether, ethyl acetate, 1-butanol, 1.1-diethoxy ethane, 1-hexanol, 1-octanol	$X_{C_2H_5OH}$ = 2–18 % $S_{butanol}$ = 0–62 %	Riittonen et al. (2012)

[a] X: conversion, [b] S: selectivity, [c] Y: yield

butanol have been proposed based on Guerbet reaction involving a bifunctional catalyst with a base component and metal species. The catalyst promotes condensation reaction between alcohols. Three steps occurring in this reaction are: dehydrogenation of alcohols to the corresponding aldehydes, aldol condensation of the resulting aldehydes, and finally hydrogenation of the unsaturated condensation products to higher alcohols (Tompsett et al. 2011). For example, Ogo et al. (2011) succeeded with a four step mechanism, where 1-butanol formation over hydroxyapatite goes through the dehydrogenation of ethanol to acetaldehyde, the aldol condensation of acetaldehyde to crotonaldehyde, and the hydrogenations of crotonaldehyde, 2-buten-1-ol, and/or butyraldehyde to 1-butanol. According to Marcu et al. (2009), *n*-butanol formation over CuMgAl mixed oxides goes after the first step of ethanol dehydrogenation into acetaldehyde to self-condensation of acetaldehyde to butyraldehyde, and finally to the hydrogenation of butyraldehyde.

Another catalytic route to produce butanol is from fermentation products, esters (R_1COOR_2) to alcohols (R_1CH_2OH) and R_2OH. Hydrogenolysis of butyl butyrate ($C_3H_7COOC_4H_9$) to butanol over a $Cu/ZnO/Al_2O_3$ catalyst has been attracting industrial interest in recent years (Ju et al. 2010; Kim et al. 2011). The idea is to use 1 mol of butyric acid (C_3H_7COOH) and 1 mol of butanol from a fermentation process for esterification to butyl butyrate, which is further converted to 2 mol of butanol by hydrogenation. Hydrogenolysis of butyl butyrate has been studied to yield esters via dissociative adsorption on the $Cu/ZnO/Al_2O_3$ catalyst, producing C_3H_7CO and C_4H_9O fragments. The surface C_3H_7CO fragment is then hydrogenated via butyraldehyde to butanol and the counterpart C_4H_9O fragment is directly hydrogenated (Ju et al. 2010). The presence of zinc oxide (ZnO) in the $CuO/ZnO/Al_2O_3$ catalyst has been found to enhance the catalytic activity of Cu due to the dual function of ZnO (Kim et al. 2011).

17.5 Biochemical Production Processes

The biochemical production route of biobutanol is illustrated in Fig. 17.3. Based on the main products of the fermentation step, the process is also known as the acetone-butanol-ethanol (ABE) fermentation. A wide range of feed stocks including side products, wastes, and residues from agriculture and industry can be used. Upstream processing steps required before the fermentation step are pretreatment of feedstock biomass and hydrolysis by using enzymes or acids. If some inhibitors have been formed during the pretreatment, additional detoxification steps may also be needed. The anaerobic fermentation process is used to convert sugars to acetone, butanol and ethanol and in addition to acids and gases as by-products. The final products obtained from the fermentation are recovered and purified in downstream processing steps (Qureshi and Blaschek 2005).

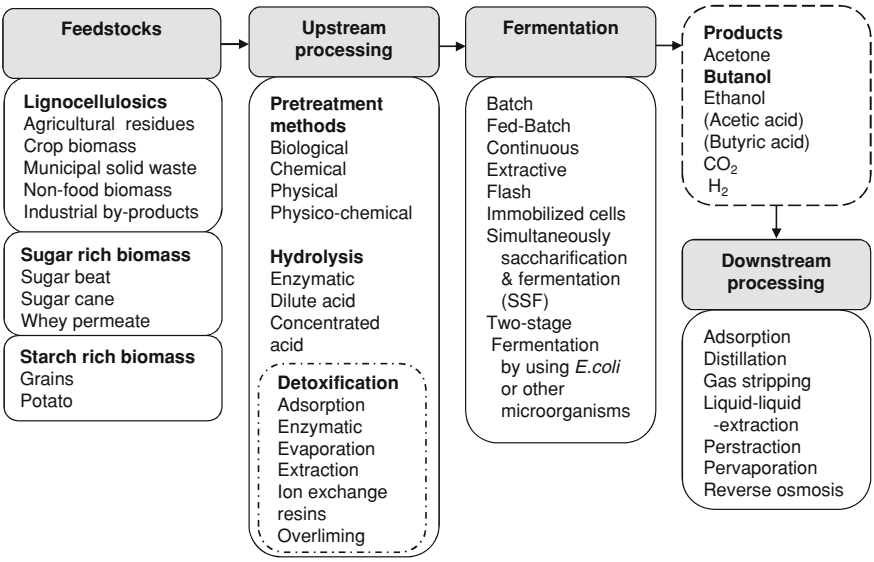


Fig. 17.3 Biobutanol production process with alternative feedstocks and processing techniques (—means process step required if inhibitors are produced during upstream processing—are products)

17.5.1 Feedstocks

A low price, good availability and supply together with the reasonable costs of transportation and upstream processing to gain fermentable sugars are the most important factors when selecting biomasses as raw materials for the processes (Lynd et al. 1999). Crop biomasses have drawbacks in seasonal availability and variations of quality and yields between growing periods. On the other hand, upstream processing of sugar and starch-based biomasses is usually easier than with lignocellulosics. Better availability with lower supply costs is, however, promoting the use of lignocellulosic biomasses. Additionally, the use of nonedible biomasses instead of foodstuff is desirable. By using by-products and waste materials, also sustainability, material efficiency, and waste minimization can be enhanced. Molasses, starch from potato and corn have been the traditional feedstocks used for industrial scale production of biobutanol (García et al. 2011). However, these starting materials have faced several obstacles as they can be used as food.

17.5.2 Upstream Processing

The main components of lignocellulosic biomasses are cellulose (35–50 % of dry weight), hemicelluloses (25–35 %) and lignin (10–25 %) (Cherubini 2010). Cellulose consists of glucose, while hemicellulose includes sugars such as D-galactose, D-glucose, D-mannose, D-xylose, and L-arabinose. Clostridial bacteria can utilize all these sugars (Ezeji and Blaschek 2008), but the complex structure of feedstock biomasses is needed to be altered prior to fermentation to release the sugars for fermentation. Lignocellulosic biomasses require more severe upstream processing techniques than noncellulosic materials. This is because of the much more complicated structure of lignocellulosics: cellulose, hemicellulose, and lignin are bound together with chemical bonds hindering the upstream processing.

Several pretreatment techniques are available, including physical (e.g. chipping, grinding or milling), physico-chemical (steam expansion, ammonia fiber expansion, and liquid hot water treatment), chemical (dilute or concentrated acid hydrolysis, alkaline hydrolysis, and oxidative delignification), and biological (fungal pretreatments by for instance bacteria or brown, soft or white rots) methods. Numerous review articles are available with detailed information about these techniques (e.g. Kumar et al. 2009; Taherzadeh and Karimi 2008; Jørgensen et al. 2007; Mosier et al. 2005). The most desirable pretreatment technique is cost and energy efficient in addition to a good yield of fermentable sugars without the formation of inhibitors for subsequent hydrolysis and fermentation steps. Results of pretreatments should always be balanced against the costs of construction, materials, chemicals, and operation as well as the influence on the fermentation and downstream processing steps.

After the pretreatment, the obtained cellulose and hemicelluloses are broken down into glucose and other fermentable sugars by enzymatic or acid hydrolyses. Enzymatic hydrolysis is done with cellulase and hemicellulase enzymes produced by brown, white or soft rot fungi such as *Aspergillus*, *Phanerochaete* and *Trichoderma*, in addition to several species of bacteria, e.g. *Clostridium*, *Bacillus* and *Streptomyces* (Sukumaran et al. 2005). Enzymatic hydrolysis is done in mild conditions such as in the temperature range of 40–50 °C and pH of 4.5–5.0 (Taherzadeh and Karimi 2007), but slowness and cost of enzymes are hindering the industrial use of this method (Sánchez and Cardona 2008). Acid hydrolysis is performed typically by using dilute (0.75–5 wt %) or concentrated (10–30 wt %) solutions of sulphuric, hydrochloric, or nitric acid (Sánchez and Cardona 2008). Dilute acid pretreatment is done at elevated temperatures at around 140–190 °C compared to the lower temperatures e.g. 40 °C when concentrated acids are used (Taherzadeh and Karimi 2008). Disadvantages of acid hydrolysis include the cost and corrosiveness of acids, in addition to the need for acid recovery and neutralization of hydrolysates prior to the fermentation.

Undesirable degradation products inhibiting enzymatic hydrolysis or fermentation may be formed during the upstream processing steps. Inhibitors released during the processing of lignocellulosic materials include aliphatic acids (acetic,

formic, and levulinic acids), furan derivatives (furfural and 5-hydroxymethylfurfural), and phenolic compounds (syringaldehyde, ferulic and *p*-coumaric acid) (Larsson et al. 1999). Removal of inhibitors can be done by for instance adsorption with activated charcoal, ion exchange resins, evaporation, or solvent extraction. Another approach is the neutralization of inhibitors by enzymatic detoxification or overliming with calcium hydroxide (Huang et al. 2008).

17.5.3 Fermentation

Anaerobic fermentation is typically done by using some of the several Clostridial bacterium strains such as *Clostridium acetobutylicum* or *Clostridium beijerinckii*. Fermentation includes two stages. At first in the acidogenic phase, bacteria are growing and producing acetic and butyric acids, carbon dioxide (CO_2), and hydrogen (H_2) from pyruvate obtained from sugars by glycolysis (Fig. 17.4). At the end of the exponential growth phase, the metabolism of the bacteria changes and the produced acids are converted into acetone, butanol and ethanol, typically with the ratio of 3:6:1. This second phase is usually called the solventogenic phase.

Product concentration remains low, mainly because butanol is inhibiting the growth and metabolism of Clostridial bacteria. The maximum butanol concentration obtained from batch fermentation is typically about 18 g/L while the total solvent yield is around 26 g/L (Qureshi et al. 2010a).

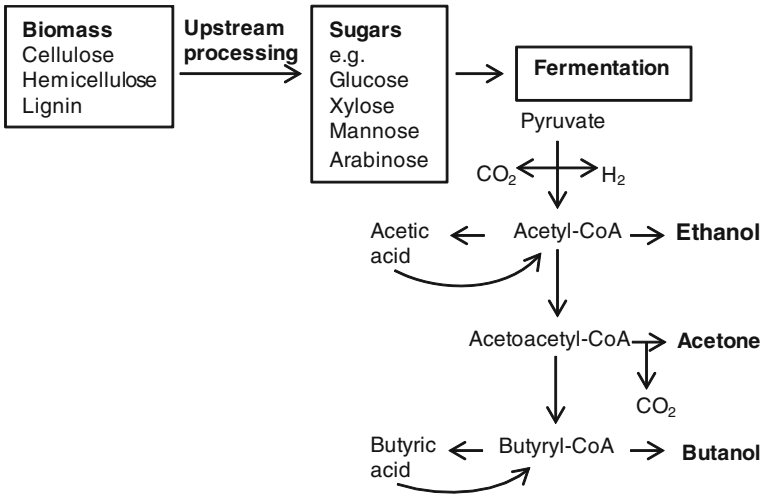


Fig. 17.4 Simplified metabolic pathway of Clostridial fermentation

Table 17.3 Challenges and suggested improvements of the biobutanol production process

Process step	Challenges	Suggested improvements	References
Feedstocks	Price, availability, composition, costs of cultivation, harvesting, transportation, and handling	Use of cheaper and more sustainable non-food raw materials such as easily available lignocellulosics, wastes or residues from industry or agriculture	Qureshi and Ezeji (2008)
Pretreatment	Costs of chemicals, equipments, and energy, efficiency (structural changes, sugar yield, formation of inhibitors)	Development of more efficient and/or novel methods, such as using of ionic liquids, use of detoxification methods	Kumar et al. (2009), Li et al. (2010a), Liu and Blaschek (2010)
Hydrolysis	Acid hydrolysis: cost of chemicals, corrosion of equipmentsEnzymatic hydrolysis: slowness, costs of enzymes	Combined pretreatment and hydrolysis steps (e.g. fractionation with chemicals, ionic liquids, hot water, supercritical conditions). Development of enzymatic hydrolysis to gain better selectivity and faster hydrolysis	Li et al. (2008), Jørgensen et al. (2007)
Fermentation	Low solvent yield, product inhibition, slow metabolism, and other limitations of *Clostridia*	Development of genetically modified bacterium strains (more efficient solvent production, better tolerance against solvents) and advanced fermentation techniques such as continuous fermentation and in situ product recovery (ISPR)	Qureshi and Ezeji (2008), Lee et al. (2008)
Downstream processing	Costs (equipments and energy), low product concentration versus high boiling point of butanol, energy intensiveness of distillation	Development of more energy-efficient methods for the recovery and purification of the solvents (e.g., membrane separation methods such as pervaporation)	Izák et al. (2008), Vane (2005, 2008)
Sustainability evaluation	Setting boundaries for evaluation and calculations, choosing of relevant indicators, lack of the process data, comparison to the other cases/evaluations is difficult	Development of guidelines and harmonization of evaluation processes. Generation of general databases and evaluation programs. Concentration not only to one index (e.g., greenhouse gas emissions) in the evaluation, but trying to take all sustainability aspects (environmental, economic, and social) into account	This work

17.5.4 Downstream Processing

Low product concentration and the boiling point of butanol (118 °C) are the main reasons for energy intensive and costly downstream processing. Costs can be reduced by using more economic and energy efficient separation techniques compared to conventional distillation. Adsorption (Qureshi et al. 2005), gas stripping (Maddox et al. 1995; Qureshi and Blaschek 2001a; Ezeji et al. 2003, 2004), liquid–liquid extraction (Groot et al. 1990; Qureshi and Maddox 1995), pervaporation (Qureshi and Blaschek 2000; Qureshi et al. 2001), perstraction (Grobben et al. 1993; Qureshi and Maddox 2005), and reverse osmosis (Garcia et al. 1986) are the most studied separation methods integrated with the ABE fermentation. The downstream processing is discussed in more detailed in the Sect. 17.6.4.

17.6 Recent Improvements of Biobutanol Production Processes

The biochemical production process needs to overcome several challenges before economically competitive and efficient industrial scale production is feasible. Table 17.3 summarizes the challenges and ideas suggested to solve the problems in question. The cost of substrates, low product yield in fermentation and the high price of up and downstream processing are the main limitations of the ABE process.

Finding a novel, easily available low-cost feedstock and improving pretreatment techniques are essential development areas for upstream processing to enhance the efficient and sustainable utilization of renewable feedstocks. Studies to increase the low yield of the fermentation process have been done by advanced fermentation practices and metabolic engineering of the bacteria strains, and by exploring novel microorganisms for the fermentation processes.

17.6.1 Novel Feedstocks

Since the cost of feedstock has a great impact on a price of the whole processing, novel low-cost feedstocks have been searched for the process. Recently studied raw materials for ABE fermentation include cassava (Thang et al. 2010; Tran et al. 2010), agricultural residues such as corn fiber (Qureshi et al. 2006, 2008a), non-edible barley straw (Qureshi et al. 2010a), corn stover (Qureshi et al. 2010b), wheat straw (Qureshi et al. 2008b, c), switchgrass (Qureshi et al. 2010b), and sugar maple hydrolysate (Sun and Liu 2012). In addition, industrial by-products including whey permeate (Qureshi and Maddox 2005), rice bran (Al-Shorgani et al. 2012; Lee et al. 2009), wheat bran (Liu et al. 2010), and wastewater algae (Ellis et al. 2012) have been tested. Renewable and economically feasible

feedstocks with good availability are desired and the use of by-products or residue materials can also improve the material use efficiency. A challenge with using these lignocellulosic materials is in the complex structure and requirements for efficient upstream and detoxification techniques to obtain sufficient amounts of sugars without compounds inhibiting the fermentation.

17.6.2 Upstream Processing

Costs of upstream processing can be reduced by using enhanced technologies having lower energy and cost requirements. A steam explosion and treatments with ammonia, dilute acid, lime, and liquid hot water are considered as the most potential and cost-effective methods for processing of lignocellulosics (Taherzadeh and Karimi 2007).

Kim and Hong (2001) have demonstrated that supercritical carbon dioxide ($scCO_2$) pretreatment improves enzymatic hydrolysis of aspen and southern yellow pine, while Narayanaswamy et al. (2011) observed an increased glucose yield from corn stover by $scCO_2$ treatment, but for switchgrass the treatment was ineffective. Other raw materials studied in $scCO_2$ pretreatment include e.g. avicel, recycled paper mix, sugarcane bagasse, repulping waste of recycled paper (Zheng et al. 1998), wheat straw (Alinia et al. 2010), and rice straw (Gao et al. 2010). An improved glucose yield is obtained due to the enhanced decomposition and increased pore sizes of biomass structure resulting in easier and more efficient enzymatic hydrolysis (Gao et al. 2010). Supercritical conditions enhance also the mass transfer and reaction rates, and can be combined with enzymes and ionic liquids (Wimmer and Zarevúcka 2010). In addition, CO_2 is low cost and nontoxic solvent, easy to separate after the pretreatment process, and enables pretreatment at lower temperatures compared to other chemicals used in the treatments (Kim and Hong 2001).

Recently, another advanced pretreatment method of lignocellulosics gained lot of attention, i.e. the use of ionic liquids (ILs) (Kilpeläinen et al. 2007; Tadesse and Luque 2011; Mäki-Arvela et al. 2010). The selective dissolution of biomass can be obtained by selecting IL having proper anions and cations. Tested lignocellulosics include corn cob (Li et al. 2010b), corn stover (Binder and Raines 2010), switchgrass (Li et al. 2010c; Zhao et al. 2009), wheat straw (Li et al. 2009), sugar cane bagasse (Kuo and Lee 2009), and rice straw (Ngyuena et al. 2010). Ionic liquids are considered in order to increase the sugar yield from hydrolysis while being a more selective and less energy demanding pretreatment method. However, challenges including the price and recyclability of ILs, corrosivity, and lack of toxicological data should be overcome prior to industrial scale use of ILs as a pretreatment method.

17.6.3 Fermentation

The fermentation step in biobutanol production can be operated in several different modes including batch, fed-batch, or continuous techniques. In addition, more enhanced ways such as the immobilization of bacterium cells have been used (Tripathi et al. 2010; Lee et al. 2008a; Huang et al. 2004; Qureshi et al. 2000, 2004). Some researchers have used separated reactors for acidogenic and solventogenic stages (Mutschlechner et al. 2000).

Fermentative biobutanol production is traditionally based on the use of spore-forming *Clostridium*. During the past decade, the tools of metabolic engineering have been commonly used for the strain modifications. Aims of the metabolic engineering are to increase butanol yield by

- extending substrate utilization range,
- increasing butanol yield on carbon source,
- enhancing selective production of butanol instead of mixed acids/solvents, and
- increasing inhibitor (e.g. butanol) tolerance of bacteria.

Metabolic engineering is done e.g. by inserting some enzyme genes from other bacteria for example to improve the *Clostridium* ability to utilize cheaper substrates. Other ways are to insert or knockdown/out the genes coding critical enzymes and thereby changing the metabolism of the bacterium, or to regulate some genes and improve the bacterium tolerance against inhibitors. Genetic modification can be done also to delay or restrict the sporulation of the bacterium, leading to enhanced production of solvents (Jin et al. 2011).

According to Lee et al. (2008b), the first successful metabolic engineering example of *C. acetobutylicum* ATCC 824 was done by the research group of Papoutsakis in the 1990s when they amplified the acetone formation pathway in bacteria. The fermentation with modified recombinant *C. acetobutylicum* led to increased final concentrations of solvents compared to parental strain (Mermelstein et al. 1993). Borden and Papoutsakis (2007) have reported that strains with a plasmid carrying a CAC1869 or a CAC0003 gene exhibited 13 and 81 %, respectively, increases in butanol tolerance compared to the plasmid control strain.

Although metabolic engineering tools are available for modifying *Clostridia*, there are many challenges like a relatively slow growth rate, spore-forming life cycle, formed by-products, and intolerance to oxygen and the formed solvents in using the bacteria for industrial production. To obtain industrially feasible production process there exists an interest to modify other, more user-friendly microorganisms for 1-butanol production. Recently, *n*-butanol biosynthetic pathway for 1-butanol production has successfully been done with engineered *Escherichia coli* and *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* (Atsumi et al. 2008; Inui et al. 2008; Steen et al. 2008). In these studies, the substitution of Clostridial enzymes with isoenzymes of a number of different organisms were tested. The results showed a successful butanol production but still there is necessity of increasing the yield. Although there are challenges in maintaining the necessary native metabolism

when expressing heterologous biosynthetic pathways, better knowledge of the metabolism, physiology, and genetics of these microorganisms benefits the design and construction of optimal pathways for biobutanol in the future (Atsumi et al. 2008; Inui et al. 2008; Steen et al. 2008).

Another way in order to get more feasible production processes is to use co-cultures of two different bacteria. Tran et al. (2010) have studied co-culture of *Clostridium butylicum* with *Bacillus subtilis*. The use of high amylase producing aerobic *Bacillus* increased the starch substrate utilization and ABE production. It was also shown that adding of costly reducing agents or flushing the medium with N_2 to ensure anaerobic conditions for *Clostridium* were not needed in the co-culture of oxygen consuming *Bacillus*.

Instead of using lignocelluloses and sugars as a carbon source, the direct conversion of CO_2 into 1-butanol has been studied. Lan and Liao (2011) demonstrated 1-butanol production directly from CO_2 and light by engineered cyanobacterium. In the study, the modified CoA-dependent 1-butanol production pathway was transferred into the *Synechococcus elongatus* PCC 7942. The pathway contained a heterologous expression of five enzymes needed for the conversion of acetyl-CoA to 1-butanol. Since the 1-butanol production pathway is derived from strict anaerobes, expressing the pathway in oxygen producing cyanobacteria is challenging. Oxygen removal by inhibiting the cyanobacteria's oxygen evolving capability after growth and the careful modulation of the heterologous enzyme expression is required. To produce one mole of 1-butanol via photosynthesis and Calvin-Benson cycle 48 photons are required. The photon yield is the same as for glucose and isobutanol, which makes it desirable to produce 1-butanol directly from CO_2 and light (Lan and Liao 2011).

17.6.4 Downstream Processing

Choosing of the best recovery method for biobutanol is challenging due to the complexity of the process. The selection should be balanced with many variables such as efficiency, energy requirements and other costs, economics, safety, and process simplicity. Membrane-based methods e.g. membrane evaporation, pervaporation, and reverse osmosis are considered as the most promising techniques (Izák et al. 2008; Ezeji et al. 2003). Especially pervaporation technique has recently received more attention when designing separation and purification steps for biofuel production and thereby pervaporation is introduced more detailed in this section.

Pervaporation is a separation technique used especially in the recovery of liquid components having low concentrations in feed solutions. Target compounds are diffused selectively through the membrane and desorbed to the permeate side as a vapor. Phase change occurs only with the permeating compound reducing the operational costs compared to the conventional distillation process. Driving force for the separation is a chemical potential gradient achieved by different partial

vapor pressures of compounds on the opposite sides of the membrane i.e. the feed side of the membrane is in atmospheric pressure while the permeate side is under vacuum or in low pressure (Schäfer and Crespo 2005).

Selected membrane material determines the nature of the separation: organic compounds can be separated with hydrophobic membranes while hydrophilic membrane material is selected for water removal from the feed solution. Separation performance is evaluated usually by two key parameters: the membrane selectivity indicated as selectivity or enrichment factor, and the flux indicating the amount of compounds passing through the membrane. The experimental variables affecting of these parameters include feed composition, temperature, type, thickness and material of the used membrane, and the pressures in the feed and permeate sides.

Pervaporation has no negative effects on the microbes in the fermentation broth and it is a competitive method compared to other techniques (Qureshi and Blaschek 2001b). Further, pervaporation can be combined with fermentation as an in situ product recovery (ISPR) method and thereby an increased yield, productivity, and economy of the production process can be achieved (Izák et al. 2008; Qureshi et al. 2001). Recently, mainly model ABE-water solutions (Liu et al. 2011; Zhou et al. 2011; Thongsumak and Sirkar 2007; Liu et al. 2005; Huang and Meagher 2001) or real fermentation broths (Liu et al. 2011; Thongsumak and Sirkar 2007; Qureshi et al. 2001) have been used for pervaporation studies. Some researchers have also managed to integrate fermentation and pervaporation into a hybrid process (Liu et al. 2011; Qureshi and Blaschek 1999; Qureshi et al. 1992; Matsumura et al. 1992; Groot and Luyben 1987).

Polydimethylsiloxane (PDMS) membranes have been used in most of the published studies because of highly hydrophobic properties and good chemical, mechanical, and thermal stability of the material. In addition, the fabrication of these membranes is easy and economic (Li et al. 2010c). Other membrane materials used in the recent studies include for instance polyether block amide (PEBA) (Fouad and Feng 2008; Liu et al. 2005), polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) (Srivasan et al. 2007), and liquid membranes (Izák et al. 2008; Thongsumak and Sirkar 2007).

Several impermeable components such as acids, bases, salts, and sugars are present in fermentation broths and may have influence on pervaporation performance by causing fouling or blocking of the membrane. Electrolytes and sugars in the feed solution can also affect the driving force and mass transfer rate through the membrane. García et al. (2009a, b) have studied the influence of electrolytes on the butanol pervaporation. They did not observe a significant influence of the electrolyte (NaCl) on the pervaporation performance of PDMS-based membranes toward butanol.

17.6.5 Sustainability of the Process

The widely used definition of sustainability is of the United Nations' Bruntland Commission (WCED 1987): "Sustainable development is development that meets the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs". Corporate sustainability implies that companies have to maintain and grow their economic, social and environmental capital base, while actively contributing to sustainability in the political domain (Dyllick and Hockerts 2002). Sustainability can be covered by the triple bottom line approach (Bowell 2010) consisting of three impact areas: environmental, economic and social, or "people, planet and profits". Three elements of sustainability are in a triangle, indicating that there are not necessarily solid borders between these three aspects or other way is that all aspects are satisfied at the same time. This would indicate that all of the aspects of sustainability have the same value, and nothing else is sustainable than the ideal state of triple overlap. The problem arising when separating the three sides of sustainability into their own ellipses or pillars is that these aspects are interrelated and are not necessarily exclusive.

In addition to concerns about the environment, also legislation promotes the sustainability assessment in relation to the production of biofuels. In Europe, legislation under the Directive 2003/30/EC requires the use of biofuels or other renewable fuels for transport, with the goal of reaching a 5.75 % share by 2010. Under the Renewable Energy Directive (RED Directive) (2009/28/EC) on the promotion of the use of energy from renewable sources rises to a minimum 10 % in every Member State in 2020. The Directive also aims to ensure that as the use of biofuels in the EU is expanding, only sustainable biofuels are used, which can generate a clear and net green house gas (GHG) savings with no negative impact on biodiversity and land use. Renewable Energy Directive (RED) includes three relevant articles with respect to the sustainability: sustainability criteria for biofuels and bioliquids (Article 17), verification and compliance with the sustainability criteria (Article 18), and calculations of the GHG impact of biofuels and bioliquids (Article 19) (EU Directive 2009/28/EC, BioGrace 2011). It is expected that these sustainability criteria also call for reporting requirements on feasibility and applicability in relation to air, soil, or water protection.

Evaluation of sustainability is very complex and difficult issue and it should take into account not only environmental related questions as it seems to be done in legal requirements at the moment. To simplify the method, the following questions can be asked and answered to assess the three aspects of sustainability:

- Does the process produce waste?
- Are there any health and safety issues related to the harmful nature or amount of waste?
- What is the atom economy of possible reaction routes?
- Are the by-products saleable?
- Does the process use or generate materials that are potentially harmful?

- Are there any health and safety issues related to the harmful nature of chemicals used or generated in the process?
- Do the products produced contain harmful or hazardous materials (take into notice also the side products)?
- Do the processes require large deviation from ambient temperature and pressure?
- Are there any solvents and/or other auxiliary chemicals used in the processes or products?
- Are the used materials renewable or nonrenewable?
- Does the process use catalysts?
- Are the catalysts heterogeneous or homogeneous?
- Is there any health, safety, or environmental issues related to the used catalytic materials?
- Are there hazards related to the designed process (synthetic and formulation activities, involved operations, or reaction conditions)?

These type of questions can be used in an early process design phase and when defining the sustainability of a new process and comparing it to the existing ones. In biobutanol production, the question of raw material used is very important as the raw material will have a huge impact on all the three aspects of social, economic, and environmental issues; even if the renewable material is used. Energy and material efficiency are certainly better in novel catalytic reactions compared to traditional ABE fermentation process. However, the impact of the catalytic materials needs to be evaluated because in many cases rare and precious metals used have high social, economic, and environmental impacts depending on mining and processing procedures. The amount and quality of produced by-products may also have significant impacts. Additional recovery steps are usually needed, but if by-products are valuable positive economic impacts can be gained. More research and methodology development are required to ensure successful sustainability assessment to gain the best knowledge and results based on the triple bottom line.

17.7 Conclusions

There is a demand for the increased production and usage of biofuels from both environmental and a political point of view. Bioethanol and biodiesel are currently the most used biofuels in the transportation sector. New alternatives such as biobutanol are also needed to fulfill the usage demands in the future. In this chapter, biobutanol has been discussed as a potential option for future transportation biofuel. Biobutanol has better environmental and fuel properties when compared to more commonly used biofuels such as ethanol.

The economic and feasible biobutanol production in industrial scale depends on several aspects including substrate cost, product yield, efficiency and expenses of the separation and purification steps of biobutanol, and utilization of by-products

formed. By using novel catalytic routes, the chemical production process of butanol can be based on renewable raw materials instead of petrochemicals. Research related to the synthesis of bioethanol or butyric acid to biobutanol for finding optimal catalysts and process conditions is going on actively. The biochemical, fermentative production of biobutanol can be enhanced by finding economical and sustainable raw materials (e.g., biomasses classified as by-products or wastes), by using metabolic engineering and modified bacterium strains to gain better product yields from fermentation, and by developing more energy efficient upstream and downstream processing techniques. The efficient use of raw materials and utilization of all products of the process are also vital. Moreover, sustainable process design also considers the economic, environmental, and social impacts caused by the whole production process chain and uses materials and techniques with least negative impacts.

References

Alinia R, Zabihi S, Esmaeilzadeh F, Kalajahi JF (2010) Pretreatment of wheat straw by supercritical CO_2 and its enzymatic hydrolysis for sugar production. Biosyst Eng 107:61–66

Al-Shorgani NKN, Kalil MS, Yusoff WMW (2012) Biobutanol production from rice bran and de-oiled rice bran by Clostridium saccharoperbutylacetonicum N1–4. Bioprocess Biosyst Eng 35:817–826

Atsumi S, Cann AF, Connor MR, Shen CR, Smith KM, Brynildsen MP, Chou KJY, Hanai T, Liao JC (2008) Metabolic engineering of *Escherichia coli* for 1-butanol production. Metab Eng 10:305–311

Binder JB, Raines RT (2010) Fermentable sugars by chemical hydrolysis of biomass. PNAS 107:4516–4521

BioGrace (2011) The renewable energy directive—information page. http://www.biograce.net/content/biofuelrelatedpolicies/renewable energy directive. Cited 16 April 2012

Borden JR, Papoutsakis ET (2007) Dynamics of genomic-library enrichment and identification of solvent tolerance genes for *Clostridium acetobutylicum*. Appl Environ Microbiol 73:3061–3068

Bowell JB (2010) Sustainability metrics, indicators, and indices for the process industries. In: Harmsen J (ed) Sustainable development in the process industries, Cases and impact. Wiley, NY, pp 5–23

Burridge E (2009) Chemical profile: N-butanol. http://www.icis.com/Articles/2009/03/09/9198054/chemical-profile-n-butanol.html. Cited 10 Jan 2012

Cairns A, Stansfield P, Fraser N, Blaxill H, Gold M, Rogerson J, Goodfellow C (2009) A study of gasoline-alcohol blended fuels in an advanced turbocharged DISI engine. SAE Int J Fuels Lubr 2:41–57

Carvalho DL, de Avilles RR, Rodrigues MT, Borges LEP, Appel LG (2012) Mg and Al mixed oxides and the synthesis of *n*-butanol from ethanol. Appl Catal A 415–416:96–100

Chauvel A, Lefebvre G (1989) Petrochemical processes 2: major oxygenated, chlorinated and nitrated derivatives. Éds Technip, Paris

Cherubini F (2010) The biorefinery concept: using biomass instead of oil for producing energy and chemicals. Energ Convers Manage 51:1412–1421

Dernotte J, Mounaim-Rousselle C, Halter F, Seers P (2010) Evaluation of butanol-gasoline blends in a port fuel-injection, spark-ignition engine. Oil Gas Sci Technol—Rev IFP 65:345–351

Dyllick T, Hockerts K (2002) Beyond the business case for corporate sustainability. Bus Strat Environ 11:130–141

Ellis JT, Hengge NN, Sims RC, Miller CD (2012) Acetone, butanol, and ethanol production from wastewater algae. Bioresour Technol. doi:10.1016/j.biortech.2012.02.002

EU Directive 2009/28/EC of the European parliament and the council on the promotion of the use of energy from renewable sources and amending and subsequently repealing directives 2001/77/EC and 2003/30/EC, 23.4.2009

Ezeji T, Blaschek HP (2008) Fermentation of dried distillers' grains and soluble (DDGS) hydrolysates to solvents and value-added products by solventogenic clostridia. Bioresour Technol 99:5232–5242

Ezeji TC, Qureshi N, Blaschek HP (2007) Bioproduction of butanol from biomass: from genes to bioreactors. Curr Opin Biotechnol 18:220–227

Ezeji T, Milne C, Price ND, Blaschek HP (2010) Achievements and perspectives to overcome the poor solvent resistance in acetone and butanol-producing microorganisms. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 85:1697–1712

Ezeji TC, Qureshi N, Blaschek HP (2003) Production of acetone, butanol and ethanol by *Clostridium beijerinckii* BA101 and in situ recovery by gas stripping. World J Microb Biot 19:595–603

Ezeji TC, Qureshi N, Blaschek HP (2004) Acetone butanol ethanol (ABE) production from concentrated substrate: reduction in substrate inhibition by fed-batch technique and product inhibition by gas stripping. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 63:653–658

Falbe J (1970) Carbon monoxide in organic synthesis. Springer, NY

Fitz A (1878) Ueber schizomyceten-gährungen 3. Ber Dtsch Chem Ges 11:42–55

Fouad EA, Feng X (2008) Use of pervaporation to separate butanol from dilute aqueous solutions: effects of operating conditions and concentration polarization. J Membr Sci 323:428–435

Gabriel CL (1928) Butanol fermentation process. Ind Eng Chem 20:1063–1067

Gabriel CL, Crawford FM (1930) Development of the butyl-acetonic fermentation industry. Ind Eng Chem 22:1163–1165

Gao M, Xu F, Li S, Ji X, Chen S, Zhang D (2010) Effect of SC-CO_2 pretreatment in increasing rice straw biomass conversion. Biosyst Eng 106:470–475

Garcia A, Iannotti EL, Fischer JL (1986) Butanol fermentation liquor production and separation by reverse osmosis. Biotechnol Bioeng 28:785–791

García V, Pongrácz E, Muurinen E, Keiski RL (2009a) Recovery of *n*-butanol from salt containing solutions by pervaporation. Desalin 241:201–211

García V, Pongrácz E, Muurinen E, Keiski RL (2009b) Pervaporation of dichloromethane from multicomponent aqueous systems containing *n*-butanol and sodium chloride. J Membr Sci 326:92–102

García V, Päkkilä J, Ojamo H, Muurinen E, Keiski RL (2011) Challenges in biobutanol production: how to improve the efficiency? Renew Sust Energ Rev 15:964–980

Grobben NG, Eggink G, Cuperus FP, Huizing HJ (1993) Production of acetone, butanol and ethanol (ABE) from potato wastes: fermentation with integrated membrane extraction. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 39:494–498

Groot WJ, Luyben KCAM (1987) Continuous production of butanol from a glucose/xylose mixture with an immobilized cell system coupled to pervaporation. Biotechnol Lett 9:867–870

Groot WJ, Soedjak HS, Donck PB, Van der Lans RGJM, Luyben KCAM, Timmer JMK (1990) Butanol recovery from fermentations by liquid—liquid-extraction and membrane solvent-extraction. Bioprocess Eng 5:203–216

Hahn HD, Dämbkes G, Rupprich N, Bahl H (2012) Butanols. In: Ullmann's encyclopedia of industrial chemistry, vol 6. Wiley-VCH Verlag GmbH & Co, Weinheim

Harvey BG, Meylemans HA (2011) The role of butanol in the development of sustainable fuel technologies. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 86:2–9

Huang J, Meagher MM (2001) Pervaporative recovery of n-butanol from aqueous solutions and ABE fermentation broth using thin-film silicalite-filled silicone composite membranes. J Membr Sci 192:231–242

Huang WC, Ramey DE, Yang ST (2004) Continuous production of butanol by *Clostridium acetobutylicum* immobilized in a fibrous bed bioreactor. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 113–116:887–898

Huang H-J, Ramaswamy S, Tschirner UW, Ramarao BV (2008) A review of separation technologies in current and future biorefineries. Sep Purif Technol 62:1–21

Inui M, Suda M, Kimura S, Suda M, Yasuda K, Suzuki H, Toda H, Yamamoto S, Ukino S, Suzuki N, Yakawa H (2008) Expression of *Clostridium acetobutylicum* butanol synthetic genes in *Escherichia coli*. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 77:1305–1316

Izák P, Schwarz K, Ruth W, Bahl H, Kragl U (2008) Increased productivity of *Clostridium acetobutylicum* fermentation of acetone, butanol, and ethanol by pervaporation through supported ionic liquid membrane. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 78:597–602

Jin C, Yao M, Liu H, Lee C-FF, Ji J (2011) Progress in the production and application of *n*-butanol as a biofuel. Renew Sust Energ Rev 15:4080–4106

Jones DT, Woods DR (1986) Acetone–butanol fermentation revisited. Microbiol Rev 50:484–524

Jørgensen H, Kristensen JB, Felby C (2007) Enzymatic conversion of lignocellulose into fermentable sugars: challenges and opportunities. Biofuels, Bioprod Bioref 1:119–134

Ju IB, Jeon W, Park M-J, Suh Y-W, Suh DJ, Lee C-H (2010) Kinetic studies of vapor-phase hydrogenolysis of butyl butyrate to butanol over Cu/ZnO/Al2O3 catalyst. Appl Catal A 387:100–106

Kilpeläinen I, Xie H, King A, Granstrom M, Heikkinen S, Argyropoulos DS (2007) Dissolution of wood in ionic liquids. J Agric Food Chem 55:9124–9128

Kim KH, Hong J (2001) Supercritical CO_2 pretreatment of lignocellulose enhances enzymatic cellulose hydrolysis. Bioresour Technol 77:139–144

Kim SM, Lee ME, Choi JW, Suh DJ, Suh Y-W (2011) Role of ZnO in Cu/ZnO/Al_2O_3 catalyst for hydrogenolysis of bytyl buturate. Cat Commun 12:1328–1332

Kirschner M (2006) *n*-butanol. Chem Market Rep p 42

Kumar M, Gayen K (2011) Developments in biobutanol production: new insights. Appl Energ 88:1999–2012

Kumar P, Barret DM, Delwiche MJ, Stroeve P (2009) Methods for pretreatment of lignocellulosic biomass for efficient hydrolysis and biofuel production. Ind Eng Chem Res 48:3713–3729

Kuo CH, Lee CK (2009) Enhanced enzymatic hydrolysis of sugar cane bagasse by *N*-methylmorpholine-*N*-oxide pretreatment. Bioresour Technol 100:866–871

Lan EI, Liao JC (2011) Metabolic engineering of cyanobacteria for 1-butanol production from carbon dioxide. Metab Eng 13:353–363

Larsson S, Reimann A, Nilvebrant N-O, Jönsson LJ (1999) Comparison of different methods for the detoxification of lignocellulose hydrolyzates of spruce. Appl Biochem Biotech 77–79:91–103

Lee S-M, Cho MO, Park CH, Chung Y-C, Kim JH, Sang B-I, Um Y (2008a) Continuous butanol production using suspended and immobilized *Clostridium beijerinckii* NCIMB 8052 with supplementary butyrate. Energ Fuel 2008:3459–3464

Lee SY, Park JH, Jang SH, Nielsen LK, Kim J, Jung KS (2008b) Fermentative butanol production by clostridia. Biotechnol Bioeng 101:209–228

Lee J, Seo E, Kweon D-H, Park K, Jin Y-S (2009) Fermentation of rice bran and defatted rice bran for butanol production using *Clostridium beijerinckii* NCIMB 8052. J Microbiol Biotechnol 19:482–490

León M, Díaz E, Ordóñez S (2011a) Ethanol catalytic condensation over Mg–Al mixed oxides derived from hydrotalcites. Catal Today 164:436–442

León M, Díaz E, Vega A, Ordóñez S, Auroux A (2011b) Consequences of the iron–aluminium exchange on the performance of hydrotalcite-derived mixed oxides for ethanol condensation. Appl Cat B 102:590–599

Li C, Wang Q, Zhao KZ (2008) Acid in ionic liquid: an efficient system for hydrolysis of lignocelluloses. Green Chem 10:177–182

Li Q, He Y-C, Xian M, Jun G, Xu X, Yang J-M, Li L-Z (2009) Improving enzymatic hydrolysis of wheat straw using ionic liquid 1-ethyl-3-methyl imidazolium diethyl phosphate pretreatment. Bioresour Technol 100:3570–3575

Li C, Knierim B, Manisseri C, Arora R, Scheller HV, Auer M, Vogel KP, Simmons BA, Singh S (2010a) Comparison of dilute acid and ionic liquid pretreatment of switchgrass: biomass recalcitrance, delignification and enzymatic saccharification. Bioresour Technol 101:4900–4906

Li Q, Jiang X, He Y, Li L, Xian M, Yang J (2010b) Evaluation of the biocompatible ionic liquid 1-methyl-3-methylimidazolium dimethyl phosphite pretreatment of corn cob for improved saccharification. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 87:117–126

Li S-Y, Srivastava R, Parnas RS (2010c) Separation of 1-butanol by pervaporation using novel tri-layer PDMS composite membrane. J Membr Sci 363:287–294

Liu ZL, Blaschek HP (2010) Biomass conversion inhibitors and in situ detoxification. In: Vertès AA, Qureshi N, Blaschek HP, Yukawa H (eds) Biomass to biofuels: strategies for global industries. Wiley, Great Britain, pp 233–259

Liu F, Liu L, Feng X (2005) Separation of acetone-butanol-ethanol (ABE) from dilute aqueous solutions by pervaporation. Sep Purif Technol 42:273–282

Liu Z, Ying Y, Li F, Ma C, Xu P (2010) Butanol production by *Clostridium beijerinckii* ATCC 55025 from wheat bran. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 37:495–501

Liu G, Wang W, Wu H, Dong X, Jiang M, Jin W (2011) Pervaporation performance of PDMS/ceramic composite membrane in acetone butanol ethanol (ABE) fermentation-PV coupled process. J Membr Sci 373:121–129

Lu M, Xiong G, Zhao H, Cui W, Gu J, Bauser H (1995) Dehydration of 1-butanol over γ-Al2O3 catalytic membrane. Catal Today 25:339–344

Lynd LR, Wyman CE, Gerngross TU (1999) Biocommodity engineering. Biotechnol Progr 15:777–793

Maddox IS, Qureshi N, Roberts-Thomson K (1995) Production of acetone-butanol-ethanol from concentrated substrates using *Clostridium acetobutylicum* in an integrated fermentation-product removal process. Process Biochem 30:209–215

Marcu I-C, Tichit D, Fajula F, Tanchoux N (2009) Catalytic valorization of bioethanol over Cu-Mg-Al mixed oxide catalysts. Catal Today 147:231–238

Matsumura M, Takehara S, Kataoka H (1992) Continuous butanol/isopropanol fermentation in down-flow column reactor coupled with pervaporation using supported liquid membrane. Biotechnol Bioeng 39:148–156

Mermelstein LD, Papoutsakis ET, Petersen DJ, Bennett GN (1993) Metabolic engineering of *Clostridium acetobutylicum* for increased solvent production by enhancement of acetone formation enzyme activities using a synthetic acetone operon. Biotechnol Bioeng 42:1053–1060

Mosier N, Wyman C, Dale B, Elander R, Lee YY, Holtzapple M, Ladisch M (2005) Features of promising technologies for pretreatment of lignocellulosic biomass. Bioresour Technol 96:673–686

Mutschlechner O, Swoboda H, Gapes JR (2000) Continuous 2-stage ABE fermentation using *Clostridium beijerinckii* NRRL B592 operating with a growth rate in the first stage vessel close to its maximal value. J Mol Microbiol Biotechnol 2000:101–105

Mäki-Arvela P, Anugwom I, Virtanen P, Sjöholm R, Mikkola J-P (2010) Dissolution of lignocellulosic materials and its constituents using ionic liquids—a review. Ind Crop Prod 32:175–201

Narayanaswamy N, Faik A, Goetz DJ, Gu T (2011) Supercritical carbon dioxide pretreatment of corn stover and switchgrass for lignocellulosic ethanol production. Bioresour Technol 102:6995–7000

Ndou AS, Plint N, Coville NJ (2003) Dimerisation of ethanol to butanol over solid-base catalysts. Appl Catal A 251:337–345

Nguyena T-AD, Kim K-R, Han SJ, Cho HY, Kim JW, Park SM, Park CP, Sim SJ (2010) Pretreatment of rice straw with ammonia and ionic liquid for lignocellulose conversion to fermentable sugars. Bioresour Technol 101:7432–7438

Ni Y, Sun Z (2009) Recent progress on industrial fermentative production of acetone-butanol-ethanol by *Clostridium acetobutylicum* in China. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 83:415–423

Nimcevic D, Gapes JR (2000) The acetone–butanol fermentation in pilot plant and pre-industrial scale. J Mol Microbiol Biotechnol 2:15–20

Ogo S, Onda A, Yanagisawa K (2011) Selective synthesis of 1-butanol from ethanol over strontium phosphate hydroxyapatite catalysts. Appl Catal A 402:188–195

Olson ES, Sharma RK, Aulich TD (2004) Higher-alcohols biorefinery. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 113–116:913–932

Qureshi N, Blaschek HP (1999) Butanol recovery from model solution/fermentation broth by pervaporation: evaluation of membrane performance. Biomass Bioenerg 17:175–184

Qureshi N, Blaschek HP (2000) Butanol production using *Clostridium beijerinckii* BA101 hyper-butanol producing mutant strain and recovery by pervaporation. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 84–86:225–235

Qureshi N, Blaschek HP (2001a) Recovery of butanol from fermentation broth by gas stripping. Renew Energ 22:557–564

Qureshi N, Blaschek HP (2001b) Evaluation of recent advances in butanol fermentation, upstream, and downstream processing. Bioprocess Biosyst Eng 24:219–226

Qureshi N, Blaschek HP (2005) Butanol production from agricultural biomass. In: Shetty K, Pometto A, Paliyath G, Levin RE (eds) Food biotechnology. CRC Press, Boca Raton, pp 525–551

Qureshi N, Ezeji TC (2008) Butanol', a superior biofuel' production from agricultural residues (renewable biomass): recent progress in technology. Biofuels Bioprod Bioref 2:319–330

Qureshi N, Maddox IS (2005) Reduction in butanol inhibition by perstraction: utilization of concentrated lactose/whey permeate by *Clostridium acetobutylicum* to enhance butanol fermentation economics. Food Bioprod Process 83:43–52

Qureshi N, Maddox IS (1995) Continuous production of acetone-butanol-ethanol using immobilized cells of *Clostridium acetobutylicum* and integration with product removal by liquid—liquid extraction. J Ferment Bioeng 80:185–189

Qureshi N, Maddox IS, Friedl A (1992) Application of continuous substrate feeding to the ABE fermentation: relief of product inhibition using extraction, perstraction, stripping and pervaporation. Biotechnol Progr 8:382–390

Qureshi N, Schripsema J, Lienhardt J, Blaschek HP (2000) Continuous solvent production by *Clostridium beijerinckii* BA101 immobilized by adsorption onto brick. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 16:377–382

Qureshi N, Meagher MM, Huang J, Hutkins RW (2001) Acetone butanol ethanol (ABE) recovery by pervaporation using silicalite–silicone composite membrane from fed-batch reactor of *Clostridium acetobutylicum*. J Membr Sci 187:93–102

Qureshi N, Lai LL, Blaschek HP (2004) Scale-up of a high productivity continuous biofilm reactor to produce butanol by adsorbed cells of *Clostridium beijerinckii*. Food Bioprod Process 82:164–173

Qureshi N, Hughes S, Maddox IS, Cotta MA (2005) Energy-efficient recovery of butanol from model solutions and fermentation broth by adsorption. Bioprocess Biosyst Eng 27:215–222

Qureshi N, Li X-L, Hughes S, Saha BC, Cotta MA (2006) Butanol production from corn fiber xylan using *Clostridium acetobutylicum*. Biotechnol Progr 22:673–680

Qureshi N, Ezeji TC, Ebener J, Dien BS, Cotta MA, Blaschek HP (2008a) Butanol production by *Clostridium beijerinckii*. Part 1: use of acid and enzyme hydrolyzed corn fiber. Bioresour Technol 99:5915–5922

Qureshi N, Saha BC, Hector RE, Hughes SR, Cotta MA (2008b) Butanol production from wheat straw by simultaneous saccharification and fermentation using *Clostridium beijerinckii*: part 1-batch fermentation. Biomass Bioenerg 32:168–175

Qureshi N, Saha BC, Cotta MA (2008c) Butanol production from wheat straw by simultaneous saccharification and fermentation using *Clostridium beijerinckii*: part 2-fed-batch fermentation. Biomass Bioenerg 32:176–183

Qureshi N, Saha BC, Dien B, Hector RE, Cotta MA (2010a) Production of butanol (a biofuel) from agricultural residues: part 1-use of barley straw hydrolysate. Biomass Bioenerg 34:559–565

Qureshi N, Saha BC, Hector RE, Dien B, Hughes S, Liu S, Iten L, Bowman MJ, Sarath G, Cotta MA (2010b) Production of butanol (a biofuel) from agricultural residues: part 2-use of corn stover and switchgrass hydrolysates. Biomass Bioenerg 34:566–571

Rakopoulos DC, Rakopoulos CD, Giakoumis EG, Dimaratos AM, Kyritsis DC (2010) Effects of butanol–diesel fuel blends on the performance and emissions of a high-speed DI diesel engine. Energ Convers Manage 51:1989–1997

Riittonen T, Toukoniitty E, Madnani DK, Leino A-R, Kordas K, Szabo M, Sapi A, Arve K, Wärnå J, Mikkola J-P (2012) One-pot liquid-phase catalytic conversion of ethanol to 1-butanol over aluminium oxide—the effect of the active metal on the selectivity. Catalysts 2:68–84

Sánchez ÓJ, Cardona CA (2008) Trends in biotechnological production of fuel ethanol from different feed stocks. Biores Technol 99:5270–5295

Schäfer T, Crespo JG (2005) Vapour permeation and pervaporation. In: Afonso CAM, Crespo JPG (eds) Green separation processes, fundamentals and applications. Wiley-VCH Verlag GmbH & Co, Weinheim, pp 271-289, ISBN 978-3-527-30985-6

Sow B, Hamoudi S, Hassan Zahedi-Niaki M, Kaliaguine S (2005) 1-butanol etherification over sulfonated mesostructured silica and organo-silica. Micropor Mesopor Mater 79:129–136

Srinivasan K, Palanivelu K, Navaneetha Gopalakrishnan A (2007) Recovery of 1-butanol from a model pharmaceutical aqueous waste by pervaporation. Chem Eng Sci 62:2905–2914

Steen EJ, Chan R, Prasad N, Myers S, Petzold CJ, Redding A, Ouellet M, Keasling JD (2008) Metabolic engineering *of Saccharomyces cerevisiae* for the production of *n*-butanol. Microb Cell Fact 7:36

Sukumaran RK, Singhania RR, Pandey A (2005) Microbial cellulases—production, applications and challenges. J Sci Ind Res 64:832–844

Sun Z, Liu S (2012) Production of *n*-butanol from concentrated sugar maple hemicellulosic hydrolysate by *Clostridia acetobutylicum* ATCC 824. Biomass Bioenerg 39:39–47

Szwaja S, Naber JD (2010) Combustion of *n*-butanol in a spark-ignition IC engine. Fuel 89:1573–1582

Tadesse H, Luque R (2011) Advances on biomass pretreatment using ionic liquids: an overview. Energ Environ Sci 4:3913–3929

Taherzadeh MJ, Karimi K (2007) Enzyme-based hydrolysis processes for ethanol from lignocellulosic materials: a review. Bioresour 2:707–738

Taherzadeh MJ, Karimi K (2008) Pretreatment of lignocellulosic wastes to improve ethanol and biogas production: a review. Int J Mol Sci 9:1621–1651

Thang VH, Kanda K, Kobayashi G (2010) Production of acetone–butanol–ethanol (ABE) in direct fermentation of cassava by clostridium saccharoperbutylacetonicum N1–4. Appl Biochem Biotech 161:157–170

Thongsukmak A, Sirkar KK (2007) Pervaporation membranes highly selective for solvents present in fermentation broths. J Membr Sci 302:45–58

Tompsett GA, Li N, Huber GW (2011) Catalytic conversion of sugars to fuels. In: Brown RC, Huber GW (eds) Thermochemical processing of biomass: conversion into fuels, chemicals and power. Wiley, Chichester, pp 232–279

Tran HTM, Cheirsilp B, Hodgson B, Umsakul K (2010) Potential use of *Bacillus subtilis* in a co-culture with *Clostridium butylicum* for acetone-butanol-ethanol production from cassava starch. Biochem Eng J 48:260–267

Tripathi A, Sami H, Jain SR, Viloria-Cols M, Zhuravleva N, Nilsson G, Jungvid H, Kumar A (2010) Improved bio-catalytic conversion by novel immobilization process using cryogel beads to increase solvent production. Enzyme Microb Tech 47:44–51

Tsuchida T, Sakuma S, Takeguchi T, Ueda W (2006) Direct synthesis of *n*-butanol from ethanol over nonstoichiometric hydroxyapatite. Ind Eng Chem Res 45:8634–8642

Tsuchida T, Yoshioka T, Sakuma S, Takeguchi T, Ueda W (2008a) Synthesis of bio gasoline from ethanol over hydroxyapatite catalyst. Ind Eng Chem Res 47:1443–1452

Tsuchida T, Kubo J, Yoshioka T, Sakuma S, Takeguchi T, Ueda W (2008b) Reaction of ethanol over hydroxyapatite affected by Ca/P ratio of catalyst. J Catal 259:183–189

Vane LM (2005) A review of pervaporation for product recovery from biomass fermentation process. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 80:603–629

Vane LM (2008) Separation technologies for the recovery and dehydration of alcohols from fermentation broths. Biofuels Bioprod Bioref 2:553–588

Wallner T, Frazee R (2010) Study of regulated and non-regulated emissions from combustion of gasoline, alcohol fuels and their blends in a DI-SI engine. SAE Technical Paper 2010-01-1571, 2010, doi: 10.4271/2010-01-1571

Wallner T, Miers SA, McConnell S (2009) A comparison of ethanol and butanol as oxygenates using a direct-injection, spark-ignition engine. J Eng Gas Turb Power 131:032802.1-032802.9

World commission on environment and development (WCED) (1987) United nations general assembly document A/42/427. In: our common future, Oxford University Press, Oxford

Weissermel K, Arpe H-J (2003) Industrial organic chemistry. Wiley-VCH Verlag GmbH & Co, Weinheim

Wimmer Z, Zarevúcka M (2010) A review on the effects of supercritical carbon dioxide on enzyme activity. Int J Mol Sci 11:233–253

Wright ME, Harvey BG, Quintana RL (2008) Highly efficient zirconium-catalyzed batch conversion of 1-butene: a new route to jet fuels. Energ Fuels 22:3299–3302

Yang KW, Jiang XZ, Zhang WC (2004) One-step synthesis of *n*-butanol from ethanol condensation over alumina-supported metal catalysts. Chin Chem Letters 15:1497–1500

Zhao H, Baker GA, Cowins JV (2009) Fast enzymatic saccharification of switchgrass after pretreatment with ionic liquids. Biotechnol Prog 26:127–133

Zheng Y, Lin H-M, Tsao GT (1998) Pretreatment for cellulose hydrolysis by carbon dioxide explosion. Biotechnol Prog 14:890–896

Zhou H, Su Y, Chen X, Wan Y (2011) Separation of acetone, butanol and ethanol (ABE) from dilute aqueous solutions by silicalite-1/PDMS hybrid pervaporation membranes. Sep Purif Technol 79:375–384

Chapter 18
Life-Cycle Environmental Impacts of Biofuels and Co-products

Gregory Zaimes, Matthew Borkowski and Vikas Khanna

Abstract Issues of energy independence and security, global climate change, and the depletion of fossil resources drive research into biofuels and bioproducts. While emerging biofuels and biorefineries pursue lower carbon transportation fuels, careful consideration of a wide range of potential environmental impacts is necessary to avoid unintended consequences. These concerns can be addressed by holistic life-cycle evaluation of bioenergy/biofuel supply chains from raw materials acquisition, to fuel conversion and end use. Life cycle assessment (LCA) is a promising tool for assessing the environmental sustainability of these biofuels. This chapter discusses current biofeedstocks and fuels, introduces the methodological framework of LCA, and explores challenges, critiques, benefits, and applications of LCA in evaluating the environmental performance and sustainability of emergent biofuels and co-product systems. An analysis of algal biodiesel production is presented as a case study, and the broader implications and potential of LCA to inform decision making are explored.

G. Zaimes · M. Borkowski · V. Khanna (✉)
Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering, University of Pittsburgh,
3700 O'Hara Street, Pittsburgh, PA 15261, USA
e-mail: khannav@pitt.edu

G. Zaimes
e-mail: ggz2@pitt.edu

M. Borkowski
e-mail: mgb17@pitt.edu

V. K. Gupta and M. G. Tuohy (eds.), *Biofuel Technologies*,
DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-34519-7_18,

18.1 Introduction

Life cycle assessment (LCA) is a technique used to quantify the environmental impacts of a product or service that incorporates and aggregates the related resource consumption, emissions, and impacts across the various stages of the product's life. LCA has been touted as a relevant tool for assessing the environmental sustainability of emerging technologies, and has had significant application in the developing field of biofuels and bioproducts. LCA can be used to identify process inefficiencies and environmental "hotspots" along a supply chain; therefore, facilitating efficient eco-design, and helping support environmentally sound decision making. For these reasons, LCA is a germane and powerful tool for assessing emerging biofuel technologies. The goal of this chapter will be to present the challenges, benefits, and applications of LCA in evaluating biofuels and related coproducts. The chapter will include a discussion of current biofeedstocks/biofuels and provides a broad understanding of the methodological framework and role of LCA in evaluating the environmental performance and sustainability of emergent biofuels. The chapter is organized as follows: Sect. 18.1 provides a basic description of the environmental, economic, and political motivation for biofuels. Additionally, Sect. 18.1 compares different biomass types including first generation, second generation, and third generation feedstocks, and examines different conversion pathways to produce biofuels. Section 18.2 presents a detailed description of the LCA framework and methodology, examines the application of LCA to biofuels, and reviews different environmental sustainability metrics. Section 18.3 offers an overview of several previous biofuel LCA studies representative of 1st-, 2nd-, and 3rd-generation feedstocks and fuels, and also examines the challenges associated with the application of LCA methodologies to biofuels. A case study of algal biodiesel is provided in Sect. 18.4. Section 18.5 provides a summary of the chapter with consideration of the broader role of LCA in the development of sustainable fuels.

18.1.1 Political, Economic, and Environmental Motivations for Biofuels

The dawn of the twentieth century brought the rapid expansion and development of the petroleum, natural gas, and coal industries. Since then, the world's economies have become highly dependent on fossil resources to meet the demands of industry and to maintain consumer quality of life. Resultant depletion of fossil reserves has the potential to limit global economic growth, complicated by a current reliance on nonrenewable sources of energy that may threaten long-term global economic prosperity. In addition to these economic considerations, increased global demands for energy and transportation fuels as well as concerns

over global climate change have driven researchers to identify alternative liquid fuels which are more sustainable and carbon–neutral.

Accordingly, biofuels have gained widespread attention at academic, industrial, regulatory and political levels, and to some degree among the general public. Scientists have focused on identifying the most promising biofuel feedstocks and are investigating various biochemical and thermochemical conversion pathways to transform these feedstocks into useful fuel products. Research, development, and the subsequent commercial deployment of biofuels all have the potential to create new jobs and provide extensive economic benefits.

Rising atmospheric concentrations of anthropogenic carbon have become a mounting international concern as indicated by national and international responses to the work of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC 2007). A growing body of evidence suggests that increasing concentrations of greenhouse gases, brought on by human activities, are causing harmful and long-term global climate change, stimulating worldwide efforts for greenhouse gas (GHG) reductions. Since the transportation sector constitutes approximately 15 % of global GHG emissions (EPA 2010), displacing traditional transportation fuels with low-carbon or carbon–neutral biofuel alternatives presents one avenue for mitigating and stabilizing global atmospheric levels of anthropogenic carbon.

Policy makers are playing a larger role in the development and implementation of biofuels by establishing regulatory policies and mandates for renewable fuels. In 2007, the United States passed the Energy Independence and Security Act (EISA), which mandates annual domestic production targets for renewable transportation fuels. By the year 2022, production must reach 36 billion gallons including at least 21 billion gallons from cellulosic ethanol and advanced biofuels (Sissine 2007). Similarly, in 2008 the European Union (EU) passed the Renewable Energy Directive (RED), which mandates that 20 % of gross national energy consumption be derived from renewable sources by the year 2020 (Ismail and Rossi 2010). Additionally, in 2009 the EU passed a revised fuel quality directive (FQD) which requires transportation fuel suppliers to reduce life-cycle GHG emissions by 1 % each year culminating in a 10 % overall reduction by 2020. As has been discussed, technological, economic, and political factors will all play critical roles in the evolution and commercial viability of emergent biofuel industries.

18.1.2 Comparison of Potential Feedstocks, Fuels, and Conversion Pathways

Commercial biofuel production is a multifaceted issue: Identifying and assessing potential biofuel feedstocks remain an arduous process, as the use of some bio-feedstocks raises complex ethical questions and may have unintended economic and environmental ramifications. A myriad of different biofuel conversion

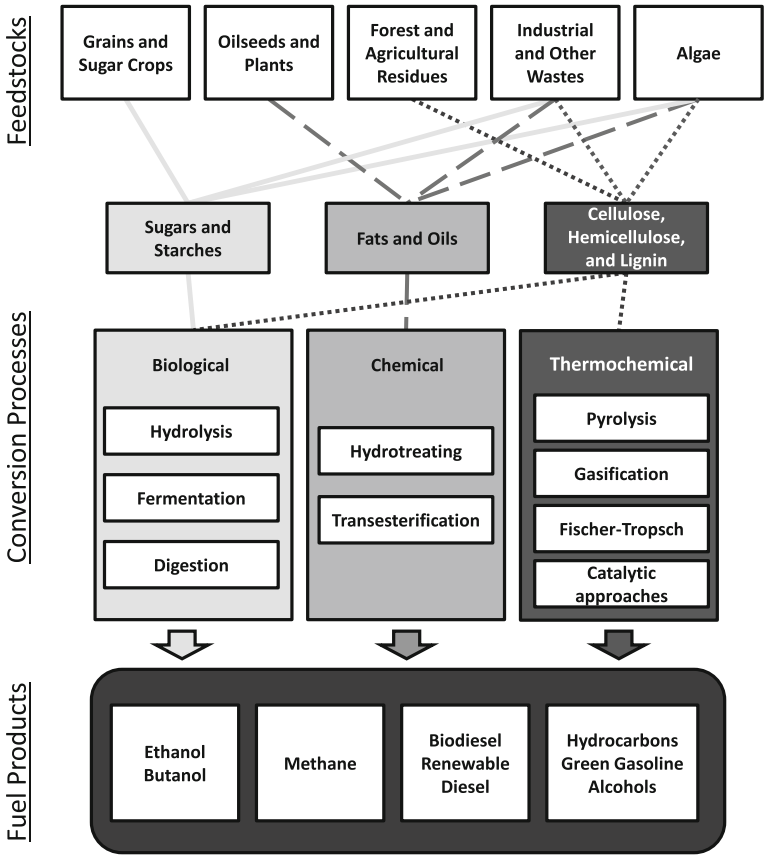


Fig. 18.1 Alternate biofuels production routes: feedstocks, conversion pathways, fuel products and coproducts

pathways and associated coproducts are possible, see Fig. 18.1. In addition, the mode of biofuel production can influence the quality of the resultant fuel as well as its related economic, environmental, and energetic impacts. This section will compare different biofeedstocks and examine different thermochemical and biochemical conversion pathways for producing biofuels.

18.1.2.1 First Generation Biofuels

First generation biofuels, also known as conventional biofuels, are derived from sugar, starch, animal fats, and plant or vegetable oils. Common first generation biofuels include: bioalcohols, bioethers, green diesel, vegetable oils, biogas, syngas, and solid biofuels (Naik et al. 2010). First generation biofuels are typically

produced from the fermentation of grains and crops with a high sugar or starch content, such as corn, sugarcane, sugar beats, wheat, or barley to produce bioethanol, or by transesterification of oils extracted from crops such as soybean, rapeseed, canola, mustard seed, palm, coconut, and sunflower to create biodiesel. Alternative biochemical pathways are being investigated for converting biomass into heat, electricity, or fuel utilizing a wide range of different technologies.

Despite the many advantages of first generation biofuels various economic, political, environmental, and social issues have hindered their widespread adoption. In recent years, political and scientific actors have raised concerns that the use of first generation biofuels may result in further environmental degradation (Pimentel et al. 2007), including potential loss of biodiversity, adverse impacts on water resources, soil erosion and depletion, accelerated deforestation, and land-use impacts (Sims et al. 2008).

Existing research has also reported that the direct and indirect land use change effects may possibly negate the carbon dioxide reduction potential of first generation biofuels resulting in overall higher life-cycle GHG emissions relative to baseline petroleum fuels (Fargione et al. 2008; Melillo et al. 2009; Searchinger et al. 2008). Additionally, thermodynamic and energy analyses have shown mixed results concerning the energetic balance of some first generation biofuels (Patzek 2004; Pimentel et al. 2007; Patzek and Pimentel 2005; Hammerschlag 2006).

Furthermore, without government subsidies and grants, biofuels are currently not cost competitive with more established transportation fuels (Pimentel et al. 2007), making them an expensive option for mitigating GHGs. Additionally, there is growing concern that displacing farmland and food crops for biofuel production may lead to inflation of global food prices (Timilsina et al. 2012; Nonhebel 2012; Pimentel et al. 2007), as many biofuel cultivars—including corn, soybean, and sugarcane—are primarily used for animal feed and/or human consumption. For these reasons researchers have investigated producing biofuels from alternative, nonfood crops.

18.1.2.2 Second Generation Biofuels

Many of the issues and shortcomings of first generation biofuels (*conventional biofuels*) are being addressed with second generation biofuels (*advanced biofuels*) (Eisentraut 2010; Sims et al. 2008). While first generation biofuels are generated from sugars, starch, and oils produced from arable crops, second generation biofuels are derived from forest and agricultural residues, lignocellulosic biomass, industrial wastes, and nonfood crop feedstocks. Second generation biofuels include: biomethanol, bioDME (DiMethyl Ether), biohydrogen, biomethane, butanol and isobutanol, DMF (2,5-DiMethylFuran), HTU (Hydro Thermal Upgrading) diesel, wood diesel, and mixed alcohols (Sims et al. 2010; Naik et al. 2010). Common biochemical pathways for second generation biofuels include the use of pretreatments, such as enzymes and microorganisms, to break down and extract the sugars contained in lignocellulosic biomass, which can then be

fermented to produce ethanol and other alcohols. Thermochemical pathways such as gasification, pyrolysis, and torrefaction of second generation biofeedstocks (Sheehan 2009) can be used to produce syngas of when bio-oil can be fermented or chemically reformed into various fuel products, including ethanol, synthetic diesel, or aviation fuel (Sims et al. 2008).

Despite their apparent advantage over first generation biofuels, second generation biofuels must overcome many technological and economic challenges before their commercial deployment (Williams et al. 2009). Development of these biofuels at a commercial scale has remained challenging, because many of these feedstocks cannot be produced all year long and can only be harvested periodically (Eisentraut 2010). Furthermore, second generation biofuels have also yet to prove cost competitive at a commercial scale. Improvements in biomass cultivation, processing, and conversion efficiencies will be crucial both to increasing biofuel performance and for cost reduction. While thermochemical conversion pathways commonly utilize mature, proven technologies to produce a wide range of synthetic fuels, current biochemical pathways are less technologically mature and may present greater potential for cost reduction through process improvements over time. Further, R&D will be required to optimize these conversion systems and to identify which thermochemical and biochemical conversion pathways are best suited for commercial-scale biofuel production.

18.1.2.3 Third Generation and Drop-In Replacement Biofuels

Third generation biofuels—fuels produced from microalgae (Dragone et al. 2010)—do not suffer from many of the major drawbacks associated with first or second generation biofuels, and in recent years have gained increased consideration as sustainable liquid–fuel alternatives. Microalgae are considered as an ideal feedstock for next generation biofuels due to their ability to be cultivated on nonarable land, high productivity (Chisti 2007), high lipid content, and semi-continuous to continuous cultivation and harvesting cycles. Microalgae have the potential to utilize wastewater, as well as CO_2 from industrial flue gas, for growth (Benemann 1997; Golueke CG 1965; Ho et al. 2011; Kadam 2001). Additionally, the production of microalgae needs not displace food, animal feed, and other arable-crop derived products. Microalgal derived fuels have the potential to act as "drop in" replacements for petroleum fuels since their chemical composition may prove compatible with the existing transportation fleets as well as current fuel storage and delivery infrastructure. Furthermore, researchers are exploring the application of modern technologies such as genetic modification to optimize the growth, resilience, and oil yield of new algal strains.

Open raceways ponds (ORP) and photo-bioreactors (PBR) are two standard growth configurations currently considered for the mass cultivation of microalgae (Jorquera et al. 2010). While PBR systems have better control over algae growth parameters, lower risk of contamination of the algal culture, and higher volumetric growth rates as compared to ORP, high capital and operating costs limit their

commercial potential (Xu et al. 2009). Due primarily to low capital costs, ORPs have gained increased consideration from industrial, governmental, and academic sectors. Between 1978 and 1996, the US Department of Energy's (DOE) aquatic species program studied algal biochemistry, strain selection, and the pilot–scale production of algal biodiesel using ORP systems (Benemann and Oswald 1996). More recent research has primarily focused on the production of algal biodiesel via transesterification and has identified CO_2 provisioning, fertilizer supply, and biomass drying as the primary rate-limiting factors in algae-to-fuel systems (Clarens et al. 2010; Kadam 2001; Lardon et al. 2009). A variety of cultivation, harvest, and conversion options have been examined (Brentner et al. 2011; Clarens et al. 2011; Soratana and Landis 2011) to produce multiple algal fuel and bioenergy products such as biomethane, renewable diesel, green aviation fuel (Agusdinata et al. 2011), and bioelectricity. Further research will be required to identify which cultivation, harvesting, conversion, and fuel-upgrading pathways are most energetically favorable and which are most economically and environmentally advantageous. A case analysis of algal biodiesel production is presented in Sect. 18.4.

Understanding and assessing the far-reaching impacts and implications of emerging biofuels—before their widespread implementation—will be critical for assuring the long-term sustainability of these fuels. Failure to address the potential risks and impacts associated with biofuels may have long-standing environmental consequences, and may jeopardize the successful adoption and commercial viability of these bioresources. Comprehensive analysis from a systems perspective that consider the full range of environmental impacts can address these concerns. One widely popular systems analysis technique is LCA, which is discussed next.

18.2 LCA Methodology and Framework

18.2.1 LCA Approach

LCA is a systematic technique for quantifying and assessing the total environmental impacts of a product or process across all phases of the product's life cycle, as standardized in ISO 14040 (ISO 2006). The considered life cycle phases generally include: raw material extraction, input conversion, product manufacturing, packaging, transport, product use, and disposal or recycling at end of life. LCA's four distinct but interdependent steps are (1) Goal and scope definition, (2) Life Cycle Inventory (LCI) development, (3) Life Cycle Impact Assessment (LCIA), and (4) Interpretation and Improvement Analysis which are illustrated in Fig. 18.2.

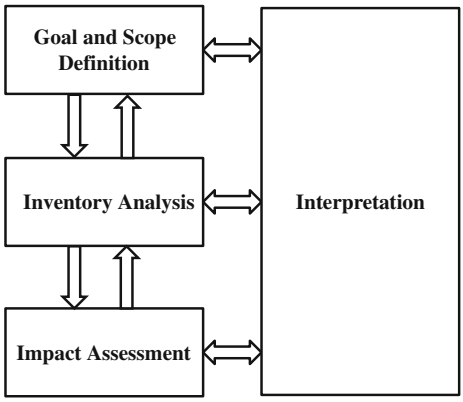


Fig. 18.2 Life cycle assessment framework as standardized in ISO 14040

18.2.1.1 Goal and Scope Definition

The first step of performing an LCA includes defining the purpose of the study, its scope, and its context including the audience for whom it is intended. The temporal, spatial, and production chain boundaries of the system under study must be established, methods to be used identified, functional unit chosen, and impact categories of interest enumerated (Baumann and Tillman 2004). Purposes of LCA studies are often to compare products or to identify component processes responsible for the greatest contributions to life cycle environmental impacts. For example, the LCA might be designed to compare corn ethanol, soy biodiesel and their respective coproducts, or to analyze a single complete production pathway for the generation of bioelectricity from corn stover.

Boundary definition identifies what processes are included in the system to be modeled by the inventory analysis. This begins by setting the overall scope of the analysis in terms of the cycle life stages to include: from raw material extraction to capital equipment, from simple manufacturing to delivery, use and disposal. For example "cradle-to-grave" scope implies production, use and disposal phases, whereas "cradle-to-cradle" implies production, use and recycling. In fuel LCA, scope is often stated in alternate terminology relating to traditional petroleum fuel extraction processes: well-to-gate, well-to-pump, and well-to-wheels.

Defining the boundary is a balance between including too many of the connections to the greater economy (increasing work, time, and cost of the analysis) versus including too few component processes which could lead to incomplete or erroneous results. Restricting the scope of the study limits the extent of data collection, but also may limit the validity of results. Specific cutoff criteria for negligible contributions should be selected based on the percent contribution of an element to the total mass, energy, or environmental burden to the overall system.

The choice of a functional unit is more than setting a production quantity, it defines a fair basis for comparison and evaluation. It arises from the function of the product system, rather than the quantity of the product itself. Thus beverage packages (of varying sizes) may be evaluated not by bottle count, but by eight-ounce

servings delivered. Similarly, for fuel systems the functional unit may be defined in terms of gallon of ethanol equivalent (based on energy content), per megajoule (MJ) energy, person-kilometers traveled, or vehicle-kilometers traveled (VKT).

Among the important methodological considerations to be decided as part of the scoping process is the selection of allocation method. Allocation describes the method for splitting inventory flows and environmental impacts of a process across multiple coproducts produced in the examined system. Allocation and its ramifications will be discussed in greater depth below.

18.2.1.2 Life Cycle Inventory Analysis

The LCI analysis step consists of defining and quantifying all relevant flows of energy and materials into, through, and from the system (ISO 2006). Essentially, a flow model is built reflecting all the processes included within the system boundary including resource extraction, production processes, transport, use, and waste management. Input and output data are collected and documented for each process being modeled including flows of raw materials, energy, products and coproducts, wastes, and emissions to air and water. For cradle-to-grave studies, data collection is particularly extensive as it must include all upstream processes (resources extraction, production, and transport) as well as downstream processes (product use and disposal). While some process data may be available in public or commercial databases—such as Ecoinvent (Ecoinvent Centre 2007; Frischknecht 2005), GREET (ANL 2010), US LCI (Deru and NREL 2009), and ELCD (ELCD/ILCD 2012)—or through the use of software tools—including SimaPro (SimaPro 7.3.3/Pre Consultants 2012), GABI (GaBi 5/PE International 2012)—data collection can be resource and time intensive, especially when modeling site-specific processes and new technologies.

Once complete unit process data have been assembled, aggregate resource use and pollutant emissions can be calculated to determine environmental loads per functional unit for the overall system. The time-intensive process of assembling a complete LCI is complicated by processes that produce more than one product. In this case, shares of the inventory must be assigned to each coproduct through the allocation procedure(s) selected during the goal and scope phase.

18.2.1.3 Life-Cycle Impact Assessment

The purpose of LCIA is to translate the resource and emissions flows identified in the LCI into their potential consequences for the environment and human health. It consists of a two-step process of impact classification and quantitative characterization. The classification step links each LCI flow with its respective impacts on resource use, human health, and the environment (ISO 2006).

The characterization step calculates the magnitude of the associated impacts in terms of a reference unit for each category. For example, though carbon dioxide,

methane, and nitrous oxide each have different strengths as GHGs, their global warming potential (GWP) can be measured and aggregated in the common unit of CO_2 equivalents. Specifically, 1 kg methane has a global warming impact equivalent to 25 kg of CO_2 and 1 kg nitrous oxide has a global warming impact equivalent to 298 kg of CO_2(IPCC: M.L. Parry 2007; IPCC: B. Metz 2007). Therefore, the GWP characterization factors for methane and nitrous oxide, relative to CO_2, are 25 and 298, respectively. These factors enable the LCA practitioner to aggregate the GWP impacts from these disparate substances into one combined measure. Similar characterization factors for a vast number of chemical substances and impact categories are available in the literature and through public and commercial databases.

This process of classifying, characterizing, and aggregating related results into a series of midpoint indicators, which summarizes each type of life-cycle environmental impacts, facilitating the comparison of complex systems. Normalization of impact categories allows for the comparison of tradeoffs between different environmental impacts. A midpoint impact assessment method developed by the US Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), the Tool for the Reduction and Assessment of Chemical and other environmental Impacts (TRACI) translates the environmental loads identified by the life-cycle inventory into 11 specific impact categories: ozone depletion, global warming, acidification, eutrophication, tropospheric ozone (smog) formation, ecotoxicity, human health criteria-related effects, human health cancer effects, human health noncancer effects, fossil fuel depletion, and land-use effects (Bare et al. 2003). Alternative midpoint assessment methods include: ReCiPe (Goedkoop et al. 2009), USEtox (Querini et al. 2011; Rosenbaum et al. 2008), CML 2001, EDIP 2003 (Dreyer et al. 2003), Ecological scarcity 2006 (Frischknecht et al. 2009), Greenhouse Gas Protocol (Ranganathan et al. 2004; Sundin and Ranganathan 2002), Ecological footprint (Huijbregts et al. 2008).

Additional weighting and normalization steps may be used to further aggregate midpoint indicators into endpoint or damage indicators such as ReCiPe (Goedkoop et al. 2009), Eco-indicator 99 (Dreyer et al. 2003), Impact 2002+ (Jolliet et al. 2003), and EPS 2000. The various LCA tools have been evaluated extensively in the literature (Landis and Theis 2008; Kulkarni et al. 2005; Dreyer et al. 2003; Olsen et al. 2001; Whittaker et al. 2011). While single metrics may conveniently summarize damages to human health and the environment, facilitating interpretation by decision makers, the LCA practitioner's choice of end-point valuation scheme is subjective and controversial, and is often skipped in favor of a midpoint analysis. The chosen LCIA approach should correspond with the goal and scope of the study.

18.2.1.4 Interpretation

During the interpretation phase of the LCA process, the process is evaluated and validated, conclusions are drawn from the preceding LCI and LCIA, and recommendations made based on inventory and impact assessment data. In addition, the

interpretation phase should include the validation of results, and can often lead to iterative revisions to and improvements in the other LCA phases. Validation of the results is essential and may include analysis of variability and uncertainty in the model using a variety of qualitative sensitivity analysis techniques as well as quantitative statistical procedures. As the LCA process requires, the aggregation of data from multiple processes with varying degrees of uncertainty, statistical techniques offer the most robust treatment for uncertainty in the assessment.

Conclusions may include the identification of the product or process with lowest impact(s) or identification of specific subprocesses of greatest impact, so-called "hot spots" which can then be targeted for improvement, enabling businesses to both increase product quality and reduce harmful environmental impacts.

18.2.1.5 Attributional versus Consequential LCA

LCA models may also differ in the approach employed to address the material and energy flows in the system under investigation. The attributional LCA (ALCA) methodology, which has been utilized for a vast majority of biofuel LCA studies, attempts to quantify the flow of resources and emissions from a product system and its subsystems. Emissions and their related impacts are attributed to the final product by one of several available methods, including allocation strategies, and system expansion. ALCA determines the magnitude of environmental burdens which can be attributed to a product or service, and which processes within the production chain account for the greatest share of impacts. Researchers have argued that it is not fully possible to draw conclusions on future changes by using only ALCA (Ekvall and Weidema 2004; Schmidt 2008; Weidema et al. 1999).

In contrast, consequential LCA (CLCA) methodology, aims to explain how the physical flows to and from the technosphere may change in response to a change in the life cycle of the product or service. CLCAs attempt to consider a much broader system boundary. The most commonly employed form of a CLCA considers the use of economic models. These models track monetary, material, and energy flows across economic systems. In a CLCA, the consequential effects of production are added within the system as resources enter or leave the economic market, thereby changing the supply–demand dynamics, and potentially causing changes in resource use and associated environmental impacts. In other words, the system under investigation is expanded to include the consequences due to changing some production patterns outside the narrowly defined life cycle of interest. This is generally accomplished using marginal data and is accounted for on the basis of price elasticities of supply and demand (Lesage et al. 2007; Lund et al. 2010; Reinhard and Zah 2009; Sanden and Karlstrom 2007). Such change-oriented LCAs focus on the broader environmental impacts of alternate courses of action, such as the replacement of the existing technologies with a new technical option. For example, in an algae-to-biodiesel consequential LCA, the main desired product is the biofuel. However, the production of glycerol as a byproduct may result in the replacement of glycerol production via other methods involving greater

consumption of nonrenewable resources. Similarly, the coproduction of animal feed may displace other sources of animal feed existing in the market. As with any attempt to predict the future, CLCA faces inherent challenges due to data and modeling limitations as well as inherent uncertainty.

18.2.1.6 The LCA Approach—Challenges and Benefits

LCA studies have been criticized for various reasons including (1) incomplete or obsolete process LCI data, (2) inappropriate system boundaries, (3) poor allocation procedures, or incomplete accounting for byproducts. The assumption that emissions can be scaled linearly may not correspond to processes that exhibit a range of emissions, depending on scale or temperature or other factors. Also LCA results may either not be generalizable beyond the specific geographic location and time period of the analysis, or they may include process data that are outdated or inappropriate to the specific location. The specific application of LCA to fuel systems is discussed below and further in the case study in Sect. 18.4.

18.2.2 LCA and Fuels

LCA methodologies are increasingly essential to evaluating the sustainability of both traditional and alternative fuel products. Many life-cycle studies of biofuels concentrate primarily on energy analysis and greenhouse gas emissions, though other impacts such as water consumption, eutrophication potential, and land-use change are of increasing interest. This section will present the major components and metrics of life-cycle energy analysis as well as a discussion of life-cycle GHG analysis.

18.2.2.1 Major Energy Metrics

A variety of metrics are used to quantify the consumption of primary energy in the production of biofuels (Murphy et al. 2011b; Cleveland 2010; Chwalowski 1996). In contrast to the process energy used directly in a given process, primary energy represents the total of all energy resources consumed to produce the materials and energy used in the process. For example, operating a 40 W light bulb for 1 h would use 40 W-hours of process energy (electricity), while the total primary fuels consumed to generate and transmit that required electricity would be on the order of 108 W-hours (assuming a primary energy factor of 2.7) with wide variability due to specific geographic location, technologies, and above all the specific mix of primary fuels used to generate the electricity.

Several principle energy metrics are defined and summarized in Table 18.1. One key measure considered for biofuels is the net energy balance (NEB) also

Table 18.1 Key energy metrics

Name	Abbreviation	Formal definition
Net energy balance	NEB	$\sum \text{Energy}_{\text{output}} - \sum \text{Energy}_{\text{input}}$
Energy return on investment	EROI	$\frac{\sum \text{Energy Output}}{\sum \text{Energy Input}}$
Net energy ratio	NER	$\frac{\sum \text{Energy Output}}{\sum \text{Energy Input}}$
Fossil energy ratio	FER	$\frac{\sum \text{Energy Output}}{\sum \text{Fossil Energy Input}}$
Energy breeding factor	BF_{en}	$\frac{\sum \text{Energy Output}}{\sum \text{Nonrenewable Energy Input}}$

known as net energy value (NEV). NEB is defined as the difference between the energy in the biofuel product (and coproducts) and the total primary energy required to produce the fuel. A positive net energy balance is one criterion for sustainable fuel product. The energy return on investment (EROI) and net energy ratio (NER) represent ratios of the total energy in the biofuel product and its coproducts to the total primary energy required to produce them. NER values greater than one correspond to a positive energy balance.

A variation of energy return on investment, fossil energy ratio (FER) considers only the consumption of nonrenewable fossil fuel resources and is defined as the ratio of the sum of energy content of the products over the primary fossil fuel inputs consumed during production. This metric considers only the nonrenewable fossil fuel components of primary energy and serves to evaluate how much of fuel product is generated per unit investment of fossil fuels. FER values greater than 1 are net fossil energy positive, reflecting more energy in the products than the fossil energy consumed during production. Thus, FER is a measure of the renewability of the fuel. The energy breeding factor, an analogous metric, represents the energetic return per unit of nonrenewable energy consumed.

18.2.2.2 Criticisms of Energy Metrics

Net energy balance and related metrics have been criticized for aggregating different types of energy with no adjustment for their differing quality or value (Murphy et al. 2011a; Liska et al. 2009; Liska and Cassman 2008; Murphy et al. 2011b; Dale 2007). The implicit assumption that all energy carriers are equal and can be added together is contradicted by the observed wide variation between energy carrier prices. Compare, for example, the per million BTU prices for the following fuels: $2/mmBTU for coal, $10/mmBTU for petroleum, and $24/mmBTU for electricity. These fuels are clearly valued not just for their energy content, but for the services that they can provide, that is the differing utility or usefulness of coal, petroleum, and electricity (Dale 2007). Despite their intuitive appeal, ratios that assume all energy forms are fungible can be at best of only limited value. The choice of energy metrics must be informed by a clear

understanding of the goal(s) of the analysis. If the policy goal is to increase domestic energy security policy-driven metrics such as petroleum displacement ratio or FER should be considered. If the goal is to reduce GHG emissions to increase climate security, metrics such as GHG emissions per vehicle-kilometer traveled are more appropriate (Dale 2007).

A recent study proposed a set of nine complementary energy metrics for comparing biofuel systems. These metrics span three categories of evaluation (Lavigne and Powers 2007)

- energy consumption (from fossil, petroleum, and renewable sources)
- energy security (NEV, %foreign consumed, and % domestic consumed), and
- energy resource consumption (% renewable consumed, energy efficiency ratio, and net energy resources for transportation)

In general, a move toward the use of more transparent and holistic methodologies for the evaluation of biofuels can better reflect the multiple energy, environmental, economic, and security goals.

18.2.2.3 Greenhouse Gas Emissions and LCA

Concerns over the specter of global climate change have resulted in international and national legislation designed to limit the release of GHGs throughout national economies, particularly from the transportation sector. As a result, reduction of GHG emissions has arisen as one of the primary drivers for the biofuels industry. In the United States context, the current renewable fuel standard (RFS2) requires the production and blending of renewable fuels into the US fuel mix. RFS2 requires reductions in life-cycle GHG emissions of these renewable fuels as compared to the petroleum fuels they replace. For example, advanced biofuels must achieve at least a 50 % reduction in GHG emissions across their life cycle (EPA 2010).

A first step in modeling GHG emissions is to execute a carbon balance, that is, to determine the flows of carbon into, through, and out of the production system. The LCA practitioner must be cognizant of the biogenic and anthropogenic sources of elemental carbon moving through the cultivation, fuel production, and combustion chain. While petroleum fuel combustion releases "new" atoms of carbon into the atmosphere that had previously been stored in underground formations over geologic timescales, biofuel combustion does not necessarily release "new" CO_2. Atmospheric CO_2 which is fixed into plant biomass via photosynthesis, converted to fuel, and returned to the atmosphere during fuel combustion, does not result in the addition of any new—that is anthropogenic—atmospheric carbon dioxide, and therefore has no impact on global warming.

Carbon accounting can become problematic when comparing studies with different system boundaries. For example, a study of biomass cultivation might indicate that atmospheric carbon is fixed by photosynthesis, and therefore "sequestered" in the biomass product, potentially resulting in net negative GHG

emissions. A second study of biomass cultivation and conversion may show that the same biogenic carbon is again embedded between two coproducts, fuel and residual biomass. While biofuel combustion *per se* may be carbon neutral, the fate of the carbon embedded in the coproduct must also be considered. For example, while residual biomass used as a soil amendment may sequester carbon in the earth for several years, residual biomass combusted for the generation of bioelectricity results in immediate release of the fixed carbon resulting in no true sequestration. A well-to-wheel LCA of the complete biofuel cultivation, production, and combustion system also requires the consideration of both direct and indirect life-cycle emissions of all GHGs including methane, nitrous oxide, and CFCs and anthropogenic CO_2. Additionally, the choice of allocation method can have a strong impact on the LCA results.

18.2.2.4 Allocation and Coproducts

For an integrated system that produces more than one product, system expansion and allocation are alternative techniques for allowing the resource consumption and emissions to be equitably split between the coproducts. System expansion refers to expanding the conceptual boundary of the studied system, such that it is credited for emissions avoided from another system. That is, the primary system (S1) generating primary product (P1) and coproduct (P2) is credited in an amount equivalent to the avoided emissions; that is, the emissions which would have been generated had P2 been produced in its own virgin system (S2).

According to ISO 14040, when allocation cannot be avoided by using system expansion or increasing the detail of the model, it should split environmental loads among the system's "different products or functions in a way which reflects the underlying physical relationships between them" (ISO 2006). Relevant physical relationships may include mass, volume, and energy content. When a physical basis for allocation cannot be determined, it should be based on another relation between the coproducts, such as their proportional economic value. Additionally, ISO 14040 requires a sensitivity analysis to be carried out when multiple allocation procedures are possible. As different allocation methods can yield widely varying LCA results (Kaufman et al. 2010; Azapagica and Cliftb 1999; Luo et al. 2009), this variability can be captured and effectively communicated through a sensitivity analysis.

Beyond allocation, issues of coproducts scale may also arise. An almost trivial case occurs when the production of the coproduct exceeds that of the primary product either in terms of mass or value. An alternative case particularly suited to the study of biofuels and other nascent industries occurs when the scale of production increases to industrial scale to meet the growing demand for the primary product. Concurrent coproduct production may surpass its own market demand. This could result in dramatic drops in market price for the coproduct to the point where any additional marginal production must be treated as waste.

18.3 Biofuels LCA: Selected Applications

This section provides an overview of several previous LCA biofuel studies including an updated report on the life-cycle performance of corn ethanol, soybean diesel, and a comparison of algal bioenergy to other 1st- and 2nd- generation biofuels. Issues and challenges with previous biofuel studies are addressed.

18.3.1 Corn Ethanol

The rapid expansion of the US ethanol industry over recent years has brought about significant advancements in biomass harvesting, processing, and conversion technologies, resulting in a plentitude of corn-ethanol studies (Hill et al. 2006; Farrell et al. 2006; Hsu et al. 2010; Kendall and Chang 2009; Kim et al. 2009; Kim and Dale 2005, 2008; Patzek 2004; Patzek and Pimentel 2005; Pimentel et al. 2007). These technological improvements and process efficiencies have had a significant impact on the environmental and energetic performance of corn ethanol. Liska et al. (2009) examined the impacts of technological maturation and system evolution on the life-cycle energy efficiency and GHG emissions of corn ethanol. The life-cycle energy efficiency and GHG emissions for various corn-ethanol systems were evaluated utilizing updated values for crop yields and agricultural management, bio-refinery operations, and coproduct utilization, which were compared against prior studies based on older process technologies. The results indicate that corn ethanol has the potential for 48–59 % GHG reduction as compared to traditional gasoline, approximately 2–3 times greater than previously reported values. Additionally, ethanol-to-petroleum output-to-input ratios were found to range from 10:1 to 13:1. It was hypothesized that a ratio of 19:1 could be achieved if farmers adopted alternative agricultural and soil management practices. The net energy ratio (NER) of corn ethanol was determined to range from 1.5 to 1.8, significantly higher than prior reported values of approximately 1.2. The authors also considered corn ethanol production utilizing a closed-loop bio-refinery coupled with an anaerobic digestion system. Under this scenario the NER was found to be 2.2 coupled with a 67 % reduction in GHG emissions. The conclusions of this study highlight the importance of technological maturation and ongoing innovation in emerging bioenergy systems, and reveal that corn ethanol's updated environmental and energetic performance is competitive with projected values for cellulosic-ethanol and other advanced biofuels.

18.3.2 Soy Biodiesel

In 1998, the US National Renewable Energy Laboratory (NREL) conducted the first complete energetic LCA of US soy biodiesel (Sheehan et al. 1998). This landmark study constructed an energy inventory for soy biodiesel based on 1990

agricultural data. This analysis was updated in both 2009 and 2011 to reflect technological improvements in soybean farming, processing, and biodiesel conversion, utilizing agricultural data from 2002 to 2006, respectively. In the most recent analysis, Pradhan et al. (2011) compared the updated energetic performance of soy biodiesel against the two prior studies, and discussed the influence of technological development and agricultural advancements on life-cycle inventories and related energy balances. The findings indicate that the Fossil Energy Ratio (FER) for soy biodiesel has substantially increased over time: from 3.2 in the 1998 NREL report, to 4.56 in the 2009 study, and finally to 5.54 in the 2011 report. The authors attribute this gradual increase in FER to increased soybean yields, improvements in soybean crushing, and advancements in biodiesel conversion operations. The results indicate reductions in energetic inputs (normalized per unit volume of biodiesel) for agricultural operations, soybean crushing, and transesterification of 52, 58, and 33 %, respectively, as compared to the 2002 report. The authors partially attribute the reductions in the energetic inputs for agricultural operations to a decrease in pesticide use resulting from the recent adoption of genetically engineered (GE) soybeans. Additionally, reductions in the energy consumption in biomass conversion and processing are largely attributed to increased efficiency and optimization of the soybean crushing and transesterification facilities and operations. These conclusions suggest that continued advancements in the agricultural sector and in the biofuels industry will allow for further optimization of the biofuel supply chain, leading to potentially lower biofuel production costs and increased biofuel FER values over time.

18.3.3 Algae-Derived Bioenergy

In recent years, microalgae have received substantial interest as a potentially sustainable source of bioenergy. While microalgae derived fuels do not exhibit many of the drawbacks of first generation or advanced biofuels, recent studies have indicated that third generation biofuels may exhibit high upstream energetic and environmental impacts. Researchers have suggested that industrial symbiosis, such as the use of industrial flue gas and wastewater effluent in algae cultivation, as well as alternative production scenarios, such as the production of biomethane via anaerobic digestion of algal biomass, may alleviate concerns over algae's environmental performance (Soratana et al. 2012; Borkowski et al. 2012; Vasudevan et al. 2012; Edward et al. 2012; Campbell et al. 2011; Collet et al. 2011; Murphy and Allen 2011; Yang et al. 2011; Singh and Olsen 2011; Brentner et al. 2011; Sander and Murthy 2010; Ferrell and Sarisky-Reed 2010; Batan et al. 2010; Sialve et al. 2009; Huesemann and Benemann 2009; Chisti 2008). In a 2011 study, Clarens et al. performed a well-to-wheel LCA of algae-derived biofuel and bioelectricity and compared the results against other biofuels (Clarens et al. 2011). In this study, multiple algal nutrient provisioning, harvesting, and conversion scenarios were modeled. Algae's performance was then evaluated against other biofuel feedstocks

in terms of equivalent VKT normalized per hectare of cultivated land. The results reveal high dependence of the energetic balance and environmental performance of algal energy systems on the mode of bioenergy production. The direct combustion of algal biomass for bioelectricity outperformed scenarios involving anaerobic digestion or algal biodiesel production, yielding a maximum EROI of approximately 4.92. Additionally, scenarios involving the direct combustion of algal biomass generally produced higher VKT than either switchgrass or canola. Given the large variability in algae's energetic and environmental performance, careful consideration of the algae-to-energy supply chain is required to ensure the long-term sustainability of emerging algal bioenergy systems.

18.3.4 Issues and Challenges to LCA of Biofuels

Biofuel LCAs often examine different system boundaries, utilize diverse functional units, and present results using a host of various sustainability and energy metrics. This creates difficulties in comparison between studies. Because LCA is becoming an increasingly prevalent tool for informing environmental and political decision-making progress toward a unified and standardized LCA framework for assessing biofuels and their associated coproducts is crucial. Factors such as coproduct allocation and substitutability, model assumptions, and data quality can highly influence LCA results for biofuels.

Another key issue with biofuel LCA is addressing uncertainty and variability (McKone et al. 2011). Common methods for assessing uncertainty and variability include both the use of Monte Carlo simulations to determine model uncertainty based on known or assumed underlying probability distributions, and the One-Factor-At-a-Time (OFAT) method in which input parameters are varied separately to determine their relative influence on the LCA results. However, these methods can be time- and resource-intensive, and may be constrained by issues of data quality and availability. Additionally, due to data averaging and the assumption of linear relationships, traditional LCA models of resource use and emissions generation cannot fully capture the effects of spatial (Yazan et al. 2011) and temporal variation, nor do they account for industrial dynamics and technological change. Similarly, the spatial (Yazan et al. 2011), temporal, and dynamic complexities of environmental response are not fully captured by traditional LCA.

Although sustainability indicators such as life-cycle GHG emissions and energy consumption are commonly studied in biofuel LCA, examination of the entire range of environmental impact categories is necessary for comprehensive understanding and to avoid unintended shifting of environmental burdens from one impact category to another. Furthermore, no generally accepted impact categories or standard methodology exist for reporting direct and indirect water consumption or land use, which are important issues meriting further study. The complexities of applying LCA methodologies to biofuels are illustrated in the following brief case study of algal biodiesel.

18.4 Case Study: LCA of Algal Biodiesel

A comparative well-to-pump LCA was conducted to investigate the life-cycle GHG emissions and FER of algal biodiesel derived from algae cultivated in open raceway ponds. Comprehensive evaluation of production pathways allows for a greater understanding of the potential tradeoffs, environmental impacts, and technical practicality of different algae production options. Additionally, prior algal biofuel LCAs have shown mixed results regarding algae's environmental and energetic performance, often as a consequence of differences in system boundaries and model assumptions. Holistic evaluation of multiple algal biofuel production pathways within the framework and assumptions of one study can address these issues.

18.4.1 Methodology

This study examines the production of algal biodiesel produced via transesterification and the effects of varying the use of the residual biomass coproduct. The system boundary begins with the cultivation of algal biomass and extends to the delivered fuel product, capital costs for cultivation, extraction, and fuel conversion were excluded. As the ultimate fuel product was to be combusted in the existing vehicle fleets, combustion processes were assumed to be equivalent to those used for the existing petroleum fuels and were excluded from this analysis (Huo et al. 2008). The functional unit of this study was chosen as one megajoule (MJ) of biodiesel at pump, allowing easy comparison with petroleum diesel. It was assumed that biomass cultivation and fuel production would occur in an integrated open raceway pond biorefinery located in Phoenix, Arizona, and would be co-located with an industrial source of waste flue gas. The biofuel production chain is shown in Fig. 18.3, which illustrates the major subsystems: cultivation, primary and secondary harvest, drying, oil extraction, fuel upgrading, and three alternate use-pathways for the residual biomass.

The extraction subsystem model was developed using data from the Ecoinvent database (Ecoinvent Centre 2007), initially on a per-pound-of-oil-extract basis, which was subsequently scaled to the per-MJ-fuel functional unit. Biodiesel requires approximately 1 lb. bio-oil per lb. of output. For mature processes such as oil extraction life-cycle data are readily available from the peer review literature as well as databases including GREET (ANL 2010), Ecoinvent (Ecoinvent Centre 2007), and USLCI database (Deru and NREL 2009).

Data for molecular composition of the de-oiled biomass were based on Lardon et al. (2009) and data on energy density and molecular composition of algal and soy meals came from the 2011 GREET model (ANL 2010). The use of waste industrial flue gas was modeled as a source of CO_2 (Benemann 1997). Algae were assumed to be grown under nitrogen deprivation conditions to maximize lipid

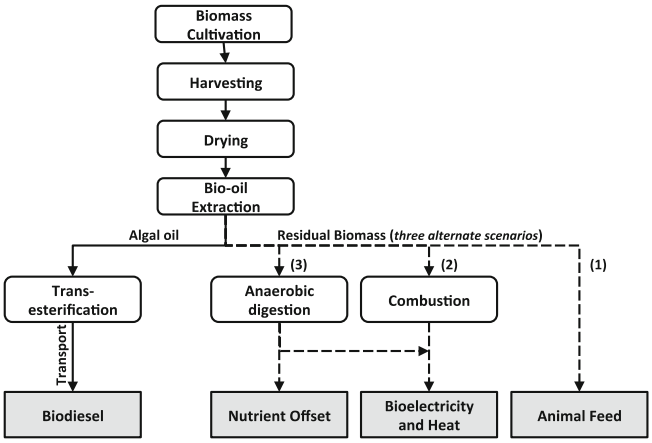


Fig. 18.3 System diagram for production of algal biodiesel and coproducts

content while reducing the requirement for synthetic fertilizers (Cho et al. 2011; Converti et al. 2009; Illman et al. 2000). The resultant algal biomass was modeled using a mean fractional composition of 38.5 % lipids, 52.9 % carbohydrates, and 6.7 % proteins. Biodiesel can be produced only from the lipid fraction of the biomass, leaving the remaining 60 % as a coproduct or as waste. This study considers several alternative uses for the residual de-oiled algal biomass (DOAB), including as an animal feed product (modeled through the displacement of soy-meal feed); as a combustion fuel for the creation for bioelectricity and heat; and as a feedstock for anaerobic digestion, which produces bioelectricity, heat, and recycled nutrients.

18.4.2 Results

For allocation purposes in the animal feed scenario, DOAB molecular composition was compared with that of soybean meal and soy beans to develop displacement ratios based on the protein content of each. Additional information and extended results can be found in a related study published in the proceedings of the 2012 IEEE-ISSST (Borkowski et al. 2012).

Primary fossil energy use across the component processes of the algal biofuel production system is indicated as inputs for three separate scenarios in Fig. 18.4. The corresponding outputs column for each scenario shows one MJ of produced biodiesel fuel product, along with any proportional coproducts. The largest contributions to primary fossil energy consumption arise from heating processes involved in biomass drying and biooil extraction, followed by electricity used in harvesting, cultivation, and oil extraction.

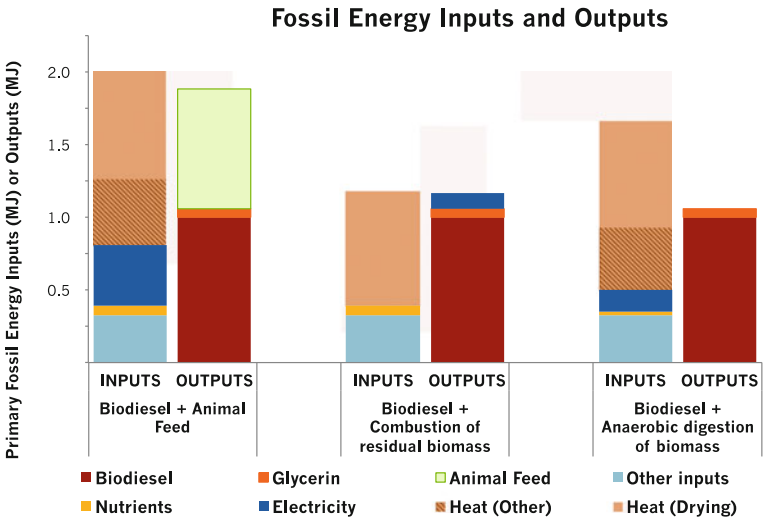


Fig. 18.4 Fossil energy inputs and outputs normalized per MJ biodiesel

Comparing the baseline animal feed scenario to that where the residual biomass is combusted for heat and power, we see a 42 % decrease in net fossil fuel consumption as well as the generation of approximately 0.1 MJ surplus bioelectricity per MJ of biofuel produced. The anaerobic digestion case shows smaller reductions in heat and electricity consumption, no surplus of bioelectricity, as well as a reduction in synthetic fertilizer consumption due to nutrient recycling. These three alternate scenarios may be more easily compared by examining the ratio of outputs to fossil energy inputs, that is, via the FER values as summarized in Fig. 18.5. The residual biomass combustion shows the highest FER value of 0.99, followed by the animal feed scenario (FER: 0.94), and by the anaerobic digestion scenario, which exhibits the lowest FER value of 0.63.

The modeled GHG emissions do not directly correspond to FER results as can be seen in Fig. 18.5. The anaerobic digestion scenario shows GHG emissions of 93 g of CO_2 equivalent per megajoule, which is on par with those of petroleum-derived diesel. The animal feed scenario shows emissions of 115 g CO_2 eq/MJ, which is higher than the petroleum diesel benchmark. The lowest GHG emissions correspond to the biomass combustion scenario with 39 g CO_2 eq/MJ, in which the greatest avoidance of electricity and natural gas consumption is achieved.

Given that under 40 % of the cultivated biomass is lipids (oils) by weight, the variation in GHG emission levels and FER values between scenarios is not surprising. The fate of the residual biomass coproduct, representing the majority 62 % of the mass, clearly has significant effect on LCA results. Comparing the anaerobic digestion and animal feed scenarios shows a clear example of the trade-offs revealed by LCA, while the anaerobic digestion scenario exhibits lower (*better*) GHG emissions than the animal feed case, it also exhibits lower FER, that is,

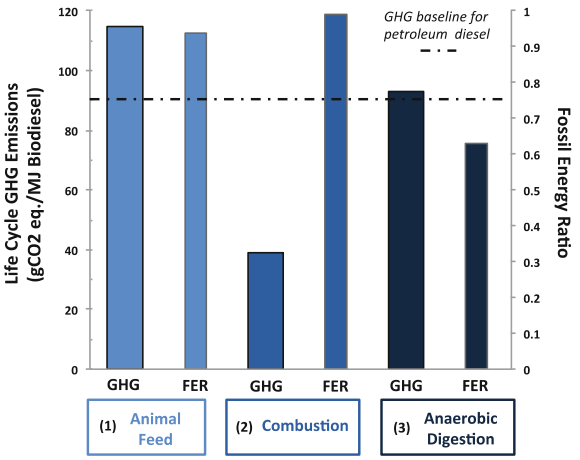


Fig. 18.5 Life-cycle GHG emissions and fossil energy ratio of biodiesel production under various residual biomass scenarios

worse energetic performance. The combustion scenario is most attractive with both lower GHG emissions and highest FER results.

Though the purpose of a given study may be to examine the environmental impacts of the biofuel products, an accurate LCA must consider the complete system including all coproducts as well as the inevitable trade-offs between different impact goals. Considering the high variability in the energetic and environmental performance of algal biodiesel in just the three coproduct scenarios studied here, LCA clearly offers the potential to evaluate the multiplicity of alternative feedstocks and production pathways discussed in Sect. 18.1 and to inform the sustainable development of nascent algal biofuel industries.

18.5 Conclusions: The Broader Role of LCA in the Development of Sustainable Biofuels

As discussed earlier, the adoption of biofuels/bioenergy has the potential to decrease dependence on foreign oil, reduce consumption of nonrenewable resources, mitigate GHG emissions and global climate change, and boost the domestic economy. Holistic evaluation of various biofuel supply chains from a life cycle perspective can help to indicate the degree to which these objectives are met. Additionally, given the multitude of potential biofeedstocks and biofuel conversion pathways, LCA represents a useful tool both for comparing environmental sustainability among pathways and for guiding the sustainable development of biofuel industries. Policy makers are adopting life cycle thinking and LCA metrics into renewable fuel regulation and legislation. Scientists are using systems analysis, such as LCA, to identify process inefficiencies and hotspots for targeted improvement along myriad possible biofuel supply chains.

While LCA is increasingly valued by researchers, practitioners, and decision makers, it currently faces multiple methodological challenges. These include issues of data quality, uncertainty, system boundaries, spatial and temporal data resolution, scale, and system dynamics as well as trade-offs inherent to optimizing competing goals. To address these issues, researchers are developing increasingly sophisticated models and metrics. New tools for analyzing geo-spatial and regional/localized impacts are helping to quantify impacts on local watersheds and to disentangle the complexities of indirect land-use change. Issues of data quality and availability are being met with the development of commercial and private databases. Some of the shortcomings of traditional LCA are being met with alternative forms of LCA such as Economic Input Output Life Cycle Assessment (EIO-LCA), Ecologically based Life Cycle Assessment (Eco-LCA) (Baral et al. 2012), and hybrid approaches (You et al. 2012; Acquaye et al. 2011).

By insisting on an LCA "seal of approval", or seeking a single reductive metric to answer the complex questions of sustainability, decision makers fail to utilize the true potential of LCA (McKone et al. 2011). LCA can best serve the nascent biofuels industry when it remains an iterative process, much like the scientific method itself. Iterative LCA has the potential to coevolve with technology while providing the basis for adaptive planning through an ongoing symbiotic collaboration among the LCA practitioner, the basic scientist, the R&D community, and decision makers in industry, finance, and government. Vital roles exist for

- Scientists and engineers in research and technology development—targeting hotspots for process improvement, emission reduction, and efficiency improvement
- LCA practitioners—identifying areas of uncertainty and variability, posing new questions, and driving the coevolution of LCA models with new technology
- Decision makers—organizing information, resolving conflicting goals, and working to understand aggregated impacts while gaining a deeper understanding of the underlying issues, risks, and potential benefits of the studied system and broader ramifications across its life cycle.

Building on the common basis of life cycle thinking, LCA models and methodologies can guide the development of emergent biofuels industries onto a path that is simultaneously economically viable, energetically efficient, and environmentally responsible.

References

Acquaye AA, Wiedmann T, Feng KS, Crawford RH, Barrett J, Kuylenstierna J, Duffy AP, Koh SCL, McQueen-Mason S (2011) Identification of 'carbon hot-spots' and quantification of GHG intensities in the biodiesel supply chain using hybrid LCA and structural path analysis. Environ Sci Technol 45(6):2471–2478. doi:10.1021/es103410q

Agusdinata DB, Zhao F, Ileleji K, DeLaurentis D (2011) Life cycle assessment of potential biojet fuel production in the United States. Environ Sci Technol 45(21):9133–9143. doi:10.1021/es202148g

Azapagica A, Cliftb R (1999) Allocation of environmental burdens in multiple-function systems. J Clean Prod 7(2):101–119. doi:10.1016/s0959-6526(98)00046-8

Baral A, Bakshi BR, Smith RL (2012) Assessing resource intensity and renewability of cellulosic ethanol technologies using eco-LCA. Environ Sci Technol. doi:10.1021/es2025615

Bare JC, Norris GA, Pennington DW, McKone T (2003) TRACI: the tool for the reduction and assessment of chemical and other environmental impacts. J Ind Ecol 6(3–4):49–78

Batan L, Quinn J, Willson B, Bradley T (2010) Net energy and greenhouse gas emission evaluation of biodiesel derived from microalgae. Environ Sci Technol 44(20):7975–7980. doi:10.1021/es102052y

Baumann H, Tillman AM (2004) The Hitch Hiker's guide to LCA: an orientation in life cycle assessment methodology and application. Studentlitteratur, Lund

Benemann JR (1997) CO_2 mitigation with microalgae systems. Energy Convers Manage 38:S475–S479. doi:10.1016/s0196-8904(96)00313-5

Benemann JR, Oswald PI (1996) Systems and economic analysis of microalgae ponds for conversion of CO_2 to biomass—final report. Department of Energy, Pittsburgh Energy Technology Center

Borkowski M, Zaimes GG, Khanna V (2012) Integrating LCA and thermodynamic analysis for sustainability assessment of algal biofuels: comparison of renewable diesel vs. biodiesel. In: IEEE international symposium on sustainable systems and technology, Boston, 21–23 May 2012

Brentner LB, Eckelman MJ, Zimmerman JB (2011) Combinatorial life cycle assessment to inform process design of industrial production of algal biodiesel. Environ Sci Technol 45(16):7060–7067. doi:10.1021/es2006995

Campbell PK, Beer T, Batten D (2011) Life cycle assessment of biodiesel production from microalgae in ponds. Bioresour Technol 102(1):50–56. doi:10.1016/j.biortech.2010.06.048

Chisti Y (2007) Biodiesel from microalgae. Biotechnol Adv 25(3):294–306. doi:10.1016/j.biotechadv.2007.02.001

Chisti Y (2008) Biodiesel from microalgae beats bioethanol. Trends Biotechnol 26(3):126–131. doi:10.1016/j.tibtech.2007.12.002

Cho S, Lee D, Luong TT, Park S, Oh YK, Lee T (2011) Effects of carbon and nitrogen sources on fatty acid contents and composition in the green microalga, Chlorella sp. 227. J Microbiol Biotechnol 21(10):1073–1080. doi:10.4014/jmb.1103.03038

Chwalowski M (1996) Critical questions about the full fuel cycle analysis. Energy Convers Manage 37(6–8):1259–1263. doi:10.1016/0196-8904(95)00330-4

Clarens AF, Resurreccion EP, White MA, Colosi LM (2010) Environmental life cycle comparison of algae to other bioenergy feedstocks. Environ Sci Technol 44(5):1813–1819. doi:10.1021/es902838n

Clarens AF, Nassau H, Resurreccion EP, White MA, Colosi LM (2011) Environmental impacts of algae-derived biodiesel and bioelectricity for transportation. Environ Sci Technol 45(17):7554–7560. doi:10.1021/es200760n

Cleveland CJ (2010) Net energy analysis. Environmental information coalition, national council for science and the environment. http://www.eoearth.org/article/Net_energy_analysis. Accessed 4 July 2011

Collet P, Helias A, Lardon L, Ras M, Goy RA, Steyer JP (2011) Life-cycle assessment of microalgae culture coupled to biogas production. Bioresour Technol 102(1):207–214. doi:10.1016/j.biortech.2010.06.154

Converti A, Casazza AA, Ortiz EY, Perego P, Del Borghi M (2009) Effect of temperature and nitrogen concentration on the growth and lipid content of Nannochloropsis oculata and Chlorella vulgaris for biodiesel production. Chem Eng Process 48(6):1146–1151. doi:10.1016/j.cep.2009.03.006

Dale BE (2007) Thinking clearly about biofuels: ending the irrelevant 'net energy' debate and developing better performance metrics for alternative fuels. Biofuels Bioprod Biorefin 1(1):14–17. doi:10.1002/bbb.5

Deru MP, NREL (2009) U.S. Life Cycle Inventory Database Roadmap. National Renewable Energy Laboratory, U.S. Department of Energy

Dragone G, Fernandes B, Vicente AA, Teixeira JA (2010) Third generation biofuels from microalgae. Appl Microbiol 2:1355–1366

Dreyer L, Niemann A, Hauschild M (2003) Comparison of three different LCIA methods: EDIP97, CML2001 and eco-indicator 99. Int J Life Cycle Assess 8(4):191–200. doi:10.1007/bf02978471

Ecoinvent Centre (2007) Ecoinvent data v2.0. http://www.ecoinvent.org

Edward DF, Jeongwoo H, Ignasi P-R, Amgad E, Michael QW (2012) Methane and nitrous oxide emissions affect the life-cycle analysis of algal biofuels. Environ Res Lett 7(1):014030

Eisentraut, A. (2010). Sustainable production of second-generation biofuels:potential and perspectives in major economies and developing countries,OECD Publishing

Ekvall T, Weidema BP (2004) System boundaries and input data in consequential life cycle inventory analysis. Int J Life Cycle Assess 9(3):161–171. doi:10.1065/Lca2004.03.148

ELCD/ILCD (2012) International/european reference life cycle data system. http://lca.jrc.ec.europa.eu/lcainfohub/datasetArea.vm. Accessed June 2012

EPA (2010) EPA finalizes regulations for the national renewable fuel standard program for 2010 and beyond. Office of transportation and air quality, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency

Fargione J, Hill J, Tilman D, Polasky S, Hawthorne P (2008) Land clearing and the biofuel carbon debt. Science 319(5867):1235–1238. doi:10.1126/science.1152747

Farrell AE, Plevin RJ, Turner BT, Jones AD, O'hare M, Kammen DM (2006) Ethanol can contribute to energy and environmental goals. Science 311(5760):506–508

Ferrell J, Sarisky-Reed V (2010) National algal biofuels technology roadmap, a technology roadmap resulting from the National Algal Biofuels Workshop.140

Frischknecht R (2005) Ecoinvent Data v1. 1 (2004): from heterogenous databases to unified and transparent LCI data. Int J Life Cycle Assess 10(1):1–2

Frischknecht R, Steiner R, Jungbluth N (2009) The ecological scarcity method–eco-factors 2006. A method for impact assessment in LCA, Environ Studies No 906

GaBi 5/PE International PE International. http://www.gabi-software.com/international/index/. Accessed June 2012

Goedkoop M, Heijungs R, et al (2009) ReCiPe 2008: A life cycle impact assessment method which comprises harmonised category indicators at the midpoint and the endpoint level. VROM–Ruimte en Milieu, Ministerie van Volkshuisvesting, Ruimtelijke Ordening en Milieubeheer, http://www.lcia-recipe.net

Golueke CG, Oswald WJ (1965) Harvesting and processing sewage-grown planktonic algae. J Water Pollut Con F pp 471–498

GREET Model 1_2011 (2010) Argonne National Laboratory, U.S. Department of Energy. http://greet.es.anl.gov. Accessed 30 Nov 2011

Hammerschlag R (2006) Ethanol's energy return on investment: a survey of the literature 1990–present. Environ Sci Technol 40(6):1744–1750. doi:10.1021/es052024h

Hill J, Nelson E, Tilman D, Polasky S, Tiffany D (2006) Environmental, economic, and energetic costs and benefits of biodiesel and ethanol biofuels. Proc Natl Acad Sci 103(30):11206–11210. doi:10.1073/pnas.0604600103

Ho SH, Chen CY, Lee DJ, Chang JS (2011) Perspectives on microalgal CO_2-emission mitigation systems—a review. Biotechnol Adv 29(2):189–198. doi:10.1016/j.biotechadv.2010.11.001

Hsu DD, Inman D, Heath GA, Wolfrum EJ, Mann MK, Aden A (2010) Life cycle environmental impacts of selected US ethanol production and use pathways in 2022. Environ Sci Technol 44(13):5289–5297

Huesemann MH, Benemann JR (2009) Biofuels from microalgae: review of products, processes and potential, with special focus on Dunaliella sp. Related Information: Alga Dunaliella Biodivers Physiol Genomics Biotechnol 14:445–474

Huijbregts MAJ, Hellweg S, Frischknecht R, Hungerbühler K, Hendriks AJ (2008) Ecological footprint accounting in the life cycle assessment of products. Ecol Econ 64(4):798–807

Huo H, Wang M, Bloyd C, Putsche V (2008) Life-cycle assessment of energy use and greenhouse gas emissions of soybean-derived biodiesel and renewable fuels. Environ Sci Technol 43(3): 750–756. doi:10.1021/es8011436

Illman AM, Scragg AH, Shales SW (2000) Increase in Chlorella strains calorific values when grown in low nitrogen medium. Enzyme Microb Technol 27(8):631–635. doi:10.1016/s0141-0229(00)00266-0

IPCC (2007) Climate change 2007: synthesis report. R. K. Pachauri and A. Reisinger, intergovernmental panel on climate change

IPCC: M.L. Parry (2007) Climate Change 2007: Impacts, Adaptation and Vulnerability : Contribution of Working Group II to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Cambridge University Press

IPCC: B. Metz (2007) Climate Change 2007: Mitigation of climate change: contribution of working group III to the fourth assessment report of the intergovernmental panel on climate change. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge

Ismail M, Rossi A (2010) A compilation of bioenergy sustainability initiatives. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Rome

ISO (2006) ISO 14040 Environmental management—life cycle assessment—principles and framework. International Organization for Standardization, Switzerland

Jolliet O, Margni M, Charles R, Humbert S, Payet J, Rebitzer G, Rosenbaum R (2003) IMPACT 2002+: a new life cycle impact assessment methodology. Int J Life Cycle Assess 8(6):324–330

Jorquera O, Kiperstok A, Sales EA, Embiruçu M, Ghirardi ML (2010) Comparative energy life-cycle analyses of microalgal biomass production in open ponds and photobioreactors. Bioresour Technol 101(4):1406–1413. doi:10.1016/j.biortech.2009.09.038

Kadam KL (2001) Microalgae production from power plant flue gas: environmental implications on life cycle basis (trans: Energy USDo). National Renewable Energy Laboratory, Golden

Kaufman AS, Meier PJ, Sinistore JC, Reinemann DJ (2010) Applying life-cycle assessment to low carbon fuel standards–how allocation choices influence carbon intensity for renewable transportation fuels. Energy Policy 38(9):5229–5241

Kendall A, Chang B (2009) Estimating life cycle greenhouse gas emissions from corn–ethanol: a critical review of current U.S. practices. J Clean Prod 17(13):1175–1182. doi:10.1016/j.jclepro.2009.03.003

Kim S, Dale BE (2005) Life cycle assessment of various cropping systems utilized for producing biofuels: bioethanol and biodiesel. Biomass Bioenergy 29(6):426–439. doi:10.1016/j.biombioe.2005.06.004

Kim S, Dale BE (2008) Life cycle assessment of fuel ethanol derived from corn grain via dry milling. Bioresour Technol 99(12):5250–5260. doi:10.1016/j.biortech.2007.09.034

Kim S, Dale B, Jenkins R (2009) Life cycle assessment of corn grain and corn stover in the United States. Int J Life Cycle Assess 14(2):160–174. doi:10.1007/s11367-008-0054-4

Kulkarni R, Zhang HC, Jianzhi L, Junning S (2005) A framework for environmental impact assessment tools: comparison validation and application using case study of electronic products. In: Proceedings of the 2005 IEEE international symposium on electronics and the environment, 16–19 May 2005, pp 210–214. doi:10.1109/isee.2005.1437027

Landis AE, Theis TL (2008) Comparison of life cycle impact assessment tools in the case of biofuels. In: IEEE international symposium on electronics and the environment, 19–22 May 2008. Proceedings of the IEEE ISEE, pp 1–7. doi:10.1109/isee.2008.4562869

Lardon L, Hélias A, Sialve B, Steyer J-P, Bernard O (2009) Life-cycle assessment of biodiesel production from microalgae. Environ Sci Technol 43(17):6475–6481. doi:10.1021/es900705j

Lavigne A, Powers SE (2007) Evaluating fuel ethanol feedstocks from energy policy perspectives: a comparative energy assessment of corn and corn stover. Energy Policy 35(11): 5918–5930. doi:10.1016/j.enpol.2007.07.002

Lesage P, Deschenes L, Samson R (2007) Evaluating holistic environmental consequences of brownfield management options using consequential life cycle assessment for different perspectives. Environ Manage 40(2):323–337. doi:10.1007/S00267-005-0328-6

Liska AJ, Cassman KG (2008) Towards standardization of life-cycle metrics for biofuels: greenhouse gas emissions mitigation and net energy yield. J Biobased Mater Bioenergy 2(3): 187–203. doi:10.1166/jbmb.2008.402

Liska AJ, Yang HS, Bremer VR, Klopfenstein TJ, Walters DT, Erickson GE, Cassman KG (2009) Improvements in life cycle energy efficiency and greenhouse gas emissions of corn-ethanol. J Ind Ecol 13(1):58–74. doi:10.1111/j.1530-9290.2008.00105.x

Lund H, Mathiesen BV, Christensen P, Schmidt JH (2010) Energy system analysis of marginal electricity supply in consequential LCA. Int J Life Cycle Assess 15(3):260–271. doi:10.1007/S11367-010-0164-7

Luo L, van der Voet E, Huppes G, Udo de Haes H (2009) Allocation issues in LCA methodology: a case study of corn stover-based fuel ethanol. Int J Life Cycle Assess 14(6):529–539. doi:10.1007/s11367-009-0112-6

McKone TE, Nazaroff WW, Berck P, Auffhammer M, Lipman T, Torn MS, Masanet E, Lobscheid A, Santero N, Mishra U, Barrett A, Bomberg M, Fingerman K, Scown C, Strogen B, Horvath A (2011) Grand challenges for life-cycle assessment of biofuels. Environ Sci Technol 45(5):1751–1756. doi:10.1021/es103579c

Melillo JM, Reilly JM, Kicklighter DW, Gurgel AC, Cronin TW, Paltsev S, Felzer BS, Wang XD, Sokolov AP, Schlosser CA (2009) Indirect emissions from biofuels: how important? Science 326(5958):1397–1399. doi:10.1126/Science.1180251

Murphy CF, Allen DT (2011) Energy-water nexus for mass cultivation of algae. Environ Sci Technol 45(13):5861–5868. doi:10.1021/es200109z

Murphy D, Hall C, Powers B (2011a) New perspectives on the energy return on (energy) investment (EROI) of corn ethanol. Environ Dev Sustain 13(1):179–202. doi:10.1007/s10668-010-9255-7

Murphy DJ, Hall CAS, Dale M, Cleveland C (2011b) Order from chaos: a preliminary protocol for determining the EROI of fuels. Sustainability 3(10):1888–1907

Naik SN, Goud VV, Rout PK, Dalai AK (2010) Production of first and second generation biofuels: a comprehensive review. Renew Sustain Energy Rev 14(2):578–597. doi:10.1016/j.rser.2009.10.003

Nonhebel S (2012) Global food supply and the impacts of increased use of biofuels. Energy 37(1):115–121. doi:10.1016/j.energy.2011.09.019

Olsen SI, Christensen FM, Hauschild M, Pedersen F, Larsen HF, Tørsløv J (2001) Life cycle impact assessment and risk assessment of chemicals—a methodological comparison. Environ Impact Assess Rev 21(4):385–404. doi:10.1016/s0195-9255(01)00075-0

Patzek TW (2004) Thermodynamics of the corn-ethanol biofuel cycle. Crit Rev Plant Sci 23(6):519–567. doi:10.1080/07352680490886905

Patzek TW, Pimentel D (2005) Thermodynamics of energy production from biomass. Taylor & Francis, London

Pimentel D, Patzek T, Cecil G (2007) Ethanol production: energy, economic, and environmental losses. In: Whitacre D, Ware G, Nigg H et al. (eds) Reviews of environmental contamination and toxicology, vol 189. Springer, New York, pp 25–41. doi:10.1007/978-0-387-35368-5_2

Pradhan A, Shrestha DS, Mcaloon AJ, Yee WC, Haas MJ, Duffield JA (2011) Energy life-cycle assessment of soybean biodiesel revisited. Am Soc Agric Biol Eng 54(3):1031–1039

Querini F, Morel S, Boch V, Rousseaux P (2011) USEtox relevance as an impact indicator for automotive fuels. Application on diesel fuel, gasoline and hard coal electricity. Int J Life Cycle Assess 16(8):829–840

Ranganathan J, Corbier L, Bhatia P, Schmitz S, Gage P, Oren K (2004) The greenhouse gas protocol: a corporate accounting and reporting standard (Revised edn). World Resources Institute and World Business Council for Sustainable Development, Washington

Reinhard J, Zah R (2009) Global environmental consequences of increased biodiesel consumption in Switzerland: consequential life cycle assessment. J Cleaner Prod 17:S46–S56. doi:10.1016/J.Jclepro.2009.05.003

Rosenbaum RK, Bachmann TM, Gold LS, Huijbregts MAJ, Jolliet O, Juraske R, Koehler A, Larsen HF, MacLeod M, Margni M (2008) USEtox—the UNEP-SETAC toxicity model:

recommended characterisation factors for human toxicity and freshwater ecotoxicity in life cycle impact assessment. Int J Life Cycle Assess 13(7):532–546
Sanden BA, Karlstrom M (2007) Positive and negative feedback in consequential life-cycle assessment. J Cleaner Prod 15(15):1469–1481. doi:10.1016/J.Jclepro.2006.03.005
Sander K, Murthy G (2010) Life cycle analysis of algae biodiesel. Int J Life Cycle Assess 15(7):704–714. doi:10.1007/s11367-010-0194-1
Schmidt JH (2008) System delimitation in agricultural consequential LCA—outline of methodology and illustrative case study of wheat in Denmark. Int J Life Cycle Assess 13(4):350–364. doi:10.1007/S11367-008-0016-X
Searchinger T, Heimlich R, Houghton RA, Dong FX, Elobeid A, Fabiosa J, Tokgoz S, Hayes D, Yu TH (2008) Use of US croplands for biofuels increases greenhouse gases through emissions from land-use change. Science 319(5867):1238–1240. doi:10.1126/Science.1151861
Sheehan JJ (2009) Biofuels and the conundrum of sustainability. Curr Opin Biotechnol 20(3):318–324. doi:10.1016/j.copbio.2009.05.010
Sheehan J, Camobreco V, Duffield J, Graboski M, Shapouri H (1998) An overview of biodiesel and petroleum diesel life cycles (NREL). National Renewable Energy Laboratory, Golden
Sialve B, Bernet N, Bernard O (2009) Anaerobic digestion of microalgae as a necessary step to make microalgal biodiesel sustainable. Biotechnol Adv 27(4):409–416. doi:10.1016/j.biotechadv.2009.03.001
SimaPro 7.3.3/Pre Consultants Pre Consultants. http://www.pre-sustainability.com/. Accessed June 2012
Sims R, Taylor M, et al (2008) From 1st- to 2nd-generation biofuel technologies: an overview of current industry and RD&D activities. International energy agency and organization for economic cooperation and development
Sims REH, Mabee W, Saddler JN, Taylor M (2010) An overview of second generation biofuel technologies. Bioresour Technol 101(6):1570–1580. doi:10.1016/j.biortech.2009.11.046
Singh A, Olsen SI (2011) A critical review of biochemical conversion, sustainability and life cycle assessment of algal biofuels. Appl Energy 88(10):3548–3555. doi:10.1016/j.apenergy.2010.12.012
Sissine F (2007) Energy independence and security act of 2007: a summary of major provisions. CRS report for congress, vol RL34294. Library of congress, congressional research service, Washington
Soratana K, Landis AE (2011) Evaluating industrial symbiosis and algae cultivation from a life cycle perspective. Bioresour Technol 102(13):6892–6901. doi:10.1016/j.biortech.2011.04.018
Soratana K, Harper WF Jr, Landis AE (2012) Microalgal biodiesel and the renewable fuel standard's greenhouse gas requirement. Energy Policy 46:498–510. doi:10.1016/j.enpol.2012.04.016
Sundin H, Ranganathan J (2002) Managing business greenhouse gas emissions: the greenhouse gas protocol–a strategic and operational tool. Corporate Environ Strategy 9(2):137–144
Timilsina GR, Beghin JC, van der Mensbrugghe D, Mevel S (2012) The impacts of biofuels targets on land-use change and food supply: a global CGE assessment. Agric Econ 43(3):315–332. doi:10.1111/j.1574-0862.2012.00585.x
Vasudevan V, Stratton RW, Pearlson MN, Jersey GR, Beyene AG, Weissman JC, Rubino M, Hileman JI (2012) Environmental performance of algal biofuel technology options. Environ Sci Technol. doi:10.1021/es2026399
Weidema BP, Frees N, Nielsen AM (1999) Marginal production technologies for life cycle inventories. Int J Life Cycle Assess 4(1):48–56
Whittaker C, McManus MC, Hammond GP (2011) Greenhouse gas reporting for biofuels: a comparison between the RED, RTFO and PAS2050 methodologies. Energy Policy 39(10):5950–5960
Williams PRD, Inman D, Aden A, Heath GA (2009) Environmental and sustainability factors associated with next-generation biofuels in the US: what do we really know? Environ Sci Technol 43(13):4763–4775

Xu L, Weathers PJ, Xiong XR, Liu CZ (2009) Microalgal bioreactors: challenges and opportunities. Eng Life Sci 9(3):178–189. doi:10.1002/elsc.200800111

Yang J, Xu M, Zhang X, Hu Q, Sommerfeld M, Chen Y (2011) Life-cycle analysis on biodiesel production from microalgae: water footprint and nutrients balance. Bioresour Technol 102(1):159–165. doi:10.1016/j.biortech.2010.07.017

Yazan DM, Garavelli AC, Petruzzelli AM, Albino V (2011) The effect of spatial variables on the economic and environmental performance of bioenergy production chains. Int J Prod Econ 131(1):224–233. doi:10.1016/j.ijpe.2010.07.017

You FQ, Tao L, Graziano DJ, Snyder SW (2012) Optimal design of sustainable cellulosic biofuel supply chains: multiobjective optimization coupled with life cycle assessment and input-output analysis. AIChE J 58(4):1157–1180. doi:10.1002/aic.12637

Chapter 19
The Principle and Applications of Bioelectrochemical Systems

Zhiyong (Jason) Ren

Abstract Bioelectrochemical system (BES) is a unique technology that uses microorganisms to covert the chemical energy stored in biodegradable materials to direct electric current. Compared to traditional chemical and environmental technologies, BES offers a flexible platform for both oxidation and reduction reaction oriented processes, because any biodegradable substrate, especially waste materials, can be oxidized in the anode chamber, and the generated current can be directly harvested as electricity or used to produce value-added chemicals, desalinate salt water, and remediate contaminants. This chapter reviews the microbiological and technological principles of the BES technology and discusses the different functions and recent developments of systems.

19.1 Introduction

19.1.1 Biomass Energy Plays a Vital Role to the Future of Alternative Fuels

Worldwide concerns on energy depletion, environmental pollution, and climate change are driving the search and development of alternative energy sources for fossil fuels. The replacement of fossil fuels requires the use of a myriad of energy sources and carriers that are renewable and clean and suited to meet different end uses. Biomass-based bioenergy is particularly attractive in this context because of its relatively low cost, plentiful supply, and environmentally benign production.

Z. (Jason) Ren (✉)
Department of Civil Engineering, University of Colorado Denver, Denver, CO 80204, USA
e-mail: zhiyong.ren@ucdenver.edu

V. K. Gupta and M. G. Tuohy (eds.), *Biofuel Technologies*,
DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-34519-7_19, © Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2013

Biomass energy is a captured form of solar energy that is stored in biomass, such as those from agricultural and forestry resources, municipal solid waste, and the dissolved or suspended organic matter in wastewater. The great abundance and availability make biomass the primary resource for renewable energy production. The US Departments of Agriculture and Energy estimated the annual availability of 1.3 billion dry tons of biomass feedstock in the US, which could displace 30 % or more of the country's present petroleum consumption (Perlack et al. 2005). The US Energy Information Administration estimated that the biomass share of the US renewable energy consumption was 53 % in 2010, which was largely contributed by the increased amount of biofuel production (Fig. 19.1). The Energy Independence and Security Act requires at least 10 % annual increase in alternative fuel consumption till 2015 (US Congress 2007). Biomass also represents 66 % of the renewable energy capability in the European Union in 2007, which is also expected to expand in the next decade (Europe Energy Portal 2012).

Depending on the end-use application, different biomass resources have to be converted to a variety of energy carriers such as ethanol (Mielenz 2001), butanol (Green 2011), biodiesel (Powlson et al. 2005), hydrogen (Ni et al. 2006; Ren et al. 2007a), and biogas (O'Sullivan et al. 2005), etc. Only recently, this versatility has been extended to direct energy or chemical production through microbial electrosynthesis in bioelectrochemical systems (BESs) (Ren et al. 2007b; Rismani-Yazdi et al. 2007).

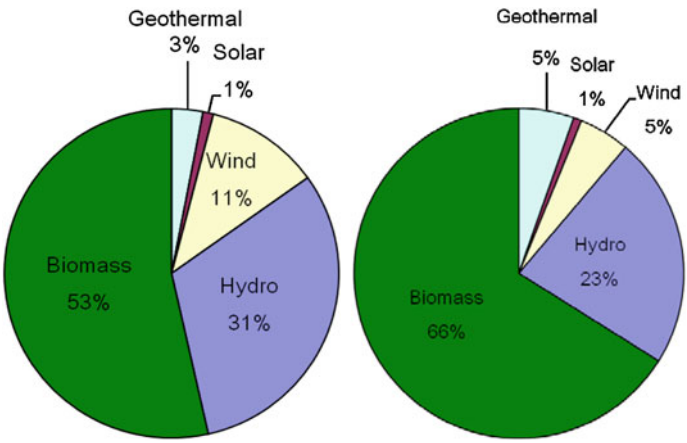


Fig. 19.1 Renewable energy source in (**a**) the United States (2010), and (**b**) the European Union (2007)

19.1.2 BES is a Unique Technology for Biofuel and Biochemical Industry

BES is a unique technology capable of converting the chemical energy stored in biodegradable materials to direct electric current using living microorganisms. This phenomenon was first reported a century ago in 1911, when Potter found that *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* was able to generate a voltage of 0.3–0.5 V from glucose using a platinum electrode (Potter 1911). The research and development of this concept had been stagnant till the turn of the century, as only a handful of articles were published before 2001, but since 2002, the research productivity has experienced an exponential growth, resulting in more than 2,000 articles in the past decade (Fig. 19.2).

The recent blossom of BES research and development was largely due to its great potential and versatility. While many existing technologies have only one or two functions, the BES platform has more than a dozen functions that have been discovered. BESs use electrochemically active bacteria (EAB) to catalyze the oxidization of organic and inorganic electron donors in the anode chamber and deliver electrons to the anode. The electrons can be captured directly for electricity generation (Bond et al. 2002; Liu et al. 2005a) or supplemented by external power input for producing value-added chemicals, such as H_2, peroxide, and organics (Logan et al. 2008; Luo et al. 2011; Nevin et al. 2010; Rozendal et al. 2009). The electrons can also be used in the cathode chamber to remediate contaminants such as uranium, chlorinated solvents, and perchlorate (Aulenta et al. 2008; Butler et al. 2010; Gregory and Lovley 2005). The potential across the electrodes can also drive water desalination (Cao et al. 2009; Jacobson et al. 2011; Kim and Logan 2011b; Luo et al. 2011). Figure 19.3 shows the schematic of a BES reactor, with anode conducting substrate oxidation reaction and cathode performing reduction reaction. Based on the different functions, the BES platform has been specified into many different names that researchers name them MXCs, where X stands for the

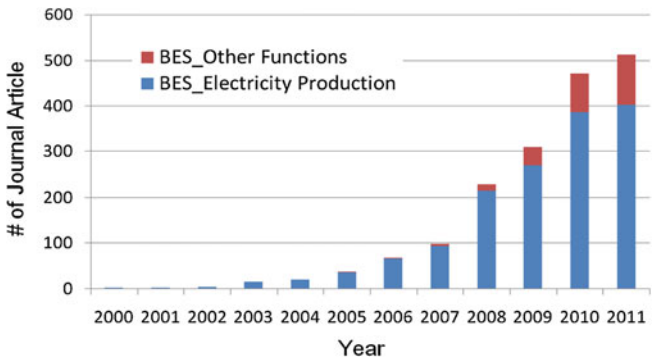


Fig. 19.2 The number of published journal articles on BES or microbial fuel cells (*Source* Scopus/Google Scholar, March 2012)

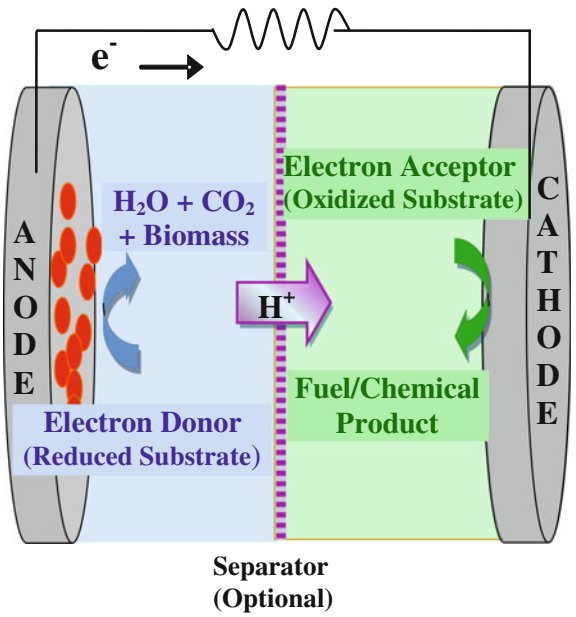


Fig. 19.3 Schematic of a BES reactor demonstrating general oxidation reaction in the anode chamber and reduction reaction in the cathode chamber

different applications (Harnisch and Schroder 2010; Torres et al. 2010). Table 19.1 summarizes the main Xs to demonstrate the versatility of this platform technology.

19.2 Extracellular Electron Transfer by EAB

A BES consists of at least an anode and/or a cathode, where microorganisms function as biocatalysts. The uniqueness of BES is not only related to the special extracellular electron transfer (EET) to solid electron acceptors (anodes) or from solid electron donors (cathodes), but also comes from how different functional groups interact with each other and form a robust microbial ecological structure. On the anode side, EABs oxidize biodegradable substrates and reduce the anode as insoluble electron acceptor. On the cathode side, EABs may accept electrons from the solid cathode and reduce external electron acceptors, such as O_2, NO_3^-, and CO_2, etc. There have been several terms for microorganisms capable of interacting with electrodes, especially for anode oxidizers, such as exoelectrogens (Logan 2009), electricigens (Lovley 2006), anodophiles (Park and Zeikus 2003), anode-respiring bacteria (Torres et al. 2009), and EAB (Chang et al. 2006). Here, we use EAB to represent both anode-reducing bacteria and cathode-oxidizing bacteria.

Table 19.1 Summary of main types of BES processes

Main type of BES	Electron donor for anode oxidization	Electron acceptor for cathode reduction	Products	References demonstrated term
Microbial fuel cell (MFC)	Any biodegradable material	O_2, $K_3Fe(CN)_6$, other oxidants	Electricity	Kim et al. (1999), Tanaka et al. (1983)
Microbial electrolysis cell (MEC)	Any biodegradable material	H^+,CO_2, organics	H_2, H_2O_2, CH_4, NaOH, Struvite	Cheng et al. (2009), Cusick and Logan (2012), Liu et al. (2005b), Rabaey et al. (2010), Rozendal et al. (2009)
Microbial chemical cell (MCC)	Any biodegradable material	CO_2, organics	Organics	Nevin et al. (2010), Steinbusch et al. (2010)
Microbial remediation cell (MRC)	Any biodegradable material	Any biodegradable oxidant	Reduced/non-toxic chemicals	Butler et al. (2010), Morris et al. (2009)
Microbial desalination cell (MDC)	Any biodegradable material	O_2, $K_3Fe(CN)_6$, other oxidants	Desalinated water	Cao et al. (2009), Jacobson et al. (2011), Kim and Logan (2011a), Luo et al. (2011)

19.2.1 Drawing Electrons from EAB to the BES Anode

19.2.1.1 EET by Pure Culture EABs

The microbial EET to external insoluble electron acceptors, such as metal oxides have been studied for many years, but how EABs interact with the anode electrode is still in the early stage of understanding. It is hypothesized that bacteria can either transfer electrons through immobilized structures or using mobile electron shuttles. Some exoelectrogens including *Geobacter* and *Shewanella* species establish a direct contact strategy for efficient electron transfer. Take *Geobacter sulfurreducens* as an example, studies showed that this model EAB strain requires a series of periplasmic and outer membrane *c-type* cytochromes to directly transfer electrons from inner membrane to the outer cell surface (Lovley 2006; Marsili et al. 2010). But these proteins are not always sufficient, because it also produced pilus-like appendages, called nanowires for direct attachment (Reguera et al. 2005). Microarray analysis of gene expression and gene deletion studies suggests that the electrically conductive pili and the *c-type* cytochrome OmcZ are essential for optimal current production, with the pili serving for long-range cell-to-cell electron conduction and OmcZ functioning as an 'electrochemical gate' to promote electron transfer onto the electrode (Fig. 19.4, left) (Logan 2009; Lovley 2011; Summers et al. 2010).

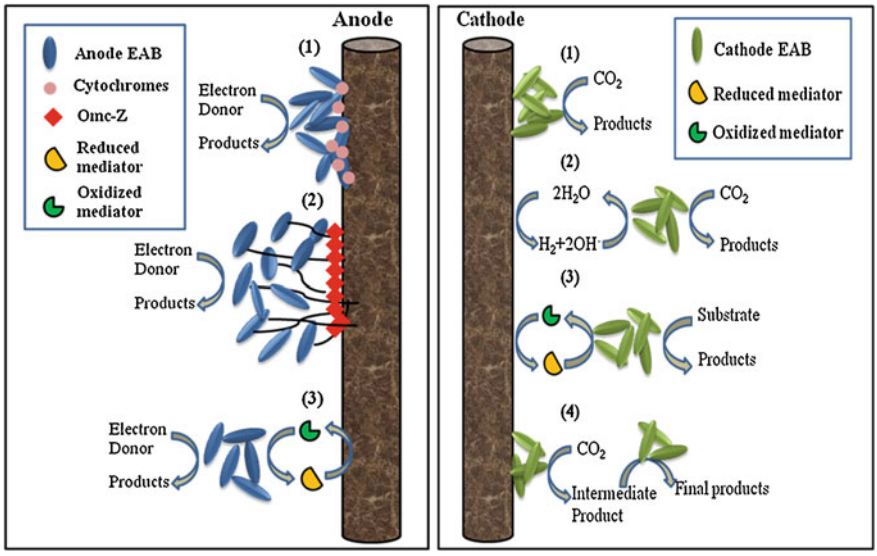


Fig. 19.4 *Left* Anode EET mechanisms (*1*) direct contact through cytochromes; (*2*) direct transfer through nanowires; (*3*) indirect transfer through mediators; *Right* cathode EET mechanisms (*1*) direct contact with the electrode; (*2*) through H_2 conversion; (*3*) through mediators; (*4*) through other intermediate products

Compared to *Geobacter* species, which are known to conduct direct EET to the anode, *Shewanella* species were reported to make both direct electrode contact through conductive filaments and indirect electron transfer via mediators, such as riboflavin or flavin ademine mononucleotide (FMN) (Gorby et al. 2006; Marsili et al. 2008; von Canstein et al. 2008). *Shewanella oneidensis,* another model EAB, has been reported to produce conductive nanowires, but those pili are longer and arrayed in bundles (Bretschger et al. 2007; Gorby et al. 2006). The electron transfer by *S. oneidensis* from the periplasm to the electrode involves a series of out-surface *c-type* cytochromes, in which *MtrC* plays a key role, because it is located on the outside of the membrane and capable of donating electrons in a broad potential range. Studies also suggest that the cytochromes may also be responsible for the reduction of flavins, which are released from the cell and serve as an electron shuttle for Fe(III) and electrode reduction (Biffinger et al. 2009; Marsili et al. 2008).

Compared to direct EET conducted by a few species of bacteria, many other bacteria can produce and use soluble redox mediators or electron shuttles, which transport the electrons from the cell to the electrode. For example, *Pseudomonas* species can produce phenazines as extracellular electron shuttles (Rabaey et al. 2005), and many other bacteria can use externally provided mediators, such as neutral red, anthraquinone-2,6-disulphonate (AQDS), and some humics (Milliken and May 2007; Park and Zeikus 2000). However, since the production and utilization of shuttles require a lot of energy, it has been considered less favorable than direct electron transfer.

19.2.1.2 Microbial Consortiums for Converting Complex Substrates

With tremendous electron donor versatility, BESs have been used to convert many different substrates into energy and chemicals. Besides simple sugars and derivatives, many complex waste materials have also been utilized, such as different wastewaters, starch, protein, even cellulose, and landfill leachates (Pant et al. 2010). Results from different studies also reveal a very broad diversity of the microbial community. Take MFC for electricity production as an example, while reactors using marine sediments showed the enrichment of *Deltaproteobacteria* of the family *Geobacteraceae* (Bond et al. 2002), another MFC inoculated with marine sediments showed the community was dominated by *Gammaproteobacteria* with the main species of *S. affinis* (Logan et al. 2005). Inoculation of an MFC with river water led to the enrichment of *Betaproteobacteria*, while inoculation with wastewater resulted in the dominance of *Alphaproteobacteria* (Phung et al. 2004). *Geobacter, Shewanella, Pseudomonas*, and *Rhodoferax* are the main isolates whose electrochemical activities have been widely studied. Although these bacteria have been found to develop various strategies to conduct EET, all of them can only use easily degraded organic substrates, such as glucose, acetate, or lactate as electron donors. Experiments indicated that electrons derived from the oxidation of organic matter are almost fully recovered as electricity in these pure culture

MFCs, showing 80–96 % coulombic efficiency (CE) (Bond and Lovley 2003; Chaudhuri and Lovley 2003). However, they hardly can adapt to the natural environment efficiently, because the substrates they need are not prevalent naturally and have to be produced by other metabolisms such as fermentation. On the other hand, even though some fermentative bacteria such as *Clostridium butyricum* have been isolated from MFCs, they cannot be a strategy for efficient power production either, because most of the electrons remain in fermentation products that do not readily react with electrodes without anaerobic respiration (Park et al. 2002). Although it is possible that there are bacteria that can completely oxidize complex polysaccharides such as cellulose or starch to carbon dioxide and release electrons to electrodes, they cannot compete with the consortium of fermenters and acid oxidizing, electricity producing bacteria owing to thermodynamic considerations (Rezaei et al. 2009). The thermodynamic rationale is not the amount of energy available per mole of electron donor metabolized, but rather is the amount of energy released per electron transferred (Mcinerney and Beaty 1988). This is consistent with the finding that the majority of glucose was fermented in Fe(III)-reducing sediments instead of being directly oxidized to CO_2 with Fe(III) oxide as the electron acceptor (Lovley and Phillips 1989).

Therefore, the best strategy to extract electrons from complex organic compounds, including those found in most wastes and biomass, requires the cooperation of a consortium of polymer degrading fermentative bacteria and electrochemically active microorganisms. The fermenters (such as *Clostridium* spp.) break down the complex organic matter such as cellulose, starch, and proteins into fermentable sugars and amino acids and further into fatty acids and solvents, then the EABs (such as *Geobacter* spp.) oxidize the fermentation products to carbon dioxide, with the anode serving as the electron acceptor (Freguia et al. 2008; Parameswaran et al. 2009; Ren et al. 2007b, 2008). Studies also found that positive syntrophic interactions between homo acetogens and EABs led to higher CE when ethanol was used as the electron donor, and when competitive electron consumption process, such as methanogenesis, was suppressed (Parameswaran et al. 2009, 2010).

The biofilm on a BES anode is different from conventional biofilm systems, because unlike many systems where the biofilm tends to grow thicker in order to reach to electron donor (e.g. organics) and acceptor (i.e. O_2) in the bulk fluid, the BES anode biofilm has to keep a balance in thickness, because the bacteria need exposure to both bulk solution for electron donors and the anode for efficient electron release. The viability and stability of anode biofilm catalysts, therefore, directly determine system performance. Recent findings show that there is a time-scale discrepancy between MFC electrochemical response and anode biocatalyst variation. A time-course characterization shows that power output from MFCs could stabilize within several days, but the anode biofilms continued evolving during the 7-month long operation. Both biofilm architecture and community composition shifted dramatically, from rod-shaped, dispersed *Geobacter* species to the emergence of filamentous like *Pseudomonas* species (Ren et al. 2011a). Other studies also found similar differences by operating MFCs under different anode

potentials or external resistors, because the potential regulates the availability of the MFC anode as the electron acceptor for microbial electron transfers, and therefore affects the biocatalyst activity and electrochemical performance (Ren et al. 2011b; Torres et al. 2009).

19.2.2 Feeding Electrons from BES Cathode into Microorganisms

Whereas findings on EET from bacteria to the anode electrode become abundant, the information about the reverse process—transferring electrons from the cathode into microbes—is very limited. The ability of microorganisms to accept electrons from electrodes as an electron donor offers great potentials in microbial electrosynthesis. While renewable and cost-effective electricity can be derived from solar, wind, or waste materials, the electrons can be microbially converted into value-added energy and chemical products. However, little is known about the mechanistic information on the electron transfer and the cathodic communities involved in the process (Lovley and Nevin 2011; Rabaey and Rozendal 2010; Rosenbaum et al. 2011).

There have been several hypothesized pathways that assess how bacterial cells accept electrons from the electrodes. Figure 19.4 (right) shows the four mechanisms discussed in a recent review article (Rabaey and Rozendal 2010). The most attractive way of achieving EET from cathodes is through direct contact, which means that single or multiple layers of biofilm attach on the cathode surface and conduct direct catalysis. This direct approach decreases overpotentials and avoided expensive electron mediators, and therefore more efficient in electron transfer. Several studies demonstrated that the cathodic current supply for respiration can be used in reducing many contaminants, such as nitrate (Clauwaert et al. 2007), perchlorate (Butler et al. 2010), chlorinated solvents (Aulenta et al. 2008), and uranium (Gregory and Lovley 2005). Recently, research was focusing on using the cathode for chemical production, and several studies have demonstrated the production of acetate, methane, ethanol, and other organic chemicals. The details can be found in Sect. 19.4.3. The main challenge may come from the slow mass transfer within biofilm, because it may limit the substrate and product movement in and out of the biofilm, and the potential accumulation of acid or base products as well as alcohols may decrease production rate and inhibit biofilm growth (Rabaey et al. 2011).

The indirect approach of cathodic EET is through soluble or miscible electron mediators, which often involves in both planktonic cells and attached biofilms. Similar as electron shuttles used for anode EET, mediators such as neutral red, AQDS, and methyl viologen (MV) can provide an conduit for electrons to enter into microbial cells (Rabaey and Rozendal 2010). Such mediated electron transfer can be facilitated by increasing the shuttle concentration and can be regulated

based on the shuttle middle point potential. The shuttles can also be reused many times in closed or cycled reactors systems. However, the problems of using electron shuttles come from their potential toxicity to microorganisms and instability under different environmental conditions, such as pH, temperature, and salinity. It is also difficult to use the mediators in continuous flow systems due to the loss of such molecules.

19.3 Parameters in Evaluating BES Performance

19.3.1 Electrode Potential and Power Output

All BES processes share a same principle—EAB in the anode chamber oxidize biodegradable substrates and generate electron flow (i.e. current) to reduce the electron acceptors in the cathode chamber. Therefore, the most direct way to evaluate the performance of a BES is the measurement of circuit voltage (V). The current (I) passing through an external resistance (R_{ext}) can be measured using a current meter, or simply calculated based on the Ohm's law:

$$I = \frac{V}{R_{ext}} \tag{19.1}$$

The V represents the direct output of a reactor, and it can also be describes as:

$$V = OCV - IR_{int} \tag{19.2}$$

where OCV is the open circuit voltage of the reactor, and R_{int} is the overall internal resistance. Generally, R_{int} represents the total current-related resistance loss, which is the sum of system ohmic resistance caused by the resistance of the electrodes and electrolyte, the activation loss caused by biochemical reactions on the electrode surface, and the charge transfer resistance caused by the limitation of mass transfer and concentration polarization (Logan et al. 2006). R_{int} is considered to connect with R_{ext} in series. The power density (P) from an MFC is inversely proportional to the total system resistance squared according to:

$$P = \frac{V^2 R_{ext}}{(R_{int} + R_{ext})^2} \tag{19.3}$$

The traditional approach of reporting power density from a BES or MFC reactor was to operate the reactor with a static R_{ext} or applied potential then transiently obtaining polarization data by changing the R_{ext} at a 5–30 min interval or conduct a voltammetry sweep (Logan et al. 2006; Lyon et al. 2010; Ren et al. 2011b). Figure 19.5 shows typical polarization and power density curves obtained from a lab scale MFC reactor, and it shows that the MFC voltage is practically inversely proportional to the output current, and there exists a pair of voltage and

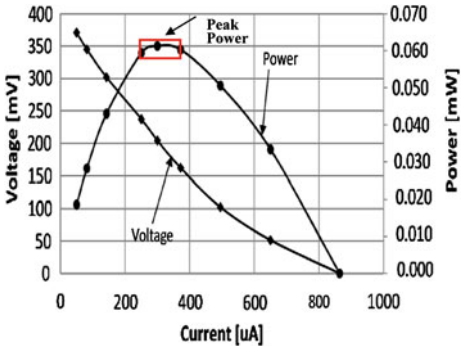


Fig. 19.5 Polarization curve and power density curve obtained from a lab scale microbial fuel cell reactor

current that delivers the maximum power when R_{ext} is equal to R_{int} (Pinto et al. 2011; Ren et al. 2011b).

Compared to other alternative energy systems, BES/MFC is a small power system due to its thermodynamic limitation. The MFC anode potential is generally around −0.3 V (versus Normal Hydrogen Electrode, NHE), which is set by the respiratory enzymes of bacteria that metabolize electron donors. Take acetate (5 mM, pH = 7) as an example:

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{Anode: } 2\ HCO_3^- + 9\ H^+ + 8\ e^- \rightarrow CH_3COO^- + 4\ H_2O \\ &OCP_{anode} = -0.296\,V \end{aligned} \tag{19.4}$$

The cathode potential is around +0.8 V when oxygen is used as the terminal electron acceptor (Logan et al. 2006; Meehan et al. 2011).

$$\text{Cathode: } O_2 + 4\ H^+ + 4\ e^- \rightarrow 2\ H_2O \quad OCP_{cathode} = +0.80\,V \tag{19.5}$$

Such characteristics determine that the voltage of an air–cathode MFC is generally less than 0.8 V and the current output is usually in the range of a few mA due to overpotential and other losses. Other chemical oxidants, such as ferricyanide or permanganate could provide a higher cathode potential, but air cathodes have been widely adopted in MFCs because it is free and sustainable (Logan 2008; Ren et al. 2007b). Higher power generation using single or multiple MFCs can be achieved by applying electronic harvesting systems and developing larger stack systems. (Aelterman et al. 2006; Dewan et al. 2008; Park and Ren 2012; Wang et al. 2012).

Power density has been a key parameter to demonstrate the performance of a reactor. Traditionally, the power output is normalized to projected electrode area, defined as surface power density, so it is possible to compare the performance of different systems. However, such parameter sometimes may not represent a fair comparison when different systems use different electrode configurations and materials. For example, when replacing carbon cloth ($\sim$100 m^2/m^3) anode with high surface area brush anode ($\sim$9,600 m^2/m^3), the normalized cathode power density increased from 0.6 to 2.4 W/m^2, but the normalized anode power density did not change that much (Logan et al. 2007). Therefore, more and more studies

begin to use volumetric power density, which is the power output normalized by the reactor volume, because it represents the reactor overall power output and aligns with reactor size and water treatment capability. In general, the higher the electrode density, the better the reported volumetric power density, but very high electrode surface areas may pose another challenge of clogging when actual wastewater is used as the substrate.

19.3.2 Current Density and Chemical Production Rate

For BESs that target for chemical production and desalination, current density is considered more important than power density. The current density reflects the substrate oxidation rate and directly correlates with the production of chemicals. The more and faster the electrons flow from the substrate to the electrode, the more and faster chemicals can be synthesized on the cathode. For example, hydrogen gas production in microbial electrolysis cells (MECs) can be expressed as a direct function of the volumetric current density. The maximum volumetric H_2 production rate Q_{max} (m^3H_2/m^3d), is directly proportional to the current density (Logan et al. 2008):

$$Q_{\max} = \frac{I_v(\mathrm{A/m^3})r_{\mathrm{cat}}[(1C/s)A](0.5\mathrm{molH_2/mol})(86400\mathrm{s/d})}{F(9.65\times10^4\mathrm{C/mol})c_g(\mathrm{molH_2/L})(10^3\mathrm{L/m^3})} = \frac{43.2\,I_v\,r_{\mathrm{cat}}}{Fc_g(T)} \quad (19.6)$$

where I_v (A/m^3) is current density and averaged over a specified time period, c_g (mol/L) is the molar density of gas at a standard temperature (298.15 K) and standard pressure (1 bar), and 43.2 results from the given units. Thus, when hydrogen is captured efficiently, increasing the H_2 production rate depends solely on increasing current. MEC H_2 production rates have reached 3.12 m^3 H_2/m^3 d with an applied voltage of 0.8 V, and a maximum of $I_v = 186$ A/m^3 at $V = 0.6$ V was reported (Logan et al. 2008).

Microbial desalination cell (MDC) is a newly developed BES process, which inserts a third desalination chamber in the middle of the anode and cathode chamber and uses the electric potential to drive desalination (Cao et al. 2009). Detailed description and applications of MDCs are provided in Sect. 19.4.4. Studies show MDCs removed less total dissolved solid (TDS) at high power output (near peak point in the power density curve, 42.3 % TDS removal, 70 mA, 15.6 W/m^3) than at high current generation mode (near far right point in the power density curve, 60.1 % TDS removal, 143 mA, 1.1 W/m^3), but the high power operation produced more electricity with high energy efficiency (EE) (Jacobson et al. 2011). This suggests that the MDC operation mode maybe adjusted based on the treatment goals, with high power mode for organic removal and power generation under low salinity condition, which high current mode for more efficient desalination.

19.3.3 CE and EE

19.3.3.1 CE and Coulombic Recovery

CE is a common measure that represents the fraction of electrons removed from the electron donor that are recovered as current through the external circuit. Coulombic recovery (CR) represents the electrons recovered based on the total electron donor input. CE can be calculated as a ratio of total recovered coulombs (C_p) obtained by integrating the current over time to the theoretical coulombs (C_t) that can be produced from the removed substrate. For MFCs operated in batch mode, CE can be calculated as (Logan et al. 2006):

$$\mathrm{CE} = \frac{\int_0^t \mathrm{I}\mathrm{d}t}{\mathrm{F}bv\Delta C} \tag{19.7}$$

where F is Faraday's constant (96,485 C/mol), b is the number of electrons produced per mole of substrate ($b = 24$ for glucose, $b = 8$ for acetate), v is the volume of anolyte (L), and ΔC is the concentration difference of the substrate (mol/L) from time 0 to t.

For continuous flow reactor at steady-state condition, the current output is assumed constant during certain of time period, so the CE can be simplified into:

$$\mathrm{CE} = \frac{I}{\mathrm{F}bQ\Delta C} \tag{19.8}$$

where Q is the anolyte flow rate (L/s) and ΔC is the concentration difference between the influent and effluent (mol/L).

19.3.3.2 EE

EE is a measure that represents the energy recovered from BESs as compared to the theoretical heat energy embedded in the removed substrate. The form of recovered energy can be electricity, H_2, and other chemicals, depending on the function of the BES reactor. For microbial fuel cells, the EE is the ratio between the power produced and the combustion energy of the consumed substrates as:

$$\mathrm{EE} = \frac{\int_0^t VI\mathrm{d}t}{\Delta H\Delta CQ} \tag{19.9}$$

where ΔH is the combustion energy of the substrate (J/mol).

For chemical production such as H_2 generation in MECs, an external voltage is generally applied to overcome the thermodynamic limitations. In this case, the EE can be calculated based on the energy content of the product produced (H_2), compared to the energy input in the consumed substrate as well as the energy input from the external power source.

19.4 Applications of BES Technology

Compared to traditional chemical and environmental processes, which generally has one function, BESs offer a great platform technology, because it provides both oxidation and reduction approaches for chemical and energy production, waste treatment, contaminant remediation, and water purification. On the anode side, BESs can theoretically oxidize any biodegradable substrate and extract electrons to the anode. In addition to simple sugars and derivatives, many complex waste materials have been utilized such as different wastewater, biomass, landfill leachate, petroleum hydrocarbon, and marine sediments (Pant et al. 2010). On the cathode side, any reduction reaction-based chemical production can be achieved, including both organic synthesis and inorganic production (Pant et al. 2012), and any electron acceptor type of contaminants can potentially be reduced using the electrons supplied from the cathode (Lovley 2011; Rosenbaum et al. 2011). Here, we discuss a few application areas that BES holds great potentials for commercialization.

19.4.1 Electricity Production and Waste Treatment

The main advantage of using BESs in wastewater treatment is its potential to convert traditional energy intensive treatment processes into energy gaining processes while still achieving treatment objectives. Current wastewater treatment processes consume high amount of energy for aeration and sludge treatment. Wastewater treatment accounts for about 3 % of the US electrical energy load, which is approximately 110 terawatt hours per year, or equivalent to 9.6 million households' annual electricity use. Meanwhile, the energy content embedded in wastewater is estimated about 2–4 times the energy used for its treatment, so it is possible to make wastewater treatment self sufficient if full-scale BES can be integrated in wastewater treatment plants (McCarty et al. 2011).

Researchers have demonstrated that BESs can produce energy from almost all kinds of waste streams, including municipal, brewery, food processing, paper recycling, agricultural, and refinery wastewater (Pant et al. 2010). The power output is dependent on the biodegradability of the substrate, conversion efficiency, and loading rate. Higher power was usually achieved from simple substrates, while much lower electricity was found from recalcitrant wastes. For example, by using a 4 cm^3, air–cathode reactor and a sludge inoculum, the maximum power density achieved from acetate, brewery wastewater, and swine wastewater was 766, 205, and 225 W/m^2 (projected anode area), respectively (Cheng et al. 2006; Feng et al. 2008; Min et al. 2005). The advantages of using BESs to upgrade or replace current biological treatment units, such as aeration basin or trickling filter, may come from the following aspects:

1. *The elimination of aeration.* For traditional activated sludge system, aeration can amount to 45–75 % of plant energy costs, so the conservation of aeration tank to BES units can significantly save energy cost. Lab-scale comparisons on energy consumption between an aeration reactor and a BES using raw wastewater samples showed that both reactors were able to reduce COD from ~1,100 to ~30 mg/L in batch or continuous operations. However, the aeration reactor used an average 2.1 kWh/m^3 (wastewater) in electricity, while the MFC did not use any aeration energy and produced a maximum 168 W/m^3 (wastewater) in power density (Huggins et al. 2012). Other studies showed that a maximum 65 W/m^3 (reactor) of power density could be achieved with an organic loading of 0.6–1.5 kg COD/m^3/day (Pant et al. 2010).
2. *The production of useful products*. As demonstrated above, BESs can produce direct electricity during treatment process. With simple modifications, other value-added products, such as H_2, CH_4, caustic soda, peroxide, or organic chemicals can be produced. Figure 19.6 shows two studies on either directly adding MFC units to aeration tanks for electricity production or building new MFC systems to treat brewery wastewater and produce caustic soda for onsite disinfection.
3. *Reduced solids production.* The treatment and disposal of sludge amount up to 60 % of the total operation cost of a treatment plant. Because MFC is a biofilm based system, the cell yield of electrochemical active bacteria (0.07–0.16 gVSS/gCOD) was much less than the activated sludge (0.35–0.45 gVSS/gCOD), so the MFC process reduces sludge production by 50–70 % (Logan 2008). Many studies discussed that by converting aeration basin into MFC, second clarifiers may be reduced in size, converted to solid contact basin, or even eliminated.
4. *Nutrient removal.* Nutrient removal has become more critical to the treatment objectives of most plants. Compared to organic removal research, little work has been done in investigating nutrient removal from MFCs. Lab-scale studies have shown that nitrogen can be removed by up to 83 % due to both microbial nitrogen assimilation and coupled nitrification (anode) and denitrification

Fig. 19.6 **a–b** Converting aeration tank to MFC by submerging electrodes inside (advanced environmental technologies, USA). **c** Tubular MFC system for brewery wastewater treatment and electricity/caustic production (U of Queensland, AU)

(cathode) in single-chamber MFCs. A recently study by Cusick and Logan demonstrated that phosphorus can be recovered as struvite ($MgNH_4PO_4$–$6H_2O$) together with H_2 in MECs (Cusick and Logan 2012).

19.4.2 Value-Added Chemical Production and Carbon Sequestration

19.4.2.1 Chemical Production by MECs

For traditional MFC systems, bacteria on the anode oxidize electron donors and transfers electrons to the anode to produce current. If O_2 is present in the catholyte, the electrons will combine with O_2 and produce H_2O. However, current generation will not be spontaneous if no oxygen is available as the electron acceptor. For MECs, a small voltage can be applied externally to allow hydrogen gas generation at the cathode through the reduction of protons (Fig. 19.7) (Liu et al. 2005b; Logan et al. 2008). Many studies confirmed that the external voltage can be as low as 0.2 V, though in practice 0.6–0.8 V have been used. Despite the additional power input, MECs show great advantage for H_2 production, because the voltage used in MECs is much less than the 1.8–2.0 V used in industrial water electrolysis, and the substrates for MECs can be from renewable and waste materials. Compared to fermentative H_2 production, which has a yield limitation of 4 mol H_2/mol glucose, the hydrogen yield from MECs can reach up to 11 mol H_2/

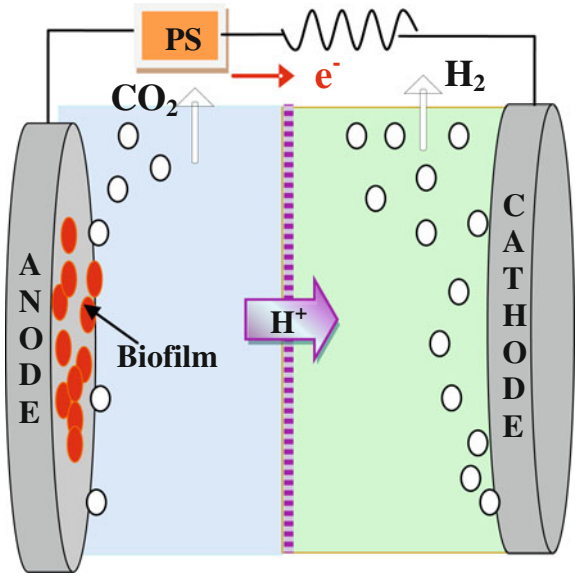


Fig. 19.7 Schematic of a MEC for H_2 production. An external power source (PS) is shown to provide additional voltage for H_2 evolution in the cathode chamber

mol glucose with a production rate of more than 1 $m^3/d/m^3$ reactor (Cheng and Logan 2007). Recently, a new process called microbial reverse-electrodialysis electrolysis cell (MREC) eliminated the requirement of external power for H_2 evolution by combining two driving forces in one system—a thermodynamically favorable oxidation of organic matter by EABs on the anode and the energy derived from the salinity gradient between seawater and river water (Kim and Logan 2011a).

By using similar strategies in MECs, many inorganic chemicals have been produced in the cathode chamber. Rozendal et al. investigated hydrogen peroxide generation, and they found at an applied voltage of 0.5 V, a lab-scale MEC produced 1.9 ± 0.2 kg H_2O_2/m^3/day at a concentration of 0.13 ± 0.01 wt % and an overall efficiency of 83.1 ± 4.8 % (Rozendal et al. 2009). The same group later used a similar approach to produce alkaline solutions as disinfectants for onsite use. They found that by using acetate as the electron donor in the anode, the MEC generated up to 1.05 A in current at 1.77 V applied voltage, which allowed for the production of caustic to 3.4 wt % (Rabaey et al. 2010).

19.4.2.2 Chemical Production and Carbon Sequestration Through Microbial Electrosynthesis

Microbial electrosynthesis is an emerging direction in BES research and development. The success of this process will have the potential to address the storage and distribution problems associated with many renewable energy forms, such as solar, wind, and natural gas, because microorganisms can use the electrons delivered by the electrode to reduce carbon dioxide into a variety of organic compounds, especially those with multiple carbons that are precursors for desirable value-added chemicals or liquid transportation fuels (Lovley and Nevin 2011; Rabaey et al. 2011).

As a new direction in BES research that was only introduced in 2010, there have been limited findings in microbial electrosynthesis. One of the first studies demonstrated such possibility is by Nevin et al., who showed that biofilms of *Sporomusa ovata* growing on graphite cathode surfaces consumed electrons with the reduction of carbon dioxide to acetate and small amounts of 2-oxobutyrate. Electrons appearing in these products accounted for over 85 % of the electrons consumed (Nevin et al. 2010). Traditionally, acetogenic bacteria can reduce carbon dioxide to acetate and other multicarbon extracellular products with hydrogen as the electron donor, and in an attempt of replacing hydrogen with electrode as the donor, the same research group found many acetogenic bacteria, such as *C. ljungdahlii, C. aceticum, S. sphaeroides,* and *Moorella thermoacetica* were all able to consume electrical current and produce organic acids. In general, acetate was the primary product, but 2-oxobutyrate and formate were also formed (Nevin et al. 2011). Studies also showed that methanogenic microorganisms were able to reduce carbon dioxide to methane in the BES cathode chamber (Cheng et al. 2009), and ethanol can be produced by reducing acetate at the cathode, but some processes

required the addition of mediators, such as MV (Steinbusch et al. 2010). Efforts on genetically engineering microorganisms for facilitated electron update and organic synthesis are underway, and the elucidation of the mechanisms for electron transfer from electrodes to microorganisms will greatly help the understanding and development of the technology (Lovley and Nevin 2011; Rabaey et al. 2011).

19.4.3 Environmental Remediation

BESs offer both oxidation and reduction approaches to remediate underground contaminations. Unlike wastewater treatment or chemical production, the BES used in remediation can be a single or an array of electrodes without using enclosed containers. The electrodes serve as inexhaustible electron acceptors/donors to stimulate and enhance microorganisms to simultaneously degrade biodegradable pollutants and, under circumstance of enhanced bio-oxidation, produce electricity. Another advantage of BES for remediation is that this technique does not require any chemical addition or energy input, and the produced current can potentially power wireless sensors and serve as a real-time bioremediation indicator.

Petroleum hydrocarbons, especially BTEX compounds (benzene, toluene, ethylbenzenes, and xylenes) have caused widespread groundwater and soil contamination associated with fuel spills and leaking from underground storage tanks (EPA 2004). Traditional remediation practice either heavily relies on energy-intensive or cost-intensive technologies such as thermal extraction, soil vapor extraction, bioventing, or expensive chemical oxidation (ChemOx) (Soares et al. 2010). Though bioremediation has been considered as low-cost and environmentally friendly, current in situ bioremediation is often limited by the availability of electron acceptors (e.g. O_2, NO_3^-) in the subsurface environment. By using electrode as a channel linking underground hydrocarbon as the electron donor and upground O_2 as the electron acceptor, studies have shown that the degradation of diesel carbon (C8–C25) was increased by 164 % (from 31 to 82 %) than the open circuit control within 21 days of operation. Another study showed that by converting an existing groundwater monitoring well into a BES and use hydrocarbon as the only available substrate, a BES removed 24 % of hydrocarbon within 66 days, 12 times more than in the control experiment without electrodes (Morris and Jin 2012; Morris et al. 2009). In addition, the BES produced a voltage from 25 to 190 mV, with the maximum power density of 2.2 W/m^3. Similar studies on biodiesel, ethanol, 1,2-dichloroethane, pyridine, and other contaminants were also reported, demonstrating that BES can be a viable approach for petroleum hydrocarbon degradation and energy production (Lovley 2011).

Conversely, oxidative contaminants can be removed using the electrode as the electron donor. However, different from the anode oxidation process which is highly microbial dependent, such remediation can be realized through either direct electrochemical or bioelectrochemical reductions. Chlorinated solvents, such as

trichloroethene (TCE) and perchloroethene (PCE), are almost entirely anthropogenic, and many are highly toxic or carcinogenic. Studies showed that a negatively polarized solid-state electrode could serve as an electron donor, with or without electron shuttles, for the reductive dechlorination of TCE to ethene by a mixed culture of microorganisms (Aulenta et al. 2008). Similar approaches have been used to reduce perchlorate, an emerging contaminant in drinking water due to its damage to thyroid gland (Butler et al. 2010). Other heavy or radioactive metals such as Cr(VI) (Wang et al. 2008), copper (Ter Heijne et al. 2010), and uranium have also been tested in lab-scale experiments. For example, Wang et al. found that Cr(VI) could be completely removed after 150 h operation, with a initial concentration of 100 mg/L (Wang et al. 2008). The maximum power density of this system was 150 mW/m^2. Gregory and Lovley reported that negatively poised electrode can serve as an alternative electron donor for U(VI) reduction by a pure culture of *G. sulfurreducens* and microorganisms in uranium-contaminated sediments (Gregory and Lovley 2005). The advantage of using electrode as opposed to organic electron donor delivery is that U(VI) can be reduced to U(IV), which remains as a stable precipitate on the electrode. When the electrode is pulled from the contaminated sediments, the precipitated uranium can be permanently removed from the subsurface and recovered and reused.

19.4.4 Water Desalination

Water desalination is a recently developed function in BESs. By inserting a pair of ion exchange membranes between the BES anode and cathode chamber to form a middle chamber containing saline water, the MDC utilizes the electric potential generated across the electrodes to drive desalination. Specifically, when bacteria in the anode chamber oxidize biodegradable substrates and produce current and protons, the anions (e.g., Cl^-) in the middle chamber migrate to the anode and the cations (e.g., Na^+) are drawn to the cathode for charge balance. The loss of ionic species from the middle chamber results in water desalination without any external electricity input or higher water pressure (Fig. 19.8) (Cao et al. 2009; Luo et al. 2012b). Desalination can also be achieved by replacing ion exchange membranes by a forward osmosis membrane and withdraw pure water from wastewater to the draw solution (Zhang et al. 2011).

The MDC process carries great potential in desalination systems, because it can either be used as a stand-alone process or serve as a pretreatment for conventional desalination processes such as reverse osmosis (RO) to reduce salt concentration of RO feed, and minimize energy consumption and the membrane fouling potential. Current desalination technologies, such as RO and electrodialysis (ED) are energy and capital intensive. Even the most advanced large-scale seawater RO units require 3–7 kWh/m^3 for water desalination, while conventional multi-stage flash evaporation requires 68 kWh/m^3. In contrast, the MDC system is considered to be an energy gaining process, because it converts the biochemical energy stored in

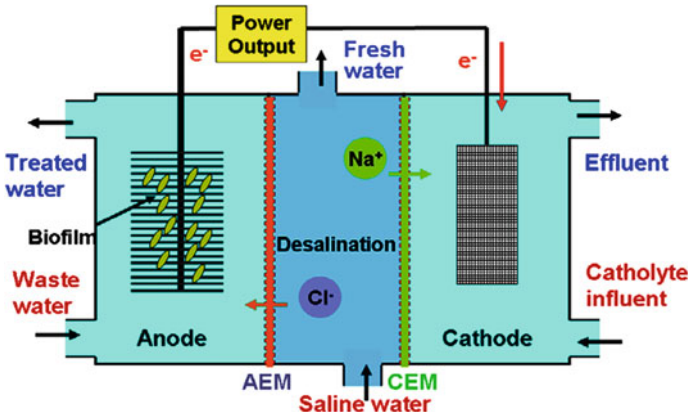


Fig. 19.8 Schematic of a three-chamber BES/MDC reactor for simultaneous wastewater treatment (anode), desalination (*middle chamber*), and energy reduction

wastewater to electricity or hydrogen gas. Lab-scale MDC studies showed that 180–231 % more energy can be recovered as H_2 than the reactor energy input when desalinating 5–20 g/L NaCl solutions (Luo et al. 2011; Mehanna et al. 2010), and a recent study calculated that a liter-scale MDC can produce up to 58 % of the electrical energy required by downstream RO systems (Jacobson et al. 2011).

Current MDC and associate processes focus on reactor stack development to increase desalination efficiency (Chen et al. 2011; Kim and Logan 2011b), and system characterization and operation optimization to improve performance (Luo et al. 2012a). In traditional MDC configurations, although salts get removed from the middle chamber, they become concentrated in the anode and cathode chambers, resulting in an increase of the volume of saline water. This concern becomes more imperative when wastewater is treated as the anolyte. Although the addition of ions (or TDS) increases wastewater conductivity and benefits electricity generation, the increased salinity may affect effluent water quality and prevent subsequent beneficial use of treated wastewater (Luo et al. 2012b). In addition, the AEM between the anode and middle chamber inhibits the free transfer of H^+ accumulated in the anolyte to other chambers, which causes a significant pH drop in the anode chamber and pH increase in the cathode chamber. A recently developed microbial capacitive desalination cell (MCDC) may eliminate the problem completely (Forrestal et al. 2012). The MCDC incorporated the concept of capacitive deionization and uses two cation exchange membrane assemblies to separate the three chambers (Fig. 19.9). Results showed that MCDC's salt removal efficiency was 7–25 times higher than traditional capacitive deionization processes. Moreover, all of the removed ions in the MCDC were adsorbed in the activated carbon double layer capacitors without migrating to the anolyte or catholyte, and the electrically adsorbed ions could be recovered during assembly regeneration. The two cation-exchange membrane based assemblies allow the free transfer of protons across the system, and thus prevented significant pH changes observed in traditional MDCs.

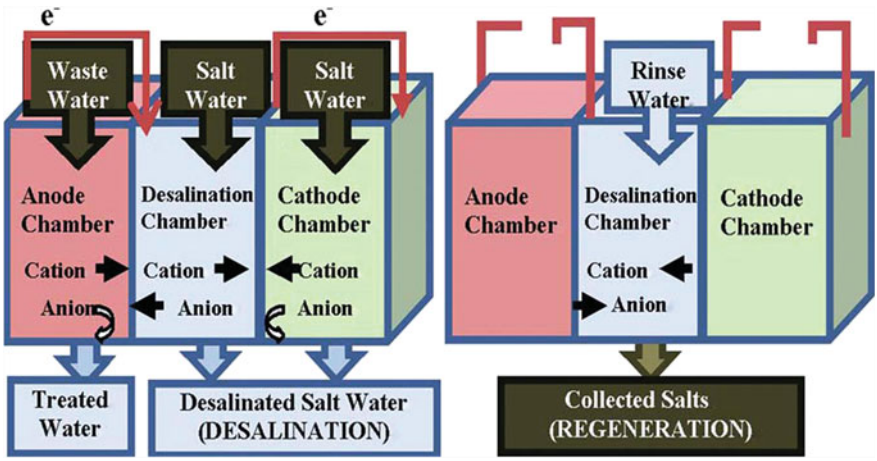


Fig. 19.9 Schematic of an MCDC reactor that addresses salt migration and pH fluctuation problems, allows salt recovery, and improves desalination efficiency by integrating with capacitive deionization

19.5 Conclusion

In less than a decade of research and development, the functionality of BESs has expanded dramatically and the performance has improved exponentially. The power density from MFCs has increased by orders of magnitude, from less than 1 mW/m^3 to ~500 W/m^3 (or 6.9 W/m^2), making it feasible for commercialization (Logan 2010). The projected volumetric wastewater treatment capacity of BES based on lab-scale studies can reach to 7.1 kg chemical oxygen demand (COD)/m^3 reactor volume/day, which is even higher than conventional activated sludge wastewater treatment systems (~0.5–2 kg COD/m^3 reactor volume/day) (Rozendal et al. 2008). Moreover, many new functions have been developed, making BES a great platform technology for many different applications.

However, BES experiments have typically been performed on a small scale, varying from mainly milliliters to the largest of 1,000 L (Cusick et al. 2011; Logan 2008). To achieve practical implementation, BESs still need to be scaled-up by several orders of magnitude to at least cubic meter scale, and reactor configurations have to be easily integrated with current wastewater infrastructure. Several researchers have aimed at developing pilot systems, but they have encountered multiple challenges, including water leaking, low power output, influent fluctuation, and unfavorable products (Cusick et al. 2011; Keller and Rabaey 2008). Some key challenges that need to be addressed including reducing material costs, developing scalable reactor configurations, reducing system internal loss and improve power output, effectively harvesting and delivering usable power, and increasing chemical production rates. Multiple reviews have summarized the progresses of BES system development and provided insights in further directions

(Logan 2010; Lovley 2011; Pant et al. 2012; Rozendal et al. 2008; Wang et al. 2012; Wei et al. 2012).

The versatility makes BES a unique platform technology for many different applications, including but not limited to chemical and energy production, wastewater treatment, environmental remediation, water desalination, and remote sensing, etc. However, it is still not clear where the BES can contribute the most to the current environmental infrastructure and chemical industry. There has been minimum evaluation of BESs regarding their life cycle in terms of function selections or comparisons with established technologies which they can complement (Foley et al. 2010; Pant et al. 2011). It has been assumed that the most environmental benefits from BESs come from the displacement of fossil fuel dependent resources (i.e. grid electricity, or chemical manufacture) through co-product production (i.e. electricity, chemicals) from renewable sources, but the energy and environmental footprints of BESs have to be clearly quantified before implementing large-scale applications.

References

Aelterman P, Rabaey K, Pham HT, Boon N, Verstraete W (2006) Continuous electricity generation at high voltages and currents using stacked microbial fuel cells. Environ Sci Technol 4010:94–3388

Aulenta F, Canosa A, Majone M, Panero S, Reale P, Rossetti S (2008) Trichloroethene dechlorination and H2 evolution are alternative biological pathways of electric charge utilization by a dechlorinating culture in a bioelectrochemical system. Environ Sci Technol 4216:90–6185

Kim B-h, Kim HJ, Hyun M-S, Park D-H (1999) Direct electrode reaction of Fe(III)-reduing bacterium, *Shewanella putrefaciens*. J Microbiol Biotechnol 92:127–131

Biffinger JC, Ray R, Little BJ, Fitzgerald LA, Ribbens M, Finkel SE, Ringeisen BR (2009) Simultaneous analysis of physiological and electrical output changes in an operating microbial fuel cell with *Shewanella oneidensis*. Biotechnol Bioeng 1033:524–531

Bond DR, Lovley DR (2003) Electricity production by *Geobacter sulfurreducens* attached to electrodes. Appl Environ Microbiol 693:55–1548

Bond DR, Holmes DE, Tender LM, Lovley DR (2002) Electrode-reducing microorganisms that harvest energy from marine sediments. Science 295:5–483

Bretschger O, Obraztsova A, Sturm CA, Chang IS, Gorby YA, Reed SB, Culley DE, Reardon CL, Barua S, Romine MF (2007) Current production and metal oxide reduction by *Shewanella oneidensis* MR-1 wild type and mutants. Appl Environ Microbiol 7321:12–7003

Butler CS, Clauwaert P, Green SJ, Verstraete W, Nerenberg R (2010) Bioelectrochemical perchlorate reduction in a microbial fuel cell. Environ Sci Technol 4412:4685–4691

Cao XX, Huang X, Liang P, Xiao K, Zhou YJ, Zhang XY, Logan BE (2009) A new method for water desalination using microbial desalination cells. Environ Sci Technol 4318:7148–7152

Chang IS, Moon H, Bretschger O, Jang JK, Park HI, Nealson KH, Kim BH (2006) Electrochemically active bacteria (EAB) and mediator-less microbial fuel cells. J Microbiol Biotechn 162:163–177

Chaudhuri SK, Lovley DR (2003) Electricity generation by direct oxidation of glucose in mediatorless microbial fuel cells. Nat Biotechnol 2110:32–1229

Chen X, Xia X, Liang P, Cao XX, Sun HT, Huang X (2011) Stacked microbial desalination cells to enhance water desalination efficiency. Environ Sci Technol 456:2465–2470

Cheng S, Logan BE (2007) Sustainable and efficient biohydrogen production via electrohydrogenesis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 10447:18871–18873
Cheng S, Liu H, Logan BE (2006) Increased performance of single-chamber microbial fuel cells using an improved cathode structure. Electrochem Commun 83:489–494
Cheng SA, Xing DF, Call DF, Logan BE (2009) Direct biological conversion of electrical current into methane by electromethanogenesis. Environ Sci Technol 4310:3953–3958
Clauwaert P, Rabaey K, Aelterman P, De Schamphelaire L, Ham TH, Boeckx P, Boon N, Verstraete W (2007) Biological denitrification in microbial fuel cells. Environ Sci Technol 419:3354–3360
Cusick RD, Logan BE (2012) Phosphate recovery as struvite within a single chamber microbial electrolysis cell. Bioresour Technol 107:110–115
Cusick RD, Bryan B, Parker DS, Merrill MD, Mehanna M, Kiely PD, Liu GL, Logan BE (2011) Performance of a pilot-scale continuous flow microbial electrolysis cell fed winery wastewater. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 896:2053–2063
Dewan A, Beyenal H, Lewandowski Z (2008) Scaling up microbial fuel cells. Environ Sci Technol 4220:7643–7648
EPA US (2004) How to evaluate alternative cleanup technologies for underground storage tank sites: a guide for corrective action plan reviewers. Report No. EPA/510/R-04-002, office of underground storage tanks, U.S. EPA, Washington
EuropeEnergyPortal (2012) Renewable energy sources in European Union. www.energy.eu
Feng Y, Wang X, Logan BE, Lee H (2008) Brewery wastewater treatment using air-cathode microbial fuel cells. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 785:873–880
Foley JM, Rozendal RA, Hertle CK, Lant PA, Rabaey K (2010) Life cycle assessment of high-rate anaerobic treatment, microbial fuel cells, and microbial electrolysis cells. Environ Sci Technol 449:3629–3637
Forrestal C, Xu P, Ren Z (2012) Sustainable desalination using a microbial capacitive desalination cell. Energy Environ Sci 5:7161–7167
Freguia S, Rabaey K, Yuan ZG, Keller J (2008) Syntrophic processes drive the conversion of glucose in microbial fuel cell anodes. Environ Sci Technol 4221:7937–7943
Gorby YA, Yanina S, McLean JS, Rosso KM, Moyles D, Dohnalkova A, Beveridge TJ, Chang IS, Kim BH, Kim KS (2006) Electrically conductive bacterial nanowires produced by *Shewanella oneidensis* strain MR-1 and other microorganisms. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103:63–11358
Green EM (2011) Fermentative production of butanol—the industrial perspective. Curr Opin Biotechnol 223:337–343
Gregory KB, Lovley DR (2005) Remediation and recovery of uranium from contaminated subsurface environments with electrodes. Environ Sci Technol 3922:8943–8947
Harnisch F, Schroder U (2010) From MFC to MXC: chemical and biological cathodes and their potential for microbial bioelectrochemical systems. Chem Soc Rev 3911:4433–4448
Huggins T, Fallgren P, Ren Z (2012) Energy and performance comparison of membrane-less microbial fuel cell and conventional aeration treating of wastewater. In Preparation
Jacobson KS, Drew DM, He Z (2011) Use of a liter-scale microbial desalination cell as a platform to study bioelectrochemical desalination with salt solution or artificial seawater. Environ Sci Technol 4510:4652–4657
Keller J, Rabaey K (2008) Experiences from MFC pilot plant operation: how to get the technology market ready?. State College, USA
Kim Y, Logan BE (2011a) Hydrogen production from inexhaustible supplies of fresh and salt water using microbial reverse-electrodialysis electrolysis cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 10839:16176–16181
Kim Y, Logan BE (2011b) Series assembly of microbial desalination cells containing stacked electrodialysis cells for partial or complete seawater desalination. Environ Sci Technol 4513:5–5840
Liu H, Cheng S, Logan BE (2005a) Production of electricity from acetate or butyrate using a single-chamber microbial fuel cell. Environ Sci Technol 392:62–658

Liu H, Grot S, Logan BE (2005b) Electrochemically assisted microbial production of hydrogen from acetate. Environ Sci Technol 3911:20–4317
Logan BE (2008) Microbial fuel cells. Wiley, New York
Logan BE (2009) Exoelectrogenic bacteria that power microbial fuel cells. Nat Rev Microbiol 75:375–381
Logan BE (2010) Scaling up microbial fuel cells and other bioelectrochemical systems. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 856:1665–1671
Logan BE, Murano C, Scott K, Gray ND, Head IM (2005) Electricity generation from cysteine in a microbial fuel cell. Water Res 395:52–942
Logan B, Hamelers B, Rozendal R, Schröder U, Keller J, Freguia S, Aelterman P, Verstraete W, Rabaey K (2006) Microbial fuel cells: methodology and technology. Environ Sci Technol 4017:5181–5192
Logan B, Cheng S, Watson V, Estadt G (2007) Graphite fiber brush anodes for increased power production in air-cathode microbial fuel cells. Environ Sci Technol 419:3341–3346
Logan BE, Call D, Cheng S, Hamelers HVM, Sleutels THJA, Jeremiasse AW, Rozendal RA (2008) Microbial electrolysis cells for high yield hydrogen gas production from organic matter. Environ Sci Technol 4223:8630–8640
Lovley DR (2006) Bug juice: harvesting electricity with microorganisms. Nat Rev 47:497–508
Lovley DR (2011) Live wires: direct extracellular electron exchange for bioenergy and the bioremediation of energy-related contamination. Energy Environ Sci 412:4896–4906
Lovley DR, Nevin KP (2011) A shift in the current: new applications and concepts for microbe-electrode electron exchange. Curr Opin Biotechnol 223:8–441
Lovley DR, Phillips EJ (1989) Requirement for a microbial consortium to completely oxidize glucose in Fe(III)-reducing sediments. Appl Environ Microbiol 5512:3234–3236
Luo H, Jenkins P, Ren Z (2011) Concurrent desalination and hydrogen generation using microbial desalination cells. Environ Sci Technol 451:340–344
Luo H, Xu P, Jenkins P, Ren Z (2012a) Ionic composition and transport mechanisms in microbial desalination cells. J Membr Sci 409–410:16–23
Luo H, Xu P, Roane TM, Jenkins PE, Ren Z (2012b) Microbial desalination cells for improved performance in wastewater treatment, electricity production, and desalination. Bioresour Technol 105:6–60
Lyon D, Buret F, Vogel T, Monier J (2010) Is resistance futile? changing external resistance does not improve microbial fuel cell performance. Bioelectrochemistry 781:2–7
Marsili E, Baron DB, Shikhare ID, Coursolle D, Gralnick JA, Bond DR (2008) *Shewanella* Secretes flavins that mediate extracellular electron transfer. PNAS 10510:3968–3973
Marsili E, Sun J, Bond DR (2010) Voltammetry and growth physiology of *Geobacter sulfurreducens* biofilms as a function of growth stage and imposed electrode potential. Electroanalysis 227–8:865–874
McCarty PL, Bae J, Kim J (2011) Domestic wastewater treatment as a net energy producer-can this be achieved? Environ Sci Technol 4517:7100–7106
Mcinerney MJ, Beaty PS (1988) Anaerobic community structure from a nonequilibrium thermodynamic perspective. Can J Microbiol 344:487–493
Meehan A, Gao H, Lewandowksi Z (2011) Energy harvesting with microbial fuel cell power management system. IEEE Trans Power Electron 26:176–181
Mehanna M, Kiely PD, Call DF, Logan BE (2010) Microbial electrodialysis cell for simultaneous water desalination and hydrogen gas production. Environ Sci Technol 4424:83–9578
Mielenz JR (2001) Ethanol production from biomass: technology and commercialization status. Curr Opin Microbiol 43:324–329
Milliken CE, May HD (2007) Sustained generation of electricity by the spore-forming, gram-positive, desulfitobacterium hafniense strain DCB2. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 735:9–1180
Min B, Kim J, Oh S, Regan JM, Logan BE (2005) Electricity generation from swine wastewater using microbial fuel cells. Water Res 3920:8–4961
Morris JM, Jin S (2012) Enhanced biodegradation of hydrocarbon-contaminated sediments using microbial fuel cells. J Hazard Mater 213:474–477

Morris JM, Jin S, Crimi B, Pruden A (2009) Microbial fuel cell in enhancing anaerobic biodegradation of diesel. Chem Eng J 1462:161–167

Nevin KP, Woodard TL, Franks AE, Summers ZM, Lovley DR (2010) Microbial electrosynthesis: feeding microbes electricity to convert carbon dioxide and water to multicarbon extracellular organic compounds. mBio 1:1–4

Nevin KP, Hensley SA, Franks AE, Summers ZM, Ou JH, Woodard TL, Snoeyenbos-West OL, Lovley DR (2011) Electrosynthesis of organic compounds from carbon dioxide is catalyzed by a diversity of acetogenic microorganisms. Appl Environ Microbiol 779:2882–2886

Ni M, Leung DYC, Leung MKH, Sumathy K (2006) An overview of hydrogen production from biomass. Fuel Process Technol 875:461–472

O'Sullivan CA, Burrell PC, Clarke WP, Blackall LL (2005) Structure of a cellulose degrading bacterial community during anaerobic digestion. Biotechnol Bioeng 927:871–878

Pant D, Van Bogaert G, Diels L, Vanbroekhoven K (2010) A review of the substrates used in microbial fuel cells (MFCs) for sustainable energy production. Bioresour Technol 1016:1533–1543

Pant D, Singh A, Van Bogaert G, Gallego YA, Diels L, Vanbroekhoven K (2011) An introduction to the life cycle assessment (LCA) of bioelectrochemical systems (BES) for sustainable energy and product generation: relevance and key aspects. Renew Sustain Energy Rev 152:1305–1313

Pant D, Singh A, Van Bogaert G, Olsen SI, Nigam PS, Diels L, Vanbroekhoven K (2012) Bioelectrochemical systems (BES) for sustainable energy production and product recovery from organic wastes and industrial wastewaters. Rsc Adv 24:1248–1263

Parameswaran P, Torres CI, Lee HS, Krajmalnik-Brown R, Rittmann BE (2009) Syntrophic interactions among anode respiring bacteria (ARB) and non-ARB in a biofilm anode: electron balances. Biotechnol Bioeng 1033:513–523

Parameswaran P, Zhang H, Torres CI, Rittmann BE, Krajmalnik-Brown R (2010) Microbial community structure in a biofilm anode fed with a fermentable substrate: the significance of hydrogen scavengers. Biotechnol Bioeng 1051:69–78

Park JD, Ren ZY (2012) Hysteresis controller based maximum power point tracking energy harvesting system for microbial fuel cells. J Power Sources 205:151–156

Park DH, Zeikus JG (2000) Electricity generation in microbial fuel cells using neutral red as an electronophore. Appl Environ Microbiol 664:7–1292

Park DH, Zeikus JG (2003) Improved fuel cell and electrode designs for producing electricity from microbial degradation. Biotechnol Bioeng 813:55–348

Park HS, Kim BH, Kim HS, Kim HJ, Kim GT, Kim M, Chang IS, Park YK, Chang HI (2002) A novel electrochemically active and Fe(III)—reducing bacterium phylogenetically related to *Clostridium butyricum* isolated from a microbial fuel cell. Anaerobe 7:297–306

Perlack RD, Wright LL, Turhollow AF, Graham AF, Stokes BJ, Erbach DC (2005) Biomass as feedstock for a bioenergy and bioproducts industry: the technical feasibility of a billion-ton annual supply. Oak Ridge National Laboratory, Oak Ridge

Phung NT, Lee J, Kang KH, Chang IS, Gadd GM, Kim BH (2004) Analysis of microbial diversity in oligotrophic microbial fuel cells using 16S rDNA sequences. FEMS Microbiol Lett 2331:77–82

Pinto RP, Srinivasan B, Guiot SR, Tartakovsky B (2011) The effect of real-time external resistance optimization on microbial fuel cell performance. Water Res 454:8–1571

Potter MC (1911) Electrical effects accompanying the decomposition of organic compounds. Proc Roy Soc Lond Ser 84571:260–276

Powlson DS, Riche AB, Shield I (2005) Biofuels and other approaches for decreasing fossil fuel emissions from agriculture. Ann Appl Biol 1462:193–201

Rabaey K, Rozendal RA (2010) Microbial electrosynthesis—revisiting the electrical route for microbial production. Nat Rev 810:16–706

Rabaey K, Boon N, Hofte M, Verstraete W (2005) Microbial phenazine production enhances electron transfer in biofuel cells. Environ Sci Technol 399:8–3401

Rabaey K, Butzer S, Brown S, Keller J, Rozendal RA (2010) High current generation coupled to caustic production using a lamellar bioelectrochemical system. Environ Sci Technol 4411:4315–4321

Rabaey K, Girguis P, Nielsen LK (2011) Metabolic and practical considerations on microbial electrosynthesis. Curr Opin Biotechnol 223:7–371

Reguera G, McCarthy KD, Mehta T, Nicoll JS, Tuominen MT, Lovley DR (2005) Extracellular electron transfer via microbial nanowires. Nature 4357045:101–1098

Ren Z, Ward TE, Logan BE, Regan JM (2007a) Characterization of the cellulolytic and hydrogen-producing activities of six mesophilic Clostridium species. J Appl Microbiol 1036:2258–2266

Ren ZY, Ward TE, Regan JM (2007b) Electricity production from cellulose in a microbial fuel cell using a defined binary culture. Environ Sci Technol 4113:4781–4786

Ren Z, Steinberg LM, Regan JM (2008) Electricity production and microbial biofilm characterization in cellulose-fed microbial fuel cells. Water Sci Technol 583:617–622

Ren Z, Ramasamy RP, Cloud-Owen SR, Yan H, Mench MM, Regan JM (2011a) Time-course correlation of biofilm properties and electrochemical performance in single-chamber microbial fuel cells. Bioresour Technol 1021:416–421

Ren Z, Yan H, Wang W, Mench M, Regan J (2011b) Characterization of microbial fuel cells at microbially and electrochemically meaningful timescales. Environ Sci Technol 456:2435–2441

Rezaei F, Xing D, Wagner R, Regan JM, Richard TL, Logan BE (2009) Simultaneous cellulose degradation and electricity production by *Enterobacter cloacae* in a microbial fuel cell. Appl Environ Microbiol 7511:8–3673

Rismani-Yazdi H, Christy AD, Dehority BA, Morrison M, Yu Z, Tuovinen OH (2007) Electricity generation from cellulose by rumen microorganisms in microbial fuel cells. Biotechnol Bioeng 976:1398–1407

Rosenbaum M, Aulenta F, Villano M, Angenent LT (2011) Cathodes as electron donors for microbial metabolism: which extracellular electron transfer mechanisms are involved? Bioresour Technol 1021:324–333

Rozendal RA, Hamelers HVM, Rabaey K, Keller J, Buisman CJN (2008) Towards practical implementation of bioelectrochemical wastewater treatment. Trends Biotechnol 268:450–459

Rozendal RA, Leone E, Keller J, Rabaey K (2009) Efficient hydrogen peroxide generation from organic matter in a bioelectrochemical system. Electrochem Comm 119:1752–1755

Soares AA, Albergaria JT, Domingues VF, Alvim-Ferraz MDM, Delerue-Matos C (2010) Remediation of soils combining soil vapor extraction and bioremediation: benzene. Chemosphere 808:823–828

Steinbusch KJJ, Hamelers HVM, Schaap JD, Kampman C, Buisman CJN (2010) Bioelectrochemical ethanol production through mediated acetate reduction by mixed cultures. Environ Sci Technol 441:513–517

Summers ZM, Fogarty H, Leang C, Franks AE, Malvankar NS, Lovley DR (2010) Direct exchange of electrons within aggregates of an evolved syntrophic co-culture of anaerobic bacteria. Science 330:1413–1415

Tanaka K, Vega CA, Tamamushi R (1983) Mediating effects of ferric chelate compound in microbial fuel cells. Bioelectrochem Bioenerg 112–3:135–143

Ter Heijne A, Liu F, van der Weijden R, Weijma J, Buisman CJN, Hamelers HVM (2010) Copper recovery combined with electricity production in a microbial fuel cell. Environ Sci Technol 4411:4376–4381

Torres CI, Krajmalnik-Brown R, Parameswaran P, Marcus AK, Wanger G, Gorby YA, Rittmann BE (2009) Selecting anode-respiring bacteria based on anode potential: phylogenetic, electrochemical, and microscopic characterization. Environ Sci Technol 4324:9519–9524

Torres CI, Marcus AK, Lee HS, Parameswaran P, Krajmalnik-Brown R, Rittmann BE (2010) A kinetic perspective on extracellular electron transfer by anode-respiring bacteria. FEMS Microbiol Rev 341:3–17

USCongress (2007) Energy independence and security act of 2007. http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/pkg/PLAW-110publ140/pdf/PLAW-110publ140.pdf

von Canstein H, Ogawa J, Shimizu S, Lloyd JR (2008) Secretion of flavins by *Shewanella* species and their role in extracellular electron transfer. Appl Environ Microbiol 743:615–623

Wang G, Huang LP, Zhang YF (2008) Cathodic reduction of hexavalent chromium [Cr(VI)] coupled with electricity generation in microbial fuel cells. Biotechnol Lett 3011:1959–1966

Wang H, Park J, Ren ZY (2012) Active energy harvesting from microbial fuel cells at the maximum power point without using resistors. Environ Sci Technol 469:5247–5252

Wei J, Liang P, Huang X (2012) Recent progress in electrodes for microbial fuel cells. Bioresour Technol 10220:44–9335

Zhang F, Brastad KS, He Z (2011) Integrating forward osmosis into microbial fuel cells for wastewater treatment, water extraction and bioelectricity generation. Environ Sci Technol 4515:6690–6696

Index

V. K. Gupta and M. G. Tuohy (eds.), *Biofuel Technologies*,
DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-34519-7, © Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2013